TO DOROTHY
Preface

In presenting this treatment of homological algebra, it is a pleasure to acknowledge the help and encouragement which I have had from all sides. Homological algebra arose from many sources in algebra and topology. Decisive examples came from the study of group extensions and their factor sets, a subject I learned in joint work with Otto Schilling. A further development of homological ideas, with a view to their topological applications, came in my long collaboration with Samuel Eilenberg; to both collaborators, especial thanks. For many years the Air Force Office of Scientific Research supported my research projects on various subjects now summarized here; it is a pleasure to acknowledge their lively understanding of basic science.

Both Reinhold Baer and Josef Schmid read and commented on my entire manuscript; their advice has led to many improvements. Anders Kock and Jacques Riguet have read the entire galley proof and caught many slips and obscurities. Among the others whose suggestions have served me well, I note Frank Adams, Louis Auslander, Wilfred Cockcroft, Albrecht Dold, Geoffrey Horrocks, Friederich Kasch, Johann Leicht, Arunas Liulevicius, John Moore, Dieter Puppe, Joseph Yao, and a number of my current students at the University of Chicago — not to mention the auditors of my lectures at Chicago, Heidelberg, Bonn, Frankfurt, and Aarhus. My wife, Dorothy, has cheerfully typed more versions of more chapters than she would like to count. Messrs. Springer have been unfailingly courteous in the preparation of the book; in particular, I am grateful to F. K. Schmidt, the Editor of this series, for his support. To all these and others who have helped me, I express my best thanks.

Chicago, 17. February 1963

Saunders Mac Lane
# Table of Contents

**Introduction** ................................. 1

Chapter I. Modules, Diagrams, and Functors ................................. 8

1. The Arrow Notation ........................................ 8
2. Modules .................................................. 9
3. Diagrams ................................................ 13
4. Direct Sums ............................................. 15
5. Free and Projective Modules ................................ 19
6. The Functor Hom ......................................... 21
7. Categories ............................................... 25
8. Functors ............................................... 28

Chapter II. Homology of Complexes ........................................ 34

1. Differential Groups ....................................... 35
2. Complexes ................................................ 39
3. Cohomology ............................................... 42
4. The Exact Homology Sequence ................................ 44
5. Some Diagram Lemmas ................................... 49
6. Additive Relations ....................................... 51
7. Singular Homology ....................................... 54
8. Homotopy ................................................ 57
9. Axioms for Homology ..................................... 61

Chapter III. Extensions and Resolutions .................................. 63

1. Extensions of Modules ..................................... 63
2. Addition of Extensions ..................................... 67
3. Obstructions to the Extension of Homomorphisms ............... 72
4. The Universal Coefficient Theorem for Cohomology ............ 76
5. Composition of Extensions .................................. 82
6. Resolutions ............................................... 87
7. Injective Modules ......................................... 92
8. Injective Resolutions ...................................... 95
9. Two Exact Sequences for $\text{Ext}^n$ ......................... 96
10. Axiomatic Description of Ext ............................. 99
11. The Injective Envelope .................................. 102

Chapter IV. Cohomology of Groups ......................................... 103

1. The Group Ring .......................................... 104
2. Crossed Homomorphisms ................................... 105
3. Group Extensions ......................................... 108
4. Factor Sets .............................................. 111
5. The Bar Resolution ....................................... 114
6. The Characteristic Class of a Group Extension .................. 120
Table of Contents  

7. Cohomology of Cyclic and Free Groups ........................................... 121
8. Obstructions to Extensions .......................................................... 124
9. Realization of Obstructions ......................................................... 129
10. **Schur's** Theorem ........................................................................ 131
11. Spaces with Operators .................................................................... 134

Chapter V. Tensor and Torsion Products .............................................. 138

1. Tensor Products .............................................................................. 138
2. Modules over Commutative Rings .................................................. 141
3. Bimodules ....................................................................................... 142
4. Dual Modules .................................................................................. 146
5. Right Exactness of Tensor Products ................................................ 148
6. Torsion Products of Groups ............................................................ 150
7. Torsion Products of Modules ........................................................... 154
8. Torsion Products by Resolutions ...................................................... 159
9. The Tensor Product of Complexes ................................................... 163
10. The Könneth Formula ..................................................................... 166
11. Universal Coefficient Theorems ....................................................... 170

Chapter VI. Types of Algebras ............................................................... 173

1. Algebras by Diagrams ..................................................................... 173
2. Graded Modules .............................................................................. 175
3. Graded Algebras ............................................................................. 177
4. Tensor Products of Algebras ............................................................ 181
5. Modules over Algebras .................................................................... 184
6. Cohomology of free Abelian Groups .............................................. 187
7. Differential Graded Algebras ........................................................... 189
8. Identities on Hom and $\otimes$ ........................................................ 193
9. Coalgebras and **Hopf** Algebras ................................................... 197

Chapter VII. Dimension ....................................................................... 200

1. Homological Dimension .................................................................. 200
2. Dimensions in Polynomial Rings .................................................... 204
3. Ext and Tor for Algebras .................................................................. 206
4. Global Dimensions of Polynomial Rings ......................................... 210
5. Separable Algebras ......................................................................... 211
6. Graded Syzygies .............................................................................. 215
7. Local Rings ...................................................................................... 218

Chapter VIII. Products ......................................................................... 220

1. Homology Products ......................................................................... 220
2. The Torsion Product of Algebras ..................................................... 224
3. A Diagram Lemma .......................................................................... 227
4. External Products for Ext .................................................................. 228
5. **Simplicial** Objects ....................................................................... 233
6. Normalization .................................................................................. 236
7. Acyclic Models ................................................................................ 237
8. The **Eilenberg-Zilber** Theorem ..................................................... 238
9. Cup Products ................................................................................... 244

Chapter IX. Relative Homological Algebra .......................................... 248

1. Additive Categories .......................................................................... 249
2. Abelian Categories .......................................................................... 254
# Table of Contents

3. Categories of Diagrams .................................................. 257
4. Comparison of Allowable Resolutions ..................................... 260
5. Relative Abelian Categories ............................................ 262
6. Relative Resolutions .................................................. 263
7. The Categorical Bar Resolution ......................................... 270
8. Relative Torsion Products ............................................... 273
9. Direct Products of Rings ................................................ 278

Chapter X. Cohomology of Algebraic Systems .............................. 280
1. Introduction .............................................................. 280
2. The Bar Resolution for Algebras ......................................... 280
3. The Cohomology of an Algebra .......................................... 283
4. The Homology of an Algebra ............................................ 288
5. Homology of Groups and Monoids ..................................... 290
6. Ground Ring Extensions and Direct Products ........................... 293
7. Homology of Tensor Products .......................................... 295
8. The Case of Graded Algebras ........................................... 298
9. Complexes of Complexes ................................................ 301
10. Resolutions and Constructions ......................................... 303
11. Two-stage Cohomology of DGA-Algebras ............................... 308
12. Cohomology of Commutative DGA-Algebras ............................ 311
13. Homology of Algebraic Systems ....................................... 315

Chapter XI. Spectral Sequences .............................................. 318
1. Spectral Sequences ...................................................... 318
2. Fiber Spaces ..................................................................... 322
3. Filtered Modules .......................................................... 326
4. Transgression .................................................................... 332
5. Exact Couples .................................................................... 336
6. Bicomplexes ...................................................................... 340
7. The Spectral Sequence of a Covering .................................. 342
8. Cohomology Spectral Sequences ........................................ 345
9. Restriction, Inflation, and Connection .................................. 347
10. The Lyndon Spectral Sequence ......................................... 351
11. The Comparison Theorem ................................................ 355

Chapter XII. Derived Functors ................................................ 358
1. squares ............................................................................. 359
2. Subobjects and Quotient Objects ....................................... 361
3. Diagram Chasing ............................................................ 364
4. Proper Exact Sequences ................................................... 367
5. Ext without Projectives .................................................... 371
6. The Category of Short Exact Sequences ............................... 375
7. Connected Pairs of Additive Functors .................................. 379
8. Connected Sequences of Functors ...................................... 386
9. Derived Functors ............................................................ 389
10. Products by Universality .................................................. 394
11. Proper Projective Complexes ............................................ 397
12. The Spectral KÜNNETH Formula ....................................... 400

Bibliography ........................................................................... 404
List of Standard Symbols ......................................................... 413
Index ..................................................................................... 415
Introduction

Our subject starts with homology, homomorphisms, and tensors.

Homology provides an algebraic "picture" of topological spaces, assigning to each space $X$ a family of abelian groups $H_0(X), \ldots, H_n(X), \ldots$, to each continuous map $f: X \to Y$ a family of group homomorphisms $f_n: H_n(X) \to H_n(Y)$. Properties of the space or the map can often be effectively found from properties of the groups $H_n$ or the homomorphisms $f_n$. A similar process associates homology groups to other Mathematical objects; for example, to a group $\Pi$ or to an associative algebra $A$. Homology in all such cases is our concern.

Complexes provide a means of calculating homology. Each $n$-dimensional "singular" simplex $T$ in a topological space $X$ has a boundary consisting of singular simplices of dimension $n-1$. If $K_n$ is the free abelian group generated by all these $n$-simplices, the function $\partial$ assigning to each $T$ the alternating sum $\partial T$ of its boundary simplices determines a homomorphism $\partial: K_n \to K_{n-1}$. This yields (Chap. 11) a "complex" which consists of abelian groups $K_n$ and boundary homomorphisms $\partial$, in the form

$$0 \leftarrow K_0 \xleftarrow{\partial} K_1 \xleftarrow{\partial} K_2 \xleftarrow{\partial} K_3 \xleftarrow{\partial} \ldots$$

Moreover, $\partial^2 = 0$, so the kernel $C_n$ of $\partial: K_n \to K_{n-1}$ contains the image $\partial K_{n+1}$. The factor group $H_n(K) = C_n/\partial K_{n+1}$ is the $n$-th homology group of the complex $K$ or of the underlying space $X$. Often a smaller or simpler complex will suffice to compute the same homology groups for $X$. Given a group $\Pi$, there is a corresponding complex whose homology is that appropriate to the group. For example, the one dimensional homology of $\Pi$ is its factor commutator group $\Pi/[[\Pi, \Pi]\Pi]$.

Homomorphisms of appropriate type are associated with each type of algebraic system; under composition of homomorphisms the systems and their homomorphisms constitute a "category". (Chap. I). If $C$ and $A$ are abelian groups, the set $\text{Hom}(C, A)$ of all group homomorphisms $f: C \to A$ is also an abelian group. For $C$ fixed, it is a covariant "functor" on the category of all abelian groups $A$; each homomorphism $\alpha: A \to A'$ induces the map $\alpha_*: \text{Hom}(C, A) \to \text{Hom}(C, A')$ which carries each $f$ into its composite $\alpha f$ with $\alpha$. For $A$ fixed, Hom is contravariant: Each $\gamma: C \to C'$ induces the map $\gamma^*$ in the opposite direction, $\text{Hom}(C, A) \to \text{Hom}(C', A)$, sending $f$ to the composite $f \gamma$. Thus $\text{Hom}(\ ? , A)$ applied
to a complex $K = \cdots$ turns the arrows around to give a complex
\[
\text{Hom}(K_0, A) \xrightarrow{\partial} \text{Hom}(K_1, A) \xrightarrow{\partial} \text{Hom}(K_2, A) \rightarrow \cdots.
\]
Here the factor group $(\text{Kernel } \partial^*)/(\text{Image } \partial^*)$ is the cohomology $H^n(K, A)$ of $K$ with coefficients $A$. According to the provenance of $K$, it yields the cohomology of a space $X$ or of a group $\pi$.

An extension of a group $A$ by a group $C$ is a group $B \triangleright A$ with $B/A \cong C$; in diagramatic language, an extension is just a sequence
\[
E: 0 \rightarrow A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C \rightarrow 0
\]
of abelian groups and homomorphisms which is exact in the sense that the kernel of each homomorphism is exactly the image of the preceding one. The set $\text{Ext}^1(C, A)$ of all extensions of $A$ by $C$ turns out to be an abelian group and a functor of $A$ and $C$, covariant in $A$ and contravariant in $C$.

Question: Does the homology of a complex $K$ determine its cohomology $H^n(K, A)$? The answer is almost yes, provided each $K_n$ is a free abelian group. In this case $H^n(K, A)$ is determined "up to a group extension" by $H_n(K), H_{n-1}(K)$, and $A$; specifically, the "universal coefficient theorem" (Chap. II) gives an exact sequence
\[
0 \rightarrow \text{Ext}^1(H_{n-1}(K), A) \rightarrow H^n(K, A) \rightarrow \text{Hom}(H_n(K), A) \rightarrow 0
\]
involving the functor $\text{Ext}^1$ just introduced. If the $K_n$ are not free groups, there is a more complex answer, involving the spectral sequences to be described in Chap. XI.

Tensors arise from vector spaces $U$, $V$, and $W$ and bilinear functions $B(u, v)$ on $U \times V$ to $W$. Manufacture the vector space $U \otimes V$ generated by symbols $u \otimes v$ which are bilinear in $u \in U$ and $v \in V$ and nothing more. Then $u \otimes v$ is a universal bilinear function; to any bilinear $B$ there is a unique linear transformation $T: U \otimes V \rightarrow W$ with $B(u, v) = T(u \otimes v)$. The elements of $V \otimes V$ turn out to be just the classical tensors (in two indices) associated with the vector space $V$. Two abelian groups $A$ and $G$ have a tensor product $A \otimes G$ generated by bilinear symbols $a \otimes g$; it is an abelian group, and a functor covariant in $A$ and $G$. In particular, if $K$ is a complex, so is $A \otimes K: A \otimes K_0 \rightarrow A \otimes K_1 \rightarrow \cdots$.

Question: Does the homology of $K$ determine that of $A \otimes K$? Answer: Almost yes; if each $K$ is free, there is an exact sequence
\[
0 \rightarrow A \otimes H_n(K) \rightarrow H_n(A \otimes K) \rightarrow \text{Tor}_1(A, H_{n-1}(K)) \rightarrow 0.
\]
Here $\text{Tor}_1(A, G)$ is a new covariant functor of the abelian groups $A$ and $G$, called the "torsion product"; it depends (Chap. V) on the elements of finite order in $A$ and $G$ and is generated, subject to suitable relations,
by pairs of elements \( a \in A \) and \( g \in G \) for which there is an integer \( m \) with \( ma = 0 = mg \).

Take the cartesian product \( X \times Y \) of two spaces. Can we calculate its homology from that of \( X \) and \( Y \)? A study of complexes constructed from simplices (Chap. VIII) reduces this question to the calculation of the homology of a tensor product \( K \otimes L \) of two complexes. This calculation again involves the torsion product, via an exact sequence (the Künneth Thm, Chap. V)

\[
0 \to \sum_{p+q=n} H_p(K) \otimes H_q(L) \to H_n(K \otimes L) \to \sum_{p+q=n-1} \text{Tor}_1(H_p(K), H_q(L)) \to 0.
\]

But woe, if \( A \) is a subgroup of \( B \), \( A \otimes G \) is not usually a subgroup of \( B \otimes G \); in other words, if \( E: 0 \to A \to B \to C \to 0 \) is exact, the sequence of tensor products

\[
0 \to A \otimes G \to B \otimes G \to C \otimes G \to 0,
\]

is exact, except possibly at \( A \otimes G \). Happily, the torsion product repairs the trouble; the given sequence \( E \) defines a homomorphism \( E_*: \text{Tor}_1(C, G) \to A \otimes G \) with image exactly the kernel of \( A \otimes G \to B \otimes G \), and the sequence

\[
0 \to \text{Tor}_1(A, G) \to \text{Tor}_1(B, G) \to \text{Tor}_1(C, G) \xrightarrow{E_*} A \otimes G \to B \otimes G
\]

is exact. Call \( E_* \) the connecting homomorphism for \( \text{Tor}_1 \) and \( \otimes \).

But again woe, if \( A \) is a subgroup of \( B \), a homomorphism \( f: A \to G \) may not be extendable to a homomorphism \( B \to G \); in other words, the exact sequence \( 0+A \to B \to C \to 0 \) induces a sequence (opposite direction by contravariance!)

\[
0 \to \text{Hom}(C, G) \to \text{Hom}(B, G) \to \text{Hom}(A, G) \to 0
\]

which may not be exact at \( \text{Hom}(A, G) \). \( \text{Ext}^1 \) to the rescue: There is a "connecting" homomorphism \( E^* \) which produces a longer exact sequence

\[
0 \to \text{Hom}(C, G) \to \text{Hom}(B, G) \to \text{Hom}(A, G) \xrightarrow{E^*} \text{Ext}^1(C, G) \to \text{Ext}^1(B, G) \to \text{Ext}^1(A, G) \to 0.
\]

Now generalize; replace abelian groups by modules over any commutative ring \( R \). Then \( \text{Ext}^1(A, G) \) is still defined as an \( R \)-module, but the longer sequence may now fail of exactness at \( \text{Ext}^1(A, G) \). There is a new functor \( \text{Ext}^2(A, G) \), a new connecting homomorphism \( E^*: \text{Ext}^1(A, G) \to \text{Ext}^2(C, G) \), and an exact sequence extending indefinitely to the right as

\[
\ldots \to \text{Ext}^"(C, G) \to \text{Ext}^"(B, G) \to \text{Ext}^"(A, G) \xrightarrow{E^*} \text{Ext}^*+1(C, G) \to \ldots
\]
The elements of $\text{Ext}^n(C, G)$ are suitable equivalence classes of long exact sequences

$$0 \to G \to B_{n-1} \to \cdots \to B_0 \to C \to 0$$

running from $G$ to $C$ through $n$ intermediate modules. Similarly for the tensor product; there are functors $\text{Tor}_n(A, G)$, described via suitable generators and relations, which enter into a long exact sequence

$$\to \text{Tor}_{n+1}(C, G) \xrightarrow{\partial} \text{Tor}_n(A, G) \to \text{Tor}_{n}(B, G) \to \text{Tor}_n(C, G) \to \cdots$$

induced by each $E$: $0 \to A \to B \to C \to 0$. They apply also if the ring is not commutative and $A$, $B$, and $C$ are right $R$-modules, $G$ a left $R$-module.

These functors $\text{Tor}_n$ and $\text{Ext}^n$ are the subject of homological algebra. They give the cohomology of various algebraic systems. If $\Pi$ is a group, take $R$ to be the group ring generated by $\Pi$ over the integers. Then the group $Z$ of integers is (trivially) an $R$-module; if $A$ is any other $R$-module, the groups $\text{Ext}_0^Z(Z, A)$ are the cohomology groups $H^n(\Pi, A)$ of the group $\Pi$ with coefficients in $A$. If $n = 2$, $H^2(\Pi, A)$ turns out, as it should, to be the group of all extensions $B$ of the abelian group $A$ by the (non-abelian) group $17$, where the structure of $A$ as a $17$-module specifies how $A$ is a normal subgroup of $B$. If $n = 3$, $H^3(\Pi, A)$ is a group whose elements are "obstructions" to an extension problem. Similarly, $\text{Tor}_n(A, G)$ gives the homology groups of $17$. Again, if $A$ is an algebra over the field $F$, construct $\text{Ext}^n$ by long exact sequences of two-sided $A$-modules $A$. The algebra $A$ is itself such a module, and $\text{Ext}^n(A, A)$ is the cohomology of $A$ with coefficients $A$; again $\text{Ext}^2$ and $\text{Ext}^3$ correspond to extension problems for algebras.

A module $P$ is projective if every homomorphism $P \to B/A$ lifts to a homomorphism $P \to B$. Any free module is projective; write any module in terms of generators; this expresses it as a quotient of a free module, and hence of a projective module.

How can $\text{Tor}_n$ and $\text{Ext}^n$ be calculated? Write $A$ as a quotient of a projective module $P_0$; that is, write an exact sequence $0 \to A \leftarrow P_0$. The kernel of $P_0 \to A$ is again a quotient of a projective $P_1$. This process continues to give an exact sequence $0 \to A \leftarrow P_0 \leftarrow P_1 \leftarrow \cdots$. The complex $P$ is called a "projective resolution" of $A$. It is by no means unique; compare two such

$$0 \leftarrow A \leftarrow P_0 \xleftarrow{\partial} P_1 \leftarrow P_2 \leftarrow \cdots$$

$$0 \leftarrow A \leftarrow P'_0 \xleftarrow{\partial} P'_1 \leftarrow P'_2 \leftarrow \cdots.$$

Since $P_0$ is projective, the map $P_0 \to A$ lifts to $f_0: P_0 \to P'_0$. The composite map $P_1 \to P'_0$ lifts in turn to an $f_1: P_1 \to P'_1$ with $\partial f_1 = f_0 \partial$, and so on by
recursion. The resulting comparison \( f_n : P_n \to P'_n \) of complexes induces a homomorphism \( H_n(P \otimes G) \to H_n(P' \otimes G) \). Reversing the roles of \( P \) and \( P' \) and deforming \( P \to P' \to P \) to the identity (deformations are called homotopies) shows this an isomorphism \( H_n(P \otimes G) \cong H_n(P' \otimes G) \). Therefore the homology groups \( H_n(P \otimes G) \) do not depend on the choice of the projective resolution \( P \), but only on \( A \) and \( G \). They turn out to be the groups \( \text{Tor}_n(A, G) \). Similarly, the cohomology groups \( H^n(P, G) \) are the groups \( \text{Ext}^n(A, G) \), while the requisite connecting homomorphisms \( E^* \) may be obtained from a basic exact homology sequence for complexes (Chap. II). Thus Tor and Ext may be calculated from projective resolutions. For example, if \( \mathbb{II} \) is a group, the module \( \mathbb{Z} \) has a standard "bar resolution" (Chap. IX) whose cohomology is that of \( \mathbb{II} \). For particular groups, particular resolutions are more efficient.

Qualitative considerations ask for the minimum length of a projective resolution of an \( R \)-module \( A \). If there is a projective resolution of \( A \) stopping with \( P_{n+1} = 0 \), \( A \) is said to have homological dimension at most \( n \). These dimensions enter into the arithmetic structure of the ring \( R \); for example, if \( R \) is the ring \( \mathbb{Z} \) of integers, every module has dimension at most \( 1 \); again for example, the Hilbert Syzygy Theorem (Chap. VII) deals with dimensions of graded modules over a polynomial ring.

Two exact sequences \( 0 \to A \to B \to C \to 0 \) and \( 0 \to C \to D \to F \to 0 \) may be "spliced" at \( C \) to give a longer exact sequence

\[
0 \to A \to B \to D \to F \to 0;
\]

in other words, an element of \( \text{Ext}^1(C, A) \) and an element of \( \text{Ext}^1(F, C) \) determine a two-fold extension which is an element of \( \text{Ext}^2(F, A) \), called their product (Chap. III). These and similar products for Tor can be computed from resolutions (Chap. VIII).

Every \( R \)-module is also an abelian group; that is, a module over the ring \( \mathbb{Z} \) of integers. Call an extension \( E : A \to B \to C \) of \( R \)-modules \( \mathbb{Z} \)-split if the middle module \( B \), regarded just as an abelian group, is the direct sum of \( A \) and \( C \). Construct the group \( \text{Ext}^1_{(R, \mathbb{Z})}(C, A) \) using only such 2-split extensions. This functor has connecting homomorphisms \( E^* \) for those \( E \) which are 2-split. With the corresponding torsion functors and their connecting homomorphisms, it is the subject of relative homological algebra (Chap. IX). The cohomology of a group is such a relative functor. Again, if \( A \) is an algebra over the commutative ring \( K \), all appropriate concepts are relative to \( K \); in particular, the cohomology of \( A \) arises from exact sequences of \( A \)-bimodules which are split as sequences of \( K \)-modules.
Modules appear to be the essential object of study. But the exactness of a resolution and the definition of a projective are properties of homomorphisms; all the arguments work if the modules and the homomorphisms are replaced by any objects \( A, B, \ldots \) with "morphisms" \( a: A \to B \) which can be added, compounded, and have suitable kernels, cokernels \( (B/\alpha_A) \), and images. Technically, this amounts to developing homological algebra in an abelian category (Chap. IX). From the functor \( T_0(A) = A \otimes G \) we constructed a sequence of functors \( T_n(A) = \text{Tor}^n (A, G) \). More generally, let \( T_0 \) be any covariant functor which is additive \( [T_0(\alpha_1 + \alpha_2) = T_0 \alpha_1 + T_0 \alpha_2] \) and which carries each exact sequence \( 0 \to A \to B \to C \to 0 \) into a right exact sequence \( T_0(A) \to \& (B) \to T_0(C) \to 0 \). We again investigate the kernel of \( T_0(A) \to T_0(B) \) and construct new functors to describe it. If the category has "enough" projectives, each \( A \) has a projective resolution \( P \), and \( H_n(T_0(P)) \) is independent of the choice of \( P \) and defines a functor \( T_n(A) \) which enters into a long exact sequence

\[
\cdots \to T_n(A) \to T_n(B) \to T_n(C) \xrightarrow{E_n} T_{n-1}(A) \to \cdots
\]

Thus \( T_0 \) determines a whole sequence of derived functors \( T_n \) and of connecting homomorphisms \( E_n: T_n(C) \to T_{n-1}(A) \). These "derived" functors can be characterized conceptually by three basic properties (Chap. XII):

(i) The long sequence above is exact,

(ii) If \( P \) is projective and \( n > 0 \), \( T_n(P) = 0 \),

(iii) If \( E \to E' \) is a homomorphism of exact sequences, the diagram of connecting homomorphisms commutes (naturality!):

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
T_n(C) & \to & T_{n-1}(A) \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
T_n(C') & \to & T_{n-1}(A') \\
\end{array}
\]

In particular, given \( T_0(A) = A \otimes G \), these axioms characterize \( \text{Tor}^n(A, G) \) as functors of \( A \). There is a similar characterization of the functors \( \text{Ext}^n(C, A) \) (Chap. III). Alternatively, each derived functor \( T_n \) can be characterized just in terms of the preceding \( T_{n-1} \): If \( E: S, (C) \to S_{n-1}(A) \) is another natural connecting homomorphism between additive functors, each "natural" map of \( S_{n-1} \) into \( T_{n-1} \) extends to a unique natural map of \( S \), into \( T \). This "universal" property of \( T_n \) describes it as the left satellite of \( T_{n-1} \); it may be used to construct products.

Successive and interlocking layers of generalizations appear throughout homological algebra. We go from abelian groups to modules to bimodules to objects in an abelian category; from rings to groups to algebras to Hopf algebras (Chap. VI); from exact sequences to \( \mathbb{Z} \)-split
exact sequences to a "proper" class of exact sequences characterized by axioms (Chap. XII). The subject is in process of rapid expansion; the most general formulation is yet to come. Hence this book will proceed from the special to the general, subsuming earlier results in the concluding treatment (Chap. XII) of additive functors in an abelian category relative to a proper class of exact sequences.

As each concept is developed, we take time out to stress its applications. Thus Chap. IV on the cohomology of groups includes the topological interpretation of the cohomology groups of \( \Pi \) as the cohomology of an aspherical space with fundamental group \( \Pi \), as well as Schur's Theorem that every extension of a finite group by another finite group of relatively prime order must split. Chap. VII, on dimension, studies syzygies and separable algebras. Chap. X on the cohomology of algebraic systems includes the Wedderburn principal theorem for algebras and the cohomology (at various levels) of abelian groups. Chap. XI includes the standard construction of the spectral sequences of a filtration and of a bicomplex, used to construct the spectral sequence of a covering and of a group extension. (The latter is due to Lyndon and not, as often thought, to the subsequent work of Hochschild-Serre). Much of the general development of homological algebra in the other chapters can be read independently of these results.

For the expert we note a few special features. The basic functors Ext and Tor are described directly: Ext, following Yoneda, by long exact sequences, Tor by an improved set of generators and relations. Resolutions are relegated to their proper place as a means of computation. All the varieties of algebras (coalgebras, Hopf Algebras, graded algebras, differential graded algebras) are described uniformly by commutative diagrams for the product maps. Relative homological algebra is treated at two levels of generality: First, by a "forgetful" functor, say one which regards an \( R \)-module just as an abelian group, later by a suitable proper class of short exact sequences in an abelian category. The cohomology of groups is defined functorially by the bar construction. This construction later appears in conceptual form: For a pair of categories with a forgetful functor and a functor constructing relative projective—(Chap. IX, §7). The proper definition of connecting homomorphisms by additive relations (correspondences) is indicated; these relations are used to describe the transgression in a spectral sequence. This gives a convenient treatment of the transgression in Lyndon's spectral sequence. Diagram chasing works in an abelian category with subobjects or quotient objects replacing elements (XII.3).

Notations are standard, with the following few exceptions. A complex is \( K \) (latin), a commutative ring is \( K \) (greek). A "graded" module \( M \) is a family \( M_0, M_1, \ldots \) of modules and not their direct sum \( \sum M_n \), while
a family ..., $M_{-1}, M_0, M_1, ...$ is said to be "Z-graded". A monomorphism is written $\pi: A \rightarrow B$, an epimorphism $\alpha: B \rightarrow C$, while $\pi|_{\sigma}$ states that $0 + A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C \rightarrow 0$ is exact. A dotted arrow $A \rightarrow B$ is a homomorphism to be constructed, a dashed arrow $A \rightarrow B$ is a group homomorphism between modules, a half arrow $A \rightarrow B$ is an additive relation. We distinguish between a bicomplex (XI.6) and a complex of complexes (X.9); we "augment" but do not "supplement" an algebra. The dual of a resolution is a "coresolution". If $u$ is a cycle in the homology class $h$ of $H_n(X), u \in \in H_n$ is short for $u \in h \in H_n$, while $h$ is written $h = \text{cls} u$. The coboundary of an n-cochain $f$ is $\delta f = (-1)^{n+1} \partial f$, with a sign (11.3).

A reference to Thm V.4.3 is to Theorem 3 of section 4 of Chap. V; if the chapter number is omitted, it is to a theorem in the chapter at hand. A reference such as BOURBAKI [1999] is to that author's article, as listed in the bibliography at the back of our book and published in the year cited; [1999b] is to the second article by the same author, same year. The influential treatise by H. CARTAN and S. EILENBERG on Homological Algebra is honored by omitting its date. The bibliography makes no pretense at completeness, but is intended to provide a guide to further reading, as suggested in the notes at the ends of some chapters or sections. These notes also contain occasional historical comments which give positive—and perhaps prejudiced—views of the development of our subject. The exercises are designed both to give elementary practice in the concepts presented and to formulate additional results not included in the text.

Chapter one

Modules, Diagrams, and Functors

Homology theory deals repeatedly with the formal properties of functions and their composites. The functions concerned are usually homomorphisms of modules or of related algebraic systems. The formal properties are subsumed in the statement that the homomorphisms constitute a category. This chapter will examine the notions of module and category.

1. The Arrow Notation

If $X$ and $Y$ are sets, the cartesian product $X \times Y$ is the set of all ordered pairs $(x, y)$ for $x \in X$ and $y \in Y$.

The notation $f: X + Y$ states that $f$ is a function on $X$ to $Y$. Formally, such a function may be described as an ordered triple $f = (X, F, Y)$, with $F$ a subset of $X \times Y$ containing for each $x \in X$ exactly one pair $(x, y)$. 


Actually we write $f(x) = y$, as usual, for the value of $f$ at the argument $x$. Notice that we normally write the function $f$ to the left of its argument, as in $f(x)$. Notice also that each function $f$ carries with it a definite set $X$ as domain and a definite set $Y$ as range.

If $f: X \rightarrow Y$ and $g: Y \rightarrow Z$ are functions, the composite function $gf$, sometimes written $g \circ f$, is the function on $X$ to $Z$ with the value $(gf)(x) = g(f(x))$ for each $x \in X$. Since functions are written on the left, $gf$ means first apply $f$, then apply $g$. This composite is defined only when $\text{Range}(f) = \text{Domain}(g)$; in particular, we do not define the composite when $\text{Range}(f)$ is a proper subset of $\text{Domain}(g)$.

For any set $X$, the identity $1_X$ or $1_X$ is the function $1_X: X \rightarrow X$ with $1_X(x) = x$ for all $x$. If $S$ is a subset of $X$ the function $j: S \rightarrow X$ with values $j(s) = s$ for all $s \in S$ is called the ("identity") injection of $S$ into $X$. For any $f: X \rightarrow Y$ the composite $fj: S \rightarrow Y$ (sometimes written $f|S$) is the function $f$ "cut down" to the subset $S$ of its domain. Similarly, when $Y$ is a subset of $W$ and $k: Y \rightarrow W$ is the injection (with $k(y) = y$), the composite $kf: X \rightarrow W$ is the function $f$ with its range expanded from $Y$ to $W$. Notice that the functions $f$ and $kf$ have the same values for each argument $x$, but they are different functions, since the range is different. This distinction, apparently pedantic, will pay off. (See Example 2 in II.1.)

We use the usual notations of set theory, with $X \cap Y$ denoting the intersection of the sets $X$ and $Y$ and with $\emptyset$ the empty set.

### 2. Modules

Let $R$ be a ring with identity $1 \neq 0$. A left $R$-module $A$ is an additive abelian group together with a function $\cdot: R \times A \rightarrow A$, written $\cdot(r, a) = ra$, such that always

$$
(r + r')a = ra + r'a, \quad (rr')a = r(ra),
$$

$$
r(a + a') = ra + ra', \quad 1a = a.
$$

It follows that $0a = 0$ and $(-1)a = -a$. Some authors define an $R$-module without requiring that $1a = a$, and call a module with this property unitary. In this book, every ring has an identity and every module is unitary.

Our treatment of left $R$-modules will apply, mutatis mutandis, to right $R$-modules. They are abelian groups $A$ with $ar \in A$ defined so as to satisfy the corresponding four identities; for example $a(rr') = (ar)r'$.

Modules appear in many connections. In case $R$ is a field or a skew field, a left $R$-module is a left vector space over $R$. If $F$ is a field and $R = F[x]$ the polynomial ring in one indeterminate $x$ with coefficients in $F$, then an $R$-module is simply a vector space $V$ over $F$ together with
a fixed linear transformation $T: V \rightarrow V$; namely, $T$ is the transformation
given by left multiplication by $x \in R$. Consider $Z$-modules, where $Z$
denotes the ring of integers. For each positive integer $m$, $ma = a + \ldots + a$
(m times); hence a $Z$-module $A$ is just an abelian group, with the usual
meaning for integral multiples $ma, m \in Z$. If $Z_k$ is the ring of integers
modulo $k$, a $Z_k$-module $A$ is an abelian group in which every element has
order a divisor of $k$. Finally, take $R$ to be a commutative ring generated
by $I$ and by an element $d$ with $d^2 = 0$, so that $R$ consists of all $m + n d$ for
integer coefficients $m$ and $n$; an $R$-module is then an abelian group $A$
together with a homomorphism $d: A \rightarrow A$ such that $d^2 = 0$; such a pair
$(A, d)$ is called a "differential group" ($\Pi$.I).

A subset $S$ of an $R$-module $A$ is a $\textit{submodule}$ (in symbols, $S \triangleleft A$), if $S$
is closed under addition and if $r \in R, s \in S$ imply $rs \in S$; then $S$ itself is an
$R$-module. The ring $R$ is itself a left $R$-module. A submodule of $R$ is a
subset $L$ of $R$ closed under addition and with each $rL \subseteq L$; such a subset
is also called a left ideal in $R$. If $L$ is a left ideal in $R$ and $A$ a left $R$
module, the set

$$LA = \{ \text{all finite sums } \sum l_i a_i, \text{ for } l_i \in L, a_i \in A \}$$

is a submodule of $A$, called the $\textit{product}$ of the ideal $L$ by the module $A$. In
particular, the product $LL'$ of two left ideals is a left ideal, and

$$(LL')A = L(L'A).$$

If $A$ and $B$ are both $R$-modules, the notation $a: A \rightarrow B$ or $A \xrightarrow{a} B$
states that $a$ is an $R$-module homomorphism of $A$ to $B$; that is, a function
on $A$ to $B$ such that always

$$a(a + a') = a a + a a', \quad a(ra) = ra(a a)$$

When $a: A \rightarrow B$, call $A$ the domain and $B$ the range of $a$. The image
$\text{Im}(a) = a A$ consists of all elements $a a$ for $a \in A$; it is a submodule of the
range $B$; the kernel $\text{Ker}(a)$ consists of all $a$ in $A$ with $a a = 0$; it is a
submodule of the domain $A$. If $a A = B$, we say that $a$ is an epimorphism
and write $a: A \twoheadrightarrow B$, while if $\text{Ker}(a) = 0$ we say that $a$ is a monomorphism
and write $a: A \rightarrowtail B$. Finally, $a$ is an isomorphism if and only if $a$ is both a
monomorphism and an epimorphism. For each module $A$, the identity
function $1_A: A \rightarrow A$ is a homomorphism. For any $A$ and $B$, the zero or
"trivial" function $0$ with every $0(a) = 0$ is a homomorphism $0: A \rightarrow B$.
A homomorphism $\omega: A \rightarrow A$ with range and domain equal is called an
$\textit{endomorphism}$.

If $\alpha_1, a: A \rightarrow B$ are homomorphisms with the same domain $A$ and the
same range $B$, their sum $\alpha_1 + \alpha_2$, defined by $(\alpha_1 + a) a = \alpha_1 a + \alpha_2 a$, is an
$R$-module homomorphism $\alpha_1 + \alpha_2: A \rightarrow B$.

If $a: A \rightarrow B$ and $\beta: B \rightarrow C$ are $R$-module homomorphisms, the com-
$\text{posite}$ function $\beta a$ is also an $R$-module homomorphism $\beta a: A \rightarrow C$; but
note that this composite is defined only when Range $a =$Domain $\beta$. The composition of homomorphisms is associative when defined. $A$ (two-sided) inverse of $a$: $A \rightarrow B$ is a homomorphism $\alpha^{-1}$: $B+A$ such that both $\alpha \alpha^{-1} = 1_B$ and $\alpha^{-1} a = 1_A$. Moreover, $a$ has an inverse if and only if it is an isomorphism, and the inverse is then unique. We write $a$: $A \cong B$ when $a$ is an isomorphism. A left inverse of $a$ is any homomorphism $y$: $B \rightarrow A$ with $ya = 1_A$; it need not exist or be unique.

A pair of homomorphisms $(a, \beta)$ with Range $a =$Domain $\beta = B$, $A \xrightarrow{a} B \xrightarrow{\beta} C$, is exact at $B$ if $\text{Ker} \beta = \text{Im} a$. A longer sequence of homomorphisms: $A_1 \xrightarrow{\alpha_1} A_2 \xrightarrow{\alpha_2} A_3 \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow A_{n-1} \xrightarrow{\alpha_{n-1}} A_n$ is said to be exact if $(\alpha_{i-1}, a_i)$ is exact at $A_i$, for each $i = 2, \ldots, n - 1$.

For each submodule $T < B$ the injection is a monomorphism $j$: $T \rightarrow B$. For each $b \in B$ the set $b + T$ of all sums $b + t$ with $t \in T$ is a coset of $T$ in $B$; two cosets $b_1 + T$ and $b_2 + T$ are either disjoint or equal (the latter when $b_1 - b_2 \in T$). Recall that the quotient group (factor group or difference group) $B/T$ has as its elements the cosets of $T$ in $B$, with $(b_1 + T) + (b_2 + T) = (b_1 + b_2) + T$ as addition. Since $T$ is a submodule, the abelian group $B/T$ becomes an $R$-module when the product of any $r \in R$ with a coset is defined by $r(b + T) = rb + T$; we call $B/T$ a quotient module. The function $\eta$ which sends each element $b \in B$ into its coset $\eta b = b + T$ is an epimorphism $\eta$: $B \rightarrow B/T$, called the canonical map or projection of $B$ on $B/T$.

**Proposition 2.1.** If $\beta$: $B \rightarrow B'$ with $T < \text{Ker} \beta$, there is a unique module homomorphism $\beta'$: $B/T \rightarrow B'$ with $\beta \eta = \beta'$; that is, the diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
B & \xrightarrow{\eta} & B/T \\
\downarrow{\beta} & & \downarrow{\beta'} \\
B' & &
\end{array}
$$

\begin{array}{c}
\beta(T) = 0,
\end{array}

\text{can be 'filled in' by a unique $\beta'$ so as to be commutative ($\beta' \eta = \beta$).}

**Proof.** Set $\beta'(b + T) = \beta b$; since $T < \text{Ker} \beta$, this is well defined. In particular, if $\beta$: $B \rightarrow B'$ is an epimorphism with kernel $T$, $\beta'$: $B/T \cong B'$.

This result may be worded: Each $\beta$ with $\beta(T) = 0$ factors uniquely through the projection $\eta$. This property characterizes $\eta$: $B \rightarrow B/T$ up to an isomorphism of BIT, in the following sense:

**Proposition 2.2.** If $T \subseteq B$ and $\zeta$: $B + D$ is such that $\zeta(T) = 0$ and each $\beta$: $B \rightarrow B'$ with $\beta(T) = 0$ factors uniquely through $\zeta$, there is an isomorphism $\theta$: $B/T \cong D$ with $\zeta = \theta \eta$. 

Chapter I. Modules, Diagrams, and Functors

Proof. Factor \( \xi \) through \( \eta \) and \( \eta \) through \( \xi \), so \( \xi = \xi' \eta, \eta = \eta' \xi \). Hence \( \xi = (\xi' \eta)' = 1 \xi \). But \( \xi \) factors uniquely through \( \zeta \), so \( \xi' \eta' = 1 \). Symmetrically, \( \eta' \xi' = 1 \). Hence \( \eta' = (\xi')^{-1} \) and \( \zeta' \) is the desired isomorphism \( \theta \).

For any \( T \subset B \) the injection \( j \) and the projection \( \eta \) yield an exact sequence.

\[
0 \to T \to B \overset{\eta}{\to} B/T \to 0.
\]

Conversely, let \((x, \sigma) : 0 \to A \overset{\alpha}{\to} B \overset{\sigma}{\to} C \to 0\) be any short exact sequence; that is, an exact sequence of five R-modules with the two outside modules zero (and hence the two outside maps trivial). Exactness at \( A \) means that \( \alpha \) is a monomorphism, at \( B \) means that \( \alpha \) is an epimorphism. Thus the short exact sequence may be written as \( A \to B \to C \), with exactness at \( B \). Now \( \alpha \) induces an isomorphism \( \alpha' : A \cong \alpha A \) and \( \sigma \) an isomorphism \( \sigma' : B/\alpha A \cong C \); together these provide an isomorphism of short exact sequences, in the form of a commutative diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
0 & \to & A \overset{\alpha}{\to} B \overset{\sigma}{\to} C \to 0 \\
\downarrow{\alpha'} & & \downarrow{(\sigma')}^{-1} \\
0 & \to & \alpha A \overset{j}{\to} B \overset{\sigma}{\to} B/\alpha A \to 0.
\end{array}
\]  

(2.1)

In brief, a short exact sequence is but another name for a submodule and its quotient.

Each homomorphism \( a : A \to B \) determines two quotient modules

\[
\text{Coim } a = A/Ker a, \quad \text{Coker } a = B/Im a,
\]

called the coimage and the cokernel of \( a \). This definition gives two short exact sequences

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Ker } a & \to A \to \text{Coim } a, \\
\text{Im } a & \to B \to \text{Coker } a,
\end{align*}
\]

(2.2)
an isomorphism \( \text{Coim } a \cong \text{Im } a \), and a longer exact sequence

\[
0 \to \text{Ker } a \overset{\alpha}{\to} A \overset{\sigma}{\to} B \overset{\eta}{\to} \text{Coker } a \to 0.
\]

(2.3)

By Prop. 2.1, \( \beta \alpha = 0 \) implies that \( \beta \) factors uniquely through \( \alpha \) as \( \beta = \beta' \alpha \). Dually, if some \( \gamma : A' \to A \) has \( \gamma y = 0 \), then \( \gamma \) factors through \( j \) as \( \gamma = j \gamma' \) for a unique \( \gamma' : A' \to \text{Ker } a \). This property characterizes \( j : \text{Ker } a + A \) up to an isomorphism of \( \text{Ker } a \). Observe the dual statements: \( a \) is a monomorphism if and only if \( \text{Ker } a = 0 \), and is an epimorphism if and only if \( \text{Coker } a = 0 \). This duality will be discussed in §8.

If \( a : A \to B \) and \( S \subset A \), the set \( aS \) of all elements \( a \) \( s \) for \( s \in S \) is a submodule of \( B \) called the image of \( S \) under \( a \). Similarly, if \( T \subset B \), the set \( a^{-1}T \) of all \( s \in A \) with \( a \) \( s \) \( T \) is a submodule of \( A \), called the (complete)
inverse image of $T$. In particular, $\text{Ker } a = \alpha^{-1}0$, where $0$ denotes the submodule of $B$ consisting only of the zero element.

For $K \lhd S \lhd A$ the module $S/K$ is called a subquotient of $A$; it is a quotient module of the submodule $S$ of $A$, and simultaneously a submodule of the quotient module $A/K$. Furthermore, if $K \lhd K' \lhd S' \lhd A$, then $K'/K$ is a submodule of $S'/K$ and the composite projection $S' \to S'/K \to (S'/K)/(K'/K)$ has kernel $K'$, hence the familiar isomorphism $(S'/K)/(K'/K) \cong S'/K'$. This allows us to write each subquotient $(S'/K)/(K'/K)$ of a subquotient $S/K$ directly as a subquotient of $A$.

Let $S/K$ be a subquotient of $A$, $S'/K'$ one of $A'$. If $a: A \to A'$ has $aS \lhd S'$ and $aK \lhd K'$, then $as + K'$ is a coset of $S'/K'$ uniquely determined by the coset $s + K$ of $S/K$. Hence $a$, $(s + K) \mapsto as + K'$ defines a homomorphism

$$a_\ast: S/K \to S'/K' \quad (aS \lhd S', aK \lhd K') \quad (2.4)$$

called the homomorphism induced by $a$ on the given subquotients.

If $S$ and $T$ are submodules of $A$, their intersection $S \cap T$ (as sets) is also a submodule, as is their union $S \cup T$, consisting of all sums $s + t$ for $s \in S$, $t \in T$. The Noether isomorphism theorem asserts that $1_A$ induces an isomorphism

$$1_\ast: S/(S \cap T) \cong (S \cup T)/T. \quad (2.5)$$

3. Diagrams

The diagram of $R$-modules and homomorphisms

$$
\begin{array}{c}
0 \to A \xrightarrow{\alpha} B \xrightarrow{\beta} C \to 0 \\
\downarrow{\alpha} \quad \downarrow{\beta} \quad \downarrow{\gamma} \\
0 \to A' \xrightarrow{\alpha'} B' \xrightarrow{\beta'} C' \to 0
\end{array}
$$

(3.1)
is said to be commutative if $\alpha' \alpha = \beta \alpha : A \to B'$ (left square commutative!) and $\alpha' \beta = \gamma \beta : B \to C'$ (right square commutative!). In general, a diagram of homomorphisms is commutative if any two paths along directed arrows from one module to another module yield the same composite homomorphism.

Lemma 3.1. (The Short Five Lemma.) If the commutative diagram (3.1) of $R$-modules has both rows exact, then

(i) If $a$ and $\gamma$ are isomorphisms, so is $\beta$;
(ii) If $a$ and $\gamma$ are monomorphisms, so is $\beta$;
(iii) If $a$ and $\gamma$ are epimorphisms, so is $\beta$.

The same conclusions hold for a diagram of (not necessarily abelian) groups.
Chapter I. Modules, Diagrams, and Functors

**Proof.** Clearly (ii) and (iii) together yield (i). To prove (ii), take \( b \in \text{Ker} \beta \). The right square is commutative, so \( yab = \sigma' \beta b = 0 \); as \( y \) is a monomorphism, this means that \( ab = 0 \). Since the top row is exact, there is an element \( a \) with \( xa = b \). Now the left square is commutative, so \( x'aa = \beta xa = \beta b = 0 \). But the bottom row is exact at \( A' \), so \( aa = 0 \). Since \( a \) is a monomorphism, \( a = 0 \), and hence \( b = xa = 0 \). This proves \( \beta \) a monomorphism.

To prove (iii), consider any \( b' \) in \( B' \). Since \( y \) is an epimorphism there is a \( c \in C \) with \( yc = \sigma' b' \); since the top row is exact, there is a \( b \in B \) with \( ab = c \). Then \( a'(\beta b - b') = 0 \) in \( C' \). The exactness of the bottom row yields an \( a' \in A' \) with \( x'a' = \beta b - b' \). Since \( a \) is an epimorphism, there is an \( a \in A \) with \( x'aa = a' \) and hence with \( \beta xa = \nu' \alpha a = \beta b - b' \). Then \( b' = \beta(b - xa) \) is in the image of \( \beta \), q.e.d.

This type of proof is called "diagram chasing". Inspection shows that the chase succeeds just as well if the groups are non-abelian (multiplicative) groups.

By the same method, the reader should verify the following more general results (as formulated by J. Leicht):

**Lemma 3.2. (The Strong Four Lemma.)** Let a commutative diagram

\[
\begin{array}{cccccc}
\rightarrow & \rightarrow & \rightarrow & \rightarrow & \rightarrow \\
\downarrow \tau & \downarrow \alpha & \downarrow \beta & \downarrow \nu \\
\rightarrow & \rightarrow & \rightarrow & \rightarrow & \rightarrow \\
\end{array}
\]  

have exact rows, \( \tau \) an epimorphism, and \( \nu \) a monomorphism. Then

\[
\text{Ker} \beta = \xi (\text{Ker} \alpha), \quad \text{Im} \alpha = \eta^{-1} (\text{Im} \beta).
\]

Here the dots in the diagram stand for modules or for not necessarily abelian groups.

A simpler version (the Weak Four Lemma) states, for the same commutative diagram with exact rows, that \( \beta \) is a monomorphism if \( \alpha \) and \( \nu \) are monomorphisms and \( \tau \) an epimorphism, while \( \alpha \) is an epimorphism if \( \tau \) and \( \beta \) are epimorphisms and \( \nu \) a monomorphism. A more frequently used consequence is

**Lemma 3.3. (The Five Lemma.)** Let a commutative diagram

\[
\begin{array}{cccccccc}
\rightarrow & \rightarrow & \rightarrow & \rightarrow & \rightarrow & \rightarrow & \rightarrow & \rightarrow \\
\downarrow \alpha_1 & \downarrow \alpha_2 & \downarrow \alpha_3 & \downarrow \alpha_4 & \downarrow \alpha_5 & \downarrow \alpha_6 & \downarrow \alpha_7 & \downarrow \alpha_8 \\
\rightarrow & \rightarrow & \rightarrow & \rightarrow & \rightarrow & \rightarrow & \rightarrow & \rightarrow \\
\end{array}
\]  

have exact rows. If \( \alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3, \alpha_4 \) are isomorphisms, so is \( \alpha_5 \). In more detail,

(i) If \( \alpha_1 \) is an epimorphism and \( \alpha \) and \( \alpha \) monomorphisms, then \( \alpha_3 \) is a monomorphism.
(ii) If \( a \) is a monomorphism and \( a \) and \( a \) are epimorphisms, then \( x_3 \) is an epimorphism.

**Proof.** Chase the diagram, or apply Lemma 3.2 twice to the left-hand and right-hand portions.

### 4. Direct Sums

The external direct sum \( A_1 \oplus A_2 \) of two \( R \)-modules \( A_1 \) and \( A_2 \), is the \( R \)-module consisting of all ordered pairs \( (a_1, a_2) \), for \( a_i \in A_i \), with module operations defined by

\[
(a_1, a_2) + (a'_1, a'_2) = (a_1 + a'_1, a_2 + a'_2), \quad r(a_1, a_2) = (ra_1, ra_2).
\]

The functions \( t \) and \( n \) defined by \( t_1 a_1 = (a_1, 0) \), \( t_2 a_2 = (0, a_2) \), \( \pi_1 (a_1, a_2) = a_1 \), \( \pi_2 (a_1, a_2) = a_2 \), are homomorphisms

\[
A_1 \xrightarrow{t_1} A_1 \oplus A_2 \xleftarrow{t_2} A_2 \xrightarrow{n_1} A
\]

which satisfy the identities

\[
\begin{align*}
\pi_1 t_1 &= 1_{A_1}, & \pi_1 t_2 &= 0, \\
\pi_2 t_1 &= 0, & \pi_2 t_2 &= 1_{A_2}, \\
\ell_1 \pi_1 + \ell_2 \pi_2 &= 1_{A_1 \oplus A_2}.
\end{align*}
\]

Call \( t_1 \) and \( t_2 \) the injections and \( \pi_1, \pi_2 \) the projections of the direct sum. The diagram (4.1) contains partial diagrams, to wit:

- **Injective direct sum diagram**: \( A \xrightarrow{t_1} A_1 \oplus A_2 \xleftarrow{t_2} A \)
- **Projective direct sum diagram**: \( A_1 \xrightarrow{\pi_1} A_1 \oplus A_2 \xrightarrow{\pi_2} A \)
- **One-sided direct sum diagram**: \( A_1 \oplus A_2 \xrightarrow{\pi_1} A \)
- **Sequential direct sum diagram**: \( A_1 \xrightarrow{t_1} A_1 \oplus A_2 \xrightarrow{\pi_2} A \)

in particular, the last diagram is a short exact sequence. Instead of defining the direct sum via elements, we can characterize each of these diagrams by conceptual properties. With a view to later generalizations (Chap. IX), our proofs of these properties will be so cast as to use only the diagram (4.1), the identities (4.2), and formal properties of the addition and composition of homomorphisms; in particular, the distributive laws

\[
\beta (a_1 + a_2) = \beta a_1 + \beta a_2 \quad \text{and} \quad (a_1 + a_2) \gamma = a_1 \gamma + a_2 \gamma.
\]

**Proposition 4.1.** For given modules \( A \), \( A \), any diagram

\[
A_1 \xrightarrow{t_1} B \xleftarrow{t_2} A_2
\]

of the form (4.1) and satisfying the five identities like (4.2) is isomorphic to the direct sum diagram. In more detail, there is exactly one isomorphism
\( \theta : B \to A_1 \bigoplus A_2 \), such that
\[
\pi_j \theta = \pi_j' \quad \theta \iota_j = \iota_j \quad \text{for } j = 1, 2.
\] (4.3)

**Proof.** Define \( \delta \) as \( \delta = \iota_1 \pi_1' + \iota_2 \pi_2' \) and the analogue \( \delta' : A_1 \bigoplus A_2 \to B \) by \( \delta' = \iota_1 \pi_1 + \iota_2 \pi_2 \). The identities (4.2) show that \( \delta' \) is a two-sided inverse for \( \delta \) and thus that \( \delta \) is an isomorphism; the properties (4.3) follow directly from (4.2). Also if \( \theta \) satisfies (4.3), then \( \theta = (\iota_1 \pi_1 + \iota_2 \pi_2) \theta = \iota_1 \pi_1' + \iota_2 \pi_2' \), so \( \theta \) is indeed uniquely determined.

Next we characterize the one-sided direct sum diagram.

**Proposition 4.2.** Any diagram \( A_2 \xleftarrow{\iota'} B \xrightarrow{\pi''} A_2 \) with \( \pi'' \iota'' = 1_{A_2} \) is isomorphic to a "one-sided" direct sum diagram \( A_1 \bigoplus A_2 \to A_2 \) with \( A_1 = \text{Kern} '' \).

The proof requires an isomorphism \( \theta : B \to A_1 \bigoplus A_2 \) with \( \theta \iota'' = \iota_2 \), \( \pi_2 \delta = \pi'' \). Define \( \theta \) by \( \theta b = (b - \iota'' \pi'' b, \pi'' b) \) and \( \theta^{-1} (a_1, a_2) = a_1 + \iota'' a_2 \).

To prove this without using elements, consider the diagram
\[
\text{Ker} \pi'' \xhookrightarrow{\iota'} B \xleftarrow{\pi''} A_2,
\]
with \( \iota' \) the injection. Since \( \pi'' (1_B - \iota'' \pi'') = 0 \), \( 1_B - \iota'' \pi'' \) factors through \( \iota' \) as \( 1_B - \iota'' \pi'' = \iota' \pi' \) for some \( n' : B \to \text{Ker} \pi'' \). Now \( \pi'' \iota' = 0 \) and \( \iota' \pi' \iota' = \iota' \) give \( \pi' \iota' = 1 \), so we have identities like (4.2) and can apply Prop. 4.1.

Now write the direct sum as a short exact sequence \( (\iota_1, \pi_2) \). Here \( \iota_2 \) is a right inverse of \( \pi_2 \), while \( \pi_1 \iota_1 = 1 \) shows \( \pi_1 \) a left inverse of \( \iota_1 \).

**Proposition 4.3.** The following properties of a short exact sequence \( (i', n'') \): \( A \Rightarrow B \Rightarrow A_2 \) are equivalent:

(i) \( \pi'' \) has a right inverse \( \iota'' : A_2 \to B \), with \( \pi'' \iota'' = 1 \);

(ii) \( \iota' \) has a left inverse \( \pi' : B \to A_1 \), with \( \pi' \iota' = 1 \);

(iii) The sequence is isomorphic (with identities on \( A \), and \( A_2 \)) to
\[
0 \to A_1 \xrightarrow{i_1} A_1 \bigoplus A_2 \xrightarrow{\pi_1} A_2 \to 0.
\]

A short exact sequence with one (and hence all) of these properties is said to split (some authors say instead that the sequence is inessential).

**Proof.** We just observed that (iii) implies (i) and (ii). Conversely, exactness shows that \( \iota' \) gives the isomorphism \( A_1 \cong \text{Ker} \pi'' \), so (i) implies (iii) by Prop. 4.2. Similarly, (ii) implies (iii).

Now consider pairs of coterminal homomorphisms \( \alpha_1, \alpha_2 \), as in the diagram
\[
D : A_1 \xrightarrow{\alpha_1} B \xleftarrow{\alpha_2} A_2.
\] (4.4)

Such a diagram is said to be universal with ends \( A \), and \( A_2 \), if to every diagram \( D' : A_1 \to B \to A_2 \) with the same ends there exists a unique
homomorphism of $D$ to $D'$ which is the identity on each $A_i$. In other words, $D$ is universal if to each rectangular diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
A_1 & \xrightarrow{\alpha_1} & B \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
A_1 & \xrightarrow{\alpha_1'} & B',
\end{array}
$$

(4.5)

with $D$ as first row and end maps the identities, there is a unique way of inserting the middle dotted arrow so that the whole diagram becomes commutative ($\beta\alpha_1 = \alpha_1'$, $\beta\alpha_2 = \alpha_2'$).

**Proposition 4.4.** The (injective) direct sum diagram $A_1 \rightarrow A_1 \oplus A_2 \leftarrow A_2$ is universal with ends $A_1$ and $A_2$. Conversely, any diagram (4.4) which is universal with ends $A_j$ is isomorphic to this direct sum diagram (with identities on $A_1$ and $A_2$).

**Proof.** To show $A_1 \oplus A_2$, universal, define the homomorphism $\beta$ needed for (4.5) as $\beta(a_1, a_2) = \alpha_1' a_1 + \alpha_2' a_2$; that is, as $\beta = \alpha_1' \pi_1 + \alpha_2' \pi_2$; this is the only choice for $\beta$. To prove the converse, it will suffice to show that any two diagrams universal with ends $A_1$ and $A_2$ are isomorphic (with identities on $A_j$). Suppose then that both rows in (4.5) are universal. Since the top row is universal, there is a $p: B \rightarrow B'$ with $p \pi_i = \pi_i'$; since the bottom row is universal, there is a $\pi': B' \rightarrow B$ with $\pi' \pi_j = \pi_j$. Then $(\pi' p)\pi_i = \pi_i$, for $j = 1, 2$. Since also $1_B \pi_i = \pi_i$, the uniqueness property for the top row gives $\pi' p = 1_B$. Similarly the uniqueness for the bottom row gives $1_B = \pi' p$. Hence $\beta$ and $\beta'$ are mutually inverse isomorphisms. q.e.d

Since the universal diagram is unique up to an isomorphism, it follows that the maps $\alpha_i$ in any universal diagram with ends $A_1$ and $A_2$ are always monomorphisms, since they are such for the external direct sum diagram.

Notice that the proof of the converse part of the proposition did not use elements of the modules, but only formal arguments with homomorphisms. This proof is thus valid in any category, in the sense soon (§ 7) to be explained.

Dually, a pair of coinitial maps forming a diagram $D: A_1 \leftarrow C \rightarrow A_2$, is couniversal with ends $A_1$ and $A_2$, if to each rectangular diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
A_1 & \xleftarrow{\gamma_1} & C \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
A_1 & \xleftarrow{\gamma_1'} & C',
\end{array}
$$

(4.6)

with $D$ as first row and with vertical maps $1$ on each $A_j$, there is a unique way of inserting the middle dotted arrow to make the diagram commutative. The reader should prove

Mac Lane, Homology
Proposition 4.5. The (projective) direct sum diagram

\[ A_1 \leftarrow A_1 \oplus A_2 \rightarrow A_2 \]

is couniversal with ends \( A, \) and \( A, \). Conversely, any diagram couniversal with ends \( A, \) and \( A, \) is isomorphic (identities on each \( A_i \)) to this diagram.

Direct sums of more than two modules work similarly. For example, in a direct sum \( A_1 \oplus A_2 \oplus A_3 \) an element may be regarded as an ordered triple \( (a_1, a_2, a_3) \) or as a function \( a \) on the set \( \{1, 2, 3\} \) of indices with a \((i) \in A_i\). In general, given a family of modules \( \{A_i\} \) indexed by an arbitrary set \( T \), the cartesian product \( \prod_i A_i \) is the set of all those functions \( f \) on \( T \) to the union of the sets \( A_i \), for which \( f(t) \in A_i \), for each \( t \). Define the module operations "termwise"; that is, define the functions \( f + f' \) and \( rf \) for \( r \in R \) by

\[
(f + f')(t) = f(t) + f'(t), \quad (rf)(t) = (f(t)), \quad t \in T.
\]

Then \( \prod_i A_i \) is an \( R \)-module. The homomorphisms \( \pi_i: \prod_i A_i \rightarrow A \) defined by \( \pi_i f = f(t) \) are called the projections of the cartesian product.

For given \( A, \) let \( \{\gamma_i: B \rightarrow A_i\} \) be a diagram with one additional module \( B \) and one homomorphism \( \gamma_i \) for each \( t \in T \). This diagram is couniversal with ends \( A, \) if to each diagram \( \{\gamma_i': B' \rightarrow A_i\} \) \( t \in T \) there exists a unique \( \beta: B' \rightarrow B \) such that \( \gamma_i' = \gamma_i \beta \) for all \( t \). The projections of the cartesian product \( \prod_i A_i \), yield such a couniversal diagram, and any two such diagrams are isomorphic, as before.

The external direct sum \( \sum_i A_i \) of the same modules \( A_i \) is that submodule of \( \prod_i A_i \) which consists of all those functions \( f \) with but a finite number of non-zero values. The homomorphisms \( \iota_i: A_i \rightarrow \sum_i A_i \) are defined for each \( a \in A_i \) by letting \( \iota_i(a) \) be the function on \( T \) with \([\iota_i(a)](t) = a, \quad [\iota_i(a)](s) = 0 \) for \( s \neq t \). These homomorphisms are called the injections of the direct sum. As in the case of two summands, the diagram \( \{\iota_i: A_i \rightarrow \sum_i A_i\} \) is universal for given ends \( A, \) and is determined up to isomorphism by this fact.

For a finite number of summands the external direct sum is identical with the cartesian product. This implies that any finite universal diagram \( \alpha_j: A_i \rightarrow B, \) for \( j = 1, \ldots, n \), yields a couniversal diagram \( \{\gamma_j: B \rightarrow A_i\} \). More explicitly, each \( \gamma_j \) is that map which is uniquely determined (since \( B \) is universal) by the conditions \( \gamma_j \alpha_j = 1_{A_i}, \gamma_j \alpha_k = 0 \) for \( j \neq k \). Dually, the reader should obtain a universal diagram from the couniversal one.

Direct sums may be treated in terms of submodules. If \( S, \) is any family of submodules of \( B \) indexed by a set \( T \), their union \( U S \), is the set of all finite sums \( s_1 + \ldots + s_n \) with each \( s_i \) in some \( S_i \); it is a submodule of \( B \) containing all the \( S_i \) and contained in any submodule which contains all the \( S \). Their intersection \( \cap S_i \) is the intersection of the sets \( S_i \).
it is a submodule of $B$ contained in all the $S_t$ which contains every submodule contained in every $S_t$. We also write $S_1 \cup S_2$ or $S_1 \cap S_2$ for the union or intersection of two submodules $S_1, S_2$.

**Proposition 4.6.** For submodules $S_t \subseteq B, t \in T$, the following conditions are equivalent:

1. The diagram $\{j_t: S_t \to B, j_t\}$, $j_t$ the injection, is universal for ends $S_t$.
2. $B = \bigcup S_t$ and, for each $t_0 \in T$, $S_{t_0} \cap \bigcup_{t \neq t_0} S_t = 0$.

**Proof.** Given (i), $B$ is isomorphic to $\sum S_t$, which satisfies (ii). Conversely, given (ii), the condition $B = \bigcup S_t$ states that each $b \neq 0$ can be written as a finite sum $b = s_1 + \ldots + s_n$ of elements $s_i \neq 0$ belonging to different submodules $S_{t_i}, i = 1, \ldots, n$; the second condition of (ii) states that this representation is unique. For any other diagram $\{a_t: S_t \to B'\}$ the homomorphism $\beta: B \to B'$ defined by $\beta(s_1 + \ldots + s_n) = \xi_1 s_1 + \ldots + \xi_n s_n$ is the unique homomorphism with $\beta j_t = a_t$; hence the universality.

When these conditions hold, $B$ is called the **internal direct sum** of its submodules $S_t$. Therefore an internal direct sum is isomorphic to the external direct sum $\sum S_t$. In particular, $B$ is the internal direct sum of two submodules $S_1$ and $S_2$ if and only if $S_1 \cap S_2 = 0$ and $S_1 \cup S_2 = B$; these conditions imply $B \cong S_1 \oplus S_2$.

**Exercises**

1. Show that a diagram (4.1) with $\pi_1 \xi_1 = 1, \pi_2 \xi_2 = 1, \xi_1 \xi_2 = 0, \text{and } (\xi_1, \pi_n)$ exact is a direct sum diagram.

2. If $a: A \to A$ satisfies $a^2 = a$, then $A$ is the direct sum of $\ker a$ and $\text{Im} a$.

3. Show that the diagram $\{a_t: A_t \to B, t \in T\}$ is universal for given ends $A_t$ if and only if (i) $B$ is the union of its submodules $\alpha_2 A_t$; (ii) there are homomorphisms $\pi_t: B \to A_t$ for $t \in T$ with $\pi_t \alpha_t = 1$ and $\pi_s \alpha_t = 0$ for $s \neq t$.

4. State and prove the dual of Prop. 4.6. (The dual of a submodule is a quotient module.)

5. If $a_{ij}: A_i \to A_j$ for $i, j = 1, 2$, show that there is a unique $\omega: A_1 \oplus A_2 \to A'_1 \oplus A'_2$ with $\pi_i^\prime \omega \xi_i = \xi_i^\prime$ for $i, j = 1, 2$.

**5. Free and Projective Modules**

The ring $R$, as a left $R$-module, has the following characteristic property. If $a$ is any element of an $R$-module $A$, there is a unique $R$-module homomorphism $\mu_a: R \to A$ with $\mu_a(1) = a$; namely, the function $\mu_a$ with $\mu_a(r) = ra$.

A free left $R$-module is any direct sum of isomorphic copies of the left $R$-module $R$. In view of the above property of $R$, we can say more explicitly that the left $R$-module $F$ is **free on a subset $T$** of its elements if the homomorphisms $\mu_t: R \to F$ with $\mu_t(r) = rt$ form a universal diagram with ends $R$ (one for each $t$). As each homomorphism $v: R \to A$ is uniquely determined by $v(1) \in A$, this universal property can be restated as follows.

---

2*
Proposition 5.1. The module $F$ is free on a subset $T \subset F$ if and only if to each module $A$ and each set function $g$ on $T$ to $A$ there is a unique module homomorphism $\mu : F \to A$ with $\mu(t) = g(t)$ for every $t$.

The isomorphism of internal and external direct sums gives.

Proposition 5.2. The module $F$ is free on a subset $T \subset F$ if and only if each element of $F$ can be represented uniquely as a sum $\sum r_i t$ with coefficients $r_i \in R$ which are almost all zero (i.e., all but a finite number are zero).

A module $F$ free on $T$ is determined up to isomorphism by $T$. Given $R$ and any set $T$, we may construct an $R$-module free on $T$ as $F = \sum_i R t_i$, where $R t_i$ is the set of all $r t_i$ for $r \in R$, with the obvious module structure.

The left module $A$ is generated by a subset $U$ of its elements if $A$ is the only submodule of $A$ containing all $u \in U$; that is, if every element of $A$ can be written as a finite sum $\sum r_i u_i$ with each $r_i \in R$. A module free on $T$ is generated by $T$.

Proposition 5.3. Every $R$-module is isomorphic to a quotient of a free module.

Proof. Given the module $A$, take a subset $U$ generating $A$ (e.g., take $U = A$). Form a free module $F$ on $U$ and the map $\mu : F \to A$ with $\mu(u) = u \in A$. Since $U$ generates $A$, $\mu$ is an epimorphism, so $A \cong F/(\text{Ker} \mu)$.

A module $A$ is finitely generated (or, of finite type) if it is generated by a finite subset; that is, if it is isomorphic to a quotient module of a finite direct sum $R \oplus \cdots \oplus R$. A module $C$ is cyclic (or monogenic) if it is generated by one element; then $C \cong R/L$, where $L$ is a submodule of $R$ (i.e., $L$ is a left ideal in $R$). The main theorem of elementary divisor theory asserts that if $R$ is a commutative integral domain in which every ideal is principal (i.e., monogenic), then any finitely generated $R$-module is isomorphic to a direct sum of cyclic modules. In particular ($R = \mathbb{Z}$) any finitely generated abelian group is a direct sum of cyclic groups.

A module $P$ is called projective if in each diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
B & \xrightarrow{\alpha} & C \\
\downarrow{\gamma} & & \\
\cdots & \xrightarrow{P} & \cdots \\
\end{array}
\]

with $\alpha$ an epimorphism, the dotted arrow can be filled in to make the diagram commutative. In other words, given an epimorphism $\sigma : B \to C$, each map $y : P \to C$ can be lifted to a $\beta : P \to B$ such that $\sigma \beta = y$.

Lemma 5.4. Every free module is projective.

Proof. Let $F$ be free on generators $t$. Since $a B = C$, we can choose for each $t$ an element $b_t \in B$ such that $a b_t = \gamma t$. Then the unique $\beta : F \to B$ with $\beta t = b_t$ for each $t$ lifts $\gamma$, as desired.
Projective modules will be repeatedly used. Note that a projective module need not be free. For example, take $R = \mathbb{Z} \oplus \mathbb{Z}$, the direct sum of the ring $\mathbb{Z}$ of integers with itself (with product $(m,n)(m',n') = (mm', nn')$). Then the first summand $\mathbb{Z}$, as submodule of an $R$-module, is an $R$-module. It is clearly not free, but is projective according to Proposition 5.5.

**Proposition 5.5.** An $R$-module $P$ is projective if and only if it is a direct summand of a free $R$-module.

**Proof.** Suppose first that $n : F = P \oplus Q \to P$ with $F$ free. Given any diagram (5.4), $\gamma : F \to C$ lifts to $\beta : F + B$ with $\sigma \beta = \gamma \pi$. The injection $\iota : P \to P \oplus Q$ has $\alpha \beta \gamma \iota = y \iota \gamma$, so $y$ lifts to $\beta \iota$ and $P$ is therefore projective.

Conversely, if $P$ is projective, Prop. 5.3 gives an epimorphism $\varphi : F \to P$ with $F$ free. Lift $1_P : P \to P$ to $\beta : P + F$ with $\varphi \beta = 1$. By Prop. 4.2, $F$ is the direct sum of $\beta P \cong P$ and $\ker \varphi$.

Any subgroup of a free abelian group is free; hence every projective 2-module is free.

**Exercises**

1. Show that a direct summand of a projective module is projective.
2. For $m, n$ relatively prime, show $\mathbb{Z}_m$ projective (but not free) over the ring $\mathbb{Z}_{mn}$ of integers modulo $mn$.
3. Prove: Any direct sum of projective modules is projective.

### 6. The Functor $\text{Hom}$

Let $A$ and $B$ be $R$-modules. The set

$$\text{Hom}_R(A, B) = \{f : A \to B\}$$

of all $R$-module homomorphisms $f$ of $A$ into $B$ is an abelian group, under the addition defined for $f, g : A \to B$ by $(f + g) a = fa + ga$. If $A = B$, $\text{Hom}_R(A, A)$ is a ring under addition and composition of homomorphisms; this ring is called the ring of $R$-endomorphisms of $A$. In case the ring $R$ is commutative, $\text{Hom}_R(A, B)$ may be regarded not just as a group but as an $R$-module, when $tf : A + B$ is defined for $t \in R$ and $f : A \to B$ by $(tf)(a) = t(fa)$ for all $a \in A$. That $tf$ is still an $R$-module homomorphism follows from the calculation

$$(tf)(ra) = t(fra) = tr(fa) = rt(fa) = r(tf)a$$

which uses the commutativity of $R$.

This group $\text{Hom}$ occurs frequently. If $R$ is a field, $\text{Hom}_R(A, B)$ is the vector space of all linear transformations of the vector space $A$ into the vector space $B$. If $G$ is an abelian group, and $P$ the additive group of real numbers, modulo 1, both $G$ and $P$ can be regarded as 2-modules,
and $\text{Hom}_Z(G,P)$ is the character group of G. If $\varphi: R \to \text{Hom}_Z(G,G)$ is any ring homomorphism, then the abelian group G becomes an $R$-module with left operators $rg = \varphi(r)g$. All left R-modules can be so obtained from such a G and $\varphi$.

Consider the effect of a fixed module homomorphism $\beta: B \to B'$ on $\text{Hom}_R(A,B)$. Each $f: A \to B$ determines a composite $\beta f: A \to B'$, and $\beta(f + g) = \beta f + \beta g$. Hence the correspondence $f \mapsto \beta f$ is a homomorphism

$$\beta_*: \text{Hom}_R(A,B) \to \text{Hom}_R(A,B')$$

(6.1)
of abelian groups, called the homomorphism "induced" by $\beta$. Explicitly, $\beta_* f = \beta \circ f$. If $\beta$ is an identity, so is $\beta_* f$; if $\beta$ is a composite, so is $\beta_* f$; in detail

$$(1_R)_* = 1_{\text{Hom}(A,B)}^\ast, \quad (\beta \beta')_* = \beta_* \beta'^\ast,$$

(6.2)
the latter whenever the composite $\beta \beta'$ is defined. We summarize (6.1) and (6.2) by the phrase: $\text{Hom}_R(A,B)$ is a "covariant functor" of B (general definition in §8).

For the first argument $A$ a reverse in direction occurs. For a fixed module homomorphism $a: A \to A'$, each $f': A' \to B$ determines a composite $f a: A \to B$ with $(f' + g')a = f'a + g'a$. Hence $a^* f' = f' a$ defines an "induced" homomorphism

$$a_*: \text{Hom}_R(A',B) \to \text{Hom}_R(A,B)$$

(6.3)
of abelian groups. Again $(1_A)^*$ is an identity map. If $\alpha: A \to A'$ and $a': A' \to A''$, the composite $a' a$ is defined, and the induced maps are

$$\text{Hom}_R(A'',B) \xrightarrow{\alpha^*} \text{Hom}_R(A',B) \xrightarrow{a^*} \text{Hom}_R(A,B);$$

one shows that $\alpha^* a^* = (a' \alpha)^*$. This reversal of order generalizes the fact that the transpose of the product of two matrices is the product of their transposes in opposite order. Because of this reversal we shall say that $\text{Hom}_R(A,B)$, for B fixed, is a contravariant functor of A.

Now vary both $A$ and B. Given $a: A \to A'$ and $\beta: B \to B'$, each $f: A' \to B$ determines a composite $\beta f a: A \to B'$; the correspondence $f \mapsto \beta f a$ is a homomorphism

$$\text{Hom}(a,\beta): \text{Hom}(A',B) \to \text{Hom}(A,B')$$
of abelian groups, with $a^* \beta_* = \text{Hom}(a,\beta) = \beta_* a^*$. It has the properties

$$\text{Hom}(1,1') = \text{the identity,}$$

$$\text{Hom}(aa',\beta\beta') = \text{Hom}(a',\beta) \text{ Hom}(a,\beta');$$

whenever the composites $aa'$ and $\beta \beta'$ are defined. We say that $\text{Hom}$ is a functor in two variables, contravariant in the first and covariant in the second, from R-modules to groups.
6. The Functor $\text{Hom}$

If $a_1$, $a_2 : A \to A'$ are two homomorphisms one shows that
\[ \text{Hom}(a_1 + a_2, \beta) = \text{Hom}(a_1, \beta) + \text{Hom}(a_2, \beta). \]  
(6.4)

Similarly, $\text{Hom}(a \cdot B_1 + \beta_2) = \text{Hom}(a, \beta_1) + \text{Hom}(a, \beta_2)$. These two properties state that $\text{Hom}$ is an "additive" functor.

For $B$ fixed, apply $\text{Hom}(\_, B)$ to a direct sum diagram (4.1). The result
\[ \text{Hom}(A, B) \overset{\iota_1}{\to} \text{Hom}(A \oplus A, B) \overset{\pi_1}{\to} \text{Hom}(A_1, B), \] changes injections $\iota_1$ to projections $\iota_1^\ast$, but by (6.4) still satisfies the identities (4.2) for a direct sum diagram. Similarly, for $A$ fixed, a direct sum diagram on modules $B_1$ and $B_2$ is carried by $\text{Hom}(A, \_)$ to a direct sum diagram (injections to injections). Thus
\[ \text{Hom}(A_1 \oplus A_2, B) \cong \text{Hom}(A_1, B) \oplus \text{Hom}(A_2, B), \]
\[ \text{Hom}(A, B_1 \oplus B_2) \cong \text{Hom}(A, B_1) \oplus \text{Hom}(A, B_2). \]  
(6.5)

In particular, $\text{Hom}(A, B_1) \to \text{Hom}(A, B_1 \oplus B_2) \to \text{Hom}(A, B_2)$ is exact.

**Theorem 6.1.** For any module $D$ and any sequence $0 \to A \xrightarrow{\alpha} B \xrightarrow{\beta} L$ exact at $A$ and $B$ the induced sequence
\[ 0 \to \text{Hom}_R(D, A) \xrightarrow{\alpha^*} \text{Hom}_R(D, B) \xrightarrow{\beta^*} \text{Hom}_R(D, L) \]  
(6.6)

of abelian groups is exact.

**Proof.** To show $\alpha^*$ a monomorphism, consider any $f : D \to A$ with $\alpha^* f = 0$. For each $d \in D$, $\alpha^* f(d) = \alpha f(d) = 0$; since $\alpha$ is a monomorphism, each $f(d) = 0$, so $f = 0$, and therefore $\alpha^*$ is a monomorphism. Clearly, $\beta^* \alpha^* = (\beta \alpha)^* = 0^* = 0$, so $\text{Im} \alpha^* \subseteq \text{Ker} \beta^*$. For the converse inclusion, consider $g : D + B$ with $\beta^* g = 0$. Then $\beta g(d) = 0$ for each $d$. But $\text{Ker} \beta = \text{Ker} \alpha$, by the given exactness, so there is a unique $a \in A$ with $\alpha a = g d$. Then $fd = a$ defines a homomorphism $f : D + A$ with $\alpha^* f = g$. Thus $\text{Im} \alpha^* \supseteq \text{Ker} \beta^*$, which completes the proof of exactness.

By a corresponding argument, the reader should prove

**Theorem 6.2.** If $M \xrightarrow{\alpha} B \xrightarrow{\beta} C \to 0$ is exact, and $D$ is any module, the induced sequence
\[ 0 \to \text{Hom}_R(C, D) \xrightarrow{\alpha^*} \text{Hom}_R(B, D) \xrightarrow{\beta^*} \text{Hom}_R(M, D) \]  
(6.7)

is exact.

A sequence $M \to B \to C \to 0$ exact at $B$ and $C$ is called a short right exact sequence. This theorem states that the functor $\text{Hom}_R(\_, D)$ for fixed $D$ turns each short right exact sequence into a short left exact sequence; by the previous theorem, $\text{Hom}_R(D, \_)$ carries a short left exact sequence into a short left exact sequence. If $A \to B \to C$ is a short exact
sequence, we wish to have exact sequences
\[
0 \to \text{Hom}_R(D, A) \to \text{Hom}_R(D, B) \to \text{Hom}_R(D, C) \to ?, \quad (6.6')
\]
\[
0 \to \text{Hom}_R(C, D) \to \text{Hom}_R(B, D) \to \text{Hom}_R(A, D) \to ?. \quad (6.7')
\]
By the two theorems above, each is exact except perhaps at the right end. With 0 for ? on the right, these would not usually be exact. For example, exactness of (6.6') at \( \text{Hom}_R(D, C) \) would assert that each map \( h : D \to C \) has the form \( h = \sigma h' \) for some \( h' : D \to B \); i.e., that each map into the quotient \( C = B/\mathcal{A} \) could be lifted to a map \( h' \) into \( B \) (as would be possible if \( D \) were projective). To see that this need not be so, take \( R = \mathbb{Z} \) and \( D = \mathbb{Z}_m \), the cyclic group of order \( m \). For the short exact sequence \( \mathbb{Z} \to \mathbb{Z} \to \mathbb{Z}_m \), with first map \( \alpha \) the operation of multiplication by \( m \), the sequence (6.6') becomes \( 0 \to 0 \to \text{Hom}(\mathbb{Z}_m, \mathbb{Z}_m) \to 0 \), and is manifestly inexact. Similarly, (6.7') can be inexact with a zero at ?., since for \( A \subset B \) a homomorphism \( f : A \to D \) cannot in general be extended to one of \( B \) into \( D \). It will be possible to describe an object which is called the "obstruction" to the problem of extending such an \( f \). The group of these objects, placed at ? in (6.7'), will restore exactness. This construction, done for both (6.6') and (6.7'), is one of the objectives of homological algebra.

We now can formulate several characterizations of projective modules.

**Theorem 6.3.** The following properties of a module \( D \) are equivalent:

(i) \( D \) is projective,

(ii) For each epimorphism \( \alpha : B \to C, \alpha : \text{Hom}_R(D, B) \to \text{Hom}_R(D, C) \) is an epimorphism,

(iii) If \( A \to B \to C \) is a short exact sequence, so is \( 0 \to \text{Hom}_R(D, A) \to \text{Hom}_R(D, B) \to \text{Hom}_R(D, C) \to 0 \),

(iv) Every short exact sequence \( A \to B \to D \) splits.

**Proof.** In (ii) the statement that \( \alpha \) is an epimorphism means that each \( \gamma : D \to C \) can be factored as \( \gamma = \sigma \beta \); this is exactly the statement that \( D \) is projective. Given the exactness of (6.6), (ii) is equivalent to (iii). Finally, if \( D \) is projective and \( \alpha : B \to D \), the map \( 1_D : D \to D \) lifts to a \( \beta : D \to B \) with \( \alpha \beta = 1 \), so the sequence of (iv) splits. Conversely, if every such sequence ending in \( D \) splits, write \( D \) as an image \( q : F \to D \) of some free module \( F \). Since the sequence \( \text{Ker} q \to F \to D \) splits, \( D \) is a direct summand of \( F \), by Prop. 4.2, hence is projective, by Prop. 5.5.

**Exercises**

1. Any left ideal \( L \) in the ring \( R \) is an \( R \)-module, and \( L \to R \to R/L \) is exact. Suppose \( L \alpha + L \).

(i) The sequence (6.63 need not be exact with zero for ? on the right. Show this for \( D = R/L \) by proving that \( \text{Hom}_R(R/L, R) \to \text{Hom}_R(R/L, R/L) \) is not an epimorphism (1 is not an image!).
(ii) The sequence (6.7') need not be exact with zero for \( \ell \) on the right. Show this for \( D = L \) by proving that \( \text{Hom}_R(R, L) \to \text{Hom}_R(L, L) \) is not an epimorphism \( \{ \text{not an image} \} \).

2. For any set \( T \) of indices establish an isomorphism

\[
\text{Hom}_R(\sum_i A_i, B) \cong \prod_i \text{Hom}_R(A_i, B)
\]

by mapping each \( f : \sum_i A_i \to B \) into the collection of its restrictions \( f_i : A_i + B \).

3. For any set \( T \) of indices establish an isomorphism

\[
\text{Hom}_R(A, \prod_i B_i) \cong \prod_i \text{Hom}_R(A, B_i).
\]

7. Categories

A category consists of "objects" and "morphisms" which may sometimes be "composed". Formally, a category \( \mathcal{C} \) is a class of objects \( A, B, C, \ldots \) together with

(i) A family of disjoint sets \( \text{hom}(A, B) \), one for each pair of objects;

(ii) For each triple of objects \( A, B, C \) a function which assigns to \( \alpha \in \text{hom}(A, B) \) and \( \beta \in \text{hom}(B, C) \) an element \( \beta \alpha \in \text{hom}(A, C) \);

(iii) A function which assigns to each object \( A \) an element \( 1_A \in \text{hom}(A, A) \);

all subject to the two axioms:

**Associativity**: If \( \alpha \in \text{hom}(A, B) \), \( \beta \in \text{hom}(B, C) \), and \( \gamma \in \text{hom}(C, D) \), then \( \gamma (\beta \alpha) = (\gamma \beta) \alpha \).

**Identity**. If \( \alpha \in \text{hom}(A, B) \), then \( \alpha 1_A = a = 1_B \alpha \).

Write \( a : A \to B \) for \( \alpha \in \text{hom}(A, B) \) and call \( a \) a **morphism** of \( \mathcal{C} \) with **domain** \( A \) and **range** \( B \). By (ii), the composite \( \beta \alpha \) is defined if and only if range \( \alpha = \text{domain } \beta \); the triple composite \( \gamma \beta \alpha \) is associative whenever it is defined. Call a morphism \( x \) an **identity** of \( \mathcal{C} \) if both \( x \alpha = a \) whenever \( x \alpha \) is defined and \( \beta \alpha = \beta \) whenever \( \beta \alpha \) is defined. Each \( 1_A \) is an identity. Conversely, if \( \alpha \) is an identity, then \( x : A + A \) for some object \( A \), and \( x = x 1_A = 1_A \). Each identity of \( \mathcal{C} \) has the form \( 1_A \) for a unique object \( A \). In other words, the identities of \( \mathcal{C} \) determine the objects of \( \mathcal{C} \). It is possible to describe a category simply as a class of morphisms, with a composite sometimes defined and subject to suitable axioms (Ex. 3 below).

A morphism \( 8 : A \to B \) is called an **equivalence** in \( \mathcal{C} \) if there is in \( \mathcal{C} \) another morphism \( \varphi : B \to A \) such that \( \varphi 8 = 1_A \) and \( \theta \varphi = 1_B \). Then \( \varphi \) is **unique**, for if also \( \varphi' \theta = 1_A \), then \( \varphi = 1_A \varphi = \varphi' \theta \varphi = \varphi' 1_B = \varphi' \). Call \( \varphi \) the **inverse** \( \varphi = \theta^{-1} \) of the equivalence \( 8 \). The composite of two equivalences, when defined, is an equivalence.
Chapter I. Modules, Diagrams, and Functors

A (multiplicative) group \( G \) is a category with one object \( G \); let \( \text{hom}(G, G) \) be all elements of \( G \). If a set \( M \) is closed under an associative multiplication with an identity, it is likewise a category with one object and composition given by multiplication.

A more typical example of a category is the category \( \mathbf{R}-\mathbf{mod} \) of (left) modules over a fixed ring \( R \). The objects of this category are all \( R \)-modules \( A, B, C, \ldots \), the set \( \text{hom}(A, B) \) of morphisms is the set \( \text{Hom}_R(A, B) \) of all \( R \)-module homomorphisms of \( A \) to \( B \), while the composite is the usual composite of homomorphisms. The axioms of associativity and existence of identities are obviously fulfilled. This category uses the class of all \( R \)-modules. We cannot say the set of all \( R \)-modules because this set would be an illegitimate totality in the usual axioms for set theory. If one adopts the Gödel-Bernays-von Neumann axioms for set theory [Gödel 1940], one has at hand larger totalities than sets, called classes, and one can legitimately speak of the class of all modules, or of all topological spaces. With this interpretation in view, we have defined a category to be a class of objects .... We call a category small if the class of its objects is a set.

To give other examples of categories it will suffice to specify the objects and the morphisms of the category; in most cases the range and domain of the morphisms, the composite, and the identities will have their standard meanings. We list a number of examples of categories which we shall meet.

The category of topological spaces. Objects, all topological spaces; morphisms, all continuous maps \( f: X \rightarrow Y \) of one space into a second one.

The category of abelian groups. Objects, all abelian groups; morphisms, all homomorphisms of such.

The category of groups. Objects, all (not necessarily abelian) groups; morphisms, all homomorphisms of groups.

The category of sets. Objects, all sets; morphisms, all functions on a set to a set.

In the next examples \( R \) denotes a fixed ring.

The category of exact sequences of \( R \)-modules of length \( n \). Objects, all exact sequences \( S: A_1 \rightarrow A_2 \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow A_{n-1} \rightarrow A_n \); morphisms \( \Gamma: S \rightarrow S' \), all \( n \)-tuples \( \Gamma = (\gamma_1, \gamma_2, \ldots, \gamma_n) \) of module homomorphisms \( \gamma_i: A_i \rightarrow A'_i \) such that the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{c}
A_1 \rightarrow A_2 \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow A_{n-1} \rightarrow A_n \\
\downarrow \gamma_1 \downarrow \gamma_2 \downarrow \gamma_{n-1} \downarrow \gamma_n \\
A'_1 \rightarrow A'_2 \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow A'_{n-1} \rightarrow A'_n
\end{array}
\]

is commutative. If \( B = (\beta_1, \ldots, \beta_n): S' \rightarrow S'' \), the composite \( B \Gamma \) is \( (\beta_1 \gamma_1, \ldots, \beta_n \gamma_n) \).
One may also have the category of exact sequences infinite to the right or infinite to the left, or both. Another example is the category of short exact sequences $E : A \to B \to C$, with morphisms all triples $(a, \beta, y)$ of module homomorphisms for which the appropriate diagram (3.1) is commutative. It is by now amply clear how more examples can be constructed ad libitum — a category of sequences of exact sequences of...

It is also clear that a number of concepts applicable to modules will apply to the objects of any category — provided the definition of the concept makes reference not to the elements of the modules but only to modules and their homomorphisms. Thus, in any category $\mathcal{C}$, a diagram consisting of morphisms $a_t : A_t \to C$ of $\mathcal{C}$, one for each $t$ in a given set $T$, is universal for the given objects $A_t$, (or, a direct sum diagram for the $A_t$) if to each diagram $\{a_t' : A_t' \to C' | t \in T\}$ on the same $A$, there exists a unique morphism $\beta : C \to C'$ of $\mathcal{C}$ with $\beta a_t = a_t'$ for each $t \in T$. (For $T = \{1, 2\}$, this is exactly the property formulated in (4.5)). The previous uniqueness proof for the direct sum of two modules carries over verbatim to give

**Proposition 7.1.** In any category $\mathcal{C}$ let $\{a_t : A_t \to C\}$ and $\{a_t' : A_t \to C'\}$ be two direct sum diagrams for the same family $\{A_t\}$ of objects. There is then a unique equivalence $\beta : C \to C'$ of $\mathcal{C}$ with $\beta a_t = a_t'$ for every $t$.

An analogous uniqueness theorem holds for a direct product diagram, defined as a diagram $\{\gamma_t : B \to A_t | t \in T\}$ such that to each $\{\gamma'_t : B' \to A_t | t \in T\}$ there exists a unique morphism $\beta : B' \to B$ with $\gamma'_t = \gamma_t \beta$ for $t \in T$.

The definition of the direct product is exactly parallel to that for the direct sum, except that all the arrows are reversed. We say that the direct product is the "dual" of the direct sum. In general, the dual of any statement $\mathcal{S}$ (in the first order propositional calculus) about a category $\mathcal{C}$ is the statement $\mathcal{S}^*$ obtained by reversing the direction of all morphisms, replacing each composite $\alpha \beta$ of morphisms by $\beta \alpha$ and interchanging "domain" and "range". One observes at once that the dual of each axiom for a category is an axiom. It follows that the dual of a proof from these axioms of a statement $\mathcal{S}$ about categories is a proof of the dual statement $\mathcal{B}^*$. For example, the dual of Prop. 7.1 is the proposition which asserts the uniqueness (up to equivalence) of a direct product diagram with given ends. Since Prop. 7.1 has been proved from the axioms of a category, we have this dual proposition without further proof. However, a proposition $\mathcal{S}$ whose statement involves only objects and morphisms may happen to be true in a particular category although the dual statement is false. For example, in the category of all denumerable abelian groups there exists a direct sum diagram with summands any denumerable list of denumerable groups $A_1$, $A_2$, ..., $A_n$, ..., but there does not exist a direct product of the same groups (essentially because the direct
product which does exist in the category of all abelian groups is non-denumerable).

To each category one may construct an opposite category $C^{\text{op}}$. Take the objects of $C^{\text{op}}$ to be a class in 1 $\sim$ 1 correspondence $A^* \leftrightarrow A$ with the objects $A$ of $C$. Take the morphisms to be a class in 1 $\sim$ 1 correspondence $\alpha^* \leftrightarrow \alpha$ with the morphisms of $C$. Decree that $a^*: A^* \rightarrow B^*$ if and only if $a: B \rightarrow A$, and that $\alpha^* \beta^*$ is defined and is $(\beta \alpha)^*$, exactly when $\beta \alpha$ is defined. Then $C^{\text{op}}$ is a category, and any statement $G^*$ about the category $C$ is the same as the original statement $G$ about the category $C^{\text{op}}$. This, again, shows the dual $B^*$ of a provable statement $G$ provable. The 1 $\sim$ 1 function $T$ with $T(A) = A^*$ and $T(\alpha) = \alpha^*$ is an "anti-isomorphism" of $C$ to $C^{\text{op}}$, since $T(\beta \alpha) = T(\alpha)T(\beta)$.

Subsequently, we shall define a special sort of category, called an "abelian category", by requiring essentially that hom $(A, B)$ be an abelian group and that kernels and cokernels exist, as in the case of the category of modules. It turns out that many theorems about modules remain true when the modules and their homomorphisms are replaced by the objects and the morphisms of any abelian category. The interested reader may turn at once to Chaps. IX and XII.

**Exercises**

1. In the category of topological spaces, show that the disjoint union of two spaces provides a direct sum diagram, and that the cartesian product $X \times Y$ of two spaces, with its usual topology and with the natural projections on $X$ and $Y$, provides a direct product diagram.

2. Show that any two objects in the category of groups may be ends of a direct product diagram and of a direct sum diagram. (Note: The "direct sum" for not necessarily abelian groups is more often known as the "free product".)

3. Consider a class $\mathcal{M}$ of elements $a$, $\beta$, $\gamma$ in which a product $\beta \alpha \in \mathcal{M}$ is sometimes defined. Call $x$ an identity of $\mathcal{M}$ if $x \beta = \beta$ whenever $x \beta$ is defined and $\alpha x = \alpha$ whenever $\alpha x$ is defined. Then $\mathcal{M}$ is called an abstract category if it satisfies the following axioms:

   (i) The product $\gamma (pa)$ is defined if and only if $(\gamma \beta) \alpha$ is defined. When either is defined, they are equal. This triple product will be written $\gamma \beta \alpha$.

   (ii) The triple product $\gamma \beta \alpha$ is defined whenever both products $\gamma \beta$ and $\beta \alpha$ are defined.

   (iii) For each $a$ in $\mathcal{M}$ there exist identities $x, x'$ such that $a x$ and $x' a$ are defined.

   Prove that the class of morphisms of a category is an abstract category, and conversely that the elements of any abstract category are the morphisms of a category $C$ which is determined uniquely up to an isomorphism of categories.

4. Functors

Let $C$ and $D$ be categories. A **covariant functor** $T$ on $C$ to $D$ is a pair of functions (both denoted by the same letter $T$): An "object function" which assigns to each object $C \in C$ an object $T(C) \in D$, and a "mapping
function" which assigns to each morphism \( y: C \to C' \) of \( \mathcal{C} \) a morphism \( T(y): T(C) \to T(C') \) of \( \mathcal{D} \). This pair of functions must satisfy the two following conditions:

\[
T(1_C) = 1_{T(C),} \quad C \in \mathcal{C}, \tag{8.1}
\]

\[
T(\beta \gamma) = T(\beta)T(\gamma), \quad \beta \gamma \text{ defined in } \mathcal{C}. \tag{8.2}
\]

A covariant functor \( T \) on \( \mathcal{C} \) to \( \mathcal{D} \) is thus a mapping of \( \mathcal{C} \) to \( \mathcal{D} \) which preserves range, domain, identities, and composites.

For example, let \( R \) be a fixed ring. For any set \( T \) let \( F(T) = \sum_t R t \) be the free module on the set \( T \). Then \( F \) is a covariant functor on the category of sets to the category of \( R \)-modules. Again, for example, let \( \mathcal{G} \) be the category of all groups, with \( G' = [G, G] \) the commutator subgroup of \( G \); that is, the subgroup generated by all the "commutators" \( g_1 g_2 g_1^{-1} g_2^{-1} \) for \( g_1, g_2 \in G \). Each homomorphism \( \gamma: G \to H \) clearly maps \( G' \) to \( H' \) by a homomorphism \( \gamma' \). The functions \( T(G) = G' \) and \( T(\gamma) = \gamma' \) make \( G' \) a covariant functor on \( \mathcal{G} \) to \( \mathcal{G} \). Similarly, the "factor-commutator" group \( G/[G, G] \) may be regarded as a covariant functor on \( \mathcal{G} \) to the category of abelian groups.

Let \( S \) and \( T \) be two covariant functors on \( \mathcal{G} \) to \( \mathcal{D} \). A natural transformation \( h: S \to T \) is a function which assigns to each object \( C \in \mathcal{G} \) a morphism \( h(C): S(C) \to T(C) \) of \( \mathcal{D} \) in such a fashion that for each morphism \( y: C \to C' \) of \( \mathcal{G} \) the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
S(C) & \xrightarrow{h(C)} & T(C) \\
\downarrow{S(y)} & & \downarrow{T(y)} \\
S(C') & \xrightarrow{h(C')} & T(C')
\end{array}
\]

is commutative in \( \mathcal{D} \). When \( h(C) \) satisfies this commutativity condition we say more briefly "\( h \) is natural". If in addition each \( h(C) \) is an equivalence, we say that \( h \) is a natural isomorphism.

Intuitively, a "natural transformation" \( h \) is one which is defined in the same way or by the same formula for every object in the category in question. For instance, for each group \( G \) let \( h(G): G \to G/[G, G] \) be the homomorphism which assigns to each element \( g \in G \) its coset \( g [G, G] \) in the factor-commutator group. The diagram like (8.3) is commutative, so \( h \) may be viewed as a natural transformation of the identity functor to the factor-commutator functor (both in the category of all groups). Other (and more incisive) examples of natural transformations will appear shortly (e.g., Prop. II.4.2 for relative homology).

A contravariant functor \( T \) on \( \mathcal{G} \) to \( \mathcal{D} \) consists of an object function \( T \) which assigns to each \( C \) a \( T(C) \in \mathcal{D} \) and a mapping function \( T \) which assigns to each morphism \( y : C \to C' \) a morphism \( T(y) : T(C') \to T(C) \) of \( \mathcal{D} \),
now in the opposite direction. This pair of functions must again satisfy two conditions:

\[ T(1_C) = 1_{T(C)}, \quad C \in \mathcal{C}, \]  
\[ T(\beta \gamma) = T(\gamma) T(\beta), \quad \beta \gamma \text{ defined in } \mathcal{C}. \]  

The reversed order of the factors in (8.5) is necessary to make sense, for \( \beta \gamma \) defined means \( \gamma : C \to C' \), \( \beta : C' \to C'' \), hence \( T(\beta) : T(C'') \to T(C') \) and \( T(\gamma) : T(C') \to T(C) \), so that \( T(\gamma) T(\beta) \) is defined.

For a fixed \( R \)-module \( B \) we noted in §6 that \( \text{Hom}_R(A, B) \) is a contravariant functor of \( A \), in the category of \( R \)-modules. The character group of an abelian group \( A \) is the group \( \text{Ch} A = \text{Hom}_Z(A, P) \), where \( P \) is the additive group of real numbers modulo 1. With the mapping function \( \text{Ch} a = \alpha^* \) defined as in §6, \( \text{Ch} \) is a contravariant functor on the category of abelian groups to itself — or, with the standard topology on \( \text{Ch} A \), a contravariant functor on discrete abelian groups to compact abelian groups. For any category \( \mathcal{D} \) and its opposite \( \mathcal{D}^{op} \), the pair of functions \( P \) with \( PD = D^* \) and \( P \delta = \delta^* \) is a contravariant functor on \( \mathcal{D} \) to \( \mathcal{D}^{op} \). Each contravariant functor \( T \) on \( \mathcal{C} \) to \( \mathcal{D} \) may be regarded as a covariant functor on \( \mathcal{C} \) to \( \mathcal{D}^{op} \), namely, as the composite \( PT \).

A natural transformation \( h : S \to T \) between two contravariant functors on \( \mathcal{C} \) to \( \mathcal{D} \) is a function which assigns to every object \( C \in \mathcal{C} \) a morphism \( h(\gamma) : S(C) \to T(C) \) of \( \mathcal{D} \) such that for each \( \gamma : C \to C' \) in \( \mathcal{C} \) the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
S(C') & \xrightarrow{h(C')} & T(C') \\
\downarrow{S(\gamma)} & & \downarrow{T(\gamma)} \\
S(C) & \xrightarrow{h(C)} & T(C)
\end{array}
\]  

is commutative. This diagram is just (8.3) upside down.

If \( T \) is a functor on \( \mathcal{C} \) to \( \mathcal{D} \) and \( S \) a functor on \( \mathcal{D} \) to a third category \( \mathfrak{E} \), the composite functions \( S \circ T \) yield a functor on \( \mathcal{C} \) to \( \mathfrak{E} \) with variance the product of the variances of \( S \) and \( T \) (covariant = +1, contravariant, −1). For instance, let \( \mathfrak{M}_F \) be the category of vector spaces over a fixed field \( F \), and let \( D \) be the functor on \( \mathfrak{M}_F \) to \( \mathfrak{M}_F \) which assigns to each vector space \( V \) its dual \( D(V) = \text{Hom}_F(V, F) \) and to each linear transformation \( a : V \to V' \) its induced map \( a^* : D(V) \to D(V') \) defined as in (6.3). Then \( D \) is contravariant, while the composite \( D^2 = D \circ D \) is the covariant functor which assigns to each vector space \( V \) its double dual. There is a homomorphism \( h = h(V) : V \to D(DV) \)

which assigns to each vector \( v \) that function \( hv : DV + F \) with \( (hv)(f) = f(v) \) for \( f \in DV \). For finite dimensional \( V \), \( h(V) \) is the familiar isomorphism.
of $V$ to its double dual. One verifies readily that $h$ is a natural transformation $h: I \to D^2$ (where $I$ denotes the identity functor).

There is a similar natural isomorphism of a finite abelian group to its double character group.

As an example of a non-natural isomorphism, recall that there is an isomorphism $k: V \cong D(V)$ for any finite dimensional vector space $V$. Specifically, for each such $V$ choose a fixed basis $v_1, \ldots, v_n$, construct in $D(V)$ the dual basis $v^1, \ldots, v^n$, with $v^i(v_j)$ is 0 or 1 according as $i \neq j$ or $i = j$, and set $k v_i = v^i$. This linear transformation $k = k(V): V \to D(V)$ is defined for each $V$; it maps the covariant identity functor $I$ to the contravariant functor $D$. If we restrict attention to the category whose objects are finite dimensional vector spaces and whose morphisms are isomorphisms of such, we may replace $D$ by a covariant functor $\overline{D}$ with $\overline{D}(V) = D(V)$, $\overline{D}(a) = D(a^{-1})$. But $k(V): V \to \overline{D}(V)$ is not natural. For example, if $V$ is 1-dimensional and $a: V \to V$ is defined by $av_i = cv_i$ for some scalar $c \in F$ with $0 \neq c \neq 1$, then $\overline{D}(a)k(V)v_1 = (1/c)v^1$; however $k(V)av_1 = cv^1$, so (8.3) is not commutative.

Functors in several variables may be covariant in some of their arguments and contravariant in others. Two arguments, contra and co, suffice to illustrate. Let $\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{C},$ and $\mathcal{D}$ be three categories. A bifunctor $T$ on $\mathcal{B} \times \mathcal{C}$ to $\mathcal{D}$, contravariant in $\mathcal{B}$ and covariant in $\mathcal{C}$, is a pair of functions: An object function which assigns to $B \in \mathcal{B}$ and $C \in \mathcal{C}$ an object $T(B, C)$ of $\mathcal{D}$ (Note that the direction in $B$ is reversed, that in $C$ is preserved). These functions must satisfy the conditions

$T(1_B, 1_C) = 1_{T(B, C)} , \quad \text{(8.8)}$

$T(\beta', \gamma') = T(\beta, \gamma') T(\beta', \gamma) , \quad \text{(8.9)}$

the latter to hold whenever both composites $\beta' \beta$ and $\gamma' \gamma$ are defined. The composite on the right is then defined, for $\beta': B' \to B''$ and $\gamma': C' \to C''$ with (8.7) give

$T(B'', C) \xrightarrow{T(\beta', \gamma')} T(B', C') \xrightarrow{T(\beta, \gamma)} T(B, C'')$. \quad \text{(8.7)}$

It is convenient to set $T(\beta, 1_C) = T(B, C)$ and $T(1_B, \gamma) = T(B, y)$. When $B$ is fixed, $T(B, C)$ and $T(B, y)$ are object and mapping functions of a covariant functor on $\mathcal{C}$ to $\mathcal{D}$, while, for fixed $C$, $T(B, C)$ and $T(\beta, C)$ provide a contravariant functor on $\mathcal{B}$ to $\mathcal{D}$. These mapping functions $T(\beta, \gamma)$ and $T(B, \gamma)$ determine all $T(\beta, y)$ for, by (8.9), $T(\beta, \gamma) = T(\beta 1_B, \gamma 1_C)$, $T(B, y) T(\beta, C)$. We leave the reader to carry out the rest of the proof of
Proposition 8.1. For given categories $\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{C},$ and $\mathcal{D}$ let $T$ be a function assigning to each $B$ and $C$ an object $T(B, C) \in \mathcal{D}$. For each fixed $B \in \mathcal{B}$, let $T(B, C)$ be the object function of a covariant functor $\mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}$ with the mapping function $T(B, y)$. For each fixed $C \in \mathcal{C}$, let $T(B, C)$ be the object function of a contravariant functor $\mathcal{B} \to \mathcal{D}$ with mapping function $T(\beta, C)$. Suppose that for each $\beta : B \to B'$ and each $y : C \to C'$ the diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
T(B', C) & \xrightarrow{T(B', y)} & T(B', C') \\
\downarrow T(\beta, C) & & \downarrow T(\beta, C') \\
T(B, C) & \xrightarrow{T(B, y)} & T(B, C')
\end{array}
$$

is commutative. Then the diagonal map

$$T(\beta, y) = T(B, y) T(\beta, C) = T(\beta, C') T(B', y)$$

of this diagram makes $T$ a bifunctor on $\mathcal{B}$ and $\mathcal{C}$ to $\mathcal{D}$, contravariant in $\mathcal{B}$ and covariant in $\mathcal{C}$. Every such functor can be so obtained.

If we write more simply $\beta^*$ for $T(\beta, C)$ and $y^*$ for $T(B, y)$, the commutativity condition of this proposition can be put with less accuracy and more vigor as $\beta^* y^* = y^* \beta^*$. This proposition usually provides the easiest verification that a given $T$ is indeed a bifunctor. A typical example of such a bifunctor $T$ is $\text{Hom}_R(A, B)$, covariant in $B$ and contravariant in $A$.

If $S$ and $T$ are two such bifunctors on $\mathcal{B} \times \mathcal{C}$ to $\mathcal{D}$, a natural transformation $f : S \to T$ is a function which assigns to each pair of objects $B, C$ an isomorphism $f(B, C) : S(B, C) \to T(B, C)$ in such a way that for all morphisms $\beta : B \to B'$ and $y : C \to C'$ the diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
S(B', C) & \xrightarrow{f(B', C)} & T(B', C) \\
\downarrow S(\beta, y) & & \downarrow T(\beta, y) \\
S(B, C) & \xrightarrow{f(B, C)} & T(B, C)
\end{array}
$$

is commutative. In view of the decomposition of $T(\beta, y)$ above, it suffices to require this condition only for $\beta$ and $1_C$, and for $1_B$ and $y$. In other words, it suffices to require that $f(B, C)$ with either variable fixed be a natural transformation in the remaining variable.

Direct products provide an example of a bifunctor covariant in two arguments. Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a category in which each pair of objects has a direct product diagram, and choose such a diagram $\{\pi_i : A_i \times A_j \to A_i \mid i = 1, 2\}$ for each pair; this includes the choice of a direct product $A_1 \times A_2$ for each $A_i$ and $A_j$. Let $\alpha_i : A_i \to A_i'$ for $i = 1, 2$ be morphisms of $\mathcal{C}$, as in the diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
A_1 \xrightarrow{\alpha_1} A_1 \times A_2 \xrightarrow{\pi_1} A_2 \\
\downarrow \alpha_1 & \searrow \beta & \downarrow \alpha_2 \\
A_1' \xrightarrow{\alpha_1'} A_1' \times A_2' \xrightarrow{\pi_1'} A_2'
\end{array}
$$

$$\beta = \alpha_1 \times \alpha_2.$$
Then \(\alpha_i \beta_i: A_i \times A_2 \to A_i^2\); by the couniversal property of the bottom row, there is a unique morphism \(\beta: A_1 \times A_2 \to A_1^2 \times A_2^2\) with \(\pi_1 \beta = \alpha_i \pi_i\); that is, a unique \(\beta\) which makes the diagram commutative. For example, if \(\mathcal{C}\) is the category of sets or of \(R\)-modules, and if each \(A_1 \times A_2\) is chosen in the usual way as the set of all pairs \((a_1, a_2)\), then \(\beta(a_1, a_2) = (\alpha_1 a_1, \alpha_2 a_2)\). Call \(\beta = \alpha_1 \times \alpha_2\) the direct product of the given morphisms. By the couniversal property, \(1 \times 1 = 1\), and \((\gamma_1 \times \gamma_2)(\alpha_1 \times \alpha_2) = \gamma_1 \alpha_1 \times \gamma_2 \alpha_2\) whenever \(\gamma_i \alpha_i\) is defined for \(i = 1, 2\). Hence \(P(A_1, A_2) = A_1 \times A_2\), \(P(\alpha_1, \alpha_2) = \alpha_1 \times \alpha_2\) defines a covariant bifunctor \(P\) on \(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{C}\) to \(\mathcal{C}\). For three objects \(A_1, A_2, A_3\) the usual map \((A_1 \times A_2) \times A_3 \to A_1 \times (A_2 \times A_3)\) is a natural homomorphism of covariant trifunctors.

The notions of category and functor provide not profound theorems, but a convenient language. For example, consider the notion of diagrams of the "same form", say of diagram of modules of the form \(D: A \to B \to C\). Any such diagram may be regarded as a functor. Indeed, introduce the finite category \(\mathcal{H}\), which has three objects \(a, b, c\), and the corresponding identity morphisms and the morphisms \(\kappa_0: a \to b, \lambda_0: b \to c,\) and \(\mu_0: a \to c\) with \(\lambda_0 \kappa_0 = \mu_0\). Then any diagram of modules as exhibited is a covariant functor on \(\mathcal{H}\) to the category \(\mathcal{R}\-\mathcal{M}\) of modules: Such a covariant functor \(D\) does provide three modules \(D(a) = A, D(b) = B,\) and \(D(c) = C\) plus the homomorphisms \(D(\kappa_0), D(\lambda_0), D(\mu_0) = D(\lambda_0) D(\kappa_0)\). Furthermore a map of a diagram \(D\) to another diagram \(D'\) of the same form is exactly a natural transformation \(D \to D'\) of functors. In this formulation we also can include the notions of diagrams with commutativity conditions; thus a commutative square diagram is a functor on the finite category

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
a & \xrightarrow{\kappa_0} & b \\
\xi_0 \downarrow & & \downarrow \omega_0 \eta_0 \\
\xi_0 & \xrightarrow{\eta_0} & c \xrightarrow{\nu_0} d
\end{array}
\]

\(\eta_0 \kappa_0 = \omega_0 = \nu_0 \xi_0\).

A partly ordered set \(S\) is a set with a binary relation \(r \leq s\) which is reflexive \((r \leq r)\), transitive \((r \leq s\) and \(s \leq t\) imply \(r \leq t)\) and such that \(r \leq s\) and \(s \leq r\) imply \(r = s\). The partly ordered set \(S\) has a zero if there is an element \(0 \in S\), necessarily unique, with \(0 \leq s\) for every \(s\). An element \(u \in S\) is a least upper bound (l. u. b.) of \(s, t \in S\) if \(s \leq u, t \leq u\) and \(s \leq v, t \leq v\) imply \(u \leq v\). This l. u. b. is unique if it exists, and is written \(u = s \lor t\). Similarly, \(w = s \land t\) is a g. l. b. of \(s\) and \(t\) if \(w \leq s, w \leq t\) and \(x \leq s, x \leq t\) imply \(x \leq w\). The partly ordered set \(S\) is a lattice if \(s \lor t\) and \(s \land t\) exist for all \(s\) and \(t\).

Each partly ordered set \(S\) may be regarded as a category \(\mathcal{P}\), with objects the elements \(s \in S\), morphisms the pairs \((s, r): r \to s\) with \(r \leq s\), and composition of morphisms defined by \((t, s)(s, r) = (t, r)\) when \(r \leq s \leq t\). For example, the finite category (8.13) arises so from the partly ordered set with four elements \(a, b, c, d\) and partial order \(a \leq b \leq d\),

Mac Lane, Homology
If $S$ is a lattice, any two objects $s, t$ of $\mathcal{S}$ have a direct sum (given by $s \cup t$) and a direct product $s \times t$; conversely, if $\mathcal{S}$ has direct sums and products, $S$ is a lattice.

For any partly ordered $S$, a covariant functor $T: \mathcal{S} \to \mathcal{R}$ is a family $\{T_s : s \in S\}$ of $\mathcal{R}$-modules together with homomorphisms $T(s, r): T_s \to T_r$ defined for each $r \leq s$ and such that $T(t, s)T(s, r) = T(t, r)$ whenever $r \leq s \leq t$. The "direct limit" of such a family may be described conveniently in categorical terms [Eilenberg-MacLane 1945, Chap. IV; Kan 1958].

Exercises

1. If $\alpha_i: A_i \to A_i'$ are module homomorphisms, show that the map $\beta = \alpha_1 \times \alpha_2: A_1 \oplus A_2 \to A_1' \oplus A_2'$ characterized by $\pi_i \beta = \alpha_i \pi_i$, $j = 1, 2$, is also characterized by the conditions $\beta \pi_j = \pi_j \alpha_j$, $j = 1, 2$.

2. Show that the associative law for the (external) direct sum of modules can be expressed as a natural isomorphism $(A \oplus B) \oplus C \cong A \oplus (B \oplus C)$.

3. Prove that the isomorphisms (6.5) are natural.

4. Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a small category in which each set $\text{hom}(A, B)$ of morphisms has at most one element, and in which each equivalence is an identity. Prove that $\mathcal{C}$ may be obtained from a partly ordered set.

Notes. The idea of a module goes back at least to Kronecker, who considered modules over polynomial rings; only in the last twenty years has this idea taken on its present central role in algebra. Projective modules were first used effectively in Cartan-Eilenberg; now it is clear that they provide for linear algebra the appropriate generalization of a vector space (which is always a free module). Emmy Noether, in lectures at Göttingen, emphasized the importance of homomorphisms. The initial restriction to homomorphisms $a: A + B$ with $a(A) = B$, as in Van der Waerden's influential Moderne Algebra, soon proved to be needlessly restrictive, and was dropped. By now it is expected that each definition of a type of Mathematical system be accompanied by a definition of the morphisms of this system. The arrow notation developed in topological investigations about 1940, probably starting with the use for correspondences and then for continuous maps. Exact sequences were first noted in Hurewicz [1940]. The functor "\text{Hom}" was long known, but apparently first appeared by this name in Eilenberg-MacLane [1942]. Categories and functors were introduced by the same authors in 1945. They have proved useful in the formulation of axiomatic homology (Chap. II below), in the cohomology of a sheaf over a topological space [Godement 1958], in differential geometry [Ehresmann 1958], and in algebraic geometry (Grothendieck-Dieudonné [1960], cf. also the review by Lang [1961]). Foundational questions about the theory of categories, using sets and classes, are formulated in Mac Lane [1961].

Chapter two
Homology of Complexes

Here we first meet the basic notions of homology in simple geometric cases where the homology group arises from a boundary operator. In general, an abelian group with a boundary operator is called a "differential group" or, when provided with dimensions, a "chain complex".
This chapter considers the algebraic process of constructing homology and cohomology groups from chain complexes. Basic is the fact (§ 4) that a short exact sequence of complexes gives a long exact sequence of homology groups. As illustrative background, the last sections provide a brief description of the singular homology groups of a topological space.

1. Differential Groups

A differential group \( C \) is an abelian group \( C \) together with an endomorphism \( d: C \to C \) such that \( d^2 = 0 \); call \( d \) the "differential" or "boundary operator" of \( C \). Elements of \( C \) are often called chains, elements of \( \ker d \), cycles, and elements of \( \text{Im} d \), boundaries. The requirement that \( d^2 = 0 \) is equivalent to the inclusion \( \text{Im} d \subseteq \ker d \). The homology group of the differential group \( C \) is defined to be the factor group of cycles modulo boundaries,

\[
H(C) = \ker d / \text{Im} d = \ker d / dC.
\]

Its elements are the cosets \( c + \text{Im} d \) of cycles \( c \); we call them homology classes and write them as

\[
\text{cls}(c) = c + dC \in H(C).
\]

Two cycles \( c \) and \( c' \) in the same homology class are said to be homologous; in symbols \( c \sim c' \).

As first examples we shall give a number of specific differential groups with their homology. Most of these examples will be found by dissecting a simple geometric figure into cells and taking \( d \) to be the operator which assigns to each cell the sum of its boundary cells, each affected with a suitable sign.

Example 1. Take two points \( p \) and \( q \) on a circle \( S^1 \) which divide the circle into two semicircular arcs \( a \) and \( b \). The "boundary" or "ends" of the arc \( a \) are the points \( q \) and \( p \).

Hence introduce the free abelian group \( C(S^1) \) with the four free generators \( a, b, p, \) and \( q \), and define an endomorphism \( d \) of \( C(S^1) \) by setting

\[
da = q - p, \quad db = p - q, \quad dp = 0 = dq.
\]

Any element of \( C(S^1) \) is represented uniquely as a linear combination \( m_1 a + m_2 b + m_3 p + m_4 q \) with integral coefficients \( m_1, m_2, m_3, \) and \( m_4 \), while

\[
d(m_1 a + m_2 b + m_3 p + m_4 q) = m_1(q - p) + m_2(p - q) = (m_1 - m_2)(q - p).
\]

Thus \( C(S^1) \) is a differential group. Its cycles are all the integral linear combinations of \( p, q, \) and \( a + b \), while its boundaries are all the multiples
of \( q - p \). Hence there is a homology \( p \sim q \), and the homology group is the direct sum

\[
H(C(S^1)) = \mathbb{Z}_\infty(\text{cls}(\mathcal{P})) \oplus \mathbb{Z}_\infty(\text{cls}(a + b)),
\]

where \( \mathbb{Z}_\infty(\text{cls}(\mathcal{P})) \) denotes the infinite cyclic group generated by the homology class \( \text{cls}(\mathcal{P}) \). Thus the circle \( S^1 \) has two basic homology classes, the point \( \mathcal{P} \) (dimension 0), and the circumference \( a + b \) (dimension 1).

In this example the same circle could have been subdivided otherwise, say into more arcs. The homology groups turn out to be independent of the subdivision chosen. For example, isomorphic homology groups arise when the circle is cut into three arcs so as to form a triangle!

**Example 2.** Take a triangle \( \Delta \) with vertices 0, 1, and 2, and edges \( 01, 12, \) and \( 02 \). The corresponding differential group \( C(\Delta) \) is the free abelian group on six generators \( (0), (1), (2), (01), (12), (02) \), with the differential given by \( d(0) = d(1) = d(2) = 0, \quad d(01) = (1) - (0), \quad d(02) = (2) - (0), \quad d(12) = (2) - (1) \); in other words, the boundary of each edge is the difference of its two end vertices. One finds

\[
H(C(\Delta)) = \mathbb{Z}_\infty(\text{cls}(0)) \oplus \mathbb{Z}_\infty(\text{cls}[12 - (02) + (01)]).
\]

This group is indeed isomorphic to that found for the circle in Example 1; both are free abelian with two generators. An isomorphism may be given by first specifying a homomorphism \( f \) of the differential group \( C(S^1) \) into \( C(\Delta) \); we set, say, \( f(\mathcal{P}) = (0), f(\mathcal{G}) = (1), f(a) = (01), \) and \( f(b) = (12) - (02) \). Then \( df(b) = fd(b), df(a) = fd(a) \), and \( f \) carries the generating cycles \( \mathcal{P} \) and \( a + b \) of \( H(C(S^1)) \) into the generating cycles \( (0) \) and \( (12) - (02) + (01) \) of \( H(C(\Delta)) \).

In general, let \( C \) and \( C' \) be two differential groups. A homomorphism \( f: C \rightarrow C' \) of differential groups is a group homomorphism with the added property that \( d'f = fd \); in other words, it is a function on \( C \) to \( C' \) which preserves the whole algebraic structure involved (addition and differential). For a chain \( c \) of \( C \) this implies that \( fc \) is a cycle or a boundary whenever \( c \) is a cycle or boundary, respectively. Hence the function \( H(f) = f_* \), defined by \( f_*(\text{cls}(c)) = \text{cls}(fc) \), is a group homomorphism

\[
H(f): H(C) \rightarrow H(C') \quad \text{(for } f: C \rightarrow C').
\]

We call \( H(f) \) the homomorphism induced by \( f \). Since \( H(1_C) = 1_{H(C)} \) and \( H(f'f) = H(f')H(f) \), \( H \) is a covariant functor on differential groups to groups.

**Example 3.** The circular disc \( D \) is had by adding the inside \( c \) to the circle \( S^1 \); construct a corresponding differential group \( C(D) \) by adjoining to \( C(S^1) \) one new free generator \( c \) with boundary \( dc = a + b \). Then \( H(C(D)) = \mathbb{Z}_\infty(\text{cls} \mathcal{P}) \). The injection \( j: C(S^1) \rightarrow C(D) \) thus induces a map \( H(j): H(C(S^1)) \rightarrow H(C(D)) \) which maps the second summand of \( (1.4) \) onto
I. Differential Groups

zero. In other words, the map \( H(j) \) induced by an injection need not be a monomorphism; that is, the homology group of a subspace need not be a subgroup of the homology of the original space. This is why the injection \( j \) has a label different from the identity.

**Example 4.** For the sphere \( S^2 \) with the equator \( S^1 \), labelled as in Fig. 2, let \( \mathcal{U} \) be the upper and \( \mathcal{I} \) the lower hemisphere. Construct a differential group \( C(S^2) \) by adjoining to \( C(S^1) \) two new free generators \( \mathcal{U} \) and \( \mathcal{I} \), with boundaries \( d\mathcal{U} = a + b = -dl \).

Then

\[
H(C(S^2)) = \mathbb{Z}_\infty(\text{cls}(\mathcal{P})) \oplus \mathbb{Z}_\infty(\text{cls}(\mathcal{U} + \mathcal{I})); \quad (1.6)
\]

there is a cycle \( \mathcal{P} \) in dimension 0 and one in dimension 2.

**Example 5.** The real projective plane \( \mathbb{P}^2 \), regarded as a topological space, may be obtained from the sphere \( S^2 \) by identifying each point of \( S^2 \) with the diametrically opposite point. This suggests that we proceed algebraically by setting \( \mathcal{U} = -\mathcal{I} \), \( a = b \), and \( \mathcal{P} = q \) in the differential group \( C(S^2) \) above. This will yield a new differential group \( C(\mathbb{P}^2) \), which is the free abelian group generated by \( \mathcal{U} \), \( a \), and \( \mathcal{P} \) with \( d\mathcal{U} = 2a \), \( da = 0 \), \( d\mathcal{P} = 0 \). Then \( a \) is a cycle which is not a boundary, though \( 2a \) is a boundary. Hence

\[
H(C(\mathbb{P}^2)) = \mathbb{Z}_\infty(\text{cls}(\mathcal{P})) \oplus \mathbb{Z}_2(\text{cls}(a)),
\]

where \( \mathbb{Z}_2(\text{cls}(a)) \) designates the cyclic group of order 2 with generator \( \text{cls}(a) \).

**Example 6.** Let \( f(x, y) \) be a real valued function of class \( C^m \) (i.e., with continuous partial derivatives of all orders) defined in a connected open set \( D \) of points \((x, y)\) in the Cartesian plane. For fixed \( D \), the set \( A \) of all such functions is an abelian group under the operation of addition of function values. Take \( C \) to be the direct sum \( A \oplus A \oplus A \oplus A \); an element of \( C \) is then a quadruple \((f, g, h, k)\) of such functions, which we denote more suggestively as a formal "differential":

\[
(f, g, h, k) = f + g \, dx + h \, dy + k \, dx \, dy.
\]

Define \( d : C \to C \) by setting

\[
d(f, g, h, k) = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x} \, dx + \frac{\partial f}{\partial y} \, dy + \left( \frac{\partial h}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial g}{\partial y} \right) \, dx \, dy.
\]

That \( d^2 = 0 \) is a consequence of the fact that \( \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x \partial y} = \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial x} \). Any cycle in \( C \) is a sum of the following three types: a constant \( f = a \); an expression
g \, dx + h \, dy \text{ with } \frac{\partial g}{\partial y} = \frac{\partial h}{\partial x} \text{ (in other words, an exact differential); an expression } k \, dx \, dy. \text{ If the domain } D \text{ of definition is, say, the interior of the square we can write the function } k \text{ as } \frac{\partial h}{\partial x} \text{ for a suitable } h, \text{ while any exact differential can be expressed (by suitable integration) as the differential of a function } f. \text{ Hence, for this } D \text{ the only homology classes are those yielded by the constant functions, and } H(C) \text{ is the additive group of real numbers. The same conclusion holds if } D \text{ is the interior of a circle, but fails if } D \text{ is, say, the interior of a circle with the origin deleted. In this latter case an exact differential need not be the differential of a function } f. \text{ For example } (-y \, dx + x \, dy)/(x^2 + y^2) \text{ is not such.}

Example 7. A circular cylinder may be regarded as the cartesian product \( S^1 \times I \) of a circle \( S^1 \) and a unit interval \( I \). We subdivide this as shown, so that the circle \( S^1 \) at the base has vertices \( p_0, q_0 \) and edges \( a, b_0 \), while those at the top are given by the same letters with subscript 1. The sides of the cylinder are the intervals \( p \times I \) and \( q \times I \) above \( p_0 \) and \( q_0 \), respectively, and the curved faces \( a \times I \) and \( b \times I \) above \( a, b_0 \). Introduce the free abelian group \( C(S^1 \times I) \) with the twelve free generators \( p, q, a, b, p_1, q_1, a_1, b_1 \) \((i=0, 1)\). Define \( d: C \to C \) on the base and top exactly as for a circle \((d a_i = q_i - p_i, \quad d b_i = p_i - q_i, \quad d p_i = 0 = d q_i)\). Also set \( d(p \times I) = p_1 - p_0 \) and \( d(q \times I) = q_1 - q_0 \). Inspection of the geometric boundary of the curved surface \( a \times I \) suggests that we set
\[
d(a \times I) = a_1 - (q \times I) - a_0 + (p \times I) \quad \text{and} \quad d(b \times I) = b_1 - b_0 + (q \times I) - (p \times I).
\]
This defines \( d \) so that \( d^2 = 0 \). Inspection of the cycles and boundaries shows that
\[
H(C(S^1 \times I)) \cong Z_\infty(\text{cls}(p_0)) \bigoplus Z_\infty(\text{cls}(a_0 + b_0)).
\]
This homology group is isomorphic to the homology group \( H(S^1) \) found for the circle in Example 1 above. The isomorphism can be written as \( H(f_0): H(S^1) \cong H(S^1 \times I) \) if we take \( f_0 \) to be the homomorphism
\[
f_0: C(S^1) \to C(S^1 \times I) \text{ of differential groups defined by } f_0 p = p_0, f_0 q = q_0, f_0 a = a_0, f_0 b = b_0.
\]
One could equally well give the isomorphism as \( H(f_1), \) where the homomorphism \( f_1 = C(S^1) \to C(S^1 \times I) \) is similarly defined. This equality \( H(f_0) = H(f_1) \) holds because the cycles \( a_0 + b_0 \) and \( a_1 + b_1 \) on the cylinder are homologous, for their difference is the boundary
\[
d(a \times I + b \times I) = (a_1 + b_1) - (a_0 + b_0).
\]
To explicitly compare \( f_0 \) and \( f_1 \), let us define a function \( s \) by
\[
sp = p \times I, \quad sq = q \times I, \quad sa = a \times I, \quad sb = b \times I.
\]
This determines a homomorphism \( s : C(S^1) \to C(S^1 \times I) \) of abelian groups (not of differential groups) with the property that
\[
\begin{align*}
\tilde{d}s(c) + s \tilde{d}c &= f_1 c - f_0 c \quad (1.7)
\end{align*}
\]
for all \( c \) in \( C(S^1) \). This equation may be read: The boundary \( d(sc) \) of the cylinder \( sc \) over \( c \) consists of the top \( f_1 c \) minus the bottom \( f_0 c \) minus the cylinder \( s(d c) \) over the boundary of \( c \). This equation implies that the homomorphisms \( H(f_1) \) and \( H(f_0) \) are equal, for if \( c \) is any cycle \( (d c = 0) \), then (1.7) gives \( f_1 c - f_0 c = d(sc) \), whence \( f_1 c \sim f_0 c \).

Maps with the property (1.7) will appear frequently under the name of "chain homotopies".

**Exercises**

1. Let \( C \) be a differential group. The definition \( H(C) = \text{Ker}\tilde{d}/\text{Im}\tilde{d} \) can be written as \( H(C) = \text{Coker}(d' : C \to \text{Ker}\tilde{d}) \), where \( d' \) is induced by \( d \). Using \( C/\text{Ker}\tilde{d} = \text{Im}\tilde{d} \), show that \( H(C) \) has a dual description as \( \text{Ker}(d'' : (\text{Coker}\tilde{d}) \to C) \).

2. For a family \( C_t, t \in T \), of differential groups, define the direct sum \( \bigoplus C_t \) and the direct product \( \prod C_t \) and prove that \( H(\bigoplus C_t) \cong \bigoplus H(C_t) \), \( H(\prod C_t) \cong \prod H(C_t) \).

**2. Complexes**

In the usual differential groups \( C \) of §1 we can assign integral dimensions to certain elements of \( C \). The set \( C_n \) of all elements of dimension \( n \) is a group, \( C \) is the direct sum of the \( C_n \), and \( \partial C_n < C_{n-1} \). It is more effective to work directly with this collection of groups. The resulting object is called a "complex" of abelian groups.

For any ring \( R \), a chain complex \( K \) of \( R \)-modules is a family \( \{K_n, \partial_n\} \) of \( R \)-modules \( K_n \) and \( R \)-module homomorphisms \( \partial_n : K_n \to K_{n-1} \), defined for all integers \( n, -\infty < n < \infty \), and such that \( \partial_n \partial_{n+1} = 0 \). This last condition is equivalent to the statement that \( \text{Ker}\partial_n > \text{Im}\partial_{n+1} \). A complex \( K \) thus appears as a doubly infinite sequence
\[
K : \cdots \leftarrow K_{-2} \leftarrow K_{-1} \leftarrow K_0 \leftarrow K_1 \leftarrow K_2 \leftarrow \cdots
\]
with each composite map zero. The homology \( H(K) \) is the family of modules
\[
H_n(K) = \text{Ker}\partial_n/\text{Im}\partial_{n+1} = (\text{Ker}[K_n \to K_{n-1}])/\partial_{n+1}K_{n+1}. \quad (2.1)
\]
Thus \( H_n(K) = 0 \) means that the sequence \( K \) is exact at \( K_n \). An \( n \)-cycle of \( K \) is an element of the submodule \( C_n(K) = \text{Ker}\partial_n \); an \( n \)-boundary is an element of \( \partial_{n+1}K_{n+1} \). Then \( H_n = C_n/\partial K_{n+1} \) (cycles mod boundaries). The coset of a cycle \( c \) in \( H_n \) is written as \( c \tilde{c} = c + \partial K_{n+1} \), or as \( \{c\} \), in
much of the literature. Two n-cycles in the same homology class \((\text{clsc} = \text{clsc}')\) are said to be homologous \((c \sim c')\); this is the case if and only if \(c - c' \in \partial K_{n+1}\).

If \(K\) and \(K'\) are complexes, a chain transformation \(f: K \to K'\) is a family of module homomorphisms \(f_n: K_n \to K'_n\), one for each \(n\), such that \(\partial' f_n = f_{n-1} \partial_n\) for all \(n\). This last condition asserts the commutativity of the diagram (neglect the dotted arrows)

\[
\begin{array}{c}
K: \cdots \leftarrow K_{n-1} \leftarrow K_n \leftarrow K_{n+1} \leftarrow \cdots \\
\downarrow f_{n-1} \quad \downarrow f_n \quad \downarrow f_{n+1} \\
K': \cdots \leftarrow K'_{n-1} \leftarrow K'_n \leftarrow K'_{n+1} \leftarrow \cdots 
\end{array}
\]

(Subsequently, we usually omit the subscript \(n\) on \(\partial_n\) and the prime on \(\partial'\): \(K_n \to K'_{n-1}\).) The function \(H_n(f) = f_*\) defined by \(f_* (c + \partial K_{n+1}) = f c + \partial K'_{n+1}\) is a homomorphism \(H_n(f): H_n(K) \to H_n(K')\). With this definition, each \(H_n\) is a covariant functor on the category of chain complexes and chain transformations to the category of modules.

A chain homotopy \(s\) between two chain transformations \(f, g: K \to K'\) is a family of module homomorphisms \(s_n: K_n \to K'_{n+1}\), one for each dimension \(n\), as in the dotted arrows of (2.2), such that

\[
\partial'_{n+1} s_n + s_{n-1} \partial_n = f_n - g_n.
\]

We write \(s: f \sim g\). The geometric background of this relation is sketched in Example 7 of §1. Algebraically we have

**Theorem 2.1.** If \(s: f \sim g: K \to K'\), then

\[
H_n(f) = H_n(g): H_n(K) \to H_n(K'), \quad -\infty < n < \infty. \tag{2.4}
\]

**Proof.** If \(c\) is a cycle of \(K_n\), then \(\partial_n c = 0\); hence, by (2.3), \(f_n c - g_n c = \partial s_n c\). This states that \(f_n c\) and \(g_n c\) are homologous, hence that \(\text{clsc} f_n c = \text{clsc} g_n c\) in \(H_n(K), (K')\), as required.

A chain transformation \(f: K \to K'\) is said to be a chain equivalence if there is another chain transformation \(h: K' \to K\) (backwards!) and homotopies \(s: h f \sim 1_K\), \(t: f h \sim 1_{K'}\). Since \(H_n(1_K) = 1\), the theorem yields

**Corollary 2.2.** If \(f: K \to K'\) is a chain equivalence, the induced map \(H_n(f): H_n(K) \cong H_n(K')\) is an isomorphism for each dimension \(n\).

**Proposition 2.3.** Chain homotopies \(s: f \sim g: K \to K'\) and \(s': f' \sim g': K' \to K''\) yield a composite chain homotopy

\[
f' s + s' g: f' f' g' g: K \to K''
\]

**Proof.** Both \(\partial s + s \partial = f - g\) and \(\partial s' + s' \partial = f' - g'\) are given. Multiply the first by \(f'\), on the left, and the second by \(g\) on the right, and add.
Subcomplexes and quotient complexes have properties like those of submodules and quotient modules. A subcomplex $S$ of $K$ is a family of submodules $S_n < K_n$, one for each $n$, such that always $\partial S_n < S_{n-1}$. Hence $S$ itself is a complex with boundary induced by $\partial = \partial_K$, and the injection $j: S \to K$ is a chain transformation. If $S < K$, the quotient complex $K/S$ is the family $(K/S)_n = K_n/S_n$ of quotient modules with boundary $\partial': K_n/S_n \to K_{n-1}/S_{n-1}$ induced by $\partial_K$. The projection is a chain transformation $K \to K/S$, and the short sequence $S \to K_n \to (K/S)_n$ of modules is exact for each $n$.

If $f: K \to K'$ is a chain transformation, then $\text{Ker} f = \{ \text{Ker} f_n \}$ is a subcomplex of $K$, $\text{Im} f = \{ f_n K_n \}$ a subcomplex of $K'$, while $K'/\text{Im} f$ is the cokernel of $f$ and $K/\text{Ker} f$ the coimage. A pair of chain transformations $K \to K' \to K''$ is exact at $K'$ if $\text{Im} f = \text{Ker} g$; that is, if each sequence $K_n \to K'_n \to K''_n$ of modules is exact at $K'_n$. For any $f: K \to K'$,

$$0 \to \text{Ker} f \to K \xrightarrow{j} K' \to \text{Coker} f \to 0$$

is an exact sequence of complexes.

Instead of using lower indices, as in $K_n$, it is often notationally convenient to write $K^n$ for $K_{-n}$ and $\delta^n: K^n \to K^{n+1}$ in place of $\partial_{-n}: K_{-n} \to K_{-n-1}$. This is simply a different "upper index" notation for the same complex.

A complex $K$ is **positive** (i.e., non-negative) if $K_n = 0$ for $n < 0$; its homology is then positive ($H_n(K) = 0$ for $n < 0$). A complex $K$ is **negative** if $K_n = 0$ for $n > 0$; equivalently, it is positive in the upper indices and has the form

$$0 \to K^0 \xrightarrow{\delta^0} K \xrightarrow{\delta^1} K^2 \xrightarrow{\delta^2} \cdots, \quad \delta \delta = 0,$$

with homology $H^n(K) = \text{Ker} \delta^n / \text{Im} \delta^n$ positive in the upper indices. In this form, it is often called a "right complex" or a "cochain complex". By a "cochain" homotopy $s: f \simeq g: K \to K'$ is meant a chain homotopy written with upper indices; that is, a family of maps $s^n: K^n \to K'^{n-1}$ with $\delta s + s \delta = f - g$. The complexes arising in practice are usually positive or negative; the general notion of a chain complex is useful to provide common proofs of formal properties like those expressed in Thm. 2.1.

Each module $A$ may be regarded as a "trivial" positive complex, with $A_0 = A$, $A_n = 0$ for $n \neq 0$, and $\partial = 0$. A complex over $A$ is a positive complex $K$ together with a chain transformation $e: K \to A$; such an $e$ is simply a module homomorphism $e: K_0 \to A$ such that $e \partial = 0: K_1 \to A$. A **contracting homotopy** for $e: K \to A$ is a chain transformation $f: A + K$ such that $ef = 1_A$, together with a homotopy $s: 1 \simeq fe$. In other words, a contracting homotopy consists of module homomorphisms $f: A + K_0$ and $s: K_n \to K_{n+1}, n = 0, 1, \ldots$ such that

$$ef = 1, \quad \partial_0 s_0 - s_0 e = 1_{K_0}, \quad \partial_{n+1} s_n + s_{n-1} \partial_n = 1, \quad (n > 0).$$

(2.5)
Equivalently, extend the complex by setting \( K_{-1} = A \), \( \partial_0 = e : K_0 \to K_{-1} \) and \( s_{-1} = f \). Then (2.5) states simply that \( s \simeq 0 \) for the maps 1, 0 of the extended complex to itself. If \( e : K \to A \) has a contracting homotopy, its homology groups are \( e_* : H_0(K) \cong A \) for \( n = 0 \) and \( H_n(K) = 0 \) for \( n > 0 \).

Complexes \( K \) of free abelian groups arise in topology. If each \( K_n \) is finitely generated, then each \( H_n(K) \) is a finitely generated abelian group. The structure theorem for such groups presents \( H_n(K) \) as a direct sum \( \mathbb{Z} \oplus \cdots \oplus \mathbb{Z} \oplus \mathbb{Z}_{m_1} \oplus \cdots \oplus \mathbb{Z}_{m_k} \), where the number \( b_i \) of infinite cyclic summands and the integers \( m_1, \ldots, m_k \) (each a divisor of the next) depend only on \( H_n(K) \). The integer \( b_i \) is called the \( n \)-th Betti number of \( K \), and the \( \{ m_i \} \) the \( n \)-th torsion coefficients.

**Exercises**

1. Call a complex \( S \) \( q \)-special if \( S_n = 0 \) for \( n \neq q, q + 1 \) and \( \partial : S_{q+1} \to S_q \) is a monomorphism. Prove that any complex \( K \) of free abelian groups \( K_n \) is a direct sum of \( q \)-special complexes (one for each \( q \)).

2. Call a \( q \)-special complex \( S \) of abelian groups elementary if either \( S_q = S_{q+1} = \mathbb{Z} \) or \( S_q = \mathbb{Z}, S_{q+1} = 0 \). Prove that each special \( S \) with \( S_q, S_{q+1} \) finitely generated free groups is a direct sum of elementary complexes. (Hint: use row and column operations on matrices of integers to choose new bases for \( S_q \) and \( S_{q+1} \).)

3. Prove that any complex with each \( K_n \), a finitely generated free abelian group is a direct sum of elementary complexes.

**3. Cohomology**

Let \( C \) be a differential group and \( G \) an abelian group. Form the abelian group \( C^* = \text{Hom}_2(C, G) \); its elements are the group homomorphisms \( f : C \to G \), called cochains of \( C \) with "coefficients" in \( G \). The differential \( d : C + C \) induces a map \( d^* : C^* \to C^* \) defined by \( d^* f = \partial d : C \to G \); call \( d^* \) the coboundary of the cochain \( f \); it is often written as \( \delta f = d^* f \). Since \( d^2 = 0 \), \( (d^*)^2 = 0 \). Hence \( C^* \) with differential \( d^* \) is a differential group. Its homology is called the cohomology of \( C \) with coefficients \( G \) and is written \( H^*(C, G) = H(\text{Hom}(C, G)) \).

Let \( K \) be a complex of \( R \)-modules and \( G \) an \( R \)-module. Form the abelian group \( \text{Hom}_R(K_n, G) \); its elements are the module homomorphisms \( f : K_n \to G \), called \( n \)-cochains of \( K \). The coboundary of \( f \) is the \( (n + 1) \)-cochain

\[
\delta^n f = (-1)^n + 1 \delta_{n+1} f : K_{n+1} \to G.
\]  

In other words, \( \partial_{n+1} : K_{n+1} \to K_n \) induces \( \partial_{n+1}^* : \text{Hom}(K_n, G) \to \text{Hom}(K_{n+1}, G) \) and \( \delta^n = (-1)^n + 1 \xi_{n+1}^* \) (the sign will be explained below). Since \( \delta^n \delta^{n-1} = 0 \), the sequence

\[
\to \text{Hom}_R(K_{n-1}, G) \overset{\partial^{n-1}}\to \text{Hom}_R(K_n, G) \overset{\partial^n} \to \text{Hom}_R(K_{n+1}, G) \to \cdots
\]
is a complex of abelian groups called Hom, $(K,G)$, usually written with upper indices as $\text{Hom}^n(K,G) = \text{Hom}(K, G)$. If $K$ is positive in lower indices, $\text{Hom}(K,G)$ is positive in upper indices.

The homology of this complex $\text{Hom}(K,G)$ is called the \textit{cohomology} of $K$ with \textit{coefficients} in $G$. With upper indices, it is the family of abelian groups

$$H^\bullet(K,G) = H^\bullet(\text{Hom}(K,G)) = \text{Ker} \delta^n / \delta \text{Hom}(K_{n-1},G).$$

(3.3)

An element of $8 \text{Hom}(K, -, G)$ is called an $n$-co\textit{coboundary} and an element of $\text{Ker} \delta^n$ an $n$-c\textit{ocycle}. Thus a cocycle is a homomorphism $f$: $K_n \rightarrow G$ with $fa = 0$: $K_{n+1} \rightarrow G$. Any chain transformation $h$: $K \rightarrow K'$ induces a chain transformation $h^* = \text{Hom}(h, 1): \text{Hom}(K', G) \rightarrow \text{Hom}(K, G)$. Thus $\text{Hom}(K,G)$ and $H^n(K,G)$ are bifunctors, covariant in $G$ and contravariant in $K$. If $s: h \simeq g$ is a homotopy, then (2.3) implies that $s_n^* \partial_{n+1}^* + \partial_n^* s_{n-1}^* = h, -g^*$. Hence $n+1 = (-1)^{n+1} s_n^*$ is a homotopy $t: h^* \simeq g^*$.

More generally, we may define a complex $\text{Hom}_R(K, L)$ from any pair of complexes $K$ and $L$ of $R$-modules. With lower indices, set

$$\text{Hom}_n(K, L) = \prod_{p=-\infty}^{\infty} \text{Hom}_R(K_p, L_{p+n}),$$

(3.4)

so that an element $f$ of $\text{Hom}$ is a family of homomorphisms $f_p: K_p \rightarrow L_{p+n}$ for $-\infty < p < \infty$. The boundary $\partial_H f$ is the family $(\partial_H f)_p: K_p \rightarrow L_{p+n+1}$ defined by

$$(\partial_H f)_p k = \partial_L(f_p k) + (-1)^n f_{p-1}(\partial_K k), \quad k \in K_p, \quad f \in \text{Hom}_n, \quad (3.5)$$

where $\partial_L$ and $\partial_K$ denote the boundary operators in $K$ and $L$, respectively. That this definition yields a complex is proved by the calculation:

$$(\partial_H \partial_H f)_p k = \partial_L(\partial_L f_p k) + (-1)^n \partial_L f_{p-1} \partial_K k$$

$$+ (-1)^{n+1} \partial_L f_{p-1} \partial_K k + (-1)^1 f_{p-2}(\partial_K \partial_K k) = 0,$$

since $\partial_L, \partial_L = 0 = \partial_K \partial_K$. Clearly, $\text{Hom}_R(K, L)$ is a bifunctor covariant in $L$ and contravariant in $K$.

The signs in the definition (3.5) have been chosen so as to give the following two results.

Proposition 3.1. \textit{When the ring R is regarded as a trivial complex, then $\text{Hom}(R, L) \cong L$ under the natural homomorphism which assigns to each $f_p: R \rightarrow L_p$ its image $f_p(1) \in L_p$.}

Proof. This correspondence gives an isomorphism $\text{Hom}(R, L_p) \cong L_p$ for each $p$. In this case the boundary formula (3.5) has no terms with $\partial_K$; the remaining term with $\partial_L f$ shows that this isomorphism commutes with boundaries.
Chapter II. Homology of Complexes

Proposition 3.2. A 0-dimensional cycle of \( \text{Hom}(K,L) \) is a chain transformation \( f: K \to L \), it is the boundary of an element \( s \) in \( \text{Hom}_{0}(K,L) \) exactly when \( s \) is a homotopy \( s: f \simeq 0 \).

Proof. The formula (4.5) for the boundary (with signs) becomes

\[
\begin{align*}
(\partial_H f)_p &= \partial_L f_p - f_{p-1} \partial_K, & n = 0, \\
(\partial_H s)_p &= \partial_L s_p + s_{p-1} \partial_K, & n = 1.
\end{align*}
\]

Thus \( \partial_H f = 0 \) asserts that \( f: K \to L \) is a chain transformation and \( \partial_H s = f \) asserts that \( f = \partial_L s + s \partial_K \), whence \( s: f \simeq 0 \), as asserted. These conclusions may be reformulated as

Corollary 3.3. The homology group \( H_0(\text{Hom}(K,L)) \) is the abelian group of homotopy classes of chain transformations \( f: K \to L \).

In particular, when \( L = G \) is a trivial complex, the boundary \( \partial_L \) is zero, an element \( f \) of \( \text{Hom}_n(K,G) \) is a single homomorphism \( f: K_n \to G \), and \( \partial_H f = (-1)^{n+1} f: K_{n+1} \to G \). With upper indices, this states that an element of \( \text{Hom}^n(K,G) \) is a homomorphism \( f: K_n \to G \) with coboundary \( \delta f = (-1)^{n+1} f \partial \). This agrees with the sign already used in (3.1), and explains the sign there. The reader should be warned, however, that most of the present literature on cohomology does not use this sign, and writes instead \( \delta f = f \partial \).

4. The Exact Homology Sequence

Consider any short exact sequence

\[
E: 0 \to K \xrightarrow{\iota} L \xrightarrow{\sigma} M \to 0
\]

of chain complexes and chain transformations \( \iota, \sigma \). The first transformation \( \iota \) has kernel zero, but the induced map \( H_n(\iota): H_n(K) \to H_n(L) \) on homology may have a non-trivial kernel, as in Example 1.3. To study when this can happen, identify \( K \) with the subcomplex \( \iota K \) of \( L \) and consider a cycle \( c \) of \( K \), whose homology class becomes zero in \( L \). This means that \( c = \partial l \) for some \( (n+1) \)-chain \( l \in L \), and hence that the coset \( l + K_{n+1} \) is a cycle of the quotient complex \( L/K \cong M \). Conversely, any homology class of \( H_{n+1}(L/K) \) consists of cycles \( l + K_{n+1} \) with \( \partial l = c \in K \), hence yields a homology class \( c \in H_n(K) \) which is in the kernel of \( H_n(\sigma) \). This correspondence of \( l + K_{n+1} \) to \( c \) is a homomorphism \( H_{n+1}(L/K) \to H_n(K) \) which we now describe systematically.

In (4.1), let \( m \) be a cycle in \( M_{n+1} \). Since \( \sigma \) is an epimorphism, one can choose \( l \in L_{n+1} \) with \( \sigma l = m \). Since \( \partial m = 0 \), one has \( \sigma \partial l = 0 \); since \( E \) is exact, there is a unique cycle \( c \in K_n \) with \( \iota c = \partial l \), as in

\[
\begin{align*}
l &\to m \\
\downarrow &\downarrow \\
c &\to \partial l \to 0
\end{align*}
\]

in

\[
\begin{align*}
K_n &\xrightarrow{\iota} L_n \to M_n \\
\downarrow &\downarrow \\
K_n &\xrightarrow{\iota} L_n \to M_n
\end{align*}
\]
The homology class \( \text{cls}(c) \in H_n(K) \) is independent of the choice of \( l \) with \( \sigma l = m \), depends only on the homology class of \( m \), and is additive in \( m \). Hence \( \partial_E(\text{cls}m) = \text{cls}c \) defines a homomorphism
\[
\partial_E : H_{n+1}(M) \rightarrow H_n(K) \tag{4.2}
\]
called the invariant boundary or the connecting homomorphism for \( E \). Specifically
\[
\partial_E \text{cls}m = \text{cls}c \quad \text{when} \quad \kappa c = \sigma l, \quad \sigma l = m \quad \text{for some} \ 1. \tag{4.3}
\]
This suggests the notation \( c = \kappa^{-1} \sigma^{-1} m \); or regard \( \text{cls} \) as a homomorphism \( \text{cls}_K : C_n(K) \rightarrow H_n(K) \); then \( \partial_E \) is defined by a "switchback" formula \( \partial_E = (\text{cls}_K)^{-1} \sigma^{-1} (\text{cls}_M)^{-1} \) — even though the inverses \( \text{cls}^{-1} \), \( \kappa^{-1} \), \( \sigma^{-1} \) are not strictly defined (but see §6 below).

**Theorem 4.1.** (Exact homology sequence.) For each short exact sequence (4.1) of chain complexes the corresponding long sequence
\[
\cdots \rightarrow H_{n+1}(M) \xrightarrow{\partial_E} H_n(K) \xrightarrow{\kappa_*} H_n(L) \xrightarrow{\sigma_*} H_n(M) \xrightarrow{\partial_E} H_{n-1}(K) \rightarrow \cdots \tag{4.4}
\]
of homology groups, with maps the connecting homomorphism \( \partial_E, \ \kappa_* = \text{Hom}, \ \sigma_* = \text{Hom} \), and \( a = H_n(o) \) is exact.

This sequence (4.4) is infinite in both directions, but is zero for \( n < 0 \) when the complexes are positive. It gives the desired description of the kernel and cokernel of \( H_n(x) : H_n(K) \rightarrow H_n(L) \) when \( \kappa \) is a monomorphism; namely the kernel is \( \partial_E H_{n+1}(M) \), and the cokernel is isomorphic to \( \sigma_* H_n(L) \).

**Proof.** By the definitions, the composite of any two successive homomorphisms in the sequence (4.4) is the zero homomorphism. It remains to show for each dimension \( n \) that (i) \( \text{Ker} \kappa_* \subset \partial_E H_{n+1}(M) \); (ii) \( \text{Ker} \sigma_* \subset \kappa_* H_n(K) \); (iii) \( \text{Ker} \partial_E \subset \sigma_* H_n(L) \). Our preparatory discussion showed the first true.

To prove the second inclusion, suppose that \( \text{cls}(c) \) is the homology class of a cycle \( c \) of \( L \), such that \( a, \ \text{cls}(c) = 0 \). This means that \( \sigma c = \sigma m \) for some \( m \in M_{n+1} \). Since \( a \) is an epimorphism, there is a \( l \in L_{n+1} \) with \( \sigma l = m \). Hence \( \sigma (c - \partial l) = 0 \), so that \( c - \partial l = \kappa k \) for some \( k \in K_n \) with \( \partial k = 0 \). This asserts that \( \text{cls}(c) = \text{cls}(c - \partial l) = \kappa_* \text{cls}(k) \) is in the image of \( \kappa_* \).

To prove the third inclusion, recall that \( \partial_E \text{cls}(m) = \text{cls}c \), where \( c \in K_{n-1} \) and \( l \in L_n \) have \( \kappa c = \partial l, \ \sigma l = m \), as in (4.3). If \( \text{cls}c = 0 \), there is a \( k' \) in \( K_n \) with \( \partial k' = c \). Then \( \kappa \partial k' = \partial l \), hence \( \partial (l - \kappa k') = 0 \). Thus \( l - \kappa k' \) is a cycle of \( L \), and \( \sigma (l - \kappa k') = \sigma l = m \), so that \( \text{cls}(m) \in \text{Im} \sigma_* \), as asserted. This completes the proof.
Consider the category $\mathcal{E}$ of short exact sequences of chain complexes. A morphism $E \to E'$ in this category is a triple $(f, g, h)$ of chain transformations which render the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
E: & 0 & \to K \\ & \downarrow \Phi & \Rightarrow \\ & L & \to M & \to 0
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
E': & 0 & \to K' \\ & \downarrow \Phi' & \Rightarrow \\ & L' & \to M' & \to 0
\end{array}
\]

commutative. For each $n$, $H_n(K), H_n(L),$ and $H_n(M)$ are functors of $E$.

**Proposition 4.2.** For each $E \in \mathcal{E}$, the connecting homomorphism $\partial_E: H_{n+1}(M) \to H_n(K)$ is natural.

The statement that $\partial_E$ is natural means exactly that the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
H_{n+1}(M) & \xrightarrow{\partial g} & H_n(K) \\ \downarrow H_{n+1}(\Phi) & \Rightarrow & \downarrow H_n(\Phi) \\
H_{n+1}(M') & \xrightarrow{\partial g'} & H_n(K')
\end{array}
\]

is commutative. The proof is an easy diagram chase in (4.5) with the definition of $\partial_E$. The conclusion can be expressed in a bigger diagram:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\cdots & \to & H_{n+1}(L') \xrightarrow{\partial g} H_{n+1}(M') \xrightarrow{\partial g} H_n(K') \xrightarrow{\alpha} H_n(L') \\
\downarrow \Phi' & \Rightarrow & \downarrow \Phi' \\
\cdots & \to & H_{n+1}(L) \xrightarrow{\partial g} H_{n+1}(M) \xrightarrow{\partial g} H_n(K) \xrightarrow{\alpha} H_n(L) \xrightarrow{\Phi} \cdots
\end{array}
\]

Here the rows are the exact homology sequences of Thm.4.1 for $E$ and $E'$ and the whole diagram is commutative; for example, the left hand square because $\partial' \Phi = (a'g) \Phi$, $h$, $a = (ha)$, and $\partial' g = ha$ by the commutativity of (4.5). The conclusion may be formulated thus: A morphism of $E$ to $E'$ induces a morphism of the exact homology sequence of $E$ to that of $E'$.

The mapping cone of a chain transformation $f: K \to K'$ gives an example of this exact sequence. The problem is that of fitting the induced maps $j: H_n(K) \to H_n(K')$ on homology into an exact sequence. For this purpose, construct a complex $M = M(f)$, called the **mapping cone** of $f$ (or sometimes, with less accuracy, the **mapping cylinder** of $f$), with

\[M_n = K_{n-1} \oplus K'_n, \quad \partial(k, k') = (-\partial k, \partial k' + jk).
\]

Then $\partial: M_n \to M_{n-1}$ satisfies $\partial^2 = 0$, so $M$ is a complex, and the injection $i: K' \to M$ is a chain transformation. The projection $n: M \to K^+$ with $\pi(k, k') = k$ is also a chain transformation, if by $K^+$ we mean the complex $K$ with the dimensions all raised by one and the sign of the boundary changed (i.e., $(K^*)_n = K_{n-1}$). Moreover $E_j: K' \to M \circ K^+$ is a short exact sequence of complexes. Hence
Proposition 4.3. A chain transformation $f: K \rightarrow K'$ with mapping cone $M(f)$ determines an exact sequence

$$\cdots \rightarrow H_n(K') \xrightarrow{\partial_*} H_n(M(f)) \xrightarrow{\pi_*} H_{n-1}(K) \xrightarrow{f_*} H_{n-1}(K') \rightarrow \cdots.$$  

**Proof.** This is the exact sequence of $E_f$, with $H_n(K') \cong H_{n-1}(K)$; moreover the connecting homomorphism $\partial_{E_f}: H_n(K') \rightarrow H_{n-1}(K')$ can be seen to be identical with the homomorphism induced by $f$.

The mapping cone is the algebraic analogue of the following geometric construction. Let $f: X \rightarrow X'$ be a continuous map of topological spaces. Form the cone over $X$ by taking the cartesian product $X \times I$ with the unit interval $I$ and identifying all points $(x,0)$ for $x \in X$. Attach this cone to $X'$ by identifying each point $(x,1)$ of $X \times I$ with $f(x) \in X'$; the resulting space is the mapping cone of $f$, and suggests our boundary formula. Dold [1960] gives a further development of these ideas.

We now consider exact cohomology sequences. A short exact sequence $E$ of complexes of $R$-modules is said to split as a sequence of modules if for each $n$ the sequence $K_n \rightarrow L_n \rightarrow M_n$ splits; that is, if for each $n$, $K_n$ is a direct summand of $L_n$. For example, if each $M_n$ is a projective module, then $E$ of (4.1) splits as a sequence of modules, by Thm. 1.6.3.

**Theorem 4.4.** If $G$ is an $R$-module and $E$ a short exact sequence (4.1) of complexes of $R$-modules which splits as a sequence of modules, then there is for each dimension $n$ a natural connecting homomorphism $\delta_E: H^n(K,G) \rightarrow H^{n+1}(M,G)$ such that the sequence of cohomology groups

$$\cdots \rightarrow H^n(M,G) \xrightarrow{\sigma^*} H^n(L,G) \xrightarrow{\pi^*} H^n(K,G) \xrightarrow{\delta_E} H^{n+1}(M,G) \rightarrow \cdots$$  

(4.8) is exact.

**Proof.** To construct the cohomology of $E$, first apply the contravariant functor $\text{Hom}_R(-,G)$ to $E$ to get the reversed sequence of complexes

$$E^*: 0 \rightarrow \text{Hom}(M,G) \rightarrow \text{Hom}(L,G) \rightarrow \text{Hom}(K,G) \rightarrow 0.$$  

Since the given sequences splits as a sequence of modules, $E^*$ is exact. The connecting homomorphism $\partial_{E^*}: H^{n+1}(\text{Hom}(K,G)) \rightarrow H_n(\text{Hom}(M,G))$ for $E^*$, when written with upper indices $H^{n-1} = H_{-n+1}$, is the desired connecting homomorphism $\delta_E$. By Prop. 4.2 it follows that $\delta_E$ is natural when the arguments $H^n(K,G)$ and $H^{n+1}(M,G)$ are regarded as
contravariant functors on the category of those short exact sequences of complexes which split as modules. For that matter, \( \delta_6 \) is also natural when its arguments are regarded as covariant functors of the R-module G. Finally, the exact homology sequence for \( E^* \), with indices shifted up, becomes the desired exact cohomology sequence (4.8).

For reference we describe the action of \( \delta_E \) in terms of cochains. Since \( E^* \) is exact, each \( n \)-cocycle of \( K \), regarded as a homomorphism \( f: K_n \rightarrow G \), can be written as \( f = gx \) where \( g: L \rightarrow G \) is an \( n \)-cochain of \( L \). Then \( g \partial x = gx \partial = f \partial = 0 \), so \( g \partial \) factors through \( a \) as \( g \partial = h \sigma \) for some \( h: M_{n+1} \rightarrow G \). Since \( h \partial \sigma = h \sigma \partial = g \partial \partial = 0 \), and \( a \) is an epimorphism, it follows that \( h \partial = 0 \); \( h \) is a cocycle of \( M \). Then

\[
\delta_E \text{cls} f = \text{cls} h \quad \text{defines} \quad \delta_E: H^n(K, G) \rightarrow H^{n+1}(M, G) \quad (4.9)
\]

by \( h \sigma = g \partial \), \( gx = f \) for some \( g \). This is again a switchback rule: \( \delta_E = \text{cls} \sigma \star^{-1} \delta x \star^{-1} \text{cls}^{-1} \).

Another exact sequence of cohomology groups arises from a short exact sequence

\[
S: 0 \rightarrow G' \rightarrow G \rightarrow G'' \rightarrow 0 \quad (4.10)
\]

of "coefficient" modules. If \( K \) is any complex, the monomorphism \( \lambda: G+G' \rightarrow G+G'' \) induces homomorphisms \( \lambda_*: H^n(K, G') \rightarrow H^n(K, G) \). The inquiry as to the kernel and the cokernel of \( \lambda_* \) is met by the following exact sequence (which is not a dual to that of Thm. 4.4):

**Theorem 4.5.** If \( K \) is a complex of \( R \)-modules with each module \( K_n \) projective and \( \bar{f} \) S is a short exact sequence of \( R \)-modules, as in (4.10), there is for each dimension a connecting homomorphism \( \delta_S: H^n(K, G') \rightarrow H^{n+1}(K, G'') \) which is natural when its arguments are regarded as covariant functors of the exact sequence \( S \) or as contravariant functors of \( K \) and which yields the long exact sequence:

\[
\cdots \rightarrow H^n(K, G') \xrightarrow{\lambda_*} H^n(K, G) \xrightarrow{\tau_*} H^n(K, G'') \xrightarrow{\delta_S} H^{n+1}(K, G') \rightarrow \cdots \quad (4.11)
\]

**Proof.** Since each \( K_n \) is projective,

\[
S_*: 0 \rightarrow \text{Hom}(K, G') \rightarrow \text{Hom}(K, G) \rightarrow \text{Hom}(K, G'') \rightarrow 0
\]

is exact, and yields \( \delta_S \) as \( \delta_{S_*} \), with the usual shift to upper indices, and with (4.11) as a consequence of Thm. 4.1.

Note the explicit rule for constructing \( \delta_S \). Let \( f: K_n \rightarrow G'' \) be a cocycle. Since \( S_* \) is exact, we may write \( f = \tau g \) for \( g: K_n \rightarrow G \) a cochain; since \( f \) is a cocycle, \( g \partial = \lambda h \), where \( h: K_{n+1} \rightarrow G' \) is a cocycle. Then

\[
\delta_S \text{cls} f = \text{cls} h, \quad \lambda h = g \partial, \quad \tau g = f. \quad (4.12)
\]

This is again a switchback rule: \( \delta_S = \text{cls} \lambda^{-1} \tau^{-1} \text{cls}^{-1} \).
5. Some Diagram Lemmas

An application of the exact homology sequence is

**Lemma 5.1. (The 3×3 Lemma.)** In the following commutative diagram of modules

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
0 & \rightarrow & A_3 \xrightarrow{\alpha_3} A_2 \xrightarrow{\alpha_1} A_1 \rightarrow 0 \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
0 & \rightarrow & B_3 \xrightarrow{\beta_3} B_2 \xrightarrow{\beta_1} B_1 \rightarrow 0 \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
0 & \rightarrow & C_3 \xrightarrow{\gamma_3} C_2 \xrightarrow{\gamma_1} C_1 \rightarrow 0 \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
0 & & 0 & & 0
\end{array}
\]

suppose that all three columns and the first two rows (or the last two rows) are short exact sequences. Then the remaining row is exact.
Chapter II. Homology of Complexes

Proof. Any sequence \( A_3 \rightarrow A_2 \rightarrow A_1 \) with maps \( \alpha_2, \alpha_1 \) such that \( \alpha_1 \alpha_2 = 0 \) may be regarded as a chain complex \( A \) with \( \alpha_2, \alpha_1 \) as the boundary homomorphisms and with non-zero chains only in dimensions 1, 2, and 3. The homology of this complex will vanish (in dimensions 1, 2, and 3) precisely when it is a short exact sequence.

Suppose now that the last two rows are exact. Then, for \( a \in A_3 \), \( \nu \alpha_1 \alpha_2 a = \beta_1 \beta_2 \lambda a = 0 \); since \( \nu \) is a monomorphism, \( \alpha_1 \alpha_2 a = 0 \). Thus the first row is indeed a complex. Since the columns are exact we may now regard the whole \( 3 \times 3 \) diagram as a short exact sequence \( 0 \rightarrow A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C \rightarrow 0 \) of three complexes. The relative homology sequence now reads

\[
\cdots \rightarrow H_{n+1}(C) \rightarrow H_n(A) \rightarrow H_n(B) \rightarrow \cdots.
\]

But the exactness of rows \( B \) and \( C \) give \( H_{n+1}(C) = 0 = H_n(B) \), so the exactness of the relative homology sequence makes \( H_n(A) = 0 \) for \( n = 1, 2, \) and 3.

The argument is similar, given that the first two rows are exact.

The chief result of this chapter — the exactness of the homology sequence (4.4) — can be proved in a different way from a lemma on short exact sequences of modules.

A morphism of short exact sequences has the form of a commutative diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
0 & \rightarrow & A \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \alpha \\
A' & \rightarrow & B \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \beta \\
0 & \rightarrow & C
\end{array}
\]

with exact rows; the kernel and the cokernel of this morphism are short sequences, but need not be exact (example: map \( 0 \rightarrow A = A \) to \( A = A \rightarrow 0 \) with \( /? \neq \)). The horizontal maps of the diagram do induce maps which give exact sequences

\[
0 \rightarrow \text{Ker} \alpha \rightarrow \text{Ker} \beta \rightarrow \text{Ker} \gamma
\]

and

\[
\text{Coker} \nu \rightarrow \text{Coker} \beta \rightarrow \text{Coker} \gamma \rightarrow 0.
\]

They can be combined in a long exact sequence:

**Lemma 5.2.** For any commutative diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
A & \rightarrow & B \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \alpha \\
A' & \rightarrow & B'
\end{array}
\]

with exact rows there is a map \( D_* : \text{Ker} \alpha \rightarrow \text{Coker} \alpha, \text{natural} \) for functors of the diagram \( D \), such that the sequence

\[
\text{Ker} \alpha \rightarrow \text{Ker} \beta \rightarrow \text{Ker} \gamma \xrightarrow{D_*} \text{Coker} \alpha \rightarrow \text{Coker} \beta \rightarrow \text{Coker} \gamma
\]

is exact. We call (5.2) the Ker-Coker sequence.
6. Additive Relations

Proof. Let \( \iota : \text{Ker} \rightarrow C \) be the injection, \( \eta : A' \rightarrow A' / \alpha A \), the projection. The switchback formula \( D = \eta (\alpha')^{-1} \beta a - \iota \) then defines \( D \), without ambiguity. To prove the exactness of (5.2), say at Coker, suppose \( \alpha' (a' + a A) = 0 \) for some \( a' \). Then \( \alpha' a' = \beta b \) for some \( b \) and \( a' x' a = yab = 0 \), so \( ab \in \text{Ker} \) has \( D, ab = a' + a A \), which is the required exactness. The rest of the proof is similar.

We call \( D \), the connecting homomorphism of the diagram \( D \).

Now we prove Thm. 4.1 for the short exact sequence \( E \) of complexes \( \mathcal{K} \rightarrow \mathcal{L} \rightarrow \mathcal{M} \). Let \( C_n(K) \) denote the module of \( n \)-cycles of \( K \) and form the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{cccccc}
K_n / \partial K_n & \rightarrow & L_n / \partial L_n & \rightarrow & M_n / \partial M_n & \rightarrow 0 \\
\downarrow \partial & & \downarrow \partial & & \downarrow \partial & \\
D(E): & 0 & \rightarrow & C_{n-1}(K) & \rightarrow & C_{n-1}(L) & \rightarrow & C_{n-1}(M)
\end{array}
\]

with exact rows and vertical maps induced by \( \partial \). The first kernel is \( C_n(K) / \partial K_{n+1} = H_n(K) \), and the first cokernel is \( C_{n-1}(K) / \partial K_n = H_{n-1}(K) \), so the Ker-Coker sequence (5.2) is

\[
H_n(K) \rightarrow H_n(L) \rightarrow H_n(M) \xrightarrow{D(E)_*} H_{n-1}(K) \rightarrow H_{n-1}(L) \rightarrow H_{n-1}(M).
\]

The middle map \( D(E)_* \), as defined by switchback, is identical with the connecting homomorphism \( \partial_E \) of Thm. 4.1.

Exercises

1. Prove the \( 3 \times 3 \) lemma by diagram chasing, without using the exact homology sequence.

2. If in the hypotheses of the \( 3 \times 3 \) lemma one assumes only the first and third rows exact, show that the second row need not be exact, but will be exact if \( \beta_1 \beta_2 = 0 \).

3. Under the hypotheses of the \( 3 \times 3 \) lemma, establish exact sequences

\[
\begin{align*}
0 & \rightarrow A_2 \rightarrow B_2 \oplus A_2 \rightarrow B_2 \rightarrow C_1 \rightarrow 0 \\
0 & \rightarrow A_2 \rightarrow B_2 \oplus B_1 \rightarrow C_1 \rightarrow 0.
\end{align*}
\]

4. In a commutative \( 3 \times 3 \) diagram assume only that all three columns are \"left exact\" (i.e., exact at \( A \) and \( B \)) and that the last two rows are left exact. Prove that the first row is left exact. If, in addition \( \beta_1 \) and \( \xi \) are epimorphisms, prove that the first row is exact.

5. Prove the Ker-Coker sequence from the exact homology sequence. [Hint: Replace \( A \) by \( \text{Coim}(A \rightarrow B) \) and dually for \( C' \).]

6. For any homomorphisms \( \alpha : A \rightarrow B, \beta : B \rightarrow C \) establish an exact sequence

\[
0 \rightarrow \text{Ker} \alpha \rightarrow \text{Ker} \beta \alpha \rightarrow \text{Ker} \beta \rightarrow \text{Ker} \alpha \rightarrow \text{Coker} \beta \alpha \rightarrow \text{Coker} \beta \rightarrow 0.
\]

6. Additive Relations

The "switchback" formulas can be justified in terms of "additive relations". They will appear later in the treatment of spectral sequences.

An additive relation \( r : A \rightarrow B \) is defined to be a submodule of the direct sum \( A \oplus B \); in other words, \( r \) is a set of pairs \( (a, b) \) closed under addition
and subtraction. The converse of \( r \) is the additive relation \( r^{-1} : B \rightarrow A \) consisting of all pairs \((b,a)\) with \((a,b) \in r\). If \( s : B \rightarrow C \) is another additive relation, the composite \( sr : A \rightarrow C \) is the set of all those pairs \((a,c)\) such that there is a \( b \in B \) with \((a,b) \in r \) and \((b,c) \in s\). This composition is associative, when defined. The **graph** of a homomorphism \( a : A \rightarrow B \) is the additive relation consisting of all pairs \((a,x)\) for \( a \in A \); since the composite of two graphs is the graph of the composite homomorphism, we may identify each homomorphism with its graph. The class with objects all modules and morphisms all additive relations \( r : A \rightarrow B \) is a category — but note that \( rr^{-1} \) need not be the identity relation.

For each additive relation \( r : A \rightarrow B \) introduce the submodules

\[
\text{Def}_r = \left\{ a \mid (\exists b) (a,b) \in r \right\}, \quad \text{Im}_r = \text{Def}_r^{-1}, \\
\text{Ker}_r = \left\{ a \mid (a,0) \in r \right\}, \quad \text{Ind}_r = \text{Ker}_r^{-1}.
\]

(6.1)

Here \( \text{Ker}_r \subset \text{Def}_r \subset A \) and \( \text{Ind}_r \subset \text{Im}_r \subset B \). \( \text{Def}_r \) is the domain of definition of \( r \), while \( \text{Ind} \) is the "indeterminancy" of \( r \), and consists of all \( b \) with \((0,b) \in r\). Moreover, \( r \) is the graph of a homomorphism if and only if \( \text{Def}_r = A \) and \( \text{Ind}_r = 0 \).

For example, the converse of a homomorphism \( \beta : B + A \) is an additive relation \( \beta^{-1} \) with \( \text{Def}_{\beta^{-1}} = \text{Im}_\beta \), \( \text{Ind}_{\beta^{-1}} = \text{Ker}_\beta \). In a complex \( K \) the set of pairs \((c, \text{cls}_c)\) for \( c \in C_n(K) \) is an additive relation \( \text{cls} : K_n \rightarrow H_n(K) \) with \( \text{Def}(\text{cls}) = C_n(K) \). With these observations, the "switchback" formula for the connecting homomorphism appears as the composite of additive relations.

Any additive relation can be regarded as a "many-valued homomorphism; more exactly, as a homomorphism of a submodule to a quotient module:

**Proposition 6.1.** Each additive relation \( r : A \rightarrow B \) determines a homomorphism \( r^0 : \text{Def}_r + B/(\text{Ind}_r) \) such that

\[
r = \pi^{-1} r^0 j^{-1}, \quad j : \text{Def}_r \rightarrow A, \quad n : B \rightarrow B/\text{Ind}_r,
\]

(6.2)

where \( j \) is the injection and \( n \) the projection. Conversely, given a submodule \( S \subset A \), a quotient module \( B/L \) of \( B \), and a homomorphism \( \beta : S \rightarrow B/L \) there is a unique additive relation \( r : A \rightarrow B \) with \( r^0 = \beta \).

**Proof.** Given \( a \in \text{Def}_r \), \((a,b) \in r \) and \((a,b') \in r \) imply \((0,b-b') \in r \), hence \( b-b' \in \text{Ind}_r \). Then \( r^0(a) = b+\text{Ind}_r \) defines a homomorphism \( r^0 \) with the desired form (6.2). Conversely, given \( \beta \), \( r \) is the set of all pairs \((s,b)\) with \( b \in \beta(s) \).

A similar argument shows that each additive relation \( r \) induces an isomorphism \( \theta_r : (\text{Def}_r)/(\text{Ker}_r) \cong (\text{Im}_r)/(\text{Ind}_r) \); conversely, each isomorphism of a subquotient of \( A \) to a subquotient of \( B \) arises in this way from a unique additive relation \( r \).
Given subquotients \( S/K \) of \( A \) and \( S'/K' \) of \( A' \), each homomorphism \( \alpha: A \to A' \) induces an additive relation

\[
\alpha\# = \alpha(S/K, S'/K') : S/K \to S'/K',
\]
defined to be the set of all pairs \((s + K, s' + K')\) of cosets with \( s \in S \), \( s' \in S' \), and \( s' = \alpha s \). This includes the previous notion of induced homomorphisms.

For an equivalence one can determine the inverse of an induced relation.

Proposition 6.2. (Equivalence principle.) If \( \theta: A \to A' \) is an equivalence, then

\[
(\theta\#)^{-1} = (\theta^{-1})\#: S'/K' \to S/K.
\]

Indeed, each of \((\theta\#)^{-1}\) and \((\theta^{-1})\#\) consists of the same pairs.

In Chap. XI we will use the composite of two induced relations. This is not always the relation induced by the composite homomorphism. For example, in the direct sum \( A = B \oplus B \) let \( B_1 \) be the submodule of all \((b, 0)\), \( B \) the submodule of all \((0, b)\) and \( A \) the submodule of all \((b, b)\) (the "diagonal" submodule). Then \( 1_A \) induces isomorphisms \( B_1 \cong A/B \cong A \), but the relation \( B_1 \to A \) induced by \( 1_A \) consists of \((0, 0)\) alone. Composition works reasonably well only under a restrictive hypothesis, as follows:

Proposition 6.3. (Composition principle.) If homomorphisms \( \alpha: A \to A' \) and \( \beta: A' \to A'' \) induce the additive relations \( \alpha\# : S/K \to S'/K' \) and \( \beta\# : S'/K' \to S''/K'' \) on given subquotients, then

\[
\beta\# \alpha\# = (\beta \alpha)\#: S/K \to S''/K'',
\]
provided (i) either \( K > K' \) or \( K' > K'' \) and (ii) either \( S < S' \) or \( \beta^{-1} S'' < S' \).

Proof. Suppose first that \((s + K, s'' + K'') \in \beta\# \alpha\# \). By definition of the composite of two relations, there are \( s_1' \) and \( s_2' \) in \( S' \) with \( s_1' + K' = s_2' + K' \) and \( \alpha s = s_1' \), \( \beta s_2' = s'' \). Thus \( s_1' - s_2' = k' \in K' \), and \( \alpha s = s'' + \beta k' \). In case either \( \beta K' < K'' \) or \( K < a K \) this gives \((s + K, s'' + K'') \in (\beta \alpha)\# \), so hypothesis (i) gives \( \beta\# \alpha\# \in (\beta \alpha)\# \). Similarly, (ii) gives the opposite inclusion.

Exercises

1. For each additive relation \( r: A \to B \), prove \( rr^{-1} r = r \).
2. For additive relations \( r \) and \( s \), prove \((rs)^{-1} = s^{-1} r^{-1} \).
3. If \( u = A \to A \) is an additive relation with \( u^{-1} = u = u^2 \), prove that there are submodules \( K < S < A \) with \( u = [(s, s + k) \mid s \in S, k \in K] \). Establish the converse.
4. For each additive relation \( r: A \to B \), describe \( rr^{-1} \) and \( r^{-1} r \).
5. Under the hypotheses of the strong Four Lemma (Lemma I.3.2), prove \( \xi \alpha^{-1} = \beta^{-1} \eta \).
Chapter 11. Homology of Complexes

7. Singular Homology

The use of complexes may be illustrated by a brief description of the singular homology groups of a topological space. We first introduce affine simplices.

Let $E$ be an $n$-dimensional Euclidean space; that is, an $n$-dimensional vector space over the field of real numbers in which there is given a symmetric, bilinear, and positive definite inner product $(u, v)$ for each pair of vectors $u, v \in E$. The usual distance function $d(u, v) = (u - v, u - v)^{1/2}$ makes $E$ a metric space and hence a topological space. In particular, $E$ may be the space $E^n$ of all $n$-tuples $u = (a, \ldots, a)$ of real numbers $a$, with termwise addition and with the standard inner product $(a_1, \ldots, a_n) = \sum a_i b_i$.

The line segment joining two points $u, v \in E$ is the set of all points $tu + (1 - t)v$, for $t$ real and $0 \leq t \leq 1$; that is, of all points $x_0 u + x_1 v$, where $x_0, x_1$ are real numbers with $x_0 + x_1 = 1$, $x_0 \geq 0$, $x_1 \geq 0$. A subset $C$ of $E$ is convex if it contains the line segment joining any two of its points. If $u_0, \ldots, u_m$ are $m + 1$ points of $E$, the set of all points

$$u = x_0 u_0 + \cdots + x_m u_m, \quad x_0 + x_1 + \cdots + x_m = 1, \quad x_i \geq 0 \quad (7.1)$$

is a convex set containing $u_0, \ldots, u_m$ and in fact the smallest convex set containing these points; it is called the convex hull of $u_0, \ldots, u_m$. The points $u_0, \ldots, u_m$ are said to be affine independent if every point of this convex hull has a unique representation in the form (7.1); the real numbers $x_i$ are then the barycentric coordinates of $u$ relative to $u_0, \ldots, u_m$. It can be shown that the points $u_0, \ldots, u_m$ are affine independent if and only if the vectors $u_1 - u_0, \ldots, u_m - u_0$ are linearly independent.

An affine $m$-simplex is by definition the convex hull of $m + 1$ affine independent points. These points are the vertices of the simplex. Thus a 1-simplex is a line segment, a 2-simplex is a triangle (with interior), a 3-simplex is a tetrahedron, etc. For each dimension $n$ we will take a standard affine $n$-simplex $A^n$ in the space $E^n$, and we will label the vertices of $A^n$ as $(0, 1, \ldots, n)$. (For example, take $O$ to be the origin and $1, \ldots, n$ a basis of $n$ orthogonal vectors in $E^n$.)

For any topological space $X$, a singular $n$-simplex $T$ in $X$ is a continuous map $T: A^n \to X$. Thus a singular 0-simplex of $X$ is just a point of $X$, or, more accurately, a map of the standard point $A^0$ into (a point of) $X$. We first construct certain singular simplices in convex subsets of $E$.

Let $E$ and $E'$ be Euclidean spaces, $L: E \to E'$ a linear transformation and $u'_0$ a fixed vector of $E'$. The function $f(u) = u'_0 + L(u)$ on $E$ to $E'$ is called an affine transformation $f: E \to E'$. As the composite of the linear transformation $L$ with the translation by $u'_0$, $f$ is continuous.
Proposition 7.1. If $u_0, \ldots, u_n$ are $n+1$ affine independent points in $E^n$, while $v_0, \ldots, v_n \in E'$, there is a unique affine transformation $f: E^n \rightarrow E'$ with $f(u_i) = v_i$, $i = 0, \ldots, n$.

Proof. The vectors $u_i - u_0$, $i = 1, \ldots, n$, are a basis of $E^n$. Let $L$ be the unique linear transformation with $L(u_i - u_0) = v_i - v_0$; $f(u) = v_0 - L(u_0) + L(u)$ is the required affine transformation: It may also be written in barycentric coordinates as

$$f(x_0 u_0 + \cdots + x_n u_n) = x_0 v_0 + \cdots + x_n v_n, \quad \sum x_i = 1.$$ 

In particular, let $v_0, \ldots, v_n$ be an ordered set of points in a convex subset $C$ of $E'$. The unique affine transformation $f: E^n \rightarrow E'$ which carries the vertices $0, 1, \ldots, n$ of the standard simplex $\Delta^n$ in order into $v_0, \ldots, v_n$ thus gives a continuous map $\Delta^n \rightarrow C$ which we write as

$$(v_0, \ldots, v_n)_C: \Delta^n \rightarrow C. \quad (7.2)$$

This we call the affinesingular $n$-simplex (with standard vertices $0, \ldots, n$ mapped to $v_0, \ldots, v_n$). For example, if the $v_0, \ldots, v_n$ are affine independent, it is a homeomorphism of the standard simplex $\Delta^n$ to the affine simplex spanned by the $v_i$'s. In particular $J_n = (0, 1, \ldots, n)_{A^n}$ is the identity map of $A^n$ onto itself. If the $v_0, \ldots, v_n$ are dependent, the corresponding map $(v_0, \ldots, v_n)$ collapses the standard $A^n$ onto a simplex of lower dimension.

We may now describe the "boundary" of $\Delta^n$ to consist of certain $(n-1)$-dimensional singular simplices which are the "faces" of $\Delta^n$. For example, the faces of the triangle $\Delta^2 = (0, 1, 2)$ are the three edges represented by the segments $(1, 2)$, $(0, 2)$, and $(0, 1)$; in the notation (7.2) they are the three continuous maps $(1, 2)_{A^2}$, $(0, 2)_{A^2}$, and $(0, 1)_{A^2}$ of $A^2$ into $A^2$. In general $A^n$ has $n+1$ faces; its $i$-th face is the affine singular $(n-1)$-simplex

$$e^i = e^i_{\Delta^n}: (0, 1, \ldots, \hat{i}, \ldots, n)_{A^n}: \Delta^{n-1} \rightarrow \Delta^n, \quad i = 0, \ldots, n, \quad (7.3)$$

where the notation $\hat{i}$ indicates that the vertex $i$ is to be omitted. Any singular $n$-simplex $T: \Delta^n \rightarrow X$ has $n+1$ faces $d_i T$ defined by

$$d_i T = T e^i_{\Delta^n}: \Delta^{n-1} \rightarrow X, \quad i = 0, \ldots, n, \quad n > 0. \quad (7.4)$$

In other words, $d_i T$ is the map obtained by restricting $T$ to the $i$-th face of $A^n$ and regarding this restriction (via $e^i$) as a map defined on $\Delta^{n-1}$. Any singular simplex $T$ can be written as the composite $T = T J_n$, where $J_n: \Delta^n \rightarrow A^n$ is the identity map of $A^n$, and hence a singular $n$-simplex of $A^n$. The faces of $T$ are then given by the formula

$$d_i T = T(d_i J_n), \quad i = 0, \ldots, n, \quad n > 0. \quad (7.5)$$
For an affine singular simplex (7.2), the $i$-th face omits the $i$-th vertex:

$$d_i(v_0, \ldots, v_n)_C = (v_0, \ldots, \hat{v}_i, \ldots, v_n)_C.$$  \hspace{1cm} (7.6)

The process of forming iterated faces satisfies the identity

$$d_i d_j T = d_{i-1} d_i T, \quad i < j.$$  \hspace{1cm} (7.7)

By (7.5) it suffices to prove this in the case when $T = J_n$; here it is clear, since the process of first omitting vertex $j$ and then vertex $i$ amounts to the same as first omitting vertex $i$ and then (in the new numbering of vertices of $d_i J_n$) vertex $i - 1$. An alternative proof may be given by replacing each point of the standard $n$-simplex $\Delta^n$ by its barycentric coordinates $x_0, \ldots, x_n$. A singular $n$-simplex $T$ in the space $X$ is then a continuous function with values $T(x_0, \ldots, x_n) \in X$, defined for all real $x_i$ with $x_i \geq 0$ and $x_0 + \cdots + x_n = 1$. The $i$-th face is the function defined by

$$(d_i T)(x_0, \ldots, x_{n-1}) = T(x_0, \ldots, x_{i-1}, 0, x_i, \ldots, x_{n-1});$$

i.e., by letting the $i$-th variable in $T$ be 0. Hence (7.7) follows, because first setting $x_j = 0$ and then $x_i = 0$ for $i < j$ in $T(x_0, \ldots, x_n)$ amounts to first setting $x_i = 0$ and then setting equal to 0 the variable with the new number $i - 1$.

To each space $X$ we now construct a complex $S(X)$ of abelian groups, called the singular complex of $X$. Take $S_n(X)$ to be the free abelian group with generators all singular $n$-simplices $T$ of $X$. Then the $i$-th face operation defines a homomorphism $d_i: S_n(X) \to S_{n-1}(X)$ for $i = 0, \ldots, n$ and $n > 0$. Define the boundary homomorphism

$$\partial: S_n(X) \to S_{n-1}(X)$$

as the sum of the face homomorphisms with alternating signs; that is

$$\partial T = d_0 T - d_1 T + \cdots + (-1)^n d_n T = \sum_{i=0}^{n} (-1)^i d_i T, \quad n > 0. \hspace{1cm} (7.8)$$

An $n$-chain $c \in S_n(X)$ has a unique representation as a sum $c = \sum_T c(T) T$ where the coefficients $c(T)$ are integers, zero except for a finite number of $T$; its boundary is $\partial c = \sum c(T) \partial T$. To show that $S(X)$ is a complex, we must prove that the composite $\partial \partial: S_n \to S_{n-2}$ is the zero homomorphism for $n > 1$. It suffices to prove $\partial \partial T = 0$. But

$$\partial \partial T = \sum_{i < j} (-1)^{i+j} d_i d_j T + \sum_{i < j} (-1)^{i+j} d_i d_j T.$$ 

Using (7.7) and switching the labels $i$ and $j$ in the second sum, this is

$$\partial \partial T = \sum_{i < j} (-1)^{i+j} d_{j-1} d_i T + \sum_{k > i} (-1)^{i+k} d_k d_i T.$$ 

The two sums are equal except for sign, hence cancel to give $\partial \partial = 0$. 


The n-dimensional singular homology group \(H_n(X)\) of the space \(X\) is now defined to be the n-th homology group \(H_n(S(X))\) of the complex \(S(X)\).

**Theorem 7.2.** The homology group \(H_n(X)\) is a covariant functor of \(X\).

**Proof.** If \(Y\) is a second topological space and \(f: X \to Y\) any continuous map, each singular simplex \(T: \Delta^n \to X\) of \(X\) yields by composition a singular simplex \(f \circ T: \Delta^n \to Y\) of \(Y\). The correspondence \(T \mapsto f \circ T\) on the free generators \(T\) of \(S_\ast(X)\) yields a homomorphism \(S_\ast(f): S_\ast(X) \to S_\ast(Y)\). Moreover, \(d_i(f \circ T) = f \circ d_i T\); hence \(\partial S(f) = S(f) \partial\), so \(S(f)\) is a chain transformation which induces homomorphisms \(H_n(S(f)): H_n(X) \to H_n(Y)\) on the homology groups in each dimension. With these homomorphisms, \(H_n\) is a covariant functor on the category with objects all topological spaces, morphisms all continuous maps.

If \(G\) is any abelian group, the cohomology groups \(H^n(S(X), G)\) are the singular cohomology groups of \(X\) with coefficients \(G\). They are bifunctors, contravariant in \(X\) and covariant in \(G\).

The homomorphism \(\varepsilon: S_0(X) \to \mathbb{Z}\) which carries each singular 0-simplex into \(1 \in \mathbb{Z}\) is called the augmentation of \(S(X)\). Since \(\varepsilon \partial = 0: S_1(X) \to \mathbb{Z}\), \(\varepsilon: S(X) \to \mathbb{Z}\) is a complex over \(\mathbb{Z}\). Moreover, \(\varepsilon\) induces an epimorphism \(\varepsilon_*: H_0(X) \to \mathbb{Z}\). A space \(X\) is called acyclic if \(H_n(X) = 0\) for \(n > 0\) and \(\varepsilon_*\) is an isomorphism \(H_0(X) \cong \mathbb{Z}\).

**Proposition 7.3.** A topological space with only one point is acyclic.

**Proof.** Let \(X = \{x\}\) be the space. In each dimension \(n\), \(X\) has only one singular simplex, namely the map \(T_n: \Delta^n \to \{x\}\) which collapses \(\Delta^n\) to the point \(x\). Hence each face \(d_i T_n\) is \(T_{n-1}\), for \(i = 0, \ldots, n\). Since \(\partial T\) is the alternating sum of faces, \(\partial T_{2m} = T_{2m-1}\) and \(\partial T_{2m-1} = 0\). Thus in even dimensions \(S(X)\) has no cycles except 0, while in odd dimensions all elements of \(S_{2m-1}(X)\) are cycles and also boundaries. Therefore \(H_n(X) = 0\) for all \(n > 0\); clearly \(H_0(X) \cong \mathbb{Z}\).

**Exercises**

1. Let the affinesimplex \(\Delta\) be the convex hull of the affine-independent points \(u_0, \ldots, u_k\). Show that \(u \in \Delta\) if and only if \(v, w \in \Delta\) and \(u\) on the segment from \(v\) to \(w\) imply \(u = v\) or \(u = w\). Conclude that the simplex \(\Delta\), as a convex set, determines its vertices.

2. If \(X\) is pathwise connected, prove that \(\varepsilon_*: H_0(X) \cong \mathbb{Z}\). (Definition: Let \(I\) be the unit interval. \(X\) is pathwise connected if to each pair of points \(x, y \in X\) there exists a continuous map \(f: I \to X\) with \(f(0) = x, f(1) = y\).)

8. **Homotopy**

Two continuous maps of a space \(X\) into a space \(Y\) are said to be **"homotopic"** if it is possible to continuously deform the first map into the second. Consider the deformation as taking place in a unit interval.
of time; then it can be regarded as a continuous map defined on the cartesian product \( X \times I \) of the space \( X \) and the unit interval \( I, 0 \leq t \leq 1 \) on the real \( t \)-axis. Hence we make the

**Definition.** Two continuous maps \( f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y \) are homotopic if and only if there is a continuous map \( F : X \times I \rightarrow Y \) such that

\[
F(x, 0) = f_0(x), \quad F(x, 1) = f_1(x).
\]

(8.1)

When this holds, we write \( F : f_0 \simeq f_1 : X \rightarrow Y \).

The condition (8.1) states that the homotopy starts, for \( t = 0 \), with the initial map \( f_0 \) and that it ends, for \( t = 1 \), with the final map \( f_1 \). For example, a space \( X \) is called contractible if the identity map \( 1 : X + X \) is homotopic to a map which sends \( X \) into a single point. Any convex set \( C \) in a Euclidean space is contractible to any one of its points \( w \), via the homotopy \( D \) defined by

\[
D(u, t) = tw + (1 - t) u, \quad 0 \leq t \leq 1, \quad u \in C.
\]

(8.2)

This function is clearly continuous and takes values in \( C \), because \( C \) is convex.

This geometric notion is closely related to the algebraic notion of a chain homotopy. As a first example, we prove

**Proposition 8.1.** Any convex set \( C \) in a Euclidean space is acyclic.

The proof uses a chain homotopy \( s : S_n(C) \rightarrow S_{n+1}(C) \). Since \( S_n(C) \) is the free abelian group generated by the singular n-simplices \( T \) of \( C \), it will suffice to define a singular \((n+1)\)-simplex \( sT : \Delta^{n+1} \rightarrow C \) for each \( T \). In terms of the barycentric coordinates \((x_0, \ldots, x_{n+1})\) of a point of \( \Delta^{n+1} \), set

\[
(sT)(x_0, \ldots, x_{n+1}) = x_0 w + (1 - x_0) T\left(\frac{x_1}{1-x_0}, \ldots, \frac{x_{n+1}}{1-x_0}\right), \quad x_0 = 1,
\]

where \( w \) is a fixed point of \( C \). To see that \( sT \) is continuous at \( x_0 = 1 \), we rewrite the definition so that it resembles the geometric homotopy \( D \) of (8.2). Let \( v_0 = 0 \) be the initial vertex of \( \Delta^{n+1} \); then

\[
(0, x_1/(1-x_0), \ldots, x_{n+1}/(1-x_0))
\]

can be viewed as the barycentric coordinates of some point \( u' \) on the opposite face. Each point of \( \Delta^{n+1} \) can be written as a weighted, average \( x_0 v_0 + (1-x_0) u' \) for some \( u' \), unique except when \( x_0 = 1 \). The point \( u' \) on the opposite face determines \( u \in \Delta^n \) with \( e_0 u = u' \). The definition (8.3) now reads, in all cases

\[
(sT)(x_0 v_0 + (1-x_0) u') = x_0 w + (1-x_0) T(u), \quad e_0 u = u'.
\]
In other words, the segment in $\Delta^n$ joining $v_0$ to each point $u'$ of the opposite face is mapped by $ST$ linearly onto the segment joining $w \in C$ to $T(u) \in C$. In particular, since $\Delta^n$ is compact, $TA^n$ is compact and hence bounded, so $ST: \Delta^{n+1} \to C$ is continuous at $x_0 = 0$.

This $s$: $S_n(C) \to S_{n+1}(C)$ provides a contracting homotopy for the augmented complex $\varepsilon: S(X) \to Z$. In the notation of (2.5), let $f: Z \to S(X)$ be the chain transformation which carries $1 \in Z$ to the singular 0-simplex $T_0$ at the chosen point $w \in C$. The $i$-th face $d_i(sT)$ is the singular $n$-simplex obtained from (8.3) by setting $x_i = 0$. Hence $d_0(sT) = T$, while $d_{i+1}(sT) = s d_i T$ if $n > 0$ and $d_1 sT = T_0$ if $n = 0$. This gives $\partial(sT) = T - s(\partial T)$ for $n > 0$, $\partial sT = T - f e T$ for $n = 0$, and $ef = 1$, all as in (2.5). Hence $S(X)$ is acyclic, as required.

More generally, consider any homotopy $F: X \times I + Y$. Regard $X \times I$ as a cylinder on the base $X$; the boundary of this cylinder is the top (where $F = f_1$) minus the bottom (where $F = f_0$) minus the sides (i.e., minus $F$ on $(\partial X) \times I$). The resulting schematic formula $aF = f_1 - f_0 - F \partial$ suggests the definition $as = f_1 - f_0 - s \partial$ of a chain homotopy. These indications can be made precise, as follows:

**Theorem 8.2.** If $f_0 \simeq f_1: X \to Y$ are homotopic continuous maps, the induced chain transformations $S(f_0), S(f_1): S(X) \to S(Y)$ are chain homotopic.

We reduce this theorem to the special case of the cylinder $X \times I$. By the base $b$ and the top $t$ of this cylinder we mean the continuous maps $b, t: X \to X \times I$ defined by $b(x) = (x, 0)$ and $t(x) = (x, 1)$; they are clearly homotopic.

**Lemma 8.3.** For any cylinder there is a chain homotopy $u: S(t) \simeq S(b)$.

The lemma implies the theorem. For let $F: X \times I \to Y$ be any homotopy $F: f_0 \simeq f_1$. Then $Fb = f_0, Ft = f_1$, and $S(F)$ is a chain transformation. Define $s$ as the composite

$$s = S_{n+1}(F)u: S_n(X) \xrightarrow{u} S_{n+1}(X \times I) \to S_{n+1}(Y).$$

Then $\partial s + s \partial = S(F)(\partial u + u \partial) = S(F)(S(t) - S(b)) = S(f_1) - S(f_0)$.

To prove the lemma, we prove more: That $u = u_X: S(X) \to S(X \times I)$ can be chosen simultaneously for all topological spaces $X$ so as to be natural. For each continuous map $g: X + X$ of spaces, naturality requires that the diagram

$$\begin{array}{c}
S_n(X) \xrightarrow{u_X} S_{n+1}(X \times I) \\
\downarrow S(\alpha) \downarrow s(\alpha \times 1) \\
S_n(X') \xrightarrow{u_X'} S_{n+1}(X' \times I)
\end{array}$$

be commutative. Observe that $b, t: X \to X \times I$ are already natural. We construct such a $u$ by induction on $n$. For $n = 0$, a singular 0-simplex
is just a point \( T(0) \) of \( X \). Take \( u_0 T \) to be that singular 1-simplex of \( X \times I \) defined by \( (u_0 T)(x_0, x_1) = (T(0), x_1) \), so that \( u_0 T \) is the segment vertically above \( T(0) \) in the cylinder \( X \times I \). Then \( d_0 (u_0 T) = t(T(0)) \), \( d_1 (u_0 T) = b(T(0)) \), so \( \partial (u_0 T) \) is indeed \( S(t) T - S(b) T \). Moreover \( u_0 \) is clearly natural.

For \( n > 0 \), suppose \( u_m \) has been defined for all \( m < n \), in particular, \( \partial u_{n-1} + u_{n-2} \partial = S(t) - S(b) \); if \( n = 1 \), \( u_{n-2} \) is zero here. Let \( J_n : \Delta^n \to \Delta^n \) be the identity map of the standard simplex. We first define \( u J_n \in S_{n+1}(\Delta^n) \); its boundary ought to be

\[
\partial u J_n = S(t) J_n - S(b) J_n - u_{n-1} \partial J_n. \tag{8.5}
\]

Now the expression \( c \) on the right is a chain of \( S, (\Delta^n \times I) \); its boundary is

\[
\partial c = \partial S(t) J_n - S(b) \partial J_n - \partial u_{n-1} \partial J_n = (S(t) - S(b) - u_{n-1}) \partial J_n,
\]

which is zero by the induction assumption. Hence \( c \) is an n-cycle of \( \Delta^n \times I \). But \( \Delta^n \times I \) is a convex subset of a Euclidean space, hence is acyclic by Prop. 8.1. Therefore \( c \) is a boundary, say \( c = \partial a \) for some \( a \in S_{n+1}(\Delta^n \times I) \). We set \( u J_n = a \); then (8.5) holds.

If \( T : \Delta^n + X \) is now a singular simplex of any space \( X \), \( T = T J_n = S(T) J_n \) and \( T \times I : \Delta^n \times I \to X \times I \). Define \( u T = S(T \times I) u J_n = S(T \times I) a \). This definition immediately satisfies the naturality requirement. To show that it gives the required homotopy, calculate

\[
\partial u T = S(T \times I) \partial a = S(T \times I) [S(t) J_n - S(b) J_n - u_{n-1} \partial J_n],
\]

where \( t \) and \( b \) are top and base for \( \Delta^n \times I \). But \( t, b, \) and \( u_{n-1} \) are all natural, hence (8.5) gives \( \partial u T = S(t) T - S(b) T - u_{n-1} \partial T \), as desired.

This type of proof consists in first constructing the desired object (here, the desired chain homotopy) on a model chain such as \( J_n \) by observing that the space \( \Delta^n \times I \) in which the model lies is acyclic, and in then carrying the object around to other spaces by the maps \( T \). It is an old method in topology; it will reappear later (Chap. VII) as the method of acyclic models. Here it has the merit of avoiding an explicit formula for the homotopy \( u \).

**Corollary 8.4.** If the continuous maps \( f_0, f_1 : X \to Y \) are homotopic, the induced homomorphisms \( H(f_0), H(f_1) : H_n(X) \to H_n(Y) \) are equal.

**Exercises**

1. Show that any contractible space is acyclic.

2. In the prism \( \Delta^n \times I \) let \( 0, 1, \ldots, n \) denote the vertices of the base, \( 0', 1', \ldots, n' \), those of the top. Show that an explicit homotopy \( u \) for \( X = \Delta^n \) in Lemma 8.3 is given, in the notation for affine singular simplices, by

\[
u J_n = \sum_{i=0}^{n} (-1)^i (0, 1, \ldots, i, i', (i+1)', \ldots, n') \Delta^n \times I.
\]
3. For \( n = 1, 2 \) as in Ex. 2, show that the terms of \( uJ_n \) correspond to a "triangulation" of the prism \( A^n \times I \) (Draw a figure).

4. Show that \( A^n \times I \) can be "triangulated" as follows. Partly order the vertices of \( A^n \times \{0\} \) and \( A^n \times \{1\} \) by the rule that \((i, e) \leq (j, \eta)\) for \( e, \eta = 0, 1, 1 \leq i \leq j \) and \( e \leq \eta \). Take as simplices of the triangulation all those formed by a linearly ordered subset of the whole set of vertices, and show that the resulting \( n \)-simplices are those appearing in \( uJ_n \) in Ex. 2.

9. Axioms for Homology

Let \( A \) be a subspace of \( X \). Identify each singular simplex \( T: A^n \to A \) of \( A \) with the composite map \( A^n \to X \); then \( T \) becomes a singular simplex of \( X \) and the singular complex \( S(A) \) a subcomplex of \( S(X) \). The homology groups of the quotient complex,

\[
H_n(X, A) = H_n(S(X)/S(A)),
\]

are called the relative homology groups of the pair \((X, A)\) of spaces. They are subquotient groups of the quotient \( S(X)/S(A) \), hence can be rewritten as subquotients

\[
H_n(X, A) = C_n(X, A)/B_n(X, A)
\]

of \( S(X) \). Specifically \( C_n(X, A) \) consists of those elements \( c \in S_n(X) \) with \( \partial c \in S_{n-1}(A) \), while \( B_n(X, A) = S_n(A) \cap S_{n+1}(X) \); the elements \( c \) of \( C_n(X, A) \) are known as relative cycles; those of \( B_n(X, A) \) as relative boundaries. A single space \( X \) may be regarded as a pair of spaces \((X, \emptyset)\), with \( \emptyset \) the empty set; then \( H_n(X, \emptyset) = H_n(X) \).

A map \( f: (X, A) \to (Y, B) \) of pairs of spaces is by definition a continuous map \( f: X \to Y \) with \( f(A) \subset B \). With these maps as morphisms, the pairs of spaces constitute a category, and \( H_n(X, A) \) is a covariant functor on this category to abelian groups.

Each pair \((X, A)\) gives a short exact sequence of complexes \( S(A) \to S(X) \to S(X)/S(A) \). The connecting homomorphism \( \partial_* \) for this sequence is called the invariant boundary of the pair \((X, A)\); the exact homology sequence (Thm. 4.1) gives

\[\cdots \to H_* \to H_n(A) \to H_n(X) \to H_n(X, A) \to H_{n-1}(A) \to \cdots,\]

ending in \( H_0(X) \to H_0(X, A) \to 0 \), is exact.

Specifically, \( i_0: (A, O) \to (X, O) \) and \( j: (X, O) \to (X, A) \) are maps of pairs induced by the identity function, while \( \partial_* \) is given for each relative cycle \( c \) as \( \partial_*(c) = \text{cls}(\partial c) \). We have already noted (Example (1.3)) that \( i_*: H_n(A) \to H_n(X) \) need not be a monomorphism; this exact sequence describes the kernel and the image of \( i_* \).
Two maps \( f_0, f_1 : (X, A) \to (Y, B) \) of pairs are homotopic if there is a homotopy \( F : f_0 \simeq f_1 : X + Y \) with \( F(A \times I) \subseteq B \); this last condition means that \( F \) cut down to \( A \times I \) is a homotopy between \( f_0 \) and \( f_1 \) cut down to maps of \( A \) into \( B \). An extension of the argument for Thm. 8.2 shows that homotopic maps \( f_0, f_1 \) of pairs have \( H_n(f_0) = H_n(f_1) : H_n(X, A) \to H_n(Y, B) \).

The singular homology theory for pairs of spaces thus gives:

1. Functors \( H_n(X, A) \) of pairs of spaces to abelian groups, \( n = 0, 1, \ldots \).

2. Natural homomorphisms \( \partial_n : H_n(X, A) \to H_{n-1}(A) \), \( n = 1, 2, \ldots \). These data satisfy the following additional conditions:

3. If \( X \) consists of a single point, \( H_0(X) \cong \mathbb{Z} \) and \( H_n(X) = 0 \) for \( n > 0 \).

4. For any pair \((X, A)\) the relative homology sequence (9.3) is exact.

5. Homotopic maps of pairs induce equal homomorphisms on each \( H_n \).

6. (Excision.) If \( X \supset A \supset M \) are spaces such that the closure of \( M \) is contained in the interior of \( A \), let \( X - M \supset A - M \) denote the subspaces obtained by removing all points of \( M \) from \( X \) and from \( A \), respectively. Then the injection \( k \) of \( X - M \) into \( X \) induces isomorphisms on the relative homology groups

\[
H_n(k) : H_n(X-M, A-M) \cong H_n(X, A). \tag{9.4}
\]

Our discussion has indicated the proofs of all except the sixth property; a proof of this uses "barycentric subdivisions"; it may be found in Eilenberg-Steenrod [1952], Wallace [1957], or Hilton-Wylie [1960].

These six properties may be taken as axioms for homology. It can be proved that when the pair \((X, A)\) can be "triangulated" by a finite number of affine simplices, any relative homology groups satisfying the axioms must agree with the singular homology groups. Moreover, from the axioms alone one can calculate the singular homology groups of elementary spaces to agree with those calculated from "naive" subdivisions in §1. In particular, if \( S^n \) is the \( n \)-sphere, one deduces that \( H_n(S^n) \cong \mathbb{Z} \), \( H_0(S^n) \cong \mathbb{Z} \) and \( H_i(S^n) = 0 \) for \( 0 \neq i \neq n \). This, and other striking geometric properties (Brouwer fixed point theorem, etc.) are presented in Eilenberg-Steenrod [1952], Chap. XI.

We have now completed our too brief indication of the use of homology theory in topology.

Notes. "Complex" originally meant simplicial complex; in topology "complex" has various geometric meanings, such as "cell complex" or "CW-complex". The chain complex in our purely algebraic sense was introduced by Mayer [1929,
The formulation of exact homology sequences, as codified in Kelley-Pitcher [1947], allowed a systematic treatment of simple facts which previously were done "by hand" in each case. Poincaré introduced homology, via Betti numbers; it was Emmy Noether who emphasized that the homology of a space deals with a homology group rather than just with Betti numbers and torsion coefficients. Singular homology in its present form is due to Eilenberg; the axioms for homology theory, with application to other homology theories (Čech theory) appear in the influential book by Eilenberg-Steenrod. Additive relations have been explicitly recognized only recently [Lubkin 1960, Mac Lane 1961, Puppe 1962]. The corresponding notion for multiplicative groups occurs in Wedderburn [1941], Zassenhaus [1958], and for general algebraic structures in Lorenzen [1954] and Lambeek [1958].

Chapter three

Extensions and Resolutions

A long exact sequence of R-modules

\[ 0 \rightarrow A \rightarrow B_{n-1} \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow B_1 \rightarrow B_0 \rightarrow C \rightarrow 0 \]

running from A to C through n intermediate modules is called an "n-fold extension" of A by C. These extensions, suitably classified by a congruence relation, are the elements of a group \( \text{Ext}^n(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{A}) \). To calculate this group, we present C as the quotient \( C = F_0/S_0 \) of a free module \( F_0 \); this process can be iterated as \( S_0 = F_1/S_1, \; S_1 = F_2/S_2, \ldots \) to give an exact sequence

\[ \cdots \rightarrow F_n \rightarrow F_{n-1} \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow F_1 \rightarrow F_0 \rightarrow C \rightarrow 0 \]

called a "free resolution" of C. The complex \( \text{Hom}(F_n, A) \) has cohomology \( \text{Ext}^n(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{A}) \). Alternatively, one may imbed A in an injective module \( J_0 \) ($\S$7) and then \( J_0/A \) in an injective module \( J_1 \); this process iterates to give an exact sequence

\[ 0 \rightarrow A \rightarrow J_0 \rightarrow J_1 \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow J_{n-1} \rightarrow J_n \rightarrow \cdots \]

called an "injective coresolution" of A. The complex \( \text{Hom}(\mathcal{C}, J_n) \) has cohomology \( \text{Ext}^n(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{A}) \). In particular, \( \text{Ext}^1(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{A}) \) is often called \( \text{Ext}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{A}) \).

The chapter starts with the definition of \( \text{Ext}^1 \), which is at once applied ($\S$4) to calculate the cohomology of a complex of free abelian groups from its homology. The chapter ends with a canonical process for imbedding any module in a "minimal" injective.

1. Extensions of Modules

Let A and C be modules over a fixed ring R. An extension of A by C is a short exact sequence \( E = (x, \alpha) : A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C \) of R-modules and R-module homomorphisms. A morphism \( \Gamma : E \rightarrow E' \) of extensions is a
triple $\Gamma=(\alpha, \beta, y)$ of module homomorphisms such that the diagram

$$
\begin{array}{c}
E: 0 \to A \xrightarrow{\alpha} B \xrightarrow{\beta} C \to 0 \\
\downarrow \gamma \quad \downarrow \beta \quad \downarrow \gamma \\
E': 0 \to A' \xrightarrow{\alpha'} B' \xrightarrow{\beta'} C' \to 0
\end{array}
$$

is commutative. In particular, take $A'=A$ and $C'=C$; two extensions $E$ and $E'$ of $A$ by $C$ are congruent ($E \equiv E'$) if there is a morphism $(1_A, \beta, 1_C): E \to E'$. When this is the case, the short Five Lemma shows that the middle homomorphism $\beta$ is an isomorphism; hence congruence of extensions is a reflexive, symmetric, and transitive relation. Let $\text{Ext}_R(C, A)$ denote the set of all congruence classes of extensions of $A$ by $C$.

An extension of $A$ by $C$ is sometimes described as a pair $(B, \theta)$ where $A$ is a submodule of $B$, and $\theta$ is an isomorphism $B/A \cong C$. Each such pair determines a short exact sequence $A \to B \to B/A$ and every extension of $A$ by $C$ is congruent to one so obtained.

One extension of $A$ by $C$ is the direct sum $A \to A \oplus C \to C$. An extension $E=(\alpha, \sigma)$ is said to be split if it is congruent to this direct sum extension; as in Prop. I.4.3, this is the case if and only if $\alpha$ has a right inverse $\mu: C \to B$ (or, equivalently, $\alpha$ has a left inverse). Any extension by a projective module $P$ is split, so $\text{Ext}_R(P, A)$ has but one element. To illustrate a non-trivial case, take $R=\mathbb{Z}$. Then, for example, the additive group $2\mathbb{Z}$ of even integers has two extensions by a cyclic group $\mathbb{Z}_2$ of order 2: (The direct sum $2\mathbb{Z} \oplus \mathbb{Z}_2$ and the group $\mathbb{Z} \rtimes 2\mathbb{Z}$. This is a special case of the following fact:

**Proposition 1.1.** For any abelian group $A$ and for $\mathbb{Z}_m(c)$ the cyclic group of order $m$ and generator $c$ there is a $1-1$ correspondence

$$
\eta: \text{Ext}_Z(\mathbb{Z}_m(c), A) \cong A/mA,
$$

where $mA$ is the subgroup of $A$ consisting of all $ma$ for $a \in A$.

**Proof.** Take any extension $E$ of $A$ by $\mathbb{Z}_m$; in the middle group $B$ choose an element $u$ with $su=c$ to serve as a sort of "representative" of the generator $c$. Each element of $B$ can be written uniquely as $b=xa+hu$ for some $a \in A$ and some integer $h$, $h=0, \ldots, m-1$. Since $mc=0$, $a$ is a coset of $m\mathbb{Z}$, so $mu=\alpha g$ for a unique $g \in A$. This $g$ determines the "addition table" for $B$, because

$$
(xa+hu)+(xa'+hu')=x(a+a')+(h+h')u, \quad h+h'<m,
$$

$$
=x(a+a'+g)+(h+h'-m)u, \quad h+h' \geq m.
$$

The element $g$ is not invariant; the representative $u$ may be replaced by any $u'=u+xf$ for $f \in A$, thus replacing $g$ by $g'=g+mf$. The coset $g+mA$ in $A/mA$ is uniquely determined by the extension $E$. Set $\eta(E)=
1. Extensions of Modules

If \( E \equiv E' \), \( \eta(E) = \eta(E') \). If \( g \) is any element of \( A \), take for \( B \) the set of all pairs \((a, h)\) with \( a \in A \), \( h = 0, \ldots, m - 1 \) and define addition of pairs, using \( g \), as in the table above. This addition is associative, makes \( B \) a group, and gives an extension \( E \) with \( \eta(E) = g + mA \). Hence \( \eta \) is \( 1 - 1 \) onto \( A/mA \).

Now \( \eta \) is a correspondence between a set \( \text{Ext}_2 \) and an abelian group \( A/mA \); this suggests that \( \text{Ext}_R(C, A) \) is always an abelian group. We shall shortly show this to be so. First we show that \( \text{Ext} \) is a functor, on the category of modules to that of sets.

Let \( A \) be fixed. To show \( \text{Ext}_R(C, A) \) a contravariant functor of \( C \) requires for each \( E \in \text{Ext}_R(C, A) \) and each \( y : C' \to C \) a suitable extension \( E' = y^* E \in \text{Ext}_R(C', A) \). This \( E' \) may be denoted by \( Ey \), and is described by the following lemma, which shows \( E' \) unique and which hence easily implies the congruences

\[
E 1_{C} = E, \quad E(y y') = (Ey)y'.
\]

They state that \( E \) depends contravariantly upon \( C \); note, in particular, that the notation \( Ey \), with \( y \) behind, gives the good order for multiplication of \( y \)'s in the second equation (1.2).

**Lemma 1.2.** If \( E \) is an extension of an \( R \)-module \( A \) by an \( R \)-module \( C \) and if \( y : C' \to C \) is a module homomorphism, there exists an extension \( E' \) of \( A \) by \( C' \) and a morphism \( \Gamma = (\alpha, \beta, y) : E' \to E \). The pair \( (\Gamma, E') \) is unique up to a congruence of \( E' \).

Existence proof: In the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
E': & 0 & \to A & \xrightarrow{\alpha} & C' & \to 0 \\
\| & \downarrow{\beta} & \searrow{y} \\
E: & 0 & \to A & \xrightarrow{\alpha} & B & \xrightarrow{\beta} C & \to 0
\end{array}
\]

the sides and the bottom are given; we wish to fill in the module at "?" and the dotted arrows so as to make the diagram commutative and the top row exact. To do so, put at "?" that subgroup \( B' < B \oplus C' \) which consists of the pairs \((b, c')\) with \( a b = y c' \); define \( \alpha' \) and \( \beta \) as \( \sigma'(b, c') = c', \beta(b, c') = b \). This choice insures commutativity in the right-hand square of (1.3). With the definition \( \chi a = (\chi a, 0) \) the diagram is completed; the remaining conditions may be verified.

Uniqueness proof: Take any other such \( E'' \) with a morphism \( \Gamma'' = (1_A, \beta'', y) : E'' \to E \). If \( B'' \) is the middle module \( E'' \), define \( \beta' : B' \to B' \) by \( \beta' b'' = (\beta'' b'', \sigma'' b'') \); then \( \Gamma_0 = (1_A, \beta', 1_C) : E' \to E' \) is a congruence and the composite \( E'' \to E' \to E \) is \( \Gamma'' \), so that the diagram \( \Gamma' : E' \to E \) is unique up to a congruence \( \Gamma_0 \) of \( E' \), as asserted.

We call \( E' = Ey \) the composite of the extension \( E \) and the homomorphism \( y \); the type of construction involved occurs repeatedly, for
instance, in the study of induced fiber spaces (where \( y \) is a fiber map!). Algebraically, \( E' \) has the following "couniversal" property:

**Lemma 1.3.** Under the hypotheses of Lemma 1.2 each morphism 
\( \Gamma_1 = (\alpha_1, \beta_1, \gamma_1): E_1 \rightarrow E \) of extensions with \( \gamma_1 = \gamma \) can be written uniquely as a composite

\[
E_1 \xrightarrow{(\alpha_0, \beta', 1)} E \gamma \xrightarrow{(1, \beta, \gamma)} E.
\] (1.4)

More briefly, \( \Gamma_1 \) can be "factored through" \( \Gamma: Ey \rightarrow E \).

**Proof.** Here \( E_1 = (\alpha_1, \sigma_1) \) has the form \( A \rightarrow B_1 \rightarrow C' \). (Draw the diagram!) Define \( \beta': B_1 \rightarrow B' \) as \( \beta'b_1 = (\beta_1 b_1, \sigma_1 b_1) \). This is the only way of defining \( \beta' \) so that \( \beta_1 = \beta \beta' \) and so that the diagram \( (\alpha_1, \beta', 1): E_1 \rightarrow E' \) will be commutative. The verification that this \( \beta' \) yields the desired factorization (1.4) is routine.

Incidentally, this factorization includes the uniqueness assertion of Lemma 1.2, in as much as \( \Gamma'' = (1_A, \beta'', y): E'' \rightarrow E \) has by (1.4) the factorization \( (1, \beta'', y) = (1, \beta, y)(1, \beta', 1) \) with the factor \( (1, \beta', 1): E'' \rightarrow E' \) a congruence.

Next we show \( \text{Ext}(C, A) \) to be a covariant functor of \( A \), for fixed \( C \), by constructing for each \( E \) and for each \( a: \text{A} \rightarrow \text{A}' \) a "composite" extension \( E' = \alpha E \), characterized as follows:

**Lemma 1.4.** For \( E \in \text{Ext}(C, A) \) and \( \alpha: \text{A} \rightarrow \text{A}' \) there is an extension \( E' \) of \( A' \) by \( C \) and a morphism \( \Gamma = (\alpha, \beta, 1_C): E \rightarrow E' \). The pair \( (\Gamma, E') \) is unique up to a congruence of \( E' \).

**Proof.** We are required to fill in the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
E: & 0 & \rightarrow A \xrightarrow{\kappa} B \xrightarrow{\sigma} C \rightarrow 0 \\
\downarrow{\alpha} & & \downarrow{\beta} \\
E': & 0 & \rightarrow A' \xrightarrow{\kappa'} ? \xrightarrow{\sigma'} C \rightarrow 0
\end{array}
\] (1.5)

at the question mark and the dotted arrows so as to make the diagram commutative and the bottom row exact. To do so, take in \( A' \oplus B \) the subgroup \( N \) of all elements \( (ua, xc) \) for \( a \in A \). At "?" in the diagram put the quotient group \( (A' \oplus B)/N \), and write elements of this quotient group as cosets \( (a', b) + N \). Then the equations \( x'a' = (a', 0) + N \), \( \sigma'[a', b] + N = ub \) and \( \beta b = (0, b) + N \) define maps which satisfy the required conditions. That the \( E' \) so constructed is unique may be proved directly or deduced from the following "universal" property of \( E' \).

**Lemma 1.5.** Under the hypotheses of Lemma 1.4, any morphism 
\( \Gamma_1 = (\alpha_1, \beta_1, \gamma_1): E \rightarrow E_1 \) of extensions with \( \alpha_1 = \alpha \) can be written uniquely as a composite

\[
E \xrightarrow{(\alpha, \beta, 1)} \alpha E \xrightarrow{(1, \beta, \gamma)} E_1.
\]

More briefly, \( \Gamma_1 \) can be "factored through" \( E \rightarrow \alpha E \).
Proof. If \( E_1 = (\pi_1, \sigma_1) \) with middle module \( B_1 \), a homomorphism \( \beta': (A' \oplus B)/N \to B_1 \) may be defined by \( \beta'(a,b) + N = \pi_1 a' + \beta_1 b \). One then verifies that \( \beta_1 = \beta' \beta \), that \( (1_{A'}, \beta', \gamma_1) \) is a morphism of extensions, and that this \( \beta' \) is uniquely determined, completing the proof.

The uniqueness properties of \( \alpha E \) yield congruences

\[
1_A E = E, \quad (\alpha \alpha') E = \alpha (\alpha' E).
\]

Hence \( \text{Ext}(C,A) \) is a covariant functor of \( A \). The fact that it is a bifu-

Lemma 1.6. For \( a, \gamma, \) and \( E \) as in Lemmas 1.2 and 1.4 there is a

congruence of extensions \( a(E\gamma) \equiv (aE \gamma) \).

Proof. By the definitions of \( E\gamma \) and \( \alpha E \) there are morphisms

\[
E\gamma \xrightarrow{(1, \beta_1 \gamma)} E \xrightarrow{(\alpha, \beta_1, 1)} \alpha E
\]

with composite \( (a, \beta_2 \beta_1, \gamma) : E\gamma \to \alpha E \). By Lemma 1.3, the extension

\( (aE)\gamma \) is couniversal for such maps; that is, \( (a, \beta_2 \beta_1, \gamma) \) has a factoriza-

\[
\begin{array}{c}
E\gamma \xrightarrow{(\alpha, \beta_1, 1)} (\alpha E) \gamma \xrightarrow{(\beta_1 \gamma, \gamma)} \alpha E.
\end{array}
\]

Now the left hand map is exactly the sort of morphism of extensions used in Lemma 1.4 to define \( a(E\gamma) \) from \( E\gamma \). Hence, by the uniqueness

To illustrate one use of these lemmas, we prove:

Proposition 1.7. For any extension \( E = (\pi, \sigma) \) the composite extensions

\( \kappa E \) and \( E \sigma \) are split.

Proof. The diagram

\[
\begin{array}{cccccc}
E: & 0 & \to & A & \xrightarrow{\kappa} & B & \xrightarrow{\sigma} & C & \to & 0 \\
| & \downarrow{\kappa} & & \downarrow{\gamma} & & \| \\
E': & 0 & \to & B & \xrightarrow{\beta} & B \oplus C & \to & C & \to & 0,
\end{array}
\]

with \( \nu \) defined by \( \nu b = (b, ab) \), is commutative. Hence the definition of \( \kappa E \) in Lemma 1.4 shows that \( \kappa E \) is given by the bottom row, hence is split. Let the reader display the dual diagram which splits \( Ea \).

Proposition 1.8. Any morphism \( I; = (a, \beta, \gamma) : E \to E' \) of extensions

implies a congruence \( a E \equiv E' \gamma \).

Proof. By the universal property of \( a E \) (Lemma 1.5), the map \( I; \) can be factored through \( \Gamma : E + aE \) as \( \Gamma_1 = \Gamma_2 \Gamma \), where \( \Gamma_2 = (1_{A'}, \beta', \gamma) : aE \to E' \). This last map characterizes \( aE \) as \( E' \gamma \), by Lemma 1.2.

2. Addition of Extensions

The direct sum \( A \oplus C \) of two modules may be regarded as a covariant bifu-

2. Addition of Extensions

The direct sum \( A \oplus C \) of two modules may be regarded as a covariant bifu-
Chapter III. Extensions and Resolutions

\( a : A \rightarrow A' \) and \( \gamma : C \rightarrow C' \) a homomorphism

\[ \alpha \oplus \gamma : A \oplus C \rightarrow A' \oplus C' \]

with the usual properties \((a \oplus y)(a' \oplus \gamma') = a \oplus a' \oplus \gamma \gamma'\) and \(1_A \oplus 1_C = 1_A \oplus 1_C\). This homomorphism may be defined by setting \((\alpha \oplus \gamma)(a, c) = (\alpha a, yc)\) or as the unique homomorphism in the middle which renders the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{c}
A & \cong & A \oplus C & \rightarrow & C \\
\downarrow \alpha & & \downarrow \alpha \oplus \gamma & & \downarrow \gamma \\
A' & \leftarrow & A' \oplus C' & \rightarrow & C'
\end{array}
\]

commutative. Here each row consists of projections of the direct sum, as in (1.8.12).

The diagonal homomorphism for a module \( C \) is

\[ \Delta = \Delta_C : C \rightarrow C \oplus C, \quad \Delta(c) = (c, c). \quad (2.1) \]

It may also be described as that map which renders

\[
\begin{array}{c}
C & \longrightarrow & C \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \Delta \\
C & \leftarrow & C \oplus C \leftarrow C
\end{array}
\]

commutative. The codiagonal map for a module \( A \) is

\[ \nabla = \nabla_A : A \oplus A \rightarrow A, \quad \nabla(a_1, a_2) = a_1 + a_2; \quad (2.1') \]

it has a dual diagrammatic description by \( \nabla_1 = 1_A = \nabla_2 : A \rightarrow A \). The maps \( \Delta \) and \( \nabla \) may be used to rewrite the usual definition of the sum \( f + g \) of two homomorphisms \( f, g : C \rightarrow A \) as

\[ f + g = \nabla_A(f \oplus g) \Delta_C; \quad (2.2) \]

the reader should verify that \((f + g)c\) is still \( fc + gc\) under this formula.

Given two extensions \( E_i = (x_i, a_i) : A_i \rightarrow B_i \rightarrow C \), for \( i = 1, 2 \), we define their direct sum to be the extension

\[ E_1 \oplus E_2 : 0 \rightarrow A_1 \oplus A_2 \rightarrow B_1 \oplus B_2 \rightarrow C_1 \oplus C_2 \rightarrow 0. \quad (2.3) \]

We now make \( \text{Ext}(C, A) \) a group under an addition which utilizes (2.3).

**Theorem 2.1.** For given \( R \)-modules \( A \) and \( C \) the set \( \text{Ext}_R(C, A) \) of all congruence classes of extensions of \( A \) by \( C \) is an abelian group under the binary operation which assigns to the congruence classes of extensions \( E_1 \) and \( E \), the congruence class of the extension

\[ E_1 + E_2 = \nabla_A(E_1 \oplus E_2) \Delta_C. \quad (2.4) \]
The class of the split extension $A \rightarrow A \oplus C+C$ is the zero element of this group, while the inverse of any $E$ is the extension $(-1_A)E$. For homomorphisms $a: A \rightarrow A'$ and $\gamma: C' \rightarrow C$ one has
\[
\begin{align*}
\alpha(E_1 + E_2) &\equiv \alpha E_1 + \alpha E_2, & (E_1 + E_2)\gamma &\equiv E_1\gamma + E_2\gamma, \\
(\alpha_1 + \alpha_2)E &\equiv \alpha_1E + \alpha_2E, & E(\gamma_1 + \gamma_2) &\equiv E\gamma_1 + E\gamma_2.
\end{align*}
\]

The composition (2.4) is known as the Baer sum; the rules (2.5) state that the maps $a_*: \text{Ext}(C, A) \rightarrow \text{Ext}(C, A')$ and $\gamma_*: \text{Ext}(C, A) \rightarrow \text{Ext}(C', A)$ are group homomorphisms.

We give two different proofs. The first is "computational"; it is like the calculation made in §1 to show that $\text{Ext}_Z(Z_m, A)$ is the group $A/mA$.

Take any extension $E=(x, a)$ of $A$ by $C$, with $a: B \rightarrow C$. To each $c$ in $C$ choose a representative $u(c)$; that is, an element $u(c) \in B$ with $\sigma u(c) = c$. For each $r \in R$, the exactness of $E$ gives $ru(c) - u(rc) \in \kappa A$; similarly, $c$, $d \in C$ have $u(c + d) - u(c) - u(d) \in \kappa A$. Hence there are elements $f(c, d)$ and $g(r, c) \in A$ with
\[
\begin{align*}
ru(c) &= xg(r, c) + u(rc), & r \in R, c \in C. \\
\end{align*}
\]

Call the pair of functions $(f, g)$ a factor system for $E$. Let $\mathcal{F}_R(C, A)$ denote, during this proof, the set of all pairs $(f, g)$ of functions $f$ on $C \times C$ to $A$ and $g$ on $R \times C$ to $A$. Each factor system is an element of $\mathcal{F}_R(C, A)$, and $\mathcal{F}_R$ is a group under termwise addition; that is, with $(f_1 + f_2)(c, d) = f_1(c, d) + f_2(c, d)$.

The factor system for $E$ is not unique. For any different choice of representatives $u'(c)$ we must have $u'(c) = xh(c) + u(c)$ for some function $h$ on $C$ to $A$. One calculates that
\[
\begin{align*}
u'(c) + u'(d) &= x[f(c, d) + u(c + d)], & c, d \in C. \\
ru'(c) &= x[g(r, c) + u(rc)], & r \in R, c \in C.
\end{align*}
\]

The new factor system $f'(c, d)$, $g'(r, c)$ for the representatives $u'$ is then given by the expressions in brackets in these equations. We may express this fact differently: To each function $h$ on $C$ to $A$ there is an element $(\delta_C h, \delta_R h) \in \mathcal{F}_R(C, A)$ defined by
\[
\begin{align*}(\delta_C h)(c, d) &= h(c) + h(d) - h(c + d), & (\delta_R h)(r, c) &= rh(c) - h(rc).
\end{align*}
\]

The factor system $f'$, $g'$ for representatives $u'$ then has the form $(f', g') = (fg) + (\delta_C h, \delta_R h)$. Conversely, any such function $h$ can be used to change representatives in an extension. Thus, if we denote by $S_R(C, A)$ the subgroup of all those pairs of functions in $\mathcal{F}_R(C, A)$ of the form $(\delta_C h, \delta_R h)$, the factor system $(f, g)$ of $E$ is uniquely defined modulo $S_R(C, A)$.
Use the factor group $\mathcal{F}_R(C,A)/S_R(C,A)$; to each extension $E$ assign the coset $\omega(E)$ of any one of its factor systems $(f,g)$ in this group $\mathcal{F}_R/S_R$. Then $\omega(E)$ is uniquely determined by $E$.

A congruence of extensions maps representatives to representatives, hence congruent extensions have the same factor systems. It follows that $\omega$ is a 1–1 mapping of the congruence classes of extensions to a subset of the abelian group $\mathcal{F}_R(C,A)/S_R(C,A)$. To show $\text{Ext}(C,A)$ an abelian group under the Baer sum it now suffices to show that

$$\omega(E_1 + E_2) = \omega(E_1) + \omega(E_2), \quad \omega((-1_A) E) = -\omega(E).$$

The first follows by calculating a factor system for $E_1 \oplus E_2$, and hence for $E_1 + E_2$. The second follows by observing (draw the diagram!) that $(-1) E$ is obtained from $E$ just by changing the sign of the map $x: A \to B$ and hence by changing the signs off and $g$ in the factor system. Finally, the split extension $E_0$ has $(0,0)$ as one of its factor systems, hence is the zero of this addition.

It is also possible (see the exercises) to characterize directly those pairs of functions $(f,g)$ which can occur as factor systems for an extension, and hence to show that $\text{Ext}_R(C,A)$ is an abelian group without using the Baer sum at all.

The proof of (2.5) is easy; $\mathcal{F}_R(C,A)/S_R(C,A)$ is a bifunctor, and $\omega$ is a natural homomorphism. The proof of (2.6) is similar.

We now turn to the second (conceptual) proof of the theorem. For the direct sum (2.3) of two extensions $E_i$ the congruences

$$(\alpha_1 \oplus \alpha_2) (E_1 \oplus E_2) \equiv \alpha_1 E_1 \oplus \alpha_2 E_2, \quad (2.8)$$

$$(E_1 \oplus E_2) (\gamma_1 \oplus \gamma_2) \equiv E_1 \gamma_1 \oplus E_2 \gamma_2, \quad (2.9)$$

may be proved by the lemmas of §4 which characterize the composite extensions $E_i \gamma_i$ and $\alpha_i E_i$. For $a: A \to A'$ one calculates easily that

$$\alpha \Delta = \Delta (\alpha \oplus \alpha) : A \oplus A' \to A', \quad (2.10)$$

and similarly for $\gamma: C' \to C$ that

$$\Delta \gamma = (\gamma \oplus \gamma) \Delta : C' \to C \oplus C. \quad (2.10')$$

Now we can prove the assertion (2.5) of the theorem by the string of congruences

$$\alpha (E_1 + E_2) \equiv \alpha V(E_1 \oplus E_2) \Delta \equiv V(\alpha \oplus \alpha) (E_1 \oplus E_2) \Delta$$

$$\equiv V(\alpha E_1 \oplus \alpha E_2) \Delta \equiv \alpha E_1 + \alpha E_2;$$

the second half is similar. The proof of (2.6) is parallel to this once we know that

$$\Delta E \equiv (E \oplus E) \Delta, \quad EV \equiv V(E \oplus E). \quad (2.11)$$
Since \((A, A, A, A)_C: E \rightarrow E \oplus E\) is a morphism of extensions, the first of these identities follows from Prop. 1.8. Similarly, \((V, V, V): E \oplus E \rightarrow E\) gives the second.

Now let us show that the Baer sum (2.4) makes \(\text{Ext}\) a group. The associative law follows from the definition (2.4) once we know that the diagonal and codiagonal satisfy the identities

\[(\Delta \oplus 1_C) \Delta = (1_C \oplus \Delta) \Delta: C \rightarrow C \oplus C \oplus C, \quad (2.12)\]
\[\nabla(\nabla \oplus 1_A) = \nabla(1_A \oplus \nabla): A \oplus A \oplus A \rightarrow A. \quad (2.12')\]

These follow directly from the definition of \(A\) or \(V\), provided we identify \((C \oplus C) \oplus C\) with \(C \oplus (C \oplus C)\) by the obvious isomorphism. To prove the commutative law for the Baer sum, use the isomorphism \(\tau_A: A_1 \oplus A, \rightarrow A_2 \oplus A\), given by \(\tau_A(a_1, a_2) = (a_1, a_2)\) (or, if you wish, by universality and a suitable diagram!). The morphism \((\tau_A, \tau_B, \tau_C): (E_1 \oplus E_2) \rightarrow E_2 \oplus E_1\) shows that \(\tau_A(E_1 \oplus E_2) \equiv (E_2 \oplus E_1) \tau_C;\) a calculation or a diagram proves that \(\nabla_A \tau_A = \nabla_A\) and that \(\Delta_C = \tau_C \Delta_C\). Hence we get the commutative law by

\[E_1 + E_2 = \nabla(E_1 \oplus E_2) \Delta = \nabla(1_\oplus \Delta) \Delta \equiv \nabla(\nabla \oplus 1_A) \tau \Delta = \nabla(1_A \oplus E_1) \Delta = E_2 + E_1.\]

To show that the split extension \(E_0\) acts as the zero for the Baer sum, first observe that for any \(E \in \text{Ext}(C, A)\) there is a commutative diagram

\[E: 0 \rightarrow A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C \rightarrow 0\]
\[E: 0 \rightarrow A \rightarrow A \oplus C \rightarrow C \rightarrow 0,\]

where \(\nu\) is the map \(\nu b = (0, ob) = \ell_2 \sigma b\). This diagram asserts that the split extension \(E_0\) can be written as the composite \(E_0 = 0_A E\), with \(0_A: A + A\) the zero homomorphism. Now the distributive law gives \(E + E_0 = 1_A E + 0_A E = (1_A + 0_A) E = 1_A E = E\). A similar argument shows that \((-1_A) E\) acts as the additive inverse of \(E\) under the Baer sum. Our second proof of the theorem is complete.

The second distributive law (2.6) contained in this theorem may be expressed as follows. For each \(a: A \rightarrow A'\) let \(\alpha_*: \text{Ext}(C, A) \rightarrow \text{Ext}(C, A')\) be the induced homomorphism, and similarly set \(\gamma (\gamma E = E\gamma\). Then \((\gamma_1 + \gamma_2) E = E\gamma_1 + E\gamma_2\), so (2.6) may now be written

\[(\alpha_1 + \alpha_2)_* = (\alpha_1)_* + (\alpha_2)_*, \quad (\gamma_1 + \gamma_2)^* = (\gamma_1)^* + (\gamma_2)^*.\]

A bifunctor with this property is said to be additive. Exactly as in (1.6.5), this property gives natural isomorphisms

\[\text{Ext}(C, A_1 \oplus A) \cong \text{Ext}(C, A) \oplus \text{Ext}(C, A),\]
\[\text{Ext}(C_1 \oplus C_2, A) \cong \text{Ext}(C_1, A) \oplus \text{Ext}(C_2, A).\]
For $R = \mathbb{Z}$ and $C$ a finitely generated abelian group, these formulas, with Prop. 1.4 and $\text{Ext}_R(\mathbb{Z}, A) = 0$, allow us to calculate $\text{Ext}_R(C, A)$.

**Corollary 2.2.** If the finite abelian groups $A$ and $C$ have relatively prime orders, then every extension of $A$ by $C$ splits.

**Proof.** Let $m$ and $n$ be the orders of $A$ and $C$, and let $\mu_m: C \to C$ be the homomorphism $\mu_m c = mc$ given by multiplication by $m$ in $C$. Since $m$ and $n$ are relatively prime, there is an $m'$ with $m'm \equiv 1 \pmod{n}$; hence $\mu_m$ is an automorphism, and every element of $\text{Ext}_R(C, A)$ has the form $E \cdot \mu_m$ for some $E$. But $\mu_m = 1_C + \cdots + 1_C$, with $m$ summands, so

$$E \cdot \mu_m = E(1_C + \cdots + 1_C) \equiv (1_A + \cdots + 1_A) E = v_mE = 0,$$

where $v_m: A + A$ is $v_m(a) = ma = 0$, q.e.d.

**Exercises**

In the following exercises it is convenient to assume that all factor systems $(f, g)$ satisfy the "normalization conditions"

$$f(c, 0) = 0 = f(0, d), \quad g(r, 0) = 0.$$

This can always be accomplished by using representatives $u$ with $u(0) = 0$.

1. For abelian groups (i.e., with $R = \mathbb{Z}$) show that a "normalized" function on $C \times C$ to $A$ is a factor system for extensions of abelian groups if and only if it satisfies the identities

$$f(c, d) + f(c + d, e) = f(c, d + e) + f(d, e), \quad f(c, d) = f(d, c),$$

which correspond respectively to the associative and commutative laws.

2. If $G_z(C, A)$ is the set of normalized functions $f$ satisfying the identities of Ex. 1, show that $\text{Ext}_z(C, A) \cong G_z(C, A)/S_z(C, A)$.

3. Do the analogue of Ex. 1 for any ring (identities on factor systems consisting of two functions $f$ and $g$).

**3. Obstructions to the Extension of Homomorphisms**

We have already observed that the functor $\text{Hom}$ does not preserve exact sequences, because a homomorphism $\alpha: A \to G$ on a submodule $A \lhd B$ cannot always be extended to a homomorphism of $B$ into $G$. We can now describe a certain element $\alpha E$ of $\text{Ext}(B/A, G)$ which presents the "obstruction" to this extension.

**Lemma 3.1.** Let $A$ be a submodule of $B$, and $E: A \to B \to C$ the corresponding exact sequence, with $C = B/A$. A homomorphism $\alpha: A \to G$ can be extended to a homomorphism $B \to G$ if and only if the extension $aE$ splits.
3. Obstructions to the Extension of Homomorphisms

Proof. Suppose first that \( a \) is extendable to \( \hat{a}: B \to G \). Form the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{c}
E: 0 \to A \xrightarrow{\alpha} B \xrightarrow{a} C \to 0 \\
E': 0 \to G \xrightarrow{\pi_1} G \oplus C \xrightarrow{\pi_2} C \to 0,
\end{array}
\]

where \( E' \) is the external direct sum with injection \( \iota_1 \), projection \( \pi_2 \). Fill in the dotted arrow with the map \( b \mapsto (\hat{a}b, ab) = \iota_1\hat{a}b + \iota_2\sigma b \). The resulting diagram is commutative, hence yields a morphism \( E \to E' \). According to Lemma 1.4, \( E' \equiv aE \). Since \( E' \) splits, so does \( aE \).

Conversely, assume that \( aE \) splits. The diagram

\[
\begin{array}{c}
E: 0 \to A \xrightarrow{\alpha} B \xrightarrow{\beta} C \to 0 \\
E: 0 \to G \xrightarrow{\pi_1} B' \xrightarrow{\pi_2} C \to 0,
\end{array}
\]

used to define \( aE \) yields a map \( \pi_1 \beta: B + G \) which extends \( a \). The lemma is proved.

The assignment to each \( a: A \to G \) of its obstruction \( aE \) is, by (2.6), a group homomorphism

\[
E^*: \text{Hom}_R(A, G) \to \text{Ext}_R(C, G).
\]

Call this the connecting homomorphism for the exact sequence \( E \).

Theorem 3.2. If \( E: A \to B \to C \) is a short exact sequence of \( R \)-modules, then the sequence

\[
0 \to \text{Hom}_R(C, G) \xrightarrow{\sigma} \text{Hom}_R(B, G) \xrightarrow{\alpha} \text{Hom}_R(A, G)
\]

\[\xrightarrow{\sigma} \text{Ext}_R(C, G) \xrightarrow{\alpha} \text{Ext}_R(B, G) \xrightarrow{\alpha} \text{Ext}_R(A, G).\]

is exact for any \( R \)-module \( G \).

Proof. We already know exactness at \( \text{Hom}(C, G) \) and \( \text{Hom}(B, G) \) by (1.6.7). Lemma 3.1 gives exactness at \( \text{Hom}(A, G) \). By Prop. 1.7, \( \sigma^*E^* = (E\sigma)^* = 0 \). Conversely, to show kernel contained in image at \( \text{Ext}(C, G) \) we must take an \( E_1 \in \text{Ext}(C, G) \) such that \( E_1\sigma \) splits and show \( E_1 \) the obstruction for some map \( A \to G \). The fact that \( E_1\sigma \) splits gives a commutative diagram

\[
\begin{array}{c}
E_1\sigma: 0 \to G \to G \oplus B \xrightarrow{\mu} B \to 0 \\
E_1: 0 \to G \xrightarrow{\iota_1} B_1 \xrightarrow{\iota_2} C \to 0.
\end{array}
\]

The splitting map \( \mu \) followed by \( \beta \) yields \( \beta_1 = \beta \mu: B \to B_1 \) (dotted arrow above) which makes the right hand lower triangle commutative.
Therefore $\sigma_1 \beta_1 \kappa = \sigma \kappa = 0$. But $E_1$ is exact, so $\beta_1 \kappa$ factors as $\kappa_1 \alpha_1$ for some $\alpha_1: A \to G$. Then ($\alpha_1$, $\beta_1$, I): $E \to E_1$ is a morphism of exact sequences which states $E_1 \equiv \alpha_1 E$.

An analogous argument yields exactness of the sequence at $\text{Ext}_R(B, G)$ and hence completes the proof of the theorem.

This theorem asserts that the functor $\text{Ext}$ repairs the inexactitude of $\text{Hom}$ on the right. At the same time $\text{Ext}$ presents a new inexactitude: On the right in (3.1), $\text{Ext}_R(B, G) \to \text{Ext}_R(A, G)$ is not always an epimorphism (see exercise). To describe the cokernel we need a new functor $\mathcal{E} \text{xt}$.

Turn now to the problem: When can a homomorphism $y: G \to B/A$ be "lifted" to $B$; that is, when is there a $\hat{y}: G \to B$ such that $y$ is the composite $G \to B \to B/A$? This yields a dual to the previous lemma.

**Lemma 3.3.** Let $C = B/A$ be a quotient module, $E$ the corresponding exact sequence. A homomorphism $y: G \to B/A$ can be lifted to a homomorphism $\hat{y}: G \to B$ if and only if the extension $E y$ splits.

The proof is exactly dual to that of Lemma 3.1, in the sense that all arrows are reversed and that direct sums are replaced by direct products. Again, call $E y \in \text{Ext}(G, A)$ the obstruction to lifting $y$. The assignment to each $y: G \to C$ of its obstruction $E y$ is a group homomorphism

$$E_y: \text{Hom}(G, C) \to \text{Ext}(G, A)$$

called the connecting homomorphism for $E$.

**Theorem 3.4.** If $E: A \to B \to C$ is a short exact sequence of $R$-modules, then the sequence

$$0 \to \text{Hom}_R(G, A) \to \text{Hom}_R(G, B) \to \text{Hom}_R(G, C) \to \text{Ext}_R(G, A) \to \text{Ext}_R(G, B) \to \text{Ext}_R(G, C)$$

(3.2)

is exact for any $R$-module $G$.

The proof is dual to that of Thm. 3.2.

**Theorem 3.5.** An $R$-module $P$ is projective if and only if $\text{Ext}_R(P, G) = 0$ for every $R$-module $G$.

By Thm.1.6.3, $P$ is projective if and only if every extension by $P$ splits. Thm. 3.2 provides the following way to calculate the group $\text{Ext}$.

**Theorem 3.6.** If $C$ and $G$ are given modules and if $F: K \to P \to C$ is an exact sequence with $P$ projective, then

$$\text{Ext}_R(C, G) \cong \text{Hom}_R(K, G)/\kappa \text{Hom}_R(P, G).$$

(3.3)

In particular, the group on the right is independent (up to isomorphism) of the choice of the short exact sequence $F$. 

Proof. In (3.1) replace $E$ by $F$. Since $P$ is projective, $\text{Ext}_R(P, G) = 0$, and the exactness of (3.1) gives the formula (3.3) for $\text{Ext}_R(C, G)$.

Since any module $C$ can be represented as a quotient of a free module, one may always calculate $\text{Ext}_R(C, G)$ by (3.3) with $P$ free. For example, the exact sequence $Z \xrightarrow{m} Z \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}/m\mathbb{Z}$, with $x$ multiplication by the integer $m$, provides a representation of the cyclic group $\mathbb{Z}_m$ as a quotient of $\mathbb{Z}$. Since $\text{Hom}(\mathbb{Z}, A) \cong A$ under the correspondence which maps each $f: \mathbb{Z} \rightarrow A$ into $f(1)$, we obtain an isomorphism $\text{Ext}_\mathbb{Z}(\mathbb{Z}_m, A) \cong A/mA$. The correspondence is that already used in Prop. 4.1.

**Proposition 3.7.** For abelian groups the sequences of Thms. 3.2 and 3.4 remain exact when a zero is added on the right.

**Proof.** In the case of Thm. 3.2 we must show that $x: A \rightarrow B$ a monomorphism implies $\ast^*: \text{Ext}(B,G) \rightarrow \text{Ext}(A,G)$ an epimorphism. To this end, take a free abelian group $F$, an epimorphism $\varphi: F \rightarrow B$ with kernel $K$, and let $L$ be $\varphi^{-1}(KA)$. Then $\varphi$ maps $L$ onto $\mathbb{Z}A$ with the same kernel $K$, giving a commutative diagram

\[
\begin{array}{c}
E_1: 0 \rightarrow K \rightarrow L \rightarrow A \rightarrow 0 \\
E_2: 0 \rightarrow K \rightarrow F \rightarrow B \rightarrow 0
\end{array}
\]

with exact rows $E_1, E_2$ and hence $E_1 \cong E_2 \ast$. This yields a commutative diagram

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{Hom}(K,G) \xrightarrow{E_1^\ast} \text{Ext}(B,G) \\
\text{Hom}(K,G) \xrightarrow{E_2^\ast} \text{Ext}(A,G) \rightarrow \text{Ext}(L,G);
\end{array}
\]

the bottom row is exact by Thm. 3.2. But $L$, as a subgroup of the free abelian group $F$, is itself free. By Thm. 3.5, $\text{Ext}(L,G) = 0$, hence $E_1^\ast$ is an epimorphism in the diagram, and so is $\ast$, q.e.d.

In the case of Thm. 3.4 we are given $E: A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C$ exact and we must show $\text{Ext}(G,B) \rightarrow \text{Ext}(G,C)$ an epimorphism. Represent any element of $\text{Ext}(G,C)$ by an exact sequence $S: C \rightarrow D \rightarrow G$. Since $\mu: C \rightarrow D$ is a monomorphism, the case just treated shows that there is an exact sequence $E': A \rightarrow M \rightarrow D$ with $\mu^* E' = E$. This states that we can fill out the following commutative diagram so that the first two rows and the last column will be exact

\[
\begin{array}{c}
E: 0 \rightarrow A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C \rightarrow 0 \\
E': 0 \rightarrow A \rightarrow M \rightarrow D \rightarrow 0
\end{array}
\]

\[
G \rightarrow G
\]
A diagram chase then shows the middle column exact. This middle column provides an element of $\text{Ext}(G, B)$ mapping on the last column $S \subseteq \text{Ext}(G, C)$, as desired.

Note that the diagram above is symmetric: Given exactness of the top row and the right column, exactness of the middle row is equivalent to exactness of the middle column. The case of Thm. 3.2 asserts that the diagram can be filled out so that the middle row is exact, while the case of Thm. 3.4 asserts that the diagram can be filled out so the middle column is exact. The same fact can be stated in subgroup language as follows:

**Corollary 3.8.** Given abelian groups $D$ and $A < B$ and a monomorphism $\mu : B/A \rightarrow D$, there exists an abelian group $M > B$ and an extension of $\mu$ to an isomorphism $M/A \cong D$.

This amounts to the construction of a group $M$ from a given subgroup $B$ and an "overlapping" quotient group $D$.

### Exercises

1. (Inexactitude of $\text{Ext}$ on the right.) Let $R = K[x, y]$ be the polynomial ring in two indeterminates $x$ and $y$ with coefficients in a field $K$ and $(x,y)$ the ideal of all polynomials with constant term 0. The quotient module $R/(x,y)$ is isomorphic to $K$, where $K$ is regarded as an $R$-module with $xk = 0 = yk$ for all $k \in K$, and $\mathbf{E} : (x,y) \rightarrow R \rightarrow K$ is an exact sequence of $R$-modules. Show that $\text{Ext}_R(R, G) \rightarrow \text{Ext}_R((x,y), G)$ is not an epimorphism for all $G$, by choosing an extension on the right in which $(x,y)$ is represented as the quotient of a free module in two generators.

2. Show similarly that the sequence of Thm. 3.4 cannot be completed with a zero on the right.

3. Show that Cor.3.8 amounts to the following (self-dual) assertion: Any homomorphism $a : B \rightarrow D$ of abelian groups can be written as a composite $a = rv$ with $v$ a monomorphism, $r$ an epimorphism, and $\text{Ker} r = v(\text{Ker} a)$.

4. Give a direct proof of the second half of Prop. 3.7. (Write $G$ as quotient of a free group.)

5. Prove Prop. 3.7 for modules over a principal ideal domain.

6. For $p$ a prime number and $C$ an abelian group with $pC = 0$, prove $\text{Ext}_Z(C, G) \cong \text{Hom}_Z(C, G/pG)$ [EILENBERG-MACLANE 1954, Thm. 26.5]

7. For $p$ a prime, $P$ the additive group of all rational numbers of the form $m/p^e$, $m, e \in Z$, and $Z(p)$ the additive group of $p$-adic integers, prove $\text{Ext}_Z(P/Z) \cong Z(p)/Z$ [EILENBERG-MACLANE 1942, Appendix B].

### 4. The Universal Coefficient Theorem for Cohomology

As a first application of the functor $\text{Ext}$ we give a method of "calculating" the cohomology groups of a complex for any coefficient group from the homology of that complex — provided we are dealing with
Theorem 4.1. (Universal Coefficients.) Let $K$ be a complex of free abelian groups $K_n$ and let $G$ be any abelian group. Then for each dimension $n$ there is an exact sequence

$$0 \to \text{Ext}(H_{n-1}(K), G) \xrightarrow{\beta} H^n(K, G) \xrightarrow{\alpha} \text{Hom}(H_n(K), G) \to 0$$

(4.1)

with homomorphisms $\beta$ and a natural in $K$ and $G$. This sequence splits, by a homomorphism which is natural in $G$ but not in $K$.

The second map $\alpha$ is defined on a cohomology class, $\text{cls} f$, as follows. Each $n$-cocycle of $\text{Hom}(K, G)$ is a homomorphism $f: K \to G$ which vanishes on $\partial K_{n+1}$, so induces $f_*: H_n(K) \to G$. If $f = \delta g$ is a coboundary, it vanishes on cycles, so $(\delta g)_* = 0$. Define $\alpha(\text{cls} f) = f_*$.

Proof. Write $C_n$ for the group of $n$-cycles of $K$; then $D_n = K_n/C_n$ is isomorphic to the group $B_{n-1}$ of $(n-1)$-boundaries of $K$. The boundary homomorphism $\partial: K_n \to K_{n-1}$ factors as

$$K_n \xrightarrow{i} D_n \xrightarrow{\partial'} C_{n-1} \xrightarrow{i} K_{n-1},$$

(4.2)

with $i$ the projection, $i$ the injection. The short sequences

$$T_*: C_n \to K_n \to D_n, \quad S_*: D_{n+1} \xrightarrow{\partial'} C_n \to H_n(K)$$

(4.3)

are exact, the second by the definition of $H_n$ as $C_n/\partial K_n$. The coboundary in the complex $\text{Hom}(K, G)$ is $\delta = \pm \partial^*$, where $\partial^*: \text{Hom}(K_{n-1}, G) \to \text{Hom}(K_n, G)$ is induced by $\partial$. This complex appears as the middle row in the diagram

$$
\begin{array}{cccc}
0 & 0 \\
\downarrow & \downarrow \\
0 & \text{Hom}(H_n, G) & \text{Hom}(C_n, G) & \text{Hom}(D_{n+1}, G) \\
\downarrow & \uparrow \partial^* & \downarrow \partial^* & \downarrow \partial^* \\
\cdots & \text{Hom}(K_{n-1}, G) & \text{Hom}(K_n, G) & \text{Hom}(K_{n+1}, G) & \cdots \\
\uparrow \partial^* & \downarrow \partial^* & \uparrow \partial^* & \\
\text{Hom}(C_{n-1}, G) & \text{Hom}(D_n, G) & \text{Ext}(H_{n-1}, G) & 0 \\
\downarrow & \uparrow & & \\
0 & 0 & & \\
\end{array}
$$

This diagram is commutative up to a sign (that involved in the definition $\delta = \pm a^*$). In the diagram the fundamental exact sequence (Thm. 3.2) for $\text{Hom}$ and $\text{Ext}$ appears several times. The top row is the exact sequence for $S_\cdot \cdot$, the bottom that for $S_{n-1}$, with the right-hand zero standing for $\text{Ext}(C_{n-1}, G)$ which vanishes because $C_{n-1} \subset K_{n-1}$ is free. The columns are (parts of) the exact sequences for $T_{n-1}, T_n,$ and $T_{n+1}$; the zero at the middle top is $\text{Ext}(D_n, G)$, zero because $D_n$ is free.
The cohomology of the middle row is Ker $\delta / \text{Im} \delta$. Since $j^*$ is a monomorphism and $i^*$ an epimorphism, it is $\text{Ker}(\partial'^*i^*) / \text{Im}(j^*\partial'^*)$, and is mapped by $i^*$ onto Ker $\partial'^*$, isomorphic to $\text{Hom}(H_n,G)$ by exactness of the top row. The combined map is $a$. Its kernel is $\text{Im} j^* / \text{Im}(j^*\partial'^*)$; as $j^*$ is a monomorphism, this is $\text{Ext}(H_{n-1},G)$, by exactness of the bottom row. This proves (4.1) exact, with $\beta$ described in "switchback" notation as $j^*(S_{n-1}^*)^{-1}$, hence natural.

To split the sequence (4.1), observe that $D_n \cong B_{n-1} < K_{n-1}$ is free, so the sequence $T_n$ of (4.3) splits by a homomorphism $\varphi: D_n \rightarrow K_n$ with $j^* \varphi = 1_D$. Then $\varphi^* j^* = 1$, so $S_{n-1}^* \varphi^*$ is a left inverse for $\mathbb{I} = j^*(S_{n-1}^*)^{-1}$, as desired. This left inverse depends on the choice of the maps $\varphi$ splitting $T_n$. Such a choice cannot be made uniformly for all free complexes $K$, hence $\varphi^*$ is not natural in $K$ (but is natural in $G$ for $K$ fixed).

This proof uses several times the fact that subgroups of free abelian groups are free. The analogous statement holds for free modules over a principal ideal domain; hence the theorem holds for $K$ a complex of free modules over such a domain $D$ (and $G$ a $D$-module). The most useful case is that for vector spaces over a field. Here Thm.4.1 gives

**Corollary 4.2.** If $K$ is a chain complex composed of vector spaces $K_n$ over a field $F$, and if $V$ is any vector space over that field, there is a natural isomorphism $H^n(K,V) \cong \text{Hom}(H^n(K),V)$.

In particular, when $V = F$, $H^n(K,F)$ is the vector space dual of $H_n(K)$.

Thm.4.1 is a special case of a more general result which "calculates" the homology of the complex $\text{Hom}(K,L)$ formed from two complexes $K$ and $L$. Recall (II.3.4) that $\text{Hom}(K,L)$ is a complex with $\text{Hom}_n(K,L) = \prod \text{Hom}(K_p,L_{p+n})$ and with the boundary $\partial = \partial_H$ of any $n$-chain $j = \{f_p: K_p \rightarrow L_{p+n}\}$ given by

$$
(\partial_H j)_p k = \partial_L (f_p k) + (-1)^{n+1} f_{p-1}(\partial_K k), \quad k \in K_p.
$$

The general theorem reads

**Theorem 4.3.** (Homotopy Classification Theorem.) For $K$ and $L$ complexes of abelian groups with each $K_n$ free as an abelian group, there is for each $n$ a short exact sequence

$$
\bigoplus_{p=-\infty}^{\infty} \text{Ext}(H_p(K),H_{p+n+1}(L)) \xrightarrow{\beta} H_n(\text{Hom}(K,L)) \bigoplus_{p=-\infty}^{\infty} \text{Hom}(H_p(K),H_{p+n}(L)).
$$

with homomorphisms $\beta$ and $a$ which are natural in $K$ and $L$. This sequence splits by a homomorphism which is natural in $L$ but not in $K$.

Change lower indices here to upper indices by the usual convention $H_{-n} = H^n$ and assume $L = L_0 = G$ with boundary zero; then each of
the products has at most one non-zero term, and (4.5) becomes (4.1).
In general, if we shift the indices of L by n (and change the sign of the
boundaries in L by \((-1)^n\)) we shift \(H_n(\text{Hom}(K,L))\) to \(H_0(\text{Hom}(K,L))\);
hence it suffices to prove the theorem when \(n=0\). Now a 0-cycle of
\(\text{Hom}(K,L)\) is by (4.4) just a chain transformation \(f: K \rightarrow L\); as such
it induces for each dimension \(p\) a homomorphism \((f_p)_*: H_p(K) \rightarrow H_p(L)\).
The family of these homomorphisms is an element \(f_* = \{(f_p)_*\} \in \prod_p \text{Hom}(H_p(K), H_p(L))\). Any \(f\) homotopic to \(f\) induces the same homomorphism \(f_*\). Since an element of \(H_0(\text{Hom}(K,L))\) is just a homotopy class, \(\text{cls} f\), of such chain transformations (Prop. II.3.2), the assignment \(a(\text{cls} f) = f_*\) determines the natural homomorphism for the theorem.
The definition of the homomorphism \(\beta\) is more subtle and will be given
below. We first treat a special case of the theorem.

**Lemma 4.4.** If the boundary in \(K\) is identically zero, then \(a = a_\beta\) is an
isomorphism

\[
a_\beta : H_0(\text{Hom}(K,L)) \cong \prod_{p=-\infty}^\infty \text{Hom}(K_p, H_p(L)).
\]

**Proof.** Since \(\partial_K = 0\), \(H_p(K) = K_p\). Let \(C_p(L)\) denote the group of
+ -cycles of \(L\), while \(B_p(L)\) is that of + -boundaries. Any \(g = \{g_p\} \in \prod_p \text{Hom}(K_p, H_p(L))\) consists of homomorphisms \(g_p : K_p \rightarrow H_p(L)\); since
\(K\) is free and \(C_p(L) \rightarrow H_p(L)\) is an epimorphism, each \(g_p\) can be lifted to \(g'_p : K_p \rightarrow C_p(L)\). These \(g'_p\) with range extended to \(L_p \supset C_p(L)\) constitute
a chain transformation \(f: K \rightarrow L\) with \(a_\beta(\text{cls} f) = g\). Thus \(a_\beta\) is an epimorphism.
To show \(a_\beta\) a monomorphism, suppose \(a_\beta(\text{cls} f) = 0\) for some \(f\). For each
\(p\) this means that \(f_p(K_p) \subset B_p(L)\). Since \(\partial : L_{p+1} \rightarrow B_p(L)\) and \(K_p\) is free,
the map \(f_p\) can be lifted to \(s_p : K_p \rightarrow L_{p+1}\) with \(\partial s_p = f_p\). Since \(s_{p-1} \partial = s_{p-1} \partial_K = 0\), this equation may be written \(f_p = \partial s_p + s_{p-1} \partial\). This states
that \(f\) is chain homotopic to zero, hence \(\text{cls} f = 0\) in \(H_0(\text{Hom}(K,L))\).
Thus \(\text{Ker} a_\beta = 0\), and the lemma is proved.

Now consider the general case of Thm. 4.3, using the notation (4.2)
and (4.3) in \(K\). The family of groups \(C_n \subset K_n\) can be regarded as a com-
plex with boundary zero. A similar convention for \(D\) gives an exact
sequence

\[
0 \rightarrow C \overset{i}{\rightarrow} K \overset{l}{\rightarrow} D \rightarrow 0
\]

(4.6)
of complexes. Apply the functor \(\text{Hom}(\cdot, L)\) to get another exact
sequences of complexes

\[
E: 0 \rightarrow \text{Hom}(D,L) \overset{i^*}{\rightarrow} \text{Hom}(K,L) \overset{l^*}{\rightarrow} \text{Hom}(C,L) \rightarrow 0,
\]

where the zero on the right stands for \(\text{Ext}(D,L)\), which vanishes because
\(D_n \cong B_{n-1} \subset K_{n-1}\) is a subgroup of a free group, hence free. The exact
homology sequence of $E$ reads
\[ \cdots \xrightarrow{\partial_n} H_0(\text{Hom}(D, L)) \xrightarrow{i^*} H_0(\text{Hom}(K, L)) \xrightarrow{i^*} H_0(\text{Hom}(C, L)) \xrightarrow{\partial_n} \cdots, \]
with the connecting homomorphisms, for $n = 1$ and $n = 0$,
\[ \partial_{E,n}: H_n(\text{Hom}(C, L)) \to H_{n-1}(\text{Hom}(D, L)). \]
The middle portion of this sequence can be expressed in terms of $\partial_E$ as a short exact sequence
\[ 0 \to \text{Coker} \partial_{E,1} \to H_0(\text{Hom}(K, L)) \to \text{Ker} \partial_{E,0} \to 0. \quad (4.7) \]
This is a short exact sequence with middle term $H_0(\text{Hom}(K, L))$, exactly as in our theorem; it remains only to identify the end terms by analysing $\partial_E$.

Now $\partial': D \to C$ induces maps $\partial'^* : \text{Hom}(C, L) \to \text{Hom}_{n-1}(D, L)$ anti-commuting with $\partial_L$ and hence also induces maps on homology. These maps (up to sign) are the connecting homomorphisms $\partial$. Indeed, $\partial_E$ was defined on cycles by the "switchback" $j^*-1\partial_Hi^*-1$. A cycle $g$ of $\text{Hom}(C, L)$ is a family of maps $\{g_p : C_p \to L_{p+n}\}$ with $\partial_L g_p = 0$; since $D_p$ is free, $K_p \cong C_p \oplus D_p$, so each $g_p$ can be extended to $f_p : K_p \to L_{p+n}$ with $\partial_L f_p = 0$. Since $i^* f = i g$, take $i^{-1}g$ to be $f$. Since $\partial_L f = 0$, the formula (4.4) for the boundary $\partial_H$ in $\text{Hom}(K, L)$ reduces to $\partial_H f = \pm \partial^*_K f$. Now $\partial_K = i \partial' i$ by (4.2), so $\partial_H f = \pm j^* \partial'^* i^* g$ and we may take $j^*-1 \partial_H i^* g$ to be $\pm \partial'^* g$: Thus $\partial_E$ is indeed induced by $\pm \partial'^*$. But the isomorphism $\alpha$, of Lemma 4.4 is natural, so we have commutativity up to a sign in the diagrams
\[ H_n(\text{Hom}(C, L)) \xrightarrow{\partial_n = \pm \partial'^*} H_{n-1}(\text{Hom}(D, L)) \]
\[ \prod_p \text{Hom}(C_p, H_{p+n}(L)) \xrightarrow{\partial'^*} \prod_p \text{Hom}(D_{p+1}, H_{p+n}(L)). \]
We may thus read off the kernel of $\partial_E$ as isomorphic to that of $\partial'^*$ (lower line).

Now apply $\text{Hom}(-, H_{p+n}(L))$ to the exact sequence $S_p$ of (4.3). According to the fundamental exact sequence (Thm. 3.2) for Hom and Ext, we get an exact sequence
\[ 0 \to \text{Hom}(H_p(K), H_{p+n}(L)) \to \text{Hom}(C_p, H_{p+n}(L)) \to \text{Hom}(D_{p+1}, H_{p+n}(L)) \]
\[ \to \text{Ext}(H_p(K), H_{p+n}(L)) \to 0, \quad (4.8) \]
where the last zero stands for $\text{Ext}(C_p, H_{p+n}(L))$, which vanishes because $C_p < K_p$ is free. The direct product of these sequences over all $p$ is still exact, and gives the kernels and cokernels of $\partial'^*$ as
\[ \text{Ker} \partial_{E,0} \cong \text{Ker} \partial'^* = \prod_p \text{Hom}(H_p(K), H_p(L)), \]
\[ \text{Coker} \partial_{E,1} \cong \text{Coker} \partial'^* = \prod_p \text{Ext}(H_p(K), H_{p+1}(L)). \]
Substituting these values in (4.7) gives the desired exact sequence (4.5) of Thm.4.3. The homomorphism $a$ thereby is the composite

$$H_0(\text{Hom}(K,L)) \xrightarrow{i^*} H_0(\text{Hom}(C,L)) \xrightarrow{a} \prod_p \text{Hom} \left( C_p, H_p(L) \right) \xrightarrow{\alpha^-} \prod_p \text{Hom} \left( H_p(K), H_p(L) \right);$$

here the last arrow stands for the additive relation which is the converse (or, the "inverse") of the first monomorphism of (4.8). This composite $a$ assigns to each $f: K \to L$ the family of induced maps of homology classes, so is the map already described. The homomorphism $\beta$ is the composite

$$\prod_p \text{Ext} \left( H_p(K), H_{p+1}(L) \right) \xrightarrow{S^*} \prod_p \text{Hom} \left( D_{p+1}, H_{p+1}(L) \right) \xrightarrow{\alpha^-} H_0(\text{Hom}(D,L)) \xrightarrow{i^*} H_0(\text{Hom}(K,L));$$

it is thus the composite $\beta = j^* \alpha_0^{-1} S^{-1}$, where $S^{-1}$ is the "inverse" of the homomorphism $S^*$ of (4.8) obtained by composition with the short exact sequence $S$. As such a composite of natural maps, $\beta$ is natural. To split (4.5) choose $\varphi$ with $j\varphi = 1_D$ as before; thus $S^* \alpha_0 \varphi^*$ is a left inverse for $\beta = j^* \alpha_0^{-1} S^{-1}$, natural in $L$ but not in $K$.

In the homotopy classification theorem the terms in Ext vanish when $H_n(K)$ is free. Hence

**Corollary 4.5.** If $K$ and $L$ are complexes of abelian groups with each $K_n$ and each $H_n(K)$ free, then two chain transformations $f, f': K \to L$ are chain homotopic if and only if $f^*, f'^*: H_n(K) \to H_n(L)$ for every dimension $n$.

The proof depends on observing that $j \simeq f'$ means exactly that $\text{cls} j = \text{cls} f$ in $H_0(\text{Hom}(K,L))$. On the other hand, when some $\text{Ext} \left( H_p(K), H_{p+1}(L) \right) \neq 0$, the condition $f^* = f'^*$ for all $n$ is not sufficient to make $j$ chain homotopic to $f'$.

A useful application of the universal coefficient theorem is

**Corollary 4.6.** If $j: K \to K'$ is a chain transformation between complexes $K$ and $K'$ of free abelian groups with $f^*: H_n(K) \cong H_n(K')$ for all $n$, then, for any coefficient group $G, j^*: H^n(K', G) \to H^n(K, G)$ is an isomorphism.

Proof. Since the maps $a$ and $\beta$ are natural in $K$, the diagram

$$0 \to \text{Ext} \left( H_{n-1}(K'), G \right) \to H^n(K', G) \to \text{Hom} \left( H_n(K'), G \right) \to 0$$

$$0 \to \text{Ext} \left( H_{n-1}(K), G \right) \to H^n(K, G) \to \text{Hom} \left( H_n(K), G \right) \to 0$$

is commutative. Since the maps $j_n: H_n(K) \to H_n(K')$ are isomorphisms, so are the outside vertical maps $\text{Ext} (j_{n-1}, 1_G)$ and $\text{Hom} (j_n, 1_G)$. By the short five lemma, the middle map is an isomorphism, q.e.d.

Mac Lane, Homology 6
Exercise

1. Give a direct proof of Cor. 4.2.

2. Show that Thms. 4.1 and 4.3 hold for complexes of R-modules if the hypothesis that $K_n^1$ is free is replaced by the assumption that $C_n^1 (K)$ and $K_n^1 / C_n^1 (K)$ are projective modules for every $n$.

3. If $K$ and $L$ are complexes of abelian groups with each $K_n^1$ free, then to any family $y_n^1 : H_n^1 (K) \rightarrow H_n^1 (L)$ of homomorphisms, one for each $n$, there is a chain transformation $f : K \rightarrow L$ with $y_n^1 = H_n^1 (f)$.

5. Composition of Extensions

Return now to the study of the extensions of modules. Two short exact sequences

\[ E : 0 \rightarrow A \rightarrow B_1 \rightarrow K \rightarrow 0, \quad E' : 0 \rightarrow K \rightarrow B_0 \rightarrow C \rightarrow 0, \]

the first ending at the module $K$ where the second starts, may be spliced together by the composite map $B_1 \rightarrow K \rightarrow B_0$ to give a longer exact sequence

\[ E \circ E' : 0 \rightarrow A \rightarrow B_1 \rightarrow B_0 \rightarrow C \rightarrow 0 \quad (5.1) \]

called the Yoneda composite of $E$ and $E'$. Conversely, any exact sequence $A \rightarrow B_1 \rightarrow B_0 \rightarrow C$ has such a factorization, with $K = \text{Ker} (B_1 \rightarrow C) = \text{Im} (B_1 \rightarrow B_0)$.

Longer exact sequences work similarly. Consider

\[ S : 0 \rightarrow A \rightarrow B_{n-1} \rightarrow B_{n-2} \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow B_0 \rightarrow C \rightarrow 0 \]

an $n$-fold exact sequence starting at $A$ and ending at $C$. If $T$ is any $m$-fold exact sequence, starting at the module $C$ where $S$ ends, a splice at $C$ gives the Yoneda composite $S \circ T$, which is an $(n+m)$-fold exact sequence starting where $S$ starts and ending where $T$ ends. This composition of sequences is clearly associative, but it need not be associative under the composition with homomorphisms. For example, for $E$ and $E'$ as in (5.1), let $M$ be any module and $n : K \oplus M + K$ the projection of the direct sum. The commutative diagrams

\[
\begin{array}{cc}
E_1 : A \rightarrow B_1 \oplus M \rightarrow K \oplus M \\
E' : K \oplus M \rightarrow B_0 \oplus M \rightarrow C
\end{array}
\]

and the definitions of composites show that $E_1 \equiv E n$ and $E' \equiv \pi E_1'$; in the top row, the composite

\[ E_1 \circ E_1' : 0 \rightarrow A \rightarrow B_1 \oplus M \rightarrow B_0 \oplus M \rightarrow C \rightarrow 0 \quad (5.1') \]

is not the same as (5.1); in other words $(E n) E_1' \neq E (\pi E_1')$, and the associative law fails.
For short exact sequences we have already defined congruence as isomorphism with end maps the identity. For long sequences we need a wider congruence relation \( \equiv \) with the property that

\[
(E'' \beta) \circ E' \equiv E'' \circ (\beta E')
\]  

whenever the composites involved are all defined; that is, for \( E'' \) ending at some module \( K \), for \( \beta : L \rightarrow K \) for some \( L \), and \( E' \) starting at \( L \). Let us then define congruence as the weakest reflexive, symmetric, and transitive relation including \((5.2)\) and the previous congruence for short exact sequences. This definition can be restated as follows. Write any \( n \)-fold exact sequence \( S \) as the composite of \( n \) exact sequences \( E_i \) in the form

\[
S = E_n \circ E_{n-1} \circ \cdots \circ E_1;
\]

the \( E_i \) are unique up to isomorphism. A second \( n \)-fold sequence \( S' \) with the same start and end as \( S \) is congruent to \( S \) if \( S' \) can be obtained from \( S \) by a finite sequence of replacements of the following three types

(i) Replace any one factor \( E_i \) by a congruent short exact sequence;

(ii) If two successive factors have the form \( E'' \beta \circ E' \) for some \( E'' \), \( \beta \), and \( E' \), as in \((5.2)\), replace them by \( E'' \circ \beta E' \);

(iii) If two successive factors have the form \( E'' \circ \beta E' \), replace by \( E'' \beta \circ E' \).

For example, the 2-fold sequences \((5.1)\) and \((5.1')\) are congruent.

We also define the composite of a long exact sequence or its congruence class with a "matching" homomorphism. Specifically, if \( S \) is an \( n \)-fold exact sequence starting at \( A \) and ending at \( C \), then we define a \( S \) whenever \( \alpha \) is a homomorphism with domain \( A \) and \( S \gamma \) whenever \( \gamma \) has range \( C \) by the formulas (for \( S \) as in \((5.3)\)):

\[
\alpha (E_n \circ \cdots \circ E_1) = (\alpha E_n) \circ E_{n-1} \circ \cdots \circ E_1, \\
(E_n \circ \cdots \circ E_2 \circ E_1) \gamma = E_n \circ \cdots \circ E_2 \circ (E_1 \gamma).
\]

If \( S \) and \( S' \) are \( n \)-fold exact sequences, a morphism \( \Gamma : S \rightarrow S' \) is a family of homomorphisms \((\alpha, \ldots, \gamma)\) forming a commutative diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccccccccc}
S : & 0 & \rightarrow & A & \rightarrow & B_{n-1} & \rightarrow & \cdots & \rightarrow & B_0 & \rightarrow & C & \rightarrow & 0 \\
& \downarrow{\Gamma} & \downarrow{\alpha} & \downarrow{\alpha} & \downarrow{\gamma} & \downarrow{\gamma} & \downarrow{\gamma} & & \downarrow{\gamma} & \downarrow{\gamma} & \downarrow{\gamma} & \downarrow{\gamma} & \downarrow{\gamma} \\
S' : & 0 & \rightarrow & A' & \rightarrow & B'_{n-1} & \rightarrow & \cdots & \rightarrow & B'_0 & \rightarrow & C' & \rightarrow & 0.
\end{array}
\]

We say that \( \Gamma \) starts with the homomorphism \( \alpha \) and ends with \( \gamma \). Now \( \alpha E \) was defined by just such a diagram \( E \rightarrow \alpha E \), so our definition of a \( S \) above yields a morphism \( S + \alpha S \) starting with \( \alpha \) and ending with \( 1 \), as well as \( S \gamma \rightarrow S \) starting with \( 1 \) and ending with \( \gamma \). More generally we have, as in Prop. 1.8,
Proposition 5.1. Each morphism $\Gamma: S \to S'$ of n-fold exact sequences $S$ and $S'$ starting with $a$ and ending with $y$ yields a congruence $a \equiv S' y$.

Proof. For notational symmetry, set $B_n = A$ and $B_1 = C$. Write $K_i = \text{Im}(B_i \to B_{i-1}) = \text{Ker}(B_{i-1} \to B_{i-2})$ for $i = n - 1, \ldots , 1$; thus $S$ factors as $E_n \circ \cdots \circ E_1$, where $E_i: K_i \to B_{i-1} \to K_{i-1}$ and $K_n = A, K_0 = C$. Factor $S'$ similarly. The given morphism $\Gamma: S \to S'$ induces homomorphisms $\beta \colon K_i \to K_i'$ which form a commutative diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
E_i: & 0 \to K_i \to B_{i-1} \to K_{i-1} \to 0 & \beta_i \\
& v & v & v \\
E_i': & 0 \to K_i' \to B_{i-1}' \to K_{i-1}' \to 0 .
\end{array}
$$

By Prop. 1.8 this diagram implies that $\beta_i E_i \equiv E_i' \beta_{i-1}$; at the ends, $\beta_n = \alpha$ and $\beta_0 = y$. Hence, by our definition of congruence,

$$
\alpha S = (x E_n) o E_{n-1} \cdots \equiv (E_n' \beta_{n-1}) o E_{n-1} \cdots \equiv E_n' o (\beta_{n-1} E_{n-1}) \cdots \equiv E_n' o (E_{n-1} \beta_{n-2}) \cdots \equiv \cdots \equiv S' \beta_0 = S' y .
$$

This result also gives an alternative definition of congruence, as follows.

Proposition 5.2. A congruence $S \equiv S'$ holds between two n-fold exact sequences starting at $A$ and ending at $C$ if and only if there is an integer $k$ and $2k$ morphisms of n-fold exact sequences running alternately to the left and to the right, all starting with $1_A$ and ending with $1_C$.

This proposition states that $S \equiv S'$ is the weakest reflexive, symmetric, and transitive relation such that $\Gamma: S \to S'$ with ends $\mathfrak{1}$ implies $S \equiv S'$.

Proof. First suppose $S \equiv S'$. In the elementary congruence (5.2), the definition of $E'' \beta$ yields a morphism $E'' \beta \to E''$, while the definition of $\beta E'$ yields a morphism $E' \to \beta E'$ of exact sequences. Placing these morphisms side by side yields a diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
E'' \beta: & A \to B_1 \to L & L \to B_0 \to C: E' \\
& v & v & v \\
E''': & A \to B_1' \to K & K \to B_0 \to C: \beta E'
\end{array}
$$

Splicing these two diagrams together on the common map/? yields a morphism $(E'' \beta) o E' \to E''' o (\beta E')$. Hence a string of congruences (5.2) yields a string of morphisms, as displayed. The converse is immediate, by Prop. 5.1.

Let $\text{Ext}_R^n(C, A)$, for fixed R-modules $C$ and $A$, stand for the set of all congruence classes $\sigma = \text{cls} S$ of n-fold exact sequences $S$ starting
at A and ending at C. Write \( S \in \text{Ext}^n(C, A) \) for \( S \in \sigma \in \text{Ext}^n(C, A) \). If \( T \in \text{Ext}^m(D, C') \) the composite \( S \circ T \) is defined when \( C = C' \); the class of \( S \circ T \) is determined by \( a \) and \( \tau \), and is an element of \( \text{Ext}^{n+m}(D, A) \) which we denote as \( \sigma \tau \) (without the circle notation for composition). The "matching" condition needed to define \( \sigma \tau \) can be remembered if one regards \( \sigma \in \text{Ext}^n(C, A) \) as a "morphism" from the end module C to the starting module A; then \( \sigma \tau \) is defined when the range of the morphism \( \tau \) equals the domain of \( a \). This rule will include the matching conditions for the composition of a homomorphism \( a: A \rightarrow A' \) with an extension \( \sigma \in \text{Ext}^n(C, A) \). This rule will also include the composition of two ordinary homomorphisms if we interpret \( \text{Ext}^0(C, A) \) to be \( \text{Hom}(C, A) \). This we do.

Each \( \text{Ext}^n(C, A) \) is a bifunctor on \( R \)-modules to sets, contravariant in \( C \) and covariant in \( A \). It is also an abelian group, under addition by a Baer sum. Indeed, two \( n \)-fold exact sequences \( S \in \sigma \in \text{Ext}^n(C, A) \) and \( S' \in \sigma' \in \text{Ext}^n(C', A') \) have a direct sum \( S \oplus S' \in \text{Ext}^n(C \oplus C', A \oplus A') \) found by taking direct sums of corresponding modules and maps in \( S \) and \( S' \). The congruence class of \( S \oplus S' \) depends only on the classes \( a \) and \( \sigma' \), and hence may be denoted as \( \sigma \oplus \sigma' \); to see this, note that the congruence \( (E'' \beta) \circ E' \equiv E'' \circ (\beta E') \) of (5.2) will carry over to a congruence on the direct sum as in

\[
(E'' \beta \oplus F'') \circ (E' \oplus F') \equiv (E'' \oplus F'') (\beta \oplus 1) (E' \oplus F')
\equiv (E'' \oplus F'') (\beta E' \oplus F').
\]

Finally, the Baer sum is defined for \( a_1, a_2 \in \text{Ext}^n(C, A) \) by the familiar formula

\[
\sigma_1 + \sigma_2 = \Delta^2_a (\sigma_1 \oplus \sigma_2) \Delta_C.
\]

Theorem 5.3. Let \( \text{Ext} \) be the collection of all congruence classes \( a, \tau, \ldots \) of multiple exact sequences of \( R \)-modules. Each \( a \) has a degree \( n \) \( (n=0, 1, 2, \ldots) \), an \( R \)-module \( C \) as domain, and a module \( A \) as range; we then write \( a \in \text{Ext}^n(C, A) \), and \( \text{Ext}^0(C, A) = \text{Hom}(C, A) \). The composite \( \sigma \tau \) is defined when \( \text{range } \tau = \text{domain } a \), and

\[
\text{degree}(a \tau) = \text{deg } \sigma + \text{deg } \tau, \quad \text{range } a \tau = \text{range } a, \quad \text{domain } a \tau = \text{domain } \tau.
\]

The sum \( \sigma_1 + \sigma_2 \) is defined for \( \sigma_1, a, \) in the same \( \text{Ext}^n(C, A) \) and makes \( \text{Ext}^n(C, A) \) an abelian group. The distributive laws

\[
(\sigma_1 + \sigma_2) \tau = \sigma_1 \tau + \sigma_2 \tau, \quad \sigma (\tau_1 + \tau_2) = \sigma \tau_1 + \sigma \tau_2
\]

and the associative law \( \sigma (a \tau) = (\sigma a) \tau \) all hold when the addition and composition involved are defined.
In brief, $\text{Ext}_R$ is like a ring, except that the sum $a + z$ and the product $\sigma \tau$ are not always defined.

This theorem clearly includes the previous Thm. 2.1 on $\text{Ext}^1 = \text{Ext}$, and the proof is exactly like the "conceptual" proof of that theorem. That proof rested on certain rules for "direct sums". In the present case these rules (and their prior counterparts) are

$$
(a \oplus \sigma')(\tau \oplus z') = \sigma \tau \oplus \sigma' \tau', \quad (2.8) \text{ and } (2.9),
$$

$$
\sigma V = V(\sigma \oplus \sigma), \quad (2.10), (2.11),
$$

$$
\Delta \tau = (\tau \oplus \tau') \Delta, \quad (2.10'), (2.11'),
$$

$$
\omega(\sigma \oplus \sigma') = (\sigma' \oplus \sigma) \omega, \quad (5.9)
$$

where $\omega$ is the natural isomorphism $\omega : A \oplus A' \rightarrow A' \oplus A$. It remains to prove these rules.

First take (5.6). If $a$ and $\tau$ both have degree zero, they are ordinary homomorphisms, and (5.6) is the usual (functorial) rule for computing direct sums of homomorphisms. If $a$ and $\tau$ both have positive degree, (5.6) is an obvious rule about the composition of direct sums of exact sequences. If $a$ has degree zero and $\tau$ has positive degree, then $a$ and $a'$ actually operate just on the leftmost factor of $\tau$ and $\tau'$, hence (5.6) is reduced to the case where $\tau$ and $\tau'$ are short exact sequences; this case is (2.8). Similarly, when $a$ has positive degree and $\tau$ degree zero, (5.6) reduces to (2.9).

Next take (5.7). When $a$ has degree zero, (5.7) becomes (2.10); when $\sigma$ has degree 1 and is a short exact sequence, it is the second of (2.11). When $a$ has degree 2, (2.11) gives the congruences

$$
(E, \sigma E_1)V = E_2 \sigma (E_1V) = E_2 \sigma V(E_1 \oplus E_1)
$$

which is (5.7). Longer cases are similar.

The proof of (5.8) is analogous, and (5.9) comes from the rule $\omega(E_1 \oplus E_2) \cong (E_2 \oplus E_1) \omega$, obtained by applying Prop. 1.8 to the morphism $(\omega, \omega, \omega) : E_1 \oplus E_2 \rightarrow E_2 \oplus E_1$.

It remains only to exhibit the zero and the inverse for the abelian group $\text{Ext}^n(C, A)$. The inverse of $\text{cls} S$ will be $\text{cls}((-1)_A)S$. The zero element of $\text{Ext}^n$ is for $n = 0$ the zero homomorphism, for $n = 1$ the direct sum extension, and for $n > 1$ the congruence class of the $n$-fold exact sequence

$$S_0: 0 \rightarrow A^1 \rightarrow A \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow 0 \rightarrow C^1 \rightarrow C \rightarrow 0.$$

Indeed, for each $S \in \text{Ext}^n(C, A)$ there is a morphism $(0, \ldots, 1) : S \rightarrow S_0$, so, by Prop. 5.1, $S_0 \cong o_A$ and $\text{cls} S + \text{cls} S_0 = \text{cls} S$. 


The rules (5.5) show that \( \text{Ext}^n \) is additive, so we obtain, as for \( \text{Ext}^1 \), the isomorphisms \( \text{Ext}^n(A \oplus B, G) \cong \text{Ext}^n(A, G) \oplus \text{Ext}^n(B, G) \), \( \text{Ext}^n(A, G \oplus H) \cong \text{Ext}^n(A, G) \oplus \text{Ext}^n(A, H) \). Furthermore, any short extension by a projective module splits, hence

\[
\text{Ext}^n(P, G) = 0, \quad n > 0, \quad P \text{ projective.} \tag{5.10}
\]

Our construction of an element \( \sigma \in \text{Ext}^n(C, A) \) as a class of all (possible) \( n \)-fold sequences congruent to one given sequence \( S \) yields a "big" class, and the class \( \text{Ext}^n(C, A) \) of such classes is then not well defined in the usual axiomatics of set theory. This "wild" use of set theory can be repaired: It is intuitively clear that it suffices to limit the cardinal numbers of the sets used in constructing sequences \( S \) for given modules \( A \) and \( C \).

We turn now to find means of computing the groups \( \text{Ext}^n \).

### 6. Resolutions

Any module \( C \) is a quotient \( C = F_0/R_0 \) of some free module \( F_0 \). The submodule \( R_0 \) is again a quotient \( R_0 = F_1/R_1 \) of a suitable free module \( F_1 \). Continuation of this process yields an exact sequence \( \cdots \to F_1 \to F_0 \to C \to 0 \) which will be called a "free resolution" of \( C \). We aim to compare any two such.

In more detail, a complex \( (X, \varepsilon) \) over the \( R \)-module \( C \) is a sequence of \( R \)-modules \( X \) and homomorphisms

\[
\cdots \to X_n \xrightarrow{\partial} X_{n-1} \xrightarrow{\partial} \cdots \to X_1 \xrightarrow{\partial} X_0 \xrightarrow{\varepsilon} C \to 0, \tag{6.1}
\]

such that the composite of any two successive homomorphisms is zero. In other words, \( X \) is a positive complex of \( R \)-modules, \( C \) is a trivial chain complex \( (C = C_0, \partial = 0) \), and \( \varepsilon : X \to C \) is a chain transformation of the complex \( X \) to the complex \( C \). A resolution of \( C \) is an exact sequence \( (6.1) \); that is, a complex \( (X, \varepsilon) \) over \( C \) with the homology \( H_n(X) = 0 \), for \( n > 0 \), and \( \varepsilon : H_0(X) \cong C \). The complex \( X \) is free if each \( X_n \) is a free module and projective if each \( X_n \) is projective. We compare any projective complex with any resolution.

**Theorem 6.1.** (Comparison Theorem.) If \( y : C \to C' \) is a homomorphism of modules, while \( \varepsilon : X \to C \) is a projective complex over \( C \) and \( \varepsilon' : X' \to C' \) is a resolution of \( C' \), then there is a chain transformation \( f : X \to X' \) with \( \varepsilon'f = \gamma \varepsilon \) and any two such chain transformations are chain homotopic.

We say that such an \( f \) lifts \( y \).

The proof uses only categorical properties of projectives and of exactness. Since \( X_0 \) is projective and \( \varepsilon' \) an epimorphism, \( \gamma \varepsilon : X_0 \to C' \) can be lifted to \( f_0 : X_0 \to X_0' \) with \( \varepsilon'f_0 = \gamma \varepsilon \). By induction it then suffices
to construct \( f_1 \), given \( f_0, \ldots, f_n \) such that the diagram
\[
\begin{array}{c}
X_n \xrightarrow{\partial_n} X_{n-1} \xrightarrow{\partial_{n-1}} X_{n-2} \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow X_0 \xrightarrow{\xi} C \\
X'_n \xrightarrow{\partial'_n} X'_{n-1} \xrightarrow{\partial'_{n-1}} X'_{n-2} \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow X'_0 \xrightarrow{\xi'} C'
\end{array}
\]

is commutative. By this commutativity, \( \partial'_n f_{n-1} \partial_n = f_{n-2} \partial \partial = 0 \).

Hence \( \text{Im}(f_{n-1} \partial_n) \subset \text{Ker} \partial'_n \).

By exactness of the bottom row, this kernel is \( \partial_n X'_n \).

Since \( X \), is projective, the map \( f_{n-1} \partial_n \) can be lifted to an \( f \), with \( \partial'_n f_n = f_{n-1} \partial_n \), q.e.d.

The construction of the homotopy is similar; it may be obtained directly or by applying the following lemma, noting that the difference of any two chain transformations \( f : X \to X' \) lifting the same \( \gamma \) is a chain transformation lifting \( 0 : C \to C' \).

**Lemma 6.2.** Under the hypotheses of Thm.6.1, let \( f : X \to X' \) be a chain transformation lifting \( \gamma : C \to C' \). Suppose that there is a \( t : C \to X'_0 \) such that \( \epsilon t = \gamma \). Then there exist homomorphisms \( s_n : X_n \to X'_{n+1} \) for \( n = 0, 1, \ldots \) such that, for all \( n \),
\[
\partial'_n s_n + \partial \epsilon = f_n, \quad \partial'_n s_{n+1} + s_n \partial = f_{n+1}.
\]

**Proof.** First, \( \epsilon'(f_0 - t \epsilon) : X_0 \to C' \) is zero. Hence \( f_0 - t \epsilon \) maps the projective module \( X_0 \) into \( \text{Ker} \epsilon' = \text{Im}(X_1 \to X_0) \); it can therefore be lifted to a map \( s_0 : X_0 \to X'_1 \) with \( \partial'_n s_0 = f_0 - t \epsilon \). Suppose by induction that we have \( t = s_{n-1}, s_0, \ldots, s_n \), as desired. We wish to find \( s_{n+1} \) with \( \partial'_n s_{n+1} = f_{n+1} - s_n \partial \). Now \( \partial'(f_{n+1} - s_n \partial) = f_n \partial - (f_{n+1} - s_{n+1} \partial) \partial = 0 \) by the induction assumption, so \( f_{n+1} - s_n \partial \) maps \( X_{n+1} \) into \( \text{Ker} \partial' = \partial X'_{n+2} \); therefore it can be lifted to the desired \( s_{n+1} : X_{n+1} \to X'_{n+2} \).

Let \( A \) be a fixed module; apply the functor \( \text{Hom}(\_, A) \) to a resolution (6.1). Since the functor does not preserve exactness, the resulting complex \( \text{Hom}(\_, A) \) may have non-trivial cohomology
\[
H^n(X, A) \neq H^n(\text{Hom}(\_, A)).
\]

**Corollary 6.3.** If \( X \) and \( X' \) are two projective resolutions of \( C \), while \( A \) is any module, then \( H^n(X, A) \cong H^n(X', A) \) depends only on \( C \) and \( A \).

**Proof.** By the first part of Thm.6.1, there are maps \( f : X \to X' \) and \( g : X' \to X \) lifting \( 1_C \); by the second half of the theorem, \( gf \) is homotopic to \( 1 : X + X \). Hence \( f^* : H^n(X', A) \to H^n(X, A) \) and \( g^* \) have \( g^* f^* = 1 = f^* g^* \), so both are isomorphisms, q.e.d.

We now show that this function \( H^n(X, A) \) of \( A \) and \( C \) is exactly Ext^n(A, C). For \( n = 0 \), \( X_1 \to X_0 \to C \to 0 \) is right exact, so
\[
0 \to \text{Hom}(C, A) \xrightarrow{\epsilon^*} \text{Hom}(X_0, A) \to \text{Hom}(X_1, A)
\]
is left exact. This states that \( \epsilon^* : \text{Hom}(C, A) \cong H^0(X, A) \). For \( n > 0 \),
each n-fold exact sequence $S$ may be regarded as a resolution of $C$, zero beyond the term $A$ of degree $n$, as in the diagram

$$
X_{n+1} \xrightarrow{\partial} X_n \rightarrow X_{n-1} \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow X_0 \rightarrow C \\
S: 0 \rightarrow A \rightarrow B_{n-1} \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow B_0 \rightarrow C \rightarrow 0.
$$

(6.2)

**Theorem 6.4.** If $C$ and $A$ are $R$-modules and $\varepsilon: X \rightarrow C$ a projective resolution of $C$, there is an isomorphism

$$
\zeta: \text{Ext}^n(C,A) \cong H^n(X,A), \quad n = 0, 1, \ldots,
$$

(6.3)
defined for $n > 0$ as follows. Regard $S \in \text{Ext}^n(C,A)$ as a resolution of $C$, and lift $\varepsilon_C$ to $g: X \rightarrow S$. Then $g_n: X_n \rightarrow A$ is a cocycle of $X$. Define

$$
\zeta(\text{cls}S) = \text{cls}g_n \in H^n(X,A).
$$

(6.4)

This isomorphism $\zeta$ is natural in $A$. It is also natural in $C$ in the following sense: If $\gamma': C' \rightarrow C, \varepsilon': X' \rightarrow C'$ is a projective resolution of $C'$, and $f: X' \rightarrow X$ lifts $\gamma$, then

$$
\gamma' \gamma^* = f^* \zeta: \text{Ext}^n(C,A) \rightarrow H^n(X', A).
$$

(6.5)

**Proof.** First observe that $\zeta$ is well defined. Since $g_n \partial = 0$, $g_n$ is an n-cocycle, as stated. Replace $g$ by any other chain transformation $g'$ lifting $\varepsilon_C$, as in (6.2). By Thm.6.1, there is a chain homotopy $s$ such that $g'_n - g_n = \partial s_n + s_{n-1} \partial$. But $s_n = 0$, $g'_n - g_n = s_{n-1} \partial = (-1)^n \partial s_{n-1}$, this by the definition (II.3.1) of the coboundary in $\text{Hom}(X,A)$. This states that the cocycles $g'_n$ and $g_n$ are cohomologous, so $\text{cls} g'_n = \text{cls} g_n$. Next replace $S$ by any congruent exact sequence $S'$. According to the description of the congruence relation $S \equiv S'$ given in Prop. 5.2, it will suffice to consider the case when there is a morphism $\Gamma: S \rightarrow S'$ starting and ending with $1$. In this case any $g: X \rightarrow S$ yields $\Gamma g: X \rightarrow S'$ with the same cocycle $g_n = (\Gamma g)_n$; hence $\text{cls} g_n$ is well defined as a function of $\text{cls} S$. Thus $\zeta$ is defined; its naturality properties as asserted follow at once, using suitable compositions of chain transformations.

Rather than proving directly that $\zeta$ is an isomorphism we construct its inverse. Given a resolution $X$, factor $\partial: X_n \rightarrow X_{n-1}$ as $X_n \xrightarrow{\partial} \partial X_n \xrightarrow{\kappa} X_{n-1}$, with $\kappa$ the injection; this yields an n-fold exact sequence $S_n(C,A)$ as in

$$
S_n(C,X): 0 \rightarrow \partial X_n \xrightarrow{\kappa} X_{n-1} \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow X_0 \rightarrow C \\
h S_n: 0 \rightarrow A \rightarrow C.
$$

(6.6)

Any n-cocycle $X_n \rightarrow A$ vanishes on $\partial X_{n+1} = \text{Ker} \partial'$, hence may be written uniquely in the form $h \partial'$ for some $h: \partial X_n \rightarrow A$. Construct the
composite $h^j$ $S_n$ of $h$ with the $n$-fold exact sequence $S_n$; this fills in the bottom row of this diagram. Define $\eta: H'(X,A) + \text{Ext}^n(C,A)$ by setting
\[ \eta(\text{cls}(h^j)) = \text{cls}(h^j S_n, X), \quad h: \partial X_n \to A. \] (6.7)

By the distributive law for the composition in Ext, the right hand side is additive in $h$. Hence to show $\eta$ well defined it suffices to show that $\eta(\text{cls}(h a'))$ vanishes when $h a'$ is the coboundary of some cochain $k: X_{n-1} \to A$. But $h a' = \delta k = (-1)^n k \delta = (-1)^n k \times \partial'$ means that $h = \pm k x$ and hence that $h^j S_n = \pm k x S_n$, where $x S_n \equiv 0$ by Prop. 1.7. Hence $\eta$ is well defined and is a homomorphism. Comparison of the diagrams (6.2) and (6.6) now shows that $\eta = \zeta^{-1}$.

This theorem states that the groups $\text{Ext}^n(C,A)$ may be computed from any projective resolution $\varepsilon: X \to C$; in particular, (6.5) shows how to compute induced homomorphisms $y^*: \text{Ext}^n(C,A) \to \text{Ext}^n(C', A)$ from resolutions.

Alternatively, many authors define the functor $\text{Ext}^n$ without using long exact sequences, setting $\text{Ext}^n(C,A) = H^n(X,A) = H^n(\text{Hom}(X,A))$. This gives a covariant functor of $A$, while for $y: C' \to C$ the induced maps $y^*: \text{Ext}^n(C,A) \to \text{Ext}^n(C', A)$ are defined by lifting $y$ to a comparison $X' \to X$.

Another consequence is a "canonical form" for sequences under congruence:

Corollary 6.5. If $S \in \text{Ext}^n(C,A)$ with $n > 1$, then there is a $T \equiv S$ of the form $T: 0 \to A \to B_{n-1} \to B_{n-2} \to \cdots \to 0 \to C \to 0$ in which the modules $B_{n-2}, \ldots, B_0$ are free.

Proof. Take $T = h S_n(C,X)$ for a suitable $h: \partial X_n \to A$, and $X$ any free resolution of $C$.

Corollary 6.6. For abelian groups $A$ and $C$, $\text{Ext}^n_Z(C,A) = 0$ if $n > 1$.

Proof. Write $C = F/R$ for $F$ free abelian. Since the subgroup $R$ of the free abelian group $F$ is free, $0 \to R \to F \to C \to 0$ is a free resolution which vanishes (with its cohomology) in dimensions above 1.

Consider now the effect of a ring homomorphism $\varrho: R' \to R$ (with $\varrho 1 = 1$). Any left $R$-module $A$ becomes a left $R'$-module when the operators are defined by $r'a = (\varrho r)a$; we say that $A$ has been pulled back along $\varrho$ to become the $R'$-module $\varrho A$. Any $R$-module homomorphism $a: C \to A$ is also an $R'$-module homomorphism $\varrho a: C \to \varrho A$. By the same token, any long exact sequence $S$ of $R$-modules pulls back to a long exact sequence $\varrho S$ of $R'$-modules, and congruent sequences remain congruent. Hence $\varrho^\#: \text{Ext}^n_R(C,A) \to \text{Ext}^n_{R'}(\varrho C, \varrho A)$, $n = 0, 1, \ldots$ (6.8)
called change of rings. For $\varrho$ fixed, they are natural in $C$ and $A$. 

These homomorphisms may be calculated from projective resolutions \( E: X+C \) and \( E': X'\to C \) by \( R \) and \( R'\)-modules, respectively. To exhibit the ring \( R \), write \( H^n(\text{Hom}_R(X, A)) \) for \( H^n(X, A) \).

**Theorem 6.7.** The change of rings \( \varrho\# \), via the isomorphism \( \zeta \) of Thm. 6.4, is given by the composite map

\[
H^n(\text{Hom}_R(X, A)) \overset{\varrho^*}{\to} H^n(\text{Hom}_{R'}(\varrho X, \varrho A)) \overset{f^*}{\to} H^n(\text{Hom}_{R'}(X', \varrho A))
\]

where \( \varrho^* \) is the cohomology map induced by the chain transformation \( \varrho\#: \text{Hom}_R \to \text{Hom}_{R'} \) and \( f: X'\to eX \) is a chain transformation lifting the identity of \( eC \).

**Proof.** The case \( n=0 \) is left to the reader. For \( n>0 \) take any \( S \in \text{Ext}_R^n(C, A) \). As in (6.2), \( 1_C \) lifts to \( g: X\to S \). Since \( eX\to eC \) is a resolution of \( eC \), the comparison theorem lifts the identity of \( eC \) to a chain transformation \( f: X'\to eX \). The diagram is

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\cdots \to X'_n \to X'_{n-1} \to \cdots \to X'_0 \to eC \\
\downarrow f_n \quad \downarrow \quad \downarrow \\
\cdots \to X_n \to X_{n-1} \to \cdots \to X_0 \to C \\
\downarrow g_n \quad \downarrow \quad \downarrow \\
S: 0 \to A \to B_{n-1} \to \cdots \to B_0 \to C.
\end{array}
\]

Now read off the maps: The isomorphism \( \zeta \) carries \( \text{cls} S \) to \( \text{cls} g_n \), \( \varrho\# \) regards \( g_n \) as a \( R'\)-module homomorphism, \( f^* \) maps \( \text{cls} g_n \) to \( \text{cls} (g_n f_n) \), which is exactly \( \zeta(\text{cls} \varrho S) \) because \( gf \) lifts 1. Hence the result, which will be of use in the treatment of products.

**Exercises**

1. If \( \varepsilon: Y\to C \) is a projective complex over \( C \) and \( \varepsilon': X\to C \) a resolution of \( C \), construct natural homomorphisms

\[ \zeta: \text{Ext}_R^n(C, A) \to H^n(Y, A), \quad \eta: H^n(X, A) \to \text{Ext}_R^n(C, A). \]

2. (Calculation of Yoneda product by resolutions.) If \( X\to C \) and \( Y\to A \) are projective resolutions, \( g \in \text{Hom}_u(X, A) \) and \( h \in \text{Hom}^m(Y, D) \) are cocycles, write \( g \) as \( g_0 \varrho' \) for \( g_0: \partial X_n \to A \), lift \( g_0 \) to \( f \) as in the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccccc}
X_{m+n} & \to & X_n & \to & \partial X_n \to 0 \\
\downarrow f & & \downarrow \varrho & & \downarrow \varrho_0 \\
Y_m & \to & Y_0 & \to & A \to 0,
\end{array}
\]

show \( hf \) an \((m+n)\)-cocycle of \( \text{Hom}^{m+n}(X, D) \), and prove that the Yoneda product \( \eta(\text{cls} h) \circ \eta(\text{cls} g) \) is \( \eta(\text{cls} hf) \).

3. Given \( E=(\chi, \sigma): A\to B\to C \) exact and maps \( a: A\to A' \), \( \xi: B\to A' \), show by a diagram that \((a+\xi\chi)E = aE\).
Chapter III. Extensions and Resolutions

4. If \( S = E_n \circ \cdots \circ E_1 \), show that any morphism \( \Gamma: S \to S' \) of \( n \)-fold exact sequences starting with a map \( a: A \to A' \) can be factored as

\[
S \to (\varepsilon E_n) \circ E_{n-1} \circ \cdots \circ E_1 \to S'.
\]

5. (Another formulation of the congruence relation on exact sequences.) If \( S, S' \in \text{Ext}^n(C, A) \), show that \( S \equiv S' \) if and only if there is a \( T \in \text{Ext}^n(C, A) \) with morphisms \( \Gamma: T \to S, \Gamma': T \to S' \) starting and ending with 1's. (Use Exs. 3 and 4 and \( T = hS_n(C, X) \).)

7. Injective Modules

The description of \( \text{Ext}^n \) by resolutions reads: Resolve the first argument by projective modules and calculate \( \text{Ext}^n \) by cohomology: \( \text{Ext}^n(C, A) \cong H^n(\text{Hom}(X, A)) \). We wish a dual statement, using a suitable resolution of the second argument \( A \). For this we need the dual of a projective module; it is called an injective module.

A left \( R \)-module \( J \) is said to be \textit{injective} if a homomorphism \( \alpha \) with range \( J \) can always be extended; that is, if for each \( \alpha: A \to J \) and \( A \subset B \) there exists \( \beta: B \to J \) extending \( \alpha \). Equivalently, \( J \) is injective if any diagram of the form

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
0 & \to & A \xrightarrow{\alpha} B \\
& \alpha \downarrow & \downarrow \beta \\
& J & \to J
\end{array}
\]

with horizontal row exact can be filled in (on the dotted arrow) so as to be commutative. The characterization of projective modules in Thm. I.6.3 and Thm. 3.5 dualizes at once to give

\textbf{Theorem 7.1.} The following properties of a module \( J \) are equivalent:

(i) \( J \) is injective;

(ii) For each monomorphism \( x: A \to B, x^*: \text{Hom}(B, J) \to \text{Hom}(A, J) \) is an epimorphism;

(iii) Every short exact sequence \( J \to B \to C \) splits;

(iv) For every module \( C, \text{Ext}^1(C, J) = 0 \).

The latter characterization can be further specialized.

\textbf{Proposition 7.2.} A left \( R \)-module \( J \) is injective if and only if \( \text{Ext}_R(R/L, J) = 0 \) for every left ideal \( L \) in \( R \).

\textbf{Proof.} This condition is necessary. Conversely, suppose each \( \text{Ext}(R/L, J) \) zero. Given \( A \subset B \) and \( a: A \to J \) we must, as in (7.1), construct an extension \( \beta: B \to J \) of \( a \). Consider all pairs \( (S, y) \) consisting of a submodule \( S \) with \( A \subset S \subset B \) and an extension \( y: S \to J \) of the given \( \alpha: A \to J \). Partly order these pairs by the rule \( (S, y) \leq (S', y') \) when \( S \subset S' \) and \( y' \) is an extension of \( y \). To any linearly ordered collection
(S_\iota, \gamma_\iota) of these pairs there is an upper bound (T, \tau) with (S_\iota, \gamma_\iota) \leq (T, \tau), for take T to be the union of the submodules S_\iota with \tau defined for each t by \tau t = \gamma t when t \in S_\iota. Hence, by Zorn's lemma, there is a maximal such pair (S_\iota, \gamma_\iota). We need only prove S_\iota = B. If not, there is an element b \in B not in S_\iota. take the submodule U of B generated by b and S_\iota. Then \tau \to \tau b + S_\iota is an epimorphism R \to U/S_\iota, the kernel of the epimorphism is a left ideal L in R, and R/L \cong U/S_\iota. Since the sequence S_\iota \to U \to U/S_\iota is exact, so is the sequence

\text{Hom}(U, J) \to \text{Hom}(S_\iota, J) \to \text{Ext}(U/S_\iota, J). \tag{7.2}

But \text{Ext}(U/S_\iota, J) \cong \text{Ext}(R/L, J) = 0 by hypothesis, so \text{Hom}(U, J) \to \text{Hom}(S_\iota, J) is an epimorphism. In other words, each homomorphism \gamma_\iota : S_\iota \to J can be extended to a homomorphism U \to J; in particular, \gamma_\iota : S_\iota \to J can be so extended, a contradiction to the maximality of (S_\iota, \gamma_\iota).

Consider now injective modules over special types of rings R. If R is a field, there are no proper left ideals L \subset R, while Ext_R(R, -) is always zero. Hence every module (= vector space) over a field is injective. Take R = Z, the ring of integers. Call a Z-module (= abelian group) D divisible if and only if there exists to each integer \(m \neq 0 and each \(d \in D a solution of the equation \(m \cdot x = d\).

\textbf{Corollary 7.3.} An abelian group is injective (as a 2-module) if and only if it is divisible.

\textbf{Proof.} The only ideals in Z are the principal ideals (m), and Z/(m) is the cyclic group of order m. By Prop. 1.1, \text{Ext}(Z/(m), A) \cong A/m A, while A/m A = 0 for all \(m = 0 precisely when A is divisible.

The construction of projective resolutions rested on the fact that any module is a quotient of a free module, hence certainly a quotient of a projective module. To get injective resolutions we need

\textbf{Theorem 7.4.} Every R-module is a submodule of an injective R-module.

\textbf{Proof.} Suppose first that R = Z. The additive group Z is embedded in the additive group Q of rational numbers, and Q is divisible. Any free abelian group F is a direct sum of copies of \(Z; it is embedded in the direct sum of corresponding copies of \(Q, and this direct sum D is divisible. Now represent the arbitrary abelian group as a quotient \(A = F/S with F free, and embed F in some divisible group D as above; this embeds \(A = F/S in D/S. An immediate argument shows that any quotient \(D/S of a divisible group D is divisible, hence injective. The abelian group A is thus embedded in an injective group D/S.

Return now to the case of an arbitrary ring R. For any abelian group G, the additive group \text{Hom}_R(R, G) is a left R-module when the
product \( sf \), for \( s \in R \), \( f: R \to G \), is defined as the homomorphism \( sf: R+G \) with

\[
(sf)(r) = f(rs), \quad r \in R. \tag{7.3}
\]

If \( C \) is any left \( R \)-module we can define a homomorphism

\[
j: C \to \text{Hom}_Z(R, C) \tag{7.4}
\]

by letting \( jc \), for \( c \in C \), be the homomorphism \( jc: R \to C \) given as

\[
(jc)(r) = rc, \quad r \in R. \tag{7.5}
\]

To show this a homomorphism of \( R \)-modules, take \( s, r \in R \), and compute

\[
[j(sc)](r) = r(sc) = (rs) c = (jc)(rs) \quad \text{by (7.5)},
\]

\[
= [s(jc)](r), \quad \text{by (7.3)}.
\]

This gives \( j(sc) = s(jc) \). Since \( 1c = c \), \( j \) is a monomorphism.

Now embed the additive group of \( C \) in a divisible group \( D \); this induces a monomorphism of \( R \)-modules

\[
k: \text{Hom}_Z(R, C) \to \text{Hom}_Z(R, D).
\]

The composite \( kj \) embeds \( C \) in \( \text{Hom}_Z(R, D) \). If we show that \( \text{Hom}_Z(R, D) = J \) is injective, we are done. By Thm. 7.1 (ii), it suffices to show that each monomorphism \( x: A \to B \) of \( R \)-modules induces an epimorphism \( x^* = \text{Hom}_R(x, 1_J) \). Here \( x^* \) is the top row of the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{Hom}_R(x, 1_J): \text{Hom}_z(B, \text{Hom}_z(R, D)) & \to & \text{Hom}_R(A, \text{Hom}_z(R, D)) \\
\downarrow \eta_B & & \downarrow \eta_A \\
\text{Hom}_z(x, 1_D): & \text{Hom}_z(B, D) & \to \text{Hom}_z(A, D)
\end{array}
\]

where the vertical maps are isomorphisms, to be established in a lemma below. These isomorphisms are natural, so the diagram commutes. The bottom row refers not to \( R \), but only to \( Z \); since \( D \) is a divisible group, this bottom map \( \text{Hom}_z(x, 1_D) \) is an epimorphism. Since \( \eta_B \) and \( \eta_A \) are isomorphisms, the top map \( \text{Hom}_R(x, 1_J) \) is also an epimorphism.

**Lemma 7.5.** If \( G \) is an abelian group and \( A \) an \( R \)-module, there is a natural isomorphism \( \eta_A : \text{Hom}_R(A, \text{Hom}_z(R, G)) \cong \text{Hom}_z(A, G) \).

**Proof.** Take an \( f \in \text{Hom}_R(A, \text{Hom}_z(R, G)) \). For \( a \in A \), \( fa: R \to G \); that is, \( (fa)(x) \in G \). Now regard \( f \) as a function of two variables \( f(a, y) \in G \). The fact that \( fa \) is a \( Z \)-homomorphism means that \( f(a, y) \) is additive in the argument \( y \). The fact that \( f: A \to \text{Hom}_z(R, G) \) is an \( R \)-homomorphism means that \( f(a, r) \) is additive in \( a \) and that \( s(fa) = f(sa) \) for each \( s \in R \). By the definition (7.3) of the multiplication by \( s \), this means that always

\[
[s(fa)](r) = (fa)(rs) = [f(sa)](r);
\]
in other words, that \( f(a, rs) = f(sa, r) \) always. In particular, \( f(a, s) = f(sa, 1) \) so the function \( f \) is determined by \( g(a) = f(a, 1) \). Clearly \( g: A \to G \).

Now \( \eta_A \) and its inverse are defined by

\[
(\eta_A f)(a) = f(a, 1); \quad (\eta_A^{-1} g)(a, r) = g(ra).
\]

The maps \( \eta_A \) and \( \eta_A^{-1} \) are clearly homomorphisms and natural (in \( A \) and in \( G \)).

This idea of regarding a function \( f(a, r) \) of two variables as a function of \( a \) whose values are functions of \( r \) will reappear more formally later (V.3), and this lemma will turn out to be a special case of a more general natural isomorphism, called "adjoint associativity". Injective modules will be studied further in §11.

**Exercises**

1. If \( R \) is an integral domain, show that the field of quotients of \( R \) is a divisible \( R \)-module. If, in addition, \( R \) is a principal ideal domain, show that this field is injective as an \( R \)-module.

2. If \( A \) is a left \( R \)-module and \( L \) a left ideal in \( R \), each \( a \in A \) defines an \( R \)-module homomorphism \( f_a: L \to A \) by \( f_a(l) = la \). Prove that \( A \) is injective if and only if, for all \( L \) every \( f: L \to A \) is \( f_a \) for some \( a \).

3. If \( K \) is a complex of \( R \)-modules and \( J \) an injective \( R \)-module, show that a of (4.1) yields an isomorphism

\[
H^n(\text{Hom}_R(K, J)) \cong \text{Hom}_R(H_n(K), J).
\]

8. Injective Resolutions

A complex \( \varepsilon: A \to Y \) under the module \( A \) is a sequence

\[
0 \to A \overset{\varepsilon}{\to} Y^0 \overset{\delta}{\to} Y^1 \overset{\delta}{\to} \cdots \to Y^n \overset{\delta}{\to} Y^{n+1} \to \cdots \tag{8.1}
\]

such that the composite of any two successive homomorphisms is zero. In other words, \( Y \) is a negative complex, positive in upper indices, and \( \varepsilon: A \to Y \) a chain transformation. If this sequence is exact, \( \varepsilon: A \to Y \) is called a coresolution of \( A \); if each \( Y_n \) is injective, \( \varepsilon: A \to Y \) is an injective complex under \( A \). The results of the previous section show that every module \( A \) has an injective (co)resolution — by a customary abuse of language, an "injective resolution".

**Theorem 8.1. (Comparison theorem.)** If \( a: A \to A' \) is a module homomorphism, \( \varepsilon: A+Y \) a coresolution, and \( \varepsilon': A' \to Y' \) an injective complex under \( A' \), then there is a chain transformation \( f: Y \to Y' \) with \( \varepsilon' \alpha = f \varepsilon \) and any two such chain transformations are homotopic.

The proof is exactly dual to that of Thm.6.1, which used only the categorical properties of projective modules and exact sequences. Again the map \( f \) will be said to lift \( a \).
For each module $C$ the negative complex $Y$ determines, as in (4.4), a negative complex
\[ \text{Hom}(C, Y) : \text{Hom}(C, Y^0) \rightarrow \text{Hom}(C, Y^1) \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow \text{Hom}(C, Y^n) \rightarrow \cdots \] (8.2)
Its homology gives Ext, as follows

**Theorem 8.2.** \textit{For each module $C$ and each injective coresolution $\varepsilon : A + Y$ there is an isomorphism}
\[ \xi : \text{Ext}^n(C, A) \cong H^n(\text{Hom}(C, Y)), \quad n = 0, 1, \ldots, \] (8.3)
\textit{which is natural in $C$ and natural in $A$, in the sense that if $\alpha : A \rightarrow A'$, $\varepsilon' : A' \rightarrow Y'$ is an injective coresolution, and $f : Y \rightarrow Y'$ is any chain transformation lifting $\alpha$, then $\xi \alpha = f \xi$. Here $f \xi$ is the induced homomorphism $f \xi : H^n(\text{Hom}(C, Y)) \rightarrow H^n(\text{Hom}(C, Y'))$.}

The homomorphism $\xi$ is defined as follows. Regard any $S \in \text{Ext}^n(C, A)$ as a coresolution of $A$, zero beyond the term $C$ of (upper) degree $n$; by Thm. 8.1 construct a cochain transformation as in
\[ Y : 0 \rightarrow A \rightarrow Y^0 \rightarrow Y^1 \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow Y^{n-1} \rightarrow Y^n \rightarrow 0 \]
\[ S : 0 \rightarrow A \rightarrow B_{n-1} \rightarrow B_{n-2} \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow B_0 \rightarrow C \rightarrow 0. \] (8.4)
Then $g^n : C \rightarrow Y^n$ is a cycle of $\text{Hom}(C, Y)$. Define
\[ \xi(\text{cls } S) = (\text{cls } g^n) \xi H^n(\text{Hom}(C, Y)). \] (8.5)

The rest of the proof, like the definition, is dual to the proof of Thm. 6.4.

We can summarize the theorems of $6$ and $8$ in the scheme
\[ H^n(\text{Hom}(\text{Res}_P C, A)) \cong \text{Ext}^n(C, A) \cong H^n(\text{Hom}(C, \text{Res}_J A)), \]
where $\text{Res}_P C$ denotes an arbitrary projective resolution of $C$, $\text{Res}_J A$ an arbitrary injective coresolution of $A$. A symmetric formula $\text{Ext}^n(C, A) \cong H^n(\text{Hom}(\text{Res}_P C, \text{Res}_J A))$ can be established (Ex. V. 9.3).

**Exercises**

1. Carry out the construction of $g$ in (8.4) and of the inverse of $\xi$.
2. State and prove the dual of Lemma 6.2.
3. For direct sums and products establish the isomorphisms
\[ \text{Ext}^n(\bigoplus C_i, A) \cong \prod \text{Ext}^n(C_i, A), \quad \text{Ext}^n(C, \bigcap A_i) \cong \bigcap \text{Ext}^n(C, A_i) \]

**9. Two Exact Sequences for Ext**

Composition of long exact sequences with a short exact sequence $E$ from $A$ to $C$ yields \textit{connecting homomorphisms}
\[ E^* : \text{Ext}^k(A, G) \rightarrow \text{Ext}^{k+1}(C, G), \quad E_* : \text{Ext}^k(G, C) \rightarrow \text{Ext}^{k+1}(G, A). \]
Since $E$ determines $A$ and $C$, both $\text{Ext}^h(A, G)$ and $\text{Ext}^{h+1}(C, G)$ may be regarded as contravariant functors of the short exact sequence $E$. Moreover, each morphism $\Gamma = (a, \beta, y) : E \to E'$ of short exact sequences gives $\alpha E = E'y$ and hence

$$E^*\alpha^* = \gamma^*E'^* : \text{Ext}^h(A', G) \to \text{Ext}^{h+1}(C, G).$$

This states that $E^*$ is a natural transformation between functors of $E$, as is $E_*$. With these connecting homomorphisms, the exact sequences for $\text{Hom}$ and $\text{Ext} = \text{Ext}^1$ already found in (3.1) and (3.2) will now be continued to higher dimensions. Observe similarly that an $n$-fold exact sequence $S$ starting at $A$ and ending at $C$ is a composite of $n$ short exact sequences; hence composition with $S$ yields iterated connecting homomorphisms

$$S^* : \text{Ext}^h(A, G) \to \text{Ext}^{h+n}(C, G), \quad S_* : \text{Ext}^h(G, C) \to \text{Ext}^{h+n}(G, A),$$

which depend only on the congruence class of $S$.

**Theorem 9.1.** If $E = (\alpha, \sigma) : A \to B \to C$ is a short exact sequence of modules and $G$ is another module, then the sequences

$$\cdots \to \text{Ext}^n(C, G) \xrightarrow{\sigma^*} \text{Ext}^n(B, G) \xrightarrow{\alpha^*} \text{Ext}^n(A, G) \xrightarrow{E^*} \text{Ext}^{n+1}(C, G) \to \cdots$$

(9.1)

$$\cdots \to \text{Ext}^n(G, A) \xrightarrow{\alpha^*} \text{Ext}^n(G, B) \xrightarrow{\sigma^*} \text{Ext}^n(G, C) \xrightarrow{E^*} \text{Ext}^{n+1}(G, A) \to \cdots$$

(9.2)

are exact. These sequences start at the left with $0 \to \text{Hom}(C, G) = \text{Ext}^0(C, G)$ and with $0 \to \text{Hom}(G, A)$, respectively, and continue to the right for all $n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$. The maps in these sequences are defined for arguments $\varphi \in \text{Ext}^n(C, G)$, $\omega \in \text{Ext}^n(B, G)$, $\tau \in \text{Ext}^n(A, G)$, ... by composition with $x, a, E$ as follows:

$$\sigma^* \varphi = q \sigma, \quad \alpha^* \omega = \omega \alpha, \quad E^* \tau = (-1)^n \tau E, \quad (9.3)$$

$$\alpha^* \varphi' = \alpha \varphi', \quad \sigma^* \omega' = \sigma \omega', \quad E^* \tau' = E \tau'. \quad (9.4)$$

The sign in the last part of (9.3) occurs because $E^* \tau = \tau E$ involves an interchange of an element $E$ of degree $1$ with an element $\tau$ of degree $n$.

**Proof.** First consider (9.2). Take any free resolution $X$ of $G$ and apply the exact cohomology sequence (Thm.II.4.5) for the sequence $E$ of coefficients. Since the cohomology groups $H^n(X, A)$ are $\text{Ext}^n(G, A)$, and so on, this yields an exact sequence with the same terms as (9.2). To show that the maps in this sequence are obtained by composition, as stated in (9.4), we must prove commutativity in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{Ext}^n(G, A) & \xrightarrow{\alpha^*} & \text{Ext}^n(G, B) \\
\downarrow \varphi & & \downarrow \varphi \\
H^n(X, A) & \xrightarrow{\alpha^*} & H^n(X, B)
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
& & \xrightarrow{E^*} \\
& & \downarrow \varphi \\
& & H^n(X, C)
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
& & \xrightarrow{(-1)^n \sigma^*} \\
& & \downarrow \varphi \\
& & H^{n+1}(X, A)
\end{array}$$

(9.5)
where each $\xi$ is the isomorphism provided by Thm.6.4, while $\delta$ is the connecting homomorphism provided in Thm.II.4.5. Since $\xi$ is natural for coefficient homomorphisms $\kappa$ and $\sigma$, the first two squares are commutative. The commutativity of the right-hand square requires a systematic use of the definitions of various maps involved, as follows. For $n>0$ and $S \in \text{Ext}^n(G, C)$, regard $E_0 S$ as a resolution of $G$ and construct the commutative diagram

$$
\begin{array}{cccc}
X: & X_{n+1} \xrightarrow{\delta} X_n & \xrightarrow{\kappa} & X_{n-1} & \cdots & \xrightarrow{\kappa} & X_0 & \xrightarrow{\kappa} & G \\
\downarrow f & \downarrow f_{n+1} & \downarrow f_n & \cdots & \downarrow f & \downarrow f_1 & \downarrow f_0 & \xrightarrow{\kappa} & G \\
E \circ S: & A & \xrightarrow{\kappa} & B & \xrightarrow{\kappa} & B_{n-1} & \cdots & \xrightarrow{\kappa} & B_0 & \xrightarrow{\kappa} & G \\
\downarrow \sigma & \downarrow \sigma & \downarrow \sigma & \cdots & \downarrow \sigma & \downarrow \sigma & \downarrow \sigma & \xrightarrow{\kappa} & G \\
S; & 0 & \xrightarrow{\kappa} & C & \xrightarrow{\kappa} & B_{n-1} & \cdots & \xrightarrow{\kappa} & B_0 & \xrightarrow{\kappa} & G \\
\end{array}
$$

where $f$ lifts $1_G$. By the definition of $5$, 

$$
\xi E_\ast (\text{cls} S) = (\text{cls} f_{n+1}) \in H^{n+1}(X, A).
$$

On the other hand, $af$ is a chain transformation lifting $1_G$, so $\xi (\text{cls} S) \equiv \text{cls} (af_n)$. Now $\delta_F$ is defined by the switchback $\delta_F = \text{cls} \kappa^{-1} \sigma^{-1} \text{cls}^{-1}$ of (II.4.12) and $\kappa^{-1} \delta \sigma^{-1} (\sigma f_n) = \kappa^{-1} \delta f_n = \kappa^{-1} \delta f = (-1)^{n+1} \kappa^{-1} (f_n \delta) = (-1)^{n+1} \kappa^{-1} (\kappa f_{n+1}) = (-1)^{n+1} \kappa f_{n+1}$, so that $\delta_F \text{cls} (\sigma f_n) = (-1)^{n+1} \text{cls} f_{n+1} = (-1)^{n+1} \xi E_\ast \text{cls} S$. This shows (9.5) commutative.

For $n=0$ the definition of $\xi$ (and the commutativity proof) is correspondingly simpler.

The exactness of the sequence (9.1) of the theorem is proved similarly, using injective coresolutions. Specifically, let $\varepsilon: G \to Y$ be an injective coresolution of $G$ Then $\text{Hom}(A, Y)$ is, as in $8$, a negative complex; furthermore each $Y'$ is injective, so each sequence $\text{Hom}(C, Y'') \to \text{Hom}(B, Y'') \to \text{Hom}(A, Y'')$ is exact. Therefore

$$
0 \to \text{Hom}(C, Y) \xrightarrow{\sigma} \text{Hom}(B, Y) \xrightarrow{\kappa} \text{Hom}(A, Y) \to 0
$$

is an exact sequence of complexes. Hence Thm.II.4.1, in the version with upper indices, states that the first row of the following diagram is exact for each $n$:

$$
\begin{array}{cccc}
H^n(\text{Hom}(C, Y)) \xrightarrow{\delta} H^n(\text{Hom}(B, Y)) \xrightarrow{\kappa} H^n(\text{Hom}(A, Y)) \\
\uparrow \xi & \uparrow \delta & \uparrow \kappa & \uparrow \xi \\
\text{Ext}^n(C, G) & \xrightarrow{\sigma} & \text{Ext}^n(B, G) & \xrightarrow{\kappa} & \text{Ext}^n(A, G) & \xrightarrow{\varepsilon} & \text{Ext}^{n+1}(C, G).
\end{array}
$$

The desired proof that the bottom row is exact requires now only the commutativity of the diagram. Note that the connecting homomorphism $\delta_E$ is defined by switchback as $\delta_E = \text{cls} \sigma^{-1} \delta \kappa^{-1} \text{cls}^{-1}$, and no trouble with signs occurs. Given this definition, the proof that commutativity holds is now like that given above for the dual case — though
since the proof manipulates not only arrows, but also elements, we cannot say that the proof is exactly dual. Thm.9.1, though formulated in the language of exact sequences, can also be regarded as a statement about annihilators in the "pseudo-ring" $\text{Ext}_R$ of Thm. 5.3. Indeed, if $E=(x,a)$ is a short exact sequence of $R$-modules, then

$$\kappa E=0, \quad \sigma x=0, \quad E\sigma=0$$

and these equations indicate the whole left and right annihilator in $\text{Ext}$, of each of $\kappa$, $E$, and $a$, as follows. The right annihilator of $\kappa$ consists of multiples of $E$; whenever $\varrho \in \text{Ext}_R$ is such that the composite $\kappa \varrho$ is defined and is $0$, then either $\varrho = 0$ or $\varrho = E \tau$ for a suitable $\tau \in \text{Ext}_R$. Similarly, $\varrho \kappa = 0$ implies $\varrho = \tau \sigma$ for some $\tau$, etc. In other words, the left annihilator of $\kappa$ is the principal left ideal $(\text{Ext}_R)\sigma$.

**Exercises**

1. Given the usual short exact sequence $E$ of modules and given projective resolutions $E' : X \to A$ and $E'' : Z \to C$ of the end modules $A$ and $C$, construct a projective resolution $\varphi : Y \to B$ of the middle module $B$ and chain transformations $f : X \to Y$, $g : Y \to Z$ lifting $\kappa$ and $a$, respectively, such that $X \to Y \to Z$ is an exact sequence of complexes. (Hint: for each $n$, take $Y_n = X_n \oplus Z_n$ and define $e$ and $\partial$ so that $(Y, \varepsilon)$ is a complex.)

2. Use the result of Ex. 1 to give a proof of the exactness of (9.1) by projective resolutions.

3. Deduce Prop. 3.7 from Thm. 9.1 and Cor. 6.6.

4. For $A$ a finite abelian group, $Q$ the additive group of rational numbers, prove $\text{Ext}_Z(A, Z) \cong \text{Hom}_Z(A, Q/Z)$.

### 10. Axiomatic Description of $\text{Ext}$

The properties already obtained for the sequence of functors $\text{Ext}^n$ suffice to determine those functors up to a natural equivalence, in the following sense.

**Theorem 10.1.** For each $n=0, 1, \ldots$, let there be given a contravariant functor $\text{Ext}^n(A)$ of the module $A$, taking abelian groups as values, and for each $n$ and each short exact sequence $E : A \to B \to C$ let there be given a homomorphism $E'' : \text{Ext}^n(A) \to \text{Ext}^{n+1}(C)$ which is natural for morphisms $f : E \to E'$ of short exact sequences. Suppose that there is a fixed module $G$ such that

$$\text{Ext}^0(A)=\text{Hom}(A, G) \quad \text{for all } A,$$

$$\text{Ext}^n(F)=0 \quad \text{for } n>0 \text{ and all free } F,$$  

and suppose that for each $E=(\kappa, a)$ the sequence

$$\cdots \to \text{Ext}^n(C) \overset{a^*}{\longrightarrow} \text{Ext}^n(B) \overset{\kappa^*}{\longrightarrow} \text{Ext}^n(A) \overset{E^*}{\longrightarrow} \text{Ext}^{n+1}(C) \to \cdots$$

(10.3)
is exact. Then there is for each $A$ and $n$ an isomorphism $\varphi^n_A : \text{Ext}^n(A, G) \cong \text{Ext}^n(A, G)$, with $\varphi^0_A = 1$, which is natural in $A$ and such that the diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{Ext}^n(A) & \xrightarrow{E^n} & \text{Ext}^{n+1}(C) \\
\downarrow{\varphi^n} & & \downarrow{\varphi^{n+1}} \\
\text{Ext}^n(A, G) & \xrightarrow{E^n} & \text{Ext}^{n+1}(C, G)
\end{array}
$$

(10.4)

is commutative for all $n$ and all short exact $E : A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C$.

Property (10.4) reads "$\varphi$ commutes with the connecting homomorphisms". With the naturality of $\varphi$, it states that the $\varphi^n$ provide a morphism of the long sequence (10.3) into the corresponding sequence (9.1) for $\text{Ext}$.

The same theorems holds with "free" in (10.2) replaced by "projective". Since the functors $\text{Ext}^n$ clearly satisfy the analogues of (10.1), (10.2), and (10.3), we may regard these three properties as axioms characterizing the sequence of functors $\text{Ext}^n$ "connected" by the homomorphisms $E^n$.

The proof will construct $\varphi^n$ by induction on $n$; the case $n=1$ presents the most interest. Represent each module $C$ as a quotient $F/K$, with $F$ free. This gives a short exact sequence $E_C : K \rightarrow F \rightarrow C$. By (10.2), $\text{Ext}^1(F) = 0$, so the sequence (10.3) becomes

$$
\text{Hom}(F, G) \xrightarrow{\alpha} \text{Hom}(K, G) \xrightarrow{\beta} \text{Ext}^1(C) \rightarrow 0.
$$

Exactness states that $\text{Ext}^1(C) \cong \text{Hom}(K, G)/\alpha^* \text{Hom}(F, G)$. The sequence (9.1) for $\text{Ext}^1$ shows $\text{Ext}^1(C, G)$ isomorphic to the same group. Combining these isomorphisms yields an isomorphism $\varphi_C^1 : \text{Ext}^1(C) \cong \text{Ext}^1(C, G)$; by its construction, $\varphi_C^1$ is characterized by the equation

$$
\varphi_C^1 E_C = E_* : \text{Hom}(K, G) \rightarrow \text{Ext}^1(C, G),
$$

which is a special case of (10.4). To show that $\varphi_C^1$ is natural for any $y : C \rightarrow C'$, pick an exact $E_{C'} : K' \rightarrow F' \rightarrow C'$. The comparison theorem lifts $\gamma$ to $\beta : F \rightarrow F'$, which induces a morphism $E = (\alpha, \beta, y) : E_C \rightarrow E_{C'}$. Since both connecting homomorphisms $E^1$ and $E^*$ are natural with respect to such morphisms $E$, it follows that $\gamma^* \varphi_C^1 E_C = \gamma^* E_{C'} = E^* \alpha^* = \varphi_C^1 E_C = \varphi_C^1 \gamma^* E_{C'}$. But $E^*\alpha^*$ is an epimorphism, so

$$
\gamma^* \varphi_C^1 = \varphi_C^1 \gamma^* : \text{Ext}^1(C) \rightarrow \text{Ext}^1(C, G);
$$

$\varphi^1$ is indeed natural for maps of $C$. In particular, if $E_C$ and $E_{C'}$ are two free presentations of the same module $C$ ($\gamma = 1_C$), this identity shows that the homomorphism $\varphi_C^1$ is independent of the choice of the particular free module $F$ used in its construction. Finally, if $E : A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C$ is any short exact sequence, the comparison theorem (for $F$ free) again lifts
1 to a morphism \((a, b, 1): E_c \to E\) and yields
\[
\begin{align*}
1_c^* E^* &= E_c^* a^* & \text{(because } E^* \text{ is natural)}, \\
&= \varphi_c^1 E_c^* a^* & \text{(definition of } \varphi), \\
&= \varphi_c^1 E^1 & \text{(because } E^1 \text{ is natural)}.
\end{align*}
\]
This is the required property (10.4) for \(n=1\).

For \(n>1\) we proceed in similar vein, choosing again a short exact sequence \(E_c\) with middle term free. Then \(\text{Ext}^{n-1}(F) = 0 = \text{Ext}^n(F)\), so the exact sequence (10.3) becomes
\[
0 \to \text{Ext}^{n-1}(K) \overset{\varphi_n}{\to} \text{Ex}^u(C) \to 0
\]
and \(\text{Ext}^n(C) \cong \text{Ext}^{n-1}(K)\). Using the similar sequence for \(\text{Ext}^*\), we define \(\varphi^n\) by
\[
\varphi_c^* = E_c^* \varphi_{n-1}^*(E_c^{n-1})^{-1}: \text{Ex}^u(C) \cong \text{Ext}^n(C, G)
\]
and establish naturality, independence of the choice of \(F\), and the commutativity (10.4) much as in the case \(n=1\).

There is a dual characterization for \(\text{Ext}(C, A)\) as a functor of \(A\), using the second exact sequence (9.2).

**Theorem 10.2.** If a fixed module \(G\), the covariant functors \(\text{Ext}(G, A)\) of \(A\), \(n=0, 1, \ldots\) together with the natural homomorphisms \(E_n^* : \text{Ext}(G, C) \to \text{Ext}^{n+1}(G, A)\) defined for short exact sequences \(E\) of modules, are characterized up to a natural isomorphism by these three properties:
\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Ext}^0(G, A) &= \text{Hom}(G, A) \quad &\text{for all } A, & (10.5) \\
\text{Ext}^n(G, J) &= 0 \quad &\text{for } n>0 \text{ and all injective } J, & (10.6) \\
\text{The sequence (9.2) is exact for all } E. \quad & (10.7)
\end{align*}
\]

**Proof.** Observe first that \(\text{Ext}^n\) does have the property (10.6), for an injective module \(J\) has the injective coresolution \(0 \to J \to J' \to 0\), which vanishes in all dimensions above 0. Conversely, the proof that these three properties characterize the \(\text{Ext}(G, A)\) as functors of \(A\) is dual to the proof we have just given.

**Exercises**

1. (S. Schanuel.) Given two short exact sequences \(K \to P + C\) and \(K' \to P' \to C\) with \(P\) and \(P'\) projective, \(K < P, K' < P'\), and the same end module \(C\): Construct an isomorphism \(P \oplus P' \cong P \oplus P'\) which maps \(K \oplus K'\) isomorphically on \(P \oplus K'\).

2. Call two modules \(C\) and \(C'\) projectively equivalent if there are projective modules \(Q\) and \(Q'\) and an isomorphism \(C \oplus Q' \cong C' \oplus Q\). Lct \(S: K \to P_{n-1} \to \cdots \to P_0 \to C\) be an \(n\)-fold exact sequence with all \(P_i\) projective. Using Ex.1, show that the projective equivalence class of \(K\) depends only on that of \(C\) and not on the choice of \(S\).
3. For $S \in \text{Ex.2}$, show that the iterated connecting homomorphism provides an isomorphism $S^{*}: \text{Ext}^l(K,G) \cong \text{Ext}^{l+1}(C,G)$ for any $G$.

11. The Injective Envelope

Every $R$-module $A$ is a submodule of an injective one (Thm. 7.4). We now show that there is a unique "minimal" such injective module for each $A$.

An extension $A \subseteq B$ or a monomorphism $\mu: A \rightarrow B$ with image $A$ is called essential if $S \subseteq B$ and $S \cap A = 0$ always implies $S = 0$. This amounts to the requirement that to each $b \neq 0$ in $B$ there is an $r \in R$ with $rb \neq 0$ and in $A$. For example, the additive group $Q$ of rational numbers is an essential extension of the group $Z$ of integers. If $A \subseteq B$ and $B \subseteq C$ are essential extensions, so is $A \subseteq C$.

Lemma 11.1. If $x: A' \rightarrow B$ is an essential monomorphism, while $\lambda: A' \rightarrow J$ is a monomorphism with injective range $J$, there is a monomorphism $\mu: B \rightarrow J$ with $\mu x = \lambda$.

In other words, an essential extension of $A'$ can be embedded in any injective extension of $A'$.

Proof. Because $J$ is injective, $I: A' \rightarrow J$ extends to a $\mu$ with $\mu x = \lambda$. Let $K$ be the kernel of $\mu$. Since $I$ is a monomorphism, $K \cap A' = 0$; since $x$ is essential, $K = 0$. Hence $\mu$ is a monomorphism.

Proposition 11.2. A module $J$ is injective if and only if $J$ has no proper essential extension.

Proof. If $J \subseteq B$ with $J$ injective, then $J$ is a direct summand of $B$, so the extension $J \subseteq B$ is inessential unless $J = B$. Conversely, if $J$ has no proper essential extensions, we wish to show that any extension $J \subseteq B$ splits. Consider the set $Y$ of all submodules $S \subseteq B$ with $S \cap J = 0$. If a subset $\{S_i\}$ of elements of $\mathcal{P}$ is linearly ordered by inclusion, the union $S = \bigcup S_i$ of the sets $S_i$ is a submodule of $B$ with $S \cap J = 0$, hence also in $\mathcal{P}$. Since any linearly ordered subset of $Y$ has an upper bound in $\mathcal{P}$, Zorn’s lemma asserts that $\mathcal{P}$ has an element $M$ maximal in the sense that it is properly contained in no $S$. Then $J \rightarrow B \rightarrow B/M$ is an essential monomorphism. But $J$ is assumed to have no proper essential extension, so $J \rightarrow B/M$ is an isomorphism, $B = J \cap M$ and $J \cap M = 0$. Thus $J$ is a direct summand of any containing $B$, so is injective.

This suggests that we might construct a minimal injective extension as a maximal essential extension.

Theorem 11.3. For every module $A$ there is an essential monomorphism $x: A \rightarrow J$ with $J$ injective. If $x': A \rightarrow J'$ is another such, there is an isomorphism $\theta: J \rightarrow J'$ with $\theta x = x'$. 
Proof. By Thm.7.4 there is an injective module $J_0$ with $A \prec J_0$. Let $\mathcal{F}$ be the set of all submodules $S$ of $J_0$ with $A \prec S$ essential. If $\{S_i\}$ is a subset of $\mathcal{F}$ linearly ordered by inclusion, the union $\bigcup S_i$ is an essential extension of $A$, hence is in $\mathcal{F}$. By Zorn's lemma again, $\mathcal{F}$ has a maximal element, $J$, and $A \prec J$ is essential. Any proper essential extension of $J$ could by Lemma 11.1 be embedded in $J_0$, counter to the maximality of $J$. Hence $J$ is injective, by Prop. 11.2.

Let $x: A \rightarrow J$ be the injection. If $x': A \rightarrow J'$ is another essential monomorphism to an injective $J'$, Lemma 11.1 gives a monomorphism $\mu: J' + J$ with $\mu x' = x$. Since $\mu J'$ is injective, it is a direct summand of $J$. Since $A \rightarrow J$ is essential, $\mu J'$ must be all of $J$, so $\mu$ is an isomorphism, as asserted.

The essential monomorphism $x: A \rightarrow J$ with $J$ injective, unique up to equivalence, is called the injective envelope of $A$. Its existence was established by Baer [1940]; our proof follows Eckmann-Schopf [1953]. For some of its applications, see Matlis [1958]. A dual construction — of a "least" projective $P$ with an epimorphism $P + A$ — is not in general possible (Why?).

Notes. The study of extensions developed first for extensions of multiplicative groups (see Chap. IV), with extensions described by factor systems. The systematic treatment by Schreier [1926] was influential, though the idea of a factor system appeared much earlier [Holder 1893]. The same factor systems were important in the representation of central simple algebras as crossed product algebras [Brauer 1928], [Hasse-Brauer-Noether 1932] and hence in class field theory. An invariant treatment of extensions without factor systems was first broached by Baer [1934, 1935]. That the group of abelian group extensions had topological applications was first realized by Eilenberg-MacLane [1942] in their treatment of the universal coefficient problem. There Ext$^1$ was named. Another proof of the universal coefficient theorem and the homotopy classification theorem of § 4 has been given by Massey [1958], using the mapping cone.

Resolutions, perhaps without the name, have long been used, for example in Hilbert [1890]. Hopf in 1944 used them explicitly to describe the homology of a group. Cartan [1950] used them for the cohomology of groups and gave an axiomatic description as in §10. Ext$^n$ was defined via resolutions by Cartan-Eilenberg. The definition by long exact sequences is due to Yoneda [1954], who also has [1960] a more general treatment of composites.

Chapter four

Cohomology of Groups

The cohomology of a group $\Pi$ provides our first example of the functors $\text{Ext}_R^*(C, A)$ — with $R$ the group ring and $C = \mathbb{Z}$. These cohomology groups may be defined directly in terms of a standard "bar resolution". In low dimensions they arise in problems of group extensions by $\Pi$; in all dimensions they have a topological interpretation (§11).
Chapter IV. Cohomology of Groups

1. The Group Ring

Let $\Pi$ be a multiplicative group. The free abelian group $Z(\Pi)$ generated by the elements $x \in \Pi$ consists of the finite sums $\sum m(x)x$ with integral coefficients $m(x) \in \mathbb{Z}$. The product in $\Pi$ induces a product of two such elements, and makes $Z(\Pi)$ a ring, called the integral group ring of $\Pi$. Thus an element in $Z(\Pi)$ is a function $m$ on $\Pi$ to $\mathbb{Z}$, zero except for a finite number of arguments $x \in \Pi$; the sum of two functions is defined by $(m + m')(x) = m(x) + m'(x)$, while the product is $(mm')(x) = \sum m(y)m'(z)$, where the latter sum is taken over all $y$ and $z$ in $\Pi$ with $yz = x$. A ring homomorphism $\rho: \mathbb{Z}(\Pi) \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}$, called augmentation, is defined by setting $\rho(\sum m(x)x) = \sum m(x)x$.

Proposition 1.1. If $\Pi$ is a multiplicative group, $R$ a ring with identity, and $\mu: \Pi \rightarrow R$ a function with $\mu(1) = 1$ and $\mu(xy) = \mu(x)\mu(y)$, then there is a unique ring homomorphism $\varphi: \mathbb{Z}(\Pi) \rightarrow R$ such that $\varphi \mu = \mu$.

Proof. We may define $\varphi(\sum m(x)x) = \sum m(x)\mu(x)$; this is a ring homomorphism, and the only such with $\varphi \mu = \mu$.

In view of this property it would be more suggestive to call $\mathbb{Z}(\Pi)$ not the "group ring of $\Pi$", but the free ring over the multiplicative group $\Pi$.

Modules over $\mathbb{Z}(\Pi)$ ($\Pi$-modules for short) will appear repeatedly.

Proposition 1.2. An abelian group $A$ is given a unique structure as a left $\Pi$-module by giving either

(i) A function on $\Pi \times A$ to $A$, written $xa$ for $x \in \Pi$, $a \in A$, such that always

\[ x(a_1 + a_2) = xa_1 + xa_2, \quad (x_1 x_2) a = x_1 (x_2 a), \quad 1a = a; \quad (1.2) \]

(ii) A group homomorphism $\varphi: \Pi \rightarrow \text{Aut} A$.

(1.3)

Here $\text{Aut} A$ designates the set of all automorphisms of $A$; that is, of all isomorphisms $a: A \rightarrow A$. Under composition, $\text{Aut} A$ is a multiplicative group.
The proof is immediate, for (1.2) gives \( \varphi \) by \( \varphi(x) a = x a \), while \( \operatorname{Aut} A \) is contained in the endomorphism ring \( \operatorname{Hom}_\mathbb{Z}(A, A) \), and \( \varphi \) extends by Prop. 1.1 to \( p : \mathbb{Z}(\Pi) \to \operatorname{Hom}_\mathbb{Z}(A, A) \), making \( A \) a left module with operators \( p(u)a \) for each \( u \in \mathbb{Z}(\Pi) \).

In particular, any abelian group \( A \) can be regarded as a trivial \( 17 \)-module by taking \( \varphi x = 1 \); then \( x a = a \) for all \( x \).

To each \( \Pi \)-module \( A \) we construct an additive, but not necessarily abelian, group \( A \times_{\varphi \Pi} \) called the semi-direct product of \( A \) and \( \Pi \) with operators \( \varphi \). Its elements are all pairs \((a, x)\) with the addition

\[
(a, x) + (a_1, x_1) = (a + xa_1, x x_1), \quad xa_1 = \varphi(x)a_1.
\]

One proves that this is a group with the "identity" element \((0, 1)\) and inverse \( -(a, x) = (- x^{-1} a, x^{-1}) \) and that there is a short exact sequence

\[
0 \to A \xrightarrow{x} A \times_{\varphi \Pi} \xrightarrow{\sigma} \Pi \to 1,
\]

where \( x \) is the homomorphism given by \( xa = (a, 1) \), \( a \) is \( \sigma(a, x) = x \), and \( 1 \) denotes the trivial multiplicative group. Also \( a \) has a right inverse \( \nu \) defined by \( \nu x = (0, x) \) for all \( x \); it is a homomorphism of the multiplicative group \( \Pi \) to the additive group \( A \times_{\varphi \Pi} \).

### Exercises

1. A holomorphism \( h \) of the multiplicative group \( G \) is a 1-1 function on \( G \) to \( G \) with \( h(ab^{-1}c) = (ha)(hb)^{-1}(hc) \) for \( a, b, c \in G \). Show that the set of all holomorphs of \( G \) under composition form a group, the holomorph \( \operatorname{Hol} G \). Construct a short exact sequence \( (\lambda, \tau) : G \to \operatorname{Hol} G \to \operatorname{Aut} G \), where \( (\lambda g)(a) = ga \), \( (\theta a) = h(1)^{-1} h(a) \), and \( \tau \) has a right inverse.

2. (R. Baer.) Let \( A \) be a \( \Pi \)-module and \( \operatorname{Hol} A \) the holomorph of its additive group, as in Ex. 1. Form the direct product \( (\operatorname{Hol} A) \times \Pi \) with projections \( \pi_1 \) and \( \pi_2 \) upon its factors, show that \( A \times_{\varphi \Pi} \) is isomorphic to the subgroup of \((\operatorname{Hol} A) \times \Pi \) where

\[
\tau \pi_1 = \varphi \pi_2 : (\operatorname{Hol} A) \times \Pi \to \operatorname{Aut} A,
\]

and compare the sequence (1.5) with that of Ex. 1.

### 2. Crossed Homomorphisms

If \( A \) is a \( 17 \)-module, a crossed homomorphism of \( \Pi \) to \( A \) is a function \( f \) on \( \Pi \) to \( A \) such that

\[
f(xy) = xf(y) + f(x), \quad x, y \in \Pi.
\]

Then necessarily \( f(1) = 0 \). For example, if \( A \) is a trivial \( \Pi \)-module \( (xa = a \) always), a crossed homomorphism is just an ordinary homomorphism of the multiplicative group \( 17 \) to the additive abelian group \( A \). The sum of two crossed homomorphisms \( f \) and \( g \), defined by \( (f + g) x = f(x) + g(x) \), is a crossed homomorphism. Under this addition the set
Chapter IV. Cohomology of Groups

of all crossed homomorphisms of \( \Pi \) to \( A \) is an abelian group which will be denoted by \( Z^1_{\varphi}(\Pi, A) \) — here \( \varphi \) records the 17-module structure \( \Pi \to \text{Aut} A \) of \( A \). For each fixed \( a \in A \) the function \( f_a \) defined by \( f_a(x) = xa - a \) is a crossed homomorphism. The functions of this form \( f_a \) are principal crossed homomorphisms. Since \( f_a + f_b = f_{a+b} \) and \( f(-a) = -f_a \), they constitute a subgroup \( B^1_{\varphi}(\Pi, A) \) of \( Z^1_{\varphi} \). The first cohomology group of \( \Pi \) over \( A \) is defined to be the quotient group

\[
H^1_{\varphi}(\Pi, A) = Z^1_{\varphi}(\Pi, A)/B^1_{\varphi}(\Pi, A). \tag{2.2}
\]

If \( A \) is the multiplicative group of a field and \( \Pi \) a finite group of automorphisms of \( A \) (thus determining the 17-module structure of \( A \)), a fundamental theorem of Galois Theory (Artin 1944, Thm. 21) asserts that \( H^1(\Pi, A) = 0 \) — that is, in this case, every crossed homomorphism is principal. Another application of crossed homomorphisms is

**Proposition 2.1.** The group of all those automorphisms of the semi-direct product \( B = A \times_{\varphi} \Pi \) which induce the identity both on the subgroup \( A \) and the quotient group \( B/A \cong \Pi \) is isomorphic to the group \( Z^1_{\varphi}(\Pi, A) \) of crossed homomorphisms. Under this isomorphism the inner automorphisms of \( B \) induced by elements of \( A \) correspond to the principal crossed homomorphisms.

**Proof.** An automorphism \( w \) of the sort described must be given by a formula \( w(a, x) = (a + f(x), x) \) for some function \( f \) on \( \Pi \) to \( A \) with \( f(1) = 0 \). The condition that \( w \) be an automorphism is equivalent to the equation (2.1). Composition of automorphisms then corresponds to the addition of the functions \( f \) and inner automorphisms \( (b, x) \to (a, 1) + (b, x) - (a, 1) \) to principal crossed homomorphisms, as asserted.

Crossed homomorphisms may be described in terms of the group ring \( Z[\Pi] \) and its augmentation \( \varepsilon : Z[\Pi] \to Z \), as follows.

**Proposition 2.2.** A crossed homomorphism of \( \Pi \) to the \( Z[\Pi] \)-module \( A \) is a homomorphism \( g : Z[\Pi] \to A \) of abelian groups such that always

\[
g(rs) = rg(s) + \varepsilon(r) g(s), \quad r, s \in Z[\Pi]. \tag{2.3}
\]

The principal homomorphisms are the homomorphisms \( g_a \) defined for a fixed \( a \in A \) as \( g_a(r) = ra - a \varepsilon(r) \).

**Proof.** In these formulas \( \varepsilon(r) \) and \( \varepsilon(s) \) are integers which operate on \( A \) on the right as multiples; thus \( a \varepsilon(r) = \varepsilon(r)a \). Given any function \( g \), as in (2.3), its restriction \( f = g|_{\Pi} \) to the elements \( x \in \Pi \) is a crossed homomorphism in the previous sense of (2.1), since \( s(x) = 1 \). Conversely, any crossed homomorphism \( f \) in the sense of (2.1) may be extended by linearity to a homomorphism \( g : Z[\Pi] \to A \) of abelian groups; that is,
by \( g(\sum m_x x) = \sum m_x f(x) \). Then (2.3) follows from (2.1). We identify \( f \) with its extension \( g \), and obtain thus the results stated.

The augmentation \( \varepsilon: Z(\Pi) \to Z \) is a ring homomorphism, hence its kernel \( I(\Pi) \) is a two-sided ideal in \( Z(\Pi) \) and therefore also a 17-submodule of \( Z(\Pi) \). The injection \( i \) gives an exact sequence

\[
0 \to I(\Pi) \xrightarrow{i} Z(\Pi) \xrightarrow{e} Z \to 0
\]  

(2.4)
of 17-modules, where \( Z \) has the trivial module structure. The map \( m \mapsto m1 \) of \( Z \) to \( Z(\Pi) \) is a homomorphism of additive groups (not of 17-modules!) which is a right inverse of \( \varepsilon \). Hence the sequence (2.4) splits as a sequence of abelian groups. A left inverse \( p: Z(17) \to I(\Pi) \) of the injection \( i \) is therefore the map defined for \( r \in Z(\Pi) \) as \( pr = r - \varepsilon(r)1 \).

It is a homomorphism of abelian groups and a crossed homomorphism of 17 to the module \( I(\Pi) \).

**Proposition 2.3.** For any 17-module \( A \) the operation of restricting to \( I(\Pi) \) a crossed homomorphism \( g \) of the form (2.3) provides an isomorphism

\[
Z^1_{\varepsilon}(\Pi, A) \cong \text{Hom}_{Z(\Pi)}(I(\Pi), A).
\]  

(2.5)
The principal homomorphisms correspond to the module homomorphisms \( h_a: I(\Pi) \to A \) defined for fixed \( a \) by the formula \( h_a(u) = au, \ u \in I(\Pi) \).

**Proof.** When \( \varepsilon(s) = 0 \) the identity (2.3) for \( g \) becomes \( g(rs) = rg(s) \), so \( g \) restricted to the kernel of \( \varepsilon \) is a module homomorphism, as stated. Conversely, any module homomorphism \( h: I(\Pi) + A, \) when composed with the special crossed homomorphism \( p: Z(17) \to I(\Pi) \) of the injection \( i \) is therefore the map defined for \( r \in Z(\Pi) \) as \( pr = r - \varepsilon(r)1 \), yields a crossed homomorphism \( h_p \) on \( Z(\Pi) \) whose restriction to \( I(\Pi) \) is exactly \( h \). Finally, the principal homomorphisms behave as stated.

For \( \Pi \) fixed, \( Z^1_{\varepsilon}(\Pi, A) \) and \( H^1_{\varepsilon} \) are covariant functors of \( A \); for each module homomorphism \( \alpha: A + B, \) \( (\alpha \ast f)(x) \) is defined as \( \alpha[f(x)] \). For a fixed abelian group \( A \) with the trivial 17-module structure one can make \( Z^1_{\varepsilon} \) and \( H^1_{\varepsilon} \) contravariant functors of 17; for a group homomorphism \( \zeta: \Pi' \to \Pi \) and a crossed homomorphism \( f \) on \( \Pi \) define the induced map \( \zeta^* : Z^1_{\varepsilon}(\Pi', A) \to Z^1_{\varepsilon}(17, A) \) by \( \zeta^* f(x) = f(\zeta x) \). This will not do when \( A \) is a non-trivial 17- or \( \Pi \)-module. However, if \( \zeta: \Pi \to \Pi' \) and \( A' \) is a \( \Pi' \)-module via \( \varphi': \Pi' \to \text{Aut} A' \), then \( A' \) is also a 17-module via \( \varphi' \zeta: \Pi \to \text{Aut} A' \), and we may define induced homomorphisms

\[
\zeta^* : Z^1_{\varphi'}(\Pi', A') \to Z^1_{\varphi'(\Pi, A)}, \quad \zeta^* : H^1_{\varphi'}(\Pi', A') \to H^1_{\varphi'(\Pi, A')}
\]

by setting \( (\zeta^* f)(x) = f(\zeta x) \) for any crossed homomorphism \( f \) on \( \Pi' \). These induced homomorphisms \( \zeta^* \) behave functorially; that is, \( (\zeta' \zeta)^* = \zeta^* \zeta^* \) and \( 1^* = 1 \).
More formally, regard the triple $(\varPi, A, \varphi)$ as a single object in a category $\mathcal{G}$ in which the morphisms $\varrho: (\varPi, A, \varphi) \to (\varPi', A', \varphi')$ are changes of groups; that is, pairs $\varrho = (\zeta, \alpha)$ of group homomorphisms with
\[
\zeta: \varPi \to \varPi', \quad \alpha: A' \to A, \quad x(\alpha a') = \alpha[(\zeta x)a']
\] (2.6)
for all $x \in \varPi$ and $a' \in A'$. Note that $\alpha$ is backwards (from $A'$ to $A$), and that the third condition states that $\alpha$ is a homomorphism $\alpha: A' \to A$ of II-modules. If $\varrho' = (\zeta', \alpha') : (\varPi', A', \varphi') \to (\varPi''', A''', \varphi''')$ is another change of groups, the composite $\varrho' \varrho$ is $(\zeta' \zeta, \alpha \alpha')$. For any crossed homomorphism $f$ on $\varPi'$ to $A'$ the definition $(\varrho^* f)(x) = a [f'[(\zeta x)]$ gives a map $\varrho^*: Z_{\varphi}(\varPi'', A'') \to Z_{\varphi}(\varPi, A)$ which makes $Z_\varphi$ and $H^1_\varphi$ contravariant functors on the change of groups category $\mathcal{G}$. This map $\varrho^*$ is the composite
\[
H^1_{\varphi}(\varPi', A') \xrightarrow{\zeta^*} H^1_{\varphi}(\varPi, A') \xrightarrow{\alpha^*} H^1_{\phi}(\varPi, A)
\]
of the maps $\zeta^*$ and $\alpha^*$, previously defined.

3. Group Extensions

A group extension is a short exact sequence
\[
E: 0 \to G \xrightarrow{\varpi} B \xrightarrow{\varrho} \varPi \to 1
\] (3.1)
of not necessarily abelian groups; it is convenient to write the group composition in $0$, $G$, and $B$ as addition; that in $\varPi$ and $I$ as multiplication. As before, the statement that $E$ is exact amounts to the assertion that $\varpi$ maps $G$ isomorphically onto a normal subgroup of $B$ and that $\varrho$ induces an isomorphism $B/\ker G \cong \varPi$ of the corresponding quotient group. The extension $E$ splits if $\varrho$ has a right inverse $\psi$; that is, if there is a homomorphism $\psi: \varPi \to B$ with $\varrho \psi = 1_\varPi$, the identity automorphism of $\varPi$. The semi-direct product extension (1.5) splits.

Let $\text{Aut}G$ denote the group of automorphisms of $G$, with group multiplication the composition of automorphisms. Conjugation in $B$ yields a homomorphism $\theta: B \to \text{Aut}G$ under which the action of each $8(b)$ on any $g \in G$ is given by
\[
\kappa[(\theta b)g] = b + (\kappa g) - b, \quad b \in B, \quad g \in G.
\]
Suppose $G = A$ abelian; then $8(A) = 1$, so that $\theta$ induces a homomorphism $\varphi: \varPi \to \text{Aut}A$ with $\varphi\sigma = \theta$. Thus $\varphi$ is defined by
\[
\kappa[(\varphi \sigma a) a] = b + (\kappa a) - b, \quad b \in B, \quad a \in A.
\] (3.2)

We then say that $E$ is an extension of the abelian group $A$ by the group $\varPi$ with the operators $\varphi: \varPi \to \text{Aut}A$. This map $\varphi$ records the way in which $A$ appears as a normal subgroup in the extension.
3. Group Extensions

The problem of group extensions is that of constructing all $E$, given $A$, $\Pi$, and $\varphi$. Now $\varphi$ gives $A$ the structure of a $\Pi$-module; hence the group extension problem is that of constructing all $E$, given $\Pi$ and a $\Pi$-module $A$. There is at least one such extension, the semi-direct product $A \rtimes \varphi \Pi$.

If $E$ and $E'$ are any two group extensions, a morphism $\Gamma: E \to E'$ is a triple $\Gamma = (a, \beta, \gamma)$ of group homomorphisms such that the diagram

$$
\begin{align*}
E: & \quad 0 \to A \to B \to \Pi \to 1 \\
E': & \quad 0 \to A' \to B' \to \Pi' \to 1
\end{align*}
$$

is commutative. If $A$ and $A'$ are abelian, and $\varphi$ and $\varphi': \Pi' \to \text{Aut} A'$ the associated operators of $E$ and $E'$, one shows readily that always

$$
\alpha [\varphi(x)a] = (\varphi'yx)a. \tag{3.4}
$$

For example, if $A = A'$, and $\alpha = 1_A$, then $(\varphi x)a = (\varphi'yx)a$: In other words, the 17-module structure on $A$ is determined by the $\Pi'$-module structure. If $\Gamma': E \to E'$ and $\Gamma'': E' \to E''$ are morphisms of extensions, so is the composite $\Gamma'' \Gamma': E \to E''$.

If $E$ and $E'$ are two group extensions of the same module $A$ by the group $\Pi$, a congruence $\Gamma: E \to E'$ is a morphism $\Gamma = (a, \beta, \gamma)$ with $a = 1_A$ and $\gamma = 1_{\Pi}$. For $A$ abelian, it follows from (3.4) that $\varphi = \varphi'$; i.e., congruent extensions have the same operators. The (non-commutative!) short five lemma shows that a congruence $\Gamma = (1_A, \beta, 1_\Pi)$ has $\beta$ an isomorphism, hence that each congruence has an inverse. We may therefore speak of congruence classes of extensions. Let $\text{Opext}(\Pi, A, \varphi)$ denote the set of all congruence classes of extensions of the abelian group $A$ by $\Pi$ with operators $\varphi$. We wish to describe $\text{Opext}$.

Any extension (3.1) with $G = A$ abelian which splits (under $\nu: \Pi \to B$) is congruent to the semi-direct product $A \rtimes \varphi \Pi$, under the isomorphism $\beta: B \to A \rtimes \varphi \Pi$ given by $\beta b = (\chi^{-1}[b - \nu \sigma b], \sigma b)$. In detail,

$$
b + b_1 - \nu \sigma (b + b_1) = (b - \nu \sigma b) + \nu \sigma b + (b_1 - \nu \sigma b) - \nu \sigma b = (b - \nu \sigma b) + \chi[(\theta b)\chi^{-1}(b_1 - \nu \sigma b_1)],$$

exactly as in the addition table (1.4) for the semi-direct product.

If $\Pi$ is a (non-abelian) free group with generators $t_k$, then any epimorphism $a: B \to 17$ has a right inverse given by setting $vt_k = b_k$, where $b_k$ is any element of $B$ with $a b_k = t_k$. Hence any extension by a free group splits, and $\text{Opext}$ then consists of a single element.

As a more interesting case, take $\Pi = C_m(t)$ cyclic of finite order $m$ with generator $t$. In any extension $E$ by $C_m$ identify each $a \in A$ with its image $\alpha a \in B$, so that $A < B$. Choose a representative $u$ for $t$ with $\sigma u = t$; as
\[ a(mu) = t^m = 1, \quad mu = a_0 \in A. \]

Each element of \( B \) can be written uniquely as \( a + iu \) for \( a \in A \) and \( 0 \leq i < m \). By the choice of \( a \), and (3.2),

\[ mu = a_0, \quad u + a = ta + u. \quad (3.5) \]

With these equations, the sum of any two elements of the form \( a + iu \) can be put in the same form. By associativity, \( u + mu = (m + 1)u = mu + u \), so \( u + a_0 = a_0 + u \). Therefore \( a_0 = ta_0 \), so \( a \), is "invariant" under \( t \). This element \( a \), is not unique; if \( u' = a_1 + u \) is a different representative for \( t \) in \( B \), then, by (3.5) and induction on \( m \),

\[ mu' = m(a_1 + u) = a_1 + ta_1 + \cdots + t^{m-1}a_1 + mu = N_ia_1 + a_0. \]

Here \( N_ia_1 = a_1 + ta_1 + \cdots + t^{m-1}a_1 \) is the norm with respect to \( t \) in the \( C_m \)-module \( A \); it is a group homomorphism \( N_i: A \to A \). Since the coset of \( a \), modulo \( N_iA \) is uniquely determined by the congruence class of the extension, we have established a correspondence

\[ \text{Opext}(C_m(t)A, \varphi) \leftrightarrow [a|ta = a]/N_iA. \quad (3.6) \]

This is 1-1; given any invariant \( a_\cdot \), take \( B \) to be all symbols \( a + iu \) with \( 0 \leq i < m \) and addition given by (3.5). The invariance of \( a \), proves this addition associative, and \( B \) is an extension of \( A \) by \( C_m \) with the given operators. In particular, if \( A \) has trivial operators (\( ta = a \) always), the expression on the right of (3.6) is the group \( A/mA \) — in agreement with the result already found in the case of abelian extensions in Prop. III.1.1. In this case, all extensions of \( A \) by \( C_m \) are abelian.

Again, let \( \Pi = C_\infty \times C_\infty \) be the free multiplicative abelian group on two generators \( t_1 \) and \( t_2 \). In any extension by \( \Pi \), take representatives \( u_i \) of \( t_i, i = 1, 2 \). There is then a constant \( a \), in \( A \) with \( u_2 + u_1 = a_0 + u_1 + u_2 \), all elements of the extension can be written uniquely as \( a + m_1u_1 + m_2u_2 \) with integral coefficients \( m_1 \) and \( m_2 \), and the addition in \( B \) is determined by the addition in \( A \) and the rules

\[ u_1 + a = t_1a + u_1, \quad u_2 + a = t_2a + u_2, \quad u_2 + u_1 = a_0 + u_1 + u_2. \]

This addition is always associative and makes the collection of elements \( a + m_1u_1 + m_2u_2 \) a group. If the representatives \( u_1 \) and \( u_2 \) are replaced by any other \( u'_1 = a_1 + u_1, u'_2 = a_2 + u_2 \), for \( a_1, a_2 \in A \), the constant \( a \), is replaced by \( a_0 + a_2 - t_1a_2 - a_1 + t_2a_1 \). Hence, if \( S \) is the subgroup of \( A \) generated by all sums \( a_2 - t_1a_2 - a_1 + t_2a_1 \), we have a 1-1 correspondence

\[ \text{Opext}(C_\infty \times C_\infty, A, \varphi) \leftrightarrow A/S. \quad (3.7) \]

**Exercises**

1. Describe \( \text{Opext}(C \times C_\infty \times C_\infty, A, \varphi) \).
2. Describe \( \text{Opext}(C_m \times C_n, A, \varphi) \).
3. Show that Prop. 2.1 holds if \( A \times \varphi \Pi \) is replaced by any extension of \( (\Pi, A, \varphi) \).
4. Factor Sets

The calculations just made suggest that \( \text{Opext}(\Pi, A, \varphi) \), like \( \text{Ext} \), is a group. This group structure can be described by means of certain factor sets.

Let \( E \) be an extension \((3.1)\) in \( \text{Opext}(\Pi, A, \varphi) \): For convenience, identify each \( a \) with \( xa \). To each \( x \) in \( \Pi \) choose a "representative" \( u(x) \) in \( B \); that is, an element \( u(x) \) with \( \sigma u(x) = x \). In particular, choose \( u(1) = 0 \). Now each coset of \( A \) in \( B \) contains exactly one \( u(x) \), and the elements of \( B \) can be represented uniquely as \( a + u(x) \) for \( a \in A, x \in \Pi \).

We write the operators as \( \varphi(x)a = xa \): Then \((3.2)\) for \( b = u(x) \) becomes

\[
u(x) + a = xa + u(x).
\] (4.1)

On the other hand, the sum \( u(x) + u(y) \) must lie in the same coset as \( u(xy) \), so there are unique elements \( f(x, y) \in A \) such that always

\[
u(x) + u(y) = f(x, y) + u(xy).
\] (4.2)

Since \( u(1) = 0 \), we also have

\[
f(x, 1) = 0 = f(1, y), \quad x, y \in \Pi.
\] (4.3)

The function \( f \) is called a factor set of the extension \( E \). With this factor set and the data \((\Pi, A, \varphi)\), the addition in \( B \) is determined, for the sum of any two elements \( a + u(x) \) and \( a_1 + u(y) \) of \( B \) can be calculated, by \((4.1)\) and \((4.2)\), as

\[
[a + u(x)] + [a_1 + u(y)] = (a + xa_1 + f(x, y)) + u(xy).
\] (4.4)

By this rule form the triple sums

\[
[u(x) + u(y)] + u(z) = f(x, y) + f(xy, z) + u(xy z),
\]

\[
u(x) + [u(y) + u(z)] = xf(y, z) + f(x, y z) + u(xy z).
\]

Their equality (associative law!) gives

\[
x f(y, z) + f(x, y z) = f(x, y) + f(xy, z), \quad x, y, z \in \Pi.
\] (4.5)

The factor set \( f \) for an extension depends on a choice of representatives; if \( u'(x) \) is a second set of representatives with \( u'(1) = 0 \), then \( u'(x) \) and \( u(x) \) lie in the same coset, so there is a function \( g \) on \( \Pi \) to \( A \) with \( g(1) = 0 \) such that \( u'(x) = g(x) + u(x) \). Thus

\[
u'(x) + u'(y) = g(x) + xg(y) + u(x) + u(y) = g(x) + xg(y) + f(x, y) + u(xy).
\]

The new factor set is \( f'(x, y) = \delta g(x, y) + f(x, y) \), where \( \delta g \) is the function

\[
(\delta g)(x, y) = xg(y) - g(xy) + g(x), \quad x, y \in \Pi.
\] (4.6)

One verifies that this function \( \delta g \) does satisfy the identity \((4.5)\), with \( f \) replaced by \( \delta g \) there.
Chapter IV. Cohomology of Groups

These observations suggest the following definitions. Let \( Z^2(17, A) \) denote the set of all functions \( f \) on \( 17 \times 17 \) to \( A \) which satisfy the identity \((4.5)\) and the normalization condition \((4.3)\). This set is an abelian group under the termwise addition \( (f + f')(x, y) = f(x, y) + f'(x, y) \). Let \( B^2(17, A) \) denote the subset of \( Z^2(17, A) \) which consists of all functions \( f \) of the form \( f = \delta g \), where \( \delta g \) is defined as in \((4.6)\) from any function \( g \) on \( 17 \) to \( A \) with \( g(1) = 0 \). The factor group

\[
H^2(\Pi, A) = \frac{Z^2(\Pi, A)}{B^2(\Pi, A)}
\]

is called the 2-dimensional cohomology group of \( \Pi \) over \( A \). Our discussion has suggested

**Theorem 4.1.** Given \( \varphi: \Pi \to \text{Aut} A \), \( A \) abelian, the function \( w \) which assigns to each extension of \( A \) by \( 17 \) with operators \( \varphi \) the congruence class of one of its factor sets is a 1-1-correspondence

\[
\omega: \text{Opext}(\Pi, A, \varphi) \leftrightarrow H^2(\Pi, A)
\]

between the set Opext of all congruence classes of such extensions and the 2-dimensional cohomology group. Under this correspondence the semi-direct product corresponds to the zero element of \( H^2(\Pi, A) \).

Since \( H^2(\Pi, A) \) is an abelian group, this correspondence \( \omega \) imposes the desired group structure on Opext. This group structure can also be described conceptually via the Baer product, as set forth in the exercises below.

**Proof.** Since the factor set of an extension is well defined modulo the subgroup \( B^2(\Pi, A) \), and since congruent extensions have the same factor sets, we know that the correspondence \( \omega \) is well defined. The semi-direct product \( A \ltimes_{\varphi} \Pi \) clearly has the trivial function \( f(x, y) = 0 \) as one of its factor sets. If two extensions yield factor sets whose difference is some function \( \delta g(x, y) \), then a change of representatives in one extension will make the factor sets equal and the extensions congruent. Therefore \((4.7)\) is a 1-1 correspondence of Opext with part of \( H^2(\Pi, A) \). Finally, given any \( f \) satisfying \((4.5)\) and \((4.3)\), one may define a group \( B \) to consist of pairs \((a, x)\) with a sum given as in \((4.4)\) by

\[
(a, x) + (a_1, y) = (a + x a_1 + f(x, y), x y), \quad a, b \in A.
\]

The module rules and the condition \((4.5)\) show that this composition is associative; it clearly yields an extension with representatives \( u(x) = (0, x) \) and factor set \( f \). This completes the proof of the theorem.

If \( A \) is abelian, a central group extension of \( A \) by \( \Pi \) is an extension \( E \) as in \((3.1)\) in which \( \kappa A \) is in the center of \( B \). In other words, a central extension is one with operators \( \varphi = 1 \). This theorem thus includes the fact that the set of congruence classes of central extensions of \( A \) by \( \Pi \)
is in 1-1 correspondence with the group $H^0(\Pi, A)$, where the abelian
group A is taken with trivial operators $\varphi$. If $\Pi$ is abelian, every abelian
extension is central, so there is a monomorphism $\text{Ext}_2^1(17, A) + H^0(17, A)$.

We can regard the cohomology groups $H^0_\varphi$ and $H^1_\varphi$ as the cohomology
groups of a suitable complex

$$X_0 \leftarrow X_1 \leftarrow X_2 \leftarrow X_3$$

of free 17-modules. Take $X_1$ to be the free 17-module generated by
all pairs $[x, y]$ of elements $x \neq 1$, $y \neq 1$ of 17. In order to define $[x, y] \in X_1$,
for all $x, y \in \Pi$, set also $[1, y] = 0 = [x, 1]$ and $[1, 1] = 0$. A 2-dimensional
cochain $f$ of $\text{Hom}_\Pi(X, A)$ is thus a 17-homomorphism $f : X, \to A$; it is
determined by its values $f[x, y]$ on the free generators of $X$; hence is in
effect a function on $\Pi \times \Pi$ to A with $f(x, 1) = 0 = f(1, y)$. Next take
$X_2$ to be the free 17-module generated by all triples $[x, y, z]$ of elements
not 1 in $\Pi$, with $\partial : X_2 \rightarrow X_1$ given by

$$\partial[x, y, z] = [x, y, z] - [x y, z] + [x, y z] - [x, y];$$

(4.8)

the condition that $f$ be a cocycle ($f \partial = 0$) is exactly the identity (4.5).
Finally, take $X_1$ to be the free module generated by all $x$ with $x \neq 1$ and
set $[1] = 0$. A 1-dimensional cochain is a module homomorphism
$X_1 \rightarrow A$, and is hence determined by its values on $[x]$, so is, in effect,
a function $g$ on $\Pi$ to A with $g(1) = 0$. If we now define $\partial : X, \to X_1$ by

$$\partial[x, y] = [x, y] - [x y] + [x],$$

(4.9)

then $\partial \partial = 0$, and the coboundary of $g$ is the function given by the
formula (4.6). Thus $H^1(17, A) = H^0(\text{Hom}_{\Pi}(X, A))$. We get the analogous
result for $H^1_\varphi$ if we take $X_0$ to be $Z(\Pi)$ and set $\partial[x] = x - 1 \in Z(\Pi)$.

This complex also defines a 0-dimensional cohomology group as

$$H^0_\varphi(17, A) = H^0(\text{Hom}_{\Pi}(X, A)).$$

A 0-dimensional cochain is a module homomorphism $f : Z(\Pi) \rightarrow A$; it is determined by its value $f(1) = a \in A$.
It is a cocycle if $-(\delta f)[x] = f \partial[x] = f(x - 1) = xa - a$ is zero. Hence
the 0-cocycles correspond to the elements $a \in A$ invariant under $\Pi$
($xa = a$ for all $x$):

$$H^0_\varphi(\Pi, A) = A^\Pi, \quad A^\Pi = [a | xa = a \text{ for } x \in \Pi].$$

(4.10)

Exercises

The Baer sum, introduced for extensions of modules in Chap. III, can also be
applied to group extensions, as indicated in the following sequence of exercises.

1. Prove: If $E$ is an extension of $G$ by $\Pi$ and $\gamma : \Pi' \rightarrow \Pi$, there exists an extension $E'$ of $G$ by $\Pi'$ and a morphism $\Gamma'(G, \beta, \gamma) : E' \rightarrow E$. The pair $(\Gamma', E')$ is unique up
to a congruence of $E'$. If $G$ is abelian and has operators $\varphi : \Pi \rightarrow \text{Aut} G$, then $E'$
has operators $\varphi \gamma$. Define $E \gamma = E'$. 

Mac Lane, Homology
2. Under the hypotheses of Ex. 1, prove that each morphism \((a_1, \beta_1, \gamma_1): E_1 \to E\)
of extensions with \(\gamma_1 = y\) can be factored uniquely through \(\Theta\).

3. For \(E \in \text{Opext}(\Pi, A, \varphi)\), \(\varphi': \Pi \to \text{Aut} A'\), and \(a: A \to A'\) a \(\Pi\)-module homomorphism, prove that there exists an extension \(E' \in \text{Opext}(\Pi, A', \varphi')\) and a morphism \(\Theta = (a, \beta, \eta): E \to E'\), unique up to a congruence of \(E\). Define \(\alpha E\) to be \(E'\).

4. Under the hypotheses of Ex. 3, prove that for \(E_1 \in \text{Opext}(\Pi, A', \varphi')\) each morphism \((\alpha, \beta_1, \gamma_1): E \to E_1\) with \(\alpha_1 = a\) and \(\beta_1 \gamma_1 = \varphi'\) can be factored uniquely through \(\Theta\).

5. For \(a, \gamma,\) and \(E\) as in Exs. 1 and 3, with \(G = A\) abelian, prove that \(\alpha(E\gamma)\) is congruent to \((\alpha E)\gamma\).

6. Using Exs. 1, 3, and 5, show that \(\text{Opext}\) is a contravariant functor on the category \(\mathcal{G}\) of changes of groups.

7. Show that \(\text{Opext}(\Pi, A, \varphi)\) is an abelian group under the Baer sum defined by \(E_1 + E_2 = \nu(A)(E_1 \times E_2)\Delta\Pi\), and show that this composition agrees with that given by factor sets.

5. The Bar Resolution

The boundary formulas (4.8) and (4.9) for the complex \(X\) of the last section can be generalized to higher dimensions. Specifically, for any group \(\Pi\) we construct a certain chain complex of \(\Pi\)-modules \(B_n(Z(\Pi))\). Take \(B\) to be the free \(\Pi\)-module with generators \([x_1] \ldots [x_n]\) all \(n\)-tuples of elements \(x_1 \neq 1, \ldots, x_n \neq 1\) of \(\Pi\). Operation on a generator with an \(x \in \Pi\) yields an element \(x[x_1] \ldots [x_n]\) in \(B\), so \(B_n\) may be described as the free \(\Pi\) generated by all \(x[x_1] \ldots [x_n]\). To give a meaning to every symbol \([x_1] \ldots [x_n]\), set
\[
[x_1] \ldots [x_n] = 0 \quad \text{if any one } x_i = 1; \quad (5.1)
\]
this is called the normalization condition. In particular, \(B_0\) is the free module on one generator, denoted \([\cdot]\), so is isomorphic to \(Z(\Pi)\), while \(e[\cdot] = 1\) is a \(\Pi\)-module homomorphism \(e: B_0 \to Z\), with \(Z\) the trivial 17-module.

Homomorphisms \(s_{-1}: Z \to B_0\), \(s_n: B_i \to B_{i+1}\) of abelian groups are defined by
\[
s_{-1} = [\cdot], \quad s_n x [x_1] \ldots [x_n] = [x x_1] \ldots [x_n]. \quad (5.2)
\]
Define \(\Pi\)-module homomorphisms \(\partial: B_n \to B_{n-1}\) for \(n > 0\) by
\[
\partial [x_1] \ldots [x_n] = x_1 [x_2] \ldots [x_n] + \sum_{i=1}^{n-1} (-1)^i [x_1] \ldots [x_i x_{i+1}] \ldots [x_n] + (-1)^n [x_1] \ldots [x_{n-1}]; \quad (5.3)
\]
in particular \(\partial [x] = x [\cdot] - [\cdot]\), \(\partial [x] y = x [y] - [xy] + [x]\). Note that formula (5.3) holds even when some \(x_i = 1\), for then the terms numbered \(i-1\) and \(i\) on the right cancel, and the remaining terms are zero. All
told, we have a diagram

\[
Z \xleftarrow{\varepsilon} B_0 \xleftarrow{\partial} B_1 \xleftarrow{\partial} \cdots \xleftarrow{\partial} B_{n-1} \xleftarrow{\partial} B_n \xleftarrow{\partial} \cdots,
\]

(5.4)

with solid arrows module homomorphisms and dotted arrows group homomorphisms. Call \( B = B(Z(\Pi)) \) the bar resolution.

**Theorem 5.1.** For any group \( \Pi \) the bar resolution \( B(Z(\Pi)) \) with augmentation \( \varepsilon \) is a free resolution of the trivial 17-module \( Z \).

**Proof.** The \( B_n \) are free modules, by construction, so we must show that the sequence of solid arrows in (5.4), with zero adjoined on the left, is exact. We will prove more: That this sequence is a complex of abelian groups with \( s \) as a contracting homotopy. The latter statement means that

\[
\varepsilon s_{-1} = 1, \quad \partial s_0 + s_{-1} \varepsilon = 1, \quad \partial s_n + s_{n-1} \partial = 1, \quad (n > 0).
\]

(5.5)

Each of these equations is immediate from the definition; for example, by (5.3), \( \partial s_n([x_1] \cdots [x_n]) \) starts with \( [x_1] \cdots [x_n] \) while the remaining terms are those of \( s_{n-1} \partial [x_1] \cdots [x_n] \), each with sign changed; this proves the last equation of (5.5). Moreover, these equations determine \( \varepsilon \) and \( \partial_{n+1} : B_{n+1} \rightarrow B_n \) uniquely by recursion on \( n \), for \( B_{n+1} \) is generated as a 17-module by the subgroup \( s_n B_n \), and the equations (5.5) give \( \partial_{n+1} \) on this subgroup as \( \partial_{n+1}s_n = 1 - s_{n-1} \partial_n \); thus the formula (5.3) for \( \partial \) can be deduced from (5.5) and (5.2) for \( s \). By the same recursion argument it follows that \( \varepsilon \partial_1 = 0 \) and \( \partial_n \partial_{n+1} = 0 \), for

\[
\partial_n \partial_{n+1} s_n = \partial_n (1 - s_{n-1} \partial_n) = \partial_n - (\partial_n s_{n-1}) \partial_n = \partial_n - \partial_n s_{n-2} \partial_{n-1} \partial_n
\]

gives \( \partial^2 = 0 \) by induction. This can also be proved, directly but laboriously, from the formula (5.3) for \( \partial \). Either argument shows \( B(Z(\Pi)) \) a complex and a resolution of \( Z \), as stated in the theorem.

The same theorem holds for the "non-normalized" bar resolution \( \beta(Z(\Pi)) \). Here \( \beta_n \) is the free \( \Pi \)-module generated by all the \( n \)-tuples \( x_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes x_n \) of elements of \( \Pi \) (no normalization condition) and \( \varepsilon, \partial, s \) are given by the same formulas as for \( B \). Thus \( B_n \cong \beta_n / D_n \), where \( D \) is the submodule generated by all \( x_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes x_n \) with one \( x_i = 1 \). The symbol \( \otimes \) is used here because this description makes \( \beta_n \) the \((n+1)\)-fold "tensor product" \( Z(\Pi) \otimes \cdots \otimes Z(\Pi) \) of the abelian groups \( Z(\Pi) \); these tensor products are defined in Chap. V and applied to the bar resolution in Chap. IX.

For any \( \Pi \)-module \( A \) we define the **cohomology groups** of \( \Pi \) with coefficients \( A \) by the formula

\[
H^n(\Pi, A) = H^n(B(Z(\Pi)), A),
\]

(5.6)
in keeping with the special cases treated in the previous section (where the subscript \( \varphi \) was used to record explicitly the structure of \( A \) as a IT-module). The cohomology groups \( H^n(\Pi, A) \) are thus those of the cochain complex \( B(17, A) = \text{Hom, } [B(Z(\Pi)), A], \) where \( \text{Hom}_{\text{IT}} \) is short for \( \text{Hom}_{\text{Z(\Pi)}} \). Since \( B \), is a free module with generators \([x_1], \ldots, [x_n]\) (no \( x_i = 1 \)), an \( n \)-cochain \( f : B \rightarrow A \) is a IT-module homomorphism which is uniquely determined by its values on these generators. Therefore the group \( B^n(\text{IT}, A) \) of \( n \)-cochains may be identified with the set of all those functions \( f \) of \( n \) arguments \( x_i \) in IT, with values in \( A \), which satisfy the "normalization" conditions

\[
f(x_1, \ldots, x_{i-1}, 1, x_{i+1}, \ldots, x_n) = 0, \quad i = 1, \ldots, n. \tag{5.7}
\]

The sum of two cochains \( f_1 \) and \( f_2 \) is given by addition of values as

\[
(f_1 + f_2)(x_1, \ldots, x_n) = f_1(x_1, \ldots, x_n) + f_2(x_1, \ldots, x_n).
\]

Under this addition the set \( B^n \) of all such \( f \) is an abelian group. The coboundary homomorphism \( \delta : B^n \rightarrow B^{n-1} \) is defined by

\[
\delta f(x_1, \ldots, x_{n+1}) = (-1)^{n+1} [x_1 f(x_2, \ldots, x_{n+1}) + \sum_{i=1}^{n} (-1)^i f(x_1, \ldots, x_i x_{i+1}, \ldots, x_{n+1})] + (-1)^n f(x_1, \ldots, x_n).
\tag{5.8}
\]

\( H^n(17, A) \) is the \( n \)-th cohomology group of this complex \( B(\text{IT}, A) \).

As a functor, \( H^n(\Pi, A) \) is contravariant in the objects \( (\text{IT}, A, \varphi) \), for if \( \varphi' = (\zeta, \alpha) \) is a change of groups as in (2.6), the induced map \( \varphi^* : H^n(\Pi, A') \rightarrow H^n(\Pi, A) \) is defined for any \( f' \in B'(\Pi) \) by

\[
(\varphi^* f')(x_1, \ldots, x_n) = \alpha [f'(\zeta x_1, \ldots, \zeta x_n)], \quad \zeta : \Pi \rightarrow \Pi', \quad \alpha : A' \rightarrow A. \tag{5.9}
\]

In particular, for IT fixed, \( H^n(\Pi, A) \) is a covariant functor of the IT-module \( A \).

**Corollary 5.2.** For any IT-module \( A \) there is an isomorphism

\[
\theta : \text{Ext}^n_{\text{Z(\Pi)}}(Z, A) \cong H^n(\Pi, A)
\]

which is natural in \( A \).

Since \( B \) is a free resolution of the trivial IT-module \( Z \), the result is immediate, by Thm. \( \text{III.6.4} \); it shows that the cohomology of a group is a special case of the functor \( \text{Ext}_R \), for \( R \) the group ring.

For a short exact sequence \( E : A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C \) of IT-modules, Cor. 5.2 and the usual exact sequence for \( \text{Ext} \) yield an exact sequence

\[
\cdots \rightarrow H^n(\Pi, A) \rightarrow H^n(\Pi, B) \rightarrow H^n(\Pi, C) \xrightarrow{E_*} H^{n+1}(\Pi, A) \rightarrow \cdots
\]

The connecting homomorphisms \( E_* \) are natural in \( E \). For fixed \( \Pi \), the cohomology groups \( H^n(17, A) \) are covariant functors of \( A \) which may
be characterized, with these connecting homomorphisms, by three
axioms like those for Ext (111.40): The sequence above is exact, \( H^0(\Pi, A) \cong A' \), and \( H^n(\Pi, J) = 0 \) if \( n > 0 \) and \( J \) is an injective \( \Pi \)-module.

For \( \Pi \) finite, the coboundary formula gives an amusing result:

Proposition 5.3. If \( \Pi \) is a finite group of order \( k \), every element of \( H^n(\Pi, A) \) for \( n > 0 \) has order dividing \( k \).

Proof. For each \( n \)-cochain \( f \) define an \((n-4)\)-cochain \( g \) by

\[ g(x_1, \ldots, x_{n-1}) = \sum_{x \in \Pi} f(x_1, \ldots, x_{n-1}, x) \]

Add the identities (5.8) for all \( x = x_{n+1} \) in \( \Pi \). The last term is independent of \( x \); in the next to the last term, for \( x \) fixed,

\[ \sum_x f(\ldots, x_{n-1}, x) = \sum_x f(\ldots, x_{n-1}, x) = g(\ldots, x_{n-1}) \]

Hence the result is

\[ \sum_{x \in \Pi} \delta f(x_1, \ldots, x_n) = -\delta g(x_1, \ldots, x_n) + k f(x_1, \ldots, x_n). \]

For \( \delta f = 0 \) this gives \( kf = \delta g \) a coboundary, hence the result.

Corollary 5.4. If \( \Pi \) is finite, while the divisible abelian group \( D \) with no elements of finite order is a \( \Pi \)-module in any way, then \( H^n(\Pi, D) = 0 \) for \( n > 0 \).

Proof. For \( g \) as above, there is an \((n-1)\)-cochain \( h \) with \( g = kh \). Then \( kf = \pm k \delta h \); since \( D \) has no elements of finite order, \( f = \pm \delta h \), and the cocycle \( f \) is a coboundary.

Corollary 5.5. If \( \Pi \) is finite, \( P \) is the additive group of real numbers, mod 1, and \( P \) and \( Z \) are trivial \( \Pi \)-modules, \( H^n(\Pi, Z) \cong \text{Hom}(\Pi, P) \).

The (abelian) group \( \text{Hom}(\Pi, P) \) of all group homomorphisms \( \Pi \to P \) is the character group of \( \Pi \).

Proof. The additive group \( R \) of reals is divisible, with no elements of finite order. The short exact sequence \( 0 \to R \to P \) of trivial \( \Pi \)-modules yields the exact sequence

\[ H^n(\Pi, R) \to H^n(\Pi, P) \to H^n(\Pi, Z) \to H^n(\Pi, R). \]

By Cor. 5.4, the two outside groups vanish; since \( P \) has trivial module structure, \( H^1(\Pi, P) = \text{Hom}(\Pi, P) \). Hence the connecting homomorphism is the desired isomorphism.

To illustrate the use of resolutions, consider the operation of conjugation by a fixed element \( t \in \Pi \). Let \( \theta _t : \Pi \to \Pi \) denote the inner automorphism \( \theta _t x = t^{-1} xt \), while, for any \( \Pi \)-module \( A \), \( a : A \to A \) is the
automorphism given by \( a, a = ta \). Then \( x(a, a) = xta = t^{-1}xta = a \), \( [(\theta_{t}x)a] \), so \((\theta_{t}, a)\) : \((IT, A, \varphi) \rightarrow (IT, A, \varphi)\) is a change of groups in the sense of (2.6). The induced map on cohomology is necessarily an isomorphism, but more is true:

**Proposition 5.6.** For any \( \Pi \)-module \( A \), conjugation by a fixed \( t \in \Pi \) induces the identity isomorphism

\[
(\theta_{t}, a)^{*} : H^{n}(\Pi, A) = H^{n}(\Pi, A).
\]

**Proof.** A module homomorphism \( g_{t} : B_{n}(Z(\Pi)) \rightarrow B_{n}(Z(\Pi)) \) is given by

\[
g_{t}(x[x_{1}] \ldots | x_{n}) = xt[t^{-1}x_{1}t \ldots | t^{-1}x_{i}t | \ldots | t^{-1}x_{n}t].
\]

Observation shows \( g_{t} \circ \partial = \partial g_{t} \), so \( g_{t} \) is a chain transformation of resolutions which lifts the identity \( Z \rightarrow Z \). By the comparison theorem for resolutions, \( g_{t} \) is homotopic to the identity, so the induced map on cohomology is the identity. But this induced map carries any \( n \)-cochain \( f \) into \( g_{t}^{*}f \) where

\[
(g_{t}^{*}f)(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}) = f g_{t}[x_{1}] \ldots | x_{n}] = tf(t^{-1}x_{1}t, \ldots, t^{-1}x_{n}t).
\]

The cochain on the right is \((\theta_{t}, a)^{*}f\), as defined by (5.9), hence the conclusion. Note that the comparison theorem has saved us the trouble of constructing an explicit homotopy \( g_{t} \sim 1 \).

This theorem may be read as stating that each \( n \)-cocycle \( f \) is cohomologous to the cocycle \( g_{t} f \) defined above. Like many results in the cohomology of groups, this result was discovered in the case \( n = 2 \) from properties of group extensions (Ex. 3 below).

In the bar resolution, \( B_{n}(Z(\Pi)) \) is the free abelian group with free generators all symbols \( x[x_{1}] \ldots | x_{n} \) with all \( x \in \Pi \) and none of \( x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n} \) equal to \( 1 \in \Pi \). We call these symbols the nonhomogeneous generators of \( B \). Now the string of elements \( x, x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n} \) in \( \Pi \) determines and is determined by the string of elements \( y_{0} = x, y_{1} = xx_{1}, y_{2} = xx_{1}x_{2}, \ldots, y_{n} = xx_{1} \ldots x_{n} \in \Pi \), and the condition \( x_{i} = 1 \) becomes \( y_{i-1} = y_{i} \). Hence the generators of \( B_{n} \) may be labelled by the elements \( y_{i} \in \Pi \), in symbols

\[
(y_{0}, y_{1}, \ldots, y_{n}) = y_{0}[y^{-1}_{0}y_{1}]y_{1}^{-1}y_{2} \ldots y_{n-1}^{-1}y_{n}], \quad (5.10)
\]

while conversely

\[
x[x_{1}] \ldots x_{n} = (x, xx_{1}, xx_{1}x_{2}, \ldots, xx_{1} \ldots x_{n}). \quad (5.11)
\]

Translating the boundary formula to this notation proves

**Proposition 5.7.** The abelian group \( B_{n}(Z(\Pi)) \) contains the elements \((y_{0}, \ldots, y_{n})\) of (5.10) for all \( y_{i} \in \Pi \). If \( y_{i-1} = y_{i} \), \( (y_{0}, \ldots, y_{n}) = 0 \). The
remaining such elements are free generators of $B_n$. The $\mathbb{Z}$-module structure is given by

$$\gamma(y_0, y_1, \ldots, y_n) = (\gamma y_0, \gamma y_1, \ldots, \gamma y_n) \quad (5.12)$$

and the boundary $\partial: B_n \rightarrow B_{n-1}$ is determined by

$$\partial(y_0, y_1, \ldots, y_n) = \sum_{i=0}^{n} (-1)^i (y_0, \ldots, \hat{y}_i, \ldots, y_n), \quad (5.13)$$

where the $\hat{\cdot}$ over $y_i$ indicates that $y_i$ is to be omitted.

Note that this formulation of $B(Z(\Pi))$ uses the multiplication of $\mathbb{Z}$ only in the definition (5.12) of the module structure. In view of the form of this definition, the symbols $(y_0, \ldots, y_n)$ are called the homogeneous generators of $B_n$. They have a geometrical flavor. If we regard $(y_0, y_1, \ldots, y_n)$ as an $n$-simplex $a$ with the element $y_i \in \Pi$ as a label on the $i$-th vertex, then $(y_0, \ldots, \hat{y}_i, \ldots, y_n)$ is the $(n-1)$ simplex which consists of the $i$-th face of $a$ with its labels, and the boundary formula (5.13) is the usual formula for the boundary of a simplex as the alternating sum of its $(n-1)$-dimensional faces.

The non-homogeneous generators may be similarly read as a system of edge labels. On the simplex, label the edge from the vertex $i$ to vertex $j$ by $z_{ij} = y_i^{-1} y_j$, so that the simplices $a$ and $ya$ have the same edge labels, and $z_{ij} z_{jk} = z_{ik}$. Hence the edge labels $x_{i} = z_{i-1,i}$ determine all the edge labels by composition. The non-homogeneous generator $x[x_1 \ldots x_n]$ simply records these edge labels $x_i$ and the label $x = y_0$ on the initial vertex, as in the figure

![Diagram showing edge labels](image)

The non-homogeneous boundary formula (5.3) may be read off from these edge labels. This schematic description can be given an exact geometrical meaning when $\Pi$ is the fundamental group of a space (Eilenberg-MacLane 1945).

### Exercises

1. Show that $B(Z(\Pi))$ — the non-normalized bar resolution — with a suitable augmentation is a free $\mathbb{Z}$-module resolution of $\mathbb{Z}$.

2. Deduce that $\text{Opext}(\Pi, A, \varphi)$ can be described by factor sets which satisfy (4.5) but not the normalization condition (4.3). Find the identity element in the group extension given by such a non-normalized factor set.

3. For $n=2$ in Prop. 5.6, show explicitly that the cohomologous factor sets $f$ and $g \mathcal{f} f$ determine congruent elements of $\text{Opext}(\Pi, A, \varphi)$.

4. Show that $\text{Ext}^n_{\mathcal{A}}(\mathbb{Z}, A)$ is a contravariant functor on the category of changes of groups, and prove the isomorphism $\theta$ of Cor. 5.2 natural.
6. The Characteristic Class of a Group Extension

For \( n = 2 \), Cor. 5.2 provides an isomorphism

\[
0: \text{Ext}^g_{\mathbb{Z}(I)}(\mathbb{Z}, A) \cong H^2(I, A). \tag{6.1}
\]

Hence each group extension \( E \) of \( A \) by 17,

\[
E: 0 \to A \to B \to I \to 1,
\]

with given operators \( \varphi \) must determine a two-fold \( I \)-module extension of \( A \) by the trivial module \( \mathbb{Z} \). It is instructive to construct this module extension

\[
\chi(E): 0 \to A \xrightarrow{\alpha} M \xrightarrow{\beta} \mathbb{Z}(I) \xrightarrow{\varepsilon} \mathbb{Z} \to 0 \tag{6.2}
\]

directly. To do so, take \( \mathbb{Z}(I) \) to be the group ring of \( I \), with \( \varepsilon \) its augmentation. Take \( M \) to be the quotient module \( M = F/L \), where \( F \) is the free \( I \)-module on generators \( [b] \), one for each \( b \neq 1 \) in \( B \), with the convention that \([1] = 0 \) in \( F \), while \( L \) is the submodule of \( F \) generated by all \([b_1 + b_2] - (\sigma b_1)[b_2] - [b_1]\) for \( b_1, b_2 \in B \). The module homomorphisms \( \alpha \) and \( \beta \) of (6.2) may then be given by \( \alpha a = [xa] + L, \beta([b] + L) = \sigma b - 1 \in \mathbb{Z}(I) \). Clearly \( \beta \alpha = 0 \) and \( \varepsilon \beta = 0 \), so the sequence \( \chi(E) \) of (6.2) may be regarded as a complex of \( I \)-modules. The exactness of this sequence is a consequence of

**Lemma 6.1.** As a chain complex of abelian groups, (6.2) has a contracting homotopy.

**Proof.** A contracting homotopy \( s \) would consist of homomorphisms \( s: \mathbb{Z} \to \mathbb{Z}(I), s: \mathbb{Z}(I) \to M, \) and \( s: M+A \) of abelian groups such that \( es=1_\mathbb{Z}, \beta s+s \varepsilon=1_{\mathbb{Z}(I)}, \alpha s+s \beta=1_M, \) and \( s \alpha=1_A \). The first condition is satisfied by setting \( s t = 1 \), and the second by \( s x = [u(x)] + L, \) where \( u(x) \in B \) is a representative of \( x \) in \( B \) with \( \sigma u(x) = x \) and \( u(1) = 0 \). For all \( x \) and \( b, u(x) + b - u(x(\sigma b)) \) is in the kernel of \( \alpha \), so there are elements \( h(x, b) \in A \) with

\[
u(x) + b = \chi h(x, b) + u(x(\sigma b)).
\]

A homomorphism \( s: M+A \) may be defined by \( s(x[b] + L) = h(x, b) \). The proof is completed by showing that \( as + s \beta = 1, sa = 1 \).

The given short exact sequence \( E \) of groups thus determines an exact sequence \( \chi(E) \) of modules, hence an element of \( \text{Ext}^g_{\mathbb{Z}(I)}(\mathbb{Z}, A) \), called the characteristic class of \( E \). That the correspondence

\[
\chi: \text{Opext}(I, A, \varphi) \to \text{Ext}^g_{\mathbb{Z}(I)}(\mathbb{Z}, A)
\]

is an isomorphism will follow by composing it with the \( \theta \) of (6.1) and applying
Theorem 6.2. The composite correspondence

\[ \text{Opext}(\Pi, A, \varphi) \xrightarrow{\chi} \text{Ext}^2_{\mathbb{Z}(\Pi)}(Z, A) \xrightarrow{\partial} H^2(\Pi, A) \]  

is the isomorphism which assigns to each \( E \) the cohomology class of one of its factor sets.

Sketch of proof. To apply the definition of \( \partial \) we must find a chain transformation of the bar resolution, regarded as a free resolution of the trivial module \( Z \), into the sequence \( \chi(E) \), regarded also as a resolution of \( Z \). Such a chain transformation may be specified in terms of representatives \( u(x) \) of \( x \) in \( B \), with the usual factor set \( f(x, y) \) for the \( u(x) \), by the module homomorphisms

\[ g_1[x] = [u(x)] + L, \quad g_2[x, y] = f(x, y). \]  

The cohomology class belonging to \( \chi(E) \) is then the cohomology class of \( g_2 \), regarded as a cocycle on \( B(Z(\Pi)) \); that is, is the cohomology class of a factor set \( f \) for the extension \( E \), as asserted in our theorem.

This construction may be reversed. The bar resolution provides a 2-fold exact sequence starting with \( \partial B_2 \) and ending in \( Z \). Left multiplication of this sequence by the cocycle \( f \) produces the sequence \( \chi(E) \).

Exercises

1. Show that \( a \) and \( \beta \) as defined for (6.2) are indeed module homomorphisms.
2. Complete the proof of Lemma 6.1, in particular showing that the function \( h \) there introduced satisfies \( h(x, b_1 + b_2) = h(x(ab_1), b) + h(x, b_1) \) and hence that \( s: M \to A \) is well defined.
3. Express the function \( h \) in terms of the factor set \( f \).
4. Verify that (6.4) gives a chain transformation as claimed.

7. Cohomology of Cyclic and Free Groups

Since \( H^2(\Pi, A) = \text{Ext}^2_{\mathbb{Z}(\Pi)}(Z, A) \), we may calculate the cohomology of a particular group \( \Pi \) by using a \( \mathbb{Z}(\Pi) \)-module resolution of \( Z \) suitably adapted to the structure of the group \( \Pi \).

Let \( \Pi = C_m(t) \) be the multiplicative cyclic group of order \( m \) with generator \( t \). The group ring \( \Gamma = \mathbb{Z}(C_m(t)) \) is the ring of all polynomials \( u = \sum_{i=0}^{m-1} a_i t^i \) in \( t \) with integral coefficients \( a_i \), taken modulo the relation \( t^m = 1 \). Two particular elements in \( \Gamma \) are

\[ N = 1 + t + \cdots + t^{m-1}, \quad D = t - 1. \]  

(7.1)
Clearly \( ND = 0 \), while, if \( u = \sum a_i t^i \) is any element of \( \Gamma' \),
\[
N u = \sum_{i=0}^{m-1} \left( \sum_{i=0}^{m-1} a_i \right) t^i, \quad D u = \sum_{i=1}^{m} (a_{i-1} - a_i) t^i, \quad a_m = a_0.
\]
If \( Du = 0 \), then \( a_i = \ldots = a_m = 0 \), and \( u = Na_0 \). If \( Nu = 0 \), then \( \sum a_i = 0 \) and \( u = -D [a_0 + (a_1 + a_0) t + \cdots + (a_{m-1} + \cdots + a_0) t^{m-1}] \). This means that the sequence of \( \Pi \)-modules
\[
\Gamma \xrightarrow{D} \Gamma \xrightarrow{N} \Gamma \xrightarrow{D}, \quad D \ast u = Du, \quad N \ast u = Nu,
\]
is exact. The augmentation \( \varepsilon : \Gamma \rightarrow Z \) is \( \varepsilon u = \sum a_i \), hence \( \varepsilon u = 0 \) implies that \( u = Dv \) for some \( v \). All told, the long exact sequence
\[
0 \leftarrow Z \xleftarrow{\varepsilon} \Gamma \xrightarrow{D} \Gamma \xrightarrow{N} \Gamma \xrightarrow{D} \Gamma \leftarrow \cdots, \quad (7.2)
\]
thus provides a free resolution of \( Z \). This resolution is customarily denoted by \( W \), especially in algebraic topology, where it is of considerable use in calculating cohomology operations (Steenrod [1953]).

For any \( \Pi \)-module \( A \) the isomorphism \( \text{Hom}_\Pi(\Gamma, A) \cong A \) sends any \( f : \Gamma \rightarrow A \) into \( f(1) \). Hence the cochain complex \( \text{Hom}_\Pi(W, A) \), with the usual signs \( \delta f = (-1)^{n+1} f \partial \) for the coboundary, becomes
\[
A \xrightarrow{D^*} A \xrightarrow{N} A \xrightarrow{D^*} A \xrightarrow{N} A \xrightarrow{D^*} A \xrightarrow{N} A \xrightarrow{D^*} A \rightarrow \cdots
\]
starting with dimension zero, where \( N^* a = Na, D^* a = Da = (t-1)a \). The kernel of \( D^* \) is the subgroup \( [a | ta = a] \) of all elements of \( A \) invariant under the action of \( t \in C_m \), while the kernel of \( N^* \) is the subgroup of all \( a \) in \( A \) with \( a + ta + \cdots + t^{m-1} a = 0 \). The cohomology groups of \( C_m \) are those of this cochain complex, hence

**Theorem 7.1.** For a finite cyclic group \( C_m \) of order \( m \) and generator \( t \) and a \( C_m \)-module \( A \), the cohomology groups are
\[
H^0(C_m, A) = [a | ta = a],
H^{2n}(C_m, A) = [a | ta = a] / N^* A, \quad n > 0,
H^{2n+1}(C_m, A) = [a | Na = 0] / D^* A, \quad n \geq 0.
\]
Note that these groups for \( n > 0 \) repeat with period two.

Next we consider free groups.

**Lemma 7.2.** If \( F \) is a free group on free generators \( e_i \), for \( i \in I \), then
\( Z_\ast(F, A) \) is isomorphic to the cartesian product \( \prod A_i \) of copies \( A_i \cong A \) of \( A \), under the correspondence which sends each crossed homomorphism \( f \) to the family \( \{ fe_i \} \) of its values on the generators.

**Proof.** By definition, the free group \( F \) consists of \( 1 \) and the words \( x = e_{i_1}^{e_{i_1}} \ldots e_{i_k}^{e_{i_k}} \) in the generators, with exponents \( e_i = \pm 1 \). If we assume
that the word is reduced (i.e., \(e_i + e_{i+1} \neq 0\), when \(i = i + 1\)), then this representation is unique. The product of two words is obtained by juxtaposition and subsequent cancellation. Now a crossed homomorphism \(f\) satisfies the equation \(f(xy) = xf(y) + f(x)\) and hence also \(f(1) = 0\) and \(f(x^{-1}) = -x^{-1}f(x)\). Therefore \(f\) is completely determined by its values \(f(e_i) = a_i \in A\) on the free generators \(e_i\). Conversely, given constants \(a_i\) in \(A\), we may set \(f(e_i) = a_i\) and define \(f(x)\) by induction on the length of the reduced word \(x\) by the formulas

\[
f(e_i x) = e_i f(x) + a_i, \quad f(e_i^{-1} x) = e_i^{-1} f(x) - e_i^{-1} a_i.
\]

We verify that these formulas hold even when the word \(e_i x\) or \(e_i^{-1} x\) is not reduced, and hence that the \(f\) so defined is a crossed homomorphism. This completes the proof.

Consider now the exact sequence (2.4) of \(Z(F)\)-modules

\[
0 \to I(F) \xrightarrow{p} Z(F) \xrightarrow{e} Z \to 0
\]

with \(p\) the crossed homomorphism from \(F\) to \(I(F)\) given by \(px = x - 1\). By Prop. 2.3 the crossed homomorphisms \(f\) on \(F\) to \(A\) correspond one-one to the module homomorphisms \(h: I(F) + A\), indeed each \(h\) determines an \(f = hp\). In particular \(fe_i = hp e_i = h(e_i - 1)\). Thus the lemma above states that the module homomorphisms \(h\) are determined in one-one fashion by their values on \(e_i - 1 \in I(F)\). This means that \(I(F)\) is a free \(F\)-module on the generators \(e_i - 1\). Hence \((7.3)\) is a free resolution of the trivial \(F\)-module \(Z\), and may thus be used to calculate the cohomology of \(F\). Since this resolution is zero in dimensions beyond 1, we conclude

**Theorem 7.3.** For a free group \(F\), \(H^n(F, A) = 0\), for \(n > 1\).

**Exercises**

1. Describe \(H^1(F, A)\) for \(F\) free.
2. Without using crossed homomorphisms, prove \(I(F)\) a free module.
3. Find a resolution for \(Z\) as a trivial module over the free abelian group \(\Pi\) on two generators, and calculate the cohomology of \(\Pi\).
4. Determine the Yoneda products for the cohomology groups \(H^k(C_m, Z)\), showing that

\[
S^{2n}: 0 \to Z \xrightarrow{N_1} \Gamma \xrightarrow{D_1} \Gamma \to \cdots \to \Gamma \xrightarrow{e} Z \to 0
\]

is an exact sequence with \(2n\) intermediate terms \(\Gamma\) and maps alternately multiplication by \(N\) and by \(D\), that, for \(n > 0\), \(H^{2n}(C_m, Z) = \text{Ext}^{2n}(Z, Z) = Z/\text{m}Z\) has an additive generator of order \(\text{m}\) given by the congruence class of the sequence \(S^{2n}\), and that the composite \(S^{2n} S^{2k}\) is \(S^{2(n+k)}\).

5. If \(E_0\) is the exact sequence \(Z \xrightarrow{\text{m}} Z \to C_m\), where the map \(Z + Z\) is multiplication by \(\text{m}\), show that the characteristic class \(\chi(E_0)\) in the sense of §6 is the sequence \(S^2\) of Ex. 4. Deduce that \(\text{Opeext}(C_m, Z)\) is the cyclic group of order \(\text{m}\) generated by the extension \(E_0\).
6. Let \( \zeta: C_m \to C_h \) be a homomorphism of cyclic groups. For \( A \) a trivial \( \Pi \)-module in Thm.7.1, calculate the induced map \( \zeta^* \) in cohomology.

8. Obstructions to Extensions

The 3-dimensional cohomology groups appear in the study of extensions of a non-abelian group \( G \). We write the composition in \( G \) as addition, even though \( G \) is not abelian.

For any element \( h \) of \( G \), denote by \( \mu(h) \) or \( \mu_h \) the *inner automorphism* \( \mu_h g = h + g - h \) given by conjugation with \( h \). The map \( \mu: G \to \text{Aut} G \) is a homomorphism of the additive group \( G \) to the multiplicative group \( \text{Aut} G \) of all automorphisms of \( G \); its image \( \mu G \) is the group \( \text{In} G \) of inner automorphisms of \( G \). This image is a normal subgroup of \( \text{Aut} G \), for if \( \eta \in \text{Aut} G \), then always

\[
\eta(\mu_h g) = \eta(h + g - h) = \eta h + \eta g - \eta h = \mu_{\eta h}(\eta g)
\]

and hence

\[
\eta \mu_h \eta^{-1} = \mu_{\eta h}, \quad \mu_h = \text{conjugation by } h. \tag{8.1}
\]

The factor group \( \text{Aut} G/\text{In} G \) is called the group of *automorphism classes* or of *outer automorphisms* of \( G \); it is the cokernel of \( \mu: G \to \text{Aut} G \). The kernel of \( \mu \) is the *center* \( C \) of \( G \); it consists of all \( c \in G \) such that \( c + g = g + c \) for all \( G \). The sequence

\[
0 \to C \to G \overset{\mu}{\to} \text{Aut} G \to \text{Aut} G/\text{In} G \to 1 \tag{8.2}
\]

is therefore exact.

Any group extension

\[
E: 0 \to G \overset{x}{\to} B \overset{\sigma}{\to} \Pi \to 1
\]

of \( G \) by \( \Pi \) determines, via conjugation in the additive group \( B \), a homomorphism \( \psi: B \to \text{Aut} G \) for which \( \psi(\sigma g) \in \text{In} G \). It hence determines an induced homomorphism \( \psi: \Pi \to \text{Aut} G/\text{In} G \). In other words, for each \( b \in B \) the automorphism \( g \mapsto b + g - b \) of \( G \) is in the automorphism class \( \psi(\sigma b) \). We say that the extension \( E \) has *conjugation class* \( \psi \); thus \( \psi \) records the fashion in which \( G \) appears as a normal subgroup of \( B \). Conversely, call a pair of groups \( \Pi, G \) together with a homomorphism \( \psi: \Pi \to \text{Aut} G/\text{In} G \) an abstract kernel. The general problem of group extensions is that of constructing all extensions \( E \) to a given abstract kernel \( (\Pi, G, \psi) \); that is, of constructing all short exact sequences \( E \) with given end groups \( G \) and \( \Pi \) and given conjugation class \( \psi \). As in §3, congruent extensions have the same conjugation class.

A given extension \( E \) may be described as follows. Identify each \( g \in G \) with \( xg \in B \). To each \( x \in \Pi \) choose \( u(x) \in B \) with \( \sigma u(x) = x \), choosing
in particular \( u(1) = 0 \). Then conjugation by \( u(x) \) yields an automorphism \( \varphi(x) \in \mathcal{G}(x) \) of \( G \) with

\[
 u(x) + g = [\varphi(x)g] + u(x), \quad x \in \Pi, \quad g \in G. \quad (8.3)
\]

The sum \( u(x) + u(y) \) equals \( u(xy) \) up to a summand in \( G \), which we may denote as \( f(x,y) \in G \),

\[
 u(x) + u(y) = f(x, y) + u(xy), \quad x, y \in \Pi. \quad (8.4)
\]

The associativity law for \( u(x) + u(y) + u(z) \) implies that

\[
 [\varphi(x) f(y,z)] + f(x,y,z) = f(x,y) + f(xy,z). \quad (8.5)
\]

If the group \( G \) containing the values of \( f \) were abelian, this identity would state that \( \delta f = 0 \). Also, conjugation by the left and by the right side of \( (8.4) \) must yield the same automorphism of \( G \); hence the identity

\[
 \varphi(x) \varphi(y) = \mu[f(x,y)] \varphi(xy), \quad (8.6)
\]

which states that \( \mu f \) measures the extent to which \( \varphi \) deviates from a homomorphism \( \varphi : \Pi \rightarrow \text{Aut} G \).

Conversely, these conditions may be used to construct an extension as follows:

**Lemma 8.1.** Given \( \Pi \), \( G \), and functions \( \varphi \) on \( \Pi \) to \( \text{Aut} G \), \( f \) on \( \Pi \times \Pi \) to \( G \) which satisfy the identities \( (8.5) \) and \( (8.6) \) and the (normalization) conditions \( \varphi(1) = 1 \), \( f(x, 1) = 0 = f(1, y) \), the set \( B_0[G, \varphi, f, \Pi] \) of all Pairs \( (g, x) \) under the sum defined by

\[
 (g, x) + (g_1, y) = (g + \varphi(x) g_1 + f(x,y), xy) \quad (8.7)
\]

is a group. With the homomorphisms \( g \rightarrow (g, 1) \) and \( (g, x) \rightarrow x \), \( G \rightarrow B_0 \rightarrow \Pi \)

is an extension of \( G \) by \( \Pi \) with conjugation class given by the automorphism class of \( \varphi \).

**Proof.** A routine calculation shows that \( (8.5) \) and \( (8.6) \) yield the associative law. Because of the normalization condition, \( (0, 1) \) is the zero, while \( (-f(x^{-1}, x) - \varphi(x^{-1}) g, x^{-1}) \) is the negative of the element \( (g, x) \).

We call the group \( B_0 = [G, \varphi, f, \Pi] \) so constructed a crossed Product group and the resulting extension a crossed Product extension. Our analysis just before the previous lemma showed that any extension was isomorphic to such a crossed product, in the following explicit sense.

**Lemma 8.2.** If \( \varphi(x) \in \mathcal{G}(x) \) has \( \varphi(1) = 1 \), then any extension \( E \) of the abstract kernel \( (\Pi, G, \psi) \) is congruent to a crossed Product extension \( [G, \varphi, f, \Pi] \) with the given function \( \varphi \).
Proof. In the given extension $E$ the representatives $u(x)$ can be chosen so that $g + u(x) + g - u(x)$ is any automorphism in the automorphism class $\psi(x)$. Make this choice so that the automorphism is $\varphi(x)$. Each element of $B$ then has a unique representation as $g + u(x)$, and the addition rules (8.3) and (8.4) yield a sum which corresponds under $g + u(x) \to (g, x)$ to that in the crossed product (8.7). This correspondence is a congruence. This proves the lemma.

Suppose now that just the abstract kernel $(17, G, \psi)$ is given. In each automorphism class $\psi(x)$ choose an automorphism $\varphi(x)$, taking care to pick $\varphi(I) = I$. Since $\psi$ is a homomorphism into $\text{Aut} G/\text{In} G$, $\varphi(x) \varphi(y) \varphi(xy)^{-1}$ is an inner automorphism. To each $x, y \in \Pi$ choose an element $f(x, y)$ in $G$ yielding this inner automorphism. In particular picking $f(x, I) = 0 = f(I, y)$; then $\varphi(x) \varphi(y) = \mu(f(x, y)) \varphi(xy)$. This is (8.6); we would like (8.5) to hold, but this need not be so. The associative law for $\varphi(x) \varphi(y) \varphi(z)$ shows only that (8.5) holds after $\mu$ is applied to both sides. The kernel of $\mu$ is the center $C$ of $G$; hence there is for all $x, y, z$ an element $k(x, y, z) \in C$ such that

$$[\varphi(x)f(y, z)] + f(x, yz) = k(x, y, z) + f(x, y) + f(xy, z). \quad (8.5')$$

Clearly $k(I, y, z) = k(x, I, z) = k(x, y, l) = 0$, so that this function $k$ may be regarded as a normalized 3-cochain of $\Pi$ with coefficients in $C$.

The abelian group $C = \text{center}(G)$ may be regarded as a $\Pi$-module, for each automorphism $\varphi(x)$ of $G$ carries $C$ into $C$ and yields for $c \in C$ an automorphism $c \to \varphi(x)c$ independent of the choice of $\varphi(x)$ in its class $\psi(x)$. We may thus write $xc$ for $\varphi(x)c$.

We call the cochain $k$ of (8.5') an obstruction of the abstract kernel $(\Pi, G, \psi)$. There are various obstructions to a given kernel, depending on the choice of $\varphi(x) \in \psi(x)$ and of $f$ satisfying (8.6), but when there is an extension $E$ we have shown in (8.5) that there is an obstruction $k = 0$; hence

**Lemma 8.3.** An abstract kernel $(\Pi, G, \psi)$ has an extension $f$ and only $f$ one of its obstructions is the cochain identically $0$.

Next we prove

**Lemma 8.4.** Any obstruction $k$ of a kernel $(17G, \psi)$ is a non-homogeneous 3-dimensional cocycle of $B(Z(\Pi))$.

We must prove $\delta k = 0$. This is plausible, for if only G were abelian and $\varphi$ a homomorphism, the definition (8.5') of $k$ would read $k = \delta f$, hence would give $\delta k = \delta \delta f = 0$. The proof consists in showing that $\delta \delta$ is still 0 in the non-abelian case. In detail, for $x, y, z, t \in \Pi$ we calculate the expression

$$L = \varphi(x)[\varphi(y)j(z, t) + f(y, z t)] + f(x, yzt)$$
in two ways. In the first way, apply \((8.5')\) to the inside terms beginning \(\varphi(y)j(z,t)\); upon application of the homomorphism \(\varphi(x)\) to the result there are terms \(\varphi(x)j(y,z)\) and \(\varphi(x)j(yz,t)\) to each of which \((8.5')\) may again be applied. When the terms \(k\) in the center are put in front, the result reads

\[
L = [xk(y,z,t)] + k(x, yz, t) + k(x, y, z) + U,
\]

where \(U\) is an abbreviation for the expression

\[
U = f(x, y) + f(x y, z) + f(x yz, t)
\]

In the second way of calculation, the automorphisms \(\varphi(x)\varphi(y)\) on the first terms in the brackets in \(L\) may be rewritten by \((8.6)\) to give

\[
L = f(x, y) + \varphi(x) f(z, t) - f(x, y) + \varphi(x) f(y, z t) + f(x, y z t).
\]

Using \((8.5')\) on each term involving \(\varphi\), the fact that all values of \(k\) lie in the center gives

\[
L = k(xy, z, t) + k(x, y, z t) + U
\]

with \(U\) as before. But the terms added to \(U\) in \((8.8)\) and \((8.9)\) are respectively the positive and the negative terms in \(6k(x, y, z, t)\); hence comparison of \((8.8)\) and \((8.9)\) gives \(6k = 0\), q.e.d.

We now investigate the effect of different choices of \(\varphi\) and \(f\) in the construction of an obstruction to a given kernel.

**Lemma 8.5.** For given \(\varphi(x)\varphi(x)\), a change in the choice of \(f\) in \((8.6)\) replaces \(k\) by a cohomologous cocycle. By suitably changing the choice of \(f\), \(k\) may be replaced by any cohomologous cocycle.

**Proof.** Since the kernel of \(\mu\) is the center \(C\) of \(G\), any other choice of the function \(f\) in \((8.6)\) must have the form

\[
f'(x, y) = h(x, y) + f(x, y), \quad h(x, 1) = 0 = h(1, y)
\]

where the function \(h\) has values in \(C\), hence may be viewed as a 2-dimensional normalized cocycle of \(\Pi\) with values in \(C\). Now the definition \((8.5')\) states essentially that the obstruction \(k\) is the coboundary \(k = \delta f\). The obstruction \(k'\) of \(f'\) is thus \(k' = \delta(h + f)\). The values of \(h\) lie in the center, so we may write \(\delta(h + f) = (\delta h) + (\delta f)\); the new obstruction thus has the asserted form; since in \((8.10)\) \(h\) may be chosen arbitrarily in \(C\), we can indeed replace the obstruction \(k\) by any cohomologous cocycle.

**Lemma 8.6.** A change in the choice of the automorphisms \(\varphi(x)\) may be followed by a suitable new selection of \(f\) such as to leave the obstruction cocycle \(k\) unchanged.

**Proof.** Let \(\varphi(x)\varphi(x)\) be replaced by automorphisms \(\varphi'(x)\varphi(x)\) with \(\varphi'(1) = 1\). Since \(\varphi(x)\) and \(\varphi'(x)\) lie in the same automorphism
class there must be elements \( g(x) \in G \) with \( g(1) = 0 \) such that \( \varphi'(x) = [\mu g(x)] \varphi(x) \). Using (8.1) and (8.6), calculate that
\[
\varphi'(x) \varphi'(y) = \mu [g(x) + \varphi(x) g(y) + f(x,y) - g(xy)] \varphi'(xy).
\]
As the new function \( f'(x,y) \) we may then select the expression in brackets. We write this definition as
\[
f'(x,y) + g(xy) = g(x) + \varphi(x) g(y) + f(x,y).
\]  
This definition has the form \( f' = (\delta g) + f \), so that we should have \( 6f' = (\delta \delta g) + \delta f = 6f \), modulo troubles with commutativity. If one, in fact, successively transforms the expression \( \varphi'(x) f'(y,z) + f'(x,yz) + g(xyz) \) by (8.11) and (8.6) one obtains \( k(x,y,z) + f'(x,y) + f'(xy,z) + g(xyz) \), which shows that the obstruction \( k \) is the same as before.

These results may be summarized as follows.

**Theorem 8.7.** In any abstract kernel \((\Pi,G,\psi)\), interpret the center \( C \) of \( G \) as a \( \Pi \)-module with operators \( xc = \varphi(x) c \) for any choice of automorphisms \( \varphi(x) \in \psi(x) \). The assignment to this kernel of the cohomology class of any one of its obstructions yields a well defined element \( \text{Obs}(\Pi,G,\psi) \in H^1(17,C) \). The kernel \((17,G,\psi)\) has an extension if and only if \( \text{Obs}(\Pi,G,\psi) = 0 \).

Indeed, when the cohomology class of \( k \) is zero, any obstruction \( k \) has the form \( k = \delta h \). By Lemma 8.5, there is a new choice \( f' \) for \( f \) which makes the obstruction identically zero; with this factor set \( f' \) the extension may be constructed as the crossed product \([G, \varphi, f', \Pi]\).

To complete the study of the extension problem we have the following result on the manifold of extensions.

**Theorem 8.8.** If the abstract kernel \((\Pi,G,\psi)\) has an extension, then the set of congruence classes of extensions is in 1-1 correspondence with the set \( H^1(\Pi,C) \), where \( C \) is the center of \( G \) with module structure as in Thm. 8.7.

We shall actually show more: That the group \( H^1(\Pi,C) \) operates as a group of transformations on the set \( \text{Opext}(\Pi,G,\psi) \) and that this operation is simply transitive, in that from any one extension \( E_0 \) we obtain all congruence classes of extensions, each once, by operation with the elements of \( H^1(\Pi,C) \).

**Proof.** Write any extension \( E \in \text{Opext}(\Pi,G,\psi) \) as a crossed product \([G, \varphi, f, \Pi]\). Hold \( \varphi \) fixed. Represent each element of \( H^1(\Pi,C) \) by a factor set (2-cocycle) \( h \). The required operation is \([G, \varphi, f, \Pi] \to [G, \varphi, h + f, \Pi]\). The stated properties of this operation follow. In particular, to show that any extension \( E' \) is so obtained from \( E \), write \( E' \), as in Lemma 8.2, in the form of a crossed product \([G, \varphi, f', \Pi]\) with the same function \( \varphi \).
Two applications of (8.6) give

$$\mu[f(x,y)] = \varphi(x) \varphi(y) \varphi(xy)^{-1} = \mu[f'(x,y)].$$

This states that $f(x,y) - f'(x,y)$ lies in the kernel of $\mu$, that is, in the center of $G$. If $h$ is defined as $h(x,y) = -f(x,y) + f'(x,y)$, then (8.5) for $f$ and $f'$ shows $\delta h = 0$, hence $h$ a cocycle with $f' = h + f$, as desired.

The operations of $H^3$ on Opext may also be defined in invariant terms, without using factor sets. Represent an element of $H^3(I\pi, C)$, according to Thm. 4.1, as an extension $D$ of $C$ by $I\pi$ with the indicated operators. Let $C \times G$ be the cartesian product of the groups $C$ and $G$. Define a "codiagonal" map $\nabla : C \times G \rightarrow G$ by setting $\nabla(c, g) = c + g$; since $C$ is the center of $G$, this is a homomorphism. The result of operating with $D$ on an extension $E$ in $\text{Opext}(I\pi, G, \psi)$ may then be written as $\nabla(D \times E)$. Exactly as in the case of the Baer sum (Ex.4.7) this does yield an extension of $G$ by $17$ with the operators $\psi$; if we calculate the factor set for this extension we find that it is given, just as above, by a map $f \rightarrow h + f$.

9. Realization of Obstructions

We have proved that the obstruction to an extension problem is an element of $H^3(I\pi, C)$. If $C = 0$, the obstruction vanishes, hence the extension problem has a solution. The result is

**Theorem 9.1.** If the (additive, non-abelian) group $G$ has center 0, then any abstract kernel $(I\pi, G, \psi)$ has an extension.

This simple result is worth a direct proof. Since $G$ is centerless, $G \rightarrow \text{Aut} G \rightarrow \text{Aut} G/\text{In} G$ is an extension $E_0$; the induced extension $E_0 \psi$ of Ex.4.1 is the desired extension of $G$ by $17$ with operators $\psi$.

In other cases the extension problem may not have a solution. By §7 there are cases (e.g., with $\pi$ finite cyclic) where $H^3(I\pi, C)$ is not $0$; the obstruction theory above then produces abstract kernels with no extension, provided that we know that every 3-cocycle can be realized as an obstruction. This fact, which is also of interest in showing that the cohomology of groups "fits" the extension problem, may be stated as follows.

**Theorem 9.2.** Given $\pi$ not cyclic of order 2, a $\pi$-module $C$, and any cohomology class $\bar{k}$ of $H^3(I\pi, C)$ there exists a group $G$ with center $C$ and a homomorphism $\psi: I\pi \rightarrow \text{Aut} G/\text{In} G$ inducing the given $\pi$-module structure on $C$ and such that $\text{Obs}(I\pi, G, \psi) = \bar{k}$.

The theorem is true for all 17 (cf. EILENBERG-MACLANE [1947]); a special proof is required when $\pi$ is cyclic of order 2.
Chapter IV. Cohomology of Groups

The proof is obtained by reversing the considerations leading to the definition of the obstruction in such a way as to construct a "free" kernel with a given 3-cocycle \( k \) as obstruction.

Take \( G = C \times F \), where \( C \) is the given \( \Pi \)-module and \( F \) is the free (non-abelian) group with generators all symbols \([x, y] \) for \( x \neq 1 \) and \( y \neq 1 \) in \( \Pi \). Write the composition in \( F \) and \( G \) as addition. Define a function \( f \) on \( \Pi \times \Pi \) to \( G > F \) by \( f(x, 1) = f(1, y) = 0 \), and \( f(x, y) = [x, y] \) for \( x \neq 1 \neq y \). For each \( x \in \Pi \) define an endomorphism \( \beta(x) : G \to G \) by setting \( \beta(x)c = xc \) (under the module structure of \( C \)) and

\[
\beta(x)[y, z] = k(x, y, z) + f(x, y) + f(xy, z) - f(x, yz) \tag{9.1}
\]

for each generator \([y, z] \) of \( F \). Since \( k \) is normalized (i.e., \( k(x, y, 1) = k(1, y, z) = 0 \) always), this equation also holds with \([y, z] \) replaced by \( f(y, z) \); that is, with \( y \) or \( z = 1 \). The equation thus asserts that \( k = \delta f \), in the same "non-abelian" sense as in the definition (8.5') of the obstruction.

By this definition, \( \beta(1) \) is the identity automorphism. We now assert that always

\[
\beta(x) \beta(y) = \mu[f(x, y)] \beta(xy) : G \to G. \tag{9.2}
\]

Both sides have the same effect on an element \( c \) of the \( \Pi \)-module \( C \); hence it suffices to prove that the endomorphism on each side of (9.2) has the same effect on any one of the generators \([z, t] \) of \( F \). First calculate \( \beta(x) \beta(y)[z, t] \) by repeated applications of the definition (9.1), once for \( \beta(y) \) and three times for \( \beta(x) \). The terms in \( k \) all lie in \( C \), which is surely contained in the center of \( G \), so can be collected. These terms in \( k \) include all the terms of \( \delta k(x, y, z, t) \) except for the term \(-k(xy, z, t) \). Since \( \delta k = 0 \), we can replace the terms in \( k \) by the one term \( k(xy, z, t) \).

The result is

\[
\beta(x) \beta(y)[z, t] = f(x, y) + k(xy, z, t) + f(xy, z) + f(xyz, t) - f(xy, zt) - f(x, y) = f(x, y) + \beta(xy)[z, t] - f(x, y) = \mu[f(x, y)] \beta(xy)[z, t].
\]

This proves (9.2).

We claim that each \( \beta(x) \) is an automorphism of \( G \). Indeed, (9.2) proves that \( \beta(x) \beta(x^{-1}) = \mu[f(x, x^{-1})] \beta(1) = \mu[f(x, x^{-1})] \) is an inner automorphism. Hence \( \beta(x^{-1}) \) has kernel 0 and \( \beta(x) \) has image \( G \). Since \( x \) is arbitrary, this gives the result.

Denote by \( \psi(x) \) the automorphism class containing \( \beta(x) \). By (9.2), \( \psi \) is a homomorphism \( \psi : \Pi \to \text{Aut}G/\text{In}G \), hence \( (\Pi, G, \psi) \) is an abstract kernel. Since \( \Pi \) is not cyclic of order 2, we can assume that \( \Pi \) contains more than two elements. The free group \( F \) then has more than one
10. Schur's Theorem

We now apply factor sets to a problem in group theory.

For any set \( S \) the collection \( \text{Aut} \, S \) of all \( 1 \)-\( 1 \) mappings of \( S \) onto itself is a group under composition. A (multiplicative) group \( G \) is said to \textit{act} on the set \( S \) if a \textit{homomorphism} \( \mu : G \to \text{Aut} \, S \) is given. Equivalently, to each \( g \in G \) and to each "point" \( s \in S \) there is given a unique point \( gs = \mu(g)s \in S \) so that always \( (g_1g_2)s = g_1(g_2s) \) and \( Is = s \). The \textit{orbit} of a point \( s_0 \in S \) under the action of \( G \) is the set of all \( gs_0 \) for \( g \in G \); any other point in this subset has the same orbit. The whole set \( S \) is the union of disjoint orbits. The set of all \( h \in G \) such that \( hs_0 = s_0 \) is a subgroup \( H \) of \( G \) called the group \textit{fixing} \( s_0 \). The correspondence \( gH \to gs_0 \) defines an action of \( G \) on \( S \); one says that \( G \) \textit{acts} on \( S \) by \textit{conjugation}. Similarly \( G \) (or any subgroup of \( G \)) acts by conjugation on the set of elements of \( G \).

Theorem 10.1. (Cauchy's Theorem.) \textit{If the order} \( n \) \textit{of a finite group} \( G \) \textit{is divisible by a prime number} \( p \), then \( G \) \textit{contains an element of order} \( p \).

The proof is by induction on \( n \). Let \( G \) act on itself by conjugation. The orbit of an element \( c \) consists of \( c \) alone when always \( gcg^{-1} = c \); that is, precisely when \( c \) is in the center \( C \) of \( G \). Let \( m \) denote the order of \( C \) and \( k_i > 1 \), the number of points in the \( i \)-th orbit outside \( C \), \( i = 1, \ldots, t \).

Since \( G \) is the union of disjoint orbits, \( n = m + k_1 + \cdots + k_t \).
Chapter IV. Cohomology of Groups

If $m$ is divisible by $p$, write the abelian group $C$ as a direct sum of cyclic groups; one of these summands then has order divisible by $p$, hence contains an element of order $p$. Otherwise $m$ is prime to $p$, so also at least one of the integers $k_i$. But $k_i$ is the number of points in some orbit, hence equals the index $[G:H]$ of some subgroup. Since $p$ does not divide $k_i$ it must divide the order of the subgroup $H$. By the induction assumption, $H$ contains an element of order $p$.

A $p$-group is a group in which every element has order some power of the prime $p$. By Cauchy's Theorem, a finite $s$-group may also be described as a group of order some power of $p$.

Theorem 10.2. Any finite $p$-group $\neq 1$ has a center $C \neq 1$.

Proof. Let the $s$-group act on itself by conjugation. Each orbit consists of $p^{m_i}$ points for some exponent $m_i \geq 0$; together the orbits exhaust the $p^n$ elements of the group. Since the orbit of 1 consists of itself only, $p^n = 1 + \sum p^{m_i}$. Therefore at least $p - 1$ other orbits consist of one element $c$ only. These elements lie in the center $C$, so $C \neq 1$.

A maximal $p$-subgroup of $G$ is a $s$-group $P \leq G$ which is contained in no larger $s$-subgroup of $G$. By Cauchy's Theorem, a finite group of order $n$ has at least one maximal $s$-subgroup $\neq 1$ for each prime $p$ which divides $n$.

A subgroup $U$ of $G$ is said to normalize a subgroup $V$ if $uVu^{-1} = V$ for all $u \in U$; that is, if $V$ is a one-point orbit under the action of $U$ on subgroups of $G$.

Lemma 10.3. If $P$ and $Q$ are maximal $p$-subgroups of $G$ such that $P$ normalizes $Q$, then $P = Q$.

Proof. Let $PQ$ denote the subgroup of $G$ generated by $P$ and $Q$. Since $P$ normalizes $Q$, $Q$ is a normal subgroup of $PQ$. Since $P$ is a $s$-group, so is its quotient $P/P \cap Q \cong PQ/Q$. Thus $PQ$ is an extension of the $p$-group $Q$ by the $s$-group $P/P \cap Q$, hence is itself a $p$-group. Since $P$ is contained in no larger $s$-subgroup, $P = PQ$, so $P > Q$. Since $Q$ is contained in no larger $s$-subgroup, $P = Q$.

Any conjugate of a maximal $s$-subgroup is itself a maximal $p$-subgroup. Moreover

Theorem 10.4. Any two maximal $p$-subgroups of a finite group are conjugate.

Proof. Let $S$ be the set of all conjugates in $G$ of some maximal $s$-subgroup $P$, and let $P$ act on $S$ by conjugation. By the lemma, a point $P' \in S$ is a one-point orbit exactly when $P' = P$. The number of points in any other orbit is the index of a subgroup of $P$, hence is divisible by $p$. Therefore the number of points in $S$ is congruent to 1, modulo $p$.
Any maximal p-subgroup $Q$ of $G$ acts by conjugation on $S$; under this action each orbit again has either one point or a number of points divisible by $p$. The congruence above thus shows that there is a one-point orbit $P'$. In other words, $Q$ normalizes some conjugate $P'$ of $P$, so, by the lemma, $Q=P'$ and is itself a conjugate of $P$.

**Theorem 10.5. (Schur-Zassenhaus)** If the integers $m$ and $n$ are relatively prime, any extension of a group of order $m$ by one of order $n$ splits.

**Proof.** Let $G \rightarrow B \rightarrow \Pi$ be such an extension, with $G$ of order $m$ and $\Pi$ of order $n$. This extension splits if $a$ has a right inverse; that is, if $B$ contains a subgroup (also of order $n$) mapped by $a$ isomorphically on $\Pi$.

Suppose first that $G$ is abelian. The given extension is then an element $e \in H^a(G)$. By Prop. 5.3, $me=0$; trivially, $me=0$. Since $m$ and $n$ are relatively prime, $e=0$; the extension splits.

For $G$ not abelian the proof will be by induction on the order $m$ of $G$. It suffices to prove that the extension $B$ contains a subgroup of order $n$, for such a subgroup is mapped by $B \rightarrow \Pi$ isomorphically upon $\Pi$.

Take a prime $p$ dividing $m$ and a maximal $p$-subgroup $P$ of $B$. The normalizer $N$ of $P$ in $B$ is defined to be the set of all $b$ with $bPb^{-1}=P$. The index $[B:N]$ is then the number of conjugates of $P$ in $B$. All these conjugates must lie in $G$ and are maximal $p$-subgroups there. By Thm. 10.4 they are all conjugate in $G$. Now $G \cap N$ is the normalizer of $P$ in $G$, so the index $[G:G \cap N]$ is the number of these conjugates and is therefore equal to $[B:N]$. This index equality (see the diagram) proves also that $n=[B:G]=[N:G \cap N]$. Now $P$ and $G \cap N$ are normal subgroups of $N$, and $N/P$ is an extension of the group $(G \cap N)/P$, of order some proper divisor of $m$, by the group $N/G \cap N$ of order $n$. By the induction assumption, $N/P$ thus contains a subgroup of order $n$, which may be written in the form $H/P$ for some $H$ with $P \subset H \subset N$ and $[H:P]=n$.

The center $C$ of $P$ is, by Thm. 10.2, not $1$. Conjugation by elements of $H \subset N$ maps $P$ onto itself and hence $C$ onto itself, so that $C$ and $P$ are normal in $H$. Thus $H/C$ is an extension of the $p$-group $P/C$ by the group $H/P$ of order $n$ prime to $p$. Since $C+1$, the order of $P/C$ is less than $m$, so the induction assumption provides a subgroup $K/C \subset H/C$ of order $n$. This group $K$ is an extension of the abelian $p$-subgroup $C$.
by a group $K/C$ of order $n$, hence splits by the abelian case already treated. This splitting provides a subgroup $L \subset K$ of order $n$, and the subgroup $L$ splits the original extension $B$.

**Exercises**

1. (The first Sylow Theorem.) If the order of a finite group $G$ is divisible by $p^k$, $p$ a prime, then $G$ contains a subgroup of order $p^k$.

2. If $p^m$ is the highest power of $p$ dividing the order of $G$, every maximal $p$-subgroup of $G$ has order $p^m$.

3. If the order of the finite group $\Pi$ is prime to the order of the finite abelian group $A$, prove that $H^n(\Pi, A) = 0$ for $n > 0$ and any $\Pi$-module structure on $A$.

4. Let $\alpha: B \to \Pi$ be an extension of an abelian group $G$ of order $m$ by $\Pi$ of order $n$, with $(n, m) = 1$, as in the Schur-Zassenhaus Theorem. If $S$ and $T$ are two subgroups of $B$ isomorphic to $\Pi$ under $\alpha$, show $S$ and $T$ conjugate under conjugation by an element of $G$ (use $H^1(\Pi, G) = 0$).

11. **Spaces with Operators**

The geometrical meaning of the cohomology groups of a group will now be illustrated by an examination of spaces with operators.

For any topological space $X$, let $\text{Aut}(X)$ denote the group of all homeomorphisms of $X$ with itself. A group $\Pi$ operates on the space $X$ if a homomorphism $\mu: \Pi \to \text{Aut}(X)$ is given. Equivalently, to each $a \in \Pi$ and each $x \in X$ a unique point $ax = \mu(a)x \in X$ is given such that $ax$ is continuous in $x$ for each fixed $a$ and such that always $(a_1a_2)x = a_1(a_2x)$ and $1x = x$. An open set $U$ in $X$ is called proper (under the action of $17$) if $aU \cap U = \emptyset$ (the null set) whenever $a \neq 1$. Any open subset of a proper open set is proper. The group $\Pi$ is said to operate properly on $X$ if every point of $X$ is contained in a proper open set; then every open set in $X$ is the union of proper open sets, so that the proper open sets constitute a base for the topology of $X$. When $\Pi$ operates properly, no homeomorphism $\mu(a)$ with $a \neq 1$ can leave a point $x$ fixed.

Assume henceforth that $17$ operates properly on $X$. The quotient space $X/\Pi$ is the space whose points are the orbits of points of $X$ under the action of $\Pi$. Let the projection $\pi: X \to X/\Pi$ be the function which assigns to each $x$ its orbit $\pi x$. Thus $\pi x_1 = \pi x_2$ if and only if there is an $a \in \Pi$ with $a x_1 = x_2$. The topology of $X/\Pi$ is defined by taking as a base for its open sets the sets $\pi U$, where $U$ is a proper open set of $X$ under $\Pi$; these sets $V = \pi U$ are called proper in $X/\Pi$.

**Proposition 11.1.** The map $\pi: X \to X/\Pi$ is continuous. The space $X/\Pi$ is covered by proper open sets $V$; each $\pi^{-1} V$ is the union of disjoint open sets $U_a$ such that each restriction $\pi|_{U_a}$ is a homeomorphism $U_a \cong V$.

This proposition asserts that $X$ is a "covering space" for $X/\Pi$ under the map $\pi$. The $U_a$ are the sheets of $X$ over $V$.  

Proof. If $U$ is proper and $V = \phi U$, then $\phi^{-1}V$ is the union of the sets $aU$ for $a \in \Pi$. These sets are disjoint by the assumption that $U$ is proper. Each $aU$ is mapped by $\phi$ onto $V$, and the open sets $aU$ are all proper, and map onto proper open sets in $X/\Pi$, so that $\phi|aU$ is indeed a homeomorphism.

For example, let $X$ be the real line $E^1$ and $\Pi$ the infinite (multiplicative) cyclic group with generator $c$, acting on $E^1$ by the rule $c^kx = x + k$ for any integer $k$. Then open intervals of length less than 1 on the line are proper, so $\Pi$ acts properly. The quotient $E^1/\Pi$ is homeomorphic to the unit circle $S^1$. If we identify $E^1/\Pi$ with $S^1$, $\phi: E^1 \to S^1$ becomes the map $\phi x = e^{2\pi i x}$ which wraps the line $E^1$ around the circle $S^1$. Similarly, the free abelian group on two generators $b$ and $c$ acts properly on the Euclidean plane $E^2$ by $b^k c^l(x, y) = (x + k, y + l)$; here $b$ is horizontal translation and $c$ vertical translation, each by one unit. The quotient space $E^2/\Pi$ is the 2-dimensional torus $S^1 \times S^1$. Again, the cyclic group of order 2 operates properly on the 2-sphere $S^2$ by mapping each point into its diametrically opposite point, and $S^2/\Pi$ is the real projective plane. In each of these cases $X$ is the "universal covering space" of $X/\Pi$, and $\Pi$ is the "fundamental group" of $X/\Pi$ [Hu 1959].

Now consider the singular homology of $X$, as defined in Chap. II.

Lemma 11.2. If the group $\Pi$ operates properly on $X$, then the singular complex $S(X)$ is a complex of free $\Pi$-modules.

Proof. The group $S_*(X)$ of $n$-chains is the free abelian group generated by the singular $n$-simplices $T: A^n \to X$. For each $a \in \Pi$, the composite $aT$ is also a singular $n$-simplex; the operators $T \to aT$ make $S_*(X)$ a $\Pi$-module. If $d_iT$ denotes the $i$-th face of $T$, then $a(d_iT) = d_i(aT)$, hence $\partial = \sum (-1)^i d_i: S_* \to S_{*-1}$ is a 17-module homomorphism. Thus $S(X)$ is a complex of 17-modules. To show $S_*(X)$ free, pick any subset $X_0 < X$ (a "fundamental domain") containing exactly one point from each orbit of $X$ under $\Pi$. Then those singular $n$-simplices $T$ with initial vertex in $X_0$ constitute a set of free generators for $S_*(X)$ as a module.

Lemma 11.3. If the group $\Pi$ operates properly on the space $X$, any $T: A^n \to X/\Pi$ can be written as $T = \phi T'$ for some $T': A^n \to X$. With suitable choice of one $T'$ for each $T$, these $T'$ are free generators of $S_*(X)$ as a 17-module.

We say that $T$ can be lifted to $T'$; the possibility of such a lifting is actually a consequence of a more general fact on the lifting of maps in a covering space.

Proof. If $T$ is "small" in the sense that $T(A^n)$ is contained in a proper open subset $V$ of $X/\Pi$, and if $U$ is any sheet over $V$ then $T$ can be lifted to $T' = (\phi|U)^{-1}T$ in $U$. The general case can then be handled.
by subdividing $A^n$ into small pieces, lifting $T$ in succession on these pieces. It is technically easier to do this by replacing $A^n$ by the n-cube $I^n = I \times \cdots \times I$ ($n$ factors), where $I$ is the unit interval. Since $A^n$ is homeomorphic to $I^n$, it will suffice to lift any $T: I^n \to X/\Pi$. The cube $I^n$ is covered by the inverse images $T^{-1}(V)$ of proper open sets of $X/\Pi$. Since $I^n$ is a compact metric space, the Lebesgue Lemma provides a real $\varepsilon > 0$ such that any subset of diameter less than $\varepsilon$ lies in one of the $T^{-1}(V)$. Now subdivide $I^n$ into congruent n-cubes, with sides parallel to the axes, each of diameter less than $\varepsilon$. Then $T$ can be lifted in succession on the cubes of this subdivision, beginning with the cubes on the bottom layer. When we come to lift $T$ on any one cube, the continuous lifting $T'$ will already be defined on a certain connected set of faces of this cube and will lie in one sheet $U$ over some proper $V$; the rest of the cube is then lifted by $(\phi | U)^{-1}$. This completes the proof.

**Proposition 11.4.** If $\Pi$ operates properly on $X$, while the abelian group $A$ has the trivial $\Pi$-module structure, then $p: X \to X/\Pi$ induces an isomorphism $p^*: \text{Hom}_A(S(X/\Pi), A) \cong \text{Hom}_A(S(X), A)$ of chain complexes and hence an isomorphism

$$p^*: H^n(X/\Pi, A) \cong H^n(\text{Hom}_A(S(X), A)). \quad (11.1)$$

**Proof.** A cochain $f: S_n(X/\Pi) \to A$ is uniquely determined by its values on the n-simplices $T$ of $X/\Pi$, while a cochain $f'$ of $S(X)$, as a module homomorphism $f': S_n(X) \to A$, is uniquely determined by its values on the free module generators $T'$ of $S_n(X)$. Since these generators are in 1-1 correspondence $T' \to \phi T'$ by Lemma 11.3 and since $(\phi^* f)(T') = f(\phi T')$, the result follows.

More generally, when $A$ is any $\Pi$-module, the cohomology of $\text{Hom}_A(S(X), A)$ is known as the equivariant cohomology of $X$ with coefficients $A$; in this general circumstance the theorem would still hold if $H^n(X/\Pi, A)$ were interpreted as the cohomology of $X/\Pi$ with "local coefficients" $A$, defined as in Eilenberg [1947] and Eilenberg-Mac Lane [1949]. The main result now is

**Theorem 11.5.** If a group $\Pi$ operates properly on an acyclic space $X$ and if $A$ is an abelian group with trivial $\Pi$-module structure, there is an isomorphism

$$H^n(X/\Pi, A) \cong H^n(\Pi, A), \quad n = 0, 1, \ldots, \quad (11.2)$$

natural in $A$, between the cohomology groups of the quotient space $X/\Pi$ and those of the group $\Pi$.

**Proof.** The hypothesis that $X$ is acyclic means that $H_n(S(X)) = 0$ for $n > 0$ and $H_0(S(X)) \cong \mathbb{Z}$. This latter isomorphism yields an epi-
morphism $S_0(X) \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}$ with kernel $\partial S_1(X)$. Thus the exact sequence of $17$-modules
\[
\cdots \rightarrow S_1(X) \rightarrow S_0(X) \rightarrow \mathbb{Z} \rightarrow 0
\]
is a free resolution of the trivial module $\mathbb{Z}$. Hence the equivariant cohomology of $S(X)$ is $\text{Ext}_\mathbb{Z}^n(\mathbb{Z}, A)$, which is $H^n(\Pi, A)$ by Cor. 5.2.

The system $(X, \Pi)$ consisting of a topological space with a proper group of operators $I7$ may be regarded as an object in a category where the morphisms $\varphi: (X, \Pi) \rightarrow (X', \Pi')$ are pairs $\varphi = (\xi, y)$, with $5: X + X'$ a continuous map and $y: \Pi \rightarrow \Pi'$ a group homomorphism such that always $\xi(ax) = (ya) \xi x$ for $a \in \Pi$. The isomorphism (11.2) is natural for these maps.

This theorem provides a geometric interpretation of all the cohomology groups of a group $I7$. Assuming some concepts from homotopy theory, let $Y$ be a pathwise connected topological space with fundamental group $\Pi = \pi_1(Y)$. Then, if $Y$ has suitable local connectivity, one can construct its universal covering space; this is a space upon which $\Pi$ properly operates in such wise that $Y$ is homeomorphic to $X/\Pi$. Suppose, in particular, that $Y$ is aspherical (all higher homotopy groups vanish). One can then prove that the universal covering space $X$ is acyclic. Thm. 11.5 thus applies to show that the cohomology of the aspherical space $Y$ is, in fact, isomorphic to the cohomology of the fundamental group of $Y$.

**Notes.** The fact that the cohomology of an aspherical space $Y$ depends only on the fundamental group was proved by HUREWICZ [1935], while the expression of this dependence via the cohomology of groups was discovered by EILENBERG-MAC LANE [1943, 1945b], and later but independently by ECKMANN [1945-1946]. There is a corresponding result expressing the homology of $Y$ by the homology of $\Pi$, found by HOPF [1945] and independently by FREUDENTHAL [1946]. All these investigations were stimulated by the prior study of HOPF [1942] on the influence of the fundamental group on the second homology group of any space. This line of investigation provided the justification for the study of cohomology of groups in all dimensions and was the starting point of homological algebra. The 1-dimensional cohomology groups (crossed homomorphisms) had been long known; the 2-dimensional cohomology groups, in the guise of factor sets, had appeared long since in the study of group extensions by SCHREIER [1926], BAER [1934, 1935], HALL [1938], and FITTING [1938]. Earlier, SCHUR had considered projective representations $\varphi$ of a group $\Pi$. Each $\varphi$ is a homomorphism of $\Pi$ to the group of projective collineations of complex projective $n$-space, hence may be represented by a set of $(n+1) \times (n+1)$ non-singular complex matrices $A$, for $x \in \Pi$ with $A_x = f(x, y) A_{xy}$, where $f(x, y)$ is a non-zero complex number. This $f$ is a factor set for $\Pi$ in the multiplicative group $\mathbb{C}^*$ of non-zero complex numbers. Hence SCHUR'S "multiplicator", which is the cohomology group $H^p(\Pi, \mathbb{C}^*)$, with trivial $\Pi$-module structure for $\mathbb{C}^*$. (For recent literature ASANO-SHODA [1935], FRUCHT [1955], KOCHENDÖRFFER [1956],) Projective representations of infinite groups have been studied by MACKEY [1958]. The 3-dimensional cohomology groups of a group were first considered by TEICHMÜLLER [1940] in a study of
simple algebras over a number field. The cohomology of groups has been applied extensively in class-field theory: HOCHSCHILD [1950], TATE [1952], ARTIN-TATE [1960].

Exercises

1. Show that a set $V$ is open in $X/\Pi$ if and only if $p^{-1}V$ is open in $X$. (This asserts that $X/\Pi$ has the standard "quotient space" topology.)

2. Construct an explicit homeomorphism of $A^n$ with $I^n$.

Chapter five

Tensor and Torsion Products

1. Tensor Products

Let $G$ be a right $R$-module and $A$ a left $R$-module — a situation we may indicate as $G, A$. Their tensor product $G \otimes_R A$ is the abelian group generated by the symbols $g \otimes a$ for $g \in G$ and $a \in A$ subject to the relations

$$(g + g') \otimes a = g \otimes a + g' \otimes a, \quad g \otimes (a + a') = g \otimes a + g \otimes a',$$

$$(g \cdot r) \otimes a = g \cdot r \otimes a, \quad a \in A, \quad r \in R, \quad g \in G. \quad (1.2)$$

More formally, this statement describes $G \otimes_R A$ as a factor group $(G \times A)/S$, where $G \times A$ is the free abelian group with generators all symbols $g \otimes a$, while $S$ is the subgroup of $G \times A$ generated by all elements $(g + g') \otimes a - g \otimes a - g' \otimes a, g \otimes (a + a') - g \otimes a - g \otimes a'$, and $g \cdot r \otimes a - g \cdot r \otimes a$. Then $g \otimes a$ denotes the coset $(g \otimes a) + S$ in $(G \times A)/S$.

The intention is that $G \otimes_R A$ be a group in which an element of $G$ can be "multiplied" by an element of $A$ to give a "product" $g \otimes a$; one wishes the product to be distributive, as assured by (1.1), and associative, as in (1.2). More formally, let $G \times A$ be the cartesian product of the sets $G$ and $A$, while $M$ is any abelian group. Call a function $f$ on $G \times A$ to $M$ biadditive if always

$$f(g + g', a) = f(g, a) + f(g', a), \quad f(g, a + a') = f(g, a) + f(g, a').$$

and middle associative if always

$$f(g \cdot r, a) = f(g, r \cdot a). \quad (1.4)$$

If $f$ satisfies both conditions, call $f$ middle linear. Now $g \otimes a$ is middle linear by definition, and $G \otimes_R A$ is the universal range for any middle linear $f$, in the following sense.

**Theorem 1.1.** Given modules $G_R$ and $A_R$ and a middle linear function $f$ on $G \times A$ to an abelian group $M$, there is a unique homomorphism $\omega: G \otimes_R A \rightarrow M$ of abelian groups with $\omega(g \otimes a) = f(g, a)$. 
Proof. The formula \( w(g \otimes a) = f(g, a) \) defines \( w \) on the generators of \( G \otimes_R A \); the assumption that \( f \) is middle linear implies that \( w \) "preserves" the relations (1.1) and (1.2) defining \( G \otimes_R A \); hence \( w \) is a homomorphism; it is manifestly the only such. This proof is a shorter statement of the following argument: Since \( G \otimes A \) is free abelian on the generators \( g \otimes a \), there is a unique homomorphism \( w': G \otimes A \to M \) with \( w'(g \otimes a) = f(g, a) \). The assumptions on \( f \) show that \( w' \) maps the subgroup \( S \) above into zero; hence \( w' \) factors as \( G \otimes A \to (G \otimes A)/S \to M \); the second factor is the desired \( w \).

This theorem has a variety of uses. First, it gives a universal property of \( M_0 = G \otimes_R A \) which characterizes this group and the middle linear function \( \otimes: G \times A \to M_0 \) uniquely (up to an isomorphism of \( M_0 \)). Hence the theorem may be taken as a conceptual definition of the tensor product. Next, the theorem states that every middle linear \( f \) can be obtained from one such function \( \otimes \) followed by a group homomorphism \( \omega \); in this sense, the theorem reduces middle linear functions to homomorphisms. Finally, the theorem states that a homomorphism \( w \) with domain the tensor product \( G \otimes_R A \) is uniquely defined by giving the images of the symbols \( g \otimes a \) under \( \omega \), provided only that these images are additive in \( g \) and \( a \) and middle associative in \( R \). This last version we shall use repeatedly to construct maps \( w \).

For example, if \( y: G_R \to G'_R \) and \( a: R_A \to R_A' \) are \( R \)-module homomorphisms, then in \( G' \otimes_R A' \) we can form the expression \( y g \otimes \alpha a \), which is middle associative and additive in \( g \in G \) and \( \alpha \in A \). Hence there is a homomorphism \( y \otimes \alpha: G \otimes_R A \to G' \otimes_R A' \) with \( (y \otimes \alpha)(g \otimes a) = y g \otimes \alpha a \). Clearly \( I_{G \otimes A} = I \), and, for matching maps, \( \gamma y' \otimes \alpha \alpha' = (y \otimes \alpha)'(y' \otimes \alpha') \); hence \( G \otimes_R A \) is a covariant bifunctor of \( A \) and \( G \). Moreover

\[
\gamma (\alpha + \beta) = \gamma \otimes \alpha + \gamma \otimes \beta, \quad (\gamma_1 + \gamma_2) \otimes \alpha = \gamma_1 \otimes \alpha + \gamma_2 \otimes \alpha.
\]  

These identities can be applied to a direct sum diagram to give an isomorphism

\[
\zeta: G \otimes_R (A \oplus B) \cong (G \otimes_R A) \oplus (G \otimes_R B).
\]

Alternatively, since \( (g \otimes a, g \otimes b) \) is middle linear as a function of \( g \) and \((a,b)\), we can construct \( \zeta \) directly by Thm. 1.1 as that homomorphism \( \zeta: G \otimes_R (A \oplus B) \to (G \otimes_R A) \oplus (G \otimes_R B) \) with \( \zeta [ g \otimes (a, b) ] = (g \otimes a, g \otimes b) \); \( \zeta^{-1} \) may also be constructed from \( g \otimes a \to g \otimes (a, 0) \) and \( g \otimes b \to g \otimes (0, b) \).

The ring \( R \) may be considered as either a left or a right module over itself. For modules \( G_R \) and \( R_A \) one has isomorphisms (of abelian groups)

\[
G \otimes_R R \cong G, \quad R \otimes_R A \cong A,
\]

given by \( g \otimes r \to gr, r \otimes a \to ra \).
If $\varphi: S \to R$ is a homomorphism of rings, each right $R$-module $G$ becomes a right $S$-module $G_\varphi$ when the operators are defined by $gs = g(\varphi s)$. Similarly, each left $R$-module $A$ becomes a left $S$-module $\varphi A$; this is "pull-back along $\varphi"$, as in 111.6. If $\varphi: T+\Sigma$ is a second ring homomorphism, $G_{(\varphi \varphi')} = (G_\varphi)_\varphi'$, while $(\varphi \varphi')_A = \varphi(\varphi A)$, in opposite order.

**Lemma 1.2. (The Pull-back Lemma.)** For a ring homomorphism $\varphi: S+R$ and modules $G_R$, $R A$, $R C$ there are natural homomorphisms

\[ \varphi_+: (G_\varphi) \otimes_S (A_\varphi) \to G \otimes_R A, \quad \varphi^+: \text{Hom}_R(C_\varphi, A) \to \text{Hom}_S(\varphi C_\varphi, \varphi A). \]  

(1.8)

If $\varphi$ is an epimorphism, both $\varphi_+$ and $\varphi^+$ are isomorphisms.

**Proof.** For $g \in G$, $a \in A$, and $s \in S$,

\[ gs \otimes_R a = g \varphi(s) \otimes_R a = g \otimes_R \varphi(s) a = g \otimes_R sa, \]

so $g \otimes_R a$ is $S$-middle associative. Thus $\varphi_+ (g \otimes_S a) = g \otimes_R a$ determines a homomorphism, by Thm. 1.1. If $\varphi(R) = S$, $\varphi_+$ has an inverse $g \otimes_R a \to g \otimes_S a$. Similarly each $R$-module homomorphism $f: C \to A$ is an $S$-module homomorphism, and conversely if $\varphi(S) = R$.

We normally write the modules $G_\varphi$, $\varphi A$ without the subscript $\varphi$ when this is indicated by the context $G \otimes_S A$.

An abelian group $A$ is a module over the ring $Z$ of integers, so our definition of tensor product includes that of the tensor product $G \otimes A$ of two abelian groups (here $\otimes$ is short for $\otimes_Z$). In this case, any bi-additive function $f(g, a)$ is automatically middle associative, for, with $m$ any positive integer,

\[ f(mg, a) = f(g + \cdots + g, a) = f(g, a) + \cdots + f(g, a) \]

\[ = f(g, a + \cdots + a) = f(g, ma). \]

This holds also for negative $m$, since $f(-g, a) = -f(g, a) = f(g, -a)$. Hence the middle associativity condition (1.2) may be omitted in defining $\otimes_Z$.

Tensor products of finite abelian groups can be explicitly computed. For each positive integer $m$, let $Z_m(g_0)$ be the cyclic group with generator $g_0$ of order $m$, while $mA$ denotes that subgroup of $A$ which consists of all multiples $ma$, $a \in A$. We claim that an isomorphism

\[ \eta: A/mA \cong Z_m(g_0) \otimes A \]  

(1.9)

is given by setting $\eta(a + mA) = g_0 \otimes a$. Indeed, since $g_0 \otimes ma = mg_0 \otimes a = 0$, the product $g_0 \otimes a$ depends only on the coset of $a$, modulo $mA$, hence $\eta$ is a homomorphism $A/mA \to Z_m \otimes A$. To construct an inverse for $\eta$, note that any generator of the tensor product has the form $kg, \otimes a$, for some $k \in Z$; since the product $ka$ is distributive in both factors, the
2. Modules over Commutative Rings

The meaning of tensor products may be illustrated by examining other special cases. If $K$ is a commutative ring (as usual, with an identity), then any left $K$-module $A$ can be regarded as a right $K$-module, simply by defining the multiple $ak$, with $k \in K$ on the right, as $ka$. The rule $a(kk') = (ak)k'$ then follows, because $K$ is commutative, by the calculation $a(kk') = (k'k)a = k'(ka)$; the other axioms for a right module follow even more directly. With this observation, it is fruitless to distinguish between left and right modules over $K$; instead we speak simply of modules and write scalar multiples on either side, as may be convenient.

For modules $A$ and $B$ over a commutative $K$, the tensor product $A \otimes_K B$ is not just an abelian group, but is also a $K$-module, with multiples defined (on the generators) as

$$k(a \otimes b) = (ka) \otimes b;$$

(2.1)

This definition leads to a variant of Thm. 4.1. Let $A$, $B$, and $M$ be $K$-modules. Call a function $f$ on $A \times B$ to $M$ $K$-bilinear if $f(a, b)$ is $K$-linear in each argument when the other is fixed (e.g., $f(k_1a_1 + k_2a_2, b) = k_1f(a_1, b) + k_2f(a_2, b)$). Thus $a \otimes b$ is a $K$-bilinear function $f$ on $A \times B$ to $A \otimes_K B$, and Thm. 1.1 implies that any $K$-bilinear function $f$ on $A \times B$ to $M$ can be written as $f(a, b) = \omega(a \otimes b)$, for a unique homomorphism

$$\omega: A \otimes_K B \rightarrow M$$

of $K$-modules.

Since $A \otimes_K B$ is still a $K$-module, one may form iterated tensor products such as $(A \otimes_K B) \otimes_K C$; this iterated product is associative and commutative, in the sense that $\xi[(a \otimes b) \otimes c] = a \otimes (b \otimes c)$ and $\tau(a \otimes b) = \tau(b \otimes a)$.
\[ \xi: (A \otimes B) \otimes C \cong A \otimes (B \otimes C), \quad \tau: A \otimes B \cong B \otimes A \]  
(2.2)
of K-modules, with \( \otimes \) short for \( \otimes_K \). The function \((a \otimes b) \otimes c\) is K-trilinear (i.e., K-linear in each argument separately) and is universal for K-trilinear functions on \( A \times B \times C \) to a K-module. The same holds for K-multilinear functions in any number of arguments.

Similarly, (cf. 1.6) \( \text{Hom}_K(A, B) \) becomes a K-module if to each f: \( A \to B \) the multiple \( kf: A \to B \) is defined as \((kf)(a) = k(f(a))\).

A module over a field \( F \) is simply a vector space \( V \), and \( \text{Hom}_F(V, W) \) is the vector space of all linear transformations \( f: V \to W \). Suppose that \( V \) and \( W \) have finite bases \( \{e_1, \ldots, e_m\} \) and \( \{h_1, \ldots, h_n\} \), respectively. This means that \( V \) is a direct sum \( \sum F e_i \) of copies \( F e_i \) of the field \( F \). Since "Hom" carries finite direct sums to direct sums, \( \text{Hom}_F(V, W) \) is a vector space of dimension \( mn \), as in the usual representation of linear transformations \( f: V \to W \) by \( m \times n \) matrices. Since the tensor product is additive, \( V \otimes_F W \) has a basis of \( mn \) vectors \( e_i \otimes h_j \), hence has dimension \( mn \). In particular, any vector \( u \) of \( V \otimes_F V \) has a unique expression as \( u = \sum x^{ij}(e_i \otimes e_j) \); the \( m^2 \) constants \( x^{ij} \in F \) are known as the "components" of the "tensor" \( u \) relative to the basis \( \{e_i\} \). From a change of bases one calculates the corresponding change in these components \( x^{ij} \). Classical tensor analysis, lacking a proper conceptual definition of the tensor product, described twice covariant tensors (elements \( u \) of \( V \otimes_F V \)) strictly in terms of such components and their transformations under change of basis. A tensor with one covariant and one contravariant index is, by definition, an element of \( V \otimes_F V^* \), where \( V^* = \text{Hom}_F(V, F) \) is the dual space. Now the given basis \( \{e_i\} \) for \( V \) determines a dual basis \( \{e^i\} \) for \( V^* \). Any tensor in \( V \otimes_F V^* \) has a unique representation as a sum \( \sum x^{ij}(e_i \otimes e^j) \), so is determined by components \( x^{ij} \), for \( i, j = 1, \ldots, n \).

**Exercises**

1. If a new basis \( \{e'_i\} \) in the finite dimensional space \( V \) is given by the formulas \( e'_i = \sum_j t_i^j e_j \), calculate the resulting transformation in the components of
   a) a twice covariant tensor in \( V \otimes_F V \);
   b) a tensor in \( V \otimes_F V^* \).

2. Describe the transformation of components for tensors covariant in \( r \) indices and contravariant in \( s \) indices.

**3. Bimodules**

If \( R \) and \( S \) are two rings, an R-S-bimodule \( A \) — in symbols \( _R A_S \) — is an abelian group which is both a left \( R \)-module and a right \( S \)-module, with always \((ra)s = r(as)\). For example, any ring \( R \) is an \( R-R \)-bimodule.
any left $R$-module can be regarded as an $R$-$Z$-bimodule; any $K$-module, with $K$ commutative, is a $K$-$K$-bimodule; etc. If $A$ and $B$ are $R$-$S$-bimodules, we denote by $\text{Hom}_{R,S}(A,B)$ the abelian group of all bimodule homomorphisms $f: A \to B$; that is, of all those group homomorphisms $f$ with $r(fa)s = f(ras)$ always. A bimodule $_{RA_S}$ can be pulled back by ring homomorphisms $\sigma: R' \to R$ and $\sigma: S' \to S$ to give an $R'$-$S'$-bimodule $_{\sigma A_{\sigma R}}$.

The functors $\text{Hom}$ and $\otimes$ carry suitable bimodules into bimodules. To show how this takes place, let $T$, $R$, and $S$ be any three rings. Then we have the implication

$$
T[G_R \otimes RA_S] \Rightarrow T[\text{Hom}_R(T, A)]_S,
$$

where the bimodule structure indicated on the right is defined on generators, according to Thm. 1.1, by $t(g @ a) s = tg \otimes as$. Note that the formula $t(g @ a) s = tg \otimes a$ which makes $G \otimes A$ a left module over $T$ is essentially the same as the formula $\gamma(g \otimes a) = (yg) \otimes a$ which makes $G \otimes_R A$ a covariant functor of $G$. Similarly there is an implication

$$
S[G_R \otimes RA_T] \Rightarrow T[\text{Hom}_R(S, A)]_S,
$$

where the bimodule structure on the right is defined for each $f: C + A$ by $(tf)(c) = f(sc)$. The reader should show that this does produce a $T$-$S$-bimodule, noting that the given bimodule associativities $s(cr) = (sc)r$ and $t(ar) = (ta)r$ are used to insure that $tfs$ is indeed a homomorphism of right $R$-modules when $f$ is one. Observe also how the contravariance of $\text{Hom}_R$ in $C$ changes left operators of $S$ on $C$ into right operators of $S$ on $\text{Hom}_R(C, A)$. In case $S = T$, the group $\text{Hom}_{S,R}(C, A)$ of bimodule homomorphisms can be described as the set of all those $f$ in the $S$-$S$-bimodule $\text{Hom}_R(C, A)$ with $sf = fs$. For left-module homomorphisms, the analogue of (3.2) is the implication

$$
R[CS \otimes RA_T] \Rightarrow S[\text{Hom}_R(C, A)]_T.
$$

An endomorphism of the right $R$-module $A$ is by definition an $R$-module homomorphism $f: A \to A$. Under addition and composition the set of all $R$-endomorphisms of $A$ form a ring $\text{End}_R(A) = \text{Hom}_R(A, A)$ with identity element $1_A$. The equation $(fa)r = f(ar)$ which states that $f$ is a homomorphism of right $R$-modules also states that $A$ is an $End_A$-$R$-bimodule. If $sA_R$ is a bimodule, the left multiplication $l_s$ by $s \in S$, defined by $l_s a = sa$, is an $R$-endomorphism of $A$, and the correspondence $s \to l_s$ is a ring homomorphism $S \to \text{End}_R A$. Conversely, given $A_R$ and a ring homomorphism $S \to \text{End}_RA$, pull-back along this homomorphism yields a bimodule $sA_R$. In our treatment of $\text{Ext}_R(C, A)$ (Chap. 111), we showed how to multiply an element $S_0 \in \text{Ext}^1_R(C, A)$ on the left by a homomorphism $a: A \to A'$ and on the right by a $y: C' \to C$, and we
proved (Lemma III.1.6) the congruence \( (aS_0) \gamma \equiv \alpha (S_0 y) \). For endomorphisms \( a \) and \( y \), this means that \( \text{Ext}^n_R(C, A) \) is an \( \text{End}_R \)-\( \text{End}_R \)-bimodule. If we pull back this bimodule structure along \( T \to \text{End}_R C \) and \( S \to \text{End}_R A \), we get the implication

\[
TC_R \& SA_R \Rightarrow s[\text{Ext}^n_R(C, A)]_T. \tag{3.4}
\]

exactly as in (3.2) for \( n = 0 \).

A function of two variables \( f(a, b) \) can be turned into a function \( \eta f \) of the first variable \( a \) whose values are functions of the second variable, according to the formula \( [(\eta f) a] b = f(a, b) \). This change of simultaneous arguments to successive arguments appears in many connections; for example, in the treatment of the topology of function spaces. In the present context it takes the following form, which we call the \textit{adjoint} associativity of \( \text{Hom} \) and \( \otimes \):

**Theorem 3.1.** If \( R \) and \( S \) are rings with \( A, B, \) and \( C \) modules in the situation \( A_R, B_S, C_S \), there is a natural isomorphism

\[
\eta: \text{Hom}_S(A \otimes_R B, C) \cong \text{Hom}_R(A, \text{Hom}_S(B, C)) \tag{3.5}
\]

of abelian groups defined for each \( f: A \otimes_R B \to C \) by

\[
[(\eta f) a] (b) = f(a \otimes b), \quad a \in A, \ b \in B. \tag{3.6}
\]

The proof is mechanical. First check that (3.6) assigns to each \( a \in A \) and each \( S \)-module homomorphism \( f: A \otimes_R B \to C \) a function \( F = [(\eta f) a] \) which, as a function of \( b \), is an \( S \)-homomorphism \( [(\eta f) a]: B \to C \). Next check that \( \eta f \), as a function of \( a \), is an \( R \)-module homomorphism of \( A \) into \( \text{Hom}_S(B, C) \). Finally check that \( \eta (f_1 + f_2) = \eta f_1 + \eta f_2 \), so that \( \eta \) is a group homomorphism, as asserted.

To show that \( \eta \) is an isomorphism, construct an inverse map \( \zeta \). To this end, take any right \( R \)-module homomorphism \( g: A \to \text{Hom}_S(B, C) \), and consider the function \( (ga)b \) of \( a \in A, \ b \in B \). Any \( r \) in \( R \) operates on \( a \) on the right and on \( b \) on the left, and

\[
[(g(\alpha r) \alpha b)] = [(ga)\alpha b] = (ga)(\alpha b),
\]

this because \( g \) is an \( R \)-module homomorphism and because of the way an operation of \( r \) on a homomorphism \( ga: B \to C \) was defined. This equation is the "middle associative" property for the function \( (ga)b \) of the elements \( a \) and \( b \). Hence, by Thm. 1.1, a homomorphism \( \zeta g: A \otimes_R B \to C \) is defined by setting

\[
(\zeta g)(a \otimes b) = (ga)b.
\]

One checks that \( \zeta : \text{Hom}_R(A, \text{Hom}_S(B, C)) \to \text{Hom}_S(A \otimes_R B, C) \), and that both composites \( \zeta \eta \) and \( \eta \zeta \) are the identity. Both domain and range
of \( \zeta \) are functors of \( A, B, \) and \( C \), **covariant** in \( C \) but contravariant in \( A \) and \( B \). Moreover \( \zeta \) and \( \eta \) are natural homomorphisms between these functors.

Corollary 3.2. If \( U, R, S, \) and \( T \) are rings and \( uA_R, rB_S, \tau C_T \) are **bimodules**, then the map \( \eta \) of (3.5) is a isomorphism of \( T-U \)-bimodules. If \( U=T \), it induces a natural isomorphism

\[
\eta': \text{Hom}_{T,S}(A \otimes_R B, C) \cong \text{Hom}_{T,R}(A, \text{Hom}_S(B,C)).
\]  

(3.7)

Proof. The right \( U \)-module structure on the terms of (3.5) and the description of these terms as functors of \( A \) are given by identical formulas. Hence the fact that \( \eta \) is natural (in \( A \) and \( C \)) implies that \( \eta \) is a module homomorphism in \( U \) and \( T \). In case \( U=T \), this yields (3.7).

As another application we prove

Corollary 3.3. If \( P_R \) is projective as an \( R \)-module, while the **bimodule** \( rP' \) is **projective** as an \( S \)-module, then \( P \otimes_R P' \) is a **projective** \( S \)-module.

Proof. To say that \( P' \) is \( S \)-projective means that to each epimorphism \( B \to C \) of \( S \)-modules the induced map \( \text{Hom}_S(P', B) \to \text{Hom}_S(P', C) \) is an epimorphism (of \( R \)-modules). Since \( P \) is projective as an \( R \)-module,

\[
\text{Hom}_R(P, \text{Hom}_S(P', B)) \to \text{Hom}_R(P, \text{Hom}_S(P', C))
\]

is an epimorphism. Application of **adjoint** associativity to each side gives the statement that \( P \otimes_R P' \) is \( S \)-projective.

A simpler analogue of **adjoint** associativity is the associativity of the tensor product. In the situation \( A_R, rB_S, sC_T \), the correspondence \((a \otimes b) \otimes c \to a \otimes (b \otimes c)\) yields the natural isomorphism

\[
(A \otimes_R B) \otimes_S C \cong A \otimes_R (B \otimes_S C).
\]  

(3.8)

If in addition \( uA_R \) and \( sC_T \), this is an isomorphism of \( U-T \)-bimodules. We normally identify the two sides of (3.8) by this isomorphism.

For modules \( A_R, rB \) we also make the identifications

\[
A \otimes_R R = A, \quad R \otimes_R B = B
\]  

(3.9)

by the natural isomorphisms \( a \otimes r \to ar, r \otimes b \to rb \).

**Exercises**

1. If \( A \) and \( B \) are left \( R \)-modules, show that \( \text{Hom}_Z(A, B) \) is an \( R-R \)-bimodule, and that the subgroup \( \text{Hom}_R(A, B) \) consists of those group homomorphisms \( f: A \to B \) with \( rf = fr \).

2. For \( G_R, rA \) show that \( G \otimes_R A \) is an \( \text{End}_R(G) \)-\( \text{End}_R(A) \)-bimodule.

3. For \( R-S \)-bimodules \( C \) and \( A \) define the group \( \text{Ext}_{R-S}(C, A) \) of bimodule extensions of \( A \) by \( C \).

**Mac Lane, Homology**
4. Establish a "permuted" adjoint associativity

\[ \text{Hom}(A \otimes B, C) \cong \text{Hom}(B, \text{Hom}(A, C)). \]

Deduce that if \( U^P_R \) is a projective \( U \)-module and \( P^R_R \) a projective \( R \)-module, then \( P \otimes R^P \) is a projective \( U \)-module.

5. In the situation \( A_K, B_K, C_K \), with \( K \) commutative, establish the natural isomorphism \( \text{Hom}_K(A, \text{Hom}_K(B, C)) \cong \text{Hom}_K(B, \text{Hom}_K(A, C)) \) of \( K \)-modules.

### 4. Dual Modules

The dual or conjugate of a left \( R \)-module \( A \) is the right \( R \)-module \( A^* = \text{Hom}_R(A, R) \). Thus an element of \( A^* \) is an \( R \)-module map \( f : A \to R \), while \( fr : A \to R \) is the \( R \)-module map defined for each \( a \in A \) by \( (fr) a = (fa) r \). The dual of an \( R \)-module homomorphism \( \alpha : A \to A' \) is \( \alpha^* = \text{Hom}(\alpha, 1) : A' \to A^* \), so the dual is a contravariant functor on left modules to right modules. Similarly, the dual of a right \( R \)-module \( G \) is a left \( R \)-module \( G^* \).

For left modules \( A \) and \( B \) there is a natural isomorphism

\[ (A \oplus B)^* \cong A^* \oplus B^*. \tag{4.1} \]

Indeed, in the direct sum diagram \( A \to A \oplus B \to B \) take the dual of each object and each map; the result is still a direct sum diagram, with the injections \( \iota_A : A \to A \oplus B \) and \( \iota_B \) converted into projections \( \iota^*_A : (A \oplus B)^* \to A^* \) and \( \iota^*_B \).

By the properties of \( \text{Hom} \), a short exact gives \( C^* \to B^* + A^* \) (left) exact. In other words, if \( A \subset B \), then \( (B/A)^* \cong C^* \) is isomorphic to that submodule of \( B^* \) which consists of all those \( f : B \to R \) which vanish on \( A \). Call this submodule the annihilator of \( A \), in symbols \( \text{Annih}_A \); thus

\[ (B/A)^* \cong \text{Annih}_A \subset B^*, \quad B^*/\text{Annih}_A \to A^*. \tag{4.2} \]

For each left \( R \)-module \( A \), there is a natural homomorphism

\[ \varphi_A : A \to A^{**} = \text{Hom}_R(\text{Hom}_R(A, R), R), \tag{4.3} \]

which assigns to each \( a \in A \) the map \( \varphi a : A^* \to R \) with \( (\varphi a) f = f(a) \). In other words, for fixed \( a \), regard the expression \( f(a) \) as a linear function of the element \( f \in A^* \).

**Theorem 4.1.** If \( L \) is a finitely generated and projective left \( R \)-module, then \( L^* \) is a finitely generated projective right \( R \)-module. For such \( L \), \( \varphi : L \to L^{**} \) is a natural isomorphism.

**Proof.** If \( F \) is free on the generators \( e_1, \ldots, e_n \), we may define elements \( e^i \) in \( F^{\mathbb{Z}} \) by

\[
e^i(e_j) = 1, \quad \text{if } i = j, \\
0, \quad \text{if } i \ne j.
\]
Any \( f: F \to R \) is uniquely determined by the elements \( f e_i = r_i \in R \), hence \( f = \sum e^i r_i \), and \( F^* \) is free on the generators \( e_1, \ldots, e_n \). They are said to be the dual basis to \( e_1, \ldots, e_n \). Now \( \varphi_F \) maps the \( e_i \) to the basis elements dual to the \( e^i \), so \( \varphi_F: F \to F^{**} \) is an isomorphism.

If \( L \) is finitely generated and projective, there is such an \( F \) with \( F \cong L \oplus L' \); \( L' \) is also finitely generated and projective. Hence \( F^* \cong L^* \oplus L'^* \), and \( L \oplus L' \cong F \cong F^{**} \cong L^{**} \oplus L'^{**} \); this isomorphism carries \( L \) onto \( L^{**} \) by \( \varphi_L \), whence the conclusion.

For example, if \( R \) is a field, any finitely generated module \( V \) (i.e., any finite dimensional vector space) is free. For such spaces \( V^{**} \cong V \), and, for \( V \cong W \),
\[
(V/W)^* \cong \text{Annih}W; \quad V*/\text{Annih}W \cong W^*. 
\]

For left modules \( A \) and \( C \) there is a natural homomorphism
\[
\zeta: A^* \otimes_R C \to \text{Hom}_R(A, C) \tag{4.4}
\]
defined for each \( f: A \to R \) and each \( c \in C \) by \( [\zeta(f \otimes c)]a = f(a)c \) for all \( a \). One checks that \( \zeta(f \otimes c) \) is a module homomorphism \( A \to C \), and that this homomorphism is biadditive and middle associative in \( f \) and \( c \).

**Proposition 4.2.** If \( L \) is a finitely generated projective left \( R \)-module, then \( \zeta \) is a natural isomorphism \( \zeta \cong \zeta_R: L^* \otimes_R C \cong \text{Hom}_R(L, C) \).

For example, if \( V \) and \( W \) are finite dimensional vector spaces, take \( L = V^* \) and \( C = W \). Then \( L^* \cong V \), so \( \zeta \) gives \( V \otimes W \cong \text{Hom}(V^*, W) \). Thus tensor products of such vector spaces may be defined via \( \text{Hom} \) and the dual. Alternatively, \( V \otimes W \) is the dual of the space of bilinear maps of \( V \times W \) to the base field.

**Proof.** First suppose that \( L = F \) is free on the generators \( e_1, \ldots, e_n \). With the dual basis \( e^1, \ldots, e^n \), each element of \( F^* \otimes C \) has a unique representation as \( \sum e^i \otimes c_i \) for constants \( c_i \in C \). But \( \zeta(\sum e^i \otimes c_i) = f \) is that homomorphism \( f: F \to C \) with \( f(e_j) = c_j, \ j = 1, \ldots, n \). Since \( F \) is free, any \( f: F \to C \) is uniquely determined by its values \( f(e_j) \) for all \( j \). Hence \( \zeta_F \) is an isomorphism. The case when \( L \) is a finitely generated projective is now treated as in the proof of Thm.4.1.

**Proposition 4.3.** For modules \( L \) and \( B \) over a commutative ring \( K \), with \( L \) finitely generated and projective, there is a natural isomorphism \( \psi: L^* \otimes B^* \cong (L \otimes B)^* \).

**Proof.** For any two \( K \)-modules \( A \) and \( B \) a natural homomorphism \( \psi: A^* \otimes B^* \to (A \otimes B)^* \) is defined for \( f \in A^*, g \in B^* \) by setting
\[
[\psi(f \otimes g)](a \otimes b) = f(a)g(b) \in K.
\]
This map \( \psi \) is the composite
\[
A^* \otimes B^* \xrightarrow{\zeta} \text{Hom}(A, B^*) = \text{Hom}(A, \text{Hom}(B, K)) \cong \text{Hom}(A \otimes B, K)
\]

10*
of \( \zeta \) of (4.4) with adjoint associativity. The latter is always an isomorphism, and so is \( \zeta \) when \( A = L \) is finitely generated and projective.

Note. For further discussions of duality see Dieudonné [1958], Morita [1958], Bass [1960], or Jans [1961].

Exercises

1. For each \( RA \), show that \( \theta(a \otimes f) = fa \) is a bimodule homomorphism \( \theta: A \otimes_Z A^* \rightarrow R \).

2. For modules \( RA, RG, \) a bimodule homomorphism \( \psi: A \otimes_Z G \rightarrow R \) is called a pairing. Show that \( \psi \) determines \( \psi_G: G + A^* \) such that \( \psi = \theta(1 \otimes \psi_G) \), for \( \theta \) as in Ex 1.

3. For each \( R \)-module \( A \), prove that the composite

\[
\begin{array}{c}
A^* \xrightarrow{\psi_A} A** \xrightarrow{(\psi_A)*} A^*
\end{array}
\]

is the identity.

5. Right Exactness of Tensor Products

The tensor product preserves short right exact sequences:

**Theorem 5.1.** If \( G \) is a right \( R \)-module, while \( D \xrightarrow{\beta} B \xrightarrow{\alpha} C \) is an exact sequence of left \( R \)-modules, then

\[
G \otimes_R D \xrightarrow{1 \otimes \beta} G \otimes_R B \xrightarrow{1 \otimes \alpha} G \otimes_R C \rightarrow 0
\]

(5.1)
is an exact sequence (of abelian groups).

**Proof.** With the cokernel \( L \) of \( 1 \otimes \beta \) manufacture the exact sequence

\[
G \otimes_R D \xrightarrow{1 \otimes \beta} G \otimes_R B \xrightarrow{1 \otimes \alpha} G \otimes_R C \rightarrow 0.
\]

Compare this with (5.1). The composite \( (1 \otimes \alpha)(1 \otimes \beta) = 1 \otimes \sigma \beta \) is zero, so \( 1 \otimes \sigma \) factors as \( \sigma' \eta \) for some \( a': L \rightarrow G \otimes_R C \). Since \( \sigma(B) = C \), there is to each \( c \) in \( C \) a \( b \) with \( ab = c \). By exactness at \( B \), each \( \eta(g \otimes b) \) depends only on \( g \in G \) and \( c \in C \), but not on the choice of \( b \). Moreover, \( \eta(g \otimes b) \) is biadditive and middle associative. Hence Thm. 1.1 gives \( \omega: G \otimes_R C \rightarrow L \) with \( \omega(g \otimes c) = \eta(g \otimes b) \), and \( \sigma' \omega = 1, \omega \sigma' = 1 \). Thus \( \omega: G \otimes_R C \rightarrow L \) makes (5.1) isomorphic to the manufactured sequence and hence exact.

**Corollary 5.2.** The tensor product of two epimorphisms is an epimorphism.

**Proof.** By the theorem, if \( \tau \) and \( a \) are epimorphisms, so are \( \tau \otimes 1 \) and \( 1 \otimes \sigma \), hence also their composite \( (\tau \otimes 1)(1 \otimes \sigma) = \tau \otimes \sigma \). For the kernel of \( \tau \otimes \sigma \), see Lemma VIII.3.2 or Ex. 3 below.

In Thm. 5.1 it would not be true to state that a short exact sequence \( (\kappa, a): A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C \) yields a short exact sequence like (5.1) because when \( x: A \rightarrow B \) is a monomorphism \( 1 \otimes x: G \otimes_R A \rightarrow G \otimes_R B \) need not be a
monomorphism. To illustrate this, take \( R=\mathbb{Z} \), \( A=2\mathbb{Z} \) (the group of even integers), \( B=\mathbb{Z} \), \( \varphi \) the injection, and \( G=\mathbb{Z}_2(g) \) a cyclic group of order 2 with generator \( g \). Then, as calculated in (1.9), \( \mathbb{Z}_2(g)\otimes(2\mathbb{Z}) \) is the cyclic group of order 2 with generator \( g \otimes 2 \), while

\[
(1 \otimes \varphi)(g \otimes 2) = g \otimes 2 = 2g \otimes 1 = 0 \otimes 1 = 0,
\]
so \( g \otimes 2 \) is in the kernel of \( 1 \otimes \varphi \).

This example can be reformulated thus. For a submodule \( A \subset B \) one cannot assume that \( G \otimes A \subset G \otimes B \), because an element \( g \otimes a \) of \( G \otimes A \) may be non-zero while the "same" element \( g \otimes a \) becomes zero in \( G \otimes B \). For these and related reasons we have insisted from the start that the inclusion \( A \subset B \) be represented by a map \( x: A \rightarrow B \).

In this example, the integer 2 can be replaced by any integer \( m \). Thus we can describe certain elements in \( \text{Ker}(1 \otimes \varphi) \) for \( R=\mathbb{Z} \) and \( \varphi, \sigma \): \( A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C \) any short exact sequence of abelian groups. These elements \( g \otimes a \) arise whenever there is an element \( b \) with both \( \varphi a = mb \) and \( mg = 0 \) for the same integer \( m \), for then

\[
(1 \otimes \varphi)(g \otimes a) = g \otimes \varphi a = g \otimes mb = mg \otimes b = 0 \otimes b = 0.
\]

Now \( \varphi a \), and hence \( a \), is determined by \( b \), while \( g \otimes a \) depends only on \( \alpha b \in C \). Indeed, \( ab = \sigma b' \) by exactness implies \( b' = b + \alpha a_0 \) for some \( a_0 \), whence \( \varphi(a + ma_0) = mb' \) and \( g \otimes(a + ma_0) = g \otimes a + g \otimes ma_0 = g \otimes a \).

The kernel element \( g \otimes a \) depends on \( g, m \in \mathbb{Z} \), and \( ab = c \); furthermore \( mc = m(ab) = a \otimes mb = \sigma \varphi a = 0 \), by exactness. By way of notation, set

\[
k(g, m, c) = g \otimes a \in \text{Ker}(1 \otimes \varphi), \quad mg = 0 = mc; \tag{5.2}
\]

here \( a \) is any element of \( A \) such that \( \varphi a = mb \), \( ab = c \) for some \( b \); that is, \( a \) is obtained by "switchback" as \( a = \varphi^{-1}m \sigma^{-1}c \). In the next section, we shall show that the elements \( k(g, m, c) \) of (5.2) generate \( \text{Ker}(1 \otimes \varphi) \).

These elements \( k(g, m, c) \) satisfy certain identities. They are additive in \( g \) and in \( c \); for example, additivity in \( c \) means that

\[
k(g, m, c_1 + c_2) = k(g, m, c_1) + k(g, m, c_2) \tag{5.3}
\]

whenever \( mc_1 = 0 = mc_2 \). For any two integers \( m \) and \( n \), one calculates that

\[
k(g, mn, c) = k(g, m, nc) \tag{5.4}
\]

whenever \( mg = 0, mnc = 0 \), and that

\[
k(g, mn, c) = k(gm, n, c) \tag{5.5}
\]

whenever \( gmn = 0, nc = 0 \). Here we have written \( gm \) for \( mg \) because we can consider the abelian group \( G \) as a right module over \( \mathbb{Z} \). These relations will now be used to define a new group.
Chapter V. Tensor and Torsion Products

Exercises

1. If $A \otimes B$, show that each element in $\ker (A \otimes \mathbb{Z}_m \to B \otimes \mathbb{Z}_m)$ has the form $k(c, m, 1)$ for $1$ the generator of $\mathbb{Z}_m$.

2. If $J$ is a two-sided ideal in the ring $R$ show that the map $a \otimes (r + J) \to ar$ for $a \in J$ yields an epimorphism $J \otimes_R (R/J) \to f/R$ of $R$-modules. If $f \neq J$ prove that the injection $J \to R$ induces a map $J \otimes_R (R/J) \to R \otimes_R (R/J)$ which is not a monomorphism.

3. If $(y, \epsilon) : G \to H \to K$ and $(\beta, a) : D \to B \to C$ are exact, then $\tau \otimes \sigma : H \otimes_R B \to K \otimes_R C$ has kernel $\gamma \cdot (G \otimes B) \cup \beta \cdot (H \otimes D)$.

6. Torsion Products of Groups

For abelian groups $A$ and $G$ we define the torsion product $\text{Tor}(G, A)$ as that abelian group which has generators all symbols $(g, m, a)$, with $m \in \mathbb{Z}$, $gm = 0$ in $G$, and $ma = 0$ in $A$, subject to the relations ("additivity" and "slide" rules for factors $m, n$)

\begin{align*}
\langle g_1 + g_2, m, a \rangle &= \langle g_1, m, a \rangle + \langle g_2, m, a \rangle, \quad g_1 m = 0 = ma, \quad (6.1) \\
\langle g, m, a_1 + a_2 \rangle &= \langle g, m, a_1 \rangle + \langle g, m, a_2 \rangle, \quad g m = 0 = ma, \quad (6.2) \\
\langle g, m n, a \rangle &= \langle g m, n, a \rangle, \quad g m n = 0 = na, \quad (6.3) \\
\langle g, m n, a \rangle &= \langle g, m, n a \rangle, \quad g m = 0 = m n a. \quad (6.4)
\end{align*}

Each relation is imposed whenever both sides are defined; in each case this amounts to the requirement that the symbols on the right hand side be defined. The additivity relations (6.1) and (6.2) imply that $\langle 0, m, a \rangle = 0 = \langle g, m, 0 \rangle$. Hence $\text{Tor}(G, A) = 0$ when $A$ has no elements (except 0) of finite order. Also $\text{Tor}(A, G) \cong \text{Tor}(G, A)$.

If $a : A \to A'$, the definition $a, \langle g, m, a \rangle = \langle g, m, a \rangle$ makes $\text{Tor}(G, A)$ a covariant functor of $A$. It also covariant in $G$. From (6.2) one deduces $(\alpha + \beta)_* = a$, $+ \beta$ and hence the isomorphism $\text{Tor}(G, A_1 \oplus A) \cong \text{Tor}(G, A_1) \oplus \text{Tor}(G, A_1)$. Thus to calculate $\text{Tor}(G, A)$ for finitely generated groups it will suffice to make a calculation for $G$ finite cyclic.

For $G = \mathbb{Z}/(g_0)$ a cyclic group of order $q$ and generator $g_0$, there is an isomorphism

\[ \xi : \mathcal{A} \cong \text{Tor}(\mathbb{Z}_q, g_0, A), \quad (6.5) \]

where $\mathcal{A}$ denotes the subgroup of those elements $a \in A$ for which $q a = 0$. Indeed, each $a \in \mathcal{A}$ yields an element $\xi a = \langle g_0, q, a \rangle$ in $\text{Tor}(\mathbb{Z}_q, A)$; by (6.2), $\xi$ is a homomorphism. To find a homomorphism $\eta$ in the reverse direction, write each element of $\mathbb{Z}_q$ as $g_0 k$ for some $k \in \mathbb{Z}$; each generator of the torsion product then has the form $\langle g_0 k, m, a \rangle$ where $ma = 0$ and $mk \equiv 0 \pmod{q}$. With $n = mk/q$, (6.3) and (6.4) give

\[ \langle g_0 k, m, a \rangle = \langle g_0, km, a \rangle = \langle g_0, q, na \rangle. \]
This suggests that \( \eta \) be defined by
\[
\eta(g, k, m, a) = (mk/q)a.
\]
The reader should verify that this definition respects the defining relations (6.1) to (6.4), in the sense that \( \eta \) carries elements defined to be equal in Tor into equal elements of \( \hat{q}A \). This shows that \( \eta \) yields a homomorphism
\[
\eta: \text{Tor}(Z_q; A) \to \hat{q}A.
\]
Furthermore \( \eta \zeta a = a \), while the calculation displayed just above shows that \( \zeta \eta = 1 \). Therefore \( \eta \) and \( \zeta \) are reciprocal isomorphisms, as asserted.

For a fixed cyclic group, the isomorphism (6.5) is natural in \( A \), but depends on the choice of the generator for the cyclic group \( Z_q \).

The torsion product, born of the inexactitude of \( \otimes \), does measure that inexactitude as follows.

**Theorem 6.1.** If \( E = (\nu, \sigma): A \to B \to C \) is an exact sequence of abelian groups, then each abelian group \( G \) gives an exact sequence
\[
0 \to \text{Tor}(G, A) \to \text{Tor}(G, B) \to \text{Tor}(G, C) \to 0.
\]
The maps are those induced by \( \nu \) and a except for \( E \), which is defined on each generator of \( \text{Tor}(G, C) \) by the formula
\[
E_*(g, m, c) = k(g, m, c)
\]
for \( k \) as in (5.2). This map \( E_* \) is natural when its arguments are considered as bifunctors of \( E \) and \( G \).

**Proof.** \( E_* \) is a homomorphism because the identities already noted in (5.3), (5.4), and (5.5) for \( k \) match exactly the defining identities for Tor. Naturality is readily proved. Since each \( k(g, m, c) \) lies in \( \text{Ker}(1 \otimes \nu) \), one has \( (1 \otimes \nu)E_* = 0 \), and one also verifies that \( E_* \sigma_* = 0 \). As usual, the crux of the exactness proof lies in the demonstration that each kernel is contained in the corresponding image.

It suffices to prove this, we claim, in the case when \( G \) has a finite number of generators. As a sample consider exactness at \( G \otimes A \). An element \( u = \sum g_i \otimes a_i \) of \( G \otimes A \) involves only a finite number of elements of \( G \). If its image \( (1 \otimes \nu)u = \sum g_i \otimes a_i \) is zero in \( G \otimes B \), it is zero because of a finite number of defining relations for \( G \otimes B \); these relations again involve but a finite list \( h_1, \ldots, h_m \) of elements of \( G \). Now take \( G_0 \) to be the subgroup of \( G \) generated by all the elements \( g_1, \ldots, g_n, h_1, \ldots, h_m \) which have occurred, and let \( \iota: G_0 \to G \) be the injection. Then \( u_0 = \sum g_i \otimes a_i \) is an element of \( G_0 \otimes A \) with \( (\iota \otimes 1)u_0 = u \). By naturality the diagram
\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{Tor}(G_0, C) \\
E_* \\
\downarrow \iota_0 \\
\text{Tor}(G, C)
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
\to G_0 \otimes A \\
\to \hat{q}A \\
G \otimes A
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
\xrightarrow{\iota_0 = 1 \otimes \nu} \\
\xrightarrow{1 \otimes \iota} \\
\xrightarrow{1 \otimes 1}
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
G_0 \otimes B \\
\to \hat{q}A \\
G \otimes B
\end{array}
\]
commutes, and we are allowed to assume the top row exact. Since $G_0$ contains all the elements $h_j \in G$ used to show $x_* u = 0$, these same elements will show $x_* u_0 = 0$ in $G_0 \otimes B$. By exactness of the top row, there is $a_t_0 \in \text{Tor}(G_0, C)$ with $E_* t_0 = u_0$. But $E_* t_0 = (\iota \otimes 1) E_* t_0 = (\iota \otimes 1) u_0 = u$; this proves the bottom row exact at $G \otimes A$.

This argument depends not on the particular form of the definitions of Tor and $\otimes$, but only on the fact that these groups were described by generators and relations.

Return to the proof of exactness. Now $G$ is finitely generated, hence representable as a direct sum of cyclic groups. Since both Tor and $\otimes$ carry direct sums into direct sums, the sequence (6.6) is the direct sum of the corresponding sequences for cyclic groups $G$. If $G = \mathbb{Z}$ is cyclic infinite, the torsion products are all zero and the sequence is isomorphic to the given sequence $E$. If $G = \mathbb{Z}_q$ is finite cyclic, the various terms have been calculated in (1.9) and (6.5); the calculations amount to a diagram in which the central portion is

$$\ldots \rightarrow \text{Tor}(Z_q, B) \rightarrow \text{Tor}(Z_q, C) \xrightarrow{E_*} Z_q \otimes A \rightarrow \ldots$$

$$\ldots \rightarrow qB \rightarrow qC \xrightarrow{E_{\#}} A/qaA \rightarrow \ldots.$$

In the second row, define $E_{\#}$ by the switchback rule $E_{\#} c = x^{-1} q \sigma^{-1} c + qa$; with this definition this diagram is readily seen to be commutative. Since $\eta$ of (1.9) and $\zeta$ of (6.5) are isomorphisms, the exactness of the top row is now reduced to the exactness of the bottom row, which reads in full

$$0 \rightarrow qaA \rightarrow qB \rightarrow qC \xrightarrow{E_{\#}} A/qaA \rightarrow B/qaB \rightarrow C/qaC \rightarrow 0.$$

Exactness here may be verified from the definitions of the terms and the exactness of $E$. For example, if $x(a + qa) = 0$ in $B/qaB$, then $xa = qb$ for some $b \in B$. Thus $a(qb) = 0$, hence $ab = c \in qC$; the very definition of the switchback yields $E_{\#} c = a + qa$.

We leave the reader to prove

**Theorem** 6.2. The following conditions on an abelian group $G$ are equivalent:

(i) $G$ has no elements of finite order, except 0;

(ii) Tor $(G, A) = 0$ for every abelian group $A$;

(iii) If $x: A \rightarrow B$ is a monomorphism, so is $1 \otimes x: G \otimes A \rightarrow G \otimes B$;

(iv) Any short exact sequence remains exact upon tensor multiplication by $G$;

(v) Any exact sequence remains exact when tensored with $G$. 
6. Torsion Products of Groups

Such a group $G$ is said to be **torsion-free** (condition (i)).

A different description of the generators of Tor($G, A$) is useful for
generalization. The triple $(g, m, a)$ determines three homomorphisms

$$
G \xleftarrow{\mu} Z \xleftarrow{\partial} Z, \quad \nu: Z = Z^* \to A
$$

by $\mu 1 = g$, $\partial 1 = m$, $\nu 1 = a$. Regard $L: Z \xleftarrow{0} Z$ as a chain complex, zero except in dimensions $L_0 = Z = L_1$; since $\mu \partial = 0$, $\mu: L \to G$ is a chain complex over $G$. Regard the dual $L^*$ as a chain complex $a^*: L_0^* \to L_1^*$ over $A$ via $\nu: L_1^* + A$. The triple $(g, m, a)$ has become a triple $(p, L, \nu)$, where

$L$ and its dual $L^*$ are chain complexes (of "length" 1),

$\mu: L + G$ and $\nu: L^* \to A$ are chain transformations.

The slide rules (6.3) and (6.4) can be written as one rule

$$
\langle g' n_0, m, a \rangle = \langle g', m', n_1 a \rangle; \quad n_0 m = m' n_1, \quad g' m' = 0 = m a.
$$

(6.8)

If $m$ and $m'$ determine chain complexes $L$ and $L'$, $n_0 m = m' n_1$ makes

$$
L: Z \xleftarrow{m} Z \quad \downarrow \quad \downarrow n_0 \quad \downarrow n_1
L': Z \xleftarrow{m'} Z
$$

commutative, hence $\varrho: L \to L'$ a chain transformation. Now $g'$ and a
determine $\mu': L' = Z \to G$ and $\nu: L_1^* \to A$ by $\mu' 1 = g'$, $\nu 1 = a$ and $\mu' \varrho 1 =

$g' n_0$, $\nu \varrho^* 1 = n_1 a$. In this notation, the slide rule (6.6) becomes

$$(\mu' \varrho, L, \nu) = (\mu', L', \nu \varrho^*), \quad \varrho: L \to L'.
$$

Exercises

1. For both sides defined, prove $\langle g, m_1 + m_2, a \rangle = \langle g, m_1, a \rangle + \langle g, m_2, a \rangle$.

2. Let $Q > Z$ be the additive group of rational numbers, and let $T(A)$ (the "torsion subgroup") be the subgroup of $A$ consisting of all elements of finite order in $A$. Establish a natural isomorphism Tor($Q/Z, A$) $\cong T(A)$.

3. If $Q_p$ is that subgroup of $Q$ consisting of all rational numbers with denominator some power of $p$, describe Tor($Q_p/Z, A$).

4. Investigate Tor($G, A$) when its arguments are infinite direct sums.

5. If $A$ and $B$ are finite abelian groups prove that $A \otimes B \cong$ Tor($A, B$) (The isomorphism is not natural).

6. Show that Tor($G, A$) = 0 if for each element $a$ of finite order $k$ in $A$ and each $g$ of finite order $l$ in $G$ one always has $k$ and $l$ relatively prime.

7. For modules $G_R, R A$, let $T(G, A)$ be defined by generators $\langle g, \nu, a \rangle$ for $g \nu = 0 = \nu a$ and relations (6.1) through (6.4). Show that the sequence (6.6) with Tor replaced by $T$ need not be exact at $G \otimes_R A$. 

Chapter V. Tensor and Torsion Products

7. Torsion Products of Modules

For fixed $n \geq 0$ we consider chain complexes $L$ of length $n$,

$$L : L_0 \leftarrow L_1 \leftarrow \cdots \leftarrow L_{n-1} \leftarrow L_n,$$

with each $L_k$ a finitely generated projective right $R$-module. The dual $L^* = \text{Hom}_R(L, R)$ can also be regarded as a chain complex $L^*$, with $L_k^*$ as the chains of dimension $n-k$,

$$L^* : L^*_0 \leftarrow L^*_1 \leftarrow \cdots \leftarrow L^*_{n-1} \leftarrow L^*_n.$$

Each $L_k^*$ is also a finitely generated projective left module, and $\delta_k : L_k^* \rightarrow L_{k+1}^*$ is defined from $\partial_{k+1} : L_{k+1} \rightarrow L_k$ as $\delta_k = (-1)^{k+1} \partial_k^*$. Here and below, we could equally well require the $L_k$ to be finitely generated and free; the same then holds for the $L_k^*$.

If $G$ is a right $R$-module, regarded as a trivial chain complex, a chain transformation $\mu : L \rightarrow G$ is a module homomorphism $\mu_0 : L_0 \rightarrow G$ with $\mu_0 \partial = 0 : L_1 \rightarrow G$, while a chain transformation $\nu : L^* \rightarrow R C$ is a module homomorphism $\nu : L_n^* \rightarrow C$ with $\nu \delta = 0$. For given modules $G_R$ and $R_C$ we take as the elements of $\text{Tor}_n^R(G, C)$ all the triples

$$t = (\mu, L, \nu), \quad \mu : L \rightarrow G, \quad \nu : L^* \rightarrow C,$$

where $L$ has length $n$ and $\mu, \nu$ are chain transformations, as above. If $L'$ is a second such complex and $\varphi : L \rightarrow L'$ a chain transformation, then so is the dual $\varphi^* : L'^* \rightarrow L^*$. Given $\mu' : L' \rightarrow G$ and $\nu : L^* \rightarrow C$, we propose that

$$(\mu', L, \nu) = (\mu, L', \nu \varphi^*). \quad (7.1)$$

These maps may be exhibited by a pair of commutative diagrams

$\begin{array}{c}
G \leftarrow L_0 \leftarrow \cdots \leftarrow L_n, & L_0^* \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow L_n^* \rightarrow C \\
\| \downarrow \alpha_0 \quad \| \downarrow \alpha_n & \| \downarrow \alpha_0^* \quad \| \downarrow \alpha_n^* \\
G \leftarrow L'_0 \leftarrow \cdots \leftarrow L'_n, & L'_0^* \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow L'_n^* \rightarrow C,
\end{array}$

resembling the definition of the congruence relation on $\text{Ext}^n$ by morphisms of long exact sequences. Formally, the equality relation on $\text{Tor}$, is to be the weakest equivalence relation in which (7.1) holds; this means that two triples in $\text{Tor}$, are equal if the second is obtained from the first by a finite succession of applications of the rule (7.1). This describes Tor, as a set.

This set is a functor. Indeed, for maps $\eta : G \rightarrow G'$, $\gamma : C \rightarrow C'$ the rules

$$\eta_* (\mu, L, \nu) = (\eta \mu, L, \nu), \quad \gamma_* (\mu, L, \nu) = (\mu, L, \gamma \nu) \quad (7.2)$$

preserve the equality (7.1) and make $\text{Tor}$, a covariant bifunctor.
Two triples $t_1$ and $t_2$ in $\text{Tor}_n(G, C)$ have as direct sum the triple

$$(\mu_1, L^1, \nu_1) \oplus (\mu_2, L^2, \nu_2) = (\mu_1 \oplus \mu_2, L^1 \oplus L^2, \nu_1 \oplus \nu_2)$$

in $\text{Tor}_n(G \oplus G, C \oplus C)$. If $t_1 = t'_1$ and $t_2 = t'_2$ according to (7.1), then $t_1 \oplus t_2 = t'_1 \oplus t'_2$. If $\omega_G$ is the automorphism of $G \oplus G$ given by $w(g_1, g_2) = (g_2, g_1)$, then $(\omega_G)_*(t_1 \oplus t_2) = (\omega_C)_*(t_2 \oplus t_1)$, as one sees by applying (7.1) with $\rho : L^1 \oplus L^2 \to L^2 \oplus L^1$ the map interchanging the summands.

Now $\text{Tor}_n(G, C)$ is an abelian group when the addition is defined by

$$t_1 + t_2 = (V_G)_*(V_C)_*(t_1 \oplus t_2) \in \text{Tor}_n(G, C), \quad (7.3)$$

with $V_G : G \oplus G \to G$ and $V_C$ the codiagonal maps (III.2.1'). The proof of the group axioms is direct. The associative law follows from the associativity of the codiagonal maps. The commutative law follows from $(\omega_G)_*(t_1 \oplus t_2) = (\omega_C)_*(t_2 \oplus t_1)$ and $V_G \omega_G = V_C$. As a zero for the addition we may take $(0, 0, 0)$, where the middle zero designates the zero complex of length $n$, while the inverse $- (\mu, L, \nu)$ is $(- \mu, L, \nu)$. The maps $\eta_*$ and $\gamma_*$, defined as in (7.2), respect this addition, so Tor, is a bifunctor to the category of abelian groups. The same formulas (7.2) show that if the modules $G$ and $C$ are bimodules $T_G, R_C$ for other rings $T$ and $S$, then Tor, is a bimodule $T(\text{Tor}_n)_S$, much as in (3.1).

**Proposition 7.1.** The symbols $(\mu, L, \nu)$ in Tor, are additive in $\mu$ and $\nu$; e.g.,

$$(\mu_1 + \mu_2, L, \nu) = (\mu_1, L, \nu) + (\mu_2, L, \nu). \quad (7.4)$$

**Proof.** Recall (III.2.2) that $\mu_1 + \mu_2 = V_G(\mu_1 \oplus \mu_2) A_L$. The dual of the diagonal map $A_L : L \to L \oplus L$ is the codiagonal $V_L^* : L^* \oplus L^* \to L^*$. Hence the equality rule (7.1) and the definition (7.3) yield (7.4) as

$$(\mu_1 + \mu_2, L, \nu) = (V_G(\mu_1 \oplus \mu_2) A_L, L, \nu) = (V_G(\mu_1 \oplus \mu_2), L \oplus L, \nu V_L^*)$$

$$= (V_G(\mu_1 \oplus \mu_2), L \oplus L, V_C(\nu \oplus \nu)) = (\mu_1, L, \nu) + (\mu_2, L, \nu).$$

**Proposition 7.2.** Every element of Tor, $(G, C)$ has the form $(\mu, F, v)$ where $\mu : F \to G$, $v : F^* \to C$, and $F$ is a chain complex of length $n$ of finitely generated free right modules. Hence the functor Tor, defined using complexes of finitely generated free modules $F$, is naturally isomorphic to the functor Tor, defined using complexes of finitely generated projective modules $L$.

**Proof.** The construction above, using only free modules instead of projectives, yields a functor $\text{Torf}_n(G, C)$. Since each free complex $F$ of length $n$ is also projective, each element $(\mu, F, v)$ of Torf, is also an element of Tor,. This map Tor $\to \text{Tor}$ has a two-sided inverse. For take any $(p, L, v) \in \text{Tor}_n$. Each $L$, can be written as a direct summand of some finitely generated free module $F_k = L_k \oplus M_k$. Make $F$ a complex with boundary $\partial \oplus 0: L_k \oplus M_k \to L_{k-1} \oplus M_{k-1}$. The injection $i : L \to F$
and the projection \( \pi: F \to L \) are chain transformations with \( n \ell = 1 \), \( i^* \pi^* = 1 \). By our equality rule,

\[ (\mu, L, v) = (\mu, L, v \ell^* \pi^*) = (\mu \pi, F, v \ell^*) \]

this is an element of \( \text{Tor}_F \), for \( F \) is a free complex of length \( n \). By this process, triples equal in the sense (7.1) are turned into equal triples of \( \text{Tor}_F \); hence the natural isomorphism \( \text{Tor}_n \cong \text{Tor}_F^n \).

For \( n = 0 \), \( \text{Tor} \) may be identified with \( \otimes \):

**Theorem 7.3.** There is a natural isomorphism \( G \otimes_R C \cong \text{Tor}_0^R(G, C) \).

**Proof.** Each \( g \in G \) determines a map \( \mu_g: R \to G \) of right \( R \)-modules by \( \mu_g(r) = gr \); similarly each \( c \in C \) determines a map \( v_c: R = R^* \to C \) of left \( R \)-modules by \( v_c(l) = c \). The triple \( (\mu_g, R, v_c) \in \text{Tor}_0(G, C) \) is additive in \( g \) and \( c \) and middle linear, so \( g \otimes c \to (\mu_g, R, v_c) \) is a homomorphism \( G \otimes C \to \text{Tor}_0(G, C) \) of abelian groups. It is natural. This homomorphism takes each element \( \sum g_i \otimes c_i \) of \( G \otimes C \) into the triple \( (\mu, F, v) \), where \( F \) is free on generators \( e_i, \mu e_i = g_i, \) and \( v e_i = c_i \).

To construct an inverse map \( \Theta \), use Prop. 7.2 to write each element of \( \text{Tor}_0(G, C) \) as \( (\mu, F, v) \) where \( \mu: F \to G, v: F^* \to C \), and \( F \) is a finitely generated free module. Choose any free generators \( e_1, \ldots, e_m \) for \( F \), use the dual basis \( e_1, \ldots, e_m \) of \( F^* \), and set

\[ \Theta(\mu, F, v) = \sum_{i=1}^m \mu(e_i) \otimes v(e_i) \in G \otimes_R C. \]

To express the equality in \( \text{Tor} \), write \( q: F \to F' \), in terms of bases \( e_i \) and \( e_i' \), as \( q e_i = \sum_i e_i' r_{ji} \) with a matrix \( \{ r_{ji} \} \) of elements from \( R \). Then

\[ q^* e_i' = \sum_i r_{ji} e_i \]

and

\[ \Theta(\mu q, F, v) = \sum_j (\sum_i \mu'(e_i') r_{ji} \otimes v e_i) \]

\[ = \sum_j (\mu' e_i' \otimes \sum_i v (r_{ji} e_i)) = \Theta(\mu', F', v q^*). \]

This shows \( \Theta \) well defined for the equality in \( \text{Tor} \); also, if \( F = F' \) and \( e_i' \) is a different basis in \( F \), it shows the definition of \( \Theta \) independent of the choice of the basis in \( F \). Since \( \Theta \) is a two-sided inverse of the previous map, the proof is complete.

**Corollary 7.4.** For \( L \) a finitely generated and projective right \( R \)-module a natural isomorphism \( \xi: \text{Hom}_R(L^*, C) \cong L \otimes_R C \) is defined by \( \xi(v) = (1_L, L, v) \). Hence each element \( t \) of \( \text{Tor}_0(L, C) \) has a unique representation as \( t = (1_L, L, v) \) for some \( v: L^* \to C \).

**Proof.** By additivity (Prop. 7.1), \( \xi \) is a natural homomorphism. To show it an isomorphism, it suffices to prove the composite

\[ L \otimes_R C \cong L^{**} \otimes_R C \xrightarrow{\xi} \text{Hom}_R(L^*, C) \xrightarrow{\xi} \text{Tor}_0(L, C) \]
the identity, where $\xi$ is the isomorphism defined in Prop. 4.2. If $L=R$, the definitions show that $\xi_\zeta$ is the identity; since all functors are additive, this makes $55$ the identity for $L$ finitely generated and free. Any $L$ is a direct summand of a finitely generated free module $F$. Since $\xi$ and $\zeta$ are natural, their composite maps direct summands to direct summands, hence is the identity for any $L$.

The torsion products are symmetric in $G$ and $A$. To show this, construct from the ring $R$ its opposite ring $R^{\text{op}}$: The additive group of $R^{\text{op}}$ is an isomorphic copy of that of $R$, under an isomorphism $r \mapsto r^{\text{op}}$; the product in $R^{\text{op}}$ is defined by $r^{\text{op}}s^{\text{op}}=(sr)^{\text{op}}$. Each right $R$-module $G$ becomes a left $R^{\text{op}}$-module via the definition $r^{\text{op}}g=gr$; symmetrically, each left $R$-module $A$ is a right $R^{\text{op}}$-module.

**Proposition 7.5.** The correspondence $(\mu, L, \nu) \mapsto (\nu, L^*, \mu)$ is an isomorphism

$$\text{Tor}_n^R(G, A) \cong \text{Tor}_n^{R^{\text{op}}}(A, G), \quad n = 0, 1, \ldots .$$

**Proof.** The complex $L^*$ consists of finitely generated projective $R^{\text{op}}$-modules. Hence the correspondence is well defined; it is clearly an isomorphism.

For a short exact sequence $E=(\alpha, \sigma): A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C$ and an element $t=(\mu, L, \nu) \in \text{Tor}_n(G, C)$ with $n > 0$ a product $Et \in \text{Tor}_{n-1}(G, A)$ may be defined. Regard $\nu: L^* \rightarrow C$ and $E$ as complexes over $C$, the first projective and the second exact. By the comparison theorem, there is a chain map $\varphi$:

$$\cdots \rightarrow L_{n-1}^* \xrightarrow{\delta} L_{n-1}^* \rightarrow C$$

$$\downarrow \varphi_{n-1} \quad \downarrow \varphi_n$$

$$E: 0 \rightarrow A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C \rightarrow 0. \quad (7.5)$$

Let $n-1 \delta L$ designate the chain complex of length $n-1$ formed by removing the last module $L$, from $L$, and set

$$E(\mu, L, \nu) = (\mu, n-1 \delta L, \varphi_{n-1}). \quad (7.6)$$

**Theorem 7.6.** For $E \in \text{Ext}^1(C, A)$ and $t \in \text{Tor}_n(G, C)$ the Product $Et$ is a well defined element of $\text{Tor}_{n-1}(G, A)$ which satisfies the associative laws

$$\alpha(Ed)=(\alpha E)t, \quad (Ed)\gamma' = E(\gamma \ast t'), \quad E(\eta \ast t) = \eta \ast (Et), \quad (7.7)$$

for $\alpha: A \rightarrow A'$, $\gamma: C' \rightarrow C$, $\eta: G \rightarrow G'$, and $t \in \text{Tor}_n(G, C')$. It provides a homomorphism

$$\text{Ext}^1(C, A) \otimes \text{Tor}_n(G, C) \rightarrow \text{Tor}_{n-1}(G, A), \quad n = 1, 2, \ldots . \quad (7.8)$$

**Proof.** Any different choice $\varphi'$ for the chain transformation $\varphi$ of (7.5) is homotopic to $\varphi$, so there is an $s: L_n^* + A$ with $\varphi'_n = \varphi_{n-1} + s \delta$. 
The product $E_t$ defined via $\varphi'$ is

$$(\mu, n^{-1}_0L, \varphi'_{n-1}) = (\mu, n^{-1}_0L, \varphi_{n-1}) + (\mu, n^{-1}_0L, s \delta)$$

But let $\mathcal{L}L$ be $L$ with the first module $L_0$ removed; then $\partial: \mathcal{L}L \to n^{-1}_0L$ is a chain transformation, and the second term above is $(\pm \mu \partial, \mathcal{L}L, s) = (0, \mathcal{L}L, s) = 0$. The product $E_t$ is thus independent of the choice of $\varphi$. If $(\mu' \varphi, L, v) = (\mu', L', v \varphi^*)$ is an equality in Tor, for some $\varphi: L \to L'$, then $\varphi \varphi^*$ is a chain transformation, and the products

$$E(\mu' \varphi, L, v) = (\mu' \varphi, n^{-1}_0L, \varphi_{n-1}) = (\mu', n^{-1}_0L, \varphi_{n-1} \varphi^*) = E(\mu', L', v \varphi^*)$$

are equal. Hence $E_t$ is well defined.

Consider the associative laws (7.7). If $a: A \to A'$, attach the morphism $E \to \alpha E$ to the bottom of the diagram (7.5). It gives $(\alpha E)(\mu, L, v) = (\mu, n^{-1}_0L, \varphi_{n-1}) = (\alpha(\mu, n^{-1}_0L, \varphi_{n-1}))$, proving the first rule of (7.7). A similar large diagram for $\gamma: C' \to C$, $E \to \text{Ext}^1(C', A)$, and $t' \in \text{Tor}_n(G, C')$ proves the second of (7.7); the third rule is immediate.

To say that (7.8) is a homomorphism is to say that the product $E_t$ is additive in each factor $E$ and $t$ separately. But $E((t + t') = E_t + E_t'$ follows at once by the definition (7.3) of the addition in Tor. The other rule $(E_1 + E_2) t = E_1 t + E_2 t$ derives from the definition $E_1 + E_2 = \bigvee_A (E_1 \oplus E_2)$, $A$, of the addition of extensions. The proof is complete.

Given $E$ and $G$, a map $E_*: \text{Tor}_n(G, C) \to \text{Tor}_{n-1}(G, A)$ is defined as $E_* t = E_t$; hence the long sequence

$$\cdots \to \text{Tor}_n(G, A) + \text{Tor}_n(G, C) \to \text{Tor}_{n-1}(G, A) \to \text{Tor}_{n-1}(G, B) \to \cdots$$

Its exactness will be proved in the next section by homological means.

An element $S \in \sigma \in \text{Ext}^m(C, A)$ is a long exact sequence which may be written as a composite $S = E_1E_2 \cdots E_m$ of short exact sequences. Define the product $\sigma t$ to be $E_1(E_2 \cdots (E_m t))$. By (7.7), the result is unchanged by a congruence $(E' \varphi) \circ E' = E' \varphi (\varphi E')$ of long exact sequences, hence gives a well-defined "composite" connecting homomorphism

$$\text{Ext}^m(C, A) \otimes \text{Tor}_n(G, C) \to \text{Tor}_{n-m}(G, A), \quad n \geq m.$$ (7.10)

Exact sequences in the first argument of Tor, yield symmetric results. For $E' \in \text{Ext}^1(K, G)$ and $t \in \text{Tor}_n(K, A)$ a product $E't \in \text{Tor}_{n-1}(G, A)$ is defined, with properties as in Thm.7.6, and yielding composite connecting homomorphisms

$$\text{Ext}^n(K, G) \otimes \text{Tor}_n(K, A) \to \text{Tor}_{n-m}(G, A), \quad n \geq m.$$ (7.11)
Multiplications by \(E\) and \(E'\) commute in the following sense:

**Theorem 7.7.** Let \(E = (\kappa, \sigma) : A \to B \to C\), and \(E' = (\lambda, \tau) : G \to H \to K\) be short exact sequences of left and right modules, respectively, while \(t \in \text{Tor}_n(K, C)\). If \(n \geq 2\), \(EE't = -E'E t \in \text{Tor}_{n-2}(G, A)\).

**Proof.** Take \(t = (\mu, L, \nu)\). The products \(Et\) and \(E't\) are calculated from the diagrams

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
L^n & \xrightarrow{\delta} & L^n \\
\downarrow \varphi & & \downarrow \varphi \\
A & \xrightarrow{\sigma} & C
\end{array}
\quad
\begin{array}{ccc}
L_1 & \xrightarrow{\delta} & L_0 \\
\downarrow \psi & & \downarrow \psi_1 \\
G & \xrightarrow{\lambda} & H
\end{array}
\]

as \(Et = (\mu, n^{-1}L, \varphi_{n-1})\) and \(E't = (\psi_1, n^{-1}L, \gamma)\). If \(n \geq 2\), the diagrams do not overlap, so we may calculate \(EE't\) from the first diagram if we note that \(\delta\) for \(L^*\) and \(\delta\) for \((L')^*\) have opposite signs. Changing the sign of \(\varphi\) in the diagram gives \(EE't = (\psi_1, n^{-1}L, -\varphi_{n-1})\). Similarly, but without sign trouble, \(E'E t = (\psi_1, n^{-1}L, \varphi_{n-1})\). Hence \(E'E = -EE'\), as asserted.

**Exercises**

1. By taking \(L\) free with a given basis, show that the elements of \(\text{Tor}_1(G, C)\) can be taken to be symbols \((\{g_1, \ldots, g_m\}, x, \{c_1, \ldots, c_n\})\) with \(g_i \in G\), \(c_j \in C\) and \(x\) an \(m \times n\) matrix of entries from \(R\) such that \((g_1, \ldots, g_m) x = 0 = x(c_1, \ldots, c_n)'\); here the prime denotes the transpose. Describe the addition of such symbols and show that the equality of such is given by sliding matrix factors of \(x\) right and left.

2. Obtain a similar definition of \(\text{Tor}_n(G, C)\).

3. Prove that \(\text{Tor}_n(P, C) = 0\) for \(n > 0\) and \(P\) projective. (Hint: show first that it suffices to prove this when \(P\) is finitely generated.)

The exactness of (7.9) can be proved directly (i.e., without homology) as in the following sequence of exercises.

4. Show that the composite of two successive maps in (7.9) is zero and that the exactness of (7.9) for \(G\) finitely generated implies that for all \(G\).

5. For \(E' = (\lambda, \tau) : G \to H \to K\) exact with \(H\) free show that \(E'_* : \text{Tor}_*(K, C) \to \text{Tor}_{n-1}(G, C)\) is an isomorphism for \(n > 1\) and an isomorphism with image \(\text{Ker} (\otimes 1_C)\) for \(n = 1\). (Hint: construct an inverse map.) Show that \(E'_*\) maps the displayed portion of (7.9) for \(n = 1\) isomorphically onto the Ker-Coker sequence of the \(2 \times 3\) diagram with rows \(G \otimes E\) and \(H \otimes E\).

6. Prove by induction on \(n\) that the displayed portion of (7.9) is exact.

8. Torsion Products by Resolutions

The functor \(\text{Ext}^n(C, A)\) can be calculated (Thm. III.6.4) from a projective resolution \(X\) of \(G\) as \(H^n(\text{Hom}_{R}(X, A))\). There is an analogous calculation for \(\text{Tor}_n(G, A)\). If \(\varepsilon : X \to G\) is a projective resolution by right \(R\)-modules, \(X \otimes_R A\) is a complex of abelian groups, with boundary \(\delta \otimes 1_A : X \otimes A \to X_{n-1} \otimes A\). The comparison theorem for resolutions shows the homology \(H, (X \otimes_R A)\) independent of the choice of \(X,\)
hence a function of $G$ and $A$ which we call, for the moment, 

$$\text{Top}_n^R(G, A) = H_n(X \otimes_R A).$$

It is clearly a functor of $A$, and also a functor of $G$. For, given $\eta: G \to G'$, choose a projective resolution $\varepsilon': X' \to G'$, lift $\eta$ to a chain transformation $f: X \to X'$, and construct the induced map $f_*: H_n(X \otimes A) \to H_n(X' \otimes A)$. By the comparison theorem, any two such $f$'s are homotopic, so $f_*$ depends only on $\eta$ and gives $\eta_*: \text{Top}_n(G, A) \to \text{Top}_n(G', A)$. Thus $\text{Top}_n$ is a covariant bifunctor, which we now identify with $\text{Tor}_n$. (Often $\text{Tor}_n$ is defined to be what we have called $\text{Top}_n$.)

**Theorem 8.1.** For a resolution $\varepsilon: X \to G$ of the module $G_R$ and a module $R A$ there is a homomorphism

$$\omega: \text{Tor}_n^R(G, A) \to H_n(X \otimes_R A), \quad n = 0, 1, \ldots, \quad (8.1)$$

natural in $A$. If $X$ is a projective resolution, $\omega$ is an isomorphism, natural in $G$ and $A$.

**Sketch.** Each $(\mu, L, v)$ of $\text{Tor}_n$ consists of a projective complex $\mu: L \to G$ of length $n$ over $G$ and an $n$-cycle $(1, L_n, v) \in \text{Tor}_0(L_n, A)$ of the complex $L \otimes A$, hence determines a homology class in $H_n(L \otimes A)$. A comparison $L \to X$ gives a homology class in $H_n(X \otimes A)$, thus an element of $\text{Top}_n$.

**Proof.** Take $t = (\mu, L, v)$ in $\text{Tor}_n(G, A)$. The comparison theorem yields a chain transformation $h: L \to X$ of the projective complex $L$ over $G$ (via $\mu$) to the exact complex $X$ over $G$ (via $\varepsilon$). Set

$$\omega(\mu, L, v) = \text{cls}(h_n, L_n, v) \in H_n(X \otimes A).$$

This makes sense, for $h_n: L_n \to X_n$, $v: L_n^* \to A$, so $(h_n, L_n, v) \in \text{Tor}_0(X_n, A) = X_n \otimes A$. It is a cycle there, as

$$\partial(h_n, L_n, v) = (\partial h_n, L_n, v) = (h_{n-1} \partial, L_n, v)$$

$$= (h_{n-1}, L_{n-1}, v \partial *) = (h_{n-1}, L_{n-1}, 0) = 0.$$ 

The homology class of this cycle is unique, for if $h': L \to X$ is another chain transformation lifting $1_G$, there is a homotopy $s$ with $h'_n = h_n + \partial s_n + s_{n-1} \partial$. Then

$$(h', L_n, v) = (h_n, L_n, v) + (\partial s_n, L_n, v) + (s_{n-1} \partial, L_n, v)$$

$$= (h_n, L_n, v) + \partial (s_n, L_n, v) + (s_{n-1}, L_{n-1}, 0),$$

which is the original cycle $(h_n, L_n, v)$ plus a boundary. Furthermore, if $t = (\mu', \rho, L', v)$ and $t' = (\mu', L', v \rho*)$ for some $\rho: L \to L'$ are equal elements according to the definition of $\text{Tor}_n$, while $h': L' \to X$, then $h' \rho: L \to X$ and $\omega t = \omega t'$ in $\text{Tor}_0$. 


8. Torsion Products by Resolutions

To show \( \omega \) a homomorphism, note that two chain transformations

\[ h^1: L^1 \rightarrow X \text{ yield } V(h^1 \oplus h^2): L^1 \oplus L^2 + X, \]

and hence that

\[ \omega[(\mu_1, L^1, v_1) + (\mu_2, L^2, v_2)] = \omega[V(\mu_1 \oplus \mu_2), L^1 \oplus L^2, V(v_1 \oplus v_2)] \]

\[ = \text{cls}[V(h^1_n \oplus h^2_n), L^1_n \oplus L^2_n, V(v_1 \oplus v_2)] = \omega(\mu_1, L^1, v_1) + \omega(\mu_2, L^2, v_2). \]

That \( \omega \) is natural in \( A \) is immediate, while the asserted naturality in \( G \) follows by observing that a chain transformation \( f: X \rightarrow X' \) lifting \( \eta: G \rightarrow G' \) composes with an \( h: L \rightarrow X \) to give \( f \circ h: L \rightarrow X' \).

It suffices to show \( \omega \) an isomorphism when the resolution \( X \) is free. Any homology class in \( X \otimes A \) is the class of a cycle in some \( X' \otimes A \), where \( X' \) is a suitable finitely generated subcomplex of \( X \). By Cor.7.4, this cycle can be written as \((1, X'_n, v)\) for some \( v: X'_n \rightarrow A \). If the complex \( X' \), with \( E: X' \rightarrow G \), is cut off beyond dimension \( n \), it is one of the complexes \( L \) used in the definition of \( \text{Tor}_n \), so \( t=(E, X', v) \) is an element of \( \text{Tor}_n(G, A) \). The injection \( \nu: X' \rightarrow X \) shows \( \omega t = \text{cls}(\nu, X'_n, v) \). Hence \( w \) is an epimorphism.

It remains to prove \( \omega \) a monomorphism. Suppose \( \omega t = 0 \) for some \( t \). This means that the cycle \((h_n, L, v)\) is a boundary in \( X \otimes A \), hence also in some \( X' \otimes A \) for \( X' \subset X \) a finitely generated free subcomplex of \( X \). Choose \( X' \) to contain \( h(L) \). Then \( h: L \rightarrow X \) cut down yields \( h': L \rightarrow X' \) with \((h'_n, L, v)=(1, X'_n, v h'_n)\) the boundary of some \((n+1)\)-chain of \( X' \otimes A \). By Cor.7.4, write this chain as \((1, X'_{n+1}, \zeta)\) for some \( \zeta: X'_{n+1} \rightarrow A \). Now

\[ (1, X'_n, v h'_n) = \partial(1, X'_{n+1}, \zeta) = (1, X'_n, \zeta \partial^*), \]

so the uniqueness assertion of Cor.7.4 yields \( v h'_n = \zeta \partial^* \). Let \( X'_0 \) be the part of \( X' \) from \( X'_0 \) to \( X'_n \) inclusive and \( X'_{n+1} \) the part from \( X'_1 \) to \( X'_{n+1} \), so that \( h': L \rightarrow X'_0 \) and \( \partial': X'_{n+1} \rightarrow X'_0 \) are chain transformations. The original element \( t \) of \( \text{Tor}_n(G, A) \) becomes

\[ (\mu, L, v) = (E' h', L, v) = (E', X'_0, v h'_n) \]

\[ = (E', X'_0, \zeta \partial^*) = (E' \partial', X'_0, \zeta) = (0, - , -) = 0, \]

and \( t = 0 \), as desired. The proof is complete.

It is convenient to have a homomorphism "converse" to \( \omega \).

**Corollary 8.2.** If \( \eta: Y \rightarrow G \) is a projective complex over \( G \), there is a homomorphism

\[ \tau: H_n(Y \otimes R A) \rightarrow \text{Tor}_n(G, A) \]

natural in \( A \). If \( Y \) is a resolution, \( \tau = \omega^{-1} \).

**Proof.** Let \( X \) be a projective resolution of \( G \). The comparison theorem lifts \( 1_G \) to a chain transformation \( f: Y \rightarrow X \) such that \( f_*: H_*(Y \otimes R A) \rightarrow H_*(X \otimes R A) \) is independent of the choice of \( f \). Set \( \tau = \omega^{-1} f_* \).

Mac Lane, Homology
Chapter V. Tensor and Torsion Products

The connecting maps \( t \to E \) may also be calculated from resolutions:

Proposition 8.3. Let \( \varepsilon: X \to G \) be a projective resolution. Each short exact sequence \( E: A \to B \to C \) of left \( R \)-modules yields an exact sequence \( X \otimes E: X \otimes A \to X \otimes B \to X \otimes C \) of complexes with a connecting homomorphism \( \partial_{X \otimes E}: H_n(X \otimes C) \to H_{n-1}(X \otimes A) \). For each \( t \in \text{Tor}, (G,C) \),

\[
\omega(Et) = (-1)^n \partial_{X \otimes E} \omega t;
\]

that is, the isomorphism \( \omega \) of Thm. 8.1 commutes with connecting homomorphisms.

The proof applies the relevant definitions directly and is left to the reader. The exactness of the homology sequence for the sequence \( X \otimes E \) of complexes now implies

Theorem 8.4. A short exact sequence \( E: A \to B \to C \) of left \( R \)-modules and a right \( R \)-module \( G \) yield a long exact sequence

\[
\cdots \to \text{Tor}_n(G,A) \to \text{Tor}_n(G,B) \to \text{Tor}_n(G,C) \xrightarrow{E} \text{Tor}_{n-1}(G,A) \to \cdots, \tag{8.3}
\]

ending with \( \text{Tor}, (G,C) = G \otimes C \to 0 \). The map \( E \) is left multiplication by \( E \).

For a projective module \( A = P \), the exactness of a resolution \( X \) makes \( H_n(X \otimes P) \) and hence \( \text{Tor}, (G,P) \) zero for \( n > 0 \). Much as for \( \text{Ext} \) (111.10) we can now characterize \( \text{Tor} \) by axioms, as follows.

Theorem 8.5. For a fixed right \( R \)-module \( G \) the covariant functors \( \text{Tor}, (G,A) \) of \( A, n=0,1, \ldots \), taken together with the homomorphisms \( E, : \text{Tor}_n(G,C) \to \text{Tor}_{n-1}(G,A) \), natural for short exact sequences \( E \) of modules, are characterized up to natural isomorphisms by the properties

(i) \( \text{Tor}, (G,A) = G \otimes_R A \) for all \( A \),

(ii) \( \text{Tor}_n(G,F) = 0 \) for \( n > 0 \), and all free \( F \),

(iii) The sequence (8.3) is exact for all \( E \).

By symmetry (Prop. 7.5), \( \text{Tor}, (G,A) \) will also yield a long exact sequence when the first argument \( G \) is replaced by a short exact sequence; this gives a corresponding characterization of the \( \text{Tor} \), as functors of \( G \) for fixed \( A \). For \( R = \mathbb{Z} \), it follows that \( \text{Tor} \), for abelian groups agrees with the functor \( \text{Tor} \) defined by generators and relations in § 6.

Theorem 8.6. The following properties of a right \( R \)-module \( G \) are equivalent:

(i) For every left \( R \)-module \( C \), \( \text{Tor}_1(G,C) = 0 \);

(ii) Whenever \( \nu: A \to B \) is a monomorphism, so is \( 1 \otimes \nu: G \otimes A \to G \otimes B \);

(iii) Every exact sequence of left \( R \)-modules remains exact upon tensor multiplication by \( G \).
9. The Tensor Product of Complexes

(iv) If $A$ is a left module and $G \Rightarrow G'' \Rightarrow G$ is exact so is the sequence $G' \otimes A \Rightarrow G'' \otimes A \Rightarrow G \otimes A$;

(v) For every $R$-module $C$ and every $n > 0$, $\text{Tor}_n(G, C) = 0$.

**Proof.** Clearly (iii) $\Rightarrow$ (ii). Conversely, given (ii), Thm. 5.1 implies that any short exact sequence remains exact upon tensor multiplication by $G$; since a long exact sequence is a composite of short ones, this gives (iii).

Given (i), the long exact sequences for Tor, yield (ii) and (iv). Conversely, given (ii), represent $C$ as a quotient $C \cong P/A$ of a projective $P$, so that

$$0 = \text{Tor}_1(G, P) \Rightarrow \text{Tor}_1(G, C) \Rightarrow G \otimes A \Rightarrow G \otimes P$$

is exact with $G \otimes A \Rightarrow G \otimes P$ a monomorphism by (ii), and therefore $\text{Tor}(G, C) = 0$. The proof that (iv) $\Rightarrow$ (i) is analogous.

Finally, (v) $\Rightarrow$ (i); conversely $C \cong P/A$ and exactness of

$$0 = \text{Tor}_n(G, P) + \text{Tor}_n(G, C) \Rightarrow \text{Tor}_n(G, A)$$

show by induction on $n$ that (i) $\Rightarrow$ (v).

A module $G$ with the equivalent properties listed in Thm. 8.6 is said to be flat. Note the analogy: $P$ projective means that the functor $\text{Hom}(P, -)$ preserves exact sequences; $G$ flat means that the functor $G \otimes -$ preserves exact sequences. Every projective module is clearly flat. When $R = Z$, Thm. 6.2 shows that a flat $Z$-module is just a torsion-free abelian group. Hence a flat module need not be projective.

**Exercises**

1. If $\eta: Y + A$ is a projective resolution, establish an isomorphism $w': \text{Tor}_n^R(G, A) \cong H_n(G \otimes_R Y)$. For $E'$: $G \Rightarrow H \Rightarrow K$ exact prove that $\omega' E' = \partial E \otimes_R \omega'$.

2. For a projective resolution $X$ of $G$ let $S_n(G, X)$ be the $n$-fold exact sequence $0 \Rightarrow \partial X_n \Rightarrow X_{n-1} \Rightarrow \cdots \Rightarrow G \Rightarrow 0$. Show that the isomorphism $\omega$ of Thm. 8.1 is $w = \text{cls} \partial^{-1}[S, (G, X)t]$.

9. The Tensor Product of Complexes

If $K_R$ and $L_L$ are chain complexes of right and left $R$-modules, respectively, their tensor product $K \otimes_R L$ is the chain complex of abelian groups with

$$\text{(K \otimes_R L)}_n = \sum K_p \otimes_R L_q,$$

with boundary homomorphisms defined on the generators $k \otimes l$ by

$$\partial(k \otimes l) = \partial k \otimes l + (-1)^{\deg k} k \otimes \partial l.$$
Chapter V. Tensor and Torsion Products

If $K$ and $L$ are positive complexes, so is $K \otimes L$, and the direct sum in (9.1) is finite, with $p$ running from 0 to $n$. The boundary formula (9.2) resembles that for the derivative of a product of two functions; the sign $(-1)^{\deg k}$ appears in accord with the standard sign commutation rule: Whenever two symbols $u$ and $v$ with degrees are interchanged, affix the sign $(-1)^e$ with $e = (\deg u)(\deg v)$. In the second term of (9.2), $\partial$ of degree $-1$ has been moved past $k$, hence the sign. With this sign, one checks that $a = 0$.

If $f: K \to K'$ and $g: L \to L'$ are chain transformations, the definition $(f \otimes g)(k \otimes l) = f(k) \otimes g(l)$ gives a chain transformation $f \otimes g: K \otimes L \to K' \otimes L'$; in this way the tensor product is a covariant bifunctor of complexes. For chain homotopies one has

**Proposition 9.1.** If $f_1 \simeq f_2: K \to K'$ and $g_1 \simeq g_2: L \to L'$, then $f_1 \otimes g_1 \simeq f_2 \otimes g_2$. In detail, chain homotopies $s: f_1 \simeq f_2$ and $t: g_1 \simeq g_2$ yield a homotopy

$$u: f_1 \otimes g_1 \simeq f_2 \otimes g_2: K \otimes L \to K' \otimes L'$$

(9.3)

given as $u = s \otimes g_1 + f_2 \otimes t$; that is, by

$$u(k \otimes l) = s k \otimes g_1 l + (-1)^{\deg k} f_2 k \otimes tl.$$  

This is in accord with the sign convention, since $t$ of degree 1 has been commuted past $k$.

**Proof.** First, $s$ and $t$ give homotopies $s \otimes 1: f_1 \otimes 1 \simeq f_2 \otimes 1: K \otimes L \to K' \otimes L$ and $1 \otimes t: 1 \otimes g_1 \simeq 1 \otimes g_2$. Composing these two homotopies (by Prop. II.2.3) gives the result.

**Corollary 9.2.** If $f: K \to K'$ and $g: L \to L'$ are chain equivalences, so is $f \otimes g: K \otimes L \to K' \otimes L'$.

As a first application of the tensor product of complexes, we show that the torsion products can be computed from resolutions of both arguments, as follows.

**Theorem 9.3.** If $\varepsilon: X + G$ and $\eta: Y + A$ are projective resolutions of the modules $G_R$ and $R_A$, respectively, then $\varepsilon \otimes 1: X \otimes Y \to G \otimes Y$ induces an isomorphism $H_0(X \otimes_R Y) \cong H_0(G \otimes_R Y)$, and hence an isomorphism

$$H_0(X \otimes_R Y) \cong \text{Tor}^R_n(G, A), \quad n = 0, 1, \ldots.$$  

(9.4)

**Proof.** Let $F^k$, for $k = 0, 1, \ldots$, be the subcomplex of $X \otimes Y$ spanned by all $X_j \otimes Y_j$ with $j \leq k$, while $M^k$ is the subcomplex of $G \otimes Y$ consisting of all $G \otimes Y_j$ with $j \leq k$. Then

$$0 = F^{-1} \otimes F^0 \otimes F^1 \otimes \cdots \otimes X \otimes Y,$$

$$0 = M^{-1} \otimes M^0 \otimes M^1 \otimes \cdots \otimes G \otimes Y,$$  

(9.5)
and $\varepsilon \otimes 1$ maps $F^k$ into $M^k$. Since $\partial(x \otimes y) = \partial x \otimes y \pm x \otimes \partial y$ in $X \otimes Y$, the quotient complex $F^k/F^{k-1}$ is isomorphic to

$$X_0 \otimes Y_k \xleftarrow{\delta \otimes 1} X_1 \otimes Y_k \xleftarrow{} X_2 \otimes Y_k \xleftarrow{} \cdots.$$ 

Similarly $M^k/M^{k-1}$ consists only of the chain group $G \otimes Y_k$ in dimension $k$. Because each $Y_k$ is projective and $0 \xleftarrow{} G \xleftarrow{} X_0 \xleftarrow{} X_1 \xleftarrow{} \cdots$ is exact, the sequence

$$0 \xleftarrow{} G \otimes Y_k \xleftarrow{} X_0 \otimes Y_k \xleftarrow{} X_1 \otimes Y_k \xleftarrow{} \cdots$$

is exact. This amounts to the statement that $\varepsilon \otimes 1: F^k/F^{k-1} \rightarrow M^k/M^{k-1}$ induces an isomorphism in homology for all $k$. On the other hand, $\varepsilon \otimes 1$ maps the exact sequence $F^{k-1} \rightarrow F^k \rightarrow F^k/F^{k-1}$ into the corresponding sequence for the $M$'s, as in the commutative diagram

$$
\begin{array}{cccccc}
H_{n+1}(F^k/F^{k-1}) & \rightarrow & H_n(F^k-1) & \rightarrow & H_n(F^k) & \rightarrow & H_n(F^k/F^{k-1}) \rightarrow H_{n-1}(F^{k-1}) \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
H_{n+1}(M^k/M^{k-1}) & \rightarrow & H_n(M^k-1) & \rightarrow & H_n(M^k) & \rightarrow & H_n(M^k/M^{k-1}) \rightarrow H_{n-1}(M^{k-1})
\end{array}
$$

We claim that $H:(F^k) \rightarrow H_n(M^k)$ is an isomorphism for all $n$ and $k$. This is true for $k$ negative and all $n$. Now suppose by induction that this is so for smaller $k$ and all $n$. Thus the four outside vertical maps in the diagram are isomorphisms, so the Five Lemma makes the middle vertical map an isomorphism. This completes the induction.

In dimension $n$ every cycle or boundary of $X \otimes Y$ will appear within $F^{n+1}$. Hence the isomorphism $H_n(F^k) \cong H_n(M^k)$ for large $k$ (specifically, for $k \geq n+1$) implies the desired isomorphism $H_n(X \otimes Y) \cong H_n(G \otimes Y)$. Now $H_n(G \otimes Y) \cong \text{Tor}_n(G, A)$ by the symmetric case of Thm. 8.1; hence the result.

A sequence of subcomplexes $F^k$ of $X \otimes Y$ arranged as in (9.5) is called a filtration of $X \otimes Y$. The method here used of comparing two complexes via filtrations of each will be formulated in general terms in Chap. XI.

**Exercises**

1. For complexes $K$, $L$, $M$ over a commutative ring, establish the adjoint associativity $\text{Hom}(K \otimes L, M) \cong \text{Hom}(K, \text{Hom}(L, M))$.

2. Let $f: K \rightarrow L$ be a chain transformation, $F^k$ a filtration of $K$ and $M^k$ one of $L$ with $f(F^k) \subset M^k$. If $f_*: H_n(F^k/F^{k-1}) \rightarrow H_n(M^k/M^{k-1})$ is an isomorphism for all $n$ and $k$, while for each $n$ there is a $k$ such that the injections induce isomorphisms $H_n(F^k) \cong H_n(K), H_n(M^k) \cong H_n(L)$, show $f_*: H_n(K) \rightarrow H_n(L)$ an isomorphism for all $n$.

3. If $\varepsilon: X \rightarrow C$ is a projective resolution and $\eta: A \rightarrow Y$ an injective coresolution prove that $\text{Ext}^n(C, A) \cong H^n(\text{Hom}(X, Y))$. 

Chapter V. Tensor and Torsion Products

10. The **Küneth** Formula

The tensor product of complexes corresponds to the cartesian product of spaces $X$ and $Y$, in the sense that the singular complex $S(X \times Y)$ can be proved (VIII.8) chain equivalent to $S(X) \otimes S(Y)$. This suggests the problem of the present section: To determine the homology of $K \otimes L$ in terms of the homologies of $K$ and $L$.

The boundary formula (9.2) shows that the tensor product $u \otimes v$ of cycles is a cycle in $K \otimes L$ and that the tensor product of a cycle by a boundary is a boundary. Hence for cycles $u$ and $v$ in $K$ and $L$, respectively,

$$p(\text{cls} u \otimes \text{cls} v) = \text{cls} (u \otimes v) \quad (10.1)$$

is a well defined homology class in $K \otimes L$, so yields a homomorphism

$$\hat{\cdot} : H_m(K) \otimes_R H_q(L) \rightarrow H_{m+q}(K \otimes_R L)$$

of abelian groups, called the (external) **homology product**. The direct sum $\sum H_m \otimes H_q$ for $m+q=n$ is thereby mapped into $H_n(K \otimes_R L)$, and the image gives all of $H_n(K \otimes L)$ under stringent conditions on the modules $B_n(K), C_n(K)$, and $H_n(K)$ of boundaries, cycles, and homology classes of $K$, respectively:

**Theorem 10.1 (The **Küneth** Tensor Formula.)** If $L$ is a complex of left $R$-modules while $K$ is a complex of right $R$-modules satisfying

(i) $C_n(K)$ and $H_n(K)$ are projective modules, for all $n$,

then, for each $n$, the homology product is an isomorphism

$$\hat{\cdot} : \sum_{m+q=n} H_m(K) \otimes_R H_q(L) \cong H_n(K \otimes_R L). \quad (10.2)$$

This is a consequence of a more general theorem, which among other things shows that the image of $\hat{\cdot}$ does not usually exhaust $H(K \otimes_R L)$.

**Theorem 10.2. (The **Küneth** Formula.)** If $L$ is a complex of left $R$-modules and $K$ a complex of right $R$-modules satisfying

(ii) $C_n(K)$ and $B_n(K)$ are flat modules, for all $n$,

then there is for each dimension $n$ a short exact sequence

$$0 \rightarrow \sum_{m+q=n} H_m(K) \otimes_R H_q(L) \xrightarrow{\hat{\cdot}} H_n(K \otimes_R L) \rightarrow \sum \text{Tor}^R_1(H_m(K), H_q(L)) \rightarrow 0 \quad (1)$$

where $\hat{\cdot}$ is the homology product and $\beta$ a natural homomorphism.

Neither complex $K, L$ need be positive.

This implies the previous theorem. Indeed, since $H_n(K) \cong C_n(K)/B_n(K)$, the hypothesis (i) that $H_n(K)$ is projective implies that $C_n \rightarrow H_n$ splits, hence that $B_n(K)$ is a direct summand of the projective module $C_n$, so is itself projective. Now every projective module is flat (Thm. 8.6),
so \( C_n \) and \( B_n \) are flat, as required for (ii). Moreover, \( H_m \) flat makes \( \text{Tor}_1(H_m,H_q) = 0 \), so (10.3) reduces to (10.2).

Before proving Thm. 10.2 we treat the special case when the boundary in \( K \) is zero. It suffices to set \( K = G \).

**Lemma 10.3.** If \( G \) is a flat right \( R \)-module, \( \phi: G \otimes H_n(L) \cong H_n(G \otimes L) \).

**Proof.** Set \( H_n = H_n(L) \), \( C_n = C_n(L) \), \( B_n = B_n(L) \). To say that \( H_n \) is the \( n \)-th homology group of \( L \) is to say that the commutative diagram

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
0 & 0 \\
\uparrow & \uparrow \\
0 & B_n & C_n & H_n & 0 \\
\uparrow & \downarrow & \downarrow & \downarrow \\
L_{n+1} & \partial & L_n & H_n & 0 \\
\uparrow & \downarrow & \downarrow & \downarrow \\
L_{n-1} & & & & \\
\end{array}
\]

has exact rows and columns. Indeed, the exactness of the long column states that \( C_n \), is the kernel of \( \partial: L_n \rightarrow L_{n-1} \), while the exactness of the short column gives \( B_n \), as \( \partial L_{n+1} \), and the exact row defines \( H_n \) as \( C_n/B_n \).

Now take the tensor product of this diagram with \( G \). Since \( G \) is flat, the new diagram is exact, and states that \( G \otimes H_n \) is isomorphic, under \( \phi \), to the homology group \( H_n(G \otimes L) \), thus proving the lemma.

To prove Thm. 10.2, we regard the families \( C_n = C_n(K) \) and \( D_n = K_n/C_n \cong B_{n-1}(K) \) as complexes of flat modules with zero boundary, so that \( C \rightarrow K \rightarrow D \) is an exact sequence of complexes. As \( D_n \cong B_{n-1}(K) \) is flat by hypothesis, \( \text{Tor}_1(D_n,L_q) = 0 \), so the sequence \( E: C \otimes L \rightarrow K \otimes L \rightarrow D \otimes L \) is also an exact sequence of complexes. The usual exact homology sequence for \( E \) reads

\[
H_{n+1}(D \otimes L) \xrightarrow{E_{n+1}} H_n(C \otimes L) \rightarrow H_n(K \otimes L) \rightarrow H_n(D \otimes L) \xrightarrow{E_n} H_{n-1}(C \otimes L),
\]

with connecting homomorphisms \( E_1 \). Equivalently, the sequence

\[
0 \rightarrow \text{Coker } E_{n+1} \rightarrow H_n(K \otimes L) \rightarrow \text{Ker } E_n \rightarrow 0 \tag{10.4}
\]

is exact. We wish to compare this with the sequence (10.3) of the theorem, which also has \( H_n(K \otimes L) \) as middle term. Let \( \partial' \) denote the map \( D_{m+1} \rightarrow C_m \) induced by \( \partial \).

The homology module \( H_m(K) \) can be described by a short exact sequence \( S: D_m \rightarrow C_m \rightarrow H_m(K) \). Take the tensor product of this sequence with \( H_q(L) \). Since \( C_m \) is flat, \( \text{Tor}_1(C_m,H_q(L)) = 0 \), so the long exact sequence for the torsion product, summed over \( m+q = n \), becomes

\[
\sum \text{Tor}_1(H_m(K),H_q(L)) \cong \sum D_{m+1} \otimes H_q(L) \xrightarrow{\phi \otimes 1} \sum C_m \otimes H_q(L) \rightarrow \sum H_m(K) \otimes H_q(L) \xrightarrow{\phi} H_{n+1}(D \otimes L) \xrightarrow{E_{n+1}} H_n(C \otimes L).
\]
Since $D_{m+1}$ and $C_m$ are flat, the vertical maps are isomorphisms by the lemma. If we know that the square part of the diagram is commutative, we get $\ker(E_{n+1})$ from $\ker(a' \otimes 1)$; explicitly, $\ker(E_{n+1}) \cong \ker(\partial' \otimes 1) \cong \sum \text{Tor}_1(H(K), H(L))$, and $\text{coker} \ E_{n+1} \cong \text{coker}(d' \otimes 1) \cong \sum H(K) \otimes H(L)$. Thereby (10.4) becomes the desired sequence (10.3). One checks also that the first map of (10.3) is indeed the homology product, while the second map $\beta$ is described by the commutativity of the diagram

$$H_n(K \otimes L) \xrightarrow{\beta} C \text{ Tor}_1(H_{m-1}(K), H_q(L))$$

$$H_n((K/C) \otimes L) \xleftarrow{\beta} \sum_{m+q=n} (K/C)_m \otimes H_q(L)$$

(10.6)

with $K \rightarrow K/C$ the canonical projection, $\beta$ an isomorphism, $S_m$ the short exact sequence $S_m: K_m/C_m \rightarrow C_m \rightarrow H_m(K)$, and $S_*$ the sum of the corresponding connecting homomorphisms on Tor. This shows $\beta$ natural, but note that its definition is not symmetric in $K$ and $L$; if $C_n(L)$ and $B_n(L)$ are also flat, symmetric arguments on $L$ will produce a possibly different map $\beta'$. We show below (Prop. 10.6) that $\beta = \beta'$ for complexes of abelian groups; we conjecture that this should hold in general.

It remains to show the square in (10.5) commutative. An element $\sum d_i \otimes \text{cls} v_i$ in $D_{m+1} \otimes H_q(L)$ is mapped by $\beta$ to $\text{cls}(\sum d_i \otimes v_i)$. The definition of the connecting homomorphism $E_{n+1}$ reads: Pull the cycle $\sum d_i \otimes v_i$ of $D \otimes L$ back to a chain $\sum k_i \otimes v_i$ in $K \otimes L$, take its boundary $\sum \partial' d_i \otimes v_i$ pulled back to $C \otimes L$ and the homology class of the result. This gives $\text{cls}(\sum \partial' d_i \otimes v_i) = \beta(\partial' \otimes 1)(\sum d_i \otimes \text{cls} v_i)$, hence the commutativity.

In the case of complexes of abelian groups we can say more.

**Theorem 10.4. (The Künneth Formula for Abelian Groups.)** For (not necessarily positive) chain complexes $K$ and $L$ of abelian groups where no $K_n$ has elements of finite order except 0, the sequence (10.3) is exact and splits by a homomorphism which is not natural.

**Proof.** Since $K_n$ torsion-free implies that its subgroups $C_n$ and $B_n$ are also torsion-free and hence flat (as $\mathbb{Z}$-modules), the previous theorem gives the exact sequence (10.3). It remains to show that it splits. First suppose that both $K$ and $L$ are complexes of free abelian groups $K_m$ and $L_q$. Then $D_m \cong \partial K_m \cup K_{m-1}$ is a subgroup of a free abelian group, hence is free, so that $K_m$ splits as an extension of $C_m$ by $D_m$, with $K_m \cong C_m \oplus D_m$. The homomorphism $\text{cls}: C_m \rightarrow H_m(K)$ can thus be extended to a map $\varphi_m: K_m \rightarrow H_m(K)$ with $\varphi_m c = \text{cls} c$ for each cycle $c$. There is a similar $\psi_q: L_q \rightarrow H_q(L)$ for the free complex $L$. The tensor product of these
group homomorphisms yields a map $\varphi \otimes \psi: (K \otimes L) \to \sum H_m(K) \otimes H_q(L)$; since $\varphi$ and $\psi$ vanish on boundaries, so does $\varphi \otimes \psi$. There is thus an induced map $(\varphi \otimes \psi)_*: H_n(K \otimes L) \to \sum H_m(K) \otimes H_q(L)$. For cycles $u$ and $v$, $(\varphi \otimes \psi)_* (\text{cls } u \otimes \text{cls } v) = (\varphi \otimes \psi)_* \text{cls } (u \otimes v) = \varphi u \otimes \psi v = \text{cls } u \otimes \text{cls } v$ so $(\varphi \otimes \psi)_* \beta = 1$; $(\varphi \otimes \psi)_*$ is a left inverse of $\beta$, splitting our sequence.

Now consider any complexes $K$ and $L$ (with $K$ torsion-free). Just below we will show that one can choose a free complex $K'$ and a chain transformation $f: K' \to K$ such that each $f_*: H_p(K') \to H_p(K)$ is an isomorphism. With a similar choice $g: L' \to L$, the naturality of $\beta$ and $\varphi$ means that the diagram

$$
0 \to \sum H(K') \otimes H(L') \xrightarrow{\beta} H(K' \otimes L') \xrightarrow{\beta} \sum \text{Tor}(H(K'), H(L')) \to 0
$$

$$
\xrightarrow{\varphi \otimes \psi} \xrightarrow{\text{Tor}(f'_*, g_*)}
$$

$$
0 \to \sum H(K) \otimes H(L) \xrightarrow{\beta} H(K \otimes L) \xrightarrow{\beta} \sum \text{Tor}(H(K), H(L)) \to 0
$$

commutes. By the choice of $f$ and $g$, the outside vertical maps are isomorphisms. Hence by the Short Five Lemma the middle vertical map is also an isomorphism. The bottom exact sequence is thereby isomorphic to the top exact sequence, which has just been shown to split. Therefore the bottom sequence splits.

This proof, due to A. Dold, depends on the following useful lemma.

**Lemma 10.5.** If $K$ is a complex of abelian groups there exists a complex $X$ of free abelian groups and a chain transformation $f: X \to K$ such that $f_*: H_n(X) \to H_n(K)$ is an isomorphism for each dimension $n$.

**Proof.** It suffices to take $X$ the direct sum of complexes $X^{(n)}$ with chain transformations $f^{(n)}: X^{(n)} \to K$ such that $(f^{(n)})_*: H_n(X^{(n)}) \cong H_n(K)$ and $H_q(X^{(n)}) = 0$ for $q \neq n$. For fixed $n$, construct a diagram

$$
0 \to R_{n+1} \xrightarrow{j} F_n \to 0
$$

$$
\xrightarrow{\eta} \downarrow \quad \downarrow \xi
$$

$$
K_{n+1} \to K_n.
$$

First write the group $C_n$ of $n$-cycles of $K$ as a quotient of a free group $F_n$; this gives $\xi: F_n \to C_n \subset K$. Next take $R_{n+1} = \xi^{-1} B$, and $j: R_{n+1} \to F_n$ the injection. Since $R_{n+1}$ is free and $\xi j R_{n+1} = \partial K_{n+1}$, $\xi j$ lifts to a map $\eta$ which makes the diagram commute. The top row is now a complex $X^{(n)}$ with homology $F_n/R_{n+1} \cong C_n/B_n = H_n(K)$ in dimension $n$ and all other homology groups zero. The vertical maps constitute a chain transformation which is a homology isomorphism in dimension $n$, as required.

Thm. 10.4 shows that the homology of $K \otimes L$ is spanned by two types of cycles. Type I is a cycle $u \otimes v$ built from cycles $u \in K, v \in L$; in
Chapter V. Tensor and Torsion Products

The theorem, $\text{Im} \, \tilde{\delta}$ is spanned by the classes of Type I cycles. Secondly, consider a triple $\langle \text{cls} \, u, m, \text{cls} \, v \rangle$ in $\text{Tor}, \langle \mathcal{H}(K), \mathcal{H}(L) \rangle$; there are then chains $k$ and $l$ with $\partial k = m \cdot u$, $\partial l = m \cdot v$ for the same integer $m$; thus

$$(1/m) \partial (k \otimes l) = u \otimes l + (-1)^{n+1} k \otimes v, \quad \dim u = n$$

is a (Type II) cycle. One may verify that its homology class is determined, module $\text{Im} \, \tilde{\delta}$, by $\text{cls} \, u$ and $\text{cls} \, v$. This yields an expression for $\beta$ in the \text{K"unneth} formula, as follows:

**Proposition 10.6.** For $t = \langle \text{cls} \, u, m, \text{cls} \, v \rangle \in \text{Tor}_1(H, (K), H(L))$ with $\partial k = m \cdot u$, $\partial l = m \cdot v$ the formula $\gamma t = (-1)^{n+1} \, \text{cls} \, (1/m) \partial (k \otimes l)$ defines a homomorphism

$$\gamma : \text{Tor}_1(H(K), H(L)) \rightarrow H(K \otimes L)/\tilde{\delta}[H(K) \otimes H(L)].$$

Under the hypotheses of Thm. 10.4, $\gamma$ is an isomorphism and its inverse induces $\beta$.

**Proof.** Since $D = K/C$, the map $H(K \otimes L) \rightarrow H(D \otimes L)$ carries $\gamma t = \text{cls}[[(-1)^{n+1} u \otimes l + k \otimes v]$ into $\text{cls}[[k + C) \otimes v]$. The maps $\tilde{\delta}S_*$ of (10.6) carry $t$ into $(k + C) \otimes \text{cls} \, v$ and thence into $\text{cls}[[k + C) \otimes v]$. The identity of these two results proves that $\gamma$ induces $\beta$, as stated.

**Exercises**

1. Show that Thm. 10.1 holds with (i) replaced by either (iii) $C$, (K), B, (K), and $H_n(K)$ are flat modules, for all $n$, or (iv) $C_n(K), B, (K),$ and $H_n(L)$ are flat modules, for all $n$.

2. For $K$ and $L$ finitely generated complexes of free abelian groups, calculate the Betti numbers and the torsion coefficients of $K \otimes L$ from those of $K$ and $L$. (Cf. 11.6; this version gives the original theorem of K"unneth [1923, 1924].)

3. Prove Thm. 10.4 as follows. It suffices to take $K$ finitely generated, hence to take $K$ elementary (Ex. II.2.2). In this case every cycle of $K \otimes L$ can be written as a sum of cycles of types I and II; deduce that $\tilde{\delta}$ is a monomorphism and $\gamma$ of Prop. 10.2 an isomorphism (Eilenberg-MacLane [1954, §12]).

4. State a \text{K"unneth} formula for $K \otimes L \otimes M$.

5. Using this, establish for abelian groups the isomorphisms

$$\text{Tor}(A, \text{Tor}(B, C)) \cong \text{Tor}(\text{Tor}(A, B), C),$$

$$\text{Ext}(A, \text{Ext}(B, C)) \cong \text{Ext}(\text{Tor}(A, B), C).$$

11. Universal Coefficient Theorems

The various homologies of a complex may now be listed. If $K$ is a complex of right $R$-modules, while $\mathcal{R}A$ and $G_R$ are modules, regard $A$ as a complex (with trivial grading $A = A_0$ and boundary $\partial = 0$), so that

$$K, \quad K \otimes_R A, \quad \text{Hom}_R(K, R), \quad \text{Hom}_R(K, G)$$
are complexes derived from $K$. The homology groups

$$H_n(K \otimes_R A), \quad H^*(K, G) = H^*(\text{Hom}_R(K, G))$$

are known, respectively, as the $n$-dimensional homology of $K$ with coefficients $A$ and the $n$-dimensional cohomology of $K$ with coefficients $G$. According to our rules for shifting indices up or down, $H^*(\text{Hom}_R(K, G))$ is $H_{-n}(\text{Hom}_R(K, G))$. When $K$ is a positive complex, $H_n(K \otimes_R A) = 0$ for $n < 0$, while $H^*(K, G) = 0$ for $n < 0$; hence the custom of writing the homology index down, the cohomology index up. For $K$ positive, $H_n(K \otimes_R A)$ is sometimes written as $H_n(K, A)$. Warning: Do not shift this index up, where it would have a different meaning $H^{-n}(K, A) = H_n(\text{Hom}(K, A))$.

Consider complexes of abelian groups ($R = \mathbb{Z}$). If each $K_n$ is free, the universal coefficient theorem (Thm. 11.4.1) is an exact sequence

$$0 \to \text{Ext}(H_{n-1}(K), G) \to H^*(K, G) \to \text{Hom}(H_n(K), G) \to 0.$$ 

We now have a corresponding homology theorem:

**Theorem 11.1.** If $K$ is a (not necessarily positive) complex of abelian groups with no elements of finite order and $A$ is an abelian group, there is for each dimension $n$ a split exact sequence of groups

$$0 \to H_n(K) \otimes A \xrightarrow{\phi} H_n(K \otimes A) \to \text{Tor}(H_{n-1}(K), A) \to 0 \quad (11.1)$$

with both homomorphisms natural and $\phi$ defined for a cycle $u$ of $K$ by $\phi(\text{cls } u \otimes a) = \text{cls } (u \otimes a)$. If $K$ is a complex of vector spaces over some field and $V$ a vector space over the same field, then $\phi: H_n(K) \otimes V \cong H_n(K \otimes V)$.

This is a corollary to the previous Thm. 10.4. A direct proof is easy when $K$ is free. Write $\partial_n$ for $\partial \otimes 1: K, \otimes A \to K_{n-1} \otimes A$. The exact sequence

$$0 \to C_n \to K_n \to C_{n-1} \to H_{n-1} \to 0$$

is a free resolution of $H_{n-1}$; its tensor product with $A$ then has homology 0 in dimension 2, $\text{Tor}(H_{n-1}, A)$ in dimension 1, and $H_{n-1} \otimes A$ in dimension zero. The first states that $C_n \otimes A$ can be regarded as a subgroup of $K_n \otimes A$; indeed

$$\text{Im } \partial_{n+1} \subset C_n \otimes A \subset \text{Ker } \partial_n \subset K_n \otimes A.$$ 

The second states that $\text{Ker } \partial_n/C_n \otimes A \cong \text{Tor}(H_{n-1}, A)$; the third (with $n$ replaced by $n+1$) that $C_n \otimes A/\text{Im } \partial_{n+1} \cong H_n \otimes A$. Therefore $H_n(K \otimes A) = \text{Ker } \partial_n/\text{Im } \partial_{n+1}$ is an extension of $H_n \otimes A$ by $\text{Tor}(H_{n-1}, A)$, as asserted by the exact sequence (11.1).
Corollary 11.2. If $K$ and $K'$ are complexes of abelian groups, each with no elements of finite order, while $f: K \to K'$ is a chain transformation with $f_*: H_n(K) \cong H_n(K')$ an isomorphism for each $n$, then $f_*: H_n(K \otimes A) \to H_n(K' \otimes A)$ is an isomorphism for every abelian group $A$ and every $n$.

Proof. Write the sequences (11.1) for $K$ and $K'$ and apply the Five Lemma, as in the proof of Cor. III.4.6.

These universal coefficient theorems express the homology and cohomology of $K$ with any coefficients in terms of the so-called "integral" homology $H_n(K)$, at least when the $K_n$ are free. If the $K_n$ are free and finitely generated abelian groups, there are corresponding expressions in terms of the "integral" cohomology $H^n(K, \mathbb{Z})$, as in Ex. 2 below.

Exercises

1. For abelian groups $K$ and $A$ construct natural homomorphisms $\text{Hom}(K, \mathbb{Z}) \otimes A \to \text{Hom}(K, A)$ and $K \otimes A \to \text{Hom}(\text{Hom}(K, \mathbb{Z}), A)$. Show them isomorphisms when $K$ is a finitely generated free group, and chain transformations when $K$ is a complex.

2. Let $K$ be a complex of abelian groups, with each $K_n$ a finitely generated free abelian group. Write $H^n(K)$ for $H^n(\text{Hom}(K, \mathbb{Z}))$. Using Ex. 1 and the universal coefficient theorems, establish natural exact sequences

$$0 \to H^n(K) \otimes G \to H^n(K, G) \to \text{Tor} (H^{n+1}(K), G) \to 0,$$

$$0 \to \text{Ext} (H^{n+1}(K), A) \to H_n(K \otimes A) \to \text{Hom} (H^n(K), A) \to 0.$$

3. If $K$ is a complex of finitely generated free abelian groups, show that the $n$-th Betti number $b_n(K)$ is the dimension of the vector space $H_n(K \otimes \mathbb{Q})$, where $\mathbb{Q}$ is the field of rational numbers.

4. For $K$ as in Ex. 3, and $\mathbb{Z}_p$ the field of integers modulo $p$, calculate the dimension of the vector space $H_n(K \otimes \mathbb{Z}_p)$ from the Betti numbers and torsion coefficients of $K$.

5. If $K$ is a complex of vector spaces over a field $\mathbb{F}$, write $K^*$ for its dual $\text{Hom}(K, \mathbb{F})$. If each $K_n$ is finite dimensional, establish the natural isomorphisms $H^n(K^*) \cong [H_n(K)]^*.$

Notes: Tensor products were long used implicitly; for example, via $G \otimes R \sum \text{Re}$, $\cong \sum G e_i$ or $V \otimes W \cong \text{Hom}(V^*, W)$. Their central role in multilinear algebra was highlighted by Bourbaki’s [1948] treatise on this subject. The tensor product for abelian groups was first explicitly defined by Whitney [1938]. The universal coefficient theorem 11.1 was first proved by Čech [1935] who thereby first introduced (but did not name) the torsion product $\text{Tor}_1$. Cartan-Eilenberg used resolutions to define the higher torsion products. The description (§ 6) of $\text{Tor}$, for abelian groups by generators and relations (Eilenberg-MacLane [1954, § 12]) is useful in treating the Bockstein spectrum of a complex $K$ of abelian groups (the various $H_n(K, \mathbb{Z}_n)$ and their interrelations — Bockstein [1958]; Palermo [1957]). A similar description (Ex. 7.1, 7.2) of $\text{Tor}$, by generators and relations (MacLane [1955]) involves some rather mysterious new functors, the "slide products" (e.g., $T$ in Ex. 6.7) and leads to the conceptual characterization (§ 7) of the elements of $\text{Tor}$, as triples $\langle \mu, L, v \rangle$. 
Chapter six

Types of Algebras

1. Algebras by Diagrams

This chapter studies the formal properties of various types of algebras over a fixed commutative ring $K$, with $\otimes$ short for $\otimes_K$, Hom for $\text{Hom}_K$.

A $K$-algebra $A$ is a ring which is also a $K$-module such that always $k(\lambda_1 \lambda_2) = (k \lambda_1) \lambda_2 = \lambda_1 (k \lambda_2)$, $k \in K$, $\lambda_1, \lambda_2 \in A$.

If $1_A$ is the identity element of $A$, then $I(k) = k 1_A$ defines a ring homomorphism $I: K \to A$. Indeed, a $K$-algebra may be described as a ring $A$ together with a ring homomorphism $I: K \to A$ such that always $(Ik)1 = I(k)$; that is, with $1_K$ in the center of $A$.

The product $\lambda_1 \lambda_2$ is left and right distributive, so is a $K$-bilinear function. Hence $n(\lambda_1 \otimes \lambda_2) = \lambda_1 \lambda_2$ determines a $K$-module homomorphism $n: A \otimes A \to A$. In these terms a $K$-algebra may be described as a $K$-module $A$ equipped with two homomorphisms

$$\pi = \pi_A: A \otimes A \to A, \quad I = I_A: K \to A$$

of $K$-modules such that the diagrams

$$A \otimes A \otimes A \xrightarrow{\pi \otimes 1} A \otimes A \quad K \otimes A \cong A \cong A \otimes K$$

$$\xrightarrow{1 \otimes n} \quad \xrightarrow{1 \otimes I}$$

are commutative. Indeed, the first diagram asserts that the product is associative, while the left and right halves of the second diagram state that $I(1_K)$ is a left and right identity element for the product in $A$ and that $\pi(1K \otimes \lambda) = \lambda 1 = \pi(\lambda \otimes 1K)$.

In case $K$ is the ring $\mathbb{Z}$ of integers, a 2-algebra is simply a ring, so this gives a diagrammatic definition of a ring, via tensor products of abelian groups. The dual diagrams define a "coring" or a "coalgebra". Algebras may be graded by degrees such that $\deg(\lambda_1 \lambda_2) = \deg \lambda_1 + \deg \lambda_2$, or may have a differential $\partial$, with $\partial(\lambda_1 \lambda_2) = (\partial \lambda_1) \lambda_2 + \lambda_1 (\partial \lambda_2)$. This chapter will give a uniform treatment of these various types of algebras and the modules over them. As an illustration of algebras with a differential, we first consider certain resolutions over a polynomial ring.

Let $P = F[x]$ be the usual ring of polynomials in an indeterminate $x$ with coefficients in a field $F$; actually, $P$ can be regarded as an $F$-algebra, but for the moment we consider it just as a commutative ring. Since $F = F[x]/(x)$ is the quotient of $P$ by the principal ideal $(x)$ of all multiples of $x$, we can regard $F$ as a $P$-module so that $e(x) = 0$ defines a $P$-module homomorphism $e: P \to F$. Form the sequence

$$0 \leftarrow F \leftarrow P \leftarrow Pu \leftarrow 0$$

(1.3)
of \( P \)-modules, where \( Pu \) is the free \( P \)-module on one generator \( u \) and \( \partial \) the \( P \)-module homomorphism with \( \partial u = x \). The sequence is exact, so is a free resolution of \( F \). For any \( P \)-module \( A \), the group \( \operatorname{Ext}^1_P (F, A) \) may be calculated from this resolution as the first cohomology group of the complex

\[
\operatorname{Hom}_P (P, A) \rightarrow \operatorname{Hom}_P (Pu, A) \rightarrow 0.
\]

Under the isomorphism \( \operatorname{Hom}_P (P, A) \cong A \), this is the complex \( \delta : A \rightarrow A \) with \( \delta a = -ax \), so \( \operatorname{Ext}^1_P (F, A) \cong A/(x)A \). By taking the tensor product of the resolution (1.3) with a module \( B \), we find \( \operatorname{Tor}^1_P (F, B) \) to be the submodule of \( B \) consisting of all \( b \in B \) with \( xb = 0 \). For example, \( \operatorname{Ext}^1_P (F, F) \cong F \) and \( \operatorname{Tor}^1_P (F, F) \cong F \).

Similarly, let \( P = F[x, y] \) be the ring of polynomials in two indeterminates \( x \) and \( y \) over \( F \). If \( (x, y) \) denotes the ideal generated by \( x \) and \( y \), then \( F = P/(x, y) \) is again a \( P \)-module and \( \varepsilon : P \rightarrow F \) a \( P \)-module homomorphism with \( \varepsilon (x) = 0 = \varepsilon (y) \). The kernel of \( \varepsilon \) can be written as the image of the free \( P \)-module on two generators \( u \) and \( v \) under the module homomorphism \( \partial_1 : Pu \oplus Pv \rightarrow P \) with \( \partial_1 u = x \), \( \partial_1 v = y \). The kernel of this map \( \partial_1 \) consists of all \( fu + gv \) for polynomials \( f, g \in P \) such that \( fx + gy = 0 \); by the unique factorization of polynomials we must then have \( f = -hy \) and \( g = hx \) for some polynomial \( h \). This kernel is therefore the image of the free module \( P(uv) \) on one generator \( uv \) under the homomorphism \( \partial_2 : P(uv) \rightarrow P \) with \( \partial_2 (huv) = (hx)v - (hy)u = (hu + gv) \). Since \( P \) has no divisors of zero, \( \partial_2 \) is a monomorphism. We have thereby shown that the sequence

\[
0 \leftarrow F \leftarrow P \leftarrow Pu \oplus Pv \leftarrow P(uv) \leftarrow 0 \quad (1.4)
\]

is exact. From this resolution one calculates that \( \operatorname{Ext}^1_P (F, F) \cong F \oplus F \cong \operatorname{Tor}^1_P (F, F) \), and \( \operatorname{Ext}^2_P (F, F) \cong F \cong \operatorname{Tor}^2_P (F, F) \).

In the resolution (1.4) omit \( F \) and write \( E = P \oplus Pu \oplus Pv \oplus P(uv) \). Now set \( uv = -uv, u^2 = 0, v^2 = 0 \); this makes \( E \) a ring, with \( 1_P \) acting as the identity and products given, for example, by \( (fu)(gv) = (fg)(uv) = -(gv)(fu) \). It is called the "exterior" ring over \( P \) in two generators \( u \) and \( v \). Its elements may be "graded" by assigning dimensions as \( \dim 1_P = 0 \), \( \dim u = 1 = \dim v \), and \( \dim uv = \dim u + \dim v = 2 \), in accordance with the usual dimensions for the resolution (1.4). The dimension of a product is then the sum of the dimensions of its factors. Furthermore, the boundary homomorphism in the resolution is now a module homomorphism \( \partial : E \rightarrow E \) of degree \(-1\) with \( \partial u = x \), \( \partial v = y \), and \( \partial (uv) = (\partial u)v - u(\partial v) \). This implies a formula for the differential of a product of two elements \( e_1, e_2 \) of \( E \) as

\[
\partial (e_1 e_2) = (\partial e_1) e_2 + (-1)^{\dim e_1} e_1 (\partial e_2). \quad (1.5)
\]
This "Leibniz formula" is typical for a ring which is also a complex. Other examples are found in the next chapter, which may be read in parallel with this one.

Exercises

1. Prove that the three definitions given for a K-algebra are equivalent.

2. If J is an ideal in K, show that K/J is a K-algebra.

3. For P = F[x, y] and A any P-module, show that Ext^1_P(F, A) is the quotient A/(xA \cup yA), while
   \[ \text{Ext}^1_P(F, A) \cong \{(a_1, a_2) \mid a_1, a_2 \in A, xa_1 = ya_2\}/\{(xa, ya) \mid a \in A\} \]

4. Obtain a similar formula for Tor^1_P(F, F) when P = F[x, y].

5. Obtain a free resolution for F as a module over the polynomial ring F[x, y, z] in three indeterminates.

2. Graded Modules

An (externally) Z-graded K-module is a family \( M = \{ M_n \mid n \in \mathbb{Z} \} \) of K-modules \( M_n \); an element \( m \) of \( M_n \) is also said to be an element of degree \( n \) in \( M \) (briefly, \( \deg m = n \)). A graded submodule \( S \subset M \) is a family of submodules \( S_n \subset M_n \) one for each \( n \). For two Z-graded modules \( L \) and \( M \) a homomorphism \( f: L \to M \) of degree \( d \) is a family \( f = \{ f_n: L_n \to M_{n+d} \mid n \in \mathbb{Z} \} \) of K-module homomorphisms \( f_n \). The set of all \( f: L \to M \) of fixed degree \( d \) is a K-module \( \text{Hom}_d(L, M) \). The composite of homomorphisms of degrees \( d \) and \( d' \) has degree \( d + d' \). A Z-graded module \( M \) may also be written with upper indices as \( M^n = M_{-n} \); in particular, \( \text{Hom}^d(L, M) = \text{Hom}_{-d}(L, M) \).

A graded K-module \( M \) is a Z-graded module with \( M_n = 0 \) for \( n < 0 \). These graded modules are of most frequent occurrence, and will be studied below, leaving the reader to formulate the corresponding facts for Z-graded modules. Warning: Many authors use "graded" for our Z-graded and "positively graded" for our graded modules.

A trivially graded module \( M \) has \( M_n = 0 \) for \( n \neq 0 \). The graded K-modules \( M \), with morphisms \( \text{hom}(L, M) = \text{Hom}_0(L, M) \) the homomorphisms of degree 0, form a category. Each \( f: L \to M \) of degree 0 has kernel, image, cokernel, and coimage defined as expected (i.e., termwise for each \( n \)); they are graded modules with the usual properties. For fixed degree \( d \), \( \text{Hom}_d(L, M) \) is a bifunctor on this category, contravariant in \( L \) and covariant in \( M \). Alternatively, the family \( \text{Hom}(L, M) = \{ \text{Hom}_d(L, M) \} \) is a bifunctor on this category to the category of Z-graded K-modules. Both bifunctors are left exact, in the sense of Thm. I.6.1 and Thm. I.6.2.

The tensor product of two graded modules \( L \) and \( M \) is the graded module given by

\[ (L \otimes M)_n = \sum_{p+q=n} L_p \otimes M_q; \quad (2.1) \]
Chapter VI. Types of Algebras

in brief, the grading in the tensor product is defined by $\deg(l \otimes m) = \deg l + \deg m$. If $f: L \to L'$ and $g: M \to M'$ are homomorphisms of degrees $d$ and $e$, respectively, then $f \otimes g: L \otimes M \to L' \otimes M'$ is the homomorphism of degree $d + e$ defined by

$$
(f \otimes g) (l \otimes m) = (-1)^{(\deg l)(\deg g)} (f(l) \otimes g(m))
$$

(2.2)
in accord with the sign convention (interchange $g$ and $l$). For $\deg f = \deg g = 0$, this makes $L \otimes M$ a covariant bifunctor on graded modules to graded modules. It is right exact, as in Thm. V.5.1.

The tensor product for graded modules satisfies the same formal identities as in the ungraded (=trivially graded) case; that is, there are natural isomorphisms of degree 0

$$
\alpha: L \otimes (M \otimes N) \cong (L \otimes M) \otimes N, \quad \alpha [l \otimes (m \otimes n)] = (l \otimes m) \otimes n,
$$

(2.3)

$$
\tau: L \otimes M \cong M \otimes L, \quad \tau [l \otimes m] = (-1)^{(\deg l)(\deg m)} m \otimes l,
$$

(2.4)

$$
K \otimes M \cong M \otimes K, \quad k \otimes m = m \otimes k.
$$

(2.5)

Here $\otimes = \otimes_K$, and the ground ring $K$ is regarded as the trivially graded module $K$ with $K_0 = K, K_n = 0$ for $n \neq 0$. We regard these isomorphisms as identities. This we can do because they are manifestly consistent with each other: Given any two iterated tensor products of the same modules $M_1, \ldots, M_s$, a suitable combination of these isomorphisms provides a canonical map of the first tensor product into the second—deleting or adding factors $K$ at will, and with sign according to the sign conventions, as in (2.4).

The same properties of $\text{Hom}_K$ and $\otimes_K$ hold for $Z$-graded modules and in a variety of other cases, as follows.

A bigraded $K$-module $B$ is a family $B = \{B_{p,q} \mid p, q \in \mathbb{Z}\}$ of $K$-modules with $B_{p,q} = 0$ when $p < 0$ or $q < 0$; a homomorphism $f: B \to B'$ of bidegree $(d,e)$ is a family $\{f_{p,q}: B_{p,q} \to B'_{p+d,q+e}\}$ of $K$-module homomorphisms. For example, the tensor product of two graded modules $L$ and $M$ is initially a bigraded module $\{L_p \otimes M_q\}$, which the summation (2.1) has turned into a singly graded module. Similarly, the tensor product of two bigraded modules $B$ and $C$ is a 4-graded module which yields a bigraded module by

$$
(B \otimes C)_{m,n} = \sum_{p+q=m} \sum_{r+s=n} B_{p,r} \otimes C_{q,s}.
$$

(2.6)

An element of $B_{p,q}$ is said to have total degree $p + q$. The natural isomorphisms (2.3), (2.4), and (2.5) hold for bigraded modules when the total degrees are used in the sign of the transposition $\tau$.

Trigraded modules, $Z$-bigraded modules, and the like are defined similarly.
3. Graded Algebras

An *internally* graded $K$-module $A$ is a $K$-module with a given direct sum decomposition $A = \sum A_n$; in other words, $A$ and its submodules $A_n$, $n = 0, 1, \ldots$, are given so that each element $a \neq 0$ in $A$ has a unique representation as a finite sum of non-zero elements from different submodules $A_n$. The elements of $A_n$ are said to be homogeneous elements of $A$, of degree $n$. Each internally graded module $A$ determines an externally graded module $\{A_n\}$. Conversely, each externally graded module $M = \{M_n\}$ determines an associated internally graded module $M_* = \sum M_n$. Moreover, $(L \otimes M)_* = L_* \otimes M_*$, but $\text{Hom}(L_*, M_*)$ is larger than $[\text{Hom}(L, M)]_*$, because a $K$-module homomorphism $f: L_* \to M_*$ need not be a sum of a finite number of homogeneous homomorphisms.

In much of the literature, "graded module" means internally graded module. Following a suggestion of John Moore, we have chosen to work with external gradings. This choice has the advantage that in either event we always operate with the homogeneous elements and not with the sums $m_0 + \cdots + m$, of elements of different degrees. Similarly, one needs only the homogeneous homomorphisms $L \to M$, not the arbitrary homomorphisms $L_* \to M_*$. Moreover, our choice dispenses with the use of infinite direct sums, so that we can define a graded object $M$ over any category $\mathcal{M}$ to be a family $\{M_n\}$ of objects in $\mathcal{M}$, with morphisms of various degrees, just as for modules. For example, a graded set $S$ is a family of sets $\{S_n, n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots\}$.

3. Graded Algebras

A graded $K$-algebra $A$ is a graded $K$-module equipped with two $K$-module homomorphisms $\pi = \pi_A: A \otimes A \to A$ and $I = I_A: K \to A$, each of degree $0$, which render commutative the diagrams

$$
\begin{align*}
A \otimes A \otimes A & \xrightarrow{\pi \otimes 1} A \otimes A \\
\downarrow{1 \otimes \pi} & \downarrow{\pi} \\
A \otimes A & \xrightarrow{\pi} A
\end{align*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{align*}
K \otimes A = A = A \otimes K \\
\downarrow{1 \otimes 1} & \downarrow{1 \otimes I} \\
A \otimes A & \xrightarrow{\pi} A
\end{align*}
$$

(3.1)

The first asserts that the "product" $\lambda \mu = \pi(\lambda \otimes \mu)$ is associative, and the second that $I_A(1_K) = I_A$ is a two-sided identity for this product. A homomorphism $f: A \to A'$ between two graded algebras over the same $K$ is a homomorphism of degree 0 of graded $K$-modules such that the diagrams

$$
\begin{align*}
A \otimes A & \xrightarrow{\pi_A} A \\
\downarrow{\otimes I} & \downarrow{I} \\
A' \otimes A & \xrightarrow{\pi_{A'}} A'
\end{align*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{align*}
K & \xrightarrow{I_A} A \\
\downarrow{I_A'} & \downarrow{I_A'} \\
K & \xrightarrow{I_{A'}} A'
\end{align*}
$$

(3.2)

are commutative.

These definitions may be restated in terms of elements. A graded algebra $A$ is a family of $K$-modules $\{A_n, n = 0, 1, \ldots\}$ with a distinguished
element \(1 \in \mathbb{A}_0\) and a function which assigns to each pair of elements \(1, \mu\) a product \(\lambda \mu\) which is \(\mathbb{K}\)-bilinear and such that always

\[
\deg (\lambda \mu) = \deg \lambda + \deg \mu, \quad \lambda (\mu \nu) = (\lambda \mu) \nu, \quad 1\lambda = \lambda = \lambda 1.
\]

Similarly, an algebra homomorphism \(f: \mathbb{A} \to \mathbb{A}'\) is a function carrying elements of \(\mathbb{A}\) to those of \(\mathbb{A}'\) so as to preserve all the structures involved:

\[
\begin{align*}
  f(\lambda + \mu) &= f\lambda + f\mu, & \deg f(\lambda) &= \deg \lambda, & (\text{module structure}) \text{,} \\
  f(k \lambda) &= k(f\lambda), & f(1) &= 1_{\mathbb{A}'}, & (\text{grading}) \text{,} \\
  f(\lambda \mu) &= (f\lambda)(f\mu), & (3.3) & (\text{product}) \text{.}
\end{align*}
\]

We emphasize that each homomorphism \(f\) takes the identity to the identity.

As for rings, we also assume for algebras that \(1 \neq 0\).

A graded subalgebra \(\Sigma \lhd \mathbb{A}\) is a graded submodule of \(\mathbb{A}\) such that \(1, a \in \Sigma\) and \(a, a' \in \Sigma\) imply \(sa, s' \in \Sigma\). Thus \(\Sigma\) is itself a graded algebra, with the same identity as \(\mathbb{A}\), and the injection \(i: \Sigma \to \mathbb{A}\) is a monomorphism of graded \(\mathbb{K}\)-algebras. If \(f: \mathbb{A} \to \mathbb{A}'\) is an algebra homomorphism, the image \(f(\Sigma)\) is a graded subalgebra of \(\mathbb{A}'\).

A graded left ideal \(L \lhd \mathbb{A}\) is a graded submodule of \(\mathbb{A}\) such that \(AL \lhd L\) (i.e., \(1 \in L\) and \(a \in L\) imply \(1a \in L\)). Thus \(L\) is closed under products, but need not be a subalgebra since it may not contain the identity \(1_{\mathbb{A}}\).

If \(a, \ldots, a\) are elements of \(\mathbb{A}\), the smallest graded left ideal containing all \(a\) is often denoted by \(\mathbb{A}(a, \ldots, a)\) or simply by \((a, \ldots, a)\), with \(\mathbb{A}\) understood. In degree \(n\), it consists of all sums \(\sum \lambda_i a_i\) with \(\lambda_i \in \mathbb{A}\) of degree \(n - \deg a_i\). A graded right ideal \(R \rhd \mathbb{A}\) is similarly defined by the condition that \(R\mathbb{A} \subset R\).

A graded (two-sided) ideal \(J\) of \(\mathbb{A}\) is a graded submodule which is both a left and a right graded ideal of \(\mathbb{A}\). The quotient module \(\mathbb{A}/J\) is a graded algebra with a product determined by the condition that the projection \(\eta: \mathbb{A} \to \mathbb{A}/J\) is a homomorphism of graded algebras. This quotient algebra, with the map \(\eta\), is characterized up to isomorphism by the fact that any homomorphism \(f: \mathbb{A} \to \mathbb{A}'\) of graded algebras with \(f(J) = 0\) has a unique factorization as \(f = g\eta\) for some algebra homomorphism \(g: \mathbb{A}/J \to \mathbb{A}'\). Moreover, the kernel of any homomorphism \(f: \mathbb{A} \to \mathbb{A}'\) of graded algebras is an ideal of \(\mathbb{A}\). (Note: In case \(J = \mathbb{A}\), the quotient "ring" \(\mathbb{A}/J = 0\) has \(1 = 0\), counter to our convention \(1 \neq 0\).)

A graded algebra \(\mathbb{A}\) is commutative (some authors say skew-commutative or anti-commutative) if always

\[
\lambda \mu = (-1)^{\deg \lambda \deg \mu} \mu \lambda; \quad (3.4)
\]
that is, if $\pi_A = \pi_A \tau: A \otimes A \to A$, with $\tau$ the transposition (2.4). In consequence, the elements of even degree commute in the ordinary sense. If, in addition, $\lambda^2 = 0$ for every element $I$ of odd degree, $A$ is called strictly commutative. If the ground ring $K$ is a field of characteristic not 2, then any commutative graded $K$-algebra is strictly commutative, for (3.4) with $\deg I$ odd gives $\lambda \lambda = -II, 2\lambda^2 = 0$, so $2^{-1}$ in $K$ implies $\lambda^2 = 0$.

For example, a graded polynomial algebra $P = P_k[x]$ may be defined for an "indeterminate" $x$ of any degree $d \geq 0$. If $d = 0$, $P$ is the ordinary ring of polynomials in $x$ with coefficients in $K$. For $d > 0$, $P$ is the graded module with $P_n = 0$ for $n \not\equiv 0 \pmod{d}$, while $P_{q^d}$ is the free $K$-module on one generator $x^d$ for each $q \geq 0$; the product is defined by $x^p x^q = x^{p+q}$. If $d$ is even, this polynomial algebra is commutative. $P$ is characterized up to isomorphism by the fact that it is free in $x$: For any graded $K$-algebra $A$ with a selected element $\lambda_d$ of degree $d$ there is a unique homomorphism $f: P \to A$ of graded algebras with $f(x) = \lambda_d$.

The exterior algebra $E = E_k[u]$ on one symbol $u$ of odd degree $d$ is constructed from the free $K$-module $K u$ with one generator $u$ as the graded algebra $E$ with $E_0 = K, E_d = K u, E_n = 0$ for $0 = n \not\equiv d$, and with product determined by $l u = u = u_1, u^2 = 0$. It is strictly commutative. We may also define $E$ as the quotient algebra $P_k[x]/(xa)$, where $x$ is an indeterminate of degree $d$ and $(xa)$ denotes the (two-sided) ideal in $P$ generated by $xa$. The algebra $E$ may be characterized as the strictly commutative algebra free on $u$: Given any strictly commutative $A$ with a selected element $\lambda_d \in A_d$, there is a unique homomorphism $f: E_k[u] \to A$ of graded algebras with $f(u) = \lambda_d$.

The tensor algebra $T(M)$ of a $K$-module $M$ is the graded $K$-module

$$T_0(M) = K, \quad T_n(M) = M^n = M \otimes \ldots \otimes M \quad (n \text{ factors}),$$

with product given by the identification map $n: M^p \otimes M^q \cong M^{p+q}$. In other words, the product is formed by juxtaposition, as in

$$(m_1 \otimes \ldots \otimes m_p) (m'_1 \otimes \ldots \otimes m'_q) = m_1 \otimes \ldots \otimes m_p \otimes m'_1 \otimes \ldots \otimes m'_q.$$  

Clearly $T$ is a covariant functor on $K$-modules to graded $K$-algebras. More generally, if $M$ is a graded $K$-module, a tensor algebra $T(M)$ is defined similarly, with

$$T_0(M) = K \oplus \bigoplus_{p=1}^\infty (M_0)^p, \quad T_n(M) = \sum M_{d_1} \otimes \ldots \otimes M_{d_n},$$

where the second sum is taken over all $d_i$ with $d_1 + \ldots + d_n = n$. For $M = M_1$ this includes the previous case. The graded algebra $T(M)$ with the obvious $K$-module injection $M \to T(M)$ (of degree 0) is characterized up to isomorphism by the following "universal" property:

$$\text{12}^*$$
Proposition 3.1. If $M$ is a graded module and $A$ a graded algebra over $K$, each homomorphism $g: M \rightarrow A$ of graded modules, of degree zero, extends to a unique homomorphism $f: T(M) \rightarrow A$ of graded algebras.

Proof. Set $f(m_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes m_p) = (g m_1) \cdots (g m_p)$.

In particular, if $M$ is the free graded $K$-module $F$ on $n$ free generators $x_1, \ldots, x_n$, each of a given degree, $T(F)$ is the free graded algebra on these generators, in the sense that any set map $\xi: \{x_1, \ldots, x_n\} \rightarrow A$ of degree zero extends to a unique homomorphism $T(F) \rightarrow A$ of graded algebras. When $F$ has just one generator $x$, $T(F)$ is the polynomial algebra on the indeterminate $x$; when $V$ is a vector space over a field $K$, $T(V)$ is the tensor algebra of $V$ over $K$, consisting of all covariant tensors in any number of indices (cf. V.2).

The ground ring $K$ itself is a graded $K$-algebra, with trivial grading. An augmented graded algebra is a graded algebra $A$ together with a homomorphism $\varepsilon: A \rightarrow K$ of graded algebras. The polynomial, exterior, and tensor algebras each have an evident such augmentation. An augmented algebra has been called a "supplemented" algebra (CARTAN-EILENBERG). In the present book, an "augmentation" of an object $C$ in a category $\mathcal{C}$ will always mean a morphism $\varepsilon: C \rightarrow B$ into some fixed "base" object $B$ of $\mathcal{C}$. In the category of $K$-algebras, the base object is the algebra $K$; in the category of chain complexes of abelian groups, it is the trivial complex $\mathbb{Z}$, and so on.

Starting with graded $K$-modules, we have defined graded $K$-algebras by the product and identity element morphisms $\pi$ and $I$ which make the diagrams (3.1) commutative. By starting with other types of modules, we get the corresponding types of algebras. Thus, the diagrams (1.2) for (ungraded) $K$-modules define $K$-algebras; call them ungraded $K$-algebras when a distinction is necessary. Similarly $\mathbb{Z}$-graded modules yield $\mathbb{Z}$-graded algebras, bigraded modules, bigraded algebras, and internally graded modules yield internally graded algebras. As before, internally and externally graded algebras are equivalent: Each graded algebra $A$ determines an internally graded algebra $A, = \sum A_i$, with product given by bilinearity as in

$$(\lambda_0 + \cdots + \lambda_p) (\mu_0 + \cdots + \mu_q) = \sum \lambda_i \mu_j, \quad \lambda_i \in A_i, \mu_j \in A_j.$$

Note that a graded algebra isn't an algebra, but that an internally graded algebra may be regarded simply as an algebra (ignore the grading). The internally graded ideals, defined as above, are usually called homogeneous ideals; they are among the ideals of the associated ungraded algebra.

Exercises

1. Describe the free graded $K$-module on any graded set of generators.

2. Describe the bigraded tensor algebra of a bigraded module, and prove the analogue of Prop. 3.1.
3. Let $S$ be a set of elements in a graded algebra $A$. Show that the set of all homogeneous sums of products $s\delta a'$, for $s \in S$, is a graded ideal in $A$ and is the smallest ideal containing $S$. It is called the ideal generated by $S$ (or, spanned by $S$).

4. Show that a graded $K$-algebra may be described as a graded ring $R$ equipped with a homomorphism $I : K \rightarrow R$ of graded rings such that always $(1_k) = r(I_k)$.

4. Tensor Products of Algebras

The tensor product of two graded $K$-algebras $A$ and $\Sigma$ is their tensor product $A \otimes \Sigma$, as graded modules, with product map defined as the composite

$$\begin{array}{c}(A \otimes \Sigma) \otimes (A \otimes \Sigma) \\ \end{array} \overset{1 \otimes 1 \otimes 1}{\longrightarrow} A \otimes A \otimes \Sigma \otimes \Sigma A \quad \quad, \quad (4.1)$$

where $t$ is the (signed) transposition $(2.4)$ of $\Sigma$ and $A$, and with identity-element map given by $I \otimes I : K = K \otimes K \rightarrow A \otimes \Sigma$. In terms of elements, the product is given by

$$(\lambda \otimes \sigma) (\lambda' \otimes \sigma') = (-1)^{\deg \sigma \deg \lambda'} \lambda \lambda' \otimes \sigma \sigma'$$

and the identity of $A \otimes \Sigma$ is $1_A \otimes 1_{\Sigma}$. The axioms for a graded algebra all hold. If $f : A \rightarrow A'$ and $g : \Sigma \rightarrow \Sigma'$ are homomorphisms of graded algebras, so is $f \otimes g : A \otimes \Sigma \rightarrow A' \otimes \Sigma'$. Also, $\lambda \rightarrow \lambda \otimes 1_\Sigma$, $\sigma \rightarrow 1_A \otimes \sigma$ define homomorphisms

$$A \rightarrow A \otimes \Sigma \leftarrow \Sigma$$

of graded algebras. With these mappings, the tensor product $A \otimes \Sigma$ is characterized up to isomorphism by the following property:

**Proposition 4.1.** If $f : A \rightarrow \Omega$ and $g : \Sigma \rightarrow \Omega$ are homomorphisms of graded $K$-algebras such that always

$$(f \lambda) (g \sigma) = (-1)^{\deg \lambda \deg \sigma} (g \sigma) (f \lambda), \quad (4.2)$$

there is a unique homomorphism $h : A \otimes \Sigma \rightarrow \Omega$ of graded algebras with $h(A \otimes 1) = f(A)$, $h(1 \otimes \sigma) = g(\sigma)$.

The proof is left to the reader (set $h(A \otimes \sigma) = f(A)g(\sigma)$).

If $\Omega$ is commutative, condition (4.2) holds automatically. Thus in the category of commutative graded algebras, $A \rightarrow A \otimes \Sigma \leftarrow \Sigma$ is a universal diagram with ends $A$ and $\Sigma$. In the category of all (not necessarily commutative) algebras, the universal diagram requires a free product [COHN 1959], the couniversal diagram a direct product $A \times \Sigma$ as defined below in (VII.5.1).

The tensor product of algebras, with this characterization, applies in all the other relevant cases: The tensor product of $K$-algebras (trivial grading); of rings ($K = Z$); of bigraded algebras. In each case the tensor product of algebras is commutative (i.e. $A \otimes \Sigma \cong \Sigma \otimes A$) and associative,
and satisfies $K \otimes A \cong A$; in other words, the natural isomorphisms (2.3) — (2.5) hold for algebras. The tensor product of algebras is also called their Kronecker Product or, in older literature, their "direct" product.

We also assign to each graded algebra $A$ a graded opposite algebra $A^{\text{op}}$. This is defined to be the graded $K$-module $A$ with the same identity element and the new product $\pi_A \tau: A \otimes A \to A$ (transpose the order of the factors, with the appropriate sign, then multiply). To avoid the inconvenience of writing two different products for the same pair of elements, we also say that the underlying graded module of $A^{\text{op}}$ is an isomorphic copy of that of $A$, under an isomorphism $\lambda \mapsto \lambda^{\text{op}}$, and with product defined by $\lambda^{\text{op}} \mu^{\text{op}} = (-1)^{\deg \lambda \deg \mu} (\mu \lambda)^{\text{op}}$. This product is clearly associative. For example, if $A$ is the (trivially graded) algebra of $n \times n$ matrices with entries in $K$, with the usual "row-by-column" matrix multiplication, then $A^{\text{op}}$ is the ring of $n \times n$ matrices with "column-by-row" multiplication. The same construction of an opposite applies to rings (as already noted in V.7), to bigraded algebras, etc., and in each case there are natural isomorphisms

$$(A^{\text{op}})^{\text{op}} \cong A, \quad (A \otimes \Sigma)^{\text{op}} \cong A^{\text{op}} \otimes \Sigma^{\text{op}}.$$ (4.3)

The tensor product may be used to construct various examples of algebras, as follows.

Let $P_K[x_i], i = 1, \ldots, n$, be the graded polynomial algebra ($\S$ 3) on the indeterminate $x_i$ of even degree $d_i \geq 0$. The commutative graded algebra

$$P_K[x_1, \ldots, x_n] = P_K[x_1] \otimes \cdots \otimes P_K[x_n]$$ (4.4)

is called the graded polynomial algebra on the given $x_i$. In each dimension $m$, $P_K[x_1, \ldots, x_n]$ is the free $K$-module on all

$$x_1^e \otimes \cdots \otimes x_n^e \quad \text{with} \quad e_1 d_1 + \ldots + e_n d_n = m \quad \text{(if $e = 0$, read $x^0_i$ as $1_K$)};$$

two such generators are multiplied by adding the corresponding exponents. This polynomial algebra is the free commutative algebra on the generators $x_i$ of even degree, in the sense of the following characterization.

**Proposition 4.2.** If $A$ is a commutative graded algebra, any set map $\xi: \{x_1, \ldots, x_n\} \to A$ with $\deg(\xi x_i) = \deg x_i$ for all $i$ extends to a unique homomorphism $f: P_K[x_1, \ldots, x_n] \to A$ of graded algebras.

**Proof.** Since $P_K[x_i]$ is free on $x_i$, the correspondence $x_i \mapsto \xi x_i$ extends to an algebra homomorphism $f_i: P_K[x_i] \to A$. Since $A$ is commutative, these $f_i$ combine by Prop. 4.1 to give a unique $f: P_K \to A$.

If all $x_i$ have the same degree, this property shows that a change in the order of the indeterminates simply replaces the polynomial algebra by an isomorphic algebra; hence the order of the $x_i$ is irrelevant. If all
the $x_i$ have degree zero, $P_K[x_1, \ldots, x_n]$ is trivially graded. We may regard it as an ungraded algebra, and denote it as $K[x_1, \ldots, x_n]$; it is the ordinary polynomial algebra in $n$ indeterminates over $K$. For $n$ given constants $k_i \in K$, Prop. 4.2 yields a unique homomorphism $f : P_K \rightarrow K$ with $f x_i = k_i$, $i = 1, \ldots, n$. This is the homomorphism obtained by the familiar process of "substituting $k_i$ for $x_i, i = 1, \ldots, n$".

We next construct a similar free strictly commutative algebra with generators $u_i$ of odd degree (degree 1 will suffice). For $n$ letters $u_1, \ldots, u_n$, each of degree 1, the tensor product (over $K$)

$$E_K[u_1, \ldots, u_n] = E_K[u_1] \otimes \cdots \otimes E_K[u_n]$$

is a strictly commutative graded algebra, called the exterior algebra over $K$ with generators $u_1, \ldots, u_n$. As before,

**Proposition 4.3.** The exterior algebra $E = E_K[u_1, \ldots, u_n]$ is in degree 1 the free $K$-module $E_1$ on the generators $u_1, \ldots, u_n$. If $A$ is any strictly commutative graded $K$-algebra, each module homomorphism $\beta : E_1 \rightarrow A_1$ extends to a unique homomorphism $f : E \rightarrow A$ of graded algebras.

The product of two elements $e$ and $e'$ in the exterior algebra is often written as $e \wedge e'$. Clearly $E$ is the free module on all products (in order) of generators $u_i$: the products of degree $p > 0$ are

$$u_{i_1} u_{i_2} \cdots u_{i_p} = u_{i_1} \wedge u_{i_2} \wedge \cdots \wedge u_{i_p},$$

with $1 \leq i_1 < i_2 < \cdots < i_p \leq n$. The number of such products is $(\frac{p}{q}, n - p)$, where

$$(p, q) = (p + q)! / (p! q!) = \binom{p + q}{p} = \binom{p + q}{q}$$

(4.5)

is our notation for the binomial coefficient. Any permutation $\sigma$ of the marks 1, $\ldots, p$ can be written as the composite of $\sigma$ transpositions of adjacent marks, where $\text{sgn } \sigma = 1$ or 0 (mod 2) according as the permutation $\sigma$ is odd or even, so the commutation rule yields

$$u_{i_{\sigma_1}} u_{i_{\sigma_2}} \cdots u_{i_{\sigma_p}} = (-1)^{\text{sgn } \sigma} u_{i_1} u_{i_2} \cdots u_{i_p}.$$

The tensor product $K \otimes_Z K'$ of two commutative rings is a commutative ring, and the definition of $E$ shows that

$$E_K[u] \otimes_Z E_K[u'] = E_{K \otimes_K K'}[u, u'].$$

(4.6)

There are similar isomorphisms for more $u'$s, more factors, or for $E$ replaced by $P$. The polynomials on $n$ commuting indeterminates with coefficients in a not necessarily commutative (ungraded) $K$-algebra $A$ may be defined as

$$P_A[x_1, \ldots, x_n] = \Lambda \otimes_K P_K[x_1, \ldots, x_n].$$

(4.7)
Exercises

1. In any graded algebra $A$ let $C = C(A)$ be the ideal spanned (cf. Ex. 3.3) by all differences $\lambda \mu - (-1)^{mn} \mu \lambda$ for $m = \deg A, n = \deg \mu$. Show that $A/C$ is commutative, and that any homomorphism of $A$ into a commutative algebra factors uniquely through the projection $A \to A/C$.

2. The symmetric algebra $S(M)$ is defined from the tensor algebra as $S(M) = T(M)/C(T(M))$, for $C$ as in Ex. 1. Show that Prop. 3.1 holds when $A$ is commutative and $T(M)$ is replaced by $S(M)$, and that, for $M$ free on a finite set of generators of even degrees, $S(M)$ is the polynomial algebra.

3. Make a similar construction of the exterior algebra on any graded $K$-module $M$ consisting of elements all of degree 1.

4. In Ex. 2, show $S(M \oplus N) \cong S(M) \otimes S(N)$.

5. Show that a free strictly commutative graded algebra on any finite graded set of generators may be constructed as a tensor product of polynomial and exterior algebras.

6. If $P = K[x]$ and $Q = P[y]$, show that $Q$, as an (ungraded) $K$-algebra, is isomorphic to $K[x, y]$. Extend this result to the graded case with more indeterminate~.

5. Modules over Algebras

Let $A$ be a graded $K$-algebra. A left $A$-module $A$ is a graded $K$-module together with a homomorphism $\pi_A: A \otimes A \to A$ of graded $K$-modules, of degree zero, such that the diagrams

\[
\begin{align*}
A \otimes A \otimes A & \xrightarrow{\pi_A \otimes 1} A \otimes A \\
\downarrow 1 \otimes \pi_A & \quad \downarrow \pi_A & K \otimes A = A \\
A \otimes A & \xrightarrow{\pi_A} A,
\end{align*}
\]

commute. Alternatively, a left $A$-module is a graded abelian group $A$ together with a function assigning to each $\lambda \in A$ and $a \in A$ an element $\lambda a \in A$ with $\deg(\lambda a) = \deg \lambda + \deg a$ such that always (for $\deg I = \deg \lambda_2$, $\deg a = \deg a$)

\[
(\lambda_1 + \lambda_2) a = \lambda_1 a + \lambda_2 a, \quad \lambda(a_1 + a_2) = \lambda a_1 + \lambda a_2, \quad (\lambda \mu) a = (\lambda \mu) a, \quad 1_A a = a.
\]

Indeed, given these conditions, the definition $k a = (k 1_A) a$ makes $A$ a graded $K$-module. By (5.3), $(k \lambda) a = k (\lambda a) = 1 (k a)$ holds. With (5.2) this makes the function $\lambda a$ $K$-bilinear, so defines $\pi_A$ as $\pi_A(\lambda \otimes a) = \lambda a$. Finally, (5.3) is a restatement of the commutativity (5.1).

If $C$ and $A$ are left $A$-modules, a $A$-module homomorphism $f: C \to A$ of degree $d$ is a homomorphism of graded $K$-modules, of degree $d$, such that

\[
f \pi_C = \pi_A (1 \otimes f): A \otimes C \to A;
\]

in other words, such that always

\[
f(\lambda c) = (-1)^{(\deg f)(\deg \lambda)} 1 (fc);
\]
the usual sign arises from the definition (2.2) of $1 \otimes f$. The set of all such $f$ of degree $d$ is a $K$-module which we denote as $\text{Hom}^{-d}(C, A)$.

The class $\mathcal{M}$ of all left $A$-modules is a category with morphisms $\text{hom}_A(C, A) = \text{Hom}_A^0(C, A)$ those of degree 0. In $\mathcal{M}$, direct sums, sub- and quotient-modules, kernel, image, cokernel, and cokernel are defined as expected, with the usual properties. For each $n$, $\text{Hom}^n(C, A)$ is an additive bifunctor on $\mathcal{M}$ to $K$-modules, contravariant in $C$ and covariant in $A$. The family $\text{Hom}_A^n(C, A) = \{\text{Hom}_A^n(C, A), n = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \ldots\}$ is a similar bifunctor on $\mathcal{M}$ to 2-graded $K$-modules. According to the definition (5.4) of a $A$-module homomorphism, we can also describe $\text{Hom}_A^n(C, A)$ as a 2-graded $K$-module which is the kernel of the natural homomorphism

$$
\psi : \text{Hom}(C, A) \rightarrow \text{Hom}(A \otimes C, A), \quad \text{Hom} = \text{Hom}_K,
$$

of 2-graded $K$-modules defined by

$$
\psi f = \pi_A (1 \otimes f) - f \pi_C : A \otimes C \rightarrow A.
$$

**Proposition 5.1.** The functor $\text{Hom}_A$ is left exact; that is, if $0 \rightarrow B \rightarrow C \rightarrow 0$ is a short right exact sequence in $\mathcal{M}$, then the induced sequence

$$
0 \rightarrow \text{Hom}_A(C, A) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_A(B, A) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_A(D, A)
$$

is exact, with the corresponding result when $A$ is replaced by a short left exact sequence.

**Proof.** Construct the commutative $3 \times 3$ diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
0 & \rightarrow & \text{Hom}_A(C, A) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_A(B, A) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_A(D, A) \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
0 & \rightarrow & \text{Hom}(C, A) \rightarrow \text{Hom}(B, A) \rightarrow \text{Hom}(D, A) \\
\downarrow \psi & & \downarrow \psi & & \downarrow \psi \\
0 & \rightarrow & \text{Hom}(A \otimes C, A) \rightarrow \text{Hom}(A \otimes B, A) \rightarrow \text{Hom}(A \otimes D, A).
\end{array}
\]

By right exactness of the tensor product (Thm. V.5.1), $A \otimes D \rightarrow A \otimes B \rightarrow A \otimes C \rightarrow 0$ is right exact. The left exactness of $\text{Hom}_K$ makes the last two rows left exact; by the definition (5.5), all three columns are left exact (when starting with $0 \rightarrow \ldots$). The $3 \times 3$ lemma (in the strong form of Ex. II.5.4) now shows the first row left exact, q.e.d.

Right $A$-modules $G$ are treated similarly. A homomorphism $\gamma : G \rightarrow G$ of right $A$-modules must satisfy $\gamma(gl) = (yg)l$; no sign is needed (as in (5.4')), because the homomorphism and the module operations act on opposite sides of $g \in G$. A right $A$-module $G$ may also be described as a left $A^{op}$-module, with operators switched by $\lambda^{op} g = (-1)^{\text{deg} \lambda \text{deg} g} g \lambda$; this definition insures that $\lambda^{op} (\mu^{op} g) = (\lambda^{op} \mu^{op}) g$. 

5. Modules over Algebras
Chapter VI. Types of Algebras

Given modules $G_A$ and $A^A$, their tensor product over $A$ is a graded $K$-module. It is defined to be the cokernel of the map $\varphi$ of graded $K$-modules

$$G \otimes A \otimes A \rightarrow G \otimes A \rightarrow G \otimes A \rightarrow 0$$

(5.7)
given as $\varphi(g \otimes \lambda \otimes a) = g \lambda \otimes a - g \otimes \lambda a$. This amounts to stating that each $(G \otimes A)_n$ is the $K$-module quotient of $(G \otimes A)_n$ by the submodule generated by all differences $g \lambda \otimes a - g \otimes \lambda a$ in $(G \otimes A)_n$. This tensor product is characterized via the middle linear functions to a graded $K$-module $M$, just as in Thm. V.1.1:

**Theorem 5.2.** If $f$ is a family of $K$-bilinear functions $f_{p,q}$ on $G_p \times A_q$ to $M_{p+q}$ which is $A$-middle associative in the sense that always $f(g \lambda, a) = f(g, \lambda a)$, there is a unique homomorphism $w: G \otimes A \rightarrow M$ of graded $K$-modules, with deg $w = 0$, such that always $\omega(g \otimes a) = f(g, a)$.

**Proof.** Each $f_{p,q}$ is bilinear, hence determines $w_{p,q}: G_p \otimes A_q \rightarrow M_{p+q}$ with $\omega(g \otimes a) = f_{p,q}(g, a)$; the middle associativity insures that $\omega'$ vanishes on the image of the map $\varphi$ of (5.7), and hence that $\omega'$ induces a map $\omega$ on the cokernel $G \otimes A$ of $\varphi$, as desired.

This result implies that $A$-module homomorphisms $\gamma: G \rightarrow G'$ and $\alpha: A \rightarrow A'$ of degrees $d$ and $e$, respectively, determine a homomorphism $\gamma \otimes \alpha: G \otimes A \rightarrow G' \otimes A'$ of degree $d + e$ of graded $K$-modules by the formula

$$(\gamma \otimes \alpha)(g \otimes a) = (-1)^{(deg \alpha)(deg g)} \gamma g \otimes \alpha a,$$

(5.8)

with the expected rules for composing $(\gamma \otimes \alpha)$ with $(\gamma' \otimes \alpha')$ — with a sign $(-1)^{(deg \alpha)(deg g')}$ in particular, $G \otimes A$ is a covariant and biadditive bifunctor on the categories $A_A$ and $A_{A'}$ of right and left $A$-modules to graded $K$-modules. From the definition (5.7) it follows as in Prop. 5.1 that this functor carries right exact sequences (in $G$ or $A$) into right exact sequences.

Modules over other types of algebras (2-graded, bigraded, etc.) are correspondingly defined. Note that each $A$-module $A$ automatically carries the same type of structure as $A$ (e.g., graded when $A$ is graded, bigraded when $A$ is bigraded). We may introduce modules with added structure; thus a graded module over an ungraded algebra $A$ means a module over $A$, regarded as a trivially graded algebra — exactly as for graded modules over the commutative ring $K$.

If $A$ and $2$ are two graded $K$-algebras, a $A_{2}\Sigma$-bimodule $A$ — in symbols $A_{2}\Sigma$ — is a graded $K$-module which is both a left $A$-module and a right 2-module such that always $(\lambda a)a = \lambda(aa)$. This condition amounts to the commutativity of an appropriate diagram. Note that $ka = (k1) a = a(k1)$, so that the same given $K$-module structure on $A$ comes from the left $A$-module structure by pull-back along $1: K \rightarrow A$,
or from the right $\mathbb{Z}$-module structure by pull-back along $I: K \to \Sigma$.

For example, any graded algebra $A$ is a $\Lambda A$-bimodule. Since $A$ is a left $A$-module and $\Sigma$ a right $\mathbb{Z}$-module, the tensor product $A \otimes K \Sigma$ is a $\Lambda A$-$\Sigma$-bimodule; in fact, the free bimodule on one generator $I \otimes 1$. Similarly, for modules $A$ and $B$, the tensor product $A \otimes K B$ is canonically a $A$-$\mathbb{Z}$-bimodule via $I(a \otimes b) \sigma = I a \otimes ba$.

The typographical accident that a letter has two sides could hardly mean that modules are restricted to one-sided modules and bimodules. Indeed, we naturally reach trimodules; for example, modules $A$ and $\Lambda B$ will have a tensor product $A \otimes K B$ which is canonically a right $\Omega$- and left $A$-$\mathbb{Z}$-module. Here we have called $C$ a left $\Lambda A$-$\Sigma$-module if it is both a left $A$- and a left $\mathbb{Z}$-module such that always

$$\lambda(\sigma c) = (-1)^{\deg \lambda} \deg \sigma \sigma(\lambda c).$$

Fortunately we can reduce trimodules to bimodules or even to left modules over a single algebra. By setting $(I \otimes \sigma)c = \lambda(\sigma c)$, each left $A$-$\mathbb{Z}$-module may be regarded as a left $(\Lambda A \otimes \Sigma)$-module, or conversely. Similarly we have the logical equivalences

$$B \cong \text{op} B, \quad \Lambda A \cong \text{op} \Lambda A$$

via $\sigma \text{op} b = (-1)^{\deg \sigma} \deg \sigma b \sigma$, $(\Lambda \otimes \text{op}) a = (-1)^{\deg \sigma} \deg a \lambda a \sigma$. This reduction carries with it the definitions of Hom and $\otimes$ for bimodules. Thus for bimodules $\Sigma G A$ and $\Lambda A \Sigma$ the bimodule tensor product

$$G \otimes \Lambda A \Sigma = G \otimes (\Lambda A \otimes \Sigma)$$

is by (5.7) the quotient of $G \otimes K A$ by the graded $K$-submodule spanned by all

$$g \lambda \otimes a - g \otimes \lambda a, \quad \sigma g \otimes a - (-1)^{\deg \sigma} (\deg g + \deg a) g \otimes \sigma a.$$

The vanishing of the first expression is $A$-middle associativity; that of the second is $\Sigma$-outside associativity. Similarly the graded $K$-module of bimodule homomorphisms of $\Lambda C \Sigma$ into $\Lambda A \Sigma$ is written $\text{Hom}_{\Lambda C \Sigma}(C, A) = \text{Hom}_{(\Lambda \otimes \Sigma)\text{op}}(C, A)$.

Exercises

1. An (ungraded) $K$-algebra $A$ is a ring $R$ equipped with a ring homomorphism $I: K \to R$ with $I(1)$ in the center of $R$. Show that a left $A$-module $A$ is just a left $R$-module, with the $K$-module structure of $A$ given by pull-back along $I$. Show also that $\text{Hom}_A(C, A) = \text{Hom}_R(C, A)$ and $G \otimes_A A = G \otimes_R A$.

2. As in Ex. 1, reduce modules over the graded algebra $A$ to modules over $A$, regarded as a graded ring (cf. Ex. 3.4).

6. Cohomology of free Abelian Groups

As an illustration of tensor products of algebras we calculate the cohomology of a free abelian group.
Chapter VI. Types of Algebras

For the group ring \( Z(\Pi \times \Pi_2) \) of the cartesian product of two multiplicative groups \( \Pi_1 \) and \( \Pi_2 \) there is a natural isomorphism

\[
Z(\Pi_1 \times \Pi_2) \cong Z(\Pi_1) \otimes Z(\Pi_2)
\]  

(6.1)

For \( Z(\Pi_i) \) is characterized (Prop. IV.4.1) by the fact that any multiplicative map \( \mu_i \) of \( \Pi_i \) into a ring \( S \), with \( \mu_i(1) = 1_S \), extends to a ring homomorphism \( Z(\Pi_i) \to S \). By Prop. 4.1, a multiplicative map \( \mu: \Pi_1 \times \Pi_2 \to S \) with \( \mu(1) = 1 \) then extends to a unique ring homomorphism \( Z(\Pi_1) \otimes Z(\Pi_2) \to S \), so that \( Z(\Pi_1) \otimes Z(\Pi_2) \) satisfies this characterization of the group ring \( Z(\Pi_1 \times \Pi_2) \).

Let \( C \) be the infinite (multiplicative) cyclic group with generator \( t \), and \( R = Z(C) \) its group ring. Any element of \( R \) is a polynomial in positive, negative, and zero powers of \( t \), hence may be written as \( t^m \phi(t) \) where \( \phi \) is an (ordinary) polynomial in positive powers of \( t \) with integral coefficients. The kernel of the augmentation \( \varepsilon: R \to Z \) is the set of all multiples of \( t-1 \), hence the exact sequence

\[
0 \leftarrow Z \leftarrow R \leftarrow Ru \leftarrow 0
\]  

(6.2)

with \( Ru \) the free \( R \)-module with one generator \( u \) and \( \partial u = t-1 \). Thus \( \partial: R \leftarrow Ru \) is a free \( R \)-module resolution of \( \varepsilon Z \); it is a special case of the resolution found in (IV.7.3) for any free group, and is analogous to the resolution (1.3) for a polynomial ring. For any \( R \)-module \( A \), \( H^1(C, A) \) may be calculated from this resolution to be the factor group \( A/[\{ta-a|a \in A\}] \), while \( H^n(C, A) = 0 \) if \( n > 1 \).

The free abelian group \( 17 \) on \( n \) generators \( t_1, \ldots, t_n \) is the cartesian product of \( n \) infinite cyclic groups. By (6.1) the group ring \( Z(IT) \) is \( R^1 \otimes \cdots \otimes R^n \), where each \( R^i \) is the group ring \( Z(C, (t_i)) \), while the augmentation \( \varepsilon: Z(17) \to Z \) is the tensor product \( \varepsilon^1 \otimes \cdots \otimes \varepsilon^n \) of the augmentations \( \varepsilon^i: R^i \to Z \). For each index \( i \) form the \( R^i \)-projective resolution \( X^i: R^i \leftarrow R^i u_i \) as in (6.2). Form the tensor product complex

\[
X = X^1 \otimes Z X^2 \otimes Z \cdots \otimes Z X^n;
\]

it is a chain complex of free \( R^1 \otimes \cdots \otimes R^n \) modules.

On the one hand, each \( X^i \) is a complex of free abelian groups. The iterated \( \text{K"{u}nnethe} \) tensor formula (Thm. V.10.1) shows that the homology product

\[
\sum H_{m_i}(X^i) \otimes \cdots \otimes H_{m_n}(X^n) \to H_m(X^1 \otimes \cdots \otimes X^n)
\]

is an isomorphism in each dimension \( m = m_1 + \cdots + m_n \). But \( H_{m_i}(X^i) = 0 \) unless \( m_i = 0 \), while \( \varepsilon_i: H_0(X^i) \cong Z \), so \( H_m(X) = 0 \) for \( m \) positive, while \( \varepsilon: H_0(X) \cong Z \). This proves that \( X \) is a free resolution of \( Z \) as a 17-module.
On the other hand, each $X^i$ is the exterior algebra $E_{R^i}[u^i]$; as in (4.6), $X$ is the exterior algebra $E_{Z(I)}[u_1, \ldots, u_r]$, so has the form of an exact sequence

$$0 \leftarrow Z \leftarrow X_0 \leftarrow X_1 \leftarrow \cdots \leftarrow X_n \leftarrow 0$$

of $I$-modules, with each $X_\hat{p}$ free on the generators $u_{i_1} \otimes \cdots \otimes u_{i_p}$ with $1 \leq i_1 < \cdots < i_p \leq n$. Since $\partial u_i = t_i - 1$, the boundary formula (V.9.2) for the tensor product gives

$$\partial(u_{i_1} \otimes \cdots \otimes u_{i_p}) = \sum_{k=1}^{p} (-1)^{k-1} (t_{i_k} - 1) u_{i_1} \otimes \cdots \otimes \hat{u}_{i_k} \otimes \cdots \otimes u_{i_p},$$

(6.3)

where the $\hat{\cdot}$ indicates omission. The cohomology of $I$ may be computed from this resolution. For any $I$-module $A$,

$$\text{Ext}_{I}^{p}(Z, A) \cong H^{p}(\Pi, A) = 0, \quad p > n.$$  

(6.4)

For $p \leq n$, a $p$-cochain $f: X_{\hat{p}} + A$, as a module homomorphism, is determined by $\otimes, n-p$) arbitrary elements $f(u_{i_1} \otimes \cdots \otimes u_{i_p}) \in A$, and

$$\delta f(u_{i_1} \otimes \cdots \otimes u_{i_p}) = \sum_{k=1}^{p+1} (-1)^{k-1} (t_{i_k} - 1) f(u_{i_1} \otimes \cdots \otimes \hat{u}_{i_k} \otimes \cdots \otimes u_{i_p}).$$

In particular, if $A$ is an abelian group regarded as a trivial $I$-module ($t_i a = a$ for all $i$), then $\delta f$ is always zero, so $H^{p}(\Pi, A)$ is simply the direct sum of $(p, n-p)$ copies of $A$.

**Exercises**

1. For $\Pi$ free abelian as above, show that $H^{1}(\Pi, A)$ is the quotient $L/M$, where $L$ is the subgroup of $A \oplus \cdots \oplus A$ (n summands) consisting of all $(a_1, \ldots, a_n)$ with $t_{i_1} a_{i_1} - t_{i_2} a_{i_2} = a_{i_1} - a_{i_2}$ always, while $M$ is all $(t_1 a - a, \ldots, t_n a - a)$ for $a \in A$. Interpret this result in terms of classes of crossed homomorphisms.

2. Obtain a similar formula for $H^{p}(\Pi, A)$ and compare this with the result found for two generators in IV.3.7.

3. Determine $H^{n}(\Pi, A)$ for $\Pi$ free abelian on $n$ generators.

7. Differential Graded Algebras

The resolution $X$ of the last section is both a complex and an algebra, with the boundary of a product given by the Leibniz formula (1.5). Such we call a DG-algebra. Further examples of DG-algebras will appear in the next chapter; they will be used extensively in Chap. X, to which the following systematic development will be relevant.

A positive complex $X = (X, \partial)$ of K-modules is a graded K-module $X = \{X_n\}$ equipped with a K-module homomorphism $\partial = \partial_X: X \rightarrow X$ of degree $-1$ such that $\partial^2 = 0$. A positive complex will thus also be called a differential graded module (DG-module for short): the homology of
Chapter VI. Types of Algebras

X is the graded K-module $H(X) = \{H_n(X)\}$. A chain transformation (or DG-module homomorphism) $f: X \to X'$ is just a homomorphism of graded modules, of degree 0, with $\partial_x f = f \partial_x$. The set of all such $f$ is an abelian group $\text{hom}(X, X')$; with these morphisms the DG-modules form a category. Similarly, a not necessarily positive complex of K-modules is a differential $\mathbb{Z}$-graded module (DG$_\mathbb{Z}$-module).

The tensor product $X \otimes Y$ of two DG-modules is the tensor product over $K$ of the graded modules $X$ and $Y$ equipped with the differential $\partial = \partial_x \otimes 1 + 1 \otimes \partial_y$. According to the definition (2.2) of $1 \otimes \partial_y$ this gives

$$\partial(x \otimes y) = \partial x \otimes y + (-1)^{\deg x} x \otimes \partial y,$$

(7.1)

in agreement with the previous definition (V.9.2) of the tensor product of chain complexes. This tensor product of DG-modules satisfies the standard natural isomorphisms (2.3), (2.4), and (2.5); in the latter, the ground ring $K$ is regarded as a DG-module with trivial grading and differential $\partial = 0$.

For DG-modules $X$ and $Y$ the $\mathbb{Z}$-graded module $\text{Hom}(X, Y) = \{\text{Hom}^n(X, Y)\}$ has a differential defined for each $f \in \text{Hom}^n$ as $\partial_H f = \partial_Y f + (-1)^{n+1} f \partial_X$, as in (III.4.4). Thus $\text{Hom}(X, Y)$ is a DG$_\mathbb{Z}$-module. Note especially that $\text{Hom}(X, Y)$ with capital H in "Hom" stands for homomorphisms of graded modules of all degrees, while $\text{hom}(X, Y)$, with lower case h, includes only the homomorphisms of DG-modules, of degree 0.

A DG-algebra $U = (U, \partial)$ over $K$ is a graded algebra $U$ equipped with a graded $K$-module homomorphism $\partial: U \to U$ of degree $-1$ with $\partial^2 = 0$, such that the Leibniz formula

$$\partial(u_1 u_2) = (\partial u_1) u_2 + (-1)^{\deg u_1} u_1 (\partial u_2)$$

(7.2)

always holds. Similarly, a homomorphism $f: U \to U'$ of DG-algebras is a homomorphism of graded algebras (conditions (3.3)) with $\partial f = f \partial$. With these morphisms, the DG-algebras form a category.

By the Leibniz formula the product of two cycles is a cycle, and the product of a boundary $\partial u_1$ by a cycle $u_2$ is a boundary $\partial(u_1 u_2)$. Hence a product of homology classes in $H(U)$ may be defined by $\text{cls}(u_1) (\text{cls} u_2) = \text{cls}(u_1 u_2)$; this makes $H(U)$ a graded algebra. Any homomorphism $f: U \to U'$ of DG-algebras induces a homomorphism $f_*: H(U) \to H(U')$ of graded algebras.

The tensor product $U \otimes U'$ of two DG-algebras is their tensor product as graded algebras, with the differential given by (7.1). The analogue of Prop. 4.1 holds. The opposite $U^{\text{op}}$ of a DG-algebra is the opposite of $U$, as a graded algebra, with the same differential.

A left $U$-module $X = (X, \partial)$ is a left module over the graded algebra $U$ equipped with a graded $K$-module homomorphism $\partial: X \to X$ of degree
Differential Graded Algebras

-1 with \( \partial^2 = 0 \), such that the formula

\[
\partial (ux) = (\partial u)x + (-1)^\deg u (\partial x)
\]

always holds. Equivalently, a left \( U \)-module \( X \) is a DG-module over \( K \) equipped with a homomorphism \( U \otimes_K X \to X \) of DG-modules, of degree 0, written \( u \otimes x \to ux \), such that the standard conditions

\[
(u_1 + u_2)x = u_1x + u_2x, \quad (u_1u_2)x = u_1(u_2x), \quad 1x = x,
\]

always hold, as in the diagrams (5.1). If \( X \) and \( Y \) are \( U \)-modules, a morphism \( \xi : X \to Y \) is a homomorphism of the whole structure: A homomorphism of DG-modules, of degree 0, which is also a homomorphism of modules over the graded algebra \( U \); in other words, \( \xi \) is additive and

\[
\xi(kx) = k(\xi x), \quad \xi(\partial x) = \partial(\xi x), \quad \xi(ux) = u(\xi x), \quad \deg(\xi x) = \deg x.
\]

The \( K \)-module of all such morphisms \( \xi \) is written \( \text{hom}_U(X, Y) \). With these morphisms, the left \( U \)-modules form a category in which sub- and quotient modules, kernels, images, coimages, and cokernels are defined as usual. Right \( U \)-modules are treated similarly.

On this category we define bifunctors \( \text{Hom} \) and \( \otimes_U \). For \( U \)-modules \( X \) and \( Y \), a \textit{graded} \( U \)-module homomorphism \( f : X \to Y \) of degree \(-n\) is a homomorphism of \( X \) to \( Y \), regarded just as modules over the graded algebra \( U \); in other words, \( f \) is additive and

\[
f(kx) = k(fx), \quad f(ux) = uf(x), \quad \deg(fx) = \deg x - n,
\]

but \( f \) need not commute with \( \otimes \). The set of all such \( f \) is a \( K \)-module \( \text{Hom}^*_U(X, Y) \). The family \( \text{Hom}, (X, Y) = \{\text{Hom}^*_U(X, Y)\} \) becomes a DG\(_2\)-module over \( K \) when the differential \( \partial_H : \text{Hom}^n \to \text{Hom}^{n+1} \) is defined by the usual formula

\[
\partial_H f = \partial_y f + (-1)^{n+1} f a.
\]

Thus \( \text{Hom}_U \) with capital "H" differs from \( \text{hom}_U \), with lower case "h":

\( \text{Hom}, (X, Y) \) is a DG\(_2\)-module over \( K \); elements all \( f : X \to Y \);

\( \text{hom}_U(X, Y) \) is an (ungraded) \( K \)-module; elements all \( \xi : X \to Y \).

Moreover, \( \text{hom}_U \) is the \( K \)-module of cycles of degree 0 in the complex \( \text{Hom} \).

Let \( X \) be a right \( U \)-module, \( Y \) a left \( U \)-module. Considered just as modules over the graded \textit{algebra} \( U \), they define a graded \( K \)-module \( X \otimes_U Y \) which becomes a DG-module over \( K \) when the differential is defined by (7.1); for, by that formula, \( \partial(xu \otimes y) = \partial(x \otimes uy) \) (U-middle associativity). Thus the \textit{elements} of \( \text{Hom} \), and \( \otimes_U \) are defined from
the grading and module structure of $X$ and $Y$; the differentials on $\text{Hom}_U$ and $\otimes_U$ come from the differentials on $X$ and $Y$.

For two DG-algebras $U$ and $U'$ a $U$-$U'$-bimodule $(X, \partial)$ has one differential $\partial$ which satisfies (7.3) for $\partial(ux)$ and the corresponding rule for $\partial(xu')$ — just as a bimodule has just one $K$-module structure induced from $U$ or from $U'$.

The augmented case is relevant. A differential graded augmented algebra $U$ (DGA-algebra, for short) is a DG-algebra together with an augmentation $\varepsilon: U \to K$ which is a homomorphism of DG-algebras. Here the ground ring $K$ is regarded as a DG-algebra with trivial grading ($K_0 = K$) and differential ($a = 0$). Such an augmentation is entirely determined by its component of degree $0$, which is a homomorphism $\varepsilon_0: U_0 \to K$ (of (ungraded) $K$-modules with

$$
\varepsilon_01 = 1, \quad \varepsilon_0(u_0u_0) = (\varepsilon_0u_0)(\varepsilon_0u_0'), \quad \varepsilon_0\partial = 0: U_1 \to K.
$$

A DG-algebra $U$ is connected if $U_0 = K$ and $\partial: U_1 \to U_0$ is zero; this implies $H_0(U) \cong K$ (hence the choice of the term "connected": A topological space $X$ is path-connected precisely when $H_0(X) \cong \mathbb{Z}$). A connected DG-algebra has a canonical augmentation $\varepsilon_0 = 1: U_0 \to K$.

Next some examples of DG-algebras. Take the polynomial algebra $P_K[x]$ in an indeterminate $x$ of degree $1$, select some $k_0 \in K$, and set $\partial x = k_0$; with this, $\partial x^{2m} = 0$, $\partial x^{2m+1} = k_0 x^{2m}$, and $P$ is a DG-algebra. Similarly, the exterior algebra $E_K[u]$, with $u$ of degree $1$, has a unique differential with $\partial u = k_0$, and is a DG-algebra.

If $X$ is a DG-module over $K$, the tensor algebra $T(X)$ has a unique DG-algebra structure such that the injection $X \to T(X)$ is a chain transformation; the requisite differential in $T(X)$ is given by

$$
\partial(x_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes x_p) = \sum_{i=1}^p (-1)^m x_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes \partial x_i \otimes \cdots \otimes x_p
$$

with $\eta_i \equiv \deg x_1 + \cdots + \deg x_{i-1}$, in accord with the sign convention. The analogue of Prop. 3.1 holds for this $T(X)$.

One may construct universal DG-algebras on given generators. Thus if $x$ has degree 2 and $u$ degree 1, there is exactly one DG-algebra structure on $V = P[x] \otimes E[u]$ for which $ax = u$, by the Leibniz rule (7.2) the differential is given on the free $K$-module generators of the algebra $V$ as

$$
\partial(x^m \otimes 1) = m x^{m-1} \otimes u, \quad \partial(x^m \otimes u) = 0. \quad (7.7)
$$

If $u_2$ is a selected element of degree 2 in any strictly commutative DG-algebra $U$, there is a unique homomorphism $f: V \to U$ of DG-algebras with $fx = u_2$ (and hence with $fu = \partial u_2$).

Similar considerations will define differential internally graded and differential $\mathbb{Z}$-graded algebras.
Exercises

1. For DG-modules over $K$, show that the exact homology sequence (Thm. II.4.1) for a short exact sequence $E: W \rightarrow X \rightarrow Y$ of DG-homomorphisms $\mathcal{X}$ and $\mathcal{a}$ takes the form of an exact triangle

$$
\begin{align*}
H(W) & \xrightarrow{\mathcal{X}} H(X) \\
& \xrightarrow{\partial_E} H(Y)
\end{align*}
$$

(kernel = image at each vertex), with $\mathcal{X}$ and $\partial_E$ homomorphisms of graded modules of degree 0, while the connecting homomorphism $\partial_E$ has degree $-1$. [The usual long exact sequence spirals around this triangle, dropping one level with each $\partial_E$.

2. Prove that a DG-algebra $U$ is a DG-module over $K$ with homomorphisms $\pi: U \otimes U \rightarrow U$ and $I: K \rightarrow U$ of DG-modules, of degree 0, satisfying (3.1). Give a similar definition of $U$-modules by (5.1), and show that $\text{Hom}_U$ and $\otimes_U$ may be obtained from $\text{Hom}_K$ and $\otimes_K$, for DG-modules, by the analogues of (5.5) and (5.7).

3. For $V$ as in (7.7) determine the graded homology algebra $H(V)$ when $K=\mathbb{Z}$ and when $K=\mathbb{Z}_p$ (the field of integers modulo $p$).

4. Construct a universal strictly commutative DG-algebra on a given finite set of generators (of odd and even degrees).

5. For $\deg x_i = 2$, $\deg u_i = 1$, the graded algebra $P[x_1, \ldots, x_n] \otimes E[u_1, \ldots, u_n]$ is isomorphic to the tensor product of $n$ algebras $V_i = P[x_i] \otimes E[u_i]$ like that treated in the text, hence has a unique differential with $\partial x_i = u_i, i=1, \ldots, n$. For any polynomial $p$ in the $x_i$, show that $\partial p = \sum \frac{\partial p}{\partial x_i} \otimes u_i$, where $\frac{\partial p}{\partial x_i}$ denotes the usual partial derivative. Hence show directly that $\partial^2 p = 0$. Note that $\partial p$ is the usual differential of the function $p$ of $n$ variables if we replace $u_i$ by a symbol $d x_i$.

8. Identities on $\text{Hom}$ and $\otimes$

Consider modules and bimodules over various graded $K$-algebras $A$, $\Sigma$, and $\Omega$ (which may equally well be DG-algebras). The functors $\text{Hom}_A$ and $\otimes_A$ have inherited module structure as follows

$$
\begin{align*}
\otimes C_A & \otimes \otimes A_A \Rightarrow \otimes\text{Hom}_A(C, A)]_\Sigma, \\
\otimes G_A & \otimes \otimes A_A \Rightarrow \otimes(G \otimes_A A)_\Omega,
\end{align*}
$$

defined for $f: C \rightarrow A$ by $(\omega \otimes f \sigma)(c) = \omega[f(\sigma c)]$ and for $g \otimes a$ by $\sigma(g \otimes a) \omega = og \otimes a \omega$, just as in (V.3.2) and (V.3.1).

There are several natural isomorphisms for iterated tensor products. Thus

$$
A \otimes_A A \cong A, \quad (\otimes A) \quad (8.1)
$$

is given by $\lambda \otimes a \rightarrow \lambda a$. The commutative law

$$
G \otimes_A A \equiv A \otimes_{A \otimes G}, \quad (G, \otimes A) \quad (8.2)
$$
is given by \( g \otimes a \mapsto (-1)^{(\deg g)(\deg a)} a \otimes g \). The associative law

\[
\alpha: A \otimes_{\Omega} (B \otimes_{\Sigma} C) \cong (A \otimes_{\Lambda} B) \otimes_{\Sigma} \Omega C, \quad (A_{\Lambda-\Omega}, \Lambda B_{\Sigma}, \Sigma-\Omega C) \quad (8.3)
\]
is given by \( a[a \otimes (b \otimes c)] = (a \otimes b) \otimes c \); here \( B \otimes_{\Sigma} C \) is regarded as a left \( P \)-module with operators \( \omega(b \otimes c) = (-1)^{(\deg b)(\deg a)} b \otimes \omega c \). To show this map a well-defined, observe first that for fixed \( a \) the function \((a \otimes b) \otimes c\) is bilinear and \( \Sigma \)-middle associative in \( b \) and \( c \). By Thm. 5.2 there is for each \( a \) a unique homomorphism \( F(a): B \otimes_{\Sigma} C \to (A \otimes_{\Lambda} B) \otimes_{\Sigma} \Omega C \) which satisfies \( F(a)(b \otimes c) = (a \otimes b) \otimes c \). The function \( F(a)(b \otimes c) \) is again bilinear and \((A \otimes \Omega)\)-middle associative in its arguments in \( A \) and \( B \otimes_{\Sigma} C \). By Thm. 5.2 again there is a unique homomorphism \( \alpha \) with \( \alpha[a \otimes (b \otimes c)] = (a \otimes b) \otimes c \). The inverse of \( \alpha \) is constructed similarly. The associativity law also holds in simpler cases; e.g., with \( \Omega \) omitted (set \( \Omega = K \) in (8.3)). A general version of the commutative law is the middle four interchange

\[
\tau: (A \otimes_{\Lambda} B) \otimes_{A'} \Sigma (C \otimes_{\Sigma} D) \cong (A \otimes_{A'} C) \otimes_{A} \Sigma (B \otimes_{\Sigma} D) \quad (8.4)
\]
defined for modules \( A_{\Lambda-\Lambda'}, A B_{\Sigma}, \Sigma C_{\Sigma}, \Sigma-\Sigma D \) by setting

\[
\tau[(a \otimes b) \otimes (c \otimes d)] = (-1)^{(\deg b)(\deg c)} (a \otimes c) \otimes (b \otimes d).
\]

In the DG-case, all of these natural isomorphisms are isomorphisms of DG-modules over \( K \), as one verifies by showing that each of the given isomorphisms commutes with the differential which we have defined on \( \otimes_U \).

For the functor \( \text{Hom}_A \) alone, we have the natural isomorphism

\[
\text{Hom}_A(A, A) \cong A \quad (\Lambda A) \quad (8.5)
\]
given by \( f \mapsto f(1) \) and the natural homomorphism

\[
K \to \text{Hom}_A(A, A), \quad (\Lambda A) \quad (8.6)
\]
given by mapping \( 1_K \) into the identity homomorphism \( 1_A: A \to A \).

\textbf{Adjoint} associativity is the natural isomorphism

\[
\eta: \text{Hom}_{\Omega-\Sigma}(A \otimes_{\Lambda} B, C) \cong \text{Hom}_{\Omega-\Lambda}(A, \text{Hom}_B(C)) \quad (8.7)
\]
for modules \( \Omega A_{\Lambda}, A B_{\Sigma}, \) and \( \Omega C_{\Sigma} \), defined for \( f: A \otimes_{\Lambda} B \to C \) by \( [(\eta f)a]b = f(a \otimes b) \), just as in the case of rings (V.3.5). In the DG-case one checks that \( \eta \) commutes with the differentials defined on both sides, hence is an isomorphism of \( DG_{\Sigma} \)-modules over \( K \). In particular, taking the cycles of degree zero on each side of (8.7) gives the natural isomorphism

\[
\text{hom}_{\Omega-\Sigma}(A \otimes_{\Lambda} B, C) \cong \text{hom}_{\Omega-\Lambda}(A, \text{Hom}_B(C)) \quad (8.8)
\]
where, as above, hom with lower case h denotes homomorphisms of degree zero of the full DGZ-structure. In this case, since A has no elements of negative degree, the Z-graded Hom(B, C) on the right may be replaced by the graded module \( \{ \text{Hom}^{-n}(B, C), n=0, 1, \ldots \} \).

**Composition** of homomorphisms yields a map

\[
\text{Hom}_A(B, C) \otimes_A \text{Hom}_A(A, B) \to \text{Hom}_A(A, C) \quad (A_A, A_B, C_A) \quad (8.9)
\]

which is natural in A and C. Another useful natural homomorphism is the \( \text{Hom} \otimes \) interchange for modules, defined for \( f: B \to A \) and \( f': B' \to A' \) by

\[
\zeta(f \otimes f') (b \otimes b') = (-1)^{(\deg f')(\deg b')} f(b) \otimes f'(b')
\]

In the DG-case, this and composition are homomorphisms of DG-modules.

A notational curiosity emerges here. In this definition, \( f \otimes f' \) denotes a typical element in the tensor product shown on the left of (8.10). Previously, in (2.2), we used \( f \otimes f' \) to denote the homomorphism \( B \otimes B' \to A \otimes A' \) here written as \( \zeta(f \otimes f') \). The two symbols \( f \otimes f' \) need not agree, because \( \zeta \) may well have a kernel not zero. This ambiguity is not serious; long ago we observed that the tensor product \( a \otimes b \) of two elements has meaning only when the modules in which these elements lie are specified, and may become zero when one or the other module is enlarged.

Various other natural homomorphisms may be defined by composition of these. For example, the evaluation homomorphism

\[
e: \text{Hom}_A(A, B) \otimes A \to B \quad (A_A, A_B) \quad (8.11)
\]
is given for \( f: A \to B \) by \( e(f \otimes a) = f(a) \); i.e., by taking the value of the function \( f \) at \( a \). It may be written as the composition

\[
\text{Hom}_A(A, B) \otimes A \to \text{Hom}_A(A, A) \otimes \text{Hom}_A(A, B) \to \text{Hom}_A(A, B) \to B
\]
of the maps (8.5), (8.9), and (8.5). It would be instructive to know the various identities holding between composites of the assorted natural homomorphisms (8.1)–(8.10) described above.

As an application, consider free and projective \( A \)-modules over a graded algebra \( A \). A left \( A \)-module \( P \) is projective, as usual, if each epimorphism \( a: B \to C \) of left \( A \)-modules, of degree 0, induces an epimorphism \( \text{hom}_A(P, B) \to \text{hom}_A(P, C) \). The free \( A \)-module on the graded set \( S \) of generators is the \( A \)-module \( C \) containing \( S \) and characterized up to isomorphism by the usual property (Prop. 1.5.4) that each set map
Chapter VI. Types of Algebras

$S \rightarrow A$ of degree zero extends to a unique $A$-module homomorphism $C \rightarrow A$; as usual, a free module is projective. The algebra $A$ itself is the free $A$-module on one generator $1$ of degree $0$; the free $A$-module on any $S$ may be constructed as the direct sum $AS = \sum A_s$ for $s \in S$. Here $A_s$ denotes the left $A$-module with elements $As$ of degrees $\deg(As) = \deg \lambda + \deg s$. Note that $AS = A \otimes K S$, where $K S = \sum K s$ is the free graded $K$-module on the generators $S$. In other words, each free graded $K$-module $F$ yields a free $A$-module $A \otimes F$. Similarly,

**Proposition 8.1.** If $M$ is a projective graded $K$-module and $A$ a graded $K$-algebra, then $A \otimes M$ is a projective $A$-module.

The proof, as in Cor. V.3.3, follows from the adjoint associativity

$$\text{hom}_A(A \otimes M, B) \cong \text{hom}(M, \text{Hom}_A(A, B)) = \text{hom}(M, B).$$

The same associativity proves more generally

**Proposition 8.2.** For each graded $K$-module $M$ define a homomorphism $e: M \rightarrow A \otimes M$ of graded $K$-modules by $e(m) = 1 \otimes m$. This $e$ is universal: For every left $A$-module $A$ each homomorphism $g: M \rightarrow A$ of graded $K$-modules of degree $0$ can be factored uniquely through $e$ as $g = ye$, with $y: A \otimes M \rightarrow A$ a $A$-module homomorphism of degree $0$.

**Proof.** Observe that $y$ must have $y(1 \otimes m) = \lambda g(m) \in A$; the right side of this formula is $K$-bilinear in $\lambda$ and $m$, hence defines $y$ uniquely.

For 'e is universal' in the sense of this proposition we also say that $A \otimes M$ is the relatively free $A$-module generated by the graded $K$-module $M$, or that $A \otimes M$ is $(A, K)$-free. Similarly, for two graded algebras $A$ and $\Sigma$, each $A \otimes M \otimes \Sigma$ is a $(A-\Sigma, K)$ relatively free bimodule; if $M$ is $K$-projective, it is $A-\Sigma$ projective; if $M$ is $K$-free, it is $A-\Sigma$-free.

For Thm. X.7.4 we shall need

**Proposition 8.3.** If $B$ and $B'$ are free left $A$- and $A'$-modules of finite type, the Hom-$\otimes$ interchange is a natural isomorphism

$$\zeta: \text{Hom}_A(B, A) \otimes \text{Hom}_{A'}(B', A') \cong \text{Hom}_{A \otimes A'}(B \otimes B', A \otimes A'), (A, A') \otimes (A, A').$$

**Proof.** By direct sums, this reduces to the case $B = A$, $B' = A'$; in this case $\zeta$ is the identity $A \otimes A' \cong A \otimes A'$.

**Exercises**

1. Give a direct proof of the middle four interchange; that is, show that $\tau$ as specified is well defined and has an inverse.

2. Deduce the middle four interchange by repeated applications of the associativity (8.3) and $A \otimes_K B \cong B \otimes_K A$.

3. For modules $A \otimes \Sigma$ and $A A \otimes$ describe the bimodule structure on $\text{Hom}_A(C, A)$ (Attention to signs!)

4. Describe the behavior of composition (8.9) for a map $B \rightarrow B'$. 
5. Show that \( \zeta \) of (8.10) may have non-zero kernel (Hint: use finite cyclic groups).

6. Construct a natural homomorphism
\[
A \otimes \text{Hom}_A(B, C) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_A(\text{Hom}_A(A, B), C).
\]

9. Coalgebras and Hopf Algebras

A formal dualization of the notion of an algebra yields that of a coalgebra. These coalgebras have recently gained importance from a variety of topological applications; for instance, the singular complex of a topological space turns out to be a coalgebra.

A graded coalgebra \( W \) over the commutative ground ring \( K \) is a graded \( K \)-module \( W \) with two homomorphisms \( \psi: W \rightarrow W \otimes W \) and \( \varepsilon: W \rightarrow K \) of graded \( K \)-modules, each of degree 0, such that the diagrams

\[
\begin{align*}
W & \xrightarrow{\psi} W \otimes W \\
\downarrow{\psi} \quad & \downarrow{1 \otimes \psi} \\
W \otimes W & \xrightarrow{1 \otimes \varepsilon} W \otimes W \\
\end{align*}
\]

\[
K \otimes W = W = W \otimes K
\]

are commutative. The first diagram gives the associative law for the diagonal map (or coproduct) \( \psi \); the second diagram states that \( \varepsilon \) is a counit. Coalgebras which are not associative or which have no counit are sometimes useful, but will not occur in this book. A homomorphism \( \mu: W \rightarrow W' \) of coalgebras is a \( K \)-module homomorphism of degree 0 such that the diagrams

\[
\begin{align*}
W & \xrightarrow{\psi} W \otimes W \\
\downarrow{\mu} \quad & \downarrow{\mu \otimes \mu} \\
W' & \xrightarrow{\psi} W' \otimes W', \quad W' \xrightarrow{\varepsilon} K
\end{align*}
\]

are commutative. If the following diagram is commutative

\[
\begin{align*}
W & \xrightarrow{\psi} W \otimes W \\
\downarrow{\tau} \quad & \downarrow{\tau} \\
W & \xrightarrow{\psi} W \otimes W,
\end{align*}
\]

we call the graded coalgebra \( W \) commutative. As usual, our definition includes the special cases of coalgebras (\( W \) trivially graded) and graded corings (\( K = \mathbb{Z} \)). DG-coalgebras may also be defined by the diagram (9.1), for \( W \) a DG-\( K \)-module. In particular, the ground ring \( K \) itself is a (trivially graded) \( K \)-coalgebra with diagonal map \( K \rightarrow K \otimes K \) the canonical isomorphism and counit the identity \( K \rightarrow K \).

If \( W \) and \( W' \) are graded coalgebras, their tensor product \( W \otimes W' \) (as graded modules) is a graded coalgebra with diagonal map the composite

\[
W \otimes W' \xrightarrow{\psi \otimes \psi'} W \otimes W \otimes W' \otimes W' \xrightarrow{1 \otimes 1} (W \otimes W') \otimes (W \otimes W'),
\]

for \( \tau \) as in (9.3), and with counit \( \varepsilon \otimes \varepsilon' : W \otimes W' \rightarrow K \otimes K = K \).
For completeness, let us also define comodules by dualizing the diagrammatic definition (5.1) of a module over an algebra. A graded left \( W \)-comodule over the graded coalgebra \( W \) is a graded \( K \)-module \( C \) equipped with a homomorphism \( \varphi: C \to W \otimes C \) of degree zero such that the diagrams
\[
\begin{align*}
\begin{array}{c}
C \\
\downarrow \varphi
\end{array}
\end{align*}
\quad \text{and} \quad
\begin{align*}
\begin{array}{c}
W \otimes C \\
\downarrow \otimes 1
\end{array}
\end{align*}
\]
both commute.

A graded Hopf algebra \( V \) is a graded \( K \)-module \( V = \{ V_n \} \) which, with this grading, is both a graded algebra for a product map \( \pi: V \otimes V \to V \) and unit \( I: K \to V \) and a graded coalgebra for a diagonal \( \psi \) and a counit \( \varepsilon \), and such that

(i) \( I: K \to V \) is a homomorphism of graded coalgebras;

(ii) \( \varepsilon: V \to K \) is a homomorphism of graded algebras;

(iii) \( \pi: V \otimes V \to V \) is a homomorphism of graded coalgebras.

Condition (i) states that \( \psi(1) = 1 \otimes 1 \) and that \( \varepsilon I: K \to K \) is the identity. Condition (ii) states that \( V \) is an augmented algebra, with augmentation the counit. In view of the definition (9.4), condition (iii) states that the following diagram commutes
\[
\begin{align*}
\begin{array}{c}
V \otimes V \\
\downarrow \tau
\end{array}
\end{align*}
\quad \text{for} \quad \tau \quad \text{as in (9.3). But} \quad (\pi \otimes \pi)(1 \otimes \tau \otimes 1) \quad \text{is the product map in the tensor product algebra} \quad V \otimes V, \quad \text{so this diagram may equally well be read as}

(iii') \( \psi: V \to V \otimes V \) is a homomorphism of graded algebras.

Thus (iii) is equivalent to (iii').

A homomorphism \( \nu: V \to V' \) of Hopf algebras is a \( K \)-module homomorphism which is both an algebra and a coalgebra homomorphism.

Let \( V \) and \( V' \) be graded Hopf algebras over \( K \). A formal argument from the definitions shows that \( V \otimes V' \) is a graded Hopf algebra over \( K \), with grading that of the tensor product of graded modules, product and unit that of the tensor product of algebras, coproduct and counit that of the tensor product (9.4) of coalgebras.

Now for some examples of Hopf algebras.

The ground ring \( K \) is itself (trivially) a graded Hopf algebra.

Let \( E = E_K[u] \) be the exterior algebra on one symbol \( u \) of degree 1. Since \( E \) is the free strictly commutative algebra on one generator \( u \),
there are unique algebra homomorphisms \( \varepsilon : E \to K \), \( \psi : E \to E \otimes E \) with

\[
\varepsilon(u) = 0, \quad \psi(u) = u \otimes 1 + 1 \otimes u. \tag{9.7}
\]

With this structure, we claim that \( E \) is a Hopf algebra. To prove it a coalgebra, note that \((\psi \otimes 1) \psi \) and \((1 \otimes \psi) \psi \) may both be characterized as the unique homomorphism \( \eta : E \to E \otimes E \otimes E \) of algebras with \( \eta(u) = u \otimes 1 \otimes 1 + 1 \otimes u \otimes 1 + 1 \otimes 1 \otimes u \); by a similar argument \((\varepsilon \otimes 1) \psi = 1 = (1 \otimes \varepsilon) \psi \). Condition (i) for a Hopf algebra is trivial, while conditions (ii) and (iii') follow by the definitions of \( \varepsilon \) and \( \psi \).

Let \( P = P_K[x] \) be the polynomial algebra in one symbol \( x \) of even degree. By a similar argument, it is a Hopf algebra with

\[
\varepsilon(x) = 0, \quad \psi(x) = x \otimes 1 + 1 \otimes x. \tag{9.8}
\]

Since \( \psi \) is an algebra homomorphism, \( \psi(x^n) = (\psi x)^n \), so

\[
\psi(x^n) = \sum_{\phi + q = n} (\phi, q) x^\phi \otimes x^q, \quad (\phi, q) = (\phi + q)!/(\phi! q!). \tag{9.9}
\]

By taking tensor products of Hopf algebras, it follows that the exterior algebra \( E_K[\%, \ldots, \%] \) on generators \( \% \) of degree 1 or the polynomial algebra \( P_K[x, \ldots, x_n] \) on generators \( x_i \) of even degrees is a Hopf algebra.

The group ring \( Z(17) \) of any multiplicative group is a (trivially graded) Hopf algebra over \( Z \), for if \( x \in \Pi \), the function \( \psi(x) = x \otimes x \) on \( \Pi \) to \( Z(\Pi) \otimes Z(17) \) carries 1 to 1 and products to products, hence (Prop. IV.1.4) extends to a ring homomorphism \( \psi : Z(\Pi) \to Z(\Pi) \otimes Z(\Pi) \). With the usual augmentation \( \varepsilon : Z(\Pi) \to Z \) this makes \( Z(\Pi) \) a coalgebra (condition (9.1)) and a Hopf algebra, with unit \( I : Z \to Z(\Pi) \) the injection. Any homomorphism \( \zeta : \Pi \to \Pi' \) of groups induces a homomorphism \( Z(\zeta) : Z(\Pi) \to Z(\Pi') \) of Hopf algebras.

For any commutative \( K \), the group algebra \( K(\Pi) \) is defined as the \( K \)-algebra \( K \otimes_z Z(\Pi) \); equivalently, it is the free \( K \)-module with free generators the elements \( x \in \Pi \) and product determined by the product in \( 17 \). It is a Hopf algebra, with coproduct \( \psi(x) = x \otimes x \).

Now consider left modules \( A, B, C \) over a graded Hopf algebra \( V \): that is, modules over the graded algebra \( V \). The tensor product \( A \otimes K B \) is a left \((V \otimes V)\)-module, but becomes a left \( V \)-module by pull-back along the diagonal \( \psi : V \to V \otimes V \): We write this module as \( A \otimes B = \psi(A \otimes K B) \). The associative law (9.1) for \( \psi \) proves the usual associativity law \( A \otimes (B \otimes C) = (A \otimes B) \otimes C \) for this tensor product. Moreover, the ground ring \( K \) is a left \( V \)-module \( \varepsilon K \) by pull-back along \( \varepsilon : V \to K \), and the rule \( (\varepsilon \otimes 1) \psi = 1 = (1 \otimes \varepsilon) \psi \) gives the isomorphism \( K \otimes A \cong A \otimes K \). Using these two isomorphisms, parallel to (2.3) and (2.5), one can define an algebra over a graded Hopf algebra \( V \) — by exactly the mechanism used
to define algebras over $K$ itself. If the coproduct $\psi$ is commutative (9.3), one can obtain the isomorphism $\tau: A \otimes B \cong B \otimes A$ for $V$-modules, and in this case one can define the tensor product of algebras over $V$.

Exercises

1. If $M$ is a $K$-module show that the tensor algebra $T(M)$ has a unique Hopf algebra structure with $\psi(m) = m \otimes 1 + 1 \otimes m$.
2. If $A$ is a graded $K$-algebra with each $A_q$ finitely generated and projective as a $K$-module, show that the dual $A^*$ is a coalgebra with diagonal map induced by $\pi^*$ (use Prop. V.4.3). Under similar hypotheses, show that the dual of a Hopf algebra is a Hopf algebra.
3. Characterize the group algebra $K(\mathcal{H})$ by the analogue of Prop. IV.1.1.

Notes. Originally, a linear associative algebra meant an algebra over a field $K$ which was of finite dimensions as a vector space over that field, and the classical theory dealt with the structure of such algebras (e.g., the Wedderburn Principal Theorem X.3.2). In analysis, algebras of continuous functions were vector spaces of infinite dimension. In topology, the cup product in cohomology (Chap. VIII) introduces graded algebras over a commutative ring not a field. Bourbaki and Chevalley [1956] codified the present general concept of a graded algebra, and emphasized a principle due to E. H. Moore: State theorems in the maximum useful generality; e.g., for graded algebras, not just for rings. Hopf algebras first occurred in H. Hopf’s study of the cohomology of a Lie group. Their algebraic structure has been examined by various authors (e.g., Borel [1953], Halpern [1958]); for a systematic treatment see Milnor-Moore [1962]. Algebras over Hopf algebras were recently considered by Steenrod [1962].

Chapter seven

Dimension

This chapter is a brief introduction to the extensive applications of homological algebra to ring theory and algebraic geometry. We define various dimensions, use them in polynomial rings and separable algebras, and in the Hilbert theorem on syzygies. Subsequent chapters are independent of this material, except for the description ($\S 3$) of Ext and Tor for algebras and the direct product and ground ring extensions for algebras.

1. Homological Dimension

For abelian groups $C$ and $A$, $\text{Ext}_R^2(C,A)$ is always zero; we say that $C$, regarded as a module over the ring $\mathbb{Z}$ of integers, has homological dimension at most 1. Over any ring $R$, a projective module $P$ is characterized by the fact that all $\text{Ext}_R^1(P,G)$ vanish; we say that $P$ has homological dimension 0. The general phenomenon may be described as follows.

Theorem 1.1. For each integer $n$, the following conditions on a left $R$-module $C$ are equivalent:
1. Homological Dimension

(i) For all left $R$-modules $B$, $\text{Ext}^{n+1}(C, B) = 0$;

(ii) Any exact sequence of modules

$$S: 0 \rightarrow C_n \rightarrow X_{n-1} \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow X_0 \rightarrow C \rightarrow 0,$$

with the $X_i$ all projective has the first term $C$, projective;

(iii) $C$ has a projective resolution of length $n$:

$$0 \rightarrow X_n \rightarrow X_{n-1} \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow X_0 \rightarrow C \rightarrow 0.$$

Here and below we write $\text{Ext}$ for $\text{Ext}_R$.

**Proof.** Factor the sequence $S$ of (ii) into short exact sequences $E_i: C_{i+1} \rightarrow X_i \rightarrow C_i$. Each gives the standard long exact sequence

$$\text{Ext}^k(X_i, B) \rightarrow \text{Ext}^k(C_{i+1}, B) \rightarrow \text{Ext}^{k+1}(C_i, B) \rightarrow \text{Ext}^{k+1}(X_i, B)$$

of (III.9.1). Since $X_i$ is projective, the outside terms $\text{Ext}^k(X_i, B)$ are zero if $k > 0$, so the connecting homomorphism $E_i^*$ is an isomorphism. The iterated connecting homomorphism $S^*$ is the composite $E_0^* \cdots E_{n-1}^*$, hence an isomorphism

$$S^*: \text{Ext}^1(C, B) \cong \text{Ext}^{n+1}(C, B).$$

Now given $\text{Ext}^{n+1}(C, B) = 0$ by (i), this isomorphism makes $\text{Ext}^1(C_n, B) = 0$ for all $B$, hence $C_n$ projective as in (ii). Since $C$ has at least one projective resolution, (ii) implies (iii). Given a resolution of the form (iii), $\text{Ext}^{n+1}(C, B)$ computed thereby is $0$, whence (i).

The homological dimension of an $R$-module $C$ is defined by the statement that $h.\dim_R C \leq n$ when any one of the equivalent conditions of Thm. 1.1 hold. In other words, $h.\dim_R C = n$ means that all $\text{Ext}^{n+1}(C, B) = 0$, but that $\text{Ext}^n(C, B) + 0$ for at least one module $B$.

**Corollary 1.2.** If $h.\dim, C = n$, then for all modules $RB$ and $G_R$,

$$\text{Ext}^{n+k}(C, B) = 0, \quad \text{Tor}_{n+k}(G, C) = 0, \quad k > 0,$$

while for each $m \leq n$ there is a left module $B_m$ with $\text{Ext}^m(C, B_m) = 0$.

**Proof.** The first result follows by (iii). If $\text{Ext}^n(C, B) = 0$ for $n > 0$, imbed $B$ in an injective module $J$ to get a short exact sequence $B \rightarrow J \rightarrow B'$. The corresponding exact sequence

$$\text{Ext}^{n-1}(C, B') \rightarrow \text{Ext}^n(C, B) \rightarrow \text{Ext}^n(C, J) = 0$$

shows that $\text{Ext}^{n-1}(C, B') = 0$.

Similarly, $h.\dim C = \infty$ implies that for each positive integer $n$ there is a module $B$, with $\text{Ext}^n(C, B) = 0$. The homological dimension of a module $C$ can be calculated from any projective resolution.
$0 \leftarrow C \leftarrow X_0 \leftarrow X_1 \leftarrow \cdots$ as the first $n$ with $\text{Im}(X_n \to X_{n-1})$ projective (for $n=0$, read $X_{-1}$ as $C$), or as $\infty$ when none of these images is projective.

For example, the calculations of VI.6 show that the trivial module $Z$ over the group ring $\mathbb{Z}(17)$ of a free abelian group 17 on $n$ generators has homological dimension $n$.

The **left global dimension** of a ring $R$ is defined as

$$\text{l.gl. dim. } R := \sup (\text{h. dim } C),$$

where the supremum is taken over all left $R$-modules $C$. For example, $\text{l.gl. dim } \mathbb{Z} = 1$. For a field $F$, every module is a vector space, hence free, so $\text{l.gl. dim } F = 0$. More generally,

**Proposition 1.3.** Each of the following conditions is equivalent to $\text{l.gl. dim } R = 0$:

(i) Every left $R$-module is projective;

(ii) Every short exact sequence $A \to B \to C$ of left $R$-modules splits;

(iii) Every left $R$-module is injective;

(iv) Every left ideal of $R$ is injective, as a left $R$-module;

(v) Every left ideal of $R$ is a direct summand of $R$, as a left $R$-module.

**Proof.** Condition (i) is the definition of $\text{l.gl. dim } R = 0$. Given (i), each short exact sequence (ii) has $C$ projective, hence splits. Since every such sequence beginning with $A$ splits, each $A$ is injective by Prop. III.7.1. Hence (i) $\Rightarrow$ (ii) $\Rightarrow$ (iii), and the reverse argument shows (iii) $\Rightarrow$ (ii) $\Rightarrow$ (i). Clearly (iii) $\Rightarrow$ (iv) $\Rightarrow$ (v). Given (v) and a left ideal $L$, the short exact sequence $L \to R \to R/L$ splits, so that $\text{Hom}(R,A) \to \text{Hom}(L,A)$ is an epimorphism for each module $A$. By Prop. III.7.2, $A$ is injective. Hence (v) $\Rightarrow$ (iii); the proof is complete.

**Theorem 1.4.** For each ring $R$ and each $n \geq 0$ the following conditions are equivalent:

(i) $\text{l.gl. dim } R \leq n$;

(ii) Each left $R$-module has homological dimension $\leq n$;

(iii) $\text{Ext}^{n+1} = 0$, as a functor of left $R$-modules;

(iv) $\text{Ext}^k = 0$ for all $k > n$;

(v) Any exact sequence

$$S: 0 \to A \to Y_0 \to \cdots \to Y_{n-1} \to A_n \to 0,$$

with $n$ intermediate modules $Y_k$ all injective, has $A_n$ injective.

**Proof.** The first four conditions are equivalent by Thm. 1.1. The sequence $S$ in (v) gives a connecting homomorphism which is an isomorphism $S_*: \text{Ext}^1(C,A) \cong \text{Ext}^{n+1}(C,A)$ for each $C$. But $\text{Ext}^1(C,A) = 0$
for all \( C \) states exactly that \( A \) is injective; hence the equivalence of (iii) and (v).

**Corollary 1.5.** (AUSLANDER [1955].) For any ring \( R \)

\[
l_{\text{gl. dim}} R = \sup \{ h_{\text{dim}} R/L \mid L \text{ a left ideal in } R \}.\]

**Proof.** (MATLIS [1959].) If the supremum is infinite, \( l_{\text{gl. dim}} R = \infty \). Hence assume that the supremum is \( n < \infty \), so that \( \mathbf{E}xt^{n+1}(R/L, A) = 0 \) for all left ideals \( L \) and all \( R \)-modules \( A \). For each \( S \) as in (v) above, \( S_*: \mathbf{E}xt^1(R/L, A) \cong \mathbf{E}xt^{n+1}(R/L, A) = 0 \). By Prop. III.7.2, \( A \) is injective; by the theorem, \( l_{\text{gl. dim}} R \leq n \).

The condition \( l_{\text{gl. dim}} R = 0 \) is equivalent to the requirement that \( R \) be semi-simple, and so is connected with classical representation theory. Indeed, a left \( R \)-module \( A \) may be regarded as an abelian group \( A \) together with the ring homomorphism \( \varphi: R \to \text{End}_A \) which gives the left operators of \( R \) on \( A \). This \( \varphi \) is a representation of \( R \) and \( A \) is the corresponding representation \textit{module}. The module \( A \) is called simple (and the corresponding representation \textit{irreducible}) if \( A \neq 0 \) and \( A \) has no submodules except \( 0 \) and \( A \). A module \( A \) is \textit{semi-simple} if it is a direct sum of simple modules; a ring \( R \neq 0 \) is semi-simple if it is a semi-simple left \( R \)-module. Using Zorn's lemma, one can prove (see e.g. CARTAN-EILENBERG, Prop. I.4.1) that a module is semi-simple if and only if every submodule of \( A \) is a direct summand of \( A \). By condition (v) of Prop. 1.3 it then follows that \( R \) is semi-simple if and only if \( l_{\text{gl. dim}} R = 0 \), and by (ii) that every left module over a semi-simple ring \( R \) is itself semi-simple. It can also be proved that left semi-simplicity of \( R \) (as here defined) is equivalent to right semi-simplicity.

Various other dimensions can be introduced. For example, the left injective dimension of a module is defined by the analogue of Thm. 1.1 using injective resolutions, so that the equivalence (v) \( \iff \) (iii) in the theorem above states that the left global dimension of \( R \) agrees with its left global injective dimension. Right dimensions are defined using right \( R \)-modules; KAPLANSKY [1958] has constructed an example of a ring for which the left and right global dimensions differ by 1. AUSLANDER has proved that if \( R \) satisfies the ascending chain condition for left ideals and for right ideals, its left and right global dimensions agree (for proof see NORTHCOTT [1960], Thm. 7.20). The \textit{finitistic} left global dimension of \( R \) is the supremum of the homological dimensions of all left \( R \)-modules \( C \) with \( h_{\text{dim}} C < \infty \). The weak dimension of a module \( C \) is defined by replacing the condition that \( \mathbf{E}xt^{n+1}(C, A) = 0 \) for all \( A \) by the weaker condition that \( \text{Tor}^n(G, C) = 0 \) for all \( G_R \). For example, \( C \) is flat if and only if its weak homological dimension is 0. For the development of these ideas, see BASS [1960].
Chapter VII. Dimension

Exercises

1. State and prove the analogue of Thm. 1.1 for left injective dimensions.

2. If \( \text{gl. dim } R \geq 1 \), then

\[
\text{gl. dim } R = 1 + \sup \{ \text{h. dim } L \mid L \text{ a left ideal in } R \}.
\]

3. If \( A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C \) is a short exact sequence of \( R \)-modules, then if any two have finite homological dimension, so does the third.

4. In Ex. 3 above, show that \( \text{h. dim } A < \text{h. dim } B \) implies \( \text{h. dim } C = \text{h. dim } B \), \( \text{h. dim } A = \text{h. dim } B \) implies \( \text{h. dim } C \leq 1 + \text{h. dim } B \), and \( \text{h. dim } A > \text{h. dim } B \) implies \( \text{h. dim } C = 1 + \text{h. dim } A \).

2. Dimensions in Polynomial Rings

In (VI.1.4) the exterior ring provided an explicit resolution for a field \( F \) regarded as a module over the polynomial ring \( F[x,y] \) in two indeterminates. The same device works if \( F \) is replaced by a commutative ring \( K \) or the two indeterminates are replaced by \( n \) such.

In detail, let \( P = K[x_1, \ldots, x_n] \) be the polynomial ring in \( n \) indeterminate \( x_i \), each of degree 0. Then \( \varepsilon(x_i) = 0 \) defines an augmentation \( \varepsilon : P \rightarrow K \), while pull-back along \( \varepsilon \) makes \( K \) a \( P \)-module \( \varepsilon K \).

This amounts to regarding \( K \) as the quotient module \( P/(x_1, \ldots, x_n) \), where \( (x_1, \ldots, x_n) \) denotes the ideal in \( P \) generated by all the \( x_i \).

Let \( E = E_P[u_1, \ldots, u_n] \) be the exterior algebra over \( P \) on \( n \) generators \( u_i \), each of degree 1. Thus \( E_m \) in each degree \( m \) is the free \( P \)-module with generators all exterior products of \( m \) of the \( u_i \) in order. The differential with \( \partial u_i = x_i \) makes \( E \) a DG-algebra over \( P \) with \( \partial E_{m+1} \subset E_m \), while \( \varepsilon_P \) gives an augmentation \( E_0 \rightarrow K \).

Together these provide a sequence

\[
0 \leftarrow \varepsilon K \leftarrow P \leftarrow E_0 \leftarrow E_1 \leftarrow \cdots \leftarrow E_n \leftarrow 0 \tag{2.1}
\]

of \( P \)-modules and \( P \)-module homomorphisms.

**Proposition 2.1.** For \( P \) the polynomial ring in \( n \) indeterminates over \( K \), the exterior algebra \( E \) in \( n \) generators over \( P \) provides, as in (2.1), a free \( P \)-module resolution of \( \varepsilon K \).

The proof will construct \( K \)-module homomorphisms \( \eta : K \rightarrow E \) and \( s : E \rightarrow E \) of respective degrees 0 and 1 such that \( \eta \) is a chain transformation with \( \varepsilon \eta = 1 \) while \( s \) is a chain homotopy \( s : 1 \Rightarrow \eta \varepsilon : E \rightarrow E \).

This contracting homotopy will show (2.1) exact as a sequence of \( K \)-modules, hence exact as a sequence of \( P \)-modules, hence a resolution.

The chain transformation \( \eta \) is defined by \( \eta k = k1 \); clearly \( \varepsilon \eta = 1 \). The homotopy \( s \) is constructed by induction on \( n \). Set

\[
P'' = K[x_1, \ldots, x_{n-1}], \quad P' = K[x_n],
\]

\[
E'' = E_{P''}[u_1, \ldots, u_{n-1}], \quad E' = E_{P'}[u_n].
\]
Thus \( P = P'' \otimes P', \ E'' \) and \( E' \) are DG-algebras over \( P'' \) and \( P' \) respectively, their tensor product \( E'' \otimes E' \) is a \( P'' \otimes P' \)-algebra, and (VI.4.6) gives an isomorphism \( E \cong E'' \otimes E' \) of DG-algebras over \( P \). Moreover, \( \varepsilon = \varepsilon'' \otimes \varepsilon' \) and \( \eta = \eta'' \otimes \eta' \). For \( n=1 \), the contracting homotopy \( s' : E'_0 \to E'_1 \) may be defined on a polynomial \( f = \sum a_i x^i \) of degree \( k \) in \( x = x_n \) with coefficients \( a_i \in K \) by setting

\[
s'(a_0 + a_1 x + \cdots + a_k x^k) = (a_1 + a_2 x + \cdots + a_k x^{k-1}) u;
\]

then \( \partial s' = f - a_0 = f - \eta' \varepsilon f' \) and \( s' \partial f u = f u \), so \( s' : 1 \cong \eta' \varepsilon' \). Note in particular that \( s' \), though a homomorphism of \( K \)-modules, is not a homomorphism of \( P \)-modules.

Now assume by induction that there is a \( K \)-chain homotopy \( s'' : 1 \cong \eta'' \varepsilon'' : E'' \to E'' \). Since we already have \( s' \), Prop. V.9.1 gives a \( K \)-chain homotopy \( s \) on \( E = E'' \otimes E' \), and so completes the induction.

The resolution (2.1) is known as the Koszul resolution; it first occurs explicitly in a study of Lie algebras by Koszul [1950].

**Theorem 2.2.** If \( P = K[x_1, \ldots, x_n] \) is the ungraded polynomial algebra over a commutative ring \( K \) in \( n \) indeterminates \( x_i \), while \( I : K \to P \) is the injection and \( K \) is a \( P \)-module in any way such that \( \mathbb{K} = K \), then

\[
\text{h. dim}_P K = n, \quad \text{h. dim}_P (x_1, \ldots, x_n) = n - 1, \quad (2.2)
\]

\( \text{Ext}_P(K, K) \) is the direct sum of \((m, n-m)\) copies of \( K \), and \( \text{Tor}_P(K, K) = \{ \text{Tor}_n^P(K, K) \} \) is an exterior algebra over \( K \) on \( n \) generators in \( \text{Tor}, (K, K) \).

**Proof.** Suppose first that \( K \) is the \( P \)-module \( \mathbb{K} \). The Koszul resolution (2.1) stops with degree \( n \). Hence the homological dimension of \( K \) is at most \( n \).

We may calculate \( \text{Tor}_P(K, K) \) from the resolution (2.1) as the homology of the complex

\[
K \otimes_P E_P = K \otimes_P (P \otimes E_K[u_1, \ldots, u_n]) = (K \otimes_P P) \otimes E_K \cong K \otimes E_K = E_K[u_1, \ldots, u_n]
\]

with boundary \( \partial(k \otimes u_i) = k \otimes x_i \). But under the isomorphisms above, \( k \otimes x_i \to (k \otimes x_i) \otimes 1 \to k \varepsilon(x_i) \otimes 1 = 0 \), since by definition \( \varepsilon(x_i) = 0 \). Thus the differential on the complex is zero, so \( \text{Tor}_P(K, K) \) is the exterior algebra over \( K \) in \( n \) generators. In particular, \( \text{Tor}_n^P(K, K) \cong K \neq 0 \), so \( \text{h. dim}, K \) is exactly \( n \). Similarly, \( \text{Ext}_P(K, K) \) is calculated from the resolution as the cohomology of the complex

\[
\text{Hom}_P(E_P, K) \cong \text{Hom}_P(P \otimes E_K, K) = \text{Hom}_K(E_K, \text{Hom}_P(P, K)) \cong \text{Hom}_K(E_K, K).
\]
The coboundary in this complex is again zero, so \( \text{Ext}_F^r(K, K) \cong \text{Hom}_K(E_m, K) \) is the direct sum of \((m, n-m)\) copies of \(K\), as asserted in the Theorem.

Now consider the ideal \( J = (x_1, \ldots, x_n) = \ker \varepsilon \). Since \( \partial : E_1 \to E_0 = \mathbb{P} \) has image exactly \( J \), the Koszul resolution (2.1) yields a resolution
\[
0 \leftarrow J \leftarrow E_1 \leftarrow \cdots \leftarrow E_n \leftarrow 0
\]
of \( J \), with \( E_{m+1} \) in "dimension" \( m \). Hence \( \text{Ext}_F^r(J, K) \cong \text{Hom}_K(E_{m+1}, K) \) for \( m > 0 \), so \( \text{Ext}_F^{-1}(J, K) = K^d_0 \), and \( J \) has exact dimension \( n - 1 \), as asserted.

Now let \( K \) have some other \( \mathbb{P} \)-module structure, say by operators \( p_o k \) for \( p \in \mathbb{P} \). The condition \( _iK = K \) states that this \( \mathbb{P} \)-module structure, pulled back along the injection \( I : K \to \mathbb{P} \) with \( I(k) = k1_\mathbb{P} \), is the original \( K \)-module structure of \( K \); in other words, that \( k' \circ k = k'k \). Now \( \varphi(p) = p_o 1_K \) defines an algebra homomorphism \( \varphi : \mathbb{P} \to K \), because \( p_o k = p_o (1_K k) = \varphi(p) \circ k = \varphi(p)k \). In other words, \( K \) is the \( \mathbb{P} \)-module \( K \) obtained by pull-back along \( \varphi \). But set \( a_i = \varphi x_i \in K \) and \( x_i' = x_i - a_i \). Then \( \mathbb{P} \) can be viewed as the polynomial algebra \( K[x_1', \ldots, x_n'] \) and \( \varphi x_i' = 0 \), so \( \varphi \) is the corresponding augmentation, and the previous calculations apply.

In conclusion, note that \( \text{Tor}_F^P(K, K) = E_K[u_1, \ldots, u_n] \) turns out to be not just a graded \( \mathbb{P} \)-module — as it should be, on general principles — but actually a graded algebra; to wit, the exterior algebra on the \( n \) cycles (homology classes) \( u_i \) in \( \text{Tor}_{-1} \). This algebra structure on \( \text{Tor}_F^P(K, K) \) hides a mystery. By our general results we may (and did) compute \( \text{Tor}_F^P(K, K) \) from any convenient resolution. By ""accident"" the DG-module \( E \) which we used as a resolution was in fact a DG-algebra, so \( \text{Tor}_F^P(K, K) \) inherited "by accident" an algebra structure. We shall show in Chap. VIII that this structure arises intrinsically from the fact that \( K \) (as a \( \mathbb{P} \)-module) is a \( \mathbb{P} \)-algebra; indeed, the torsion product of two algebras is an algebra.

### Exercises

1. Calculate \( \text{Tor}_F^P(J, K) \) and \( \text{Ext}_F^p(J, K) \) for \( J = (x_1, \ldots, x_n) \).
2. Show that \( \text{h.dim}_F(x_1, \ldots, x_n) = k - 1 \).
3. Examine Thm.2.2 when \( K \) is a skew field.

### 3. Ext and Tor for Algebras

If \( A \) is an (ungraded!) \( K \)-algebra, the usual functors \( \text{Ext}_A \) and \( \text{Tor} \) may be regarded as functors with values which are \( K \)-modules. For this purpose, as in VI.1, we regard the \( K \)-algebra \( A \) as the composite object \( A = (R, I) \) consisting of a ring \( R \) and a ring homomorphism \( I : K \to R \).
with $(Ik)r=r(Ik)$; that is, with $I(K)$ in the center of $R$. A left $A$-module (say as defined by (VI.5.2) and (VI.5.3)) is just a left $R$-module $A$; by pull-back along $I: K \rightarrow R$ it is a $K$-module, hence also an $R$-$K$-bimodule $rA_K$. A homomorphism $a: A \rightarrow A'$ of left $A$-modules is defined to be a homomorphism of left $R$-modules, and then is automatically a homomorphism of $R$-$K$-bimodules.

**Proposition 3.1.** For $A= (R, I)$ a $K$-algebra and $C$, $A$ left $A$-modules, the abelian group $\text{Ext}^n_K(C, A)$ has two $K$-module structures induced by the $K$-module structures of $C$ and $A$, respectively. These two $K$-module structures agree; if we write $\text{Ext}^n_A(C, A)$ for the resulting $K$-module, then $\text{Ext}^n_A$ is a bifunctor from $A$-modules to $K$-modules which satisfies the axioms formulated in Thm. III.10.1. For a third $A$-module $D$, composition is a homomorphism of $K$-modules

$$\text{Ext}_A^k(A, D) \otimes_K \text{Ext}_A^m(C, A) \rightarrow \text{Ext}_A^{k+m}(C, D).$$

**Proof.** The first $K$-module structure is that induced on $\text{Ext}_R^p(C, A)$ as a functor of $C$ by the $R$-module endomorphisms $\varphi_k: C \rightarrow C$ defined for each $k \in K$ by $\varphi_k(c)=kc$; the second arises similarly from $A$. Equivalently, regard $C$ and $A$ as $R$-$K$-bimodules; then $\text{Ext}_A^p(C, A)$ is a $K$-$K$-bimodule as in V.3.4. The crux of the proof is the demonstration that these two $K$-module structures agree.

For $n=0$ and $f \in \text{Hom}_R(C, A)$, the first $K$-module structure defines $kf$ by $(kf)c=f(kc)$, the second by $(f k)c=k(fc)$. Since $f$ is a $K$-module homomorphism, they agree.

For $n > 0$, take a long exact sequence $S \in \text{Ext}_R^p(C, A)$. Multiplication by $k$ is a morphism $\varphi_k: S \rightarrow S$ of sequences of $R$-modules which agrees on the left end with multiplication in $A$ by $k$ and on the right end with multiplication in $C$ by $k$. By Prop. III.5.1, $\varphi_k S \cong S \varphi_k$, and the structures agree. Alternatively, if $X$ is a projective resolution of $C$ and $\text{Ext}_R^p(C, A)$ is calculated as $H^n(\text{Hom}_R(X, A))$, the $K$-module structure, like the functorial structure, is computed from that of $X$ or of $A$, which are known to agree in $\text{Hom}_R(X, A)$.

Any $R$-module homomorphism $\alpha: A \rightarrow A'$ commutes with the endomorphism $\varphi_k$, so the induced map $\alpha_*: \text{Ext}_R^p(C, A) \rightarrow \text{Ext}_R^p(C, A')$ is a $K$-module homomorphism, and $\text{Ext}_R^n(C, A)$ is a bifunctor of $K$-modules. The connecting homomorphisms are also $K$-module homomorphisms, and the Yoneda composite is $K$-bilinear; hence (3.1).

The treatment of torsion products is similar.

**Proposition 3.2.** If $A= (R, I)$ and $G$, $A$ are $A$-modules, then for each $n \geq 0$ the abelian group $\text{Tor}_R^n(G, A)$ has two $K$-module structures induced by the $K$-module structures of $G$ and $C$, respectively. These two $K$-module structures agree; if we write $\text{Tor}_R^n(G, C)$ for the resulting $K$-module,
then $\text{Tor}_n$ is a covariant bifunctor from $A$-modules to $K$-modules which satisfies the axioms formulated in Thm. V.8.5.

**Proof.** For $n=0$, $kg \otimes c = g \otimes kc$, so the two $K$-module structures agree. We leave the proof for $n>0$ to the reader (use V.7.1).

Now let $A$ and $\Sigma$ be two $K$-algebras (still ungraded). A $A$-Zrbimodule $A \Sigma$ is then a bimodule over the rings $A$, $\Sigma$ such that the two induced $K$-module structures agree. They induce identical $K$-module structures on $\text{Hom}_{A \Sigma}(C,A)$. The corresponding $K$-modules $\text{Ext}_n^{A \Sigma}(C,A)$ for $n>0$ could be defined as the congruence classes of exact sequences of bimodules leading from $A$ to $C$ through $n$ intermediate steps, just as before. Equivalently, turn $A$ and $C$ into left $A \otimes \Sigma^{\text{op}}$-modules, and define $\text{Ext}_n^{A \Sigma}$ as $\text{Ext}_n^{(A \otimes \Sigma^{\text{op}})}$. Similarly, bimodules $\Sigma B$, $\Sigma C$ are one-sided modules $B_{(A \otimes \Sigma^{\text{op}})}$, $(A \otimes \Sigma^{\text{op}})C$ and so have a tensor product $B \otimes (A \otimes \Sigma^{\text{op}})C$ and torsion products $\text{Tor}^{(A \otimes \Sigma^{\text{op}})}(B, C)$ which are $K$-modules. We also write these products as $\text{Tor}^{A \Sigma}(B, C)$. We next show that $\text{Ext}$ for left $A$-modules sometimes reduces to a $A$-bimodule $\text{Ext}$.

**Theorem 3.3.** Let $A$ be a $K$-algebra and $C$ and $A$ left $A$-modules. Assume that $A$ and $C$ are projective $K$-modules (for instance, this automatically holds if $K$ is a field). Then adjoint associativity induces a natural isomorphism

$$\eta_* : \text{Ext}_n^A(C,A) \cong \text{Ext}_{A \rightarrow A}(A, \text{Hom}_K(C,A)), \quad n=0, 1, \ldots, \quad (3.2)$$

of $K$-modules. For $n=0$, $\text{Ext}_0^A(C,A) = \text{Hom}_A(C,A) = \text{Hom}_A(A \otimes A C, A)$, and $\eta$ is the ordinary adjoint associativity.

In (3.2), $\text{Hom}_K(C,A)$ is a left $A$-module via the left $A$-module structure of $A$ and a right $A$-module via the left $A$-module structure of the contravariant argument $C$.

**Proof.** Take a free resolution $\varepsilon : X \rightarrow A$ of the A-A-bimodule $A$. As a free bimodule, each $X_n$ has the form $X_n = A \otimes F_{n} \otimes A$ for some free $K$-module $F_n$. Now a projective module is a direct summand of a free module, so the tensor product of two projective $K$-modules is a projective $K$-module. Since we have assumed $A$ and $C$ projective as $K$-modules, $A \otimes F_n$ and $F_n \otimes C$ are projective $K$-modules, so, by Prop. VI.8.1, $X_n = (A \otimes F_n) \otimes A$ is a projective right $A$-module and $X_n \otimes A C \cong A \otimes (F_n \otimes C)$ is a projective left $A$-module.

Adjunct associativity is natural, so yields an isomorphism of complexes

$$\eta : \text{Hom}_A(X \otimes A C, A) \cong \text{Hom}_{A \rightarrow A}(X, \text{Hom}_K(C,A)). \quad (3.3)$$

The cohomology groups of the right hand complex are

$$\text{Ext}_{A \rightarrow A}(A, \text{Hom}_K(C,A)).$$
Examine those of the left hand complex. Since \( \varepsilon : X \rightarrow A \) is a projective resolution of \( A \) as a right \( A \)-module, the homology of the complex \( X \otimes_{A} C \) is \( \text{Tor}^{1}_{n}(A, C) \). But \( A \) itself is a free right \( A \)-module, so all \( \text{Tor}^{1}_{n}(A, C) = 0 \) for \( n > 0 \), so the complex \( X \otimes_{A} C \) with \( \varepsilon \otimes 1 : X_{0} \otimes_{A} C \rightarrow A \otimes_{A} C = C \) constitutes a projective resolution of \( A \). Therefore its cohomology over \( A \), as on the left side of (3.3), is \( \text{Ext}_{A}(C, A) \). Thus \( \eta \) induces an isomorphism of these cohomology groups, as asserted.

This isomorphism can be described as follows in terms of long exact sequences.

**Corollary 3.4.** For any long exact sequence \( S \in \text{Ext}^{n}_{A}(C, A) \) with \( n > 0 \) the isomorphism \( \eta \) of (3.2) carries the class of \( S \) into the class of

\[
\left[ \text{Hom}_{K}(C, S) \right] \eta(1_{C}) \in \text{Ext}^{n-1}_{A}(A, \text{Hom}_{K}(C, A)).
\]

**Proof.** First analyze \( \left[ \text{Hom}(C, S) \right] \eta(1_{C}) \). Since \( 1_{C} \in \text{Hom}_{A}(C, C) \) and \( \eta: \text{Hom}_{A}(C, C) = \text{Hom}_{A}(A \otimes_{A} C, C) \cong \text{Hom}_{A-A}(A, \text{Hom}_{A}(C, C)) \), \( \eta(1_{C}) \) is a map \( u: A \rightarrow \text{Hom}(C, C) \) (actually, with \( (uA)c = 1_{C} \)). If

\[
S: 0 \rightarrow A \rightarrow B_{n-1} \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow B_{0} \rightarrow C \rightarrow 0
\]
is exact, and \( \text{Hom} \) is short for \( \text{Hom}_{K} \), then \( \text{Hom}(C, S) \) is the sequence

\[
0 \rightarrow \text{Hom}(C, A) \rightarrow \text{Hom}(C, B_{n-1}) \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow \text{Hom}(C, B_{0}) \rightarrow \text{Hom}(C, C) \rightarrow 0;
\]

since \( C \) is \( K \)-projective, it is an exact sequence of \( A \)-\( A \)-bimodules. Acting on the right of this sequence with \( \eta(1_{C}) \), we get a long exact sequence of bimodules from \( \text{Hom}(C, A) \) to \( A \), as in the conclusion of the corollary.

To apply the canonical isomorphism \( \xi: \text{Ext}^{n}_{A}(C, A) \cong H^{n}(X \otimes_{A} C, A) \) of (III.6.3), we regard \( S \) as a resolution of \( C \), lift \( 1_{C} \) to \( f: X \otimes_{A} C \rightarrow S \), and obtain \( \xi(\text{cls} S) \) as the class of the cocycle \( f \). But apply adjoint associativity; \( \eta f: X \rightarrow \text{Hom}(C, S) \) lifts \( \eta(1_{C}): A \rightarrow \text{Hom}(C, C) \), so \( \eta f \) factors through a chain transformation \( g: X \rightarrow \text{[Hom}(C, S) \text{]} \eta(1_{C}) \) lifting \( 1_{A} \) with \( \eta f_{n} = g_{n} \). Thus \( \eta_{*} \text{cls} f_{n} = \text{cls} g_{n}, \xi(\text{cls} S) = \text{cls} f_{n}, \) and (again by the definition of \( \xi \)) \( \xi_{*} \text{cls}[\text{Hom}(C, S) \eta(1_{C})] = \text{cls} g_{n} \), whence the conclusion.

**Exercises**

1. If \( A \) is an algebra over a field, \( P \) a projective \( A \)-\( A \)-bimodule, and \( B \) a left \( A \)-module, show that \( P \otimes_{A} B \) is a projective left \( A \)-module.

2. If \( T \in \text{Ext}^{n}_{A-A}(A, \text{Hom}(C, A)) \), as in Cor.3.4, is the exact sequence

\[
T: \text{Hom}(C, A) \rightarrow B_{n-1} \rightarrow X_{n-2} \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow X_{0} \rightarrow A
\]

with all \( X_{i} \) projective show \( \eta^{-1} \text{cls} T = \text{cls}(e(T \otimes A C)) \), where \( e \) is the evaluation map \( e: \text{Hom}(C, A) \otimes C \rightarrow A \).

3. For \( A \) an algebra over a field \( F \), \( \Omega = A \otimes_{A} \text{op} \), and modules \( C_{A}, A_{A} \), prove \( \text{Tor}^{1}_{A}(C, A) \cong \text{Tor}^{1}_{\Omega}(A, \Omega \otimes_{K} C) \).

Mac Lane, Homology 14
4. For K-algebras A and $\Sigma$ modules $G_A$ and $A^\Sigma$ and an injective right $\Sigma$-module $J$ use Ex.III.7.3 to establish the isomorphism ("duality"; CARTAN-EILENBERG VI.5)

$$\text{Ext}_A^n(G, \text{Hom}_\Sigma(A, J)) \cong \text{Hom}_\Sigma(\text{Tor}_n^A(G, A), J).$$

**4. Global Dimensions of Polynomial Rings**

We can now compute the global dimensions of polynomial rings over a field.

**Proposition 4.1.** If the modules $C$ and $A$ over the commutative ring $K$ are regarded as modules over the polynomial ring $P=K[x]$, by pull-back along $\epsilon: P \to K$ with $\epsilon(x)=0$, then $\text{Hom}_P(C, A)=\text{Hom}_K(C, A)$ and, for $n \geq 0$, there is an isomorphism of $P$-modules

$$\text{Ext}_P^n(C, A) \cong \text{Ext}_K^n(C, A) \oplus \text{Ext}_K^{n-1}(C, A).$$

Here the $\text{Ext}_K$ on the right are $K$-modules, hence $P$-modules by pull-back.

**Proof.** Take a $K$-projective resolution $\eta: X \to C$. The exterior algebra $E=E_P[u]$ provides a resolution $\epsilon: E+K$ of $K$ by free $P$-modules $E_0 \cong E_1 \cong P$ and the boundary $\partial: E_1 \to E_0$ is given by multiplication by $x$. Now $P$ is a free $K$-module, hence so are $E_1, E_0, H(E)$, and the cycles of $E$. The Kunneth tensor formula (Thm.V.10.1) asserts that $H(E \otimes X) \cong H(E) \otimes H(X)$, so that $H_n(E \otimes X)=0$ for $n \geq 0$ and $\epsilon \otimes \eta: H_0(E \otimes X) \cong K \otimes C=C$. Thus $\epsilon \otimes \eta: E \otimes X \to C$ is a resolution of $C$ by projective $P$-modules. Hence $\text{Ext}_P(C, A)$ is the cohomology of the complex $\text{Hom}_P(E \otimes X, A)$.

Now $(E \otimes X)_n=E_0 \otimes X_0 \oplus E_1 \otimes X_{n-1} \cong P \otimes X_n \oplus P \otimes X_{n-1}$, so by adjoint associativity

$$\text{Hom}_P((E \otimes X)_n, A) \cong \text{Hom}_P(P, \text{Hom}(X_n, A)) \oplus \text{Hom}_P(P, \text{Hom}(X_{n-1}, A)),$$

$$\cong \text{Hom}(X_n, A) \oplus \text{Hom}(X_{n-1}, A)$$

Since the boundary $\partial: E_1 \to E_0$ is multiplication by $x$ and since $A$ and $X_n$ are $P$-modules via $\epsilon$ with $\epsilon(x)=0$, these isomorphisms carry the coboundary on the left into the coboundary on the right (induced by $\partial$ in $X$). This isomorphism of cochain complexes gives the asserted isomorphism (4.1).

**Theorem 4.2.** If the commutative ring $K$ has global dimension $r \leq w$, then the polynomial ring $P=K[x]$ has global dimension $r+1$ (or $w$, if $r=\infty$).

Since $K$ and $P$ are commutative, we can omit "left" in l.gl.dim.

**Proof.** Let $G$ be any $P$-module. The first $r$ terms of a free resolution of $G$ as a $P$-module give an exact sequence $S: G \to Y_{r-1} \to \cdots \to Y_0 \to G$. 

\[ \text{Hom}_P(S, A) \cong \text{Hom}_P(P, \text{Hom}(Y_0, A)) \cong \text{Hom}(Y_0, A). \]
Now $P$ itself and hence each $Y_i$ is also a free $K$-module, so $\text{h.dim}_K G \leq \text{gl.dim} K = r$ implies that the $K$-module $G_r$ is projective. For any $P$-module $H$ we have the isomorphisms

$$\text{Ext}_{P^+}^2(G, H) \cong \text{Ext}_P^2(G_r, H) \cong \text{Ext}_{P^+}^2(P, \text{Hom}(G_r, H)),$$

the first by the iterated connecting homomorphism of the sequence $S$ and the second by adjoint associativity (Thm. 3.3). On the right regard the $P$-bimodules as $P \otimes P\text{op}$-left modules. Then $P\text{op} \cong P$, so $P \otimes P\text{op} \cong P \otimes K[y]$ is isomorphic to a polynomial ring $P[y]$ in one indeterminate $y$ over $P$. In particular, the $P$-$P$-bimodule $P$ becomes a $P[y]$-module, and the injection $I: P \rightarrow P[y]$ satisfies $(I \cdot \mathcal{P}) \mathcal{P}' = \mathcal{P} \mathcal{P}'$. Hence Thm. 2.2 (with $K$ there replaced by $P$ and $P[y]$) gives $\text{h.dim}_{P[y]} P = 1$, which asserts that $\text{Ext}_{P^+}^2(P, -)$ above vanishes, hence that $\text{Ext}_{P^+}^2 = 0$, so $\text{gl.dim} P \leq r + 1$. On the other hand, $\text{gl.dim} K = r$ means that there are $K$-modules $C$ and $A$ with $\text{Ext}_K^2(C, A) = 0$. By Prop. 4.1, this gives $\text{Ext}_{P^+}^2(C, A) = \text{Ext}_K^2(C, A) = 0$, so $\text{gl.dim} P$ is at least $r + 1$. This latter argument also gives the result stated for $r = \infty$.

**Corollary 4.3.** The global dimension of $Z[x_1, \ldots, x_n]$ is $n + 1$.

**Corollary 4.4.** The global dimension of the polynomial ring $P = P_F[x_1, \ldots, x_n]$ in $n$ indeterminates over a field $F$ is $n$. If $J$ is any ideal in $P$, $\text{h.dim}_P J \leq n - 1$.

Only the assertion as to the ideal $J$ requires proof. Any projective resolution of $J$ yields an exact sequence

$$0 \rightarrow C_{n-1} \rightarrow X_{n-2} \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow X_0 \rightarrow J \rightarrow 0$$

of $P$-modules with the $X_i$ projective. Compose this sequence with $J \rightarrow P \rightarrow P/J$ to give an exact sequence with $n$ intermediate projective modules, ending in $P/J$. Since $n$ is the global dimension of $P$, $\text{h.dim}_P P/J \leq n$, so by the characterization of homological dimension (Thm. 1.1), $C_{n-1}$ is projective. This proves $\text{h.dim}_P J \leq n - 1$.

### 5. Separable Algebras

We now consider applications to the classical theory of (ungraded) algebras $A$. Recall that $1_A$ denotes the identity element of $A$.

**Proposition 5.1.** The following conditions on an algebra $A$ are equivalent:

(i) $\text{h.dim}_{(A \otimes A)^{op}} A = 0$.

(ii) $A$ is a projective $A$-bimodule.

(iii) The product map $\pi: A \otimes A \rightarrow A$ has a bimodule right inverse.

(iv) There is an element $e$ in $A \otimes A$ with $\pi e = 1_A$ and $\lambda e = e \lambda$ for all $\lambda$. 

14*
In this section we denote these equivalent properties by writing $\operatorname{bidim} A = 0$ (read: "The homological dimension of $A$ as a $A$-bimodule is zero").

**Proof.** Properties (i) and (ii) are equivalent by the definition of homological dimension. In (iii), the product map $\pi(\lambda \otimes \mu) = \lambda \mu$ is an epimorphism of $A$-bimodules. If $A$ is projective, this product map splits by a bimodule homomorphism $a: A \to A \otimes A$ with $\pi a = 1$; this proves (ii) $\Rightarrow$ (iii). Conversely, if $\pi a = 1$, then $A$ is a bimodule direct summand of the free bimodule $A \otimes A$, hence is projective. If $\pi a = 1$, then $A = e \in A \otimes A$ has $\pi e = 1_A$; since $a$ is a bimodule homomorphism, $a = Ae = e\lambda$. Conversely, an element $e$ with these properties determines such an $a$.

We now investigate the preservation of the property $\operatorname{bidim} A = 0$ under three standard constructions for algebras: Direct products, ground ring extension, and formation of total matrix algebras.

The direct product of two $K$-algebras $r$ and $\Sigma$ is a $K$-algebra $A = \Gamma \times \Sigma$; as a $K$-module it is the direct sum $\Gamma \oplus \Sigma$ with elements all pairs $(y, a)$; its multiplication is given by

$$(\gamma, \sigma) (\gamma', \sigma') = (\gamma \gamma', \sigma \sigma');$$

its identity is thus $(1_{\Gamma}, 1_{\Sigma})$. The projections $\pi_1(\gamma, a) = \gamma$, $\pi_2(\gamma, a) = \sigma$ are algebra homomorphisms

$$\Gamma \xrightarrow{\pi_1} \Gamma \times \Sigma \xrightarrow{\pi_2} \Sigma,$$

(5.2)

its identity is thus $(1_{\Gamma}, 1_{\Sigma})$. The projections $\pi_1(\gamma, a) = \gamma$, $\pi_2(\gamma, a) = \sigma$ are algebra homomorphisms

$$\Gamma \xrightarrow{\pi_1} \Gamma \times \Sigma \xrightarrow{\pi_2} \Sigma,$$

(5.2)

its identity is thus $(1_{\Gamma}, 1_{\Sigma})$. The projections $\pi_1(\gamma, a) = \gamma$, $\pi_2(\gamma, a) = \sigma$ are algebra homomorphisms

$$\Gamma \xrightarrow{\pi_1} \Gamma \times \Sigma \xrightarrow{\pi_2} \Sigma,$$

(5.2)

its identity is thus $(1_{\Gamma}, 1_{\Sigma})$. The projections $\pi_1(\gamma, a) = \gamma$, $\pi_2(\gamma, a) = \sigma$ are algebra homomorphisms

$$\Gamma \xrightarrow{\pi_1} \Gamma \times \Sigma \xrightarrow{\pi_2} \Sigma,$$

(5.2)

its identity is thus $(1_{\Gamma}, 1_{\Sigma})$. The projections $\pi_1(\gamma, a) = \gamma$, $\pi_2(\gamma, a) = \sigma$ are algebra homomorphisms

$$\Gamma \xrightarrow{\pi_1} \Gamma \times \Sigma \xrightarrow{\pi_2} \Sigma,$$

(5.2)

its identity is thus $(1_{\Gamma}, 1_{\Sigma})$. The projections $\pi_1(\gamma, a) = \gamma$, $\pi_2(\gamma, a) = \sigma$ are algebra homomorphisms

$$\Gamma \xrightarrow{\pi_1} \Gamma \times \Sigma \xrightarrow{\pi_2} \Sigma,$$

(5.2)

its identity is thus $(1_{\Gamma}, 1_{\Sigma})$. The projections $\pi_1(\gamma, a) = \gamma$, $\pi_2(\gamma, a) = \sigma$ are algebra homomorphisms

$$\Gamma \xrightarrow{\pi_1} \Gamma \times \Sigma \xrightarrow{\pi_2} \Sigma,$$

(5.2)

its identity is thus $(1_{\Gamma}, 1_{\Sigma})$. The projections $\pi_1(\gamma, a) = \gamma$, $\pi_2(\gamma, a) = \sigma$ are algebra homomorphisms

$$\Gamma \xrightarrow{\pi_1} \Gamma \times \Sigma \xrightarrow{\pi_2} \Sigma,$$

(5.2)

its identity is thus $(1_{\Gamma}, 1_{\Sigma})$. The projections $\pi_1(\gamma, a) = \gamma$, $\pi_2(\gamma, a) = \sigma$ are algebra homomorphisms

$$\Gamma \xrightarrow{\pi_1} \Gamma \times \Sigma \xrightarrow{\pi_2} \Sigma,$$

(5.2)

its identity is thus $(1_{\Gamma}, 1_{\Sigma})$. The projections $\pi_1(\gamma, a) = \gamma$, $\pi_2(\gamma, a) = \sigma$ are algebra homomorphisms

$$\Gamma \xrightarrow{\pi_1} \Gamma \times \Sigma \xrightarrow{\pi_2} \Sigma,$$

(5.2)

its identity is thus $(1_{\Gamma}, 1_{\Sigma})$. The projections $\pi_1(\gamma, a) = \gamma$, $\pi_2(\gamma, a) = \sigma$ are algebra homomorphisms

$$\Gamma \xrightarrow{\pi_1} \Gamma \times \Sigma \xrightarrow{\pi_2} \Sigma,$$

(5.2)

its identity is thus $(1_{\Gamma}, 1_{\Sigma})$. The projections $\pi_1(\gamma, a) = \gamma$, $\pi_2(\gamma, a) = \sigma$ are algebra homomorphisms

$$\Gamma \xrightarrow{\pi_1} \Gamma \times \Sigma \xrightarrow{\pi_2} \Sigma,$$

(5.2)

its identity is thus $(1_{\Gamma}, 1_{\Sigma})$. The projections $\pi_1(\gamma, a) = \gamma$, $\pi_2(\gamma, a) = \sigma$ are algebra homomorphisms

$$\Gamma \xrightarrow{\pi_1} \Gamma \times \Sigma \xrightarrow{\pi_2} \Sigma,$$

(5.2)

its identity is thus $(1_{\Gamma}, 1_{\Sigma})$. The projections $\pi_1(\gamma, a) = \gamma$, $\pi_2(\gamma, a) = \sigma$ are algebra homomorphisms

$$\Gamma \xrightarrow{\pi_1} \Gamma \times \Sigma \xrightarrow{\pi_2} \Sigma,$$

(5.2)

its identity is thus $(1_{\Gamma}, 1_{\Sigma})$. The projections $\pi_1(\gamma, a) = \gamma$, $\pi_2(\gamma, a) = \sigma$ are algebra homomorphisms

$$\Gamma \xrightarrow{\pi_1} \Gamma \times \Sigma \xrightarrow{\pi_2} \Sigma,$$

(5.2)

its identity is thus $(1_{\Gamma}, 1_{\Sigma})$. The projections $\pi_1(\gamma, a) = \gamma$, $\pi_2(\gamma, a) = \sigma$ are algebra homomorphisms

$$\Gamma \xrightarrow{\pi_1} \Gamma \times \Sigma \xrightarrow{\pi_2} \Sigma,$$

(5.2)
5. Separable Algebras

map \( a : A \to A \otimes A \). Since the injections \( \Gamma \otimes \Gamma \to A \otimes A \) and \( \Sigma \otimes \Sigma \to A \otimes A \) preserve the product, \( \pi a = 1 \), as required for \( \text{bidim } A = 0 \).

A ground-ring extension is the process of passing from algebras over the commutative ground-ring \( K \) to algebras over a new ground-ring \( R \), where \( R \) is now assumed to be a commutative algebra over \( K \). If \( A \) is a \( K \)-algebra, then \( R \otimes A \) is a ring (as the tensor product of rings) and an \( R \)-module (via its left factor); since \( R \) is commutative, it is also an algebra over \( R \). As an algebra over \( R \) we denote \( R \otimes A \) by \( A^R \) (the standard notation is \( A_R \); this would conflict with our previous notation for \( R \)-modules).

**Proposition 5.3.** If \( \text{bidim } A = 0 \), then \( \text{bidim } A^R = 0 \).

**Proof.** The \( A^R \)-bimodule \( A^R \otimes_R A^R = (R \otimes A) \otimes_R (R \otimes A) \) is isomorphic to \( R \otimes A \otimes A \) under the correspondence \( (r \otimes A) \otimes (s \otimes A) \to rs \otimes A \otimes A \). If \( e = \sum \mu_i \otimes v_i \in A \otimes A \) has the property (iv) of Prop. 5.1 for \( A \), one checks that \( e' = \sum 1 \otimes \mu_i \otimes v_i \) has the corresponding properties for \( A^R \).

The ground-ring extension is useful in the classical case of algebras \( A \) of finite dimension (as vector spaces) over a field \( F \). Any field \( L > F \) may be regarded as a commutative algebra over \( F \), so that \( A^L \) is an algebra over \( L \). If \( A \) has \( F \)-basis \( u_1, \ldots, u_n \), the product in \( A \) is determined via \( u_i u_j = \sum_k f_{ij}^k u_k \) by \( n^2 \) constants \( f_{ij}^k \in F \). The extended algebra \( A^L \) is the vector space over \( L \) with basis \( 1 \otimes u_i, i = 1, \ldots, n \) and the same multiplication constants \( f_{ij}^k \). In this case we have a converse of the last proposition.

**Proposition 5.4.** If \( A \) is an algebra over a field \( F \) and \( R \) a commutative algebra over \( F \), then \( \text{bidim } A^R = 0 \) implies \( \text{bidim } A = 0 \).

**Proof.** For \( \otimes = \otimes_F \), the product map for \( A^R \) is equivalent to the epimorphism \( (1 \otimes \pi) : R \otimes A \otimes A \to R \otimes A \) of \( A^R \) bimodules; by hypothesis it has a right inverse \( \alpha \) which is a map of \( A^R \)-bimodules. Since an \( F \)-algebra homomorphism \( j : A \to A^R \) is defined by \( j(\lambda) = 1 \otimes \lambda \), each \( A^R \)-bimodule pulls back along \( j \) to become a \( A \)-bimodule; in particular, we may regard \( \alpha : R \otimes A \to R \otimes A \otimes A \) as a map of \( A \)-bimodules. Now \( R \) is a vector space over the field \( F \); choose a basis with first element \( 1_R \). If \( \eta \) maps \( 1_R \) to \( 1_F \) and the remaining basis elements to zero, \( \eta : R + F \) is an \( F \)-module homomorphism whose composite with the injection \( \iota : F \to R \) is the identity. Now form the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
F \otimes A & \xrightarrow{\iota \otimes 1} & R \otimes A \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow 1 \otimes \pi \\
A & & R \otimes A \\
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
 & R \otimes A \otimes A & \\
\downarrow \eta \otimes 1 & & \downarrow 1 \otimes \pi \\
& F \otimes A & \\
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
F \otimes A & \xrightarrow{\eta \otimes 1} & F \otimes A \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \pi \\
A & & A \\
\end{array}
\]

The squares are commutative; the composite of the top row is a composite of \( A \)-bimodule maps, hence is a bimodule map \( a' : A \to A \otimes A \).
Since \((1 \otimes \pi)a = 1\) and \(\eta \tau = 1\), the diagram shows \(\pi a' = 1\), so \(\text{bidim } A = 0\) by (iii) of Prop. 5.1.

The process of ground-ring extensions also includes the process of "reduction modulo a prime \(p\)". Indeed, the ring \(\mathbb{Z}_p\) of integers modulo \(p\) may be regarded as a commutative algebra \(R\) over \(\mathbb{Z}\). For any 2-algebra \(A, \mathcal{A}_R\) is then the algebra \(A \text{ "reduced modulo } p\)".

The total matrix algebra \(M_n(F)\) over a field \(F\) consists of all \(n \times n\) matrices of elements from \(F\) with the usual product; as a vector space over \(F\) it has a basis consisting of the matrices \(e_{ij}\) for \(i, j = 1, \ldots, n\). Here \(e_{ij}\) is the matrix with entry 1 in the \(i\)-th row and the \(j\)-th column and zeros elsewhere. The multiplication is given by \(e_{ij}e_{jk} = e_{ik}\) and \(e_{ss} = 0\) for \(r \neq s\). If \(L > F\) is a larger field, \([M, (F)]^L \cong M_n(L)\).

**Proposition 5.5.** For any field \(F\), \(\text{bidim } M_n(F) = 0\).

**Proof.** The element \(e = \sum e_{ii} \otimes e_{1i} \in M_n(F) \otimes M_n(F)\) has \(ne = \sum e_{ii} = 1\) and \(e_{ss} = 0\). Hence \(e = e_{ss} \otimes e_{1s} = ee_{ss}\), so that it satisfies the conditions (iv) of Prop. 5.1.

An algebra \(A\) over a field \(F\) is semi-simple (cf. §1) if every left \(A\)-module is projective. If \(\text{bidim } A = 0\), \(A\) is semi-simple: For any left \(A\)-modules \(C\) and \(A\), Thm. 3.3 gives an isomorphism

\[\text{Ext}_A^1(C, A) \cong \text{Ext}_A^1(-, A, \text{Hom}(C, A))\]

so \(\text{Ext}_A^1(C, -)\) vanishes and \(C\) is left-\(A\) projective.

An algebra \(A\) over a field \(F\) is called separable if, for every extension field \(L > F\), the algebra \(A_L\) is semi-simple. By Prop. 5.5, each total matrix algebra is separable. It is easy to see that the direct product of separable algebras is separable. Conversely, the Wedderburn structure theorem states that for every separable algebra \(A\) of finite dimension over a field \(F\) there is an extension field \(L\) of \(F\) (actually of finite dimension as a vector space over \(F\)) such that \(A_L\) is a direct product of a finite number of total matrix algebras. Assuming this result we prove

**Theorem 5.6.** If the algebra \(A\) over a field \(F\) has finite dimension as a vector space over \(F\), \(A\) is separable if and only if \(\text{bidim } A = 0\).

**Proof.** First suppose \(A\) separable. By the structure theorem, there is a \(L\) with \(A_L = \bigotimes_1 \mathcal{A} \times \cdots \times \bigotimes_m \mathcal{A}\) with each \(\mathcal{A}\) a total matrix algebra over \(L\). By Prop. 5.5, bidim \(\mathcal{A} = 0\), hence by Prop. 5.2 bidim \(A_L = 0\), whence by Prop. 5.4, bidim \(A = 0\).

Conversely, suppose \(\text{bidim } A = 0\). For each \(L > F\) we wish to prove every left \(A_L\)-module \(C\) projective. Let \(B\) be another left \(A_L\)-module. By adjoint associativity (Thm. 3.3),

\[\text{Ext}_{A_L}^1(C, B) \cong \text{Ext}_{A_L}^1(\text{Hom}_L(C, B))\]

So the Ext-group \(\text{Ext}_{A_L}^1(C, B)\) vanishes and \(\text{Ext}_{A_L}^0(C, B)\) is projective.
But $\text{bidim} A = 0$ implies $\text{bidim} A^L = 0$ by Prop. 5.3, so that $A^L$ is a projective bimodule, and the Ext on the right vanishes. Therefore $\text{Ext}^1(C, B) = 0$ for any $B$, which states that $C$ is projective, as desired.

Note that the proof has been wholly elementary, except for the use of $\text{Ext}^1$, via adjoint associativity, to switch from the bimodule $A^L$ to left modules.

The effect of direct product and ground-ring extensions upon the functor $\text{Ext}(A, -)$ in the more general case when $\text{bidim} A \neq 0$ will be studied in Chap. X.

### Exercises

1. Construct the direct product of two DG-algebras (over the same $K$) so as to be couniversal.

2. For $\Gamma$ and $\Sigma$ algebras over $K$ prove $(\Gamma \otimes \Sigma)^R \cong \Gamma^R \otimes_R \Sigma^R$, $(\Gamma \times \Sigma)^R \cong \Gamma^R \times \Sigma^R$, and $(\Gamma \times \Sigma)^{op} \cong \Gamma^{op} \times \Sigma^{op}$.

3. (Coefficient extensions need not remain semi-simple.) For $p$ a rational prime, $\mathbb{Z}_p$ the field of integers mod $p$, and $L = \mathbb{Z}_p(x)$ the field of all rational functions over $\mathbb{Z}_p$ in one indeterminate $x$, let $F$ be the subfield $\mathbb{Z}_p(x^p)$. Then $L$ is a commutative algebra over $F$; let $A$ be an isomorphic $F$-algebra under $x \rightarrow u \in A$. Show $A$ but not $A^L$ semi-simple. (If $M$ is the ideal in $A^L$ generated by $u - x$, the epimorphism $A^L \rightarrow M$ with $1 \rightarrow u - x$ does not split.)

### 6. Graded Syzygies

Let $P = F[x_1, \ldots, x_n]$ be the polynomial algebra over a field $F$ in $n$ indeterminates $x_i$, each of degree 1. Cor. 4.4 shows that any $P$-module $A$ has a projective resolution

$$0 \leftarrow A \leftarrow X_0 \leftarrow \cdots \leftarrow X_n \leftarrow 0$$

which stops with the term $X_n$. The Hilbert syzygy theorem asserts that a graded $P$-module $A$ has such a resolution with $X_k$ free graded modules stopping at the same point. Though closely related, we cannot deduce this syzygy theorem from our previous result, because we do not know that a projective module must be free.

In this section we regard $P$ as an internally graded algebra over $F$; the homogeneous elements of degree $m$ are thus the ordinary homogeneous polynomials of that degree. We work in the category of all internally graded $P$-modules with morphisms all $P$-module homomorphisms of degree 0; the kernels and cokernels of such morphisms are again internally graded $P$-modules. Each internally graded $P$-module $A = \Sigma A$, is also an ungraded module over the ungraded algebra $P$. If $G$ is a second such module, we use $G \otimes_P A$ and $\text{Tor}_1^P(G, A)$ to denote the ordinary tensor and torsion products, constructed without regard to the grading. This use of internal grading has the advantage of suiting
the classical notion of a polynomial ring and the technical advantage of using the ordinary torsion product. A grading of the torsion product will be introduced in X.8 where it is appropriate.

The coefficient field $F$ is a (trivially) graded $P$-module under the usual action $x_i f = 0$ for $f \in F$.

**Lemma 6.1.** If $A$ is a graded $P$-module with $A \otimes_p F = 0$, then $A = 0$.

**Proof.** Let $J = (x_1, \ldots, x_n)$ be the ideal of all polynomials in $P$ with constant term 0. The exact sequence $J \rightarrow P \rightarrow F$ of $P$-modules gives $A \otimes_p J \rightarrow A \otimes_p P \rightarrow A \otimes_p F = 0$ exact, so that $A \otimes_p J \rightarrow A \otimes_p P = A$. This states that each $a \in A$ lies in $A J$. If $A \neq 0$, take a non-zero element $a$ of lowest possible degree $k$. Every product in $A J = A$ then has degree at least one higher, in contradiction to the assumption $A \neq 0$.

Note that this proof does not work for $Z$-graded modules, where there could be elements of arbitrary negative degree.

**Lemma 6.2.** A graded $P$-module $A$ with $\text{Tor}_1^P(A, F) = 0$ is free.

**Proof.** Since $A$ is graded, $A \otimes_p F$ is a graded vector space over $F$, spanned by homogeneous elements $a \otimes 1$. Take a set $S$ of homogeneous elements such that the $s \otimes 1$ form a basis of this vector space and form the free graded $P$-module $M$ on the set $S$. The identity $S + S < A$ gives a homomorphism $\eta : M \rightarrow A$ of degree zero; by the choice of $S$,

$$\eta \otimes 1 : M \otimes_p F \cong A \otimes_p F$$

is an isomorphism. The kernel $B$ and the cokernel $C$ of $\eta$ give an exact sequence of graded $P$-modules

$$0 \rightarrow B \rightarrow M \xrightarrow{\eta} A \rightarrow C \rightarrow 0$$

(with homogeneous homomorphisms of degree 0, though we do not need this fact). Applying $\otimes_p F$ to the right hand portion produces an exact sequence

$$M \otimes_p F \rightarrow A \otimes_p F \rightarrow C \otimes_p F.$$

By (6.1), $C \otimes_p F = 0$, so $C = 0$ by the previous lemma. To the remaining short exact sequence $B \rightarrow M \rightarrow A$ apply the fundamental exact sequence for the torsion product (with $F$) to get the exact sequence

$$0 \rightarrow \text{Tor}_1^P(A, F) \rightarrow B \otimes_p F \rightarrow M \otimes_p F \xrightarrow{\eta \otimes 1} A \otimes_p F \rightarrow 0,$$

where the left hand zero stands for $\text{Tor}$, $(M, F)$, which vanishes since $M$ is free. By (6.1) again, $B \otimes_p F \cong \text{Tor}_1^P(A, F)$, which vanishes by assumption. Hence $B \otimes_p F = 0$, so $B = 0$ by another application of the previous lemma. Our exact sequence has collapsed to $0 \rightarrow M \rightarrow A \rightarrow 0$, showing $A$ isomorphic to the free module $M$. 

Chapter VII. Dimension
Proposition 6.3. For each graded $P$-module $A$ there is a free graded $P$-module $M$ and an epimorphism $\eta: M + A \to 0$ of degree $0$, such that to each epimorphism $\varepsilon: X_0 \to A$ with $X_0$ free, there is a commutative diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
M & \xrightarrow{\eta} & A \\
\downarrow{\beta} & & \Vert \\
X_0 & \xrightarrow{\varepsilon} & A
\end{array}
$$

with $\beta$ a monomorphism. The kernel of $\eta$ is contained in $JM$; with this property, the pair $(M, \eta)$ is unique up to isomorphism.

Proof. Construct $\eta$ with $\eta \otimes 1$ an isomorphism as in (6.1); the first part of the proof above shows $\eta(M) = A$. The usual comparison gives a homomorphism $\beta$; let $B$ its kernel. Construct the diagram

$$
0 \to B \otimes_p F \to M \otimes_p F \to X_0 \otimes_p F \to A \otimes_p F
$$

where the left-hand zero stands for $\text{Tor}_1^P(X_0, F)$, zero because $X_0$ is free. The row is exact and the dotted composite is the isomorphism (6.4), hence $B \otimes_p F = 0$, so $B = 0$ by Lemma 6.1. The uniqueness is similar.

The kernel $A_1$ of $\eta: M \to A$ can be again written as an image $M_1 \to A_1$; iteration yields a unique free resolution $\cdots \to M_2 \to M_1 \to M \to A \to 0$ of $A$, called a minimal resolution. For applications see Adams [1960, p. 28]; for a general discussion, Eilenberg [1956].

Theorem 6.4. (The Hilbert Theorem on Syzygies.) If $A$ is a graded module over the graded polynomial ring $P = F[x_1, \ldots, x_n]$ in $n$ indeterminates of degree $1$ over a field $F$, then any exact sequence

$$
T: 0 \leftarrow A \leftarrow X_0 \leftarrow \cdots \leftarrow X_{n-1} \leftarrow A_n \leftarrow 0
$$

of graded $P$-modules with the $X_i$ free has its $n$-th term $A_n$ free.

Such a sequence can always be constructed, by choosing $X_0$ free on a set of homogeneous generators of $A$, $X_1$ similarly for generators of $	ext{Ker}[X_0 \to A]$, and so on. The theorem implies that $h.\dim P A \leq n$.

Proof. Since the $X_i$ are free, the connecting homomorphism of the given exact sequence $T$ provides an isomorphism $\text{Tor}_{n+1}^P(A, F) \cong \text{Tor}_1^P(A_n, F)$. But the Koszul resolution for $F$ showed $h.\dim F \leq n$, so $\text{Tor}_{n+1}^P(A, F) = 0$. Then by Lemma 6.2 $A_n$ is free, as asserted.

Any ideal $J$ of $P$ is a submodule of $P$; as in VI.3 it is called a homogeneous ideal if it is a graded submodule; that is, if $J$ is generated by its homogeneous elements.
Corollary 6.5. If $J$ is a homogeneous ideal in $P$, any exact sequence $0 \leftarrow J \leftarrow X_0 \leftarrow \cdots \leftarrow X_{n-2} \leftarrow A_{n-1} \leftarrow 0$ of graded $P$-modules with all $X_i$ free has $A_{n-1}$ free.

Proof. This implies our previous result that $h.\dim P J \leq n - 1$. As in that case, we prove it by composing the given sequence with the short exact sequence $P/J \leftarrow P \leftarrow J$ and applying the Syzygy Theorem to the graded quotient module $P/J$.

Note. HILBERT's Theorem was proved [HILBERT 1890] with a view to invariant theory, especially to the modules of forms invariant under a group of linear transformations; his paper (on pp. 504–508) contains a calculation equivalent to the Koszul resolution of $F$. His proof was simplified by GRÖBNER [1949]; our proof follows CARTAN [1952], who first applied homological methods and established a much more general theorem, valid also for local rings (see § 7, below).

Exercises

1. For $P = F[x, y, z]$ construct an ungraded $P$-module which has no internal grading consistent with this $P$-module structure.

2. Show that the HILBERT Syzygy Theorem holds with $P$ replaced by any internally graded ring $G$ for which $G_0$ is a field.

3. (General Koszul resolution.) If $A$ is a right $R$-module, an element $x \neq 0$ of $R$ is called a zero-divisor for $A$ if $ax = 0$ for some $a \neq 0$ in $A$. Thus $x$ is not a zero-divisor for $A$ exactly when the map $a \mapsto ax$ is a monomorphism $A \to A$. For $x_1, \ldots, x_n \in R$ let $J_k$ be the right ideal of $R$ generated by $x_1, \ldots, x_k$. If for each $k = 1, \ldots, n$, $x_k$ is not a zero divisor for $A/AJ_{k-1}$, prove that $A \otimes_R E_R[u_1, \ldots, u_n]$ with differential $\partial u_i = x_i$ and $e: A \otimes E_0 = A \otimes R \to A/AJ_n$ given by $e(a \otimes r) = ar + aJ_n$ provides a resolution of length $n$ for the $R$-module $A/AJ_n$. (Hint: Use induction on $n$ and apply the exact homology sequence to the quotient of $A \otimes E$ by the corresponding complex without $u_n$.)

Note. This result with $A = R = F[x_1, \ldots, x_n]$ gives the previous Koszul resolution of $F$ as a $P$-module. The more general case is useful in ideal theory, where the sequence $x_1, \ldots, x_n$ with $x_k$ no zero divisor for $A/AJ_{k-1}$ and $A/AJ_n \neq 0$ is called an A-sequence for $A$ [AUSLANDER-BUCHSBAUM 1957, with $E$ in place of our $A$] while the least upper bound of all $n$ for such A-sequences is the codimension of $A$.

7. Local Rings

In this section we summarize without proofs some of the accomplishments of homological algebra for the study of local rings. All rings will be commutative.

A prime ideal $P$ in a ring $K$ is an ideal such that $rs \in P$ implies $r \in P$ or $s \in P$; it is equivalent to require that the quotient ring $K/P$ has no divisors of zero. Any ring $K$ has as ideals the set $(0)$ consisting of $0$ alone and the set $K$; a proper ideal $J$ of $K$ is an ideal with $(0) \neq J \subseteq K$. A unit $u$ of $K$ is an element with an inverse $v (vu = 1)$ in $K$. Clearly no proper ideal can contain an unit.
A local ring \( L \) is a commutative ring in which the non-units form an ideal \( M \); then \( M \) must contain all proper ideals of \( L \). If \( L \) is not a field, \( M \) is the maximal proper ideal of \( L \). In any event, \( M \) is a prime ideal. Moreover \( L/M \) is a field, the residue field of \( L \). For a rational prime \( p \), the ring of \( p \)-adic integers is a local ring; the residue field is the field of integers mod \( p \). Another local ring is the set of all formal power series in non-negative powers of \( n \) indeterminates \( x_1, \ldots, x_n \) and with coefficients in a field \( F \); a power series has an (formal) inverse if and only if its constant term is not zero, so the maximal ideal is the set of all formal power series with vanishing constant term, and the residue field is \( F \).

If \( P \) is a prime ideal in the integral domain \( D \), the ring of quotients \( D_P \) is the set of all formal quotients \( a/b \) for \( a, b \in D \) and \( b \) not in \( P \), with the usual equality \( a/b = a'/b' \) if and only if \( a b' = a' b \). These quotients form a ring under the usual operations \( a/b + a'/b' = (ab' + a' b)/b b' \), \( (a/b)(a'/b') = a a'/b b' \). Such a quotient \( a/b \) has an inverse \( b/a \) in \( D_P \) if and only if \( a \in P \), hence \( D_P \) is a local ring with maximal ideal all \( a/b \) with \( a \in P \); if we regard \( D_P \) as a \( D \)-module, this maximal ideal may be written as the product \( PD_P \). For example, if \( D \) is the ring of all polynomials in \( n \) indeterminates over an algebraically closed field \( C \), the set of all zeros of \( P \) — that is, of all points \( (c_1, \ldots, c_n) \) with \( f(c_1, \ldots, c_n) = 0 \) for each \( f \in P \) — is an irreducible (affine) algebraic manifold \( V \). The corresponding local ring \( D_P \) is then known as the ring of rational functions on the manifold \( V \); indeed, for each formal quotient \( f/g \) in \( D_P \) we can define the value of the quotient \( f/g \) at each point \( (c_1, \ldots, c_n) \) of \( V \) as \( f(c_1, \ldots, c_n)/g(c_1, \ldots, c_n) \). Similarly, a point on the manifold \( V \) is associated with a prime ideal containing \( P \), and the ring of rational functions at this point is a local ring. This example explains the terminology "local".

A \( K \)-module \( C \) is noetherian if every submodule of \( C \) is of finite type; it is equivalent to require that \( C \) satisfy the ascending chain condition for submodules: For any sequence \( C_1 \subset \cdots \subset C_k \subset C_{k+1} \subset \cdots \) of submodules of \( C \) there is an index \( n \) with \( C_k = C_{n+1} = \cdots \). The ring \( K \) itself is noetherian if it is a noetherian \( K \)-module. Hilbert's basis theorem asserts that the ring of polynomials in \( n \) indeterminates over a field is noetherian. Also any module of finite type over a noetherian ring is itself noetherian.

Over a noetherian ring it is natural to consider the category of all noetherian modules; every submodule or quotient module of such is again noetherian. With this agreement, the Hilbert Theorem on \textit{Syzygies} holds for noetherian local rings: In the statement of Theorem 6.4, replace the polynomial ring by a local ring \( L \), the field of coefficients by the residue field \( L/M \), and read "finitely generated module" for "graded module". The crux of the proof lies in the analogue of Lemma 6.1, with the ideal \( J \) replaced by \( M \): When \( A = AM \), then \( A = A M^n \) for
each \( n \), and the intersection of the \( M^n \) is zero. An instructive presentation of this argument may be found in Eilenberg [1956].

In a noetherian ring \( K \) the \textbf{Krull dimension} \( k \) is the largest integer for which there is a properly ascending sequence of prime ideals \( P_0 < P_1 < \cdots < P_k < K \); it can be shown that this dimension is always finite. In a local ring \( L \) with maximal ideal \( M \), the quotient \( M/M^2 \) is a vector space over the residue field \( L/M \); since \( M \) is a finitely generated ideal, the vector space dimension \( n = \dim_{L/M} M/M^2 \) is finite. It can be shown that the Krull dimension of \( L \) is at most \( n \). The local ring is said to be \textit{regular} if its Krull dimension is exactly \( n = \dim_{L/M} M/M^2 \). These are the local rings of greatest geometric interest.

Using homological methods, Serre [1956] and later Auslander-Buchsbaum [1956] have proved (see also Assmus [1959]):

\textbf{Theorem.} A local ring \( L \) with maximal ideal \( M \) is regular if and only if \( h. \dim, L/M < \infty \), or equivalently, if and only if \( \text{gl. dim} \; L < \infty \). In particular this characterization of regularity allows an easy proof that if \( P \) is a prime ideal in a regular local ring \( L \), then the (local) ring of quotients \( L_P \) is also regular. Before the use of homological methods this result had been known only for certain geometrically important cases.

More recently Auslander-Buchsbaum [1959] have proved Krull's conjecture:

\textbf{Theorem.} Any regular local ring is a unique factorization domain.

The proof made essential use of Nagata's [1958] reduction of this conjecture to the case of homological dimension 3. This theorem includes, for example, the classical result of the unique factorization for power series rings.

Note. The torsion product in local rings yields an efficient treatment of intersection multiplicity of submanifolds of an algebraic manifold [Serre 1958]. Among the many recent studies of homological dimension in noetherian rings we note Tate [1957], Auslander-Buchsbaum [1958], Matlis [1960], Jans [1961]. One of the earliest uses of homological dimension was Hochschild's [1945, 1946] discovery of the connection (§ 5) between the bidimension of \( A \) and separability. The homology theory of Frobenius algebras is analogous to that of groups [Nakayama 1957; Nakayama-Tsuji 1960, 1961; Kasch 1961].

Chapter eight

Products

1. Homology Products

Throughout the study of products there is an interplay between "external" and "internal" products. This relation may be illustrated in the case of homology products. If \( X_R \) and \( Y \) are chain complexes of
I. Homology Products

R-modules the external homology product is the homomorphism of abelian groups

\[ \phi : H_k(X) \otimes_R H_m(Y) \to H_{k+m}(X \otimes_R Y), \quad (1.1) \]

defined on cycles u of X and v of Y by

\[ \phi(\text{cls } u \otimes \text{cls } v) = \text{cls } (u \otimes v). \]

This mapping \( \phi \) is natural in X and Y; it has already appeared in the K"unneth Formula. This product is associative: For rings R and S and complexes \( X_R, Y_S \), and, W the composites

\[ \phi(1 \otimes \phi) = \phi(\phi \otimes 1) : H_k(X) \otimes_R H_l(Y) \otimes_S H_m(W) \to H_n(X \otimes_R Y \otimes_S W), \]

with \( n = k + l + m \), are equal.

On the other hand suppose \( U \) a DG-algebra over a commutative ring K. Then \( H(U) \) is a graded K-algebra under the product

\[ \pi : H(U) \otimes H(U) \to H(U) \]

already defined (VI.7) as

\[ \pi(\text{cls } u \otimes \text{cls } v) = \text{cls } (uv); \]

we call this the internal homology product. The internal product may be obtained from the external product via the product map \( \pi_U : U \otimes U \to U \), as the composite

\[ \pi = (\pi_U)_\ast \phi : H(U) \otimes H(U) \to H(U \otimes U) \to H(U). \]

The external homology product can be defined with coefficient modules. Take (ungraded) K-algebras A and A', complexes \( A^X \) and \( A'^X \) of K-modules, and right modules \( G_A, G_A' \), and set \( \Omega = A \otimes A' \). The external homology product is the composite map \( \phi_H = \tau \phi \) in the diagram

\[ H_k(G \otimes_A X) \otimes H_m(G' \otimes_{A'} X') \xrightarrow{\phi} H_{k+m}((G \otimes_A X) \otimes (G' \otimes_{A'} X')) \]

\[ \xrightarrow{\tau} H_{k+m}((G \otimes G') \otimes \Omega (X \otimes X')) \]

where \( \phi \) is the homology product of (1.1) with \( R = K \), while \( \tau \) is short for \( H_{k+m}(\tau) \); that is, for the homology map induced by the middle four interchange of (VI.8.4). This product \( \phi_H \) is natural and associative — the latter meaning that the diagram

\[ H(X) \otimes H(X') \otimes H(X'') \xrightarrow{1 \otimes \phi_H} H(X \otimes X') \otimes H(X'') \]

\[ \xrightarrow{\phi_H \otimes 1} H(X \otimes X') \otimes H(X'') \]

\[ \xrightarrow{\phi_H} H(X \otimes X' \otimes X''), \]

with G's and A's everywhere omitted, is commutative.
Chapter VIII. Products

Theorem 1.1. For algebras $A$ and $A'$ over a field, the homology product is an isomorphism

$$
\phi_H: \sum_{k+m=n} H_k(G \otimes_A X) \otimes H_m(G' \otimes_{A'} X') \cong H_n((G \otimes G') \otimes_{A \otimes A'} (X \otimes X')).
$$

Proof. All modules over a field are free, so the Kunneth tensor formula makes $\phi$ an isomorphism, while $\tau$ is always an isomorphism.

For left modules $A_A$ and $A'A'$ the external cohomology product is the composite map $\phi^H = \tau \phi$ in the diagram

$$
H^k(\text{Hom}_A(X, A)) \otimes H^m(\text{Hom}_{A'}(X', A')) \xrightarrow{\phi^H} H^{k+m}(\text{Hom}_A(X, A) \otimes \text{Hom}_{A'}(X', A')).
$$

(1)

Here $\phi$ is the homology product of (1.1), written with upper indices, while $\tau$ is the chain transformation determined by the Hom-$\otimes$ interchange of (VI.8.10). This product is natural and associative. Its definition may be rewritten in terms of cochains $h: X_k \to A$, $h': X'_m \to A'$.

Regard $h$ and $h'$ as homomorphisms of graded modules. By definition, $(h \otimes h')$ is the homomorphism

$$
(h \otimes h')(x \otimes x') = h x \otimes h' x', \quad p = k, q = m
$$

defined for $n = k + m$, $x \in X_p$, $x' \in X'_q$ as

$$
(h \otimes h')(x \otimes x') = h x \otimes h' x', \quad p = k, q = m.
$$

(1.4)

Then $6(h \otimes h') = \delta h \otimes h' + (-1)^{k+h} h' \otimes h$ and $\phi^H$ is given on cohomology classes as $\phi^H(\text{cls } h \otimes \text{cls } h') = \text{cls } (h \otimes h')$.

Theorem 1.2. For algebras $A$ and $A'$ over a field and positive complexes $X$ and $X'$ with each $X_k$ and each $X'_m$ a free $A$- or $A'$-module of finite type, the cohomology product is an isomorphism

$$
\phi^H: \sum_{k+m=n} H^k(\text{Hom}_A(X, A)) \otimes H^m(\text{Hom}_{A'}(X', A')) \cong H^{k+m}(\text{Hom}_{A \otimes A'}(X \otimes X', A \otimes A')).
$$

Proof. Since $X$ and $X'$ are positive, each $(X \otimes X')_n$ is a finite direct sum $\sum X_p \otimes X'_q$, and Hom$(X, -)$ is additive for finite direct sums (=direct products). The finite type assumption, as in Prop. VI.8.3, insures that the Hom-$\otimes$ interchange is an isomorphism of complexes, while $\phi$ is an isomorphism by the K"unneth tensor formula over a field.

Theorem 1.3. Connecting homomorphisms, when defined, commute with the homology product $\phi$. 

---

222
Proof. In (1.1), replace $X$ by a short exact sequence

$$E: 0 \rightarrow K \rightarrow L \rightarrow M \rightarrow 0$$

of complexes of right $R$-modules. The homology connecting homomorphisms are

$$\partial_E = E_*: H_{k+1}(M) \rightarrow H_k(K).$$

The sequence of tensor product complexes

$$E \otimes_R Y: 0 \rightarrow K \otimes_R Y \rightarrow L \otimes_R Y \rightarrow M \otimes_R Y \rightarrow 0,$$

if it is exact, also defines connecting homomorphisms, as in the diagram

$$H_{k+1}(M) \otimes_R H_m(Y) \xrightarrow{p} H_{k+m+1}(M \otimes_R Y) \xrightarrow{(E \otimes_R Y)_*} H_k(K) \otimes_R H_m(Y) \xrightarrow{p} H_{k+m}(K \otimes_R Y).$$

(1.6)

Our theorem asserts that this diagram is commutative; the proof is a direct application of the "switchback" description of the connecting homomorphisms. A corresponding result holds if $Y$ is replaced by a short exact sequence of complexes.

This result applies whenever $E \otimes_R Y$ is exact. It may not be; to get exactness we should replace the left hand zero in (1.5) by $2 \otimes_Y (M \otimes_Y Y)$. It will be exact in any one of the following cases:

Case 1: Each $Y_i$ is a flat left $R$-module;

Case 2: Each $M_i$ is a flat right $R$-module;

Case 3: $E$ is split as a sequence of right $R$-modules.

The third condition means that each sequence $K_i \rightarrow L_i \rightarrow M_i$ is split.

Corollary 1.4. Connecting homomorphisms, when defined, commute with the homology and cohomology products $\phi_H$ and $\phi^H$.

Proof. The result is immediate, since $\phi_H = \tau \phi$ and $\phi^H = \zeta \phi$ and the natural maps $\tau$ and $\zeta$ commute with connecting homomorphisms. The statement includes the cases when any one of the arguments $G$, $X$, $G'$ or $X'$ for $\phi_H$ is replaced by an appropriate short exact sequence. For example, replace $G$ by a short exact sequence $E$ of right $A$-modules. Suppose

(i) $X$ is a complex of flat left $A$-modules $X_n$;

(ii) $E$ is split as a sequence of $K$-modules;

(iii) $X'$ is a complex of flat left $A'$-modules $X'_n$.

(These are plausible hypotheses; they hold if $X$ and $X'$ are projective resolutions and $K$ is a field.) In succession, they insure that $E \otimes_A X$ is a short exact sequence of complexes of $K$-modules, that $E \otimes_K G'$ is a short exact sequence of $\Omega=A @ A'$-modules, and that the product
$$(E \otimes G') \otimes \alpha (X \otimes X')$$ is a short exact sequence of complexes of $K$-modules. Thus all connecting homomorphisms are defined, and the diagram like (1.6) is commutative.

2. The Torsion Product of Algebras

When $X$ and $X'$ are resolutions, the (co)homology products $p_H$ and $p^H$ will give corresponding products for Tor and Ext.

For $K$-modules $B, A, B', A'$ the middle four interchange

$$\tau: (B \otimes A) \otimes (B' \otimes A') \cong (B \otimes B') \otimes (A \otimes A')$$

(2.1)

of (VI.8.4) may be regarded as an external product for the functor $\otimes$. Recall that Thm. V.7.3 gives an isomorphism $\eta: \text{Tor}(B, A) \cong B \otimes A$, where the elements of Tor, are written as triples $t = (p, F, v)$ for $F$ a finitely generated free module with dual $F^*$ and homomorphisms $\mu: F \to B, v: F^* \to A$. Using this isomorphism $\eta$, the middle four interchange takes the form

$$\tau[(\mu, F, v) \otimes (\mu', F', v')] = (\mu \otimes \mu', F \otimes F', v \otimes v').$$

(2.2)

Here $v \otimes v': F^* \otimes F'^* \to A \otimes A'$, but we may regard $v \otimes v'$ as a map defined on $(F \otimes F')^*$ by the identification $F^* \otimes F'^* = (F \otimes F')^*$, given by the isomorphism of Prop. V.4.3 (incidentally, this identification is consistent with the identification $(F \otimes F') \otimes (F^* \otimes F'^*) = F \otimes (F^* \otimes F'^*)$). This formula (2.2) will be extended to higher torsion products.

An element of $\text{Tor}_k(B, A)$ was written as a triple $t = (\mu, L, v)$ with $L$ a finitely generated free complex of length $k$ and $\mu: L \to B, v: L^* \to A$ chain transformations. Given a second such $t' \in \text{Tor}_m(B', A')$, define a product

$$(\mu, L, v)(\mu', L', v') = (\mu \otimes \mu', L \otimes L', v \otimes v').$$

(2.3)

Here $L \otimes L'$ is a finitely generated free complex of length $k + m$, and $v \otimes v'$ a chain transformation $L^* \otimes L'^* = (L \otimes L')^* \to A \otimes A'$. This product is well defined with respect to the equality used for the elements of Tor, and is natural in the four modules concerned. This product $tt'$ is bilinear; we avoid the direct proof, via the addition defined in Tor, by the following use of resolutions.

**Theorem 2.1.** For four $K$-modules $B, A, B', A'$, the product (2.3) is a homomorphism

$$\rho_T: \text{Tor}_k(B, A) \otimes \text{Tor}_m(B', A') \to \text{Tor}_{k+m}(B \otimes B', A \otimes A').$$

(2.4)

It may be computed from projective resolutions $\varepsilon: X \to B, \varepsilon': X' \to B'$, and $\varepsilon'': Y \to B \otimes B'$ as the composite

$$H(X \otimes A) \otimes H(X' \otimes A') \xrightarrow{\rho_T} H(X \otimes X' \otimes A \otimes A') \xrightarrow{i} H(Y \otimes A \otimes A').$$
where $p_H$ is the external homology product of (1.2), with the roles of $G$ and $X$ interchanged, while $j: X \otimes X' \to Y$ is a chain transformation lifting $1_{B \otimes B'}$.

Proof. The tensor product of free or projective $K$-modules is free or projective, as the case may be, so $\epsilon \otimes \epsilon': X \otimes X' \to B \otimes B'$ is a projective complex over $B \otimes B'$. By the comparison theorem, the map $f$ lifting $1$ exists and its homology map $f_*$ is unique. The calculation of $\text{Tor}(B, A)$ from the resolution $X$ is expressed by the isomorphism $o: \text{Tor}(B, A) \cong H(X \otimes A)$ of Thm. V.8.1. Let $o'$ and $o''$ be analogous. The statement that $p_T$ can be computed as the composite $f_* p_H$ is

$$o''(tt') = f_*(h \otimes h' \otimes 1 \otimes 1)_* p_H \{\text{cls}(1, L_h, v) \otimes \text{cls}(1, L'_m, v')\},$$

so that (2.5) is a consequence of the naturality of the homology product $p_H$ under the chain transformations $h$ and $h'$.

Let $A$ and $\Gamma$ be two $K$-algebras, $n: A \otimes A \to A$ and $\varphi: \Gamma \otimes \Gamma \to \Gamma$ their multiplication maps. The composite

$$(A \otimes \Gamma)(\otimes (A \otimes \Gamma)) \xrightarrow{\tau} (A \otimes A) \otimes (\Gamma \otimes \Gamma) \xrightarrow{\pi \otimes \varphi} A \otimes \Gamma$$

gives the product in the algebra $A \otimes \Gamma$. In other words, the internal product in the tensor product algebra $A \otimes \Gamma$ is obtained from the external product $\tau$ of the modules.

This internal product will now be defined for $\text{Tor}(A, \Gamma)$.

Theorem 2.2. For $K$-algebras $A$ and $\Gamma$, the family $\{\text{Tor}_n^K(A, \Gamma)\}$ is a graded $K$-algebra $\text{Tor}_n^K(A, \Gamma)$ in which the elements of degree zero constitute the tensor product algebra $A \otimes \Gamma$. The product of two elements $t = (\mu, L, v)$ and $t' = (\mu', L', v')$ is defined by

$$(\mu, L, v)(\mu', L', v') = (\pi(\mu \otimes \mu'), L \otimes L', \varphi(v \otimes v')),$$

for $\pi$ and $\varphi$ the product maps of $A$ and $\Gamma$. 

Mac Lane, Homology
Proof. The internal product \((2.6)\) is the composite \(\text{Tor}(n, Q)_1 \hat{\phi}_T\), with \(\hat{\phi}_T\) the external product. By Thm. 2.1, this product \(tt'\) is bilinear; it is manifestly associative. The identity elements of the algebras \(A\) and \(\Gamma\) are represented by \(K\)-module homomorphisms \(I: K \to A\), \(I': K \to \Gamma\), and the identity element \(1_A \otimes 1_\Gamma\) of \(A \otimes \Gamma\) appears, via \(\eta: \text{Tor}, (A, \Gamma) \cong A \otimes \Gamma\), as the triple \(1_T = (I, K, I')\) of \(\text{Tor}\), where \(K\) is regarded as a free \(K\)-module on one generator. Then formula \((2.6)\) shows that \(1_T t = t = t 1_T\). Hence \(\text{Tor}(A, \Gamma)\) is a graded algebra as asserted.

We record how this product may be computed from a suitable resolution of \(A\).

Corollary 2.3. If \(U\) is a DG-algebra and \(\varepsilon: U \to A\) a homomorphism of DG-algebras such that \(U\), regarded as a complex, is a projective resolution of the \(K\)-module \(A\), then the canonical module isomorphism \(\omega: \text{Tor}(A, \Gamma) \cong H(U \otimes \Gamma)\) which expresses the torsion products by this resolution is also an isomorphism of graded algebras.

Proof. Here \(U \otimes \Gamma\), as tensor product of a DG-algebra \(U\) and a trivial DG-algebra \(\Gamma\), is a DG-algebra, so that \(H(U \otimes \Gamma)\) is indeed a graded algebra. In Thm. 2.1 above, we take \(B = B' = A\), so we may choose both \(X\) and \(X'\) to be the resolution \(U\), while \(Y\) is any projective resolution of \(A \otimes A\). Lift \(A\) and \(n\) to chain transformations \(f\) and \(g\), as in

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
U \otimes U & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
A \otimes A & \cong & A \otimes A \xrightarrow{\pi} A.
\end{array}
\]

Then \(\text{Tor}(n, \phi)\) is the homology map induced by \(g \otimes \phi: Y \otimes \Gamma \otimes \Gamma \to U \otimes \Gamma\). The product in \(\text{Tor}(A, \Gamma)\) is thus \((g \otimes \phi)_* f_* \hat{\phi}_H\), as in the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
H(U \otimes \Gamma) & \xrightarrow{\hat{\phi}_H} & H(U \otimes U \otimes \Gamma \otimes \Gamma) \\
\downarrow^{(\pi_U)_*} & & \downarrow^{(\pi_U)_*} \\
H(U \otimes \Gamma \otimes \Gamma) & \xrightarrow{(l \otimes \phi)_*} & H(U \otimes \Gamma).
\end{array}
\]

But the product \(\pi_U: U \otimes U \to U\) and \(gf: U \otimes U \to U\) are both chain transformations of resolutions lifting \(\pi: A \otimes A \to A\), hence are homotopic by the comparison theorem. Therefore the homology diagram above is commutative, so the product in \(\text{Tor}(A, \Gamma)\) is given by \((\pi_U \otimes \phi)_* \hat{\phi}_H\). This is exactly the internal product in the graded algebra \(H(U \otimes \Gamma)\).

For the polynomial algebra \(\mathcal{P}\) we have already noted in Thm.VII.2.2 that the graded algebra \(\text{Tor}^\mathcal{P}(K, K)\) is an exterior algebra over \(\mathcal{P}\); the proof used the fact that the \(K\text{Oszul}\) resolution of \(K\) is a DG-algebra. Indeed, any algebra \(A\) has a projective resolution which is a DG-algebra \(U\) (Ex.2).
Our product definition (2.3) is new, but the external product $\mathfrak{p}_T$ which it defines is exactly the product $\ast$ defined by CARTAN-EILENBERG (Chap.XI.4). Their definition uses resolutions of A and A', but this is irrelevant (Ex.3).

Exercises

1. If $U$ is a DG-algebra, $A$ a K-module, and $\varphi: A \rightarrow U_0$ a module homomorphism with $\partial | U = 0$, show that the graded algebra $U = T(A)$ has a unique DG-structure with $\partial | U = \partial | A = \varphi$, and A of degree $n + 1$.

2. For any K-algebra $A$ construct a DG-algebra $U$ and a homomorphism $\varepsilon: U \rightarrow A$ of graded algebras, so that, as in Cor.2.3, $U$ is a projective resolution of $A$ as a K-module. Hint: Use Ex.1 to construct a DG-algebra $U(n)$ by recursion on $n$ so that it is a projective resolution up to dimension $n$.

3. Describe the external product in $\text{Tor}(B, A)$ using resolutions of both $B$ and $A$, or of $A$ only.

4. For K-algebras $A$ and $A'$ and modules $B_A$, $B'_A$, $A_A$, $A'A'$ show that the formula (2.3) provides an external product

$$\text{Tor}^A(B, A) \otimes \text{Tor}^A(B', A') \rightarrow \text{Tor}^A \otimes A'(B \otimes B', A \otimes A'),$$

describe its properties, and show that it commutes with all four connecting homomorphisms. This is the product $T$ of CARTAN-EILENBERG XI.1.

3. A Diagram Lemma

In the next section we need the following anticommutative rule on the splicing of exact sequences.

Lemma 3.1. (The $3 \times 3$ splice.) If a commutative $3 \times 3$ diagram of modules has columns the short exact sequences $E'$, $E$, and $E''$, rows the short exact sequences $E_A$, $E_B$, and $E_C$, then

$$E_A \circ E'' \equiv -E' \circ E_C.$$ 

Proof. The given $3 \times 3$ diagram has the form

$$E_A: A' \rightarrow A \rightarrow A''$$

$$\downarrow \downarrow \downarrow$$

$$E_B: B' \rightarrow B \rightarrow B''$$

$$\downarrow \downarrow \downarrow$$

$$E_C: C' \rightarrow C \rightarrow C''$$

(zeros on the edges not shown). Construct the diagram

$$0 \rightarrow A' \rightarrow A \rightarrow B'' \rightarrow C'' \rightarrow 0$$

$$0 \rightarrow A' \rightarrow B \xrightarrow{\varphi} B'' \xrightarrow{\varphi} C'' \rightarrow 0$$

$$0 \rightarrow A' \rightarrow B' \rightarrow C \rightarrow C'' \rightarrow 0$$
Chapter VIII. Products

with \( \varphi b = (\sigma b, \beta b) \) and \( \psi (c, b'') = \gamma c - \tau b'' \) (note the sign), while the other unlabelled arrows are maps or composites from (3.4). The diagram is commutative; a diagram chase shows the middle row exact. The top row is the composite \( E_A \circ E'' \); by the vertical maps with \( -1_{C''} : C'' \to C'' \) at the right, it is congruent to the negative of the middle row, which in turn is congruent to the bottom row \( E'o \ E_C \). This is the desired result.

A related and frequently used result is

**Lemma 3.2.** For right \( R \)-modules \( A \triangleleft B \), left \( R \)-modules \( A' \triangleleft B' \),

\[
(B/A) \otimes_R (B'/A') \cong [B \otimes_R B']/[(\text{im} (A \otimes_R B') \cup \text{im} (B \otimes_R A')].
\]  

(3.3)

Proof. The first image here is that of \( A @ B' \to B \otimes B' \). This and the symmetric map yield the exact sequence

\[
A \otimes_R B' \oplus B \otimes_R A' \to B \otimes_R B' \to (B/A) \otimes_R (B'/A') \to 0.
\]

This sequence can also be derived (cf. Ex.2 below) from a diagram like (3.1) with first row \( A \otimes A', A \otimes B', A \otimes (B'/A') \).

**Exercises**

1. In (3.1) assume only that the rows and columns are right exact, with the third row and the third column short exact. Prove that (3.2), with the left hand zeros omitted, is commutative with exact rows.

2. Prove Lemma 3.1 by a diagram like (3.2) with vertical arrows reversed and middle row \( A' \to B' \oplus A \to B \to C'' \).

4. External Products for Ext

The composition of long exact sequences yields an external product in \( \text{Ext} \). For a single \( A \)-module \( A \), composition is a homomorphism

\[
\text{Ext}^k_A(A, A) \otimes \text{Ext}^m_A(A, A) \to \text{Ext}^{k+m}_A(A, A).
\]

By Thm.III.5.3, this makes \( \text{Ext}_A(A, A) \) a graded ring; indeed (by VII.3.1) a graded \( K \)-algebra. In this algebra, the elements of degree zero form the \( K \)-algebra of \( A \)-module endomorphisms of \( A \). We now describe how this product can sometimes be obtained from the cohomology product for resolutions.

Let \( A \) and \( A' \) be algebras over a commutative ring \( K \), while \( C \) and \( A \) are left \( A \)-modules, \( C' \) and \( A' \) are left \( A' \)-modules. Write \( \mathcal{Q} \) for \( A \otimes A' \), where \( \otimes \) is short for \( \otimes_K \), and note that \( C \otimes C' \) and \( A \otimes A' \) are left \( Q \)-modules. We wish to define a \( K \)-module homomorphism

\[
v : \text{Ext}^k_A(C, A) \otimes \text{Ext}^m_{A'}(C', A') \to \text{Ext}^{k+m}_Q(C \otimes C', A \otimes A') \quad (4.1)
\]
called the external or wedge product; for \( \sigma \in \text{Ext}_A \) and \( \sigma' \in \text{Ext}_{A'} \) we will write \( v (a \otimes \sigma') \) as \( a \cdot v \sigma' \). Take free resolutions \( \varepsilon : X \to C \) and \( 
\varepsilon' : X' \to C' \).
4. External Products for Ext

by A- and \( A' \)-modules, respectively. The cohomology product (1.3) is

\[
\phi^H: H^k(\text{Hom}_A(X_1 A)) \otimes H^m(\text{Hom}_{A'}(X'_1 A')) \to H^{k+m}(\text{Hom}_A(X \otimes X', A \otimes A')).
\]

With the canonical isomorphisms \( \text{Ext}^k_A(C, A) \cong H^k(\text{Hom}_A(X, A)) \), this will define the desired wedge product (4.1) \( \text{Provided} \ (\varepsilon \otimes \varepsilon') \): \( X \otimes X' \to C \otimes C' \) is a free 0-module resolution, for standard comparison arguments show that the result is independent of the resolutions used. In any event, each \( X_k \otimes X'_m \) is a free left 0-module. The proviso that \( X \otimes X' \) is a resolution holds in two cases.

Case 1. \( K \) is a field. By the K"unneth tensor formula, valid over a field \( K \), \( H_n(X \otimes X') = 0 \) for \( n > 0 \) and \( \varepsilon \otimes \varepsilon' \): \( H_0(X \otimes X') \cong C \otimes C' \), so \( X \otimes X' \) is a resolution.

Case 2. \( A \) and \( A' \) are free as \( K \)-modules and \( C \) is a flat \( K \)-module. For, each free \( A \)-module \( X \) is a direct sum of copies of the free \( K \)-module \( A \), so \( X \) is a free \( K \)-module. Then \( X \to C \) is also a free \( K \)-module resolution of \( C \), so \( \text{Tor}^K_n(C, C) \) may be calculated (Thm.V.9.3) from \( X \) and \( X' \) as \( H_n(X \otimes X') \). But \( C \) is flat, so \( \text{Tor}^n(C, \_ ) = 0 \) for \( n > 0 \), hence \( X \otimes X' \to C \otimes C' \) is a resolution.

Other cases will occur in the exercises and in our subsequent discussion of relative Ext functors (Chap.X). From the definition, it follows that the wedge product commutes with connecting homomorphisms, and is associative; for \( k=m=0 \), it reduces to the \( \text{Hom} \- \otimes \) interchange. In Case 1, the wedge product may be expressed by the Yoneda composition product.

**Theorem 4.1.** [YONEDA 1958.] For algebras \( A \) and \( A' \) over a field and \( \sigma \in \text{Ext}^k_A(C, A) \), \( \sigma' \in \text{Ext}^m_A(C', A') \) the wedge product is given by

\[
\sigma \circ \sigma' = (\sigma \otimes A') \circ (C \otimes \sigma') = (-1)^{km} [(A \otimes \sigma') \circ (\sigma \otimes C')]. \tag{4.2}
\]

Here \( \sigma \otimes A' \) has an evident meaning, as follows. If \( k=0 \), \( \sigma \) is a homomorphism \( C \to A \); let \( \sigma \otimes A' \) mean \( \sigma \otimes 1_A : C \otimes A' \to A \otimes A' \). If \( k > 0 \) and \( m > 0 \), \( a \) and \( a' \) are the congruence classes of long exact sequences

\[
S:\quad 0 \to A \to B_{k-1} \to \cdots \to B_0 \to C \to 0,
\]

\[
S':\quad 0 \to A' \to B'_{m-1} \to \cdots \to B'_0 \to C' \to 0.
\]

Since \( K \) is a field, \( \otimes_K \) preserves exactness, so gives long exact sequences

\[
S \otimes A' : 0 \to A \otimes A' \to B_{k-1} \otimes A' \to \cdots \to C \otimes A' \to 0,
\]

\[
C \otimes S' : 0 \to C \otimes A' \to C \otimes B'_{m-1} \to \cdots \to C \otimes C' \to 0.
\]

Take \( a \circ A' = \text{cls}(S \circ A') \) and \( C \circ \sigma' = \text{cls}(C \circ \sigma') \), so the Yoneda composite \( (a \circ A') \circ (C \circ \sigma') \) is defined; for \( k \) or \( m \) zero it is the usual composite of a homomorphism with a long exact sequence.
Proof. First assume $k > 0$ and $m > 0$. Regard $S$ as a resolution of $C$. Similarly, $f'_c$ lifts to $f'_c: X' \to S'$; in particular, $f'_m: X'_m \to A'$ is a cocycle of $X'$ and its class represents $\text{cls} S'$ in the isomorphism $H^m(X', A') \cong \text{Ext}^m(C', A')$ of Thm. III.6.4. The complex $X \otimes X'$ is the first row of the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{cccccccc}
(X \otimes X')_{m+1} & \xrightarrow{\partial} & (X \otimes X')_m & \xrightarrow{\partial} & (X \otimes X')_{m-1} & \xrightarrow{\partial} & (X \otimes X')_{m-2} \\
X_1 \otimes X'_m & \xrightarrow{f_1 \otimes f'_m} & X_0 \otimes X'_m & \xrightarrow{f_0 \otimes f'_m} & X_0 \otimes X'_{m-1} & \xrightarrow{f_0 \otimes f'_{m-1}} & X_0 \otimes X'_{m-2} \\
B_1 \otimes A' & \xrightarrow{B_0 \otimes A'} & C \otimes B'_{m-1} & \xrightarrow{C \otimes A'} & C \otimes B'_{m-2} \\
\end{array}
\]

which extends in the same fashion left and right, ending with a column $C \otimes C'$ on the right. The first row of vertical maps projects each $(X \otimes X')_n$ to the indicated one of its direct summands. The bottom row is the composite long sequence $T = (S \otimes A') \circ (C @ S')$, with the splice at $C \otimes A'$ displayed. The top squares do not commute, but erase the middle row; the resulting diagram is commutative, even at the splice. Hence the composite vertical map is a chain transformation $h: X \otimes X' \to T$ which lifts the identity on $C @ C'$. To read off the cohomology class of $X \otimes X'$ corresponding to $T$, take $h$ on dimension $k + m$. But $h$ there is just

\[
(X \otimes X')_{k+m} \to X_k \otimes X'_m \xrightarrow{f_k \otimes f'_m} A \otimes A';
\]

the cohomology class of this cocycle is exactly the one obtained from $\text{cls} f_k \otimes \text{cls} f'_m$ by the cohomology product $\cdot H$. Since $\text{cls} f_k$ and $\text{cls} f'_m$ represent $S$ and $S'$, respectively, this proves the first equation of the theorem for $k > 0$ and $m > 0$. The proof for $k = 0$ (or $m = 0$) uses a similar diagram, with splicing of sequences replaced by the action of a homomorphism $a: C + A$ on a sequence.

The second equality in (4.2) is an (anti-) commutation rule. It is immediate from the definition if $k = 0$ or $m = 0$. Since any long exact sequence is a composite of short ones, it suffices to give a proof in the case $k = m = 1$, for short exact sequences $E$ and $E'$. Here the commutative square diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
A \otimes E': A \otimes A' \to A \otimes B' \to A \otimes C' \\
B \otimes E': B \otimes A' \to B \otimes B' \to B \otimes C' \\
C \otimes E': C \otimes A' \to C \otimes B' \to C \otimes C' \\
\end{array}
\]

(4.3)
and Lemma 3.1 prove \((A \otimes E') \circ (E \otimes C') = -(E \otimes A') \circ (C \otimes E')\), as required.

From this theorem it again follows that the \(v\) product is associative.

**Theorem 4.2.** If the \(K\)-algebras \(A\) and \(A'\) are free as \(K\)-modules, while \(C, A, C', A'\) are all flat as \(K\)-modules, the wedge product \((4.1)\) is defined. It may be expressed by the composition Product as in \((4.2)\).

**Proof.** This falls under Case 2 above. The previous argument applies, since \(X \otimes X'\) is a resolution and the tensor product \(S \otimes K A'\) of a long exact sequence \(S\) with a \(K\)-flat module \(A'\) is still exact.

**Corollary 4.3.** If \(A\) and \(A'\) are augmented \(K\)-algebras which are free as \(K\)-modules, the wedge product of \(\sigma \in \text{Ext}^h_\Lambda(K, K)\) and \(\sigma' \in \text{Ext}^m_\Lambda(K, K)\) is given by

\[
\sigma \circ \sigma' = e_\varepsilon \circ e_{\varepsilon'} = (-1)^{km} e_{\varepsilon'} \circ e_{\varepsilon} \in \text{Ext}^{h+m}_\Lambda(K, K).
\]

Here \(K\) is to be regarded as a \(\Lambda\)- or \(\Lambda'\)-module by pull-back along the augmentations \(e: \Lambda \rightarrow K\) and \(e'\), while \(e_\varepsilon\sigma\) is short for \((1 \otimes \varepsilon')^* \sigma\); i.e., for the exact sequence in a pulled back along \(1 \otimes \varepsilon': \Lambda \otimes \Lambda' \rightarrow \Lambda \otimes K = \Lambda\).

Now let \(V\) be a Hopf algebra with counit \(\varepsilon: V \rightarrow K\) and diagonal map \(\gamma: V \rightarrow V \otimes V\). Pull-back along \(\psi\) turns \((V \otimes V)\)-modules into \(V\)-modules, exact sequences into exact sequences, and so gives a change of rings map \(\psi\#: \text{Ext}^\psi_\Lambda \rightarrow \text{Ext}^\psi_V\). If \(C, A, C', A'\) are left \(V\)-modules, so are \(\psi(C \otimes C')\) and \((A \@ A')\), and the composite \(\psi\# \circ \psi\) of wedge product and pull-back is a \(K\)-module homomorphism

\[
\psi\# \circ \psi: \text{Ext}^\psi_\psi(C, A) \otimes \text{Ext}^\psi_\psi(C', A') \rightarrow \text{Ext}^\psi_\psi\psi((C \otimes C'), \psi(A \otimes A'))
\]

called the Hopf wedge product. It is defined when \(K\) is a field, or when \(C\) is \(K\)-flat and \(V\) is free as a \(K\)-module, and the analogues of Thms.4.1 and 4.2 hold. Since \(\psi\) is associative, so is this product.

By pull-back, each \(K\)-module becomes a \(V\)-module \(\varepsilon M\).

**Lemma 4.4.** For a \(K\)-module \(M\) and a module \(C\) over the Hopf algebra \(V\)

\[
\varepsilon(M \otimes C) \cong M \otimes C, \quad (C \otimes \varepsilon M) \cong C \otimes M
\]

are isomorphisms of \(V\)-modules, with the \(V\)-module structure on the right induced by that of \(C\).

**Proof.** The Hopf algebra, as a coalgebra, satisfies the identity \((\varepsilon \otimes 1)\psi = 1\) of \((VI.9.1)\). Pull-back yields

\[
\psi[\varepsilon(M \otimes C)] = \psi[(\varepsilon \otimes 1)(M \otimes C)] = (\varepsilon \otimes 1)\psi(M \otimes C) = M \otimes C,
\]

and similarly on the other side. Hence a curious result:
Proposition 4.5. If $V$ is a Hopf algebra over a field $K$ and $M, N$ are $K$-modules, $C, A$ $V$-modules, the Hopf wedge products

$$\text{Ext}_V(eM, A) \otimes \text{Ext}_V(eN', N') \rightarrow \text{Ext}_V(M \otimes C', A \otimes N'),$$

$$\text{Ext}_V(eN) \otimes \text{Ext}_V(eM', A') \rightarrow \text{Ext}_V(C \otimes M', N \otimes A')$$

are independent of the diagonal map $\varphi$; that is, depend only on $V$ as an augmented algebra $\varepsilon: V \rightarrow K$.

Proof. These wedge products are still given in terms of composition of long exact sequences by the formulas (4.2), where the modules in these long exact sequences are pulled back to $V$-modules by $y$. The Lemma asserts that the resulting $V$-module structure is independent of $\varphi$.

In particular, let all modules in sight be $\varepsilon K$; then $K \oplus K = K$, and the external wedge product becomes an internal product

$$\text{Ext}_V(K, K) \otimes \text{Ext}_V(K, K) \rightarrow \text{Ext}_V(K, K)$$

which makes $\text{Ext}_V(K, K)$ a graded $K$-algebra. Since $\otimes K = \sigma$, the formula (4.4) shows this algebra commutative.

Note. The external product for Tor arises from the middle four interchange and agrees with that map for $\text{Tor}_0 = \otimes$; it may be obtained, as in (2.5), by replacing suitable arguments by resolutions, and composing with the homology product and a comparison of resolutions. The external product for Ext arises similarly from the $\text{Hom}$-$\otimes$ interchange. Various other "products" involving Tor and Ext arise by the same mechanism from identities on $\text{Hom}$ and $\otimes$; for example, there is one arising from the mixed adjoint associativity

$$\text{Hom}(A \otimes A', \text{Hom}(C, C')) \rightarrow \text{Hom}(C \otimes A, \text{Hom}(A', C'))$$

These are given in detail, via resolutions, in Cartan-Eilenberg Chap.XI. Description in terms of the invariant definition of Tor and Ext would be of interest. Other types of products will appear in Chap.X below.

Exercises

1. Describe how the external product in Ext commutes with connecting homomorphisms.

In the following exercises, $K$ is a commutative ring, not necessarily a field.

2. If $P$ and $P'$ are projective $A$- and $A'$-modules, respectively, show $P \otimes P'$ a projective $(A \otimes A')$-module. If $A$ and $A'$ are projective as $K$-modules, show also that $P \otimes P'$ is a projective $K$-module.

3. Show that the wedge product for $K$ a ring can still be defined, using projective resolutions, provided $A$ and $A'$ are projective as $K$-modules and $\text{Tor}_K^k(C, C') = 0$ for $n \geq 0$. If, in addition, $A$ and $A'$ are $K$-flat, show that Thm.4.1 still holds.
5. Simplicial Objects

The cohomology $H(X, \mathbb{Z})$ of a topological space $X$ with coefficients in $\mathbb{Z}$ is a graded ring under a product known as the *cup* product. This product can be defined not only for spaces but for other complexes with a "simplicial" structure. Hence we now analyze the combinatorial structure of a simplex; more exactly of a $p$-dimensional simplex $\Delta^p$ with ordered vertices.

For each non-negative integer $p$, let $[p]$ denote the set $\{0, 1, \ldots, p\}$ of integers in their usual order. A (weakly) monotonic map $\mu: [q] \to [p]$ is a function on $[q]$ to $[p]$ such that $i \leq j$ implies $\mu_i \leq \mu_j$. The objects $[p]$ with morphisms all weakly monotonic maps $\mu$ constitute a category $\mathcal{M}$ (for monotonic). Note that a monotonic $\mu$ is determined by the sequence of $q+1$ integers $\mu_0 \leq \mu_1 \leq \cdots \leq \mu_q$ in $[q]$ where $\mu_0, \mu_1, \ldots$; hence we regard $\mu$ as the affine simplex $(\mu_0, \ldots, \mu_q)$ determined by the vertices $\mu_i$ on the standard $p$-simplex $\Delta^p$.

Let $\mathcal{C}$ be any category. A contravariant functor $S: \mathcal{M} \to \mathcal{C}$ will be called a simplicial object in $\mathcal{C}$. Specifically, $S$ assigns to each non-negative integer $q$ (to each object of $\mathcal{A}$) an object $S_q$ of $\mathcal{C}$, and to each monotonic $\mu: [q] \to [p]$ a morphism $\mu^*: S_p \to S_q$ of $\mathcal{C}$, with $S(1)=1$ and $S(\mu v)=S(v)S(\mu)$. By a simplicial set is meant a simplicial object in the category of sets; by a simplicial $A$-module is meant a simplicial object in the category of all $A$-modules.

If $F: \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}$ is a covariant functor, each simplicial object $S$ in $\mathcal{C}$ determines a simplicial object $F S$ in $\mathcal{D}$, with $(F S)_q=F(S_q), (F S)(\mu)=F(S(\mu))$. In particular, if $A$ is an algebra, and $F_A$ the functor which assigns to each set $Y$ the free (left) $A$-module with generators $Y$, then each simplicial set $S$ determines a simplicial $A$-module $F_A S$.

The singular simplices (11.7) of a topological space $X$ constitute a simplicial set $S(X)$. In detail, let $S_p(X)$ be the set of all singular $p$-simplices $T$ of $X$; each $T$ is a continuous map $T: \Delta^p \to X$ defined on the standard affine $p$-simplex $\Delta^p$. Now each monotonic $\mu: [q] \to [p]$ determines a unique affine map $\mu: \Delta^q \to \Delta^p$ carrying, vertex $i$ of $\Delta^q$ onto vertex $\mu_i$ of $\Delta^p$; the composite $\mu^* T=T \mu: \Delta^q \to X$ defines a map $\mu^*: S_q(X) \to S_p(X)$ which makes $S$ a functor on $\mathcal{M}$ and hence a simplicial set. For $\mathbb{Z}$ the ring of integers, $S'=F_\mathbb{Z} S$ is a simplicial abelian group with $S'_p$ the free abelian group generated by all singular $p$-simplices of $X$. In other words, $S'_p$ is just the usual group of singular $p$-chains of the space $X$. We shall soon see that the usual boundary of a singular $p$-chain is also determined by the simplicial structure of $S'(X)$.

It is convenient to use two special families of monotonic maps

$$e^i = e^i_q: [q-1] \to [q], \quad \eta^i = \eta^i_q: [q+1] \to [q]$$

(5.1)
defined for \( i=0, \ldots, q \) (and for \( q>0 \) in the case of \( \varepsilon^i \)) by

\[
\varepsilon^i(j) = j \quad \text{for} \quad j<i, \quad \eta^i(j) = j \quad \text{for} \quad j\leq i, \\
= j+1 \quad \text{for} \quad j\geq i, \quad = j-1 \quad \text{for} \quad j>i.
\]

In other words, \( \varepsilon^i \) may be described as the \((q-1)\)-face of \( A^q \) with vertices \((0, 1, \ldots, \hat{i}, \ldots, q) \) — omit index \( i \) — and \( \eta^i \) is the \((q+1)\)-face with vertices \((0, 1, \ldots, i, i, \ldots, q) \) — double the vertex \( i \). From this description one verifies the identities

\[
\begin{align*}
\varepsilon^i_{q+1} \varepsilon^i_q &= \varepsilon^i_{q+1} \varepsilon^i_q, \quad i<j, \\
\eta^i q \eta^i_{q+1} &= \eta^i q \eta^i_{q+1}, \quad i\leq j, \\
\eta^i_{q-1} \varepsilon^i_q &= \varepsilon^i_{q-1} \eta^i_{q-2}, \quad i<j, \\
&= 1, \quad i=j, \quad i=j+1, \\
&= \varepsilon^i_{q-1} \eta^i_{q-2}, \quad i>j+1.
\end{align*}
\]

We normally omit the subscripts \( q \) on \( \varepsilon \) and \( \eta \).

**Lemma 5.1.** Any monotonic \( \mu: [q] \to [q] \) has a unique factorization

\[
\mu = \varepsilon^i \ldots \varepsilon^i \eta^j \ldots \eta^h,
\]

with \( q \geq i_1 > \cdots > i_s \geq 0, \quad 0 \leq j_1 < \cdots < j_t < q, \quad \text{and} \quad q-t+s=p.\)

**Proof.** Let the elements of \([q]\) not in \( \mu[q] \) be \( i_1, \ldots, i_s \) in reverse order, while those elements \( j \) of \([q]\) with \( \mu(j)=\mu(j+1) \) are \( j_1, \ldots, j_t \) in order. Then (5.5) holds, and presents \( \mu \) as the composite of a monotonic epimorphism (the product of the \( \eta \)'s) with a monotonic monomorphism (the product of the \( \varepsilon \)'s).

This lemma allows an alternative definition of a **simplicial** object.

**Theorem 5.2.** A simplicial object \( S \) in a category \( \mathcal{C} \) is a family \( \{S_q\} \) of objects of \( \mathcal{C} \) together with two families of morphisms of \( \mathcal{C} \),

\[
d_i: S_q \to S_{q-1}, \quad s_i: S_q \to S_{q+1}, \quad i=0, \ldots, q,
\]

(and with \( q>0 \) in the case of \( d_i \)) which satisfy the identities

\[
\begin{align*}
d_i d_j &= d_{i-1} d_j, \quad i<j, \quad & (5.6) \\
s_i s_j &= s_{j+1} s_i, \quad i\leq j, \quad & (5.7) \\
d_i s_j &= s_{j-1} d_i, \quad i<j, \quad & (5.8) \\
&= 1, \quad i=j, \quad i=j+1, \quad & (5.8)
\end{align*}
\]

\[
= s_i d_{i-1}, \quad i>j+1.
\]

**Proof.** Since \( S \) is contravariant, the morphisms \( d_i=S(\varepsilon^i), s_i=S(\eta^i) \) satisfy the identities (5.6)\(-(5.8)\), which are the duals of (5.2)\-(5.4).
Conversely, given the \( d_i \) and the \( s_i \), write any monotonic \( \mu \) in the unique form (5.5) and define

\[
S(p) = s_{i_1} \cdots s_{i_n} d_{i_n} \cdots d_{i_1} : S_p \rightarrow S_q.
\]

The identities (5.6)—(5.8) suffice to commute any two of \( d_i, s_j \), hence to calculate the factorization of a composite \( \mu v \) from that of \( \mu \) and of \( v \), hence to prove that \( S(\mu v) = S(v)S(p) \). This makes \( S : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{C} \) contravariant.

We call \( d_i \) the i-th face operator and \( s_j \) the j-th degeneracy operator of \( S \). Note that (5.6) and (5.7) imply

\[
d_i d_j = d_j d_{i+1}, \quad i \geq j, \quad (5.9)
\]

\[
s_i s_j = s_j s_{i-1}, \quad i > j. \quad (5.10)
\]

For example, let \( V \) be any partly ordered set (1.8); call an ordered \((q+1)\)-tuple \((v_0, \ldots, v_q)\) with elements \( v_0 \leq \cdots \leq v_q \) in the given partial order of \( V \) a q-simplex of \( V \). Let \( S_q(V) \) be the set of all q-simplices of \( V \). Then \( S(V) \) is a simplicial set under the face and degeneracy operators defined by

\[
d_i(v_0, \ldots, v_q) = (v_0, \ldots, \hat{v}_i, \ldots, v_q) \quad \text{(omit } v_i \text{)}, \quad (5.11)
\]

\[
s_i(v_0, \ldots, v_q) = (v_0, \ldots, v_s, v_i, \ldots, v_q) \quad \text{(double } v_i \text{)}. \quad (5.12)
\]

Geometrically, \( V \) may be regarded as a schematic description of a polyhedron with partly ordered vertices \( v_i \).

If \( S \) and \( S' \) are simplicial objects in a category \( \mathcal{C} \), a simplicial map \( a : S \rightarrow S' \) is a natural transformation of the contravariant functors \( S, S' : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{C} \). In other words, a simplicial map \( a \) is a family of morphisms \( \sigma_q : S_q \rightarrow S'_q \) of \( \mathcal{C} \) such that \( \sigma_q S(p) = S'(\mu) \sigma_p \) for each monotonic \( \mu : [q] \rightarrow [p] \), or, equivalently, such that \( ad = d_i \sigma \) and \( as = s_i \sigma \) for every \( i \). The simplicial objects in \( \mathcal{C} \) form a category with morphisms the simplicial maps.

Each simplicial module \( S \) determines a (positive) chain complex \( K = K(S) \) with \( K_q = S_q \) and with boundary homomorphism \( \partial : K_q \rightarrow K_{q-1} \) the alternating sum of the face homomorphisms:

\[
\partial = d_0 - d_1 + \cdots + (-1)^q d_q : K_q \rightarrow K_{q-1}. \quad (5.13)
\]

The identities (5.6) for \( d_i d_j \) imply that \( \partial \partial = 0 \). This allows us to speak of the homology or cohomology modules of a simplicial module \( S \), meaning those of the associated chain complex \( K(S) \). For a topological space \( X \), (5.13) gives the usual boundary operator \( \partial \) in the singular complex \( S(X) \). More formally, \( X \) determines the simplicial set \( \tilde{S}(X) \) described above, hence the simplicial abelian group \( F_\mathbb{Z} \tilde{S}(X) \), hence the chain complex \( K F_\mathbb{Z} \tilde{S}(X) \); with boundary \( \partial \), this complex is the usual singular complex \( S(X) \).
A simplicial module $S$ over the ring $R$ is augmented if there is a module homomorphism $\varepsilon: S_0 \rightarrow R$ with $\varepsilon d_0 = \varepsilon d_1: S_1 + R$; the associated chain complex is then augmented by $\varepsilon$.

Notes. Simplicial sets, under the name complete semisimplicial complexes, arose in the study by Eilenberg-Zilber [1950, 1953] of the singular homology of spaces and their cartesian products. Simplicial abelian groups, under the name FD-complexes (F for face, D for degeneracy) arose simultaneously in the analysis by Eilenberg-MacLane [1953] of the spaces $K(\Pi, n)$ with one non-vanishing homotopy group $\Pi$ in dimension $n$. Simplicial sets satisfying the additional "Kan condition" and simplicial (multiplicative) groups subsequently proved to provide the suitable algebraic formulation of homotopy theory; see Kan [1958b]. The normalization theorem of the next section and its proof are due to Eilenberg-MacLane [1947]. Each simplicial module is determined by its normalized chain complex; this gives an equivalence between the categories of simplicial modules and (positive) chain complexes of modules, Dold [1958].

6. Normalization

Let $S$ be a simplicial module. In each dimension $n$, define $(DS)_n$ to be the submodule of $S_n$ generated by all degenerate elements; that is, set $(DS)_0 = 0$ and

$$(DS)_n = s_0 S_{n-1} \cup \cdots \cup s_{n-1} S_{n-1}, \quad n > 0.$$  

By the identities (5.8) for $d_is_i$, $DS$ is closed under $\partial$, so is a subcomplex of the associated chain complex $KS$ of $S$. The quotient $KS/DS = KN_S$ is known as the normalized chain complex of the simplicial module $S$.

Theorem 6.1. (Normalization Theorem.) For each simplicial module $S$ the canonical projection $\pi: KS \rightarrow KN_S = KS/DS$ is a chain equivalence.

For the proof, we interpret the degeneracies $s_i$ as homotopies. For each non negative $k$, let $D_k S$ be the graded submodule of $S$ generated by all degenerate elements $s_i a$ with $i \leq k$; that is, set

$$(D_k S)_n = s_0 S_{n-1} \cup \cdots \cup s_{n-1} S_{n-1}, \quad n-1 \leq k,$$

$$= s_0 S_{n-1} \cup \cdots \cup s_k S_{n-1}, \quad n-1 > k.$$  

By (5.8), each $D_k S$ is a subcomplex, while $DS$ is the union of all $D_k S$. Define $t_k: S \rightarrow S$ of degree $1$ by

$$t_k a = (-1)^k s_k a, \quad k \leq \dim a, \quad a \in S,$$

$$= 0, \quad k > \dim a, \quad a \in S,$$

and set $h_k = 1 - \partial t_k - t_k \partial$. This makes $h_k: K(S) \rightarrow K(S)$ a chain transformation and $t_k: I \rightarrow h_k$ a chain homotopy. Since $t_k S \leq D_k$ and $D_k \leq D$,

$$h_k a \equiv a \pmod{DS}, \quad a \in S.$$  

(6.1)
Moreover we claim that
\[ h_k D_k S < D_{k-1} S, \quad h_k D_j S < D_{j} S, \quad j < k. \] (6.2)
Since \( s_k s_j = s_j s_{k-1} \) by (5.10), the second inclusion is immediate. As for the first, the identities (5.8) for \( k \leq \dim a, a \in S \), give
\[
d_i t_k s_k a = (-1)^k s_{k-1} s_{k-1} d_i a, \quad i < k,
\]
\[
= (-1)^k s_k a, \quad i = k, \quad k + 1, \quad k + 2,
\]
\[
= (-1)^k s_k s_k d_{i-2} a, \quad i > k + 2.
\]
while, for \( k \leq \dim a \), (5.8) and (5.10) give
\[
t_k d_i s_k a = (-1)^k s_{k-1} s_{k-1} d_i a, \quad i < k,
\]
\[
= (-1)^k s_k a, \quad i = k, \quad k + 1,
\]
\[
= (-1)^k s_k s_k d_{i-1} a, \quad i > k + 1.
\]
With \( \partial = \sum (-1)^i d_i \), these combine to give \((\partial t_k + t_k \partial) s_k a - s_k a \ (\text{mod} D_{k-1} S)\) for \( k \leq \dim a \) and hence the first inclusion of (6.2). In particular, \( h_0 D_0 S = 0 \).

Now set \( h = h_0 h_1 \ldots h_k \ldots \). Since \( h_k a = a \) for \( k > \dim a \), this composite is finite in each dimension, and defines a chain transformation \( h: KS \rightarrow KS \). By (6.1), \( h_k DS \subseteq DS \), so an iteration of (6.1) gives
\[ ha \equiv a \ (\text{mod} \ DS). \] (6.3)
By (6.2), \( h DS = 0 \). Since each \( h_k \) is chain homotopic to \( 1 \), there is a composite homotopy \( t: 1 \simeq h \). Because \( hD = 0 \), \( g(a + DS) = ha \) defines a chain transformation \( g: KS/DS \rightarrow KS \); by (6.3), \( ng = 1 \), where \( \pi \) is the projection \( KS \rightarrow KS/DS \). Moreover, \( gn = h: KS \rightarrow KS \) is chain homotopic to \( 1 \), by construction, so \( n \) is a chain equivalence, as asserted.

7. Acyclic Models

The treatment of products of simplicial modules in the next section will require the use of acyclic models; here we state the preliminaries, for simplicial modules over some fixed ring \( R \).

For each non-negative integer \( n \) a simplicial \( R \)-module \( M'' \) is defined by taking \( M''_n \) to be the free module with generators all monotonic maps \( 1: [\#] \rightarrow [n] \), while \( \mu^* = M''(p): M''_p \rightarrow M''_q \) is defined for each monotonic \( \mu: [q] \rightarrow [p] \) as \( \mu^* \lambda = 1 \mu \). This makes \( M'' \) a contravariant functor. Observe that the generators \( 1 \) of \( M''_n \) are all the \( p \)-dimensional faces \( (\lambda_0, \ldots, \lambda_p) \), degenerate or not, on the usual \( n \)-simplex, and that \( M'' \) is augmented by \( \varepsilon(\lambda_0) = 1 \); often \( M'' \) is denoted as \( A'' \). We call \( M'' \) the \( n \)-dimensional model simplicial module and the identity map \( x'' = 1: [n] \rightarrow [n] \) the basic cell on this model; thus \( x'' \in M''_n \).
As in the case of spaces (II.7), an augmented chain complex $e: K \to R$ is acyclic if $H_n(K) = 0$ for $n > 0$ and $e: H_0(K) \cong R$.

Proposition 7.1. For each non-negative integer $n$, $K(M^n)$ is acyclic.

Proof. It will suffice to construct a contracting homotopy. Define a homomorphism $s: M^n_p \to M^n_{p+1}$ by $s(a, \ldots, \lambda_p) = (0, \lambda_0, \ldots, \lambda_p)$. By (5.11) and (5.12),

$$d_0s = 1, \quad d_is = sd_{i-1}, \quad i > 0$$

and $s_i = s_{i+1}s$. Hence, in the associated chain complex, $s$ induces a chain homotopy $1 \simeq f$, where $f: R \to S$ is defined by $f1_R = (0)$.

Proposition 7.2. For each simplicial module $S$ and each $a \in S_n$ there is a unique simplicial map $a: M^n \to S$ with $a \cdot s^n = a$.

Proof. Each free generator $\lambda$ of $M^n_p$ can be written uniquely in terms of the basic cell $x^n$ as $\lambda^n = x^n \lambda$. Hence $a(A^n) = \lambda^n a$ defines a simplicial map $a: M^n \to S$; it is clearly the only such with $a \cdot x^n = a$.

To summarize: the models are acyclic and represent each $a \in S_n$. Similarly, in the proof (11.8) of the homotopy axiom for the singular complex $S(X)$ of a topological space, the models $S(A^n)$ and $S(A^n \times I)$ are acyclic and represent each singular simplex $T$ via $T: A^n \to X$. This situation recurs in many connections as a means of constructing chain transformations and chain homotopies. It can be described in categorical terms (Eilenberg-MacLane [1953], Gugenheim-Moore [1957]); it is more efficient to apply it directly in each case, as in the argument to follow in the next section.

Exercise

1. If $V$ is any set with the partial order defined by $v \leq v'$ for every $v, v' \in V$, $K(F_S^V)$ is acyclic.

8. The Eilenberg-Zilber Theorem

If $U$ and $V$ are simplicial sets, their cartesian product $U \times V$ is the simplicial set with $(U \times V)_n = U_n \times V_n$ the cartesian product of sets and

$$d_i(u, v) = (d_iu, d_iv), \quad s_i(u, v) = (su, sv), \quad i = 0, \ldots, n$$

for $u \in U_n$, $v \in V_n$, and $n > 0$ in the case of $d_i$. This definition is suggested by the case of topological spaces. If $X \times Y$ is the cartesian product of two spaces $X$ and $Y$, with projections $\pi_1$ and $\pi_2$ on $X$ and $Y$, respectively, each singular simplex $T: A^n \to X \times Y$ is determined by its projections $\pi_1 T$ and $\pi_2 T$, while $d_i\pi_1 T = \pi_1 d_i T$, $s_i\pi_1 T = \pi_1 s_i T$. Hence $T \to (\pi_1 T, \pi_2 T)$ provides an isomorphism $S(X \times Y) \cong S(X \times S(Y))$ of simplicial sets. The computation of the singular homology of $X \times Y$ is thus reduced to the computation of the homology of a cartesian product of simplicial sets.
There is a parallel product for simplicial modules $A$ and $B$ over a commutative ring. The \textit{cartesian product} $A \times B$ is defined to be the simplicial module with $(A \times B)_n = A_n \otimes B_n$, and
\[
d_i(a \otimes b) = d_i a \otimes d_i b, \quad s_i(a \otimes b) = s_i a \otimes s_i b, \quad i = 0, \ldots, n, \quad (8.2)
\]
for $a \in A_n$, $b \in B_n$, and $n > 0$ in the case of $d_i$. To avoid confusion with the tensor product of complexes, we shall write $a \otimes b$ for the element $a \otimes b$ of $A_n \otimes B_n$. For simplicial sets $U$ and $V$, this definition insures that there is a natural isomorphism of simplicial modules
\[
F(U \times V) \cong FU \times FV; \quad (8.3)
\]
for $F(U \times V)$ in dimension $n$ is the free module generated by the set $U_n \times V_n$, and this free module is naturally isomorphic to the tensor product $(FU_n) \otimes (FV_n)$.

The associated chain complex $K(A \times B)$ now reduces to the tensor product of the chain complexes $K(A)$ and $K(B)$.

**Theorem 8.1.** (EILENBERG-ZILBER.) For simplicial modules $A$ and $B$ over a commutative ring there is a natural chain equivalence
\[
K(A \times B) \xrightarrow{f} K(A) \otimes K(B). \quad (8.4)
\]

In view of the normalization theorem, $K(A) \to K_N(A)$ is a chain equivalence, so there is also a natural chain equivalence
\[
K_N(A \times B) \xhookrightarrow{g} K_N(A) \otimes K_N(B). \quad (8.5)
\]

The proof, as recorded in the following lemmas, will use the method of acyclic models. Note that $K_0(A \times B) = A_0 \otimes B_0 = K_0(A) \otimes K_0(B)$; hence we can choose maps $f$ and $g$ in (8.4) to be the identity in dimension zero.

**Lemma 8.2.** For simplicial modules $A$ and $B$ there exists a natural chain transformation $f : K(A \times B) \to K(A) \otimes K(B)$ which is the identity in dimension zero. Any two such natural maps $f$ are chain homotopic via a homotopy which is natural.

**Proof.** Since $f_0$ is given, suppose by induction on $n$ that $f_q$ is already defined for all $q < n$ and natural on $K_q(A \times B)$, with $\partial f_q = f_{q-1} \partial$. We wish to define $f_n$ with $\partial f_n = f_{n-1} \partial$; we do this first for the product $x^n \times x^n$ of the two basic cells in the model $A = M^n = B$. We require that $\partial f_n(x^n \times x^n) = f_{n-1} \partial(x^n \times x^n)$. The right hand side is already defined and has $\partial e = 0$ (or $e \in 0$, if $n = 4$); it is thus a cycle in the complex $K(M^n) \otimes K(M^n)$, which is acyclic as the tensor product of two acyclic...
complexes (Prop. 7.1). Hence there is in this complex a chain $c$ of dimension $n$ with $\partial c = e$. We set $f, (x^n \times x^n) = c$, so that

$$\partial f_n (x^n \times x^n) = \partial c = f_{n-1} \partial (x^n \times x^n). \quad (8.6)$$

Now consider $a \in A, \ b \in B$. By Prop. 7.2, there are simplicial maps $a: M^n \to A, \ b: M^n + B$ with $\alpha x^n = a, \ \beta x^n = b$. Then $K(a): K(M^n) \to K(A)$ is a chain transformation which we again denote as $a$, and $a \otimes b: K(M^n) \otimes K(M^n) \to K(A) \otimes K(B)$ is a chain transformation. Set $f_n(a \times b) = (a \otimes b) c$, for $c$ as in (8.6); since the simplicial maps $a$ and $b$ are unique, the right hand side is bilinear in $a$ and $b$, so defines $f_n: K_n(A \times B) \to [K(A) \otimes K(B)]_n$. Moreover,

$$\partial f_n (a \times b) = \partial (a \otimes b) c = (a \otimes b) \partial c = (a \otimes b) f_{n-1} \partial (x^n \times x^n).$$

Now $f_{n-1}$ is natural, so

$$\partial f_n (a \times b) = f_{n-1} \partial (a \otimes b) x^n = f_{n-1} \partial (a \times b).$$

Thus $f$ is indeed a chain transformation up to dimension $n$.

To prepare for the next induction step it remains to show that $f$ is natural. Let $\eta: A \to A', \ \zeta: B \to B'$ be any simplicial maps, with $\eta a = a', \ \zeta b = b'$. Then $\eta a: M^n \to A'$ has $\eta x^n = \eta a = a'$, so is the unique simplicial map carrying $x^n$ to $a'$. Hence

$$(\eta \otimes \zeta) f_n (a \times b) = (\eta \otimes \zeta) (a \otimes b) c = (\eta \alpha \otimes \zeta \beta) c = f_n (a' \times b'),$$

and $f_n$ is natural.

Now let $f$ and $f'$ be two such chain transformations. By induction on $n$ we may assume that the $t_q: K_q(A \times B) \to (K(A) \otimes K(B))_{q+1}$ are maps defined for $q = 0, \ldots, n-1$ with $a + t \partial = f - f'$ in dimensions $q < n$. (For $q = 0$, $f_0 = f'_0$; so choose $t_0 = 0$.) Again we define $t_n$ first on $x^n \times x^n$. We require

$$a t, (x^n \times x^n) = f (x^n \times x^n) - f' (x^n \times x^n) - t_{n-1} \partial (x^n \times x^n).$$

By the induction assumption, $\partial (f - f' - t \partial) = 0$, so the right hand side is a cycle in an acyclic complex, hence is the boundary of some chain $d$. Set $t_n (x^n \times x^n) = d, \ t_n (a \times b) = (a \otimes b) d$ for $a, \ \beta$ with $\alpha x^n = a, \ \beta x^n = b$.

The previous type of argument then shows $t_n$ natural and $\partial t_n + t_{n-1} \partial = f - f'$ for all $a \times b$.

**Lemma 8.3.** For simplicial modules $A$ and $B$ there is a natural chain transformation $g: K(A) \otimes K(B) \to K(A \times B)$ which is the identity in dimension zero. Any two such $g$ are homotopic by a chain homotopy natural in $A$ and $B$.

The proof is analogous. A typical chain of $K(A) \otimes K(B)$ in dimension $n$ has the form $a \otimes b$, with $a \in K_p(A), \ b \in K_q(B)$, and $p + q = n$. Use
the models $M^p$ and $M^q$ and maps $a: M^p \to A$, $\beta: M^q \to B$ with $a \alpha = a$, $\beta \alpha = b$. Now the complex $K(M^p \times M^q)$ is acyclic, for the homotopies $s$ of (7.1) for $M^p$ and $M^q$ yield a contracting homotopy $s(a \times b) = s a \times s b$ on $K(M^p \times M^q)$. Using this acyclicity, the construction of $g$ proceeds as before.

We now have the chain transformations $f$ and $g$ of the theorem; it remains to establish homotopies $1 \simeq f g$, $1 \simeq g f$. These are done by exactly the same method; for instance the homotopy $1 \simeq g f$ in $K(A \times B)$ is obtained, using the acyclicity of $K(M^p \times M^p)$, by comparing $h = 1$ with $h' = g f$ as follows.

**Lemma 8.4.** If $h, h': K(A \times B) \to K(A \times B)$ are two natural chain transformations, both the identity in dimension zero, there is a natural chain homotopy $t: h \simeq h'$.

These proofs are actually constructive; explicit formulas for $f$ and $g$ can be found by calculating the chain $c$ used at each stage of the induction (e.g., in (8.6)) from the explicit contracting homotopies given in the proof of Prop. 7.1 for the models. We do not need the explicit homotopies $1 \simeq f g$, $1 \simeq g f$, but the explicit formulas so obtained for $f$ and $g$ are useful. To write them out, denote the "last" face in a simplicial object $S$ by $\tilde{d}$; that is, for $a$ in $S_n$ set $\tilde{d} a = d_n a$. Thus, for any exponent $n - i, \tilde{d}^n - i a = d_{i+1} \ldots d_n a$.

**Theorem 8.5.** For any simplicial modules $A$ and $B$, a natural chain transformation $f: K(A \times B) \to K(A) \otimes K(B)$ for the EILENBERG-ZILBER theorem is given by

$$f(a \times b) = \sum_{i=0}^{n} \tilde{d}^n - i a \otimes d^i_0 b, \quad a \in A_n, \ b \in B_n. \quad (8.7)$$

**Proof.** Since $f$ is defined by face operators, it is natural. It reduces to the identity in dimension $n = 0$. It remains to prove that $\partial f(a \times b) = f \partial (a \times b)$; in view of naturality, it suffices to prove this for $a = x^n = b$ in the model $M^n$. Now $x^n = (0, 1, \ldots, n), \tilde{d}^n - i x^n$ is the simplex $(0, 1, \ldots, i)$ and

$$f(x^n \times x^n) = \sum_{i=0}^{n} (0, \ldots, i) \otimes (i, i + 1, \ldots, n). \quad (8.8)$$

In $\partial f(x^n \times x^n)$ the last face of each first factor cancels with the term arising from the initial face of the second factor, and the remaining terms assemble to give $f \partial (x^n \times x^n)$, as required.

The chain transformation $f$ of (8.7) is known as the Alexander-Whitney map, since it appeared in the simultaneous and independent definition of the cup product in topology by these authors. The explicit map $f$ calculated from our contracting homotopy differs from the
Corollary 8.6. The Alexander-Whitney map $f$ induces a chain transformation on the associated normalized chain complexes,

$$f_N: K_N(A \times B) \to K_N A \otimes K_N B.$$ 

Proof. By definition, $K_N A = K A / DA$; by (3.3) regard $K_N A \otimes K_N B$ as $K A \otimes K B$ modulo the subcomplex spanned by the images of both $DA \otimes KB$ and $KA \otimes DB$. In (8.7) suppose $a \times b \in K(A \times B)$ degenerate, so of the form $s_k a' \times s_k b'$ for some $k$. In each term on the right of (8.7) one of the factors is degenerate. Specifically, if $i \leq k$, (5.8) shows $d^s_a s_k b'$ degenerate, while if $i > k$, $s_b^{-1} s_k a'$ is degenerate, whence the desired result.

Geometrically, $f$ is an "approximation to the diagonal". Consider for instance the cartesian product $A^1 \times A^1$ of two 1-simplices (= intervals); it is a square with four vertices. Algebraically, $A^1$ is represented by $K(M^1)$; in $K_N(M^1) \otimes K_N(M^1)$ the group of 1-chains is a free group on four generators, corresponding to the four edges of the square. The diagonal of the square does not appear directly as a chain. However,

$$f(x^1 \times x^1) = (0) \otimes (0 \, 1) + (0 \, 1) \otimes (1)$$

is the chain represented by left hand edge plus top edge of the square. This chain is "homotopic" to the diagonal, hence an "approximation" to the diagonal. Observe that the bottom edge plus the right hand edge would give a different approximation, which could be developed algebraically by interchanging the roles of initial and final faces in the formula (8.7). Comparison of these two different approximations to the diagonal leads to the Steenrod squaring operations (Steenrod [1953], Milnor [1958], Dold [1961], Steenrod-Epstein [1962]).

For three simplicial modules $A$, $B$, and $C$, any natural Eilenberg-Zilber map $f$ may be iterated, as in

$$K(A \times B \times C) \xrightarrow{f} K(A) \otimes K(B \times C) \xrightarrow{1 \otimes f} K(A) \otimes K(B) \otimes K(C)$$

Proposition 8.7. Any natural $f$ is associative up to homotopy, in the sense that there is a natural chain homotopy $(1 \otimes f) f \simeq (f \otimes 1) f$. The Alexander-Whitney map is associative.

Proof. Since $(1 \otimes f) f$ and $(f \otimes 1) f$ are each the identity in dimension 0, a natural homotopy between them may be constructed by the method of acyclic models. The associativity (no homotopy necessary) of the Alexander-Whitney map can be computed directly, say by (8.8).
To describe the second map $g$ of the Eilenberg-Zilber theorem we introduce certain "shuffles". If $\#$ and $q$ are non-negative integers, a $(\#,$ $q)$-shuffle $(\mu, \nu)$ is a partition of the set $[\#+q-1]$ into two disjoint subsets $\mu_1\ldots\mu_\#$ and $\nu_1\ldots\nu_q$ of $\#$ and $q$ integers, respectively. Such a partition describes a possible way of shuffling a deck of $\#$ cards through a deck of $q$ cards, placing the cards of the first deck in order in the position $\mu_1, \ldots, \mu_\#$ and those of the second deck in order in the positions $\nu_1, \ldots, \nu_q$. A shuffle may be pictured as a sequence of moves in the lattice of points $(m, n)$ in the plane with integral coordinates: Start at $(0, 0)$ at time $0$; at time $k$ move to the right if $k$ is one of $\mu_1, \ldots, \mu_\#$ and up if $k$ is one of $\nu_1, \ldots, \nu_q$; the result is a "staircase" from $(0, 0)$ to $(\#, q)$. A $(\#, q)$-shuffle can also be defined to be a permutation $t$ of the set of integers $\{1, \ldots, \#+q\}$ such that $t(i) < t(j)$ whenever $i < j \leq \#$ or $\# < i < j$; for, each such permutation $t$ determines the $\mu_i$ as $t(\#+1)$, the $\nu_j$ as $t(\#+1)-1$, and conversely. The signature $e(\mu)$ of the shuffle $(\mu, \nu)$ is the integer $e(\mu) = \sum_{i=1}^\# \mu_i - (\#-1)$; then $(-1)^{e(\mu)}$ is the sign of the associated permutation $t$.

**Theorem 8.8.** For any simplicial models $A$ and $B$ a natural chain transformation $g$ for the Eilenberg-Zilber theorem is given, for $a \in A_\#$, $b \in B_q$, by

$$g(a \otimes b) = \sum_{(\mu, \nu)} (-1)^{e(\mu)} (s_{\nu_1} \ldots s_{\nu_q} a \times s_{\mu_1} \ldots s_{\mu_\#} b),$$

where the sum is taken over all $(\#, q)$-shuffles $(\mu, \nu)$.

Clearly $g$ is natural, $a \otimes b$ has dimension $\#+q$, and so do $s_{\nu_1} \ldots s_{\nu_q} a$ and $s_{\mu_1} \ldots s_{\mu_\#} b$. The proof that $g$ is a chain transformation is a straightforward verification which we omit (details in Eilenberg-MacLane [1953b], § 5, where the shuffles were first introduced).

Geometrically this function $g$ provides a "triangulation" of the cartesian product $\Delta^\# \times \Delta^q$ of two simplices. Specifically, take $a = \chi^\# \in M^\#$ and $b = \chi^q \in M^q$, so $\chi^\#$ has vertices $(0, 1, \ldots, \#)$. In this vertex notation,

$s_{\nu_1} \ldots s_{\nu_q} \chi^\# = (i_0, i_1, \ldots, i_{\#+q}),$

with $0 = i_0 \leq i_1 \leq \ldots \leq i_{\#+q} = \#$, and $i_k = i_{k+1}$ precisely when $k$ is one of $\nu_1, \ldots, \nu_q$. Similarly $s_{\mu_1} \ldots s_{\mu_\#} \chi^q = (j_0, \ldots, j_{\#+q})$, with $j_k = j_{k+1}$ precisely when $k$ is one of $\mu_1, \ldots, \mu_\#$. The simplex displayed on the right of (8.9) then has the form

$$(i_0, \ldots, i_{\#+q}) \times (j_0, \ldots, j_{\#+q}),$$

where the first factor is degenerate at those indices $k$ for which the second factor is not degenerate. This symbol may be read as the $(\#+q)$-dimensional affine simplex with vertices $(i_k, j_k)$ in the product $\Delta^\# \times \Delta^q$. 

16*
These simplices, for all \((p, q)\)-shuffles, provide a simplicial subdivision of \(\Delta^p \times \Delta^q\). For example, if \(p = 2, q = 1\), \(\Delta^2 \times \Delta^1\) is a triangular prism and the three possible \((2, 1)\) shuffles triangulate this prism into three simplices

\[
(0\ 1\ 2\ 2) \times (0\ 0\ 0\ 1), \quad (0\ 1\ 1\ 2) \times (0\ 0\ 1\ 1), \quad (0\ 0\ 1\ 2) \times (0\ 1\ 1\ 1),
\]
each of dimension three. (Draw a figure!)

This description also shows that if either factor \(a\) or \(b\) is degenerate, so is each term on the right in (8.9). Hence

**Corollary 8.9.** The shuffle map \(g\) of (8.9) induces a chain transformation on the normalized chain complexes

\[
\varepsilon_N: K_N(A) \otimes K_N(B) \rightarrow K_N(A \times B).
\]

For these normalized complexes, the composite \(f_N \varepsilon_N\) can be shown to be the identity (no homotopy \(1 \cong f_N \varepsilon_N\) is needed).

**Exercises**

1. Exhibit a second explicit formula for \(f\), with first and last faces interchanged in (8.7).

2. Establish associativity for the shuffle map \(g\).

3. Prove the normalization theorem of § 6 by the method of acyclic models.

4. Show that the Eilenberg-Zilber theorem holds for \(A\) a simplicial right \(R\)-module, \(B\) a simplicial left \(R\)-module, and \(R\) any ring.

5. Calculate the integral homology of a torus \(S^1 \times S^1\) from that of a circle \(S^1\) (Eilenberg-Zilber plus Künneth).

**9. Cup Products**

For any simplicial set \(U\), \(A u = u \times u\) defines a simplicial map \(A: U \rightarrow U \times U\) called the simplicial diagonal map. Now \(U\) determines the simplicial abelian group \(F_2 U\) and hence the chain complex \(K(F_2 U)\) which we write simply as \(K(U)\); each \(K_n(U)\) is the free abelian group generated by the set \(U_n\), with \(\partial = \sum (-1)^i d_i\). The diagonal induces a chain transformation \(K(U) \rightarrow K(U \times U)\), also denoted by \(A\). If \(f\) is any one of the natural maps from the Eilenberg-Zilber theorem the composite

\[
\omega = f \Delta: K(U) \rightarrow K(U \times U) \rightarrow K(U) \otimes K(U)
\]

is called a diagonal map in \(K(U)\). Since \(f\) is unique up to a (natural) chain homotopy, so is \(\omega\). Since \(A\) is associative \(- (A \times 1)A = (1 \times A)A \) and \(f\) is associative up to homotopy (Prop. 8.7), there is a homotopy \((\omega \otimes 1) \omega \cong (1 \otimes \omega) \omega\). The complex \(K(U)\) is augmented by \(\varepsilon(u) = 1\) for \(u \in U_0\). We assert that there are homotopies

\[
(\varepsilon \otimes 1) \omega \cong 1 \cong (1 \otimes \varepsilon) \omega: \ K(U) \rightarrow K(U).
\]
Indeed, each of \((E \otimes 1)\omega\) and \((1 \otimes \varepsilon)\omega\) is natural and is the identity in dimension zero, so natural homotopies may be constructed by using the acyclic models \(M^n\) (taken this time as simplicial sets \(U\)). Now equalities in (9.2) and in associativity are exactly the conditions (VI.9.1) required to make \(\omega\) a coproduct with counit \(\varepsilon\), so that we might say that \(K(U)\) with diagonal \(\omega\) is a differential graded coalgebra "up to homotopy".

If we choose for \(f\) the Alexander-Whitney map, then \(w\) is associative and it is easy to check that \((E \otimes 1)\omega=(1 \otimes E)\omega\). Hence with this choice \(K(U)\) is a differential graded coalgebra, and so is the normalized complex \(K_N(U)\).

Now let \(A\) and \(A'\) be abelian groups, and write \(H^k(U, A)\) for the cohomology group \(H^k(\text{Hom}(K(U), A))\). The composite \(\varepsilon=\omega \circ \rho^H\),

\[
H^k(U, A) \otimes H^m(U, A') \xrightarrow{\rho^H} H^{k+m}(K(U) \otimes K(U), A \otimes A') \xrightarrow{\omega} H^{k+m}(U, A \otimes A'),
\]

where \(\rho^H\) is the cohomology product of (1.3), is called the (external) simplicial cup product. With cochains \(h\) and \(h'\), the definition reads

\[
(h \cup h')(v_0, \ldots, v_n) = h(v_0, \ldots, v_k) \otimes h'(v_k, \ldots, v_n).
\]

If \(A=A'\) is the additive group of a commutative ring \(R\) with product \(\pi: R \otimes R \to R\), the composite \(\pi \circ u\) is a map

\[
H^k(U, R) \otimes H^m(U, R) \to H^{k+m}(U, R),
\]

called the internal simplicial cup product.

**Theorem 9.1.** For each simplicial set \(U\) and each coefficient ring \(R\) the cohomology modules \(H^k(\text{Hom}(K(U), R))=H^k(U, R)\) constitute a graded ring under the internal simplicial cup product. If \(R\) is commutative, so is this cohomology ring.

**Proof.** The associativity of the product is known. The augmentation \(\varepsilon: K(U) \to Z\) composed with \(I: Z \to R\) gives a zero dimensional cocycle \(I_E\) of \(K(U)\). Then \((h \cup I\varepsilon)u=\pi(h \otimes I)(1 \otimes \varepsilon)\omega u\), where \(\pi(h \otimes I): K \otimes Z \to R\) is \(h\) when \(K \otimes Z\) is identified with \(K\), while \((1 \otimes \varepsilon)\omega \cong 1\). Hence the cohomology class \(e\) of the cocycle \(I_E\) acts as the identity for the cup product. Similarly, to show that the cup product is commutative, it suffices to establish a chain homotopy \(f \equiv \tau\) for the usual
interchange \( \tau: K_k \otimes K_m \cong K_m \otimes K_k \). Both \( f \) and \( \tau f \) are the identity in dimension 0, and this homotopy is given by using acyclic models.

When \( f \) is the Alexander-Whitney map, the cochains themselves form a graded ring, but the ring is not commutative: Commutativity holds only for cohomology classes.

This theorem shows that the singular cohomology of a topological space \( X \) with coefficients \( \mathbb{Z} \) is a commutative ring under the cup product.

The simplicial cup product also applies to the cohomology of a group \( \Pi \). By a \( \Pi \)-set \( S \) is meant a set \( S \) together with an action of \( \Pi \) on \( S \); more formally, this action is given by \( \varphi: \Pi \to \text{Aut}(S) \), a homomorphism of \( \Pi \) into the group of 1-1 maps of \( S \) onto \( S \). The \( \Pi \)-sets form a category. For example, take \( \tilde{B}_n(\Pi) \) to be the set of all \((n+4)\)-tuples \((x_0, \ldots, x_n)\) with the action of \( \Pi \) given by \( x(x_0, \ldots, x_n) = (x_0, \ldots, x_n) \). The usual face and degeneracy operators

\[
\begin{align*}
\partial_i(x_0, \ldots, x_n) &= (x_0, \ldots, \hat{x}_i, \ldots, x_n), \quad 0 \leq i \leq n, \ n > 0, \\
\sigma_i(x_0, \ldots, x_n) &= (x_0, \ldots, x_i, x_i, \ldots, x_n), \quad 0 \leq i \leq n,
\end{align*}
\]

are 11-maps, so \( \tilde{B}(\Pi) \) is a simplicial \( \Pi \)-set. The associated simplicial abelian group \( F_2(\tilde{B}(\Pi)) \) is a simplicial \( \Pi \)-module, while \( K = KF_2(\tilde{B}(\Pi)) \) is a complex of \( \Pi \)-modules, with \( K_n \) the free abelian group generated by the \((x_0, \ldots, x_n)\) and with boundary

\[
\partial(x_0, \ldots, x_n) = \sum_{i=0}^n (-1)^i (x_0, \ldots, \hat{x}_i, \ldots, x_n).
\]

We have recovered the homogeneous description \((\text{IV.5.13})\) of the un-normalized bar resolution \( \beta(\Pi) = KF_2(\tilde{B}(\Pi)) \), while \( KNF_2(\tilde{B}(\Pi)) \) is the normalized bar resolution \( B(\Pi) \).

Now recall that the group ring \( \mathbb{Z}(\Pi) \) is a Hopf algebra with co-product

\[
\psi: \mathbb{Z}(\Pi) \to \mathbb{Z}(\Pi) \otimes \mathbb{Z}(\Pi), \quad \psi(x) = x \otimes x.
\]

By pull-back along the corresponding diagonal map \( \Pi \to \Pi \times \Pi \), the cartesian product \( \tilde{B}(\Pi) \times \tilde{B}(\Pi) \) of two \( \Pi \)-sets is a \( \Pi \)-set. The diagonal map \( w \) for \( \beta(\Pi) = K\tilde{B}(\Pi) \) is the composite

\[
\omega: \beta(\Pi) \to K(\tilde{B}(\Pi) \times \tilde{B}(\Pi)) \to [\beta(\Pi) \otimes \beta(\Pi)];
\]

here \( A \) is a 17-map, \( f \) is natural, so commutes with the action of \( \Pi \) and is also a 17-map. Therefore \( w \) is a chain transformation for complexes of 17-modules. This implies that the simplicial cup product is defined, for two 17-modules \( A \) and \( A' \), as a homomorphism

\[
\cup: H^k(17, A) \otimes H^m(\Pi, A') \to H^{k+m}(\Pi, \psi(A \otimes A')) \quad (9.7)
\]

This product is associative.
A homomorphism $\alpha : \mathcal{A}(\mathcal{A} \otimes \mathcal{A}') \to \mathcal{A}'$ of $\mathcal{A}$-modules is called a "airing of $\mathcal{A}$ and $\mathcal{A}'$ to $\mathcal{A}'"$. The cup product followed by the homomorphism induced by the pairing $\alpha$ yields an "internal" cup product which is a homomorphism $H(\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{A}) \otimes H(\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{A}') \to H(\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{A}')$.

The discussion of $\mathcal{A}$-sets in the definition of this cup product could be short-cut by simply giving the direct description of the cup product by cochains. If $h$ and $h'$ are cochains of dimensions $k$ and $m$, respectively, regarded as functions on the homogeneous generators $(x_0, \ldots, x_k)$ and $(x_0, \ldots, x_m)$ of $\beta(\mathcal{A})$, their cup product is the cochain defined, via Alexander-Whitney, by

$$(h \cup h')(x_0, \ldots, x_n) = h(x_0, \ldots, x_k) \otimes h'(x_k, \ldots, x_n), \quad n = k + m.$$  

This $h \cup h'$ is clearly a $\mathcal{A}$-module homomorphism into $\mathcal{A} \otimes \mathcal{A}'$ with diagonal operators, that is, into, $(\mathcal{A} \otimes \mathcal{A}')$.

In particular, if $\mathcal{A}$ and $\mathcal{A}'$ are both the ring $\mathcal{Z}$ with trivial operators $(\mathcal{Z} = \mathcal{Z})$, then $\varphi(\mathcal{Z} \otimes \mathcal{Z}) = \mathcal{Z}$. It follows that $H^k(\mathcal{Z}, \mathcal{Z})$ is a commutative graded ring under the simplicial cup product.

**Theorem 9.2.** Under the isomorphism $H^n(\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{A}) \cong \text{Ext}^*_\mathcal{A}(\mathcal{Z}, \mathcal{A})$, for any $\mathcal{A}$-module $\mathcal{A}$, the simplicial cup product is mapped onto the Hopf wedge product defined in $\text{Ext}$.

The crux of the proof is the observation that the diagonal map

$$\omega : \beta(\mathcal{Z}) \to \varphi[\beta(\mathcal{A}) \otimes \beta(\mathcal{A})]$$

of complexes of $\mathcal{A}$-modules commutes with the augmentation, hence is a comparison of the resolution $\varepsilon : \beta(\mathcal{A}) \to \mathcal{Z}$ to the resolution given by $\varphi[\beta(\mathcal{A}) \otimes \beta(\mathcal{A})] \to \mathcal{Z}$. Both $H^n$ and $\text{Ext}^n$ are $H^n(\beta(\mathcal{A}), \mathcal{A})$. The Hopf wedge product of (4.5) is $\psi^\# \rho^H$, where $\rho^H$ is the cohomology product and $\psi^\#$ the change of rings defined by $\psi : \mathcal{Z}(\mathcal{A}) \to \mathcal{Z}(\mathcal{A}) \otimes \mathcal{Z}(\mathcal{A})$. Now Thm. III.6.7 asserts that this change of rings can be calculated as $\psi^\# = \mathcal{F}^{*} \psi^{*}$, where $\psi^{*}$ maps $\text{Hom}_\mathcal{Z}(\mathcal{A}) \otimes \mathcal{Z}(\mathcal{A})$ to $\text{Hom}_\mathcal{Z}(\mathcal{A})$, while the map $\mathcal{F} : \beta(\mathcal{A}) \to \varphi[\beta(\mathcal{A}) \otimes \beta(\mathcal{A})]$ is a comparison. Choose $\mathcal{F}$ to be the comparison $\omega$; then $\psi^\# \rho^H$ becomes $\omega^* \psi^* \rho^H$, which is the simplicial cup product.

The cup product in the cohomology ring $H^*(\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{Z})$ can thus be defined in three equivalent ways:

(i) As the simplicial cup product;

(ii) As the wedge product induced by the diagonal map $\psi$;

(iii) As the YONEDA product, by composites of long exact sequences.

Still a fourth definition will appear in Chap. XII and will facilitate the computation of examples.

One application is the "cup product reduction theorem". Suppose $\mathcal{A} = \mathcal{F}/\mathcal{R}$ where $\mathcal{F}$ is a free multiplicative group. Let $[\mathcal{R}, \mathcal{R}]$ be the commutator subgroup of $\mathcal{R}$ and set $\mathcal{F}_0 = \mathcal{F}/[\mathcal{R}, \mathcal{R}]$, $\mathcal{R}_0 = \mathcal{R}/[\mathcal{R}, \mathcal{R}]$. Then $R_0$
Chapter IX. Relative Homological Algebra

is abelian and \( \mathcal{P} \cong F_0/R_0 \), so \( F_0 \) is an extension of \( R_0 \) by \( \mathcal{P} \) with factor set a 2-cocycle \( f_0 \) of \( \mathcal{P} \) in the 17-module \( R_0 \). For any \( \mathcal{P} \)-module \( A \), \( \text{Hom} \ (R_0, A) \) is a 17-module with operators \( x \alpha \) defined for \( \alpha: R_0 \to A \) by \( (x \alpha) \gamma = x[\alpha(x^{-1}r)] \), while a \( \otimes R_0 \to A \). The internal cup product of an \( n \)-cocycle with \( f_0 \) then determines a homomorphism

\[
H^n(\mathcal{P}, \text{Hom}(R_0, A)) \to H^{n+2}(\mathcal{P}, A).
\]

The cup product reduction theorem asserts that this is an isomorphism for \( n > 0 \). The theorem is due to Eilenberg-MacLane [1947]; an elegant proof, using relative cohomology and the characteristic class (IV.6) of an extension is given by Swan [1960] and also below in IX.7, Ex. 7–10.

The cohomology groups \( H^*(\mathcal{P}, Z) \) were shown in IV.11 to be the singular homology groups of the space \( X/\mathcal{P} \) when \( \mathcal{P} \) operates properly on the acyclic space \( X \). The comparison made there evidently preserves the simplicial structure, hence the cup product, so \( H(\mathcal{P}, Z) \cong H(X/\mathcal{P}, Z) \) is an isomorphism of cohomology rings.

Exercise

1. Show that \( \beta(17) \) with non-homogeneous generators (IV.5.41) has degeneracies and faces given by

\[
s_i(x_1, \ldots, x_n) = x[x_1, \ldots, x_{i-1}, 1, x_i, \ldots, x_n], \quad 0 \leq i \leq n,
\]

\[
d_i(x_1, \ldots, x_n) = x[x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n], \quad i = 0,
\]

\[
= x[x_1, \ldots, x_i x_{i+1}, \ldots, x_n], \quad 0 < i < n,
\]

\[
= x[x_1, \ldots, x_{n-1}], \quad i = n
\]

and that the map \( \omega \), for Alexander-Whitney, is

\[
\omega(x[x_1, \ldots, x_n]) = \sum_{i=0}^{n} x[x_1, \ldots, x_i] \otimes x[x_1, \ldots, x_i x_{i+1}, \ldots, x_n]
\]

Notes. For topological discussion of the cup product (in contrary terminology) see Hilton-Wylie [1960]. For the cup product for groups see Eilenberg-MacLane [1947], Eckmann [1945–1946], [1954]. A fiber space may be regarded as a sort of "twisted" cartesian product; there is a corresponding twisted version of the Eilenberg-Zilber theorem (Brown [1959], Gugenheim [1960], Szczerba [1961]). Simplicial fiber bundles are treated in Barratt-Gugenheim-Moore [1959].

Chapter nine

Relative Homological Algebra

Introduction. When we described the elements of \( \text{Ext}^n(C, A) \) as long exact sequences from \( A \) to \( C \) we supposed that \( A \) and \( C \) were left modules over a ring. We could equally well have supposed that they were right
modules, bimodules, or graded modules. An efficient formulation of this situation is to assume that \( A \) and \( C \) are objects in a category with suitable properties: One where morphisms can be added and kernels and cokernels constructed. The first three sections of this chapter are devoted to the description of such "abelian" categories.

If \( 17 \) is a group, each \( 17 \)-module is also an abelian group; this gives a homomorphism of the category of all \( \mathbb{II} \)-modules to that of all abelian groups. If \( A \) is an algebra over the ground ring \( K \), each \( A \)-module is also a \( K \)-module, while each \( A \)-bimodule is also a right \( A \)-module. If \( R > S \) are rings, each \( R \)-module is an \( S \)-module. In each such case we have a homomorphism of one abelian category to a second which leads naturally to the definition of "relative" functors \( \text{Ext} \) and \( \text{Tor} \); for further introductory explanation, see §8 below. The general method is described in this chapter and will be applied in the next chapter to study the cohomology of various types of algebraic systems.

1. Additive Categories

First examine the categories in which suitable pairs of morphisms can be added. An additive category \( \mathcal{C} \) is a class of objects \( A, B, C, \ldots \) together with

(i) A family of disjoint abelian groups \( \text{hom}(A, B) \), one for each ordered pair of objects. We write \( a: A \to B \) for \( \alpha \in \text{hom}(A, B) \) and call \( a \) a morphism of \( \mathcal{C} \).

(ii) To each ordered triple of objects \( A, B, C \) a homomorphism

\[
\text{hom}(B, C) \otimes \text{hom}(A, B) \to \text{hom}(A, C)
\]

(1.1)
of abelian groups. The image of \( \beta \otimes \alpha \) under composition is written \( \beta a \), and called the composite of \( \beta \) and \( a \).

(iii) To each object \( A \) a morphism \( 1_A: A \to A \), called the identity of \( A \).

These data are subject to the following four axioms:

Associativity: If \( a: A \to B, \beta: B \to C, \) and \( y: C \to D, \) then

\[
y(\beta \alpha) = (y \beta) \alpha;
\]

(1.2)

Identities: If \( a: A \to B, \) then

\[
\alpha 1_A = \alpha = 1_B \alpha;
\]

(1.3)

Zero: There is an object \( 0' \) such that \( \text{hom}(0', 0') \) is the zero group.
Chapter IX. Relative Homological Algebra

Finite Direct Sums: To each pair of objects $A_1$, $A_2$, there exists an object $B$ and four morphisms forming a diagram

$$A_1 \xrightarrow{t_1} B \xleftarrow{t_2} A_2$$

with

$$\pi_1 t_1 = 1_{A_1}, \quad \pi_2 t_2 = 1_{A_2}, \quad t_1 \pi_1 + t_2 \pi_2 = 1_B.$$  \hspace{1cm} (1.4)

To avoid foundational difficulties, two further axioms of a set-theoretic character are required; they will be stated at the end of this section.

These axioms are like those for a category (1.7). Indeed, an additive category may be defined as a category with zero and direct sums, as above, in which each set $\text{hom}(A, B)$ of morphisms has the structure of an abelian group such that the distributive laws

$$\beta (\alpha_1 + \alpha_2) = \beta \alpha_1 + \beta \alpha_2, \quad (\beta_1 + \beta_2) \alpha = \beta_1 \alpha + \beta_2 \alpha$$  \hspace{1cm} (1.5)

are valid whenever both sides are defined. (This insures that composition is bilinear, as required by (1.1).)

If the existence of direct sums is not required, we speak of a preadditive category. As in the case of categories, we can omit the objects and work only with the morphisms, using the identity morphisms $1_A$ in place of objects. The axioms are then like the axioms for a ring in which the compositions $\alpha_1 + \alpha_2$ and $\beta \alpha$ are not always defined but, whenever defined, satisfy the usual ring axioms such as (1.2), (1.3), and (1.5). Thus Hilton-Ledermann [1958] call a preadditive category a ringoid, following the terminology of Barratt [1954].

By $0$ we denote (ambiguously) the zero element of any group $\text{hom}(A, B)$; then $0 \alpha = 0 = \beta 0$ whenever defined (proof: $0 a = (0 + 0) a$; use the distributive law). An object $0'$ with $\text{hom}(0', 0')$ the zero group is called a zero object. Then $1_{0'} = 0$, hence $\text{hom}(A, 0')$ and $\text{hom}(0', B)$ are the zero groups whatever the objects $A$ and $B$, and any two zero objects are equivalent.

Examine next the consequences of the finite direct sum axiom. By (1.4),

$$\pi_1 t_2 = \pi_1 (t_1 \pi_1 + t_2 \pi_2) t_2 = 1 \pi_1 t_2 + \pi_1 t_2 1 = \pi_1 t_2 + \pi_1 t_2,$$

hence $\pi_1 t_2 = 0$ and $\pi_2 t_1 = 0$, as usual. Props. 4.1 - 4.5 of Chap. I now follow; in particular, the diagram (1.4) determines the object $B$ up to equivalence, and we usually write such a $B$ as $A, \bigoplus A_2$. Each morphism $\gamma: A_1 \bigoplus A_2 \to C$ determines a pair of morphisms $\gamma_j = \gamma j: A_j \to C$; the correspondence $\varphi(\gamma) = (\gamma_1, \gamma_2)$ is an isomorphism

$$\varphi: \text{hom}(A_1 \bigoplus A_2, C) \cong \text{hom}(A_1, C) \bigoplus \text{hom}(A_2, C)$$

of abelian groups. The inverse is given by $\varphi^{-1}(\gamma_1, \gamma_2) = \gamma_1 \pi_1 + \gamma_2 \pi_2: A_1 \bigoplus A_2 \to C$. Thus $\gamma = \gamma_1 \pi_1 + \gamma_2 \pi_2$ is the unique morphism $A_1 \bigoplus A_2 \to C$
with $\gamma_j = \gamma_i$, $j = 1, 2$, so the injections $t_j: A_j \to A_1 \oplus A_2$ of the direct sum constitute a universal diagram. Here a diagram $\{a_t: A \to B \mid t \in T\}$ of coterminal morphisms $\alpha_t$, with $T$ any set of indices, is universal if to each diagram $\{\gamma_j: A \to C \mid t \in T\}$ there is a unique morphism $\gamma: B \to C$ with $\gamma \alpha_t = \gamma_t$ for each $t$. Dually, there is an isomorphism

$$\psi: \hom(C, A_1 \oplus A_2) \cong \hom(C, A_1) \oplus \hom(C, A_2)$$

with $\psi \gamma = (\pi_1 \gamma, \pi_2 \gamma)$ and $\psi^{-1}(\gamma_1, \gamma_2) = t_1 \gamma_1 + t_2 \gamma_2$. Consequently, the diagram $\{\pi_j: A_1 \oplus A_2 \to A_j \mid j = 1, 2\}$ is couniversal. The usual diagonal and codiagonal morphisms

$$D_A = t_1 + t_2: A \to A \oplus A, \quad D_A = \pi_1 + \pi_2: A \oplus A \to A,$$  \hspace{1cm} (1.6)

are characterized by the respective properties

$$\pi_1 D_A = 1_A = \pi_2 D_A, \quad D_A t_1 = 1_A = D_A t_2.$$  \hspace{1cm} (1.7)

Given two direct sums $A \oplus A_2$ and $A_1 \oplus A_2$ and morphisms $\alpha_j: A_j \to A_i$ there is a unique morphism $\alpha_1 \oplus \alpha_2: A \oplus A \to A_1 \oplus A_2$ with

$$\pi_1 (\alpha_1 \oplus \alpha_2) = \alpha_1, \quad \pi_2 (\alpha_1 \oplus \alpha_2) = \alpha_2.$$  \hspace{1cm} (1.8)

The same morphism is characterized by the dual properties

$$(\alpha_1 \oplus \alpha_2) t_1 = t_1 \alpha_1, \quad (\alpha_1 \oplus \alpha_2) t_2 = t_2 \alpha_2.$$  \hspace{1cm} (1.9)

The iterated direct sum $A \oplus (A, \oplus \cdots \oplus A_n)$ with the corresponding injections is a universal diagram, and any universal diagram on $A, \ldots, A$, is equivalent to this iterated direct sum. Dually, the projections $\pi_j$ of an (iterated) direct sum provide a couniversal diagram. The axiom requiring the existence of finite direct sums may be replaced either by the assumption that there exists a universal diagram for any two objects $A$ and $A_\alpha$, or by the dual requirement. In any event, the axioms for an additive category are self-dual.

In an additive category $C$, $\hom(A, B)$ is a bifunctor on the category $C$ to the category of abelian groups.

To prepare the way for the study of kernels, we formulate definitions of "monic" and "epic" in categories to agree in the standard examples with monomorphisms and epimorphisms. In the category of sets, a function $f$ on $X$ to $Y$ is surjective if $f(X) = Y$ (f is onto Y) and injective if $f(x) = f(x')$ always implies $x = x'$ (f is 1-1 into Y). In any category, a morphism $x: A+B$ is said to be monic if each induced map $x_*: \hom(C, A) \to \hom(C, B)$ is injective. Thus $x$ monic means that $xa = xa'$ implies $a = a'$ for all $a, a': C+A$, hence that $x$ is left cancellable. In an additive category, $x$ is monic if and only if $xa = 0$ implies $a = 0$ whenever $xa$ is defined. Dually, a morphism $a: B+C$ in any category
is said to be epic if each induced map \( a^* : \text{hom}(C, G) \to \text{hom}(B, G) \) is injective. Thus \( \sigma \) epic means that \( \alpha \sigma = \alpha' \sigma \) always implies \( \alpha = \alpha' \), hence that \( a \) is right cancellable. In an additive category, \( \sigma \) is epic if and only if \( \alpha \sigma = 0 \) always implies \( \alpha = 0 \). In this chapter we systematically denote morphisms which are monic by \( \lambda, \mu, \nu \) and those which are epic by \( \varrho, a, \tau \). If \( \alpha \) and \( \lambda \) are monic, so is \( \alpha \lambda \) whenever it is defined, and dually. **Warning:** In certain additive categories of modules, "monic" may not agree with "monomorphism" (see Ex. 5) though the agreement does hold in the category of all modules with morphisms all homomorphisms.

An equivalence is a morphism \( \theta \) with a two-sided inverse \( \psi (\theta \psi = 1, \theta \psi = 1) \). Two morphisms \( a : S \to A \) and \( a' : S' \to A \) with the same range are called right equivalent if there is an equivalence \( \theta : S \to S' \) with \( \alpha' \theta = \alpha \); this relation is reflexive, symmetric, and transitive, so allows the formulation of right equivalence classes of morphisms with range \( A \). If \( x \) is monic, so is each right equivalent of \( x \). In the additive category of all modules, two monomorphisms with range \( A \) are right equivalent if and only if their images are identical, as submodules of \( A \). Hence in any additive category we say that the right equivalence class of a monic \( x : S + A \) is a subobject of \( A \). It is convenient to say that \( x \) itself is a subobject of \( A \) — meaning thereby the right equivalence class, \( \text{cls} x \), of \( x \). Observe that a "subobject" so defined is not an object of the category; for example, we cannot regard \( A \) as a subobject of itself but we must use instead \( \text{cls} 1 \), which is the class of all equivalences with range \( A \).

The dual definitions are: \( a : A + T \) and \( a' : A + T' \) are left equivalent if \( \theta \alpha' = \alpha \) for some equivalence \( \theta : S \to S' \). The left equivalence class of an epic \( a : A \to T \) consists of epic morphisms and is called a quotient object of \( A \).

For modules, the kernel \( K \) of a homomorphism \( a : A \to B \) is the largest submodule of \( A \) mapped by \( a \) into \( 0 \) and is characterized by the property that each morphism \( \beta \) with \( a \beta = 0 \) factors uniquely through the injection \( x : K + A \rightarrow B \) as \( \beta = x \beta' \). This can be paraphrased in any additive category \( \mathcal{C} \): A kernel of \( a : A \to B \) is a monic \( x \) with range \( A \) such that

\[
\alpha x = 0, \quad \text{while} \quad \alpha \beta = 0 \quad \text{implies} \quad \beta = x \beta' \quad (1.10)
\]

for some \( \beta' \), necessarily unique. In other words, the right annihilators of \( a \) are exactly the right multiples of its kernel \( x \). Hence any two kernels \( x \) and \( x' \) of \( a \) are right equivalent, so the class of all kernels of \( \alpha \), if not vacuous, is a subobject of \( A \) which we write as \( \ker a \). Dually, a cokernel of \( a : A + B \) is an epic \( a \) with domain \( B \) such that

\[
\sigma a = 0, \quad \text{while} \quad \gamma a = 0 \quad \text{implies} \quad \gamma = \gamma' \sigma \quad (1.11)
\]

for some \( \gamma' \), necessarily unique. The left annihilators of \( a \) are thus the left multiples of a cokernel \( a \) of \( a \). Any two cokernels of \( a \) are left equivalent; if \( a \) has a cokernel, the class of all cokernels of \( a \) is a quotient
object of \( B \), so \( \sigma \in \text{coker } a \) states that \( a \) is one of the cokernels of \( a \).

In the category of modules, the projection \( B \to B/\alpha A \) is a cokernel of \( a \).

An immediate consequence of the respective definitions is

**Lemma 1.1.** If the composites \( a, !? \), \( x a \), and \( a a \) are defined, the following implications hold:

\[
\alpha \beta \text{ monic } \Rightarrow \beta \text{ monic, } \quad \alpha \beta \text{ epic } \Rightarrow \alpha \text{ epic, }
\]

\[
x \text{ monic } \Rightarrow \ker (x a) = \ker \alpha, \quad \alpha \text{ epic } \Rightarrow \text{coker}(aa) = \text{coker } a.
\]

Also \( \ker 1_A = 0 \), \( \text{coker } 1_A = 0 \), and, for \( 0: A \to B \), \( 1_A \in \ker 0 \) and \( 1_B \in \text{coker } 0 \). (Here \( 1 = 0 \) is short for \( 0 \in \ker 1 \).)

Finally we introduce a notation for short exact sequences, defining

\[
\alpha \parallel \beta \iff \alpha \in \ker \beta \text{ and } \beta \in \text{coker } \alpha.
\] (1.12)

This implies \( \alpha \) monic and \( \beta \) epic, so we may read "\( \alpha \parallel \sigma \)" as "\( \alpha \) and \( \beta \) are the morphisms of a short exact sequence".

To keep the foundations in order we wish the collection of all subobjects of an object \( A \) and the collection of all extensions of \( A \) by \( C \) both to be sets and not classes. Hence, for an additive category we assume two additional axioms:

- **Sets of sub- and quotient objects.** For each object \( A \) there is a set of morphisms \( \alpha \), each monic with range \( A \), which contains a representative of every subobject of \( A \) and dually, for quotient objects of \( A \).

- **Set of extensions.** For each pair of objects \( C, A \) and each \( n \geq 1 \) there is a set of \( n \)-fold exact sequences from \( A \) to \( C \) containing a representative of every congruence class of such sequences (with "congruence" defined as in 111.5).

Both axioms hold in all the relevant examples.

**Exercises**

1. Prove: If \( 0: A \to B \) is monic, then \( A \) is a zero object, and conversely.

2. In the isomorphism \( \varphi \) above, show that \( \varphi^{-1}(\gamma_1, \gamma_2) = V_C(\gamma_1 \oplus \gamma_2) \).

3. For \( \alpha, \beta: A \to B \) prove that \( \alpha + \beta = V_B(\alpha \oplus \beta) A_A \).

4. Show that the direct sum of two short exact sequences is exact.

5. Construct an additive category of (some) abelian groups in which a morphism which is monic need not be a monomorphism. (Hint: Omit lots of subgroups.)

6. Construct an additive category of some abelian groups in which some of the morphisms do not have kernels or cokernels.

7. In the categories of sets, of modules, and of (not necessarily abelian) groups, show that a morphism is monic if and only if it is injective, and epic if and only if it is surjective (as a function on sets).
Chapter IX. Relative Homological Algebra

2. **Abelian** Categories

To use effectively the notions of kernel and cokernel just introduced, we need conditions to insure that these classes are not empty. Furthermore, each monomorphism should be the kernel of its cokernel, and conversely. For modules, the image of a homomorphism \( a : A \to B \) appears in its factorization \( A \to \alpha A \to B \), with first factor \( A \to \alpha A \) an epimorphism and second factor the injection \( \alpha A \to B \), which is a monomorphism. Corresponding properties hold in other familiar categories: The category of all complexes of modules over a fixed ring, with morphisms the chain transformations; the category of all modules over a given graded algebra, with morphisms of degree zero; the category of all modules over a given DG-algebra. Thus an abelian category is to be an additive category \( \mathcal{A} \) satisfying the following further axioms:

(Abel-1). For every morphism \( a \) of \( \mathcal{A} \) there exists a \( \alpha \in \ker a \) and a \( \sigma \in \text{coker } a \).

(Abel-2). For \( \alpha \) monic and a epic, \( \alpha \in \ker a \) if and only if \( \sigma \in \text{coker } \alpha \).

(Abel-3). Every morphism of \( \mathcal{A} \) can be factored as \( a = \alpha \sigma \) with \( \alpha \) monic and \( \sigma \) epic.

(Abel-2) may be restated thus: \( \sigma \) epic and \( \alpha \in \ker a \) imply \( \alpha \parallel \sigma \), and dually. The three axioms together are subsumed in

Theorem 2.1. To each morphism \( a \) there exist morphisms \( x, \alpha, 2, \tau \) forming the following diagram with the indicated properties

\[
\bullet \xrightarrow{x} \bullet \xrightarrow{\alpha} \bullet \xrightarrow{\lambda} \bullet \xrightarrow{\tau}, \quad \alpha = \lambda \sigma, \quad \sigma \parallel \sigma, \quad \lambda \parallel \tau. \quad (2.1)
\]

Here and below the dots designate unnamed objects.

Proof. By (Abel-3), write \( a = \alpha \alpha ; \) by (Abel-1), \( \alpha \in \ker \alpha = \ker a \) and \( \tau \in \text{coker } \alpha = \text{coker } \lambda \) exist; by (Abel-2), \( \sigma \parallel \sigma \) and \( \lambda \parallel \tau \). The converse proof that this theorem implies the three axioms is left to the reader.

The diagram (2.1) is called an analysis of \( a \), and \( a = \lambda \alpha \) is a standard factorization of \( a \).

Proposition 2.2. The analysis of a morphism \( \alpha \in \mathcal{A} \) is a functor.

Here we regard the analysis (2.1) of \( a \) as a functor on the category \( \mathcal{A} = \text{Morph}(\mathcal{A}) \) of morphisms of \( \mathcal{A} \); the objects of \( \mathcal{A} \) are the morphisms \( a : A \to B \) of \( \mathcal{A} \); the maps \( \mathcal{S} : \alpha \to \alpha' \) of \( \mathcal{A} \) are the pairs \( \xi = (\xi_1, \xi_2) \) of morphisms of \( \mathcal{A} \) with \( \alpha' \xi_1 = \xi_2 \alpha \). The values of the 'analysis' functor lie in a similar category of diagrams from \( \mathcal{A} \). As the analysis is not uniquely determined, we assert more exactly that any choice of analyses, one for each \( a \), provides such a functor.
Thus, given $\mathcal{E} = (\xi_1, \xi_2)$: $a \to a'$ and analyses of $a$ and $a'$, we assert that there are unique morphisms $\eta_1, \eta_2, \eta_3$ of $\mathcal{A}$ which render the diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccccccc}
\bullet & \xrightarrow{\kappa} & \bullet & \xrightarrow{\sigma} & \bullet & \xrightarrow{\lambda} & \bullet \\
\downarrow{\eta_1} & & \downarrow{\xi_1} & & \downarrow{\xi_2} & & \downarrow{\eta_3} \\
\bullet & \xrightarrow{\kappa'} & \bullet & \xrightarrow{\sigma'} & \bullet & \xrightarrow{\lambda'} & \bullet \\
\end{array}
$$

$$\alpha = \lambda \sigma,$$

$$\alpha' = \lambda' \sigma',$$

(2.2)

commutative. (In ordinary parlance, $\eta_1$ is the map induced by $\xi_1$ on the kernels, etc.) Indeed, $\alpha'(\xi_1 \kappa) = \xi_2 \alpha \kappa = 0$ implies that $\xi_1 \kappa$ factors through $\kappa' \in \ker a'$ as $\xi_1 \kappa = \kappa' \eta_1$; since $\kappa'$ is left cancellable, $\eta_1$ is unique. Dually, $\tau' \xi_2 = \eta_3 \tau$ for a unique $\eta_3$. Also $\lambda' \sigma' \xi_1 \kappa = \xi_2 \alpha \kappa = 0$; since $\lambda'$ is left cancellable, $\sigma' \xi_1 \kappa = 0$ and $\sigma' \xi_1$ factors through $a \in \coker \alpha$ as $\sigma' \xi_1 = \eta_2 \sigma$, with $\eta_2$ unique. Then $\xi_2 \lambda a = \lambda' \sigma' \xi_1 = \lambda' \eta_2 \sigma$; cancelling $a$, $\xi_2 \lambda = \lambda' \eta_2$. This proves the diagram commutative and unique. Applied to $1: a \to a$, with two different analyses of $a$, this argument gives equivalences $\eta_1$, $\eta_2$, $\eta_3$; thus

Corollary 2.3. An analysis (2.1) of $a$ is uniquely determined up to equivalences of the three objects domain $\kappa$, range $\sigma = \text{domain } 1$, range $\tau$.

In the analysis (2.1) the unique right equivalence class of $\lambda$ is the image of $a$ and the unique left equivalence class of $a$ the coimage of $a$. The image of $a$ is a subobject of the range of $a$, the coimage a quotient of the domain. An analysis of $a: A \to B$ has the form of a commutative diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccccccc}
0 & \xrightarrow{\ker \alpha} & A & \xrightarrow{\text{coima}} & 0 \\
\downarrow{\alpha} & & \downarrow{\im \alpha} & & \downarrow{\coker \alpha} \\
& & B & & \\
\end{array}
$$

(2.3)

with row and column short exact sequences. Here "ker $a$" of course stands for any morphism in the class ker $a$. With the same convention we may read off the relations

$$
(ker a) \parallel (\text{coima}), \quad (im a) \parallel (\text{coker a}),
$$

(2.4)

$$
\text{coim } a = \coker (\text{ker } a), \quad \im a = \ker (\text{coker } a),
$$

(2.5)

$$
\ker a = \ker (\text{coima}), \quad \coker a = \coker (\im a).
$$

(2.6)

Hence also ker(\coker(\ker a)) = \ker a, and dually.

Proposition 2.4. A morphism $a$ is monic if and only if $\ker a = 0$, epic if and only if $\coker a = 0$, and an equivalence if and only if both $\ker a$ and $\coker a$ are zero. In particular, a morphism which is both monic and epic is an equivalence.
Here \( \ker a = 0 \) is short for \( 0 \in \ker a \); it means that every element of the class \( \ker a \) is a zero morphism.

Proof. The definition states that a monic \( a \) has only zeros as right annihilators, so that necessarily \( \ker a = 0 \). Conversely, if \( 0 \in \ker a \), then any right annihilator of a factors through zero, hence is zero, so that \( a \) is monic by definition. The proof for a epic is dual; both proofs use only the axioms of an additive category. Finally, an equivalence \( a \) is both monic and epic, so that \( \ker a = 0 = \coker a \). Conversely, if \( \ker a = 0 = \coker a \), then \( 1 \in \ker 0 = \ker (\coker a) = \text{im} a \) by (2.5), so \( \text{im} a \) is equivalent to \( I \), hence an equivalence. Dually, \( \text{coim} a \) is an equivalence, and thus so is \( a = (\text{im} a)(\text{coim} a) \).

Exact sequences operate as usual and can be defined in two (dual) ways.

Proposition 2.5. If the composite \( \beta \alpha \) is defined, then \( \text{im} a = \ker \beta \) if and only if \( \text{coim} \beta = \text{coker} a \).

When this is the case, we say that \( (a, \beta) \) is exact. In particular, \( \alpha \parallel \sigma \) implies \( (x, a) \) exact.

Proof. If \( \text{im} a = \ker \beta \), then \( \text{coim} \beta = \text{coker} (\ker \beta) = \text{coker} (\text{im} a) = \text{coker} a \) by (2.5) and (2.6), and dually.

Proposition 2.6. The short five lemma holds in any abelian category.

Proof. Given a commutative diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\bullet & \xrightarrow{\alpha} & \bullet \\
\downarrow{\sigma} & & \downarrow{\gamma} \\
\bullet & \xrightarrow{\sigma'} & \bullet
\end{array}
\]

with \( \alpha \parallel \sigma \) and \( \alpha' \parallel \sigma' \), we wish to prove that \( a, \gamma \) monic imply \( \beta \) monic, and dually. But take \( \mu \in \ker \beta \). Then \( \beta \mu = 0 \) gives \( 0 = \sigma' \beta \mu = \gamma a \mu \); since \( \gamma \) is monic, \( a \mu = 0 \). This implies that \( \mu \) factors through \( \alpha \in \ker a \) as \( \mu = \varphi v \), for a \( v \) which is necessarily monic. Then \( x' a v = \beta \varphi v = \beta \mu = 0 \). But \( \beta \) and \( a \) are monic, so \( v = 0 \) and thus \( \ker \beta = \mu = \varphi v = 0 \), so \( \beta \) is monic, as desired.

The Five Lemma, the Four Lemma, and the \( 3 \times 3 \) Lemma also hold in an abelian category. The proofs, which depend on certain additional techniques, will be given in Chap. XII.

Call an abelian category selective if

(Select I). There is a function assigning to each pair of objects \( A_1, A_2 \), a direct sum diagram, of the form specified in (1.4).

(Select 2). There is a function selecting a unique representative \( \alpha \) for each subobject and a unique representative \( \sigma \) for each quotient object.
In a selective abelian category $\mathcal{A}$ we can assign an object $K$ as Kernel for each morphism $\alpha$: Take $K$ to be the domain of the selected representative $\alpha: K \rightarrow A$ of the right equivalence class $\ker \alpha$. (Observe that now "Kernel" in capitals means an object, in lower case, a morphism.) Similarly, we can assign Cokernels and form Quotients of subobjects: In this regard we operate as if we were in the category of all $R$-modules. The various cited examples of abelian categories are all selective; by the axiom of choice, any small abelian category is selective.

Note on Terminology. The possibility of doing homological algebra abstractly in a suitable category was first demonstrated by MacLane [1950], working in an "abelian bicategory" which was substantially an abelian category with a canonical selection of representatives of subobjects and quotient objects. This canonical selection proved cumbersome and was dropped at the price of the present arrangement in which a subobject is not an object. The formulation of Buchsbaum [1955] uses exact categories, which are our abelian categories minus the direct sum axiom, while Grothendieck's extensive study [1957] introduced the term "abelian category" in the sense used here. Other authors have used "abelian category" in other meanings. Atiyah [1956] established the Krull-Schmidt theorem stating the uniqueness of a direct sum decomposition into indecomposable objects for an abelian category satisfying a "bichain" condition. Set-theoretical questions about abelian categories are considered in MacLane [1961b]. Various other types of categories may be constructed by imposing additional structure on the sets $\hom(A, B)$. Thus a graded category (XII.4 below) has each $\hom(A, B)$ a graded group; a differential category (Eilenberg-Moore, unpublished) has each $\hom(A, B)$ a positive complex of $K$-modules. One might wish categories with a tensor product functor satisfying suitable axioms, as in our treatment (Chap. VI) of types of algebras. Noetherian Categories have been studied by Gabriel [1962].

Exercises

1. Given (Abel-2) and (Abel-3), show that (Abel-1) may be replaced by the weaker statement that each epic has a kernel and each monic a cokernel.

2. In (2.2), show $\xi_1$ monic implies $\eta_1$ monic and $\xi_2$ monic implies $\eta_2$ monic.

3. Categories of Diagrams

Let $\mathcal{A}$ be an additive category and $\mathcal{C}$ a category which is small (i.e., the class of objects in $\mathcal{C}$ is a set). By $\text{Dgram}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{A})$ we denote the category with objects the covariant functors $T: \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$ and morphisms the natural transformations $f: T \rightarrow S$ of functors. The sum of two natural transformations $f$ and $g: T + S$ is defined for each object $C \in \mathcal{C}$ by $(f + g)(C) = f(C) + g(C)$. The axioms for an additive category hold in $\text{Dgram}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{A})$; in particular, the direct sum of two diagrams $T_1$ and $T_2$ is $(T_1 \oplus T_2)(C) = T_1(C) \oplus T_2(C)$: Take the direct sum at each vertex. Here, as in 1.8, we can regard each $T: \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$ as a "diagram" in $\mathcal{A}$ with "pattern" $\mathcal{C}$. For example, if $\mathcal{C}_0$ is the category with two objects
C, C' and three morphisms 1_0, 1'_0, and y: C → C', then each T: _0 → _ is determined by a morphism T(y) in _, so that Dgram( _0, _) is the category Morph(_) of §2, with objects the morphisms of _.

Proposition 3.1. (Grothendieck [1957].) If the category _ is small and _ is abelian, D = Dgram(_, _) is an abelian category. If f and g are morphisms of D, f∥g in D if and only if, for each C, f(C)∥g(C) in _.

Proof. Let f: T → S be natural. Since _ is small, we can choose for each object C a monic k(C) ∈ ker f(C), with domain, say, K(C).

Thus k(C): K(C) → T(C) is a morphism of _ with mapping function k(C) and k(C) is the kernel of f(C'). Since f is natural, each y: C → C' gives a commutative diagram

\[
0 \rightarrow K(C) \xrightarrow{k(C)} T(C) \xrightarrow{f(C)} S(C) \\
0 \rightarrow K(C') \xrightarrow{k(C')} T(C') \xrightarrow{f(C')} S(C')
\]

with exact rows. Since f(C')[T(y)k(C)] = 0, and k(C') is the kernel of f(C'), there is a unique K(y) (dotted arrow) with T(y)k(C) = k(C')K(y).

It follows that K: _ → _ with mapping function K(y) is a functor and k: K + T natural. As a morphism of D, k is monic, for if kh = 0, then (kh)(C) = k(C)h(C) = 0 for each object C; since k(C) is monic in _, h(C) = 0. Furthermore, if g: R → T is natural with fg = 0, each g(C) factors uniquely through k(C) as g(C) = k(C)h(C), h: R → K is natural, and g = kh. Therefore k ∈ ker_gf. This argument with its dual proves (Abel-1) in D and also gives

f monic in D ⇔ each f(C) monic in _,

k ∈ ker_gf ⇔ each k(C) ∈ ker_gf(C).

These statements with their duals prove (Abel-2).

To get a standard factorization (Abel-3) for f: T → S, choose for each C a standard factorization f(C) = I(C)t(C); the range R(C) of t(C) yields a functor R: _ → _, t: T + R is epic and I: R → S monic in 9, and f = lt. Since _ is small, we can also select for each T a set of representatives of the subobjects of T and for each S and T a set of representatives for the extensions of S by T, thus proving that D satisfies the supplementary set-theoretical axioms (§1) for an additive category.

Next consider the diagrams which involve zero objects. In any category _ call an object N a null object if for each object C of _ there is exactly one morphism C → N and exactly one morphism N → C; write 0_C: C → N and 0_C: N → C for these morphisms. Any two null objects in _ are equivalent, and any object equivalent to a null object is null.
For given objects $C$ and $D$, the composite morphism $\circ_D^0: C \to N \to D$ is independent of the choice of the intermediate null object $N$; it may be called the null morphism $\circ_D: C \to D$. A (new) null object may be adjoined to any category. In an additive category the null objects are exactly the zero objects, and the null morphism $\circ: C \to D$ is the zero of $\text{hom}(C, D)$.

If $C$ and $A$ have null objects, a normalized functor $T: C \to A$ is one with $T(N)$ null for some (and hence for any) null $N$ of $C$. It follows that $T$ maps null morphisms to null morphisms. $\text{Dgram}_N(C, A)$ will denote the category of all such $T$. Prop. 3.1 again applies.

An example is the category of complexes. To get this, take $C$ to be the following small category:

$$N; \cdots \leftarrow -2 \overset{\partial}{\leftarrow} -1 \overset{\partial}{\leftarrow} 0 \overset{\partial}{\leftarrow} 1 \leftarrow \cdots$$

the objects of $C$ are all integers $n$ plus a null object $N$; the morphisms are all identities, the null morphisms $n \to N$, $N \to n$, and $n \to m$, and morphisms $\partial_n: n \to (n-1)$. The composite of morphisms is defined by requiring $\partial_{n-1} \partial_n$ to be null. Take any abelian category $A$. A normalized covariant functor $T: C \to A$ is then given by $\cdots \leftarrow T_{n-1} \leftarrow T_n \leftarrow \cdots$, a sequence of objects and morphisms of $A$, with $\partial_{n-1} \partial_n = 0$, so is just a chain complex of objects from $A$ (in brief, an $A$-complex). A natural transformation $f: T \to S$ is a chain transformation. Therefore $\text{Dgram}_N(C, A)$ is the category of all $A$-complexes; by Prop. 3.1 it is an abelian category. If $A$ is selective, the homology objects $H_n(T) = \text{Ker} \partial_n / \text{Im} \partial_{n+1}$ may be defined as usual; the reader should show that each $f: T \to S$ induces $f_*: H_n(T) \to H_n(S)$, so that $H_n$ is a covariant functor on this category, and that homotopies have the usual properties.

**Exercises**

1. If $A$ is abelian, show that the category of graded objects of $A$ is abelian.
2. Describe an abelian category whose objects include the analyses (2.1).
3. Show that the category of positive complexes of objects from an abelian category $A$ is abelian.

4. (Mac Lane [1950]) In a category $C$ with null, assume that to each pair of objects $A$, $A_2$ there is a diagram $A_1 \leftarrow B \leftarrow A_2$ in which the two morphisms with range $B$ are universal and the two with domain $B$ couniversal. In each $\text{hom}(A, C)$ introduce a binary operation of addition as in Ex. 1.3 and show this addition commutative, associative, and distributive.

5. In Ex. 4, assume also that there is a natural transformation $V_A: A \to A$ with $V_A(V_A \oplus 1_A) A_A = 0$ for all $A$. Use $V$ to define $-a$ for each morphism $a$, and prove that $C$ becomes an additive category.
Chapter IX. Relative Homological Algebra

4. Comparison of Allowable Resolutions

If \( A \) is an algebra over a fixed commutative ground ring \( K \), many concepts are appropriately taken "relative to \( K \)". Each left \( A \)-module \( A \) is also a \( K \)-module and each \( A \)-module homomorphism \( \alpha: A \to B \) is also a homomorphism of \( K \)-modules, but not conversely. Call such a homomorphism \( \alpha \) "allowable" relative to \((A, K)\) if there is a \( K \)-module homomorphism \( t: B \to A \) (backwards!) with \( \alpha t = \alpha \). In particular, a monomorphism \( \alpha \) is allowable if there is a \( t \) with \( t \alpha = 1_A \); that is, if \( \alpha \) has a left inverse \( t \) which is a \( K \)-module homomorphism but not necessarily a homomorphism of \( A \)-modules. Similarly, a \( A \)-module epimorphism \( \sigma \) is allowable if and only if it has a \( K \)-module right inverse \( t \). Hence a short exact sequence \( x \parallel \sigma \) of \( A \)-module homomorphisms is allowable if \( x \) has a left \( K \)-inverse and \( \sigma \) has a right \( K \)-inverse. These properties state that the sequence \((x, \sigma)\) becomes a direct sum sequence when regarded just as a sequence of \( K \)-modules. More briefly, the sequence of \( A \)-modules is \( K \)-split (for some authors, weakly split). The use of such a class of "\( K \)-split" or "allowable" short exact sequences is typical of relative homological algebra. We shall now show how the comparison theorem for resolutions applies to any such situation.

In any abelian category \( \mathcal{A} \), a class \( \mathcal{E} \) of short exact sequences of \( \mathcal{A} \) will be called allowable if \( \mathcal{E} \) contains, with any one short exact sequence \((x, \sigma)\), all isomorphic short exact sequences of \( \mathcal{A} \) and if also \( \mathcal{E} \) contains for each \( A \) the short exact sequences \((0, 1_A)\) and \((1_A, 0)\). Write \( x \parallel \sigma \) if \((x, \sigma)\) is one of the short exact sequences of \( \mathcal{B} \) and call \((x, \sigma)\) &-allowable. Call a monic \( x \) of \( \mathcal{A} \) allowable and write \( x \in \mathcal{E}_m \) if \( x \parallel \mathcal{A} \) for some \( \mathcal{A} \); this is the case if and only if \( x \in \mathcal{E} (\text{coker} x) \). Dually, call an epic \( \sigma \) allowable and write \( \sigma \in \mathcal{E}_e \) if and only if \( (\text{ker} \sigma) \in \mathcal{E} \). Since \( x \parallel \mathcal{B} \) if and only if \( x \in \mathcal{E}_m \) and \( x \parallel \sigma \), the class \( \mathcal{E} \) is determined by the class \( \mathcal{E}_m \) of allowable monics, or by the class \( \mathcal{E}_e \) of allowable epics. Thus \( \mathcal{E}_e \) determines \( \mathcal{E}_m \); for \( x \in \mathcal{E}_m \) if and only if \( \text{coker} x \in \mathcal{E}_e \). If \( x \in \mathcal{E}_m \), any left or right equivalent of \( x \) is also in \( \mathcal{E}_m \).

From the properties of an analysis of \( \alpha \) we derive at once

**Proposition 4.1.** For a given allowable class \( \mathcal{E} \), the following conditions on a morphism \( \alpha \) are equivalent:

(i) \( \text{im} \alpha \in \mathcal{E}_m \) and \( \text{coim} \alpha \in \mathcal{E}_e \);
(ii) \( \text{ker} \alpha \in \mathcal{E}_m \) and \( \text{coker} \alpha \in \mathcal{E}_e \);
(iii) In a standard factorization \( \alpha = \lambda \sigma \), \( \lambda \in \mathcal{E}_m \) and \( \sigma \in \mathcal{E}_e \);
(iv) Each analysis of \( \alpha \) consists of allowable monics and epics.

The morphism \( a: A \to B \) is called allowable when it satisfies these conditions. If \( \alpha \) happens to be monic, then \( \text{coim} \alpha = 1_A \), so \( \alpha \) is allowable and monic if and only if \( a \in \mathcal{E}_m \). Likewise, the allowable morphisms which
are epic are the elements of $\mathcal{E}_e$. The composite of allowable morphisms need not be allowable.

For example, in the category of all left $A$-modules, the K-split short exact sequences form an allowable class, and the corresponding allowable morphisms can be shown to be those $\alpha$ with $\alpha t \alpha = \alpha$ for some $t$, as above. Additional properties which hold in this case will be studied in Chap. XII.

Let $\mathcal{E}$ be any allowable class in $\mathcal{A}$. An $\&'$-projective object $P$ (or, an allowable projective object) is any object $P$ of $\mathcal{A}$ such that, for every allowable epic $\sigma : B \to C$, each morphism $y : P + C$ of $\mathcal{A}$ can be factored through $\sigma$ as $y = a \ y'$ for some $y' : P \to B$. As before, this condition can be formulated in several equivalent ways:

**Proposition 4.2.** For a given allowable class $\mathcal{E}$ of short exact sequences the following conditions on an object $P$ are equivalent:

(i) $P$ is an allowable projective;

(ii) Each $\sigma : B \to C$ in $\mathcal{E}_e$ induces an epimorphism $\text{hom}(P, B) \to \text{hom}(P, C)$;

(iii) For each allowable short exact sequence $A \to B \to C$ the induced sequence $\text{hom}(P, A) \to \text{hom}(P, B) \to \text{hom}(P, C)$ of abelian groups is short exact.

We say that there are enough allowable projectives if to each object $C$ of $\mathcal{A}$ there is at least one morphism $\rho : P + C$ which is an allowable epic with an allowable projective domain $P$. The dual notion is that there are enough allowable injectives.

Any long exact sequence in an abelian category can be written as a Yoneda composite of short exact sequences; we call the long exact sequence allowable if and only if each of these short exact sequences is allowable.

Consider a complex $\cdots \to X_n \to \cdots \to X_1 \to X_0 \to C \to 0$ over an object $C$ of $\mathcal{A}$. Call it an allowable resolution if it is an allowable long exact sequence, and an allowable projective complex over $C$ if each $X_n$ is an allowable projective. If both conditions hold, it is an allowable projective resolution of $C$.

**Theorem 4.3.** (Comparison Theorem.) Let $\mathcal{E}$ be an allowable class of short exact sequences in the abelian category $\mathcal{A}$. If $y : C \to C'$ is a morphism of $\mathcal{A}$, $e : X + C$ an allowable projective complex over $C$ and $e' : X' \to C'$ an allowable resolution of $C'$, then there is a chain transformation $f : X \to X'$ of morphisms of $\mathcal{A}$ with $e' f = ye$. Any two such chain transformations are chain homotopic.

The proof is substantially a repetition of the previous argument for the case of modules (Thm. III.6.1). Since $X_0$ is an allowable projective
and \( e': X_0' \to C' \) an allowable epic, ye: \( X_0 \to C \) factors as \( e'f_0 \) for some \( f_0 \).

We next wish to construct \( f_1 \) so that the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{c}
X_1 \xrightarrow{\partial} X_0 \xrightarrow{e} C \\
\downarrow f_0 \quad \downarrow \gamma \\
X_1' \xrightarrow{\partial'} X_0' \xrightarrow{e'} C' \to 0
\end{array}
\]

will be commutative. Take a standard factorization \( \partial' = \lambda a \) as displayed; since \( X' \) is allowable, \( \lambda b' \). But \( e'f_0 \partial = \gamma e \partial = 0 \), so \( f_0 \partial \) factors through \( \lambda \in \ker e' \) as \( f_0 \partial = \lambda \beta \) for some \( \beta \). Now \( a \) is an allowable epic and \( X_1 \) an allowable projective, so \( \beta = \sigma f_1 \) for some \( f_1 \), and \( \partial'f_1 = \lambda \sigma f_1 = \lambda \beta = f_0 \partial \), as desired. The construction of \( f_2, f_3, \ldots \) and of the homotopy is similar.

**Note on injective envelopes.** A family \( \{a_i\} \) of subobjects of \( A \) is directed by inclusion if each pair of subobjects \( a_i, a_j \) of the family is contained in a third subobject of the family (in the obvious sense of "contained, as defined in Chap. XII below). An abelian category \( \mathcal{A} \) satisfies GROTHENDIECK's axiom \( AB-5 \) if for each \( A, \) each subobject \( b, \) and each family \( a_i \) directed by inclusion, \( b \cap (\bigcup_i a_i) = \bigcup_i (b \cap a_i) \) holds in the lattice of subobjects of \( \mathcal{A} \) and if \( d \) has infinite direct sums. An object \( U \) is a *generator* of \( \mathcal{A} \) if to each non-zero morphism \( a: A \to B \) there is a morphism \( \xi: U \to A \) with \( \alpha \xi \neq 0 \). Both conditions hold in the category of all \( A \)-modules, with \( A \) a generator. GROTHENDIECK [1957, Thm. 1.10.1] shows that an abelian category with \( AB-5 \) and a generator has enough injectives; MITCHELL [1962] constructs the ECKMANN-SCHOEPF injective envelope under these hypotheses. In particular this shows that there are enough injectives in the category of sheaves over a fixed topological space (though in this case there are not enough projectives): See GROTHENDIECK [1957], GODEMENT [1958].

**Exercise**

1. (Characterization of allowable short exact sequences by allowable projectives [Heller 1958].) If \( \mathcal{E} \) is an allowable class of short exact sequences satisfying the condition \( a \beta \in \mathcal{E} \Rightarrow a \in \mathcal{E}, \) and if there are enough allowable projectives, show that an epic \( a: B \to C \) is allowable if and only if \( \text{hom}(P, B) \to \text{hom}(P, C) \) is an epimorphism for all allowable projectives \( P \).

## 5. Relative Abelian Categories

Let \( S \) be a subring of \( R \) with the same identity as \( R \). Some short exact sequences of \( R \)-modules will split when regarded as sequences of \( S \)-modules. Each \( R \)-module \( A \) is also an \( S \)-module \( \mathcal{A}, \) by pull-back along the injection \( \iota: S \to R, \) and a function which is an \( R \)-module homomorphism \( a: A \to B \) is also an \( S \)-module homomorphism \( \mathcal{A}, a: \mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{B}. \) Thus \( \mathcal{A}(A) = \mathcal{A}, \mathcal{A}(a) = a \) is a functor \( \mathcal{A} \) on the category \( \mathcal{E} \) of all left \( R \)-modules to the category \( \mathcal{M} \) of all left \( S \)-modules; it "forgets" or "neglects" part of the structure of an \( R \)-module. We have in mind many other examples, such as modules over an algebra \( A \) and modules over the ground ring \( K, \) as explained in the introduction of \( \S 4. \) In each
example there will be a similar functor \( \square \). Let us state the appropriate general properties of such a functor.

A relative abelian category \( \square \) will mean a pair of selective abelian categories \( \mathcal{A} \) and \( \mathcal{M} \) together with a covariant functor \( \square : \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{M} \) (write \( \square A = A_\square \), \( \square a = a_\square \)) which is additive, exact, and faithful.

Additive means that \( a, b \in \text{hom}_\mathcal{A}(A, B) \) implies \( (a + b)_\square = a_\square + b_\square \) in \( \text{hom}_\mathcal{M}(A_\square, B_\square) \). It follows that \( 0_\square = 0 \) and that \( (A \oplus B)_\square \cong A_\square \oplus B_\square \).

Exact means that \( a, b \in \mathcal{A} \) implies \( a_\square \text{ is } a \text{ monic in } \mathcal{M} \) and \( b_\square \text{ is } a \text{ epic in } \mathcal{M} \). It follows that \( x_\square \text{ is monic and } \sigma \text{ epic in } \mathcal{A} \Rightarrow x_\square \text{ is monic and } \sigma_\square \text{ is epic in } \mathcal{M} \), that \( \square \) carries each analysis (2.1) of \( a \) in \( \mathcal{A} \) into an analysis of \( a_\square \) and hence that \( x_\square \in \ker \beta \) implies \( x_\square \in \ker \beta_\square \), and similarly for \( \text{coker, im, and coim} \).

Moreover, \( \square \) carries exact sequences into exact sequences.

Faithful means that \( a, = 0 \) implies \( a = 0 \). It follows that \( A_\square = 0 \) implies \( A = 0 \), but \( A_\square = B_\square \) need not imply \( A = B \). However \( a_\square \text{ epic (or monic) in } \mathcal{M} \text{ implies } a \text{ epic (or monic, respectively) in } \mathcal{A} \).

Write objects of \( \mathcal{A} \) as \( A, B, C, \ldots \) and morphisms \( a : A \rightarrow B \) in Greek letters with solid arrows. Write objects of \( \mathcal{M} \) as \( L, M, N, \ldots \) and morphisms \( t : L \rightarrow M \) in lower case Latin letters with broken arrows.

A short exact sequence \( x \xrightarrow{\kappa} a \) in \( \mathcal{A} \) is said to be relatively \( \square \)-split (or, \( \square \)-split) if the exact sequence \( x_\square \xrightarrow{\kappa_\square} a_\square \) splits in \( \mathcal{M} \); that is, if \( \sigma_\square \text{ has a right inverse } k \) or (equivalently) \( x_\square \text{ has a left inverse } t \) in \( \mathcal{M} \). This gives two diagrams

\[
\begin{align*}
A & \xrightarrow{\kappa_\square} B & \Rightarrow & C, \\
A & \xrightarrow{k_\square} B & \Leftarrow & C
\end{align*}
\]

the first an exact sequence in \( \mathcal{A} \), the second a direct sum diagram in \( \mathcal{A} \). For simplicity, we often replace these by a single schematic diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
A & \xrightarrow{\kappa_\square} & B & \xrightarrow{k_\square} & C \\
& & & & \\
& & & & \\
\end{array}
\]

(solid arrows for the \( \mathcal{A} \) part, solid and broken arrows for \( \mathcal{M} \)). Similarly the equations

\[
t \kappa_\square = 1_{A_\square}, \quad \sigma \kappa = 0, \quad \kappa_\square t + k \sigma_\square = 1_{B_\square}, \quad \ldots,
\]

valid in the direct sum diagram (5.1), will be written schematically as

\[
t \kappa = 1_A, \quad \sigma \kappa = 0, \quad \kappa t + k \sigma = 1_B, \quad \ldots,
\]

without the \( \square \), so that a composite \( t \kappa \) is short for \( t \kappa_\square \) in \( \mathcal{A} \).

The class of \( \square \)-split short exact sequences of \( \mathcal{A} \) is allowable in the sense of §4; the conditions of Prop. 4.1 then describe certain morphisms \( a \) of \( \mathcal{A} \) as allowable (say, \( \square \)-allowable). In detail,
Proposition 5.1. A morphism \(a : A \to B\) with standard factorization \(a = \lambda \sigma\) is \(\square\)-allowable in the relative abelian category \(\square \mathcal{F}\) if and only if it satisfies any one of the following equivalent conditions:

(i) \(\lambda\) has a left inverse and \(\sigma\) a right inverse in \(A\);
(ii) \((\text{im} a)\) and \((\text{ker} a)\) have left inverses in \(\mathcal{M}\);
(iii) There is a morphism \(u : B \to A\) in \(\mathcal{M}\) with \(\lambda u a = \sigma\);
(iv) There is a morphism \(v : B \to A\) in \(\mathcal{M}\) with both

\[
\lambda u v = \lambda, \quad v \alpha = v = v.
\]

Condition (ii) may be read: The image of \(a\) is an \(\mathcal{M}\)-direct summand of \(B\), and the kernel of \(a\) is an \(\mathcal{M}\)-direct summand of \(A\). — or dually.

Proof. The equivalence of (i), (ii), and the allowability of \(a\) is immediate, by Prop. 4.1. If \(t \lambda = 1\) and \(\sigma k = 1\), as in

\[
A \xrightarrow{\sigma} \lambda \xrightarrow{k} B, \quad \alpha = \lambda \sigma,
\]

then \(v = kt : B \to A\) has \(\alpha v = \lambda k \lambda = \lambda\sigma = \alpha\) and \(v \alpha v = k t \lambda \sigma = \lambda t = v\); this proves (i) \(\Rightarrow\) (iv). Trivially, (iv) \(\Rightarrow\) (iii). Finally, to get (iii) \(\Rightarrow\) (i), assume \(\alpha u \alpha = \alpha\) and set \(\alpha = \lambda \sigma\). Thus \(\lambda u \lambda \sigma = \lambda\sigma\) with \(\lambda\) monic (in \(A\!\)) and \(\sigma\) epic implies \(\sigma u = 1\), so \(\lambda\) has a left inverse \(\sigma u\) in \(\mathcal{M}\) and \(\sigma\) a right inverse \(u \lambda\).

If \(X\) is an \(\&\)-complex in the sense of §3 (\(X\), objects and \(\partial_n\) morphisms in \(\mathcal{A}\)) then \(\square X\) is an \(\mathcal{M}\)-complex; since \(\square\) is exact, it follows that \(\square [H_n(X)] \cong H_n(\square X)\).

Theorem 5.2. If \(X\) is an \(\&\)-complex (not necessarily positive) then \(\square X\) has a contracting homotopy \(s\) with \(as + s\partial = 1\) (and each \(s : X_n \to X_{n+1}\) a morphism of \(A\)) \(\mathcal{F}\) and only \(\mathcal{F}\) all \(H_n(X)\) vanish and all boundary homomorphisms \(\partial\) are allowable. When these conditions hold, \(s\) may be chosen so that \(s^2 = 0\).

Proof. Given \(s\), we know that all \(q H_n(X) \cong H_n(\square X) = 0\). But \(\square\) is faithful, so \(H_n(X) = 0\). Moreover, \(\partial = \partial s \partial + s \partial = \partial s \partial\), so each \(\partial\) is allowable by part (iii) of the preceding proposition.

Conversely, suppose the sequence \(\cdots \to X_{n+1} \to X_n \to X_{n-1} \to \cdots\) exact and all \(\partial\) allowable. Take a standard factorization \(\partial = \lambda \sigma\) for each \(\partial_n\). Then \(X\) factors into \(\square\)-split short exact sequences \(D_n \to X_n \to D_{n-1}\), and each \(X_n\) is an \(\mathcal{M}\)-direct sum via morphisms \(t = t_n, k = k_n\), as in the schematic diagram

\[
X_{n+1} \xrightarrow{k} D_n \xrightarrow{\lambda} X_n \xrightarrow{k} D_{n-1} \xrightarrow{\lambda} X_{n-1}
\]

with the usual direct sum identities

\(1_{X_n} = \lambda t + k \sigma, \quad t \lambda = 1, \quad \sigma k = 1, \quad tk = 0, \quad \sigma \lambda = 0\).
in \( M \). Now define each \( s_i : X_n \rightarrow X_{n+1} \) as \( s_n = kt \), so that \( s^2 = 0 \) and

\[
\partial s + s \partial = \lambda (\sigma k) t + k (t \lambda) \sigma = \lambda t + k \sigma = 1_{X_n}.
\]

Now a complex \( \xi : X \rightarrow C \) is allowable if both \( \xi : X_0 \rightarrow C \) and also each \( \xi : X_n \rightarrow X_{n-1} \) are allowable, and a resolution if \( \xi : H_0(X) \cong C \) and \( H_n(X) = 0 \) for \( n > 0 \).

**Corollary 5.3.** A complex \( \xi : X \rightarrow C \) in \( \mathcal{A} \) over \( C \) is a \( \square \)-allowable resolution of \( C \) if and only if the complex \( \xi : X_0 \rightarrow C_0 \) in \( \mathcal{A} \) over \( C_0 \) has a contracting homotopy. When this is the case, there is such a homotopy \( s \) with \( s^2 = 0 \).

As usual, \( s \) consists of morphisms \( s_{-1} : C \rightarrow X_0 \), \( s_i : X_n \rightarrow X_{n+1} \) in \( M \) with

\[
\varepsilon s_{-1} = 1_C, \quad \partial s_0 + s_{-1} \varepsilon = 1_{X_0}, \quad \partial s + s \partial = 1_{X_n}, \quad n > 0.
\]

The condition \( s^2 = 0 \) means \( s_n s_{n-1} = 0 \) for all \( n = 0, 1, \ldots \). The proof is immediate.

A \( \square \)-allowable projective object \( P \) in \( \mathcal{A} \) will also be called a relative projective object for \( \square \).

Any projective object \( P \) in \( \mathcal{A} \) is a fortiori relatively projective, but this does not show that there are enough relative projectives: If we write an object as the image \( P \ightarrow A \) of a projective, we do not know \( P \ightarrow A \) to be an allowable epic.

**Exercises**

(The first three exercises deal with the absolute case \( \mathcal{A} = M \).)

1. A complex \( X \) in an abelian category \( \mathcal{A} \) has a contracting homotopy \( s \) if and only if (im \( \partial_{n+1} \), coin \( \partial_n \)) : \( \bullet \rightarrow X_n \rightarrow \bullet \) is a direct sum representation of each \( X_n \). When these conditions hold, there is an \( s \) with \( s^2 = 0 \).

2. A complex \( X \) of modules has a contracting homotopy if and only if, for each \( n \), the module of \( n \)-cycles is a direct summand of \( X_n \).

3. A (not necessarily positive) complex \( X \) of free abelian groups has homomorphisms \( s : X_n \rightarrow X_{n+1} \) with \( as + s \partial = 1 \) if and only if all \( H_n(X) \) vanish.

4. Deduce Thm. 5.2 from the result of Ex. 1.

6. **Relative Resolutions**

To construct enough relative projectives, we further specialize our relative abelian categories. By a resolvent pair \( \mathcal{R} \) of categories we mean a relative abelian category \( \square : \mathcal{A} \rightarrow M \) together with

(i) A covariant functor \( F : M \rightarrow \mathcal{A} \).

(ii) A natural transformation \( \varepsilon : I_M \rightarrow \square F \), for \( I_M \), the identity functor, such that every morphism \( u : M \rightarrow A_\square \) in \( M \) has a factorization \( u = a_\square \varepsilon_M \) for a unique morphism \( a : F(M) \rightarrow A \) of \( \mathcal{A} \).
Thus each $M$ determines $F M$ in $\mathcal{A}$ and a morphism $e_M^* : M \rightarrow \square FM$, and each $u$ lifts uniquely to $FM$, as in the schematic diagram

$$
\begin{array}{c}
FM \rightarrow A \\
\uparrow e_M^* \\
M \rightarrow \\
u \downarrow \\
\end{array}
$$

in other words, $FM$ is the "relatively free" object in $\mathcal{A}$ to the given object $M$ in $\mathcal{A}$. The lifting property states that $e^* u = u e$ defines a natural isomorphism

$$
e^* : \text{hom}_\mathcal{A}(FM, A) \cong \text{hom}_\mathcal{A}(M, \square A);
$$

this last property states that the functor $F : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$ is a left adjoint [KAN 1958] of the functor $\square : \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$ (see note below).

Conversely, the conditions (i) and (ii) for a resolvent pair may be replaced by the requirement that the functor $\square$ has a left adjoint $F$. Indeed, this requirement means that there is a natural isomorphism

$$
\varphi : \text{hom}_\mathcal{A}(FM, A) \cong \text{hom}_\mathcal{A}(M, \square A)
$$

(of abelian groups). Take $A = FM$ in this isomorphism; then $I$ in the group on the left gives $\varphi(1_{FM}) = e_M^* : M \rightarrow \square FM$. That $e : I \rightarrow \square F$ is a natural transformation follows by taking any $\mu : M \rightarrow M'$ and applying $\varphi$ to the diagram

$$
\text{hom}_\mathcal{A}(FM, FM) \xrightarrow{\varphi} \text{hom}_\mathcal{A}(FM, FM') \xleftarrow{\varphi} \text{hom}_\mathcal{A}(FM', FM') .
$$

Next take any $A$ and any $a : FM \rightarrow A$. Since $\varphi$ is natural, the diagram

$$
\text{hom}_\mathcal{A}(FM, FM) \xrightarrow{\varphi} \text{hom}_\mathcal{A}(M, \square FM) \\
\downarrow \varphi_* \\
\text{hom}_\mathcal{A}(FM, A) \xrightarrow{\varphi} \text{hom}_\mathcal{A}(M, \square A) \\
\downarrow \varphi_*
$$

commutes. Take $I$ in the group at the upper left; it goes to $a$ below and to $e_M$ at the right, so commutativity gives $\varphi \alpha = \alpha e_M$. Since $\varphi$ is an isomorphism, this proves that each $u : M \rightarrow \square A$ in the group at the lower right has the form $u = \alpha e_M$ for a unique $\alpha$, as required in our previous condition (ii).

For example, two rings $R \supset S$ yield a resolvent pair, denoted $\mathcal{B}(R, S)$ or just $(R, S)$, with $\mathcal{A}$ and $\mathcal{A}$ the categories of $R$- and $S$-modules, respectively, $\square$ the usual "neglect" functor, and

$$
F(M) = R \otimes_S M, \quad e_M(m) = 1 \otimes m \in F(M).
$$

Again, for each $K$-algebra $A$ there is a resolvent pair with $\mathcal{A}$ the left $A$-modules, $\mathcal{M}$ the $K$-modules, $F(M) = A \otimes_K M$ (Prop. VI.8.2). Other examples of resolvent pairs appear in Ex. 2 below.
Theorem 6.1. In a resolvent flair of categories, each $F(M)$ is relatively projective in $\mathcal{A}$. For each object $A$, the factorization $1_A = e_{A\Box}$ yields a $\Box$-allowable epimorphism $\alpha: F(A\Box) \to A$. Hence there are enough relative projectives.

The proof that $F(M)$ is relatively projective is the familiar argument (Lemma 1.5.4) that each free module is projective. Indeed, let $\gamma: F(M) \to C$ be a morphism and $\sigma: B \to C$ an allowable epic of $\mathcal{A}$, so that $\sigma\Box$ has a right inverse $k$. Form the schematic diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
M & \xrightarrow{e_M} & FM \\
\downarrow k & & \downarrow \gamma \\
B & \xrightarrow{\sigma} & C
\end{array}
$$

The composite $k\gamma e_M$ displayed factors uniquely through $FM$ as $k\gamma e_M = \beta e_M$ for some $\beta: FM \to B$ in $\mathcal{A}$. Hence $\sigma\beta e_M = \gamma e_M$; but $\gamma e_M$ factors uniquely through $e_{\Box}$, so $\beta = \gamma$; this states that $FM$ is relatively projective.

The usual comparison theorem maps a projective complex to a resolution. The comparison of a relatively free complex to an allowable resolution can be put in canonical form. A relatively free complex $e_X: X \to A$ over $A$ in $\mathcal{A}$ has each $X_n$ of the form $F(M_n)$ for some object $M_n$ of $\mathcal{M}$; we write $e_n$ for $e_{M_n}: M_n \to X_n$. An allowable resolution $e_Y: Y \to B$ has an $\mathcal{M}$-contracting homotopy $s$ with $s^0 = 0$, as in Cor. 5.3 (in particular, $s_{-1}: B \to Y_0$).

Theorem 6.2. Let $e_X: X \to A$ be a relatively free complex over $A$ in $\mathcal{A}$ and $e_Y: Y \to B$ an allowable resolution. Each morphism $a: A \to B$ in $\mathcal{A}$ lifts to a unique chain transformation $\varphi: X \to Y$ of $\mathcal{A}$-complexes such that each $\phi_n e_n: M_n \to Y_n$ factors through $s_{n-1}$. This $\varphi$ is determined by the recursive formulas

$$
\varphi_0 e_0 = s_{-1} a e_X e_0, \quad \varphi_{n+1} e_{n+1} = s_n \varphi_n \partial e_{n+1}.
$$

We call $\varphi$ the canonical comparison for the given representation $X_n = F(M_n)$ and the given homotopy $s$ in $Y$. In case $\mathcal{M}$ is a category of modules, the condition that each $\varphi_n e_n$ factors through $s_{n-1}$ can be written

$$
\varphi_0 e_0 M_0 \subset s_{-1} B, \quad \varphi_{n+1} e_{n+1} M_{n+1} \subset s_n Y_n. \tag{6.1}
$$

We write this more briefly as $\varphi e M \subset s Y$.

Proof. We construct $\varphi_n: X_n \to Y_n$ with $e_Y \varphi_0 = a e_X$, $\partial \varphi_{n+1} = \varphi_n \partial$ and show it unique, all by induction on $n$. If $\varphi_0 e_0$ factors through $s_{-1}$, then $s^0 = 0$ gives $s_0 \varphi_0 e_0 = 0$ and

$$
\varphi_0 e_0 = 1 \varphi_0 e_0 = (\partial s_0 + s_{-1} e_Y) \varphi_0 e_0 = s_{-1} e_Y \varphi_0 e_0 = s_{-1} a e_X e_0.
$$
By the lifting property, there is a unique such \( \varphi_0 \); this \( \varphi_0 \) does satisfy 
\[
\varepsilon Y \varphi_0 = \varepsilon X .
\]
Given \( \varphi_0, \ldots, \varphi_{n-1} \) unique, any \( \varphi_n \) which factors through 
\( s_{n-1} \) has \( s_n \varphi_n e_n = 0 \); hence 
\[
\varphi_n e_n = 1 \varphi_n e_n = (\partial s + s \partial) \varphi_n e_n = s \partial \varphi_n e_n = s \varphi_{n-1} \partial e_n .
\]
This uniquely determines \( \varphi_n \) so as to satisfy \( \partial \varphi_n = \varphi_{n-1} \partial \). The proof is complete.

Next, each object \( C \) of \( \mathcal{A} \) has a canonical \( \square \)-split resolution. Write \( \tilde{F} C \) for \( F C \in \mathcal{A} \), \( \tilde{F}^n \) for the n-fold iteration of \( \tilde{F} \), and construct the objects 
\[
\beta_n(C) = \beta_n(\mathcal{R}, C) = \tilde{F}^n \tilde{F} C, \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots
\]
of \( \mathcal{A} \). Define morphisms \( s \) between the corresponding objects 
\[
\square C \xrightarrow{s_0} \square \beta_0 C \xrightarrow{s_1} \square \beta_1 C \quad \ldots \quad \square \beta_n C \xrightarrow{s_n} \square \beta_{n+1} C, \ldots
\]
in \( \mathcal{M} \) as \( s_{-1} = \varepsilon(\square C) \) and \( s_n = \varepsilon(\square \beta_n C) \).

**Theorem 6.3.** There are unique morphisms 
\[
\varepsilon: \beta_0(\mathcal{R}) \rightarrow C, \quad \partial_n: \beta_n(\mathcal{R}) \rightarrow \beta_{n-1}(\mathcal{R}), \quad n = 1, 2, \ldots
\]
of \( \mathcal{A} \) which make \( \beta(\mathcal{R}, C) = \{ \beta_n(\mathcal{R}, C) \} \) a relatively free allowable resolution of \( C \) with \( s \) as contracting homotopy in \( \mathcal{M} \). This resolution, with its contracting homotopy, is a covariant functor of \( C \).

We do not claim \( s^2 = 0 \) — because it usually isn't so.

**Proof.** We wish to fill in the schematic diagram 
\[
C \xrightarrow{s_{-1}} \beta_0 C \xrightarrow{s_0} \beta_1 C \xrightarrow{s_1} \beta_2 C \xrightarrow{s_2} \ldots
\]
at the solid arrows (morphisms of \( \mathcal{A} \)) to get a contracting homotopy. By the properties of \( \varepsilon \), \( \varepsilon C \) factors uniquely as \( \varepsilon C = \varepsilon e C \); this gives \( \varepsilon \) uniquely and shows \( \varepsilon \) allowable. The boundary operators are now defined by recursion so that \( s \) will be a contracting homotopy; given \( \varepsilon \), 
\( 1 - s_{-1} \varepsilon \) factors uniquely as \( \partial_1 s_0 = 1 - s_{-1} \varepsilon \) for some \( \partial_1: \beta_1 \rightarrow \beta_0 \), and similarly \( \partial_{n+1} s_n = 1 - s_{n-1} \alpha \). \( \beta \cdot \beta_n \) determines \( \partial_{n+1} \), given \( \alpha \). Using this equation,
\[
\partial_n \partial_{n+1} s_n = \partial_n - \partial_n s_{n-1} \partial_n = \partial_n - (1 - s_{n-2} \partial_{n-1}) \partial_n = s_{n-2} \partial_{n-1} \partial_n
\]
so, by induction and the uniqueness of the factorization, \( \varepsilon \partial = 0 \) and \( \partial^2 = 0 \). Moreover, \( \partial_{n+1} s_n \partial_{n+1} = \partial_{n+1} \), so \( \partial_{n+1} \) is allowable.

This resolution \( \beta(W, C) \) is clearly functorial; it is called the (unnormalized) bar resolution; for a concrete example, see § 8 below.
A "relative" ext bifunctor may now be defined by
\[
\text{Ext}_\mathcal{A}(C, A) = H^n(\text{hom}_\mathcal{A}(\beta(\mathcal{R}, C), A)).
\] (6.3)

The comparison theorem shows that we can equally well use any \(\square\)-split relatively projective resolution \(\varepsilon: X \to C\) to calculate \(\text{Ext}_\mathcal{A} = \text{Ext}_\square\) as
\[
\text{Ext}_\mathcal{A}(C, A) \cong H^n(\text{hom}_\mathcal{A}(X, A));
\] (6.4)

note that, in each dimension \(n\), \(\text{hom}_\mathcal{A}(X_n, A)\) stands for the group of all morphisms \(\xi: X_n \to A\) in \(\mathcal{A}\) — not just the allowable ones. In particular, \(\text{Ext}_\mathcal{A}(C, A) = \text{hom}_\mathcal{A}(C, A)\). Replacement of \(C\) by a short exact sequence \(E\) will give the usual long exact sequence for \(\text{Ext}^n\), as in Thm.III.9.1, provided \(E\) is \(\square\)-split. The analogous result holds if \(A\) is replaced by a \(\square\)-split short exact sequence; the proof uses either an exact sequence of resolutions (Ex.III.9.4) or the assumption that there are enough relative injectives. These long exact sequences are actually valid in any relative abelian category without the assumption that there are enough relative projectives or injectives. The proof, to be given in Chap.XII, depends on the interpretation of \(\text{Ext}_\mathcal{A}(C, A)\) as congruence classes of \(n\)-fold, \(\square\)-split exact sequences from \(A\) to \(C\). In particular, \(\text{Ext}_\square^1\), unlike \(\text{Ext}^0\), depends on \(\square\).

Note on Adjoints. If \(\mathcal{C}\) and \(\mathcal{A}\) are categories, a functor \(T: \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{A}\) is called a right adjoint of \(S: \mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{C}\) if there is a natural equivalence
\[
\text{hom}_\mathcal{A}(A, T(C)) \cong \text{hom}_\mathcal{C}(S(A), C);
\]
here both sides are bifunctors of \(A\) and \(C\) with values in the category of sets (or, if \(\mathcal{C}\) and \(\mathcal{A}\) are additive, in the category of abelian groups). For example, adjoint associativity
\[
\text{Hom}(A \otimes B, C) \cong \text{Hom}(A, \text{Hom}(B, C))
\]
states for fixed \(B\) that \(T(C) = \text{Hom}(B, C)\) is a right adjoint to \(S(A) = A \otimes B\). There are many other examples [KAN 1958].

Exercises

1. If the relative abelian category \(\mathcal{Q}\) is a resolvent pair of categories for two functors \(F\) and \(F'\), show that there is a unique natural isomorphism \(\eta: F \to F'\) with \(\eta e = e'\).

2. Construct resolvent pairs of categories in the following cases:
   (a) For graded rings \(R > S\); \(\mathcal{A}\) and \(\mathcal{M}\) as in the text.
   (b) For \(Q: R' \to R\) any ring homomorphism, \(\mathcal{A} = \text{left } R\text{-modules}, \mathcal{M} = \text{left } R'\text{-modules, } \square A =_Q A\) the \(R\)-module \(A\) pulled back along \(Q\) to be an \(R'\)-module.
   (c) For \(A, \Sigma\) both \(K\)-algebras, \(\mathcal{A} = A-Z\text{-bimodules, } \mathcal{M} = K\text{-modules.}\)

3. In case (b) of Ex.2 show that the allowable exact sequences and the relative Ext functor are identical with those for \(\mathcal{R} = (R, S)\) when \(S =_Q R'\).
Chapter IX. Relative Homological Algebra

7. The Categorical Bar Resolution

The (normalized) bar resolution $\varepsilon: B(Z(\Pi)) \rightarrow Z$ for a group ring $Z(\Pi)$, as presented in Chap. IV, provides a standard 2-split resolution of the trivial $17$-module $Z$. For each $17$-module $A$ the cohomology of $A$ is defined via the bar resolution as $H^n(\text{Hom}_B(B(Z(\Pi)), A))$. Hence

$$H^n(\Pi, A) \cong \text{Ext}^n_{Z(\Pi)}(Z, A) \cong \text{Ext}^n_{(Z[\Pi], Z)}(Z, A)$$

In other words, the cohomology of a group is an instance of both the absolute and relative functor $\text{Ext}$. The same (normalized) bar resolution will be used in the next chapter in many other cases. It may be defined in the context of any resolvent pair

$$\mathcal{R}: \square: \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}, \quad F: \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{A}, \quad e_M: M \rightarrow \square FM$$

of categories. To each object $M \in \mathcal{M}$, select $p_M \in \text{coker} e_M$ and $F(M) = \text{Coker } e_M$. Thus

$$M \overset{e_M}{\rightarrow} \square FM \overset{p_M}{\rightarrow} FM \rightarrow 0 \quad (7.1)$$

is exact in $\mathcal{A}, F: \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$ is a covariant functor, and $\overset{\square F \rightarrow \square}$ is a natural transformation. Apply $\square F$ to $FM$ to form the diagram

$$M \overset{e_M}{\rightarrow} \square FM \overset{p_M}{\rightarrow} FM \rightarrow 0 \quad \overset{\square F \rightarrow \square}{\square FF M} \quad (7.2)$$

the composite $s_M = e' \phi$ is a natural transformation $\square F \rightarrow \square FF$. Its characteristic property is

**Lemma 7.1.** The morphisms $e = e_M$ and $s = s_M$ induce for every object $A$ a left exact sequence of abelian groups,

$$0 \rightarrow \text{hom}_\mathcal{A}(\square FF M, A) \overset{e^*}{\rightarrow} \text{hom}_\mathcal{A}(\square FM, q A) \overset{s^*}{\rightarrow} \text{hom}_\mathcal{A}(M, \square A).$$

**Proof.** Each morphism $a: FF M \rightarrow A$ of $\mathcal{A}$ yields a: $\square FF M \rightarrow \square A$, and $s^* a$ is the composite $a: FM \rightarrow \square A$, a morphism in $\mathcal{A}$. Clearly $e^* s^* a = a \square s e = \alpha_\square 0 = 0$. If $0 = \alpha_\square s = \alpha_\square e' \phi$, with $\phi$ epic, then $\alpha_\square e' = 0$. But the factorization of $0$ through $e'$ is unique, so $\alpha = 0$. Next, if some $v: q FM \rightarrow q A$ has $e^* v = 0$, construct the commutative diagram

$$M \overset{e}{\rightarrow} \square FM \overset{p}{\rightarrow} FM \overset{e'}{\rightarrow} \square FF M$$

as follows. Since $v e = 0$, $v$ factors through $p = \text{coker } e_M$ as $v = u \phi$. By the definition of $e'$, $u$ in turn factors through $e'$ as $u = \alpha_\square e'$ for some $a$. All told, $v = \alpha_\square e' \phi = \alpha_\square s$, which gives the asserted exactness.
7. The Categorical Bar Resolution

Each object $C$ of $\mathcal{A}$ yields a sequence of objects $M_n = F^n \square C$ of $\mathcal{A}$. The bar resolution consists of the associated relatively free objects

$$B_n(C) = B_n(\mathcal{A}, C) = F^\infty \square C, \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots \quad (7.3)$$

of $\mathcal{A}$. Define morphisms $s$ between the corresponding "neglected" objects,

$$\Box C \rightarrow \Box B_0 C \rightarrow \Box B_1 C \rightarrow \Box B_2 C \rightarrow \ldots \quad (7.4)$$

of $\mathcal{A}$ by $s_{-1} = e(\square C)$ and

$$s_n = s(M_n) : \Box F M \rightarrow \Box F F M = \Box B_{n+1} C. \quad (7.5)$$

This construction at once gives $s^2 = 0$.

**Theorem 7.2.** There are unique morphisms

\[ \varepsilon : B_0(C) \rightarrow C, \quad \partial_n : B_n(C) \rightarrow B_{n-1}(C), \quad n = 1, 2, \ldots \]

of $\mathcal{A}$ which make $B(\mathcal{A}, C) = \{B_n(W, C)\}$ an $\mathcal{A}$-complex and a relatively free allowable resolution of $C$ with $s$ as contracting homotopy of square zero in $\mathcal{A}$. This resolution, with its contracting homotopy, is a covariant functor of $C$.

**Proof.** We are required to fill in the schematic diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccccccc}
C & \xrightarrow{\varepsilon} & B_0 C & \xrightarrow{\partial_1} & B_1 C & \xrightarrow{\partial_2} & B_2 C & \xrightarrow{\partial_3} \\
\xrightarrow{s_{-1}} & & \xrightarrow{s_0} & & \xrightarrow{s_1} & & \xrightarrow{s_2} \\
\end{array}
\quad (7.6)
\]

at the solid arrows (morphisms of $\mathcal{A}$) so as to satisfy the conditions

$$\varepsilon s_{-1} = 1, \quad \partial_1 s_0 = 1 - s_{-1} \varepsilon, \quad \partial_n + 1 s_n = 1 - s_{n-1} \partial_n, \quad n > 0, \quad (7.7)$$

for a contracting homotopy. But $I : C \rightarrow C$ factors through $e_{\square C} = s_{-1}$ as $1 = e\varepsilon s_{-1}$; this gives $\varepsilon$. The morphisms $\partial_n$ are then constructed by recursion. Given $\partial_1, \ldots, \partial_n$ satisfying (7.7),

$$\left(1 - s_{n-1} \partial_n\right)s_{n-1} = s_{n-1} - s_{n-1} \left(1 - s_{n-2} \partial_{n-1}\right) = 0 + s_{n-1} s_{n-2} \partial_{n-1} = 0;$$

since $s_{n-1} = e\phi$ with $\phi$ epic, $\left(1 - s_{n-1} \partial_n\right)e = 0$. By Lemma 7.1, $1 - s_{n-1} \partial_n$ factors as $(1 - s_{n-1} \partial_n) = \alpha_n$ which gives $\partial_{n+1} = \alpha$ satisfying (7.7). These morphisms $\varepsilon, \partial_n$ are uniquely determined, again by Lemma 7.1. Moreover, (7.7) gives

$$\partial_n \partial_{n+1} s_n = \partial_n - \partial_n s_{n-1} \partial_n = \partial_n - \partial_n - s_{n-2} \partial_{n-1} \partial_n = -s_{n-2} \partial_{n-1} \partial_n,$$

so an induction using Lemma 7.1 shows $\varepsilon \partial_1 = 0$ and $\partial^2 = 0$. This shows $B(W, C)$ a complex over $C$ and completes the proof of the theorem.

We call $B(\mathcal{A}, C)$ the bar resolution of $C$. By the comparison theorem, it is chain equivalent to our previous "unnormalized" bar resolution $\beta(\mathcal{A}, C)$ (see Ex.3).
To show that this description of the bar resolution agrees with the previous usage for a group $\mathcal{G}$, take $\mathcal{A}$ to be the category of left $\mathcal{G}$-modules, $\mathcal{M}$ that of abelian groups, $F(M) = Z(\mathcal{G}) \otimes M$, and $e_M(m) = 1 \otimes m$ for each $m \in M$. This gives a resolvent pair of categories. Now the sequence $\mathcal{Z} \to \mathcal{Z}(\mathcal{G}) \to \mathcal{Z}(\mathcal{G})/\mathcal{Z}$ of free abelian groups is exact, hence so is its tensor product with $M$:

$$0 \to M = \mathcal{Z} \otimes M \to F(M) = \mathcal{Z}(\mathcal{G}) \otimes M \to [\mathcal{Z}(\mathcal{G})/\mathcal{Z}] \otimes M \to 0.$$ 

Therefore $F(M) \cong [\mathcal{Z}(\mathcal{G})/\mathcal{Z}] \otimes M$. Take for $C$ the trivial $17$-module $\mathcal{Z}$. Then

$$F^n(\mathcal{Z}) = [\mathcal{Z}(\mathcal{G})/\mathcal{Z}] \otimes \cdots \otimes [\mathcal{Z}(\mathcal{G})/\mathcal{Z}], \quad n \text{ factors.}$$

But $\mathcal{Z}(\mathcal{G})/\mathcal{Z}$ is the free abelian group with generators all $x \neq 1$ in $\mathcal{G}$. Hence $F^n(\mathcal{Z})$ may be identified with the free abelian group generated by all symbols $[x_1] \cdots [x_n]$, with no $x_i$ in $\mathcal{G}$ equal to $1$. Then $B_n(W, \mathcal{Z}) = \mathcal{Z}(17) \otimes F^n(\mathcal{Z})$ is the free abelian group with generators all $x[x_1] \cdots [x_n]$ with $x \in \mathcal{G}$, while the map $s = e\varphi : B_n \to B_{n+1}$ defined above becomes

$$s(x[x_1] \cdots [x_n]) = [x] x_1 \cdots [x_n],$$

zero when $x = 1$. This is exactly the contracting homotopy $s$ used for the bar resolution $B(\mathcal{Z}(\mathcal{G}))$ in (IV.5.2). The boundary operators are uniquely determined by $s$ (in Chap. IV as here), so must agree. In short, we have proved that in this resolvent pair of categories

$$B(\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{Z}) = B(\mathcal{Z}(\mathcal{G})).$$

The next chapter will develop explicit formulas in other cases.

**Exercises**

1. Show that the long sequence (7.4) is exact in $\mathcal{M}$.

2. Show that the canonical comparison $\beta(\mathcal{O} \mathcal{C}) \to B(\mathcal{O} \mathcal{C})$ is epic.

3. For the case of groups, show that $\beta$ gives the unnormalized bar resolution. The following three exercises consider the relative ext functor for the rings $\mathcal{Z}(\mathcal{G})$ and $\mathcal{Z}$.

4. For left $\mathcal{G}$-modules $A$, $B$, and $C$, make $B \otimes \mathcal{Z}C$ and $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{Z}}(C, A)$ left $\mathcal{G}$-modules with operators $x(b \otimes c) = xb \otimes xc$ and $(xa)c = x[a(x^{-1}c)]$, $\alpha : C + A$, respectively, and establish a natural isomorphism,

$$\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{G}}(B, \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{Z}}(C, A)) \cong \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{G}}(B \otimes \mathcal{Z}C, A).$$

5. If $A$ is relatively injective or $C$ relatively projective, show that $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{Z}}(C, A)$, with operators as in Ex. 4, is relatively injective.

6. Using axioms for the relative ext functor, establish a natural isomorphism

$$\mathcal{E}xt^2_{\mathcal{Z}(\mathcal{G}), \mathcal{Z}}(C, A) \cong \mathcal{E}xt^2_{\mathcal{Z}(\mathcal{G}), \mathcal{Z}}(\mathcal{Z}, \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{Z}}(C, A)).$$

With this result the following exercises, suggested to me by J. Schmid, will yield the cup product reduction theorem as stated in VIII.9 (cf. Schmid [1963]).
7. From a presentation \( \Pi = F|R \) with \( F \) a free group obtain a group extension \( E: R_0 \rightarrow B' \rightarrow \Pi \), where \( [R, R] \) is the commutator subgroup of \( R \), \( R_0 = R/[R, R] \) and \( B' = F/[R, R] \).

8. The characteristic class \( \chi \) of the group extension \( E \), described as in IV.6, is a two-fold 2-split extension of \( R_0 \) by \( Z \). Show that the intermediate module \( M \) in \( \chi \) is free; specifically, let \( F \) be the free group on generators \( g' \) and show that \( g' \rightarrow [\text{cls} g] \in M \) is an isomorphism \( S \cong M \). (Hint: Use Lemma IV.7.2 to construct an inverse.)

9. Let \( A \) be a \( IT \)-module. Show that the iterated connecting homomorphism for \( \chi \) yields an isomorphism \( \text{Ext}^n(R_0, A) \cong \text{Ext}^n + 2(Z, A) \) for the relative ext functor and \( n > 0 \) and hence, by Ex.6, isomorphisms

\[
\begin{align*}
H^{n+2}(\Pi, A) &\cong H^n(\Pi, \text{Hom}_Z(R_0, A)), \quad n > 0, \\
H^0(\Pi, A) &\cong \text{Coker}[\text{Hom}_\Pi(M, A) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_\Pi(R_0, A)].
\end{align*}
\]

10. For \( n > 0 \) and \( G \) a right \( IT \)-module obtain the "dual" reduction theorem

\[
H_{n+2}(\Pi, G) \cong H_n(\Pi, G \otimes Z R_0).
\]

8. Relative Torsion Products

Let \( S \) be a subring of the ring \( R \), with the same identity. This gives a resolvent pair \( \mathcal{R} = (R, S) \) of categories, with \( \mathcal{A} \) the left \( R \)-modules, \( \mathcal{M} \) the left \( S \)-modules, \( \square(A) \) the functor which remembers only the \( S \)-module structure, \( F(M) = R \otimes_S M \), and \( e(m) = 1 \otimes m \). A \( \square \)-split short exact sequence is thus an exact sequence of \( R \)-modules which splits when regarded as a sequence of \( S \)-modules; call such a sequence \( S \)-split. Label the corresponding allowable homomorphisms \((R, S)\)-allowable, and the relative projectives \((R, S)\)-projectives.

Define a complex \( \beta(R) \) of \( R \)-modules over \( R \),

\[
R \leftarrow \beta_0(R) \leftarrow \beta_1(R) \leftarrow \beta_2(R) \leftarrow \ldots
\]

by \( \beta_n(R) = R \otimes R^n \otimes R = R^{n+2} \), with \( n + 2 \) factors, \( e(r_0 \otimes r_1) = r_0 r_1 \), \( \otimes \) short for \( \otimes_S \), and

\[
\partial(r_0 \otimes \cdots \otimes r_{n+1}) = \sum_{i=0}^{n} (-1)^i r_0 \otimes \cdots \otimes \hat{r}_i \otimes \cdots \otimes r_{n+1}. \quad (8.1)
\]

**Theorem 8.1.** For \( R > S \), \( \varepsilon: \beta(R) \rightarrow R \) is a complex of \( R \)-bimodules over \( R \) with a contracting homotopy \( s: R^{n+2} \rightarrow R^{n+3} \), defined for \( n \geq 1 \) by

\[
s(r_0 \otimes \cdots \otimes r_{n+1}) = 1 \otimes r_0 \otimes \cdots \otimes r_{n+1}, \quad (8.2)
\]

which is a homomorphism of left-\( S \), right-\( R \) bimodules.

**Proof.** First \( \varepsilon s r_0 = \varepsilon(1 \otimes r_0) = r_0 \), so \( \varepsilon s = 1 \). Let \( u = r_0 \otimes \cdots \otimes r_{n+1} \) with \( n \geq 0 \). The first term of \( \partial s u \) is \( u \); the remaining terms are \( -s \partial u \); hence as \( + s \partial = 1 \), as desired. From the definition it follows that \( \varepsilon \partial = 0 \), \( \partial \partial = 0 \). By symmetry there is also a contracting homotopy

\[
t(r_0 \otimes \cdots \otimes r_{n+1}) = r_0 \otimes \cdots \otimes r_{n+1} \otimes 1,
\]

which is an \( R-S \)-bimodule homomorphism.
Corollary 8.2 For each left $R$-module $C$, $\beta(R) \otimes_R C$ is the bar resolution $\beta(C)$ for the resolvent pair $(R, S)$. Symmetrically, for each right $R$-module $G$, $G \otimes_R \beta(R)$ with contracting homotopy $t$ is the (right) bar resolution $\beta(G)$.

Proof. Since $R \otimes_R C \cong C$, one forms $\beta(R) \otimes_R C$ simply by replacing the last argument $r_{n+1}$ in (8.1) and (8.2) above by $c \in C$. Then $\beta_n(R) \otimes_R C = F^n F(C)$, the contracting homotopy $s$ of (8.2) is that of (6.2), and $\partial$ is the unique boundary with $s$ as contracting homotopy, by Thm.6.3. In particular, $\beta(R)$ itself is just the bar resolution (left or right) of the $R$-module $R$.

Observe that the boundary operator (8.1) in $\beta(R)$ is the alternating sum of the face operators $d_i: \beta_n \to \beta_{n-1}$ defined by

$$d_i(r_0 \otimes \cdots \otimes r_{n+1}) = r_0 \otimes \cdots \otimes r_{i-1} \otimes r_i r_{i+1} \otimes r_{i+2} \otimes \cdots \otimes r_{n+1}, \quad (8.3)$$

$i = 0, \ldots, n$. The corresponding degeneracy operators $s_i: \beta_n \to \beta_{n+1}$ are

$$s_i(r_0 \otimes \cdots \otimes r_{n+1}) = r_0 \otimes \cdots \otimes r_i \otimes 1 \otimes r_{i+1} \otimes \cdots \otimes r_{n+1}, \quad (8.4)$$

the usual identities for $d_i$ and $s_j$ hold, and $\beta(R)$ is a simplicial $R$-bimodule in the sense of VIII.5. The reader may show that the simplicial normalization of $\beta(R)$ yields the normalized bar resolution $B(R)$.

Take $R$-modules $G_R$ and $C_R$. The (absolute) torsion products $\text{Tor}_R^n(G, C)$ are calculated from a projective resolution $\varepsilon: X + C$ as $H_n(G \otimes_R X)$. In the present relative case, $\beta(R) \otimes_R C$ provides a canonical and functorial resolution, so we define the $n$-th relative torsion product as:

$$\text{Tor}_{(R,S)}^n(G, C) = H_n(G \otimes_R \beta(R) \otimes_R C); \quad (8.5)$$

it is a covariant bifunctor of $G$ and $C$, and is manifestly symmetric in $G$ and $C$. Since $G \otimes_R R = G$ and $R \otimes_R C = C$, the group of $n$-chains of the complex $G \otimes_R \beta(R) \otimes_R C$ is $G \otimes_S R^n \otimes_S C$. The boundary formula is obtained from (8.1) by replacing $r_0$ by $g \in G$ and $r_{n+1}$ by $c \in C$; the complex may be viewed as a simplicial abelian group.

If $E: A \to B \to C$ is an $S$-split short exact sequence of left $R$-modules, its tensor product (over $S$) with $G \otimes_S R^n$ is still $S$-split, hence exact, and so is the sequence of complexes

$$G \otimes_R \beta(R) \otimes_R A \to G \otimes_R \beta(R) \otimes_R B \to G \otimes_R \beta(R) \otimes_R C.$$ The resulting connecting homomorphisms $E_n: \text{Tor}_{(R,S)}^n(G, C) \to \text{Tor}_{(R,S)}^{n-1}(G, A), \quad n > 0,$

are natural in $G$ and $E$, and yield the exactness of the corresponding long exact sequence

$$\cdots \to \text{Tor}_{(R,S)}^n(G, A) \to \text{Tor}_{(R,S)}^n(G, B) \to \text{Tor}_{(R,S)}^n(G, C) \to E_n \text{Tor}_{(R,S)}^{n-1}(G, A) \to \cdots \{ \quad (8.6)$$
just as for the absolute torsion product, except that here E must be S-split. If \( E' : G \rightarrow K \rightarrow L \) is an S-split short exact sequence of right \( R \)-modules, the same argument (interchanging left and right) gives natural connecting homomorphisms

\[
E_n : \text{Tor}^{(R,S)}_n(L, C) \rightarrow \text{Tor}^{(R,S)}_{n-1}(G, C), \quad n > 0,
\]

and the corresponding long exact sequence in the first argument.

**Theorem 8.3.** For rings \( R \succ S \) and modules \( G, R, C \), each \( \text{Tor}^{(R,S)}_n(G, C) \) is a covariant bifunctor of \( G \) and \( C \) with

\[
\text{Tor}^{(R,S)}_0(G, C) \cong G \otimes_R C, \quad \text{(natural),} \quad (8.7)
\]

\[
\text{Tor}^{(R,S)}_n(P', C) = 0 = \text{Tor}^{(R,S)}_n(G, P), \quad n > 0, \quad (8.8)
\]

when \( P' \) and \( P \) are \((R,S)\)-projective right and left modules, respectively. If \( E' \) and \( E \) are S-split short exact sequences of right and left \( R \)-modules, respectively, the corresponding connecting homomorphisms are natural and yield long exact sequences (8.6), and symmetrically.

In particular, this Theorem leads to a characterization of the relative torsion products as functors of the second argument, by properties (8.7), (8.8), and (8.6), just as in Thm.V.8.5; for this purpose we may replace "\((R,S)\)-projective" by "\((R,S)\)-free" in (8.8).

We need only prove (8.7) and (8.8). First \( \beta_1(R) \rightarrow \beta_0(R) \rightarrow R \rightarrow 0 \) is exact; since tensor products carry right exact sequences into right exact sequences, so is

\[
G \otimes_R \beta_1(R) \otimes_R C \rightarrow G \otimes_R \beta_0(R) \otimes_R C \rightarrow G \otimes_R R \otimes_R C \rightarrow 0.
\]

The last term is \( G \otimes_R C \); this gives (8.7). To prove (8.8), use

**Lemma 8.4.** For rings \( R \succ S \), if \( P \) is an \((R,S)\)-projective right \( R \)-module and \( E : A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C \) an S-split short exact sequence of left \( R \)-modules, then \( 0 \rightarrow P \otimes_R A \rightarrow P \otimes_R B \rightarrow P \otimes_R C \rightarrow 0 \) is an exact sequence of abelian groups.

**Proof.** Since there are enough relatively free right modules \( M \otimes_S \mathbb{R} \), each \( P \) is an S-split quotient and hence an \( R \)-direct summand of some \( M \otimes_S \mathbb{R} \). Hence it suffices to prove the Lemma with \( P = M \otimes_S \mathbb{R} \). Then \( P \otimes_R A = M \otimes_S R \otimes_R A = M \otimes_S A \), so the sequence in question is isomorphic to \( M \otimes_S A \rightarrow M \otimes_S B \rightarrow M \otimes_S C \), which S-splits because \( E \) does, and hence is exact.

Now we prove (8.8). The complex \( \beta(R) \otimes_R C \) over \( C \) has a left \( S \)-module contracting homotopy \( s \) as in (8.2). Hence, by the Lemma, \( P' \otimes_R (\beta(R) \otimes_R C) \) is exact over \( P' \otimes_R C \), so has homology zero in dimensions \( n > 0 \).

The relative torsion products can also be calculated from other resolutions.
Chapter IX. Relative Homological Algebra

**Theorem 8.5.** If $\varepsilon: Y+G$ is an $S$-split resolution of the right $R$-module $G$ by $(R, S)$-projective modules $Y_n$, there is a canonical isomorphism

$$\text{Tor}_n^{(R, S)}(G, C) \cong H_n(Y \otimes_R C), \quad (8.9)$$

natural in $C$. If $E$ is any $S$-split short exact sequence of left $R$-modules, the connecting homomorphisms $E_i$ of (8.6) are mapped by the isomorphism (8.9) into the homology connecting homomorphism of the exact sequence $Y \otimes_R A \to Y \otimes_R B \to Y \otimes_R C$ of complexes. Symmetrically, Tor, may be calculated from an $S$-split, $(R, S)$-projective resolution of $C$ by left $R$-modules.

**Proof.** The relative comparison theorem gives a right $R$-module chain transformation $\varphi: G \otimes_R \beta(R) \to Y$, unique up to homotopy, which induces the isomorphism (8.9). Since each $Y_n$ is $(R, S)$-projective, each $Y_n \otimes_R A \to Y_n \otimes_R B \to Y_n \otimes_R C$ is exact by Lemma 8.4. The chain transformation $\varphi$ maps the previous exact sequence of complexes onto this exact sequence; hence by naturality of the connecting homomorphism of a sequence of complexes, this yields the method stated for the calculation of the connecting homomorphisms $E_i$.

Since an $(R, S)$-projective $P'$ has the resolution $0 \to P' \to P' \to 0$, this gives an immediate proof of (8.8). We leave the reader to verify the other properties of the relative torsion product: Additivity in each argument, anti-commutation of $E$, with $E_i = -E_i$, as in Thm.V.7.7), and the additivity of $E$, in $E$.

The relative torsion product can be considered as a functor of the pair of rings $R> S$. More specifically, consider objects $(R, S; G, C, A)$ consisting of rings $R> S$ and modules $G, C, A$. A change of rings (+ in $G$ and $C$, − in $A$) is a quadruple $X=(Q, \xi, \alpha)$:

$$(8.10) \quad \chi=(\varrho, \zeta, \gamma, \alpha): (R, S; G, C, A) \to (R', S'; G', C', A')$$

where $\varrho: R \to R'$ is a ring homomorphism with $\varrho(S) \subseteq S'$, which are homomorphisms of $R$-modules (note that the direction of $\alpha$ is opposite that for $\gamma$). These objects and morphisms $\chi$, with composition $(\varrho, \xi, \gamma, \alpha)$ ($\varrho', \xi', \gamma', \alpha'=(\varrho \varrho', \xi \xi', \gamma \gamma', \alpha \alpha')$ constitute the change of rings category $\mathcal{R}^{++}$; omitting $A$ and $a$ gives a "covariant" change of rings category $\mathcal{R}^+$. Each $\chi$ induces

$$\zeta \otimes \varrho^* \otimes \gamma: G \otimes_R \beta_n(R) \otimes_R C \to G' \otimes_R \beta_n(R') \otimes_R C',\quad \zeta \otimes \varrho^* \otimes \gamma: G \otimes_R \beta_n(R) \otimes_R C \to G' \otimes_R \beta_n(R') \otimes_R C,'$$

a chain transformation, and hence, by the definition (8.5), a map

$$\chi_*: \text{Tor}_n^{(R, S)}(G, C) \to \text{Tor}_n^{(R', S')}(G', C')$$
which makes the relative torsion product $\text{Tor}$, a covariant functor on $\mathcal{R}^{++}$ to abelian groups. The homomorphism $\chi_\bullet$ can also be calculated from $S$-split relatively free resolutions $\epsilon: Y \rightarrow G$, $\epsilon': Y' \rightarrow G'$; indeed, by pull-back, $\epsilon': Y_0' \rightarrow G_0'$ is a map of complexes of $R$-modules with an $S$-module splitting homotopy, so the comparison theorem (relatively projective complexes to split resolutions) lifts $\zeta: G \rightarrow G'_0$ to a chain transformation $\varphi: Y \rightarrow Y'_0$. The induced map on homology composed with the pull-back map $Y_0' \otimes_{R_\epsilon} C' \rightarrow Y' \otimes_{R_\epsilon} C'$ gives $\chi_\bullet$ as the composite of

$$H_n(Y \otimes_R C) \xrightarrow{(\epsilon \otimes_R)_\bullet} H_n(Y_0' \otimes_{R_\epsilon} C') \rightarrow H_n(Y' \otimes_{R_\epsilon} C')$$

with the isomorphisms (8.9).

By analogy with $\text{Tor}^{(R,S)}$, we write $\text{Ext}^n_{(R,S)}$ for the corresponding relative ext functor. Thus by (6.3)

$$\text{Ext}^n_{(R,S)}(C, A) = \text{Ext}^n(\text{Hom}_R(\beta(R) \otimes_R C, A))$$

$$\cong \text{Ext}^n(\text{Hom}_{R-R}(\beta(R), \text{Hom}_Z(C, A))),$$

where the isomorphism on the right is by adjoint associativity, and $\text{Hom}$, $(C, A)$ is an $R$-bimodule. This $\text{Ext}$ is a contravariant functor on the change of rings category $\mathcal{R}^{+-}$ (omit $G$ and $\zeta$ in (8.10) above). When $R$ is fixed and $\varphi = 1$, this includes the usual description of $\text{Ext}^n_{(R,S)}(C, A)$ as a bifunctor, contravariant in $C$ and covariant in $A$.

### Exercises

*The first six of the following exercises are taken from Hochschild [1956].*

1. Every $(R, S)$-projective $P$ is an $R$-direct summand of some $R \otimes_S A$.

2. For each $S M$, $\text{Hom}_S(R, M)$ is $(R, S)$-relative injective.

3. Prove: There are enough $(R, S)$-relative injectives.

4. If $P$ is $(R, S)$-projective and $a: A \rightarrow B$ a homomorphism of $R$-modules with $\text{Hom}_S(P, A) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_S(P, B)$, then $\text{Hom}_R(P, A) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_R(P, B)$.

5. For $P$ as in Ex. 4 and a a map of right $R$-modules, $A \otimes_S P \rightarrow B \otimes_R P$ monic implies $A \otimes_R P \rightarrow B \otimes_R P$ monic.

6. For $(R, S)$-projective resolutions $X \rightarrow C$ and $Y \rightarrow G$ which are $S$-split, prove that $\text{Tor}^{(R,S)}_n(G, C) \cong H_n(Y \otimes_R X)$.

7. Give a description for elements of $\text{Tor}^{(R,S)}(G, A)$ analogous to the elements $(\mu, L, v)$ used in V.7.

8. Show by example that $\text{Ext}^1_{(R,S)} \neq \text{Ext}^1_R$.

9. Show that $\beta(R)$ is the (unnormalized) bar resolution for the resolvent pair $\mathcal{R}$ with $\mathcal{R} = R$-bimodules, $\mathcal{M} = S$-R-bimodules, $F(M) = R \otimes_S M$ and $e(m) = l \otimes m$.

10. For $\mathcal{R}$ as in Ex. 9, show that $\text{Ext}^n_{(R,S)}(C, A) \cong \text{Ext}^n_{\mathcal{R}}(R, \text{Hom}_Z(C, A))$ and $\text{Tor}^{(R,S)}_n(G, C) \cong \text{Tor}^\mathcal{R}_n(R, C \otimes Z G)$. Here $C \otimes Z G$ is the bimodule with $\gamma(c \otimes g) = \gamma(c) \otimes g$, $(c \otimes g) \gamma = c \otimes g \gamma$.
9. Direct Products of Rings

The direct product \( R = R' \times R'' \) of two rings is the ring with the additive group \( R' \oplus R'' \) and multiplication \((r_1', r_2'')(r_1''', r_2''') = (r_1' r_1'', r_2' r_2''').\) (This is just the direct product of \( R' \) and \( R'' \) as \( \mathbb{Z} \)-algebras, as in (VII,5.1)). Each left \( R' \)-module \( A' \) is an \( R \)-module by pull-back along the projection \( \pi_1: R' \times R'' \to R' \), and similarly for \( R'' \)-modules. In particular, \( R' \) and \( R'' \) are left \( R \)-modules, while the termwise definition of the product in \( R \) shows that \( R \cong R' \oplus R'' \) is an isomorphism of \( R \)-modules, and hence that \( R' \) and \( R'' \) are projective \( R \)-modules.

Lemma 9.1. If the \( R' \)-modules \( C' \) and \( G \) and the \( R'' \)-module \( A'' \) are regarded as \( R = R' \times R'' \) modules, then
\[
G' \otimes_R A'' = 0, \quad \text{Hom}_R(C', A'') = 0. \tag{9.1}
\]
Proof. Take the element \((1', 0) \in R\). Then
\[
g' \otimes a'' = g'(1', 0) \otimes a'' = g' \otimes (1', 0)a'' = g' \otimes 0 = 0.
\]
Similarly, if \( f: C' \to A'' \), then
\[
f(c') = f[(1', 0)c'] = (1', 0)f(c') = 0.
\]

The correspondence \( A \to A', R \to A'' \) as a covariant functor on \( R \)-modules to \( R' \)-modules which is exact: \( a \parallel \beta \) implies \( \alpha' \parallel \beta' \).

Proposition 9.2. Each left \( (R' \times R'') \)-module \( A \) has a representation \( A \cong (\pi_1 A') \oplus (\pi_2 A'') \) as a direct sum of two \( R \)-modules, the first obtained by pull-back from an \( R' \)-module \( A' \) and the second from an \( R'' \)-module \( A'' \).

These two \( R \)-modules \( A' \) and \( A'' \) are determined up to isomorphism as \( A' \cong R' \otimes_R A, A'' \cong R'' \otimes_R A \).

Given such decompositions for \( A \) and \( B \), each \( R \)-module homomorphism \( a: A \to B \) has a unique decomposition as \( a = a' \oplus a'' \), with \( a': A' \to B' \) and \( a'': A'' \to B'' \) respectively \( R' \) and \( R'' \)-module maps.

Proof. Using \( R \cong R' \oplus R'' \) we get the decomposition
\[
A = R \otimes_R A \cong (R' \otimes R') 
\]
If \( A = A' \oplus A'' \) is such a decomposition, (9.1) gives \( R' \otimes_R A = R' \otimes_R A' = R' \otimes_R A' \cong A' \) and \( a'' = 1_R \otimes a: R' \otimes_R A \to R' \otimes_R B \) and \( a'' = 1_R \otimes a \) have \( a \cong a' \oplus a'' \).

Corollary 9.3. For left \( R \)-modules \( A \) and \( C \) and a right \( R \)-module \( G \), each decomposed as in Prop. 9.2, there are natural isomorphisms
\[
\text{Hom}_R(C, A) \cong \text{Hom}_R(C', A') \oplus \text{Hom}_R(C'', A''), \tag{9.2}
\]
\[
G \otimes_R A \cong G' \otimes_R A' \oplus G'' \otimes_R A''. \tag{9.3}
\]
9. Direct Products of Rings

**Proof.** $\text{Hom}_R(C, A)$ is additive in $C$ and $A$, and $\text{Hom}_R(C', A')$ isomorphic to $\text{Hom}_{R'}(C', A')$, while $\text{Hom}_R(C, A'') = 0$ by (9.1).

Isomorphisms like (9.2) and (9.3) hold for the relative Ext and Tor functors. For example, if $S' \subset R'$ and $S'' \subset R''$ are subrings, then $S = S' \times S''$ is a subring of $R' \times R''$, with $\pi_1 S = S'$, $\pi_2 S = S''$. We treat the more general case of any subring of $R' \times R''$.

**Theorem 9.4.** If $S$ is a subring of $R' \times R''$, set $S' = \pi_1 S \subset R'$, $S'' = \pi_2 S \subset R''$. For left $R$-modules $A$ and $C$ and a right $R$-module $G$, each decomposed as in Prop. 9.2, there are natural isomorphisms

$$\text{Ext}_{(R,S)}^n(C, A) \cong \text{Ext}_{(R',S')}^n(C', A') \oplus \text{Ext}_{(R'',S'')}^n(C'', A''), \quad (9.4)$$

$$\text{Tor}_n^{(R,S)}(G, C) \cong \text{Tor}_n^{(R',S')}(G', C') \oplus \text{Tor}_n^{(R'',S'')}(G'', C''), \quad (9.5)$$

valid for all $n$. The same isomorphisms hold with $S$, $S'$, and $S''$ omitted.

**Proof.** First observe that an $(R', S')$-free module $R' \otimes_S M'$ is also $(R, S)$-projective (though not necessarily $(R, S)$-free). For, the left $S'$-module $M'$ is a left $S$-module by pull-back, and, using the pull-back lemma,

$$R \otimes_S M' \cong R' \otimes_S M' \oplus R'' \otimes_S M' \cong R' \otimes_S M' \oplus R'' \otimes_S M'.$$

Since $R \otimes_S M'$ is $(R, S)$-projective, so is its $R$-direct summand $R' \otimes_S M'$.

Now choose relatively freesplit resolutions $\varepsilon': X' \to C'$ and $\varepsilon'': X'' \to C''$ of the components of $C$. Then $\varepsilon' \oplus \varepsilon'': X' \oplus X'' \to C' \oplus C''$ is a resolution of the $R$-module $C' \oplus C''$ which is $S$-split by the direct sum of the $S'$ and $S''$ contracting homotopies for $X'$ and $X$. By the first observation, each term $X'_n \oplus X''_n$ is an $(R, S)$-projective. By (9.2) and (9.3) for $X = X' \oplus X''$,

$$\text{Hom}_R(X, A) \cong \text{Hom}_{R'}(X', A') \oplus \text{Hom}_{R''}(X'', A''),$$

$$G \otimes_R X \cong G' \otimes_{R'} X' \oplus G'' \otimes_{R''} X''.$$ 

Taking cohomology and homology groups gives the desired isomorphisms (9.4) and (9.5).

In the isomorphism (9.5), each projection $\text{Tor}_n(G, C) \to \text{Tor}_n(G', C')$ can be described as the map $\chi^*$ induced by that change of rings $\chi: (R, S; G, C) \to (R', S'; G', C')$ which is obtained by the projections $R = R' \times R'' \to R'$, $G = G' \oplus G'' \to G'$, etc. In fact, to calculate $\chi^*$ one lifts $C \to C'$ to a chain transformation $\varphi: X \to X'$; such a $\varphi$ is the projection $X = X' \oplus X'' \to X'$ used in deducing (9.5).

The proof for the same results with $S$ omitted is easier; when $X'_n$ is a free $R'$-module, it is a direct summand of copies of $R$, hence is $R$-projective.

This theorem will be applied in the next chapter to algebras (§ 6).
Chapter X. Cohomology of Algebraic Systems

Chapter ten

Cohomology of Algebraic Systems

1. Introduction

The homology of algebraic systems is an instance of relative homological algebra.

For a group \( \Pi \), use exact sequences of 17-modules which split as sequences of abelian groups. The cohomology of 17 for coefficients in a module \( \Pi A \) is then (cf. IX.7)

\[
H^n(\Pi, A) = \text{Ext}^n_{\mathbb{Z}(\Pi)}(Z, A) \cong \text{Ext}^n_{\mathbb{Z}(\Pi), Z}(Z, A).
\]

(1.1)

Correspondingly, the homology of \( \Pi \) for coefficients \( \mathbb{G}_n \) will be defined as

\[
H_n(\Pi, G) = \text{Tor}^n_{\mathbb{Z}(\Pi)}(G, Z) \cong \text{Tor}^n_{\mathbb{Z}(\Pi), Z}(G, Z).
\]

(1.2)

For a \( K \)-algebra \( A \), use exact sequences of \( A \)-bimodules which split as sequences of right \( A \)-modules, or those which split just as sequences of \( K \)-modules. For a \( A \)-bimodule \( A \), the cohomology and homology of \( A \) will be

\[
H^n(A, A) = \text{Ext}^n_{(A, K, A)}(A, A) \cong \text{Ext}^n_{(A, K, A)}(A, A);
\]

(1.3)

\[
H_n(A, A) = \text{Tor}^n_{(A, K, A)}(A, A) \cong \text{Tor}^n_{(A, K, A)}(A, A).
\]

(1.4)

These equivalent descriptions are presented in terms of the bar resolution for algebras, which is given explicitly in \( \S 2 \) — it is a special case of the bar resolution (IX.7) for a resolvent pair of categories. This chapter examines the properties of \( H_n \) and \( H^n \) and develops similar (co)-homology for graded and for differential graded algebras, as well as for monoids and for abelian groups.

2. The Bar Resolution for Algebras

Let \( A \) be an algebra over \( K \). The identity element \( 1_A \) gives a \( K \)-module map \( 1: K \to A \); its cokernel \( A/I(K) = A/(K I_A) \) will be denoted (simply but inaccurately) as \( A/K \), with elements the cosets \( A + K \). For each left \( A \)-module \( C \) construct the relatively free \( A \)-module \( (\otimes = \otimes_K) \)

\[
B_n(A, C) = A \otimes (A/K) \otimes \ldots \otimes (A/K) \otimes C, \quad (n \text{ factors } A/K).
\]

(2.1)

As a \( K \)-module, it is spanned by elements which we write, with a vertical bar replacing "\( \otimes \)”, as

\[
\lambda[\lambda_1 \ldots | \lambda_n]c = \lambda \otimes [(\lambda_1 + K) \otimes \ldots \otimes (\lambda_n + K)] \otimes c;
\]

(2.2)

in particular, elements of \( B_0 \) are written as \( \lambda[].c \). The left factor \( A \) gives the left \( A \)-module structure of \( B_\cdot \), and \([\lambda_1 | \ldots | \lambda_n]c \) without the
2. The Bar Resolution for Algebras

operator \( \lambda \) will designate the corresponding element of \((A/K)^n \otimes C\). These elements are normalized, in the sense that

\[ [\lambda_1 | \ldots | \lambda_n] c = 0 \]

when any one \( \lambda_i \in K \).

Now construct maps as in the diagram:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
C & \xleftarrow{s_{-1}} & B_0(A, C) & \xleftarrow{s_0} & B_1(A, C) & \xrightarrow{a} & B_2(A, C) & \xrightarrow{s_1} & C \\
\end{array}
\]

The K-module homomorphisms \( s_{-1}: C \rightarrow B_0 \) and \( s_n: B_n \rightarrow B_{n+1} \) are defined by setting \( s_{-1} c = 1 c \) and

\[ s_n (\lambda_1 | \ldots | \lambda_n) c = 1 \lambda_1 | \ldots | \lambda_n c, \quad n \geq 0. \] (2.4)

By the normalization, \( s_{n+1} s_n = 0 \). Define left A-module homomorphisms \( \varepsilon: B_0 \rightarrow C \) and \( \partial_n: B_n \rightarrow B_{n-1} \) for \( n > 0 \) by \( \varepsilon(\lambda[\cdot]) c = \lambda c \), and

\[
\partial_n(\lambda_1 | \ldots | \lambda_n) c = \lambda_1 \lambda_2 | \ldots | \lambda_n c \\
+ \sum_{i=1}^{n-1} (-1)^i \lambda_1 | \ldots | \lambda_i \lambda_{i+1} | \ldots | \lambda_n c \\
+ (-1)^n \lambda_1 | \ldots | \lambda_{n-1} \lambda_n c. \] (2.5)

This definition is legitimate because the right side is K-multilinear and normalized: If some \( \lambda_i = 1 \), the terms with indices \( i-1 \) and \( i \) cancel and the remaining terms are zero.

**Theorem 2.1.** For each left A-module \( C \), \( \varepsilon: B(A, C) \rightarrow C \) is a resolution of \( C \) by \((A, K)\)-relatively free left A-modules which is K-split by the contracting homotopy \( s \) with \( s^2 = 0 \). Moreover, \( B(A, C) \) is a covariant functor of \( C \).

This can be proved directly from the formulas above. Alternatively, apply the resolution of IX.7 for the resolvent pair of categories \( \mathcal{R} \) with \( \mathcal{A} = \) left A-modules, \( \mathcal{M} = \) K-modules, \( F(M) = A \otimes M, e(m) = 1 \otimes m \). Since \( K \rightarrow A \rightarrow A/K \rightarrow 0 \) is a right exact sequence of K-modules, each K-module \( M \) yields a right exact sequence

\[
M = K \otimes M \rightarrow F(M) = A \otimes M \rightarrow (A/K) \otimes M \rightarrow 0,
\]

so \( F(M) \cong (A/K) \otimes M \). Also, \( s_M: F(M) \rightarrow F(F(M)) \) is given by \( s(\lambda \otimes m) = 1 \otimes (\lambda + K) \otimes m \). Hence, with \( B(\mathcal{R}, C) \) as in (IX.7.3),

\[
B_n(\mathcal{R}, C) = F(F^n \square C) = A \otimes (A/K)^n \otimes C = B_n(A, C),
\]

with \( s \) given by (2.4). The formulas for \( \varepsilon \) and \( \partial_n \) provide the unique boundaries for which \( s \) is the contracting homotopy. Hence \( B(\mathcal{R}, C) = B(A, C) \).

There are several variants of the bar resolution, as follows.
Chapter X. Cohomology of Algebraic Systems

The un-normalized bar resolution \( \beta(\mathcal{R}, C) = \beta(A, C) \) (cf. IX.6) has

\[
\beta_n(A, C) = \widetilde{F} F^n C = A \otimes \Lambda^n \otimes C,
\]

where \( \Lambda^n = \Lambda \otimes \cdots \otimes \Lambda \), with \( n \) factors. The contracting homotopy \( s \), \( \varepsilon \), and the boundary are given by the formulas (2.4) and (2.5) with each \( \Lambda[I_1 \ldots I_n] C \) replaced by \( \Lambda \otimes \Lambda \otimes \cdots \otimes \Lambda \otimes C \). In this case the boundary may be written, much as in the singular complex of a space, in the form

\[
\partial_n = \Sigma (-1)^{i} d_i,
\]

where \( d_i : \beta_n \rightarrow \beta_{n-1} \) is the A-module homomorphism defined by

\[
d_i(\lambda_0 \otimes \lambda_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes \lambda_n \otimes c) = \lambda_0 \otimes \cdots \otimes \lambda_i \lambda_{i+1} \otimes \cdots \otimes c, \quad i = 0, \ldots, n
\]

(2.7)

(for \( i = n \), the right side is \( \lambda_0 \otimes \cdots \otimes \lambda_n c \)). Thm. 2.1 holds with \( B(A, C) \) replaced by \( \beta(A, C) \), except that \( s^n \) need not be zero in \( \beta(A, C) \).

The A-module map \( \eta : \beta_n \rightarrow B \), defined by \( \eta(\Lambda \otimes \lambda_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes \lambda_n \otimes c) = \Lambda[I_1 \ldots I_n] c \) is a A-module chain transformation lifting \( 1_C : C \rightarrow C \); indeed, it is the canonical comparison map of \( \beta_n \) to \( B \). Hence, by the comparison theorem,

**Corollary 2.2.** (The "Normalization Theorem"). The projection \( \eta : \beta(A, C) \rightarrow B(A, C) \) is a chain equivalence of complexes of A-modules.

The kernel of \( \eta \) is the A-module generated by the union of the images of the A-module maps \( s^n_i : \beta_n \rightarrow \beta_{n+1} \) defined by

\[
s^n_i(\lambda \otimes \lambda_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes \lambda_n \otimes c) = \lambda \otimes \cdots \otimes \lambda_i \lambda_{i+1} \otimes \cdots \otimes \lambda_n \otimes c
\]

(2.8)

for \( i = 0, \ldots, n \). With these \( s_i \) and \( d_i \) as in (2.7), \( \beta(A, C) \) is the associated chain complex of a simplicial A-module and \( \eta \) is the simplicial normalization of Thm. VIII.6.1.

For the bimodule bar resolution \( B(A, A) \), take \( C \) above to be \( A \). Each \( B_n \) is then a A-bimodule; formula (2.5) with \( c \) replaced by \( \Lambda[I] \varepsilon A \) shows that \( \varepsilon \) and each \( \partial_n \) is a A-bimodule homomorphism. Similarly, \( s \) of (2.4) becomes a homomorphism of right A-modules. Hence

**Corollary 2.3.** If \( A \) is a K-algebra, \( \varepsilon : B(A, A) \rightarrow A \) is a right-A-split resolution of the bimodule \( A \) by (A-A, right A)-free bimodules, and a K-split resolution of \( A \) by (A-A, K)-free bimodules.

The last clause does not mean that \( B(A, A) \) is the categorical resolution for the resolvent pair (A-bimodules, K-modules). Note also that \( B(A, C) \equiv B(A, A) \otimes A_C \).

The left bar resolution applies to an augmented algebra \( \varepsilon : A \rightarrow K \), and is \( B(A) = B(A, K) \), where \( K \) is K regarded as a left A-module by pull-back along \( \varepsilon \). Thus \( B_n(A) = \Lambda \otimes (\Lambda/K)^n \) is generated by elements \( \Lambda[I_1 \ldots I_n] \), while \( s \) and \( \partial \) are given by (2.4) and (2.5) with \( c \) omitted, and with the "outside" factor \( \lambda_n c \) in the last term of (2.5) replaced by
3. The Cohomology of an Algebra

The cohomology module of a K-algebra A with coefficients in a A-bimodule A is the K-module

\[ H^n(A, A) = \text{Hom}(\text{Hom}_{A^-A}(B(A, A), A)), \quad n = 0, 1, \ldots \]  

(3.1)

it is a covariant functor of A. Here \( \text{Hom}_{A^-A} \) stands for bimodule homomorphisms. According to the normalization theorem we can replace the bimodule bar resolution \( B(A, A) \) here by the un-normalized bar resolution \( B(A, A) \). Both \( B(A, A) \) and \( H^n(A, A) \) are right A-split (A-A, K) relative projective resolutions of the bimodule A, and also are K-split (A-A, K) relative projective resolutions of A, so \( H^n(A, A) \) is the n-th relative Ext functor in either case, as stated in (1.3).

We call \( H^n(A, A) \) the Hochschild cohomology modules of A, since they were originally defined by HOCHSCHILD [1945] using exactly the formulas given by the bar resolution with K a field.

The complex \( \text{Hom}_{A^-A}(B(A, A), A) \) used in (3.1) may be described more directly. Consider K-multilinear functions f on the n-fold cartesian product \( A \times \ldots \times A \) to A; call f normalized if \( f(\lambda_1, \ldots, \lambda_n) = 0 \) whenever

\[ \epsilon(A). \]

Thus \( B(A) \rightarrow \epsilon K \) is a K-split, (A, K)-free resolution of the left A-module \( \epsilon K \). In particular, when \( K=\mathbb{Z} \) and \( A=\mathbb{Z}(\Pi) \), this is the bar resolution of IV.5.

The reduced bar resolution for an augmented algebra \( A \) is the complex \( \overline{B}(A) = K \otimes_A B(A) \), so \( \overline{B}_0(A) = K \) and \( \overline{B}_n(A) = (A/K)^n \) for \( n > 0 \). The contracting homotopy does not apply to \( \overline{B} \), but the formula for the boundary still applies, with \( e \) and the left operator \( \lambda \) omitted: In (2.5) replace the operator \( \lambda_1 \) by \( \epsilon(\lambda_1) \) and \( \lambda_n e \) by \( \epsilon(A_n) \). The "reduced bar resolution" is not a resolution, but is useful for computations. The left and the reduced bar resolution can also be formed without normalization.

Exercises

1. For an augmented algebra \( A \), let \( X \) be any relatively free K-split resolution of \( \epsilon K \) by left \( A \)-modules. Show that the canonical comparisons (Thm.IX.6.2) \( \varphi: B(A) \rightarrow X, \psi: X \rightarrow B(A) \) over the identity satisfy \( \varphi \psi = 1 \).

2. (Cartan.) For \( A \) as in Ex. 1, show that the left bar resolution \( B(A) \) is characterized up to isomorphism as a K-split resolution \( X \) of \( \epsilon K \) with a contracting homotopy \( s \) such that \( s^2 = 0 \) and \( X_n \cong A \otimes X_{n-1} \).

3. The normalization theorem can be proved directly. Show that a bimodule chain transformation \( \zeta: B(A, C) \rightarrow \beta(A, C) \) with \( e \zeta = \zeta \) can be defined recursively with \( \zeta_0 = 1, \zeta_n e_n = s \zeta_{n-1} \partial e_n \), where \( e_n = \epsilon(F^n \Box C) \). Prove that \( \eta \zeta = 1 \), and by similar means construct a chain homotopy \( \eta \eta \cong 1 \), all for \( \eta \) as in Cor. 2.2.

4. For left A-modules \( C \) and \( A \), show that the 1-cocycles of the cochain complex \( \text{Hom}_A(B(A, C), A) \) can be regarded as factor sets for K-split A-module extensions of \( A \) by \( G \).
one $\lambda_i$ is 1. For example, the function $[\lambda_1] \ldots [\lambda_n]$ of (2.3) is K-multilinear and normalized. The universal property of the tensor product $B, (A, A) = A \otimes (A|K)^n \otimes A$ states that each normalized K-multilinear $f$ determines a unique bimodule homomorphism $\hat{f}: B_n(A, A) \rightarrow A$ such that always

$$\hat{f}(1 \otimes [\lambda_1] \ldots [\lambda_n] \otimes 1) = f(\lambda_1, \ldots, \lambda_n).$$

Hence $\text{Hom}_{A-A}(B_n(A, A), A)$ is isomorphic to the K-module of all K-multilinear normalized $f$ on the $n$-fold product. The coboundary $\delta f$ is the function given, with the standard sign, as

$$\delta f(\lambda_1, \ldots, \lambda_{n+1}) = (-1)^{n+1} \{ \lambda_1 f(\lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_{n+1}) + \sum_{i=1}^{n} (-1)^i f(\lambda_1, \ldots, \lambda_i \lambda_{i+1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n+1}) + (-1)^n f(\lambda_1, \ldots, \lambda_n) \lambda_{n+1} \} \tag{3.2}$$

In particular, a zero-cochain is a constant $a \in A$; its coboundary is the function $f: A \rightarrow A$ with $f(\lambda) = a1 - \lambda a$. Call an element $a \in A$ invariant if $\lambda a = a1$ for all $\lambda$, and let $A''$ denote the sub-K-module of all such invariant elements of $A$; thus

$$H^0(A, A) \cong A^A = [a | \lambda a = a \lambda \text{ for all } \lambda \in A]. \tag{3.3}$$

Similarly, a 1-cocycle is a K-module homomorphism $f: A \rightarrow A$ satisfying the identity

$$f(\lambda_1 \lambda_2) = \lambda_1 f(\lambda_2) + f(\lambda_1) \lambda_2, \quad \lambda_1, \lambda_2 \in A; \tag{3.4}$$

such a function $f$ is called a crossed homomorphism of $A$ to $A$. It is a coboundary if it has the form $f_\alpha(\lambda) = a \lambda - \lambda a$ for some fixed $a$; call $f_\alpha$ a principal crossed homomorphism. Therefore $H^1(A, A)$ is the K-module of all crossed homomorphisms modulo the principal ones, exactly as in the case of the cohomology of groups (IV.2).

As in the case of groups, $H^2(A, A)$ can be interpreted in terms of extensions by the algebra $A$. An extension by the algebra $A$ is an epimorphism $\sigma: \Gamma \rightarrow A$ of algebras. The kernel $J$ of $\sigma$ is a two-sided ideal in $\Gamma$, hence a $\Gamma$-bimodule. For each $n$, let $J^n$ denote the K-submodule of $\Gamma$ generated by all products $j_1 j_2 \ldots j_n$ of $n$ factors $j_i \in J$. Then $J = J^1 > J^2 > J^3 > \ldots$, and each $J^n$ is a two-sided ideal of $\Gamma$. An extension $\sigma$ is said to be cleft if $\sigma$ has an algebra homomorphism $\varphi: A \rightarrow \Gamma$ as right inverse ($\sigma \varphi = 1_A$); that is, if $\Gamma$ contains a subalgebra mapped isomorphically onto $A$ by $\sigma$. An extension $\sigma$ is said to be singular if $J = \text{Ker} \sigma$ satisfies $J^2 = 0$. In each singular extension the $\Gamma$-bimodule $J$ may be regarded as an $A$-bimodule, for $\sigma \gamma = \sigma \gamma'$ implies $(\gamma - \gamma') \in J$, so $J^2 = 0$ implies $\gamma j = \gamma' j$ for each $j \in J$. This defines the left action of each $\lambda = \sigma(\gamma)$ on $j$. 
Conversely, given any $A$-bimodule $A$, a singular extension of $A$ by $A$ is a short exact sequence $(x,a): A \rightarrowtail \Gamma \twoheadrightarrow A$ where $\Gamma$ is an algebra, $a$ a homomorphism of algebras, $A$ is regarded as a $\Gamma$-bimodule by pullback along $a$, and $x: A \rightarrowtail \Gamma$ is a monomorphism of $\Gamma$-bimodules. For given $A$ and $A$, two such extensions $(x,a)$ and $(x',a')$ are congruent if there is an algebra homomorphism $\varphi: \Gamma \rightarrowtail \Gamma'$ with $x' = \varphi \circ x$, $\sigma = \varphi \circ \sigma$. This gives the familiar commutative diagram which implies that $\varphi$ is an isomorphism. One example of an extension of $A$ by $A$ is the semi-direct sum, defined to be the $K$-module $A \oplus A$ with product defined by $(a_1, A_1) \cdot (a_2, A_2) = (a_1 a_2, A_1 + A_2)$; with $xa = (a, 0), \sigma(a, 1) = A$ it is a singular extension of $A$ by $A$, cleft by $\varphi$ with $\varphi(1) = (0, A)$. Any cleft singular extension is congruent to this semi-direct sum.

Consider those singular extensions $(x,a)$ which $K$-split, in the sense that there is a $K$-module homomorphism $u: A \rightarrow \Gamma$ which is a right inverse to $a$. (Any cleft extension is $K$-split; if $K$ is a field, any extension $K$-splits.) Identify each $a \in A$ with $xa \in \Gamma$, so that $x: A \rightarrow \Gamma$ is the identity injection. The right inverse $u$ can be chosen to satisfy the "normalization" condition $u(1_A) = 1_\Gamma$, for if $u$ does not satisfy this condition, $a = u(1_A) - 1_\Gamma \in A$ and $u'(a) = u(a) - Aa$, is a new right inverse which is normalized. Moreover, $a [u(\lambda_1 1_A)] = \lambda_1 a = a [u(A) u(1_A)]$, so there are uniquely determined elements $f(A, 1_A) \in A$ such that

$$u(\lambda_1) u(\lambda_2) = f(\lambda_1, \lambda_2) + u(\lambda_1 \lambda_2).$$

(3.5)

Cal$f$ the factor set of the extension corresponding to the representatives $u$.

**Theorem 3.1.** If $A$ is a $K$-algebra and $A$ a $A$-bimodule, each factor set of a $K$-split singular algebra extension of $A$ by $A$ is a 2-cocycle of $\text{Hom}_{A-\text{A}}(B(A, A), A)$. The assignment to each extension of the cohomology class of any one of its factor sets is a 1-1-correspondence between the set of congruence classes of $K$-split singular algebra extensions of $A$ by $A$ and $H^2(A, A)$. Under this correspondence the cleft extensions (in particular, the semi-direct sum) correspond to zero.

**Proof.** Regard $u(\lambda)$ as a representative of $A$ in the extension $\Gamma$. The description of the $\Gamma$-bimodule structure of $A$ can be written in terms of $u$ as

$$u(\lambda) a = \lambda a, \quad a u(\lambda) = a \lambda,$$

(3.6)

for any $a \in A, \lambda \in A$. Since $u$ is a $K$-module homomorphism,

$$u(k_1 \lambda_1 + k_2 \lambda_2) = k_1 u(\lambda_1) + k_2 u(\lambda_2), \quad k_i \in K.$$

(3.7)

With the factor set $f$ for $u$ defined by (3.5), the rule (3.6) gives

$$[u(\lambda_1) u(\lambda_2)] u(\lambda_3) = f(\lambda_1, \lambda_2) \lambda_3 + f(\lambda_1 \lambda_2, \lambda_3) + u(\lambda_1 \lambda_2 \lambda_3),$$

$$u(\lambda_1) [u(\lambda_2) u(\lambda_3)] = \lambda_1 f(\lambda_2, \lambda_3) + f(\lambda_1, \lambda_2 \lambda_3) + u(\lambda_1 \lambda_2 \lambda_3).$$
As the product in $\Gamma$ is associative,

$$\lambda_1 f(\lambda_2, \lambda_3) - f(\lambda_1 \lambda_2, \lambda_3) + f(\lambda_1, \lambda_2 \lambda_3) - f(\lambda_1, \lambda_2) \lambda_3 = 0. \quad (3.8)$$

This is exactly the condition $\delta f = 0$ that the factor set be a 2-cocycle; moreover the choice $u(1) = 1$ implies that $f$ is normalized. A change in the choice of $u$ to $u'$ by $u'(\lambda) = g(A) + u(A)$ for any $K$-linear $g : A \to A$ with the normalization $g(1) = 0$ gives a new (normalized) factor set $f + \delta g$. Thus the extension uniquely determines the cohomology class off.

Any element in the algebra $\Gamma$ can be written uniquely as $a + u(\lambda)$. The $K$-module structure of $\Gamma$ and the sum and product of any two such elements are determined by the equations (3.5)–(3.7). Given $A$, $A$, and any 2-cocycle $f$, these equations construct the extension $\Gamma'$; in particular, the condition $\delta f = 0$ suffices to make the product in $\Gamma$ associative. When $f = 0$, the construction is the semi-direct sum, so the proof is complete.

A two-sided ideal $J$ is said to be *nilpotent* if $J^n = 0$ for some $n$.

**Theorem 3.2.** (J. H. C. WHITEHEAD-HOCHSCHILD.) If $K$ is a field and if the $K$-algebra $A$ has $H^2(A, A) = 0$ for every $A$-bimodule $A$, then any extension of $A$ with a *nilpotent* kernel is cleft.

Let the extension $\alpha : \Gamma \to A$ have kernel $J$ with $J^n = 0$. The proof will be by induction on $n$. If $n = 2$, the extension is singular and $K$-split; since $H^2(A, J) = 0$, the extension is cleft by Thm. 3.1.

Suppose the result true for kernels with exponent $n - 1$, and take a with kernel $J + 0$, $J^n = 0$. Then $J^2$ is properly contained in $J$, since $J^2 = J$ would give $J^n = J \neq 0$. From the quotient algebra $\Gamma/J^2$, form the commutative diagram on the left in

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
J & \to & \Gamma \\
\downarrow \rho & & \parallel \\
J/J^2 & \to & \Gamma/J^2 \\
\end{array}
$$

The projection $\rho$ has kernel $J^2$, while $a'$ has kernel $J/J^2$, hence is a singular extension of $A$. By the case $n = 2$, $a'$ cleft by some $g$. Now $\rho^{-1}(\varphi A) = \Gamma''$ is a subalgebra of $\Gamma$, and $\rho$ induces $\rho' : \Gamma'' \to \varphi A \cong A$ with kernel $J^2$. Since $(J^2)^{n-1} < J^n = 0$, the induction assumption shows $\rho'$ cleft by some $\varphi'$, so $a$ is cleft by $\varphi \varphi' \varphi$.

This result includes the Principal Theorem of Wedderburn for an algebra $\Gamma$ of finite dimension (as a vector space) over a field. Each such algebra has a two-sided nilpotent ideal $R$, called the radical, such that $\Gamma/R$ is semi-simple. The Wedderburn Theorem asserts that if $\Gamma/R$ is separable, then the extension $\Gamma \to \Gamma/R$ is cleft. This follows from
Thm. 3.2, for $\Gamma/R$ separable implies (Thm. VII. 5.6) bidim $\Gamma/R = 0$, hence bidim $\Gamma/R \leq 1$, hence $H^2(\Gamma/R, A) = 0$ for all $(\Gamma/R)$-bimodules $A$, hence $\Gamma \to \Gamma/R$ cleft.

Note. For algebras of finite dimension over a field, Thm. 3.2 is also valid without the hypothesis that the kernel is nilpotent [HOCHSCHILD 1945, Prop. 6.4]; [ROSENBERG-ZELINSKY 1956]. The obstruction problem for the construction of non-singular $K$-split extensions with a given kernel [HOCHSCHILD 1947] leads to an interpretation of $H^2(\Lambda, A)$ parallel to that for groups (IV.8). Extensions which are not $K$-split require a second, additive, factor set in place of the linearity of $u$ in (3.7); we return to this question in § 13.

The cohomology groups of a fixed $K$-algebra $\Lambda$ are characterized by axioms like those for Ext, as follows.

**Theorem 3.3.** For each $n \geq 0$, $H^n(\Lambda, A)$ is a covariant functor of the $A$-bimodule $A$ to $K$-modules. $H^0$ is given by (3.3). $H^n(\Lambda, A) = 0$ when $n > 0$ and $A$ is a bimodule of the form $A = \text{Hom}_K(\Lambda, M)$ for $M$ a $K$-module. For each $K$-split short exact sequence $E: A \to B \to C$ of bimodules and each $n \geq 0$ there is a connecting homomorphism $E: H^n(\Lambda, C) \to H^{n+1}(\Lambda, A)$, natural in $E$, such that the long sequence

$$\to H^n(\Lambda, A) \to H^n(\Lambda, B) \to H^n(\Lambda, C) \xrightarrow{E_\ast} H^{n+1}(\Lambda, A) \to \cdots$$

is exact. These properties determine $H^n$ and the connecting homomorphisms $E_\ast$ up to natural isomorphisms of $H^n$.

The proof is left to the reader; note that $\text{Hom}_K(\Lambda, M)$ is a "relatively injective" bimodule.

If $\varepsilon: \Lambda \to K$ is an augmented algebra, each left $A$-module $D$ becomes a $A$-bimodule $D_\varepsilon$ by pull-back on the right along the augmentation.

**Proposition 3.4.** For a left module $D$ over an augmented algebra $(\Lambda, \varepsilon)$ the Hochschild cohomology of the bimodule $D_\varepsilon$ can be computed from the left bar resolution by a natural isomorphism

$$H^n(\Lambda, D) \cong H^n(\text{Hom}_\Lambda(B(\Lambda), D)).$$

(3.9)

Proof. The canonical isomorphism $\text{Hom}(K, D) \cong D$ of left $A$-modules is also an isomorphism $\text{Hom}(\varepsilon, K, D) \cong D_\varepsilon$ of $A$-bimodules. Thus, for any bimodule $B$, adjoint associativity yields a natural isomorphism

$$\text{Hom}_\Lambda(B \otimes A(\varepsilon, K), D) \cong \text{Hom}_{\Lambda^{-A}}(B, \text{Hom}(\varepsilon, K, D)) \cong \text{Hom}_{\Lambda^{-A}}(B, D_\varepsilon).$$

When $B$ is the two-sided bar resolution, $B \otimes A(\varepsilon, K)$ is the left bar resolution; hence the result (3.9).

Note. Suppose that the $K$-algebra $\Lambda$ is projective as a $K$-module. Then $\Lambda^*$ is $K$-projective [Cor. V.3.3], hence $\beta^*_n(\Lambda, A)$ is a projective $A$-bimodule [Prop. VI.8.1]. Hence $\varepsilon: \beta(\Lambda, A) \to \Lambda$ is a projective bimodule resolution of $\Lambda$. In this case $H^n$ of (3.1) is therefore given as an "absolute" functor $\text{Ext}$:

$$H^n(\Lambda, A) \cong \text{Ext}^n_{\Lambda^{-A}}(A, A) \quad \text{(if $A$ is $K$-projective)}.$$
Using $B$ for $\beta$, the same result holds for $A/K$ projective as a $K$-module. Cartan-Eilenberg define the "Hochschild" cohomology by the absolute Ext functor in all cases, so their definition does not always agree with ours.

**Exercises**

1. Show that $A^A$ is a sub-$A$-bimodule of $A$ when $A$ is commutative.

2. Construct a "Baer sum" of extensions of $A$ by $A$ so that the correspondence of Thm. 3.1 maps the Baer sum into the sum in $H^p(A, A)$.

3. Show that $H^1(A, A)$ is the group of congruence classes of those bimodule extensions $A \to B \to A$ which $K$-split.

4. Show explicitly that each short exact sequence $A \to B \to A$ of bimodules which is $K$-split is also split as a sequence of right $A$-modules.

5. If $A$ is an augmented algebra and $M$ a $K$-module then the cohomology of $M$, pulled back to be a bimodule, may be calculated from the reduced bar resolution as $H^n(A, e_M) \cong H^n(\text{Hom}(B(A), M))$.

4. The Homology of an Algebra

Two $A$-bimodules $A$ and $B$ have a "bimodule" tensor product $A \otimes_A B$; it is obtained from the tensor product $A \otimes_K B$ by the identifications $a \lambda \otimes b = a \otimes \lambda b, \quad \lambda a \otimes b = a \otimes b \lambda$

(middle associativity and outside associativity, as in (VI.5.10)). The canonical isomorphism $A \otimes_A A \cong A$ has an analogue for bimodules. Indeed, if $A$ is a bimodule and $M$ is a $K$-module, a natural isomorphism

$$\theta: (\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}) \otimes = \otimes_K, \quad (4.1)$$

may be defined by $\theta[a \otimes (\lambda \otimes m \otimes \lambda')] = \lambda' a \lambda \otimes m$, for the expression on the right is $K$-multilinear and satisfies the middle and outside associativity rules. The inverse is given by $\theta^{-1}(a \otimes m) = a \otimes (1 \otimes m \otimes 1)$.

The Hochschild homology modules of a $K$-algebra $A$ with coefficients in a $A$-bimodule $A$ are defined via the bar resolution to be the $K$-modules

$$(A \otimes_A A) = H_n(A \otimes_A A \otimes_A B(A, A)), \quad n = 0, 1, \ldots, \quad (4.2)$$

As for cohomology, this is an instance (1.4) of the relative torsion functor, for sequences of $A$-bimodules split either as sequences of right $A$-modules or as sequences of $K$-modules.

In the definition (4.2) we may replace $B$ by the un-normalized bar resolution $\beta(A, A) with $\beta_n(A, A) = A \otimes A^n \otimes A$. By (4.1), $A \otimes_A A \beta_n(A, A) \cong A \otimes A^n$. Hence $H_n(A, A)$ is the $n$-th homology module of the complex of $K$-modules $A \otimes A^n$ with a boundary $\partial = d_0 - d_1 + \ldots + (-1)^n d_n$, where the $d_i$ are "simplicial" faces:

$$d_i (a \otimes \lambda_1 \otimes \ldots \otimes \lambda_n) = a \otimes \lambda_1 \otimes \ldots \otimes \lambda_i \otimes \ldots \otimes \lambda_n, \begin{cases} i = 0, \\ a \otimes \lambda_1 \otimes \ldots \otimes \lambda_i \otimes \ldots \otimes \lambda_n, \quad 0 < i < n, \\ \lambda_n a \otimes \lambda_1 \otimes \ldots \otimes \lambda_{i-1}, \quad i = n; \end{cases} \quad (4.3)$$
in the last term, $A$ appears in front in virtue of the "outside" associativity rule. In particular $\partial(a \otimes \lambda) = a - A_a$, so that $H_0$ is the quotient of $A$,

$$H_0(A, A) \cong A/\{\lambda a - a \lambda | \lambda \in A, a \in A\}, \quad (4.4)$$

by the sub-$K$-module generated by all differences $\lambda a - a A$.

Much as in Thm 3.3 we have

**Theorem 4.1.** For a fixed $K$-algebra $A$, each $H_n(A, A)$ is a covariant functor of the $A$-bimodule $A$ to $K$-modules, with $H_0$ given by (4.4) and $H_n(A, A \otimes L \otimes A) = 0$, $n > 0$, $L$ a $K$-module.

If $E: A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C$ is a $K$-split short exact sequence of bimodules, there is for each $n > 0$ a "connecting" homomorphism $E_n: H_n(A, C) \rightarrow H_{n-1}(A, A)$, natural in $E$, such that the long sequence

$$\cdots \rightarrow H_{n+1}(A, C) \xrightarrow{E_n} H_n(A, A) \rightarrow H_n(A, B) \rightarrow H_n(A, C) \rightarrow \cdots$$

is exact. These properties characterize the $H_n$ and $E_n$, up to natural isomorphism.

The functorial behavior of the homology of algebras is like that for groups (IV.2.6). Consider quadruples $(K, A, A, C)$ where $K$ is a commutative ring, $A$ a $K$-algebra, and $A, C$ are $A$-bimodules. A change of algebras (+ in $A$, − in $C$) is a quadruple

$$\zeta = (x, \varrho, a, \gamma): (K, A, A, C) \rightarrow (K', A', A', C') \quad (4.5)$$

where $x: K \rightarrow K'$ and $\varrho: A \rightarrow A'$ are ring homomorphisms such that always $\varrho(k \lambda) = (xk)(\varrho A)$ and where $a: A \rightarrow A'$ and $\gamma: C' \rightarrow C$ (opposite direction!) are homomorphisms of $A$-bimodules; i.e., $a(\lambda a) = (\varrho A)(aa)$ and $a(aA) = (a a)(\varrho A)$. The category with these morphisms $\zeta$ is denoted $\mathcal{B}^+$; here the exponent $+-$ indicates that the change is covariant in the first bimodule $A$ and contravariant in $C$. Omitting $C$ and $\gamma$ gives the category $\mathcal{B}^+$. We also use the category $\mathcal{B}^+_K$, with $K = K'$ fixed and $x$ the identity.

The complex $A \otimes_{A-A} B(A, A)$ of (4.2) and hence $H_n(A, A)$ is a covariant functor on $\mathcal{B}^+$; in particular, this gives the previous result that $H_n(A, A)$ for $A$ and $K$ fixed is covariant in $A$. Similarly, the cohomology $H^*(A, C)$ is a contravariant functor on $\mathcal{B}^-$. The action of a change $\zeta$ (with a omitted) on a normalized cochain $f$ for $A'$, of the form (3.2), is defined by $(\zeta^* f)(\lambda_1, \ldots, A) = \gamma f(\varrho \lambda_1, \ldots, \varrho A)$.

**Exercises**

1. Show that the isomorphism (1.1) is natural over the category $\mathcal{I}^--$.

2. Let $e: A \rightarrow K$ be an augmented algebra. For $M$ a right $A$-module and $G$ a $K$-module, prove that $H_n(A, eM) = H_n(M \otimes_A B(A))$, $H_n(A, eG) = H_n(G \otimes B(A))$. 

---

Mac Lane, Homology
5. The Homology of Groups and Monoids

The cohomology of a group $\mathfrak{H}$ was treated in Chap. IV, using the functor $\text{Hom}_{\mathfrak{H}}$ for $\mathcal{Z}(\mathfrak{H})$-modules. Now that we have at hand the tensor product $\otimes_{\mathfrak{H}}=\otimes_{\mathcal{Z}(\mathfrak{H})}$ we can define and study the homology of a group $\mathfrak{H}$. It is just as easy to do this for a monoid $M$, though the added generality is not of great moment.

A monoid is a set $M$ with a distinguished element $1=1_M$ and a function assigning to each pair $x, y \in M$ a "product" $xy \in M$ in such a way that always $(xy)z=x(yz)$ and $Ix=x=Ix$. The monoid ring $\mathcal{Z}(M)$, like the group ring, consists of all finite sums $\sum k_i x_i$ with $k_i \in \mathcal{Z}, x_i \in M$, under the obvious product, and with augmentation the ring homomorphism $\&: \mathcal{Z}(M) \rightarrow \mathcal{Z}$ defined by $\&(\sum k_i x_i)=\sum k_i$. This ring $\mathcal{Z}(M)$ may be regarded as the free ring on the monoid $M$ in the sense of Prop. IV.1.1. By a left $M$-module $A$ we mean a left $\mathcal{Z}(M)$-module, and we write $\otimes_M$ for $\otimes_{\mathcal{Z}(M)}$. If $M$ is a free commutative monoid on $n$ generators, $\mathcal{Z}(M)$ is the polynomial ring in $n$ indeterminates.

The homology of $M$ with coefficients in a right module $G_M$ is now defined by the left bar resolution $B(\mathcal{Z}(M))$ as

$$H_n(M, G) = H_n(G \otimes_M B(\mathcal{Z}(M))), \quad n = 0, 1, \ldots \quad (5.1)$$

Since $B(\mathcal{Z}(M))$ is a $\mathcal{Z}$-split projective resolution of the left $M$-module $\mathcal{Z} \rightarrow \mathcal{Z}$, we may also write this definition in terms of the relative torsion product as

$$H_n(M, G) = \text{Tor}^{\mathcal{Z}(M), \mathcal{Z}}_n(G, \mathcal{Z}) \cong \text{Tor}^{\mathcal{Z}(M)}_n(G, \mathcal{Z}). \quad (5.2)$$

In particular, $H_0(M, G) = G \otimes_M \mathcal{Z}$. We leave to the reader the description of the cohomology of a monoid.

For a free module the higher torsion products vanish, hence

Proposition 5.1. For $\mathfrak{H}$ a group and $F$ a free $\mathfrak{H}$-module

$$H_0(\mathfrak{H}, F) \cong F \otimes_{\mathfrak{H}} \mathcal{Z}, \quad H_n(\mathfrak{H}, F) = 0, \quad n > 0.$$  

Note that if $F$ is the free $\mathfrak{H}$-module on generators $\{t\}$, then $F \otimes_{\mathfrak{H}} \mathcal{Z}$ is the free abelian group on the generators $\{t \otimes 1\}$.

The commutator subgroup $[\mathfrak{H}, \mathfrak{H}]$ is the subgroup of $\mathfrak{H}$ generated by all commutators $xyx^{-1}y^{-1}$ for $x, y \in \mathfrak{H}$. It is a normal subgroup of $\mathfrak{H}$; the factor group $\mathfrak{H}/[\mathfrak{H}, \mathfrak{H}]$ is abelian, and any homomorphism of $\mathfrak{H}$ into any abelian group has kernel containing $[\mathfrak{H}, \mathfrak{H}]$.

Proposition 5.2. For $\mathfrak{H}$ a group and $Z$ the trivial $17$-module

$$H_0(\mathfrak{H}, Z) \cong \mathcal{Z}, \quad H_1(\mathfrak{H}, Z) \cong [\mathfrak{H}, \mathfrak{H}] \quad (5.3)$$

Proof. The homology of $Z$ is that of the complex $\mathcal{Z} \otimes_{\mathfrak{H}} B(\mathcal{Z}(\mathfrak{H}))$ which is the reduced bar resolution $\overline{B}(\mathcal{Z}(\mathfrak{H}))$ of $\S 2$, with $\overline{B}_0 = Z, \overline{B}_1$.
and \( \overline{B}_2 \) the free abelian groups on generators \([x] \) and \([x,y] \) for \( x \neq 1 \pm y \), and with boundaries \( \partial[x] = 0, \partial[x,y] = [y] - [xy] + [x] \). This gives \( H_0 \cong \mathbb{Z} \) and each \([x] \) a cycle. By the boundary formula, its homology class satisfies \( \text{cls}[xy] = \text{cls}[x] + \text{cls}[y] \). Hence \( \varphi x = \text{cls}[x] \) gives a homomorphism \( \varphi : \Pi/[[\Pi, \Pi]] \to H_1(\Pi, \mathbb{Z}) \). Since \( \overline{B}_1 \) is free abelian, \([x] \to x[[\Pi, \Pi]] \) defines a homomorphism \( \overline{B}_1 \to \Pi/[[\Pi, \Pi]] \) which annihilates all boundaries. Thus an inverse of \( \varphi \) may be defined as \( \varphi^{-1} \text{cls}[x] = x[[\Pi, \Pi]] \), so \( \varphi \) is an isomorphism, as required for the second equation of (5.3).

The homology of a group (or a monoid) is a special case of the Hochschild homology of its group ring.

**Proposition 5.3.** For a right module \( G \) over the monoid \( M \) there is an isomorphism \( H_n(M, G) \cong H_n(Z(M), G) \) of the homology of the monoid \( M \) to that of the algebra \( Z(M) \). This isomorphism is natural in \( G \).

**Proof.** Take \( A = Z(M) \), a \( Z \)-algebra. For any \( A \)-bimodule \( B \) an isomorphism \( \varphi \) is defined by \( g \otimes b \mapsto g \otimes (b \otimes 1) \). Apply this with \( B = B(A, A) \); it shows the complex used to define the homology of \( A \) over \( B \) is isomorphic to the complex used to define the homology of \( M \) over \( G \).

A corresponding result for cohomology is

**Proposition 5.4.** For left \( \Pi \)-modules \( A \) there is a natural isomorphism

\[
H^n(\Pi, A) \cong H^n(Z(\Pi), A) .
\]

**Proof.** This is a consequence of Prop.3.4, for the cohomology of the group \( \Pi \) on the left was defined by \( B(Z(\Pi)) \), that of the algebra \( Z(\Pi) \) by \( B(Z(\Pi), Z(\Pi)) \).

These propositions reduce the (co)homology of groups to that of algebras. Conversely, the (co)homology of the \( Z \)-algebra \( Z(\Pi) \) reduces to that of the group \( \Pi \). This reduction depends on two special properties of the group ring \( Z(\Pi) \). First, \( y \cdot x = x \otimes x \) defines a ring homomorphism \( y : Z(\Pi) \to Z(\Pi) \otimes Z(\Pi) \); indeed, \( y \) is the coproduct which makes \( Z(\Pi) \) a Hopf algebra (VI.9). Second, \( Z(\Pi) \) is canonically isomorphic to its opposite ring. Indeed, if the opposite ring \( Z(\Pi)^{\text{op}} \) consists as usual of elements \( r^{\text{op}} \) for \( r \in Z(\Pi) \) with product \( r^{\text{op}} s^{\text{op}} = (s r)^{\text{op}} \), then the function \( \xi(x) = (x^{-1})^{\text{op}} \) on \( \Pi \) to \( Z(\Pi)^{\text{op}} \) has \( \xi(1) = 1, \xi(xy) = (\xi(x))(\xi(y)) \), hence extends (Prop.IV.1.1) to a ring homomorphism \( \xi : Z(\Pi) \to Z(\Pi)^{\text{op}} \) which is clearly an isomorphism. Composition with the coproduct gives a ring homomorphism

\[
\chi : Z(\Pi)^{\text{op}} \to Z(\Pi) \otimes Z(\Pi)^{\text{op}} \to Z(\Pi) \otimes Z(\Pi)^{\text{op}} ; \tag{5.4}
\]

it is that ring homomorphism \( \chi \) which extends the multiplicative map \( \chi(x) = x \otimes (x^{-1})^{\text{op}} \).
This map $\chi$ allows a reduction of the (bimodule) cohomology of the algebra $Z(\Pi)$ to the cohomology of the group $17$. Each bimodule $\Pi C_\Pi$ is a left $Z(\Pi) \otimes Z(\Pi)^{\text{op}}$-module and hence also a left IT-module $zC$, by pull-back along $\chi$. These new left operators of $\Pi$ on $C$ will be denoted as $xoc$ for $x \in \Pi$; they are not the original left operators, but are given in terms of the bimodule operators as $xoc = xc x^{-1}$. Similarly, $C_x$ denotes the right IT-module with operators $c o x = x^{-1} c x$.

Theorem 5.5. For a group $\Pi$ and a $\Pi$-bimodule $C$ there are natural isomorphisms

$$H^n(Z(\Pi), C) \cong H^n(\Pi, zC), \quad H_*(\Pi, C_x) \cong H_*(Z(\Pi), C)$$

induced by the chain transformation $h: B(Z(\Pi)) \to B(Z(\Pi), Z(\Pi))$ defined as

$$h_n(x[x_1] \ldots | x_n]) = x[x_1] \ldots | x_n](x x_1 \ldots x_n)^{-1}, \quad x \in \Pi.$$

In brief, "two-sided" operators in the cohomology of groups reduce to "one-sided" operators (EILENBERG-MACLANE [1947], § 5).

For this proof, write $B^L = B(Z(\Pi))$ for the left bar resolution and $B = B(Z(\Pi), Z(\Pi))$ for the bimodule bar resolution. Since $B^L_n$ is the free abelian group on generators $x[x_1] \ldots | x_n]$, the formula given defines $h_n$ as a homomorphism $B^L_n \to B_n$ of abelian groups. For a left operator $y \in \Pi$,

$$h_n(y x[x_1] \ldots | x_n]) = y\{x[x_1] \ldots | x_n](x x_1 \ldots x_n)^{-1}\} y^{-1};$$

this shows $h: B^L \to zB$ a homomorphism of left 17-modules. Now consider the diagram

$$\begin{align*}
Z \xleftarrow{L} B_0^L & \xrightarrow{\partial} B_1^L & \xleftarrow{\partial} B_2^L & \cdots \\
\downarrow{I} & \downarrow{h_0} & \downarrow{h_1} & \downarrow{h_2} \\
Z(\Pi) \xleftarrow{\epsilon} B_0 & \xrightarrow{\partial} B_1 & \xleftarrow{\partial} B_2 & \cdots
\end{align*}$$

(5.6)

with $I: Z \to Z(\Pi)$ the injection. The contracting homotopies $s$ above and below are both defined by "moving the front argument inside", hence the commutativity $hs = sh$ (with $h_{-1} = I$). Then $\epsilon$ and $\partial$ above and below are uniquely determined recursively by the fact that $s$ is a contracting homotopy; it follows that $h \partial = ah, I \epsilon^L = \epsilon h_0$. Alternatively, these commutativities may be verified directly; only the initial and final terms in the boundary formulas require attention. Thus $h: B^L \to B$ is a chain transformation.

Now let $h^*$ be the induced map on the cochain complexes $\text{Hom}(B, C)$. Composition with the pull-back $\text{Hom}_{\Pi - \Pi} \to \text{Hom}_{\Pi}$ gives the cochain transformation

$$\varphi: \text{Hom}_{\Pi - \Pi}(B, C) \to \text{Hom}_{\Pi}(zB, zC) \to \text{Hom}_{\Pi}(B^L, zC).$$
Explicitly, for an n-cochain \( f \) on the left, \( \varphi f \) is
\[
(\varphi f)(x_1, \ldots, x_n) = f(h[x_1|\cdots|x_n]) = [f(x_1, \ldots, x_n)](x_1 \cdots x_n)^{-1}.
\]
But for an n-cochain \( g \) of \( B^L \) an inverse to \( \varphi \) is given by
\[
(\varphi^{-1}g)(x_1, \ldots, x_n) = [g(x_1, \ldots, x_n)](x_1 \cdots x_n).
\]
Thus \( \varphi \) is an isomorphism on cochains, hence on cohomology. The argument on homology is similar.

The isomorphisms of this theorem may be described in more invariant terms as an instance of change of rings. In homology, regard \( H_n(Z(\Pi), C) \) via (1.4) as the relative torsion product \( \text{Tor}_n(C, Z(\Pi)) \) for the pair of rings \( (Z(\Pi) \otimes Z(\Pi)^{op}, Z) \), and \( H_n(\Pi, C) \) via (5.2) as the relative torsion product \( \text{Tor}(C_x, Z) \) for the pair of rings \( Z(\Pi), Z \). Now \( \chi \) and \( I: Z \to Z(\Pi) \) yield a morphism
\[
(\chi, I_C, I): (Z(\Pi), Z; C, Z) \to (Z(\Pi) \otimes Z(\Pi)^{op}, Z; C, Z(\Pi))
\]
in the "change of rings" category \( W++ \) of (IX.8.10). The diagram (5.6) displays \( h \) as the chain transformation found in IX.8 from the comparison theorem, so the isomorphism of the present theorem is just the induced map \( (\chi, I_C, I)^* \) for relative torsion products in the change of rings.

Note. Among explicit calculations of the cohomology and homology of groups we cite \textsc{Lyndon} [1950] for groups with one defining relation; \textsc{Gruenberg} [1960] for a resolution constructed from a free presentation of \( \Pi \); \textsc{Wall} [1961] for a "twisted product" resolution for a group extension.

**Exercises**

1. (\textsc{Cartan-Eilenberg}, p.201.) For an abelian group \( G \) regarded as a trivial \( \Pi \)-module the homology and cohomology can be calculated from the reduced bar resolution. Establish the exact sequences
\[
0 \to H_n(\Pi, Z) \otimes G \to H_n(\Pi, G) \to \text{Tor}(H_{n-1}(\Pi, Z), G) \to 0, \\
0 \to \text{Ext}(H_{n-1}(\Pi, Z), G) \to H^n(\Pi, G) \to \text{Hom}(H^n(\Pi, Z), G) \to 0.
\]
2. For \( G \) an abelian group, show \( H_1(\Pi, G) \cong G \otimes [\Pi/[\Pi, \Pi]] \).
3. Study the effect of conjugation on \( H_n(\Pi, G) \) (cf. Prop. IV.5.6).
4. (\textsc{Cartan-Eilenberg}, Cor.X.4.2.) If the abelian group \( \Pi \) contains a monoid \( M \) which generates \( \Pi \) as a group, then each \( \Pi \)-module \( A \) or \( G \) is also an \( M \)-module. Show that the injection \( M \to \Pi \) induces isomorphisms
\[
H^n(\Pi, A) \cong H^n(M, A), \quad H_n(M, G) \cong H_n(\Pi, G).
\]

6. Ground Ring Extensions and Direct Products

This section will study the effect upon Hochschild homology and cohomology of certain standard constructions on algebras: Ground ring extensions and direct products. Tensor products will be treated in §7.
Consider the ground ring extension from $K$ to a commutative $K$-algebra $R$. Each $K$-algebra $A$ yields an $R$-algebra $A^R = R \otimes A$; there are ring homomorphisms $j_K: K+R$ and $j_A: A \rightarrow A^R$ given by $j_K(k) = k1_R$ and $j_A(\lambda) = 1_R \otimes \lambda$, so that $(j_K, j_A): (K, A) \rightarrow (R, A^R)$ is a change of algebras. Each $A^R$-module or bimodule pulls back along $j_A$ to be an $A$-module or bimodule. There is also a passage in the opposite direction. Each $K$-module $M$ determines an $R$-module $M^R = R \otimes M$ and a homomorphism $j_M: M \rightarrow M^R$ of $K$-modules given as $j_M(m) = 1 \otimes m$. Each $K$-module homomorphism $\mu: M \rightarrow N$ determines an $R$-module homomorphism $\mu^R: M^R \rightarrow N^R$ by $\mu^R(\cdot \otimes m) = \mu(\cdot \otimes m)$, so that $\mu^R j_M = j_N \mu$. Thus $T^R(M) = M^R$, $T^R(\mu) = \mu^R$ is a covariant functor on $K$-modules to $R$-modules. This functor preserves tensor products (with $\otimes$ for $\otimes_K$, as always), since $j$, and $j_N$ yield a natural isomorphism with an inverse given by $\varphi^{-1}[(r \otimes m) \otimes_R (r' \otimes n)] = r' \otimes m \otimes n$. We regard $\varphi$ as an identification.

For any $R$-module $U$ and any $K$-module $M$ there is a natural isomorphism

$$\psi: U \otimes M \approx U \otimes_R M^R, \quad \psi(u \otimes m) = u \otimes_R j_M m$$

of $R$-modules, where $U \otimes M$ on the left is an $R$-module via the $R$-module structure of the left factor $U$. The inverse of $\psi$ is given by $\psi^{-1}(u \otimes_R (r \otimes m)) = ur \otimes m$. There is a similar natural isomorphism of $R$-modules

$$\chi: \text{Hom}(M, U) \approx \text{Hom}_R(M^R, U), \quad (\chi f)(r \otimes m) = rf(m)$$

with inverse defined for each $R$-module homomorphism $g: M^R + U$ as $(\chi^{-1} g)(m) = g(1 \otimes m)$.

The homology and cohomology of an extended algebra $A^R$ with coefficients in any $A^R$-bimodule $A$ is entirely determined by that of $A$ with coefficients in $A$ pulled back along $j_A: A \rightarrow A^R$ to be a $A$-bimodule:

Theorem 6.1. For $K$-algebras $A$ and $R$, $R$ commutative, and for each $A^R$-bimodule $A$ there are natural isomorphisms

$$\tau_*: H_*(A, jA_j) \approx H_*(A, A), \quad a*: H^n(A, A) \approx H^n(A, jA_j)$$

of $R$-modules, where $H(A, A_j)$ is an $R$-module through the $R$-module structure of $A$. Here $\tau_*$ is induced by the change of algebras $\tau = (j_K, j_A, iA) : (K, A, jA_j) \rightarrow (R, A^R, A)$ in $B^+$, and $a*$ by $\sigma = (j_K, iA, iA) \in B^-$ (cf. § 4).

Proof. On the un-normalized complexes for homology, $\tau_*: A \otimes A^n \rightarrow A \otimes_R (A^R)^n$ is just the composite of $\psi: A \otimes A^n \approx A \otimes_R (A^n)^R$ with $\varphi: (A^n)^R \approx (A^R)^n$. By (6.1) and (6.2) both are isomorphisms, hence $\tau_*$ is an isomorphism for the complexes and hence for their homology $H_*(A, jA_j)$,
H_\ast (A^R, A). The argument for cohomology is analogous, using \( \chi \) in place of \( \psi \).

The direct product \( A = \Gamma \times \Sigma \) of two K-algebras may be treated as a special case of the direct product of two rings (IX.9). The Hochschild cohomology \( H^n(A, A) \) is \( \text{Ext}^n_{(R, S)}(A, A) \), where \( R = A \otimes A^{op} \) is

\[
(\Gamma \times \Sigma) \otimes (\Gamma \times \Sigma)^{op} \cong (\Gamma \otimes \Gamma^{op}) \times (\Sigma \otimes \Sigma^{op}) \times (\Gamma \otimes \Sigma^{op}) \times (\Sigma \otimes \Gamma^{op}),
\]

while \( S \) is the image of \( I: K \to A \otimes A^{op} \); the projection of this image on any one of the four direct factors of \( A \otimes A^{op} \) above is then the corresponding image of \( K \) in that factor. **Prop. IX.9.2** asserts that each A-bimodule \( A \) has a canonical decomposition

\[
A = 'A' \oplus 'A'' \oplus 'A'' \oplus 'A''', \quad A = \Gamma A, A = \Sigma A \quad (6.4)
\]

into the bimodules shown; explicitly, \( 'A' = \Gamma \otimes A \otimes A \Gamma \), etc. In particular, the A-bimodule \( A \) is represented as the direct sum \( A = \Gamma \oplus \Sigma \) of just two non-vanishing components; the \( \Gamma \)-bimodule \( \Gamma \) and the \( \Sigma \)-bimodule \( \Sigma \). **Thm.IX.9.4** for the case of four direct factors now implies

**Theorem 6.2.** For each \((\Gamma \times \Sigma)\)-bimodule \( A \) there are natural isomorphisms

\[
H^n(\Gamma \times \Sigma, A) \cong H^n(\Gamma, \Gamma \otimes_A A \otimes_A \Gamma) \oplus H^n(\Sigma, \Sigma \otimes_A A \otimes_A \Sigma), \quad (6.5)
\]

\[
H_\ast(\Gamma \times \Sigma, A) \cong H_\ast(\Gamma, \Gamma \otimes_A A \otimes_A \Gamma) \oplus H_\ast(\Sigma, \Sigma \otimes_A A \otimes_A \Sigma). \quad (6.6)
\]

Specifically, the projections \( \Gamma \times \Sigma \to \Gamma \) and \( A \to \Gamma \otimes_A A \otimes_A \Gamma \) yield a morphism \( \xi' \) in the change of algebras category \( \mathfrak{B}_K^+ \) of §4, hence a map \( \xi^+ : H_\ast(\Gamma \times \Sigma, A) \to H_\ast(\Gamma, \Gamma \otimes_A A \otimes_A \Gamma) \). Replacement of \( \Gamma \) by \( \Sigma \) gives \( \xi'' \); the isomorphism (6.6) is \( h \mapsto (\xi', h, \xi'', h) \). Similarly the isomorphism (6.5), in the opposite direction, is induced by the projection \( \Gamma \times \Sigma \to \Gamma \) and the injection \( \Gamma \otimes_A A \otimes_A \Gamma \to A \) in \( \mathfrak{B}_K^+ \).

**Exercises**

1. If \( \Pi \) is a group and \( K \) a commutative ring, give a direct description of the augmented K-algebra \( \mathcal{Z}(\Pi)^K \). (It is called the group algebra of \( \Pi \) over \( K \).)

2. If \( A \) is a A-bimodule, show that there is a unique \( A^R \)-bimodule structure on \( A^R \) such that \( (j_K, j_A, j_A^R) : (K, A, A) \to (\mathcal{R}, A^R, A^R) \) is a change of rings in \( \mathfrak{B} \). Derive a natural homomorphism \( H_\ast(A, A) \to H_\ast(A^R, A^R) \) and show by example that it need not be an isomorphism. Note also that \( A^R \) pulled back by \( j_A \) to be a \( A \)-bimodule is not identical with \( A \).

**7. Homology of Tensor Products**

Consider the tensor product \( A \otimes A' \) of two K-algebras \( A \) and \( A' \). If \( A \) and \( A' \) are bimodules over \( A \) and \( A' \), respectively, then \( A \otimes A' \) is a \( A \otimes A' \)-bimodule, with left operators given as \( (A \otimes A')(a \otimes a') = Aa \otimes a' \) and right operators similarly defined. In certain cases we can compute the homology of \( A \otimes A' \) from that of \( A \) and \( A' \).
Chapter X. Cohomology of Algebraic Systems

Proposition 7.1. If \( \varepsilon: X \rightarrow A \) and \( \varepsilon': X' \rightarrow A' \) are \( K \)-split resolutions of left \( A \) and \( A' \)-modules, respectively, then \( \varepsilon \otimes \varepsilon': X \otimes X' \rightarrow A \otimes A' \) is a \( K \)-split resolution of the left \( (A \otimes A') \)-module \( A \otimes A' \). If \( X \) and \( X' \) are relatively free, so is \( X \otimes X' \).

Proof. The hypothesis that \( X \) is \( K \)-split means, as in Cor. IX.5.3, that there is a \( K \)-module contracting homotopy \( s \) of square zero. These homotopies for \( X \) and \( X' \) combine, as in (V.9.3), to give a \( K \)-module contracting homotopy for \( \varepsilon \otimes \varepsilon': X \otimes X' \rightarrow A \otimes A' \), also of square zero.

If \( X \) and \( X' \) are relatively free, \( X_p = A \otimes M_p \) and \( X'_q = A' \otimes M'_q \) for \( K \)-modules \( M_p \) and \( M'_q \), so \( (X \otimes X')_n = \sum (A \otimes A') \otimes (M_p \otimes M'_q) \), with direct sum over \( p+q = n \), is also relatively free.

Applied to the bar resolution this gives

Corollary 7.2. For modules \( A, A' \) there is a chain equivalence

\[
B(A, A) \otimes B(A', A') \xrightarrow{\varepsilon} B(A \otimes A', A \otimes A') \tag{7.4}
\]

in which the maps are chain transformations of complexes of left \( A \otimes A' \)-modules commuting with \( \varepsilon \) and \( \varepsilon' \).

Proof. By Prop. 7.1, both sides are \( K \)-split relatively free resolutions of the left \( A \otimes A' \)-module \( A \otimes A' \); apply the comparison theorem.

An explicit chain transformation is given by the following natural map

\[
\{ a_1 \otimes a'_1 \cdots \otimes a_n \otimes a' \} = \sum_{i=0}^n a_{i+1} \cdots a_n a \otimes a'_1 \cdots a'_n \tag{7.2}
\]

indeed, the reader may verify that this is the canonical comparison. Alternatively, \( \varepsilon \) is the Alexander-Whitney map (VIII.8.7) defined on \( B(A, A) = \beta(A, A) \) by the simplicial structure of \( \beta(A, A) \).

For \( A = A, A' = A' \), this corollary yields a chain equivalence

\[
B(A, A) \otimes B(A', A') \xrightarrow{\varepsilon} B(A \otimes A', A \otimes A') \tag{7.3}
\]

of \( A \otimes A' \)-bimodules; the map \( \varepsilon \) is again given as in (7.2).

Theorem 7.3. The homology and cohomology products induce homomorphisms

\[
\varphi_A: H_k(A, A) \otimes H_m(A', A') \rightarrow H_{k+m}(A \otimes A', A \otimes A') \tag{7.4}
\]

\[
\varphi^A: H^k(A, A) \otimes H^m(A', A') \rightarrow H^{k+m}(A \otimes A', A \otimes A') \tag{7.5}
\]

of \( K \)-modules, natural in the bimodules \( A \) and \( A' \) and commuting with connecting homomorphisms for \( K \)-split short exact sequences of bimodules \( A \) or \( A' \). For \( k = m = 0 \), these products are induced by the identity map of \( A \otimes A' \). The products are associative.
Proof. The homology $H_k(A, A)$ is defined as $H_k(A \otimes \Omega B)$, where $\Omega$ is short for $A \otimes \text{A}^{\text{op}}$ and $B$ short for $B(A, A)$. The homology product of (VIII.1.2) is the natural map

$$p_H: H_k(A \otimes \Omega B) \otimes H_m(A' \otimes \Omega B') \to H_{k+m}[(A \otimes A') \otimes \Omega \otimes \Omega (B \otimes B')]$$

The right hand side is isomorphic to $H_{k+m}(A \otimes A', A \otimes A')$ under the equivalence $g_*$ of (7.3), so the product $p_A$ of (7.4) is defined as $g_*p_H$; in dimension zero (cf. (4.4)) it carries $\text{cls} a \otimes \text{cls} a'$ to $\text{cls}(a @ a')$. If $E$ is a K-split short exact sequence of A-bimodules, the tensor product sequence $E \otimes_K A'$ is also short exact, as a sequence of A-bimodules, so appropriate connecting homomorphisms are defined. They commute with $p_H$ by Thm.VIII.1.3 and with the natural map $g_*$, and hence with $p_A$.

In the above definition of this homology product, the bar resolution $B = B(A, A)$ may be replaced by any K-split resolution of A by relative projective A-bimodules.

The cohomology case is analogous. Write $H^k(A, A)$ as $H^k(Hom_{\Omega}(B, A))$, use the cohomology product

$$p^H: H^k((Hom_{\Omega}(B, A)) \otimes H^m(Hom_{\Omega} (B', A')) \to H^{k+m}(Hom_{\Omega} \otimes \Omega (B \otimes B', A \otimes A'))$$

of (VIII.1.3), and compose with the isomorphism $f^*$ induced by the chain equivalence f of (7.3) to define $p^A$ as $f^*p^H$. Since f is the Alexander-Whitney map, $p^A$ may be regarded as a simplicial cup product. If $k=m=0$, $H^0(A, A)$ is the K-submodule $A'$ of A consisting of the invariant elements of A, as in (3.3). Now $a \in A$ and $a' \in A'$ imply that $a \otimes a' \in (A \otimes A') \otimes A'$ so the identity induces a K-module homomorphism

$$A^A \otimes A' \to (A \otimes A') \otimes A^A \cong H^0(A \otimes A', A \otimes A').$$

The formula above for f in dimension zero shows that this map is $p^A$.

Theorem 7.4. If A and A' are algebras over the same field, the homology product for bimodules $A$ and $A'$ yields for each $n$ a natural isomorphism

$$\phi_A: \sum_{k+m=n} H_k(A, A) \otimes H_m(A', A') \cong H_n(A \otimes A', A \otimes A').$$

If $A$ and $A'$ are K-modules of finite type the cohomology product is a natural isomorphism

$$\phi^A: \sum_{k+m=n} H^k(A, A) \otimes H^m(A', A') \cong H^n(A \otimes A', A \otimes A').$$

Proof. The first isomorphism is an immediate application of the Kiinneth tensor formula, as restated in Thm.VIII.1.1. If $A$ is of finite type, each $B_n(A, A)$ is a free A-bimodule of finite type, so the Hom-$\otimes$ interchange is an homomorphism and Thm.VIII.1.2 applies.
This theorem was first proved by Rose [1952] before the techniques of resolutions were known, so his proof depended essentially upon a direct construction of the chain equivalence (7.3), using shuffles to describe the map g.

For algebras over a field, \( H^n(A, A) = \text{Ext}^n_{A^{-A}}(A, A) \).

Using \( \text{bidim} A \) to denote the homological dimension of \( A \) as a bi-module, this theorem shows, for algebras of finite type over a field, that \( \text{bidim} (A \otimes A') \geq \text{bidim} A + \text{bidim} A' \). Similarly, Thm. 6.2 above shows

\[
\text{bidim} (I \times \Sigma) = \text{Max} (\text{bidim} I, \text{bidim} \Sigma).
\]

This yields a fancier proof of the result (Prop. VII.5.2) that \( \text{bidim} I = 0 = \text{bidim} \Sigma \) implies \( \text{bidim} (I \times \Sigma) = 0 \).

**Exercises**

1. For \( G \) a right module and \( A \) a left module over \( A \), the \( k \)-th relative torsion product is \( H_k(G \otimes_A B \otimes_A A) \), with \( B \) short for \( B(A, A) \). The external product for the relative torsion functor is the map

\[
\tilde{\varphi}_T : \text{Tor}_k(A, K) \otimes \text{Tor}_m(A', K)(G, A3) \to \text{Tor}_k(A \otimes A', K)(G \otimes G', A \otimes A')
\]

defined as the composite of the homology product for complexes, the chain transformation given by two applications of the middle-four interchange, and the chain equivalence \( g \) of (7.3). Show that \( \tilde{\varphi}_T \) is natural, commutes with connecting homomorphisms in all four arguments, and reduces for \( k = m = 0 \) to the middle-four interchange.

2. For \( K \) a field, show that the relative torsion product of Ex. 1 gives an isomorphism

\[
\sum_{k+m=n} \text{Tor}_k(G, A) \otimes \text{Tor}_m(G', A') \cong \text{Tor}_n(G \otimes G', A \otimes A').
\]

3. Show that the product \( \varphi_A \) of the text is (via (4.4)) a special case of the external product for the relative torsion product.

4. Construct the analogous external product for the relative Ext functor.

**8. The Case of Graded Algebras**

If \( G_A \) and \( A A \) are modules over a graded \( K \)-algebra \( A \), their tensor product \( G \otimes_A A \), as described in (VI.5.7), is a graded \( K \)-module. Moreover, the functor \( G \otimes_A A \) is right exact: Each \( K \)-split short exact sequence \( A \to B \to C \) of left \( A \)-modules yields a right exact sequence

\[
G \otimes_A A \to G \otimes_A B \to G \otimes_A C \to 0
\]

of graded \( K \)-modules. To continue this exact sequence to the left requires the \( (A-K) \)-relative torsion products \( \text{Tor}_n(G, C) \), each of which, like \( G \otimes_A A \), must be a graded \( K \)-module \( \text{Tor}_n = \{ \text{Tor}_{n, \rho} | \rho = 0, 1, \ldots \} \). We now describe how this comes about.
The bar resolution applies to any graded K-algebra A, using the general process of IX.7 for the resolvent pair of categories with \( A \) the category of (automatically graded) left A-modules \( \mathcal{C} \), \( \mathcal{M} \) that of graded K-modules \( M \), \( F(M) = A \otimes M \), \( e(m) = 1 \otimes m \), both categories with morphisms of degree 0. Note that \( A = \{ A_\phi \} \), \( C = \{ C_\phi \} \), and \( M = \{ M_\phi \} \) are all graded K-modules. The explicit formulas for the bar resolution in §2 still apply, with the understanding that each A-module \( B_\phi(A, C) \) is graded; indeed, the degree of a generator of \( B_\phi(A, C) \) is given by

\[
\text{deg } \lambda_1 \cdots | \lambda_n | c = \text{deg } \lambda + \text{deg } \lambda_1 + \cdots + \text{deg } \lambda_n + \text{deg } c. \quad (8.1)
\]

This element has also dimension \( n \) as an element of \( B_\phi(A, C) \); in other words, \( B(A, C) \) is bigraded by the submodules \( B_\phi(A, C) \) of dimension \( n \) and degree \( \phi \) in the sense (8.1).

In consequence, the relative torsion functor \( \text{Tor}^{(A, K)} \) is bigraded. Indeed, if \( G \) is a right A-module, this torsion functor is calculated as the homology of the complex \( X = G \otimes_A B(A, C) \), where each \( X_n = G \otimes_A B \), is a graded K-module. Specifically, \( X_n \) is generated by elements \( g[\lambda_1] \cdots | \lambda_n | c \) with the degree given by (8.1) (with \( \lambda \) there replaced by \( g \)). The boundary homomorphism \( \partial : X_n \rightarrow X_{n-1} \) is of degree 0 in this grading. For each dimension the homology \( \text{Tor}_n(G, C) = H_n(X) \) is therefore a graded K-module, so may be written as a family \( \{ H_{n, \phi}(X) \} \) of K-modules: The relative torsion functor is the bigraded K-module

\[
\text{Tor}^{(A,K)}(G, C) = H_{n, \phi}(G \otimes_A B(A, C)). \quad (8.2)
\]

The first degree \( n \) is the resolution dimension; the second degree \( \phi \) is the "internal" degree, inherited from the gradings of \( G \) and \( C \). The standard long exact sequences for \( \text{Tor} \), have maps which are of degree 0 in the internal grading \( \phi \), hence may be regarded as a family of exact sequences in \( \text{Tor}_n, \phi \), one for each \( \phi \) and variable \( n \).

Similar remarks apply to the relative functor \( \text{Ext}^{(A, K)} \). It is the cohomology of the complex \( \text{Hom}_A(B(A, C), A) \), which is a complex of 2-graded K-modules: That is, a family of complexes \( \{ \text{Hom}_A^\phi(B, A) \} \), one for each integer \( \phi \). Therefore

\[
\text{Ext}^{(A,K)}_{n, \phi}(C, A) = H^n(\text{Hom}_A^\phi(B(A, C), A))
\]

is a bigraded K-module, in which the second grading (by \( \phi \)) is a \( Z \)-grading.

It suffices to know this functor for all modules \( C \) and \( A \) and second grading \( \phi = 0 \). This we prove by shifting degrees. For each graded K-module \( M \) we denote by \( L(M) \) the same module with all degrees increased by 1; formally, \( L(M)_{n+1} = M_n \). The identity then induces an isomorphism \( i : M \rightarrow L(M) \) of graded K-modules, of degree 1, with
Chapter X. Cohomology of Algebraic Systems

inverse \( l^{-1} : L(M) + M \). A homomorphism \( \mu : M \to M' \) of degree \( d \) is a family of K-module homomorphisms \( \mu_n : M_n \to M'_n \); the corresponding \( L(\mu) : L(M) \to L(M') \) of the same degree \( d \) is defined by \( L(\mu)_{n+1} = (-1)^d \mu_n : L(M)_{n+1} \to L(M')_{n+d+1} \); in other words,

\[
L(\mu)m = (-1)^{\deg \mu} \mu_m, \quad m \in M_n, \quad lm \in L(M)_{n+1}. \quad (8.3)
\]

The sign is the usual one for the commutation of morphisms \( L(\mu) \) and \( l \) of degrees \( d \) and \( 1 \). Since \( L(\mu)l = L(\mu)L(l) \), \( L \) is a covariant functor on the category of graded K-modules with morphisms of degree 0, while \( l : M \to L(M) \) is a natural transformation. A left \( A \)-module \( A \) is a graded K-module with operators \( A \otimes A \to A \), so \( L(A) \) is also a left \( A \)-module with operators

\[
\lambda(la) = (-1)^{\deg \lambda} l(\lambda a), \quad a \in A_n, \quad la \in L(A)_{n+1}, \quad (8.4)
\]

\( L \) is a covariant functor on \( A \)-modules to \( A \)-modules, \( l : A \to LA \) is a homomorphism of \( A \)-modules of degree 1 and a natural transformation of the identity functor to \( L \). The sign in (8.4) is exactly that required by the rule \( l(\lambda a) = (-1)^{\deg l \deg \lambda} \lambda(la) \) for a homomorphism of degree 1.

Composition with \( l \) yields a natural isomorphism

\[
\Hom_A^p(C, A) \cong \Hom_A^{p-1}(C, LA)
\]

and by iteration a natural isomorphism

\[
\Hom_A^p(C, A) \cong \Hom_A^0(C, L^pA).
\]

With \( C \) replaced by the complex \( B(A, C) \), this yields the natural isomorphism

\[
\Ext^p_{(A, K)}(C, A) \cong \Ext^0_{(A, K)}(C, L^pA), \quad (8.5)
\]

which for \( n = 0 \) includes the previous isomorphism. Similarly

\[
\Ext^p_{(A, K)}(C, A) \cong \Ext^0_{(A, K)}(L^p C, A). \quad (8.6)
\]

These functors \( \Ext \) have proved useful for the Steenrod algebra for a fixed prime number \( p \); this is the algebra over the field \( \mathbb{Z}_p \) of integers modulo \( p \) consisting of all primary cohomology operations, modulo \( p \). — Adams [1960], Liulevicius [1960].

Exercise

1. For \( A \) graded, regard the corresponding internally graded algebra \( A_* = \sum A_n \) simply as an ungraded K-algebra. Similarly \( A \)-modules \( G \) and \( C \) yield \( A_* \)-modules \( G_* \) and \( C_* \). Prove that

\[
\Tor^p_{(A, K)}(G^*, C^*) \cong \sum \Tor^p_{(A, K)}(G, C).
\]
9. Complexes of Complexes

In any abelian category we may construct complexes; in particular, there are complexes in the category whose objects are themselves complexes and whose morphisms are chain transformations. These will occur in our study of DG-algebras in the next section.

A complex $X$ of complexes may be displayed as a diagram

$$
\begin{array}{cccccccc}
& X_p: & \cdots & \rightarrow & X_{p,q+1} & \stackrel{d}{\rightarrow} & X_{p,q} & \stackrel{d}{\rightarrow} & X_{p,q-1} & \rightarrow & \cdots \\
\downarrow \delta' & & & & \downarrow \delta' & & \downarrow \delta' & & \downarrow \delta' & & \\
X_{p-1}: & \cdots & \rightarrow & X_{p-1,q+1} & \stackrel{d}{\rightarrow} & X_{p-1,q} & \stackrel{d}{\rightarrow} & X_{p-1,q-1} & \rightarrow & \cdots 
\end{array}
$$

with additional rows below and above. Each row $X_p$ is a complex with boundary $\delta$, while the successive rows form a complex under another boundary $\delta'$ which is a chain transformation $\delta': X_p \rightarrow X_{p-1}$. Hence $\delta' \delta = \delta \delta'$. Adjust the sign of $d$ by setting $\delta'' x_{p,q} = (-1)^q d x_{p,q}$. This gives two families of boundary operators

$$
\delta': X_{p,q} \rightarrow X_{p-1,q}, \quad \delta'': X_{p,q} \rightarrow X_{p-1,q-1}
$$

with $\delta' \delta' = 0$, $\delta'' \delta'' = 0$, and $\delta' \delta'' + \delta'' \delta' = 0$. These imply formally that $(\delta' + \delta'')(\delta' + \delta'') = 0$. Thus the family $X^0$, $\delta^0$ defined by

$$
(X^0)_n = \sum_{p+q=n} X_{p,q}, \quad \delta^0 = \delta' + \delta''
$$
is a (single) complex. We say that $X^0$ is obtained from $X$ by condensation; its degree is the sum of the two given degrees; its boundary $\delta^0$ the sum of the two given boundaries, with sign adjustment. This sign adjustment may be made plausible by a more systematic presentation.

Let $\mathcal{A}$ be any abelian category. Recall that a (positive) $\mathcal{A}$-complex $X$ is a family $\{X_p\}$ of objects of $\mathcal{A}$ with $X_p = 0$ for $p < 0$, together with morphisms $\delta: X_p \rightarrow X_{p-1}$ of $\mathcal{A}$ such that $\delta^2 = 0$. These $X$ are the objects of the category $\mathcal{K}(\mathcal{A})$ of $\mathcal{A}$-complexes. The morphisms of $\mathcal{K}(\mathcal{A})$ are the chain transformations $f: X \rightarrow Y$; they are families $\{f_p: X_p \rightarrow Y_p\}$ of $\mathcal{A}$-morphisms with $\delta f_p = f_{p-1} \delta$ for all $p$. A chain homotopy $s: f \simeq f': X \rightarrow Y$ is a family $s_p: X_p \rightarrow Y_{p+1}$ of $\mathcal{A}$-morphisms with $\delta s + s \delta = f - f'$. We also use chain maps $h: X+Y$ of degree $d$; that is, families $\{h_p: X_p \rightarrow Y_{p+d}\}$ of $\mathcal{A}$-morphisms with $\delta h = (-1)^d h \delta$. We do not explicitly introduce the category with morphisms all such chain "maps" because our discussion of abelian categories is adapted only to the case of morphisms of degree 0.

The lifting functor $L$ of § 8 gives a covariant functor on $\mathcal{K}(\mathcal{A})$ to $\mathcal{K}(\mathcal{A})$, which assigns to each complex $X$ the complex $L(X)$ with $L(X)_n = X_n$ and differential $L(\delta)$. The identity induces a chain map $l: X \rightarrow L(X)$ of degree 1; as in (8.3), $L(\delta)l = -l \delta$. In brief, $L$ raises all degrees by 1 and changes the sign of the boundary operator.
Theorem 9.1. Condensation is a covariant functor $\mathcal{A}(\mathcal{F}(\mathcal{A})) \to \mathcal{A}(\mathcal{A})$.

Proof. Let $X$ be a positive complex of positive complexes, in the form

$$0 \leftarrow X_0 \leftarrow X_1 \leftarrow \cdots \leftarrow X_{p-1} \leftarrow X_p \leftarrow \cdots$$

Each $X_p$ is a complex, each $\partial_p$ a chain transformation of complexes. Replace by the diagram $X'$,

$$0 \leftarrow X'_0 \leftarrow X'_1 \leftarrow \cdots \leftarrow X'_{p-1} \leftarrow X'_p \leftarrow \cdots,$$

where each $\partial'_p$ is a chain map of degree $-1$. More formally, set $X'_p = L^p(X_p)$. The chain maps

$$X'_p = L^p L^{p-1}(X_p) \xrightarrow{l^{-1}} L^{p-1}(X_p) \xrightarrow{l^{-1} \partial_p} L^{p-1}(X_{p-1}) = X'_{p-1}$$

define $\partial'_p$ as $l^{-1} L^p(\partial_p) = L^{p-1}(\partial_p) l^{-1}$. Then $\partial'_p \partial'_{p+1} = 0$. Each $X'_p$ is an $\&$-complex with a boundary operator which we denote as $\partial''$. Therefore $X'' = \sum X'_p$ is an $\&$-complex with boundary $\partial''$. On the other hand, $\partial''' = -\partial' \partial''$. Therefore $\partial'' = \partial''' = \partial''$ satisfies $\partial'' \partial'' = 0$, so $(X'', \partial'')$ is an $\mathcal{A}$-complex, called the condensation of $X$. This description of $X''$ agrees with the initial description, since the boundary $\partial''$ of $X_p$ is that of $X_{p+1}$ with $\partial$ sign changes due to $p$ applications of $L$. Since $X_{p+n} = 0$ for $p + n > m$, only finite direct sums are involved in the construction of $X''$.

Now let $f: X \to Y$ be a chain transformation. It is a family of chain transformations $\{f_p: X_p \to Y_p\}$ and determines $f': X' \to Y'$ as the family $f'_p = L^p(f_p): X'_p \to Y'_p$. Thus $f'_p \partial'' = \partial'' f'_p$ and $\partial' f'_p = f'_{p-1} \partial'$. Hence $f'' = \sum f'_p$ satisfies $\partial'' f'' = f'' \partial''$, so is a chain transformation $f'': X'' \to Y''$. This shows condensation a functor, as stated.

Proposition 9.2. Each chain homotopy $s: f \Rightarrow g: X \to Y$ in $\mathcal{A}(\mathcal{F}(\mathcal{A}))$ determines a chain homotopy $s'' = g'' \circ X': M' \to Y'$ in the condensed complexes.

Proof. We are given a family $\{s_p: X_p \to Y_{p+1}\}$ of morphisms of $\mathcal{A}(\mathcal{A})$ with $s_{p+1} s_p + s_{p-1} \partial_p = f_p - g_p$. Each $s_p$ is a chain transformation, so determines a chain map $s_p: X'_p \to Y'_{p+1}$ of degree $l$. Specifically, $s_p = L^p(s_p) l^{-1} L^p(\partial_p): L^p(X_p) \to L^p(Y_{p+1})$. Since $s_p$ has degree $1$, $\partial'' s'_p = -s'_p \partial''$. On the other hand, by lifting, $\partial' s' + s' \partial = f' - g'$. Adding, $s'' = \sum s'_p$ gives $s'' = X'M + Y'M$ of degree $1$ with $P s'' P = f'' - g''$; hence $s''$ is a chain homotopy, as asserted.

We also consider the effect of condensation upon tensor products of complexes. In the initial category $\mathcal{A}$, assume a tensor product which is a covariant bifunctor on $\mathcal{A}$ to $\mathcal{A}$. A tensor product is introduced...
in the category $\mathcal{X}(\mathcal{A})$ of $\mathcal{A}$-complexes $X, Y$ by the usual formulas, with $(X \otimes Y)_n = \sum_{p+q=n} X_p \otimes Y_q$ and

$$\partial = (\partial_X \otimes 1) + (-1)^p 1 \otimes \partial_Y : X_p \otimes Y_q \to (X \otimes Y)_{p+q-1}. \quad (9.1)$$

In particular, if $\mathcal{A}$ is the category of modules over some commutative ground ring these formulas introduce tensor products in the category $\mathcal{X}(\mathcal{X}(\mathcal{A}))$ of complexes of complexes.

Proposition 9.3. There is a natural isomorphism $p : (X \otimes Y)^\bullet \cong X^\bullet \otimes Y^\bullet$.

Proof. For $K$ and $K'$ single complexes in $\mathcal{X}(\mathcal{A})$, and any $p, q$ there is a chain isomorphism $\psi_{p,q} : L^{p+q}(K \otimes K') \cong L^p K \otimes L^q K'$, given by

$$\psi_{p,q} : \partial^{p+q}(k \otimes k') = (-1)^q \deg k \partial^p k \otimes \partial^q k'. \quad (9.2)$$

Now let $X$ and $Y$ be complexes of complexes (i.e., in $\mathcal{X}(\mathcal{X}(\mathcal{A}))$). The complex of complexes $X \otimes Y$ has $(X \otimes Y)_n = \sum X_p \otimes Y_q$, so the $\psi_{p,q}$ for $p+q=n$ give a chain isomorphism of single complexes

$$\psi_n : L^n((X \otimes Y)_n) \cong \sum_{p+q=n} L^p (X_p) \otimes L^q (Y_q) \quad (9.3)$$

The complex $(X \otimes Y)^\bullet$ is the direct sum of the $L^n((X \otimes Y)_n)$, with boundary $\partial' + \partial''$. The complex $X^e \otimes Y^e$ is $(\sum L^p X_p) \otimes (\sum L^q Y_q)$ with boundary determined by the usual tensor product formula (9.1) from the boundaries $\partial' = \partial' + \partial''$ in $X^\bullet$ and in $Y^\bullet$. By construction, $\psi_n$ commutes with the $\partial''$ part of the boundary; a straightforward calculation shows that it commutes with $\partial'$, and hence with the total boundary $\partial^\bullet$.

Note. The notion of a complex of complexes is not usually distinguished from the closely related notion of a "bicomplex", which will be discussed in XI.6. The superficial difference is just one of sign, in the formula $\partial' x_{p,q} = (-1)^q \partial x_{p,q}$.

10. Resolutions and Constructions

From algebras $A$ we now shift to DGA-algebras $U$. When a $U$-module $A$ is resolved, two boundary operators arise: One from that in $A$, the other from the resolution. Suitable combination of these boundaries make the resolution into a single $U$-module, called a "construction"; in particular, the canonical resolution of the ground ring yields the "bar construction" $B(U)$. This might be described directly by the string of formulas (10.4)—(10.8) below, which yield the basic properties of $B(U)$, as formulated in Thm. 10.4, as well as its relation to the "reduced" bar construction of Cor. 10.5. Instead, we first describe the bar construction conceptually by condensing the canonical resolution for a suitable relative category.
Let $U$ be a DGA-algebra (differential graded augmented algebra) over the commutative ring $K$. Each left $U$-module $A$ (as defined in (VI.7.3)) is by neglect a DG-module (i.e., a positive complex of $K$-modules). It follows that $U$ determines a resolvent pair of categories

$\mathcal{A}$ = all left $U$-modules $A$, with morphisms of degree 0,

$\mathcal{M}$ = all DG-modules $M$, with morphisms of degree 0,

$F(M) = U \otimes M$, and $\varepsilon(m) = 1 \otimes m \in F(M)$. Write $\varepsilon: U+K$ for the augmentation of $U$; by pull-back, $\varepsilon K$ is a left $U$-module. An augmentation of $A$ or of $M$ is a morphism

$\varepsilon_A: A \to \varepsilon K$, $\varepsilon_M: M \to K$.

Proposition 10.1. Each left $U$-module $A$ determines a DG-module

$\overline{A} = K \otimes_U A \cong A/JA$,

where $J$ is the kernel of $\varepsilon: U \to K$. If $A$ is augmented, so is $\overline{A}$.

Proof. Recall (VI.7) that the tensor product of $U$-modules is a DG-module. Since $J \to U \to K$ is an exact sequence of right $U$-modules,

$J \otimes_U A \to U \otimes_U A \to K \otimes_U A \to 0$

is a right exact sequence of DG-modules. But $U \otimes_U A \cong A$, so the module $\overline{A}$ on the right is isomorphic to the quotient of $A$ by the image $JA$ of $J \otimes_U A$. If $A$ is augmented by $\varepsilon_A$, define an augmentation of $\overline{A}$ by $\varepsilon_{\overline{A}}(k \otimes a) = keA(a)$.

Call $\overline{A}$ the reduced module of $A$ and $\phi: A \to \overline{A} = A/JA$ its projection. The $U$-module $A$ is like a "fiber bundle" with "group" $U$ acting on $A$ and "base" $\overline{A}$ obtained by "dividing out" the action of $U$. The corresponding analogue of an acyclic fiber bundle is a "construction". (Warning: This terminology does not agree with that of CARTAN [1955].)

A construction for $U$ is an augmented left $U$-module $\varepsilon_C: C \to \varepsilon K$ which has a DG-module contracting homotopy of square zero. This homotopy may be written as

$t_{-1}: K \to C$, $t_n: C_n \to C_{n+1}$, $n \geq 0$;

t_{-1}$ is a morphism of DG-modules, $t = \{t_n | n \geq 0\}$ is a homomorphism of graded $K$-modules, of degree 1, and

$\varepsilon_C t_{-1} = 1$, $\partial t + t \partial = 1 - t_{-1} \varepsilon_C$, $tt_{-1} = 0 = tt$. \hfill (10.1)

A construction $C$ is relatively free if there is a graded $K$-module $D$ and an isomorphism $U \otimes D \cong C$ of modules over the graded algebra $U$. The definition of the reduced module $\overline{C}$ then reads

$\overline{C} \cong K_0 \otimes_U (U \otimes D) = (K_0 \otimes_U U) \otimes D = K \otimes D = D$;
hence D may be identified with $\overline{C}$, so a construction is relatively free if there is an isomorphism

$$\varphi: U \otimes \overline{C} \cong C$$

(of modules over the graded algebra $U$).

To repeat: $\varphi$ commutes with the operators by $u \in U$, but not necessarily with the differential. Moreover, the projection $\hat{p}: C \to \overline{C} = C/\text{J}C$ of Prop. 10.1 is given by $p \varphi(u \otimes \overline{C}) = \varepsilon(u) \overline{C}$. Hence $i(\overline{C}) = \varphi(1 \otimes \overline{C})$ is a monomorphism $i: \overline{C} \to C$ of graded $K$-modules with $\hat{p}i$ the identity $\overline{C} \to \overline{C}$. We can and will use $i$ to identify $\overline{C}$, as a graded $K$-module (not as a DG-module) with a submodule of $C$.

Theorem 10.2. **Condensation** is a covariant functor on $\mathcal{M}$-split resolutions $X$ of $eK$ by $U$-modules to constructions $X^O$ for $U$. If $X$ is relatively free, so is $X^O$.

Proof. Let $\varepsilon_X: X \to eK$ be a resolution by $U$-modules $X_p$. By neglect each $U$-module $X_p$ is a DG-module; that is, a positive complex. By the same neglect, $X$ is a complex of complexes, so has a condensation $X^O = \sum L^p(X_p)$ which is a DG-module under boundary operators $\partial'$, $\partial''$, and $\partial^0 = \partial' + \partial''$. But if $A$ is a $U$-module, then $L(A)$ is a $U$-module with $u(\text{Im}) = (-1)^\text{deg} u \cdot \text{Im}(u)$. Hence $L^p(X_p)$ is a $U$-module with differential $\partial''$, while $\partial': L^p(X_p) \to L^{p-1}(X_{p-1})$ is a map of $U$-modules of degree $-1$, so that, writing $\partial u$ for the differential of $u \in U$,

$$\partial''(u(x)) = (\partial u)x + (-1)^\text{deg} u(\partial'x), \quad \partial'(u(x)) = (-1)^\text{deg} u(\partial'x). \tag{10.2}$$

The augmentation $\varepsilon_X$ of $X$ condenses to an augmentation $\varepsilon^O: X^O \to eK$. The contracting homotopy of $X$ (present because $X$ is $\mathcal{M}$-split) condenses by Prop. 9.2 to a contracting homotopy $s^O$ of square zero in $X^O$. This $s^O$ satisfies the analogue of (10.1); in particular

$$\partial's^O + s^O \partial' = 1 - s^O \varepsilon^O, \quad \partial''s^O + s^O \partial'' = 0. \tag{10.3}$$

If $X$ is relatively free, each $X_p$ has the form $U \otimes M_p$ for some DG-module $M$. Thus $L^p(X_p) \cong U \otimes L^p(M_p)$, so $X^O \cong U \otimes \sum L^p(M_p)$ shows $X^O$ relatively free.

Next we condense the canonical comparison (Thm.IX.6.2).

Theorem 10.3. **(Comparison** theorem.) If $X \to eK$ is a relatively free resolution and $Y \to eK$ an $\mathcal{M}$-split resolution, both by $U$-modules, there is a unique homomorphism $\varphi: X^{O+Y^O}$ of augmented $U$-modules with

$$\varphi X^O \subset s^O Y^O,$$

where $s^O$ is the contracting homotopy of $Y^O$.

The proof is by (IX.6.1); the submodule $eM$ of $X$ is here $X^O \subset X^O$. 

Mac Lane, Homology
The left bar resolution $B(U)$ is an $\mathcal{M}$-split resolution of $\_K$ by relatively free left $U$-modules, so its condensation $B^\bullet(U)$ is a construction called the bar construction. Specifically, $B^\bullet(U)$ is the graded $K$-module $\sum U \otimes L^p((U/K)^p)$; as a tensor product, it is generated by elements which we write in the usual form as

$$u[u_1| \ldots |u_p]^\bullet = u \otimes (u_1 + K) \otimes \cdots \otimes (u_p + K)$$

for $u$ and $u_i \in U$. By normalization, this element is zero if any $u_i \in K$.

The degree of such an element is

$$\text{deg}(u[u_1| \ldots |u_p]^\bullet) = p + \text{deg } u + \text{deg } u_1 + \cdots + \text{deg } u_p; \quad (10.4)$$

an element is multiplied by $u' \in U$ by multiplying its first factor by $u'$. The augmentation is

$$\varepsilon_B(u[u]^\bullet) = \varepsilon(u), \quad (10.5)$$

and the contracting homotopy is determined by $s_{-1}(1) = 1[u]^\bullet$ and

$$s^\bullet(u[u_1| \ldots |u_p]^\bullet) = 1[u|u_1| \ldots |u_p]^\bullet, \quad p \geq 0. \quad (10.6)$$

The normalization insures that $s^\bullet s^\bullet = 0$. The formulas for the two boundary operators $\partial'$ and $\partial''$ are most easily found from that for $s^\bullet$ by recursion on $p$, using (10.3) and (10.2); they are

$$\partial''(u[u_1| \ldots |u_p]^\bullet) = \partial u[u_1| \ldots |u_p]^\bullet$$

$$- \sum_{i=1}^p (-1)^{i-1} u[u_1| \ldots |u_i| \ldots |u_p]^\bullet, \quad (10.7)$$

$$\partial'(u[u_1| \ldots |u_p]^\bullet) = (-1)^{i-1} u_1[u_2| \ldots |u_p]^\bullet$$

$$+ \sum_{i=1}^{p-1} (-1)^{i+1} u[u_1| \ldots |u_iu_{i+1}| \ldots |u_p]^\bullet$$

$$+ (-1)^{p+1} u[u_1| \ldots |u_{p-1}]^\bullet \varepsilon(u_p), \quad (10.8)$$

with the exponents $e_i$ of the signs given for $i = 0, \ldots, p$ by

$$e_i = i + \text{deg } u + \text{deg } u_1 + \cdots + \text{deg } u_i = \text{deg}(u[u_1| \ldots |u_i]). \quad (10.9)$$

Except for sign, $\partial''$ is the boundary of a tensor product, and $\partial'$ like that of the bar resolution. Incidentally, the signs in (10.7) and (10.8) can be read as cases of our usual sign conventions.

Thus Thm.10.2 gives

**Theorem** 10.4. For each DGA-algebra $U$ the condensed left bar construction $B^\bullet(U) = \sum_p U \otimes (U/K)^p$ is an augmented left $U$-module with augmentation $\varepsilon_B^\bullet$, grading given by (10.4), boundary $\partial^\bullet = \partial' + \partial''$ by (10.7) and (10.8), and contracting homotopy by (10.6).
This theorem can also be proved directly from the formulas above, with proofs of (10.2), (10.3), and \( \partial' \partial'' + \partial'' \partial = 0 \) en route.

In the sequel we use only the condensed bar construction for a DGA-algebra, so we shall drop the now superfluous dot. The curious reader may note that the signs occurring in this boundary formula are not those arising in the bar resolution of § 2 for an algebra. The change of signs can be deduced from the lifting operation \( L^P \); we have avoided the meticulous control of this change by deriving the signs from (10.2) and (10.3).

As for any \( U \)-module, the reduced bar construction \( \bar{B}(U) \) has the form \( K \otimes_U B(U) \), and \( \bar{B}(U) \) is regarded as a graded \( K \)-submodule of \( B(U) \).

**Corollary 10.5.** For each DGA-algebra \( U \) the reduced bar construction \( \bar{B}(U) \) is a DG-module over \( K \) with \( \bar{B}(U) = \sum L^p((U/K)^p) \). If elements are denoted by \([u_1] \ldots [u_p]\) for \( u_i \in U \), the degree of these elements is given by (10.4) with \( u \) omitted, the boundary \( \partial = \partial' + \partial'' \) by (10.7) and (10.8) with \( u = 1 \) and with \( u \) replaced by \( \epsilon(u) \) in the first term on the right of (10.8).

Note also that the projection \( \varphi : B(U) \rightarrow \bar{B}(U) \cong B(U)/J_B(U) \) is given by \( \varphi([u_1] \ldots [u_p]) = \epsilon(u) [u_1] \ldots [u_p] \); it is a morphism of DG-modules of degree zero. The isomorphism \( \varphi^* : B(U) \cong U \otimes \bar{B}(U) \) is given by \( \varphi^*(u[y] \ldots [u_p]) = u \otimes [u_1] \ldots [u_p] \); it is an isomorphism of modules over the graded algebra of \( U \), but does not respect the differential, because \( \varphi \partial' = \partial' \varphi \).

The bar construction has the convenient property
\[
\text{s}_1 K \otimes sB(U) = \bar{B}(U);
\]
in words, the image of the contracting homotopy is exactly the reduced bar construction, regarded as a graded submodule of \( B \).

**Corollary 10.6.** Both \( \bar{B}(U) \) and \( B(U) \), the latter with its contracting homotopy, are covariant functors of the DGA-algebra \( U \) with values in the category of DG-modules over \( K \). Moreover, \( \varphi : B(U) \rightarrow \bar{B} \) and \( i : \bar{B} \rightarrow B \) are natural transformations of functors.

**Proof.** If \( \mu : U \rightarrow V \) is a homomorphism of DGA-algebras, then \( B(V) \) pulled back along \( \mu \) is a \( U \)-module, still with a \( K \)-module contracting homotopy. Hence the canonical comparison of Thm. 10.3 gives a unique homomorphism
\[
B(\mu) : B(U) \rightarrow _\mu B(V)
\]
of \( U \)-modules with \( \epsilon' B(\mu) = \epsilon \). Moreover, \( J_B(U) \) is mapped into \( \mu(J)B(V) \), so \( B(\mu) \) induces a homomorphism \( \bar{B}(\mu) \) such that \( \varphi B(\mu) = B(\mu) \varphi \). These maps make \( B \) and \( \bar{B} \) functors, as asserted.
Exercises

1. Describe the bar construction explicitly when \( K = \mathbb{Z}_p \) is the field of integers modulo \( p \) and \( U = E(x) \) is the exterior algebra on a generator of odd degree.

2. Obtain a resolution of \( \varepsilon K \) when \( K = \mathbb{Z}_p \), \( U = P[x]/(x^p) \), the ring of polynomials in an indeterminate \( x \) of even degree, modulo \( x^p \).

3. (Uniqueness of comparison.) If \( X \to \varepsilon K \) is a relatively free resolution, while \( C \) is any construction for \( U \) with contracting homotopy \( t \), there is at most one homomorphism \( \varphi: X^\bullet \to C \) of augmented \( U \)-modules with \( \varepsilon(\varphi)(X^\bullet) \leq_{t-1} K \cup tC \).

11. Two-stage Cohomology of DGA-Algebras

The cohomology of a DGA-algebra \( U \) with coefficients in a (trivially graded) \( K \)-module \( G \) can be defined in two ways or "stages". For stage zero, regard \( U \), by neglect, as a complex (= a DG-module); so that \( \text{Hom}_K(U, G) \) and \( G \otimes_K U \) are complexes with (co)homology the \( K \)-modules

\[
H^k(U, 0; G) = H^k(\text{Hom}_K(U, G)),
\]

\[
H_k(U, 0; G) = H_k(G \otimes_K U), \quad k = 0, 1, \ldots.
\]

For stage one, the left bar construction \( B(U) \) with its total boundary \( \partial^\bullet \) is a left \( U \)-module while \( G \) is a \( U \)-module by pull-back, so \( \text{Hom}_U(B(U), \varepsilon G) \) and \( G \varepsilon \otimes_U B(U) \) are DG-modules with (co)homology the \( K \)-modules

\[
H^k(U, 1; G) = H^k(\text{Hom}_U(B(U), \varepsilon G)), \quad (11.1)
\]

\[
H_k(U, 1; G) = H_k(G \varepsilon \otimes_U B(U)), \quad k = 0, 1, \ldots. \quad (11.2)
\]

Since \( B(U) \to \varepsilon K \) arises from a resolution, the definition of \( H_k(U, 1; G) \) resembles that of the \((U, K)\)-relative torsion product \( \text{Tor}_k(G, e, K) \), but it is not a relative torsion product because it uses the total boundary operator \( \partial^\bullet \) of \( B(U) \) and not just the boundary operator \( \partial' \) arising from the resolution.

A homomorphism \( \mu: (U, E) \to (V, E) \) of two DGA-algebras over a fixed \( K \) is a homomorphism of DG-algebras with \( \varepsilon' \mu = E: U \to K \). Thus \( B(V) \) is an augmented \( U \)-module by pull-back, and \( \mu \) induces \( B(\mu): B(U) \to \mu B(V) \), a homomorphism of augmented \( U \)-modules which commutes with the contracting homotopy. It follows that \( H_k(U, 1; G) \) is a covariant bifunctor of \( U \) and \( G \) and that \( H_k(U, 1; G) \) is a bifunctor covariant in \( G \) and contravariant in \( U \). The reduced (condensed) bar construction is also a covariant functor of DGA-algebras to DG-modules.

The (co)homology modules of \( U \) may be expressed by the reduced bar construction. Indeed, since \( G \) is a \( K \)-module, each \( U \)-module homomorphism \( B(U) \to \varepsilon G \) must annihilate \( JB(U) \), where \( J \) is the kernel
of the augmentation $\varepsilon: U \to K$, hence induces a $K$-module homomorphism $\overline{B}(U) = B(U)/IB(U) + G$. This gives the natural isomorphism

$$H^k(U, 1; G) \cong H^k(\text{Hom}_K(\overline{B}(U), G)).$$

(11.3)

Similarly $G \otimes_U B(U) = (G \otimes K) \otimes_U B(U) \cong G \otimes_K \overline{B}(U)$, so

$$H_k(U, 1; G) \cong H_k(G \otimes_K \overline{B}(U)).$$

(11.4)

If $X \to eK$ is any $\mathcal{M}$-split resolution by relatively free $U$-modules, standard comparison arguments give

$$H^k(U, 1; G) \cong H^k(\text{Hom}_U(X^\bullet, eG)) \cong H^k(\text{Hom}_K(\overline{X}^\bullet, G)),$$

and similarly for the functorial behavior and for homology.

"Suspension" maps stage zero homology to that on stage one. Let $S: U \to \overline{B}(U)$ be defined by $S(u) = [u]$; note that $S$ is just the contracting homotopy restricted to the subcomplex $U$ of $B(U)$. Thus $S$ is a homomorphism of degree 1 of graded $K$-modules with $\partial S = - S \partial$, hence induces similar maps $G \otimes U \to G \otimes \overline{B}(U)$ and $\text{Hom}(\overline{B}(U), G) \to \text{Hom}(U, G)$ and thus the homomorphisms

$$S_*: H_k(U, 0; G) \to H_{k+1}(U, 1; G),$$

(11.5)

$$S^*: H^{k+1}(U, 1; G) \to H^k(U, 0; G),$$

(11.6)

called suspension, and to be used in the next section.

To study the dependence of $H(\overline{B}(U))$ on $H(U)$ we use a filtration of the complex (DG-module) $\overline{B}$. Let $F_p = F_p(\overline{B}(U))$ denote the submodule of $\overline{B}$ spanned by all elements $w = [w_1 \ldots w_k]$ with $k \leq p$; we say that such an element $w$ has filtration at most $p$.

Proposition 11.1. For each DGA-algebra $U$ the associated complex $\overline{B}(U)$ has a canonical family of subcomplexes $F_p$, with $F_0 < F_1 < \ldots < F_p < \ldots < \bigcup F_p = \overline{B}(U)$. The elements in $\overline{B}(U)$ of total degree $n$ lie in $F_n$. For $p = 0$, $F_0 \cong K$, with trivial grading and differential, while if $p > 0$, there is a natural isomorphism of chain complexes

$$F_p/F_{p-1} \cong L(U/K) \otimes \cdots \otimes L(U/K) \quad (p \text{ factors}).$$

(11.7)

Only the last statement needs verification. The "internal" boundary operator $\partial''$ of $\overline{B}$ carries an element of filtration $p$ to one of filtration $p$, while the "external" boundary operator $\partial'$ maps one of filtration $p$ to one of filtration $p - 1$; $F_p$ is indeed closed under the total boundary $\partial = \partial' + \partial''$. Moreover, the formation of the quotient $F_p/F_{p-1}$ drops all the $\partial'$ terms from the total boundary, so the boundary in $F_p/F_{p-1}$ is given by $\partial''$ as in the formula (10.7), with $u = 1$. This is exactly the formula for the boundary in the tensor product of $\#$ copies of $L(U/K)$,
Chapter X. Cohomology of Algebraic Systems

for the sign exponent $e_i$ is that of the tensor product boundary formula, and the minus sign in front of the summation is that introduced in $L(U/K)$ by the definition $L(\partial)u = -\partial u$.

A chain transformation $\mu: X \to Y$ of complexes is called a homology isomorphism if, for each dimension $n$, $H_n(\mu): H_n(X) \cong H_n(Y)$.

**Theorem 11.2. (Eilenberg-MacLane [1953b].)** Let $\mu: U \to V$ be a homomorphism of DGA-algebras over $K$ which is a homology isomorphism. Moreover, assume that $K$ is a field or that $K = \mathbb{Z}$ and each $U_n$ and each $V_n$ is a free abelian group (i.e., a free $K$-module). Then the induced map $\overline{B}(\mu): \overline{B}(U) \to \overline{B}(V)$ is a homology isomorphism, and for each $K$-module $G$

$$\mu_*: H^k(U, 1; G) \cong H^k(V, 1; G); \quad \mu^*: H^k(V, 1; G) \cong H^k(U, 1; G).$$

The proof is an exercise in the use of filtration and the Five Lemma.

First, $\mu$ carries $1_U$ to $1_V$, hence induces a chain transformation $U/K \to V/K$. We claim that this map is a homology isomorphism. Indeed, the special assumptions ($K$ a field or $K = \mathbb{Z}$, $U_0$ free) show that $I: K \to U$ is a monomorphism; hence $K \to U \to U/K$ is an exact sequence of complexes, which is mapped by $\mu$ into the corresponding exact sequence for $V$. Therefore $\mu$ maps the exact homology sequence of the first into that of the second. For $n \geq 2$, $H_{n-1}(K) = 0$ and the exact homology sequence reduces to the isomorphism $H_n(U) \cong H_n(U/K)$. For $n = 1$ it becomes

$$0 \to H_1(U) \to H_1(U/K) \to H_0(K) \to H_0(U) \to H_0(U/K) \to 0$$

with $H_0(K) \cong K$. This is mapped by $\mu$ into the corresponding sequence for $V$. Two applications of the Five Lemma give $H_1(U/K) \cong H_1(V/K)$, $H_0(U/K) \cong H_0(V/K)$, so $\mu: U/K \to V/K$ is indeed a homology isomorphism.

Next consider the map $\overline{B}(\mu): \overline{B}(U) \to \overline{B}(V)$, given explicitly as

$$\overline{B}(\mu)[u_1, \ldots, u_n] = [\mu u_1, \ldots, \mu u_n].$$

This map respects the filtration, so carries $F_p = F_p(\overline{B}(U))$ into the corresponding $F_p' = F_p(\overline{B}(V))$. We claim that the induced map $F_p/F_{p-1} \to F_p'/F_{p-1}$ is a homology isomorphism. Indeed, the quotient $F_p/F_{p-1}$ is just an $n$-fold tensor product (11.7), and the induced map is $\mu \otimes \cdots \otimes \mu$ ($n$ factors). If $K$ is a field, this is a homology isomorphism by the Kunneth tensor formula (Thm. V.10.1). If $K = \mathbb{Z}$ and each $U_n$ and each $V_n$ is a free group, this is a homology isomorphism by a consequence of the Kunneth formula for this case (Cor. V.11.2).

Finally, we claim that $\mu: F_p \to F_p'$ is a homology isomorphism. The proof is by induction on $p$. For $p = 0$ it is obvious, since $F_0 = K = F_0'$. For larger $p$, $\mu$ maps the exact sequence $F_{p-1} \to F_p \to F_p/F_{p-1}$ of complexes into the corresponding exact sequence for $F_p'$. The corresponding long
exact homology sequences give a commutative diagram with the first row
\[ H_{k+1}(F_{p}/F_{p-1}) \rightarrow H_k(F_{p-1}) \rightarrow H_k(F_p) \rightarrow H_k(F_{p}/F_{p-1}) \rightarrow H_k(F_{p-1}) \]
and vertical maps induced by \( \mu \). By the induction assumption and the previous result for \( F_{p}/F_{p-1} \), the four outside vertical maps are isomorphisms, so the Five Lemma proves \( H_k(F_p) \rightarrow H_k(F_p') \) an isomorphism for every \( k \).

Since in each total dimension \( n \), \( F_p \mathcal{B} \) gives all of \( \mathcal{B} \) for \( p \) large, it follows now that \( \mathcal{B}(\mu) : \mathcal{B}(U) \rightarrow \mathcal{B}(V) \) is a homology isomorphism. The isomorphisms (11.8) then follow by an application of the appropriate universal coefficient theorem (\( K \) a field or \( K=\mathbb{Z} \) with \( \mathcal{B} \) free).

Exercises

1. (The contraction theorem of EILENBERG-MACLANE [1953b, Thm.12.1].) If \( \mu : U \rightarrow V, \nu : V \rightarrow U \) are homomorphisms of DGA-algebras with \( \mu \nu = 1 \) and a homotopy \( t \) with \( \partial t + t \partial = \nu \mu - 1, \mu t = 0, t \nu = 0 \), show that there is a homotopy \( \tilde{t} \) with \( \partial \tilde{t} + \tilde{t} \partial = \mathcal{B}(\nu) \mathcal{B}(\mu) - 1, \mathcal{B}(\mu) \tilde{t} = 0, \tilde{t} \mathcal{B}(\nu) = 0 \).

2. Obtain the filtration of Prop.11.1 for an arbitrary \( \mathcal{M} \)-split relatively free resolution of \( _{U}K \) by \( U \)-modules.

12. Cohomology of Commutative DGA-Algebras

Let \( U \) and \( V \) be two DGA-algebras over \( K \) Their tensor product \( U \otimes V \) is also a DGA-algebra, while the tensor product of a \( U \)-module by a \( V \)-module is a \( (U \otimes V) \)-module. In particular, the bar constructions \( B(U) \) and \( B(V) \) yield an augmented \( (U \otimes V) \)-module \( B(U) \otimes B(V) \). Now \( B(U) \otimes B(V) \) is a construction, with a contracting homotopy \( t \) given in dimension \( -1 \) by \( s_{-1} \otimes s_{-1} : K \rightarrow B \otimes B \) and in positive dimensions by the usual formula \( t = s \otimes 1 + s_{-1} e \otimes s \) for the tensor product of homotopies. Moreover, \( B(U) \otimes B(V) \) is relatively free. Indeed, \( B(U) \cong U \otimes B(U) \) is an isomorphism of modules over the graded algebra of \( U \), so

\[ B(U) \otimes B(V) \cong U \otimes B(U) \otimes V \otimes B(V) \cong U \otimes V \otimes B(U) \otimes B(V) \]

is an isomorphism of modules over the graded algebra of \( U \otimes V \), and \( B(U) \otimes B(V) \) is relatively free. One may show that its reduced DG-module is exactly the tensor product \( B(U) \otimes B(V) \) of the DG-modules \( B(U) \) and \( B(V) \). Finally, by Prop.9.3, the construction \( B(U) \otimes B(V) \) could also be obtained as a condensation — specifically, as the condensation of the tensor product of the original bar resolutions. Hence we can apply the comparison theorem to obtain homomorphisms of augmented \( (U \otimes V) \)-modules

\[ B(U \otimes V) \xrightarrow{f} B(U) \otimes B(V) \]
Chapter X. Cohomology of Algebraic Systems

Let us choose for $f$ and $g$ the canonical comparisons (Thm. 10.3) with

$$f \mathcal{B}(U \otimes V) < t_1 K \cup t(B(U) \otimes B(V)),$$

$$g[\mathcal{B}(U) \otimes \mathcal{B}(V)] < s_1 K \cup s B(U \otimes V).$$

By the comparison theorem again, there is a homotopy $1 \simeq gf$. On the other hand, by (10.10),

$$s_1 K \cup s B(U \otimes V) = \mathcal{B}(U \otimes V),$$

so

$$fg[\mathcal{B}(U) \otimes \mathcal{B}(V)] < t_1 K \cup t(B(U) \otimes B(V)).$$

This shows that $fg$ is the canonical comparison of $B(U) \otimes B(V)$ to itself, so $fg = 1$. Since $f$ and $g$, as canonical comparisons, are unique, they are natural in $U$ and $V$.

A DGA-algebra $U$ is commutative if $u_p \in U_p$ and $u_q \in U_q$ have $u_p u_q = (-1)^{pq} u_q u_p$; that is, if $\pi \tau = \pi : U \otimes U \to U$, where $\tau : U \otimes V \to V \otimes U$ is the usual interchange and $\pi$ the product map for $U$. Now the tensor product $U \otimes U$ is also a DGA-algebra; a diagram shows that when $U$ is commutative its product mapping $\pi : U \otimes U \to U$ is a homomorphism of DGA-algebras. Therefore the "external" product $g$ of (12.1) in this case gives an internal product in $B(U)$ as the composite

$$\pi_B : B(U) \otimes B(U) \xrightarrow{\epsilon} B(U \otimes U) \xrightarrow{B(n)} B(U).$$

Here $B(U)$ is a $U \otimes U$-module by pull-back along $n : U \otimes U \to U$, while $B(n)$ is the canonical map, as in (10.11). Therefore the product $\pi_B$ of (12.2) can be described as the canonical comparison.

**Theorem 12.1.** If $U$ is a commutative DGA-algebra, then $B(U)$ is a commutative DGA-algebra with identity $[\ ]$ under the product $\pi_B$. Also $\pi_B$ is a homomorphism of augmented modules over $U \otimes U$. This product induces a product $\mathcal{B}(U) \otimes \mathcal{B}(U) \to \mathcal{B}(U)$ such that $\mathcal{B}(U)$ is a commutative DGA-algebra, and the projection $B(U) \to \mathcal{B}(U)$ a homomorphism of DGA-algebras, while inclusion $\mathcal{B}(U) \to B(U)$ is a homomorphism of graded $K$-algebras.

**Proof.** The identity element of $U$ is represented by the map $I : K \to U$. With $B(K) = K$, form the composite map of $U$-modules

$$B(U) = B(K) \otimes B(U) \xrightarrow{B(I) \otimes 1} B(U) \otimes B(U) \xrightarrow{\pi_B} B(U).$$

Here we regard $B \otimes B$ as a $U$-module by pull-back along $I \otimes 1 : K \otimes U \to U \otimes U$ and then $B(U)$ as a $U$-module by pull-back along $\pi_U (\otimes 1) = 1$. Hence the composite map is the canonical comparison of $B(U)$ to itself, so is the identity map. This shows that $B(I) 1_K = [\ ]$ is the identity element of $B(U)$ for the product $\pi_B$. Similarly

$$\pi_B (1 \otimes \pi_B), \quad \pi_B (\pi_B \otimes 1) : B(U) \otimes B(U) \otimes B(U) \to B(U)$$
are both canonical, so must be equal. This gives associativity, and makes \( B(U) \) a \( \text{DGA-algebra} \). There is an analogous proof that the product is commutative.

By definition, \( \overline{B} = B/JB \), where \( J \) is the kernel of \( \varepsilon: U \to K \); therefore, by Lemma VIII.3.2, the kernel of \( \varepsilon @ +: B \otimes B \to \overline{B} \otimes \overline{B} \) is the union of the images of \( JB \otimes B \) and \( B \otimes JB \). Since \( \pi_B \) is a homomorphism of \( (U \otimes U) \)-modules, it carries this union into \( JB \) and thus induces a unique map \( \overline{\pi}: \overline{B} \otimes \overline{B} \to \overline{B} \) with \( \overline{\pi}(\phi \otimes \psi) = \phi \pi_B \). From the uniqueness of this factorization it follows readily that \( \overline{B} \) is a \( \text{DG-algebra} \) under the product \( \pi \) with augmentation given by \( \overline{B}_0 \cong K \), and that \( \phi \) is a homomorphism of augmented algebras.

It remains to show that \( i: \overline{B} \to B \) is a homomorphism for the product:

\[
\pi_B(i \otimes i) = i \pi: \overline{B}(U) \otimes \overline{B}(U) \to B(U).
\]

Since \( \pi_B \) is canonical, the image of \( \pi_B(i \otimes i) \) lies in \( B < B \); on this submodule \( \lambda \phi \) is the identity, and

\[
i \phi \pi_B(i \otimes i) = i \pi (\phi \otimes \psi)(i \otimes i) = i \pi(\phi i \otimes \psi i) = i \pi,
\]

as desired. This completes the proof. Note that the products in \( \overline{B} \) and \( U \) determine that in \( B \); indeed, since \( \pi_B \) is a homomorphism of \( (U \otimes U) \)-modules, we have

\[
\pi_B[(u_1 \overline{\otimes} \overline{b}_1) \otimes (u_2 \overline{\otimes} \overline{b}_2)] = (-1)^{(\deg u_1)(\deg \overline{b}_1)} u_1 u_2 \pi_B(\overline{b}_1 \overline{\otimes} \overline{b}_2) \quad (12.3)
\]

for any two elements \( \overline{b}_1, \overline{b}_2 \in \overline{B}(U) \).

Since \( g \) is canonical, it can be given by an explicit formula; the formula is (except for signs) just the explicit map \( g \) of the \( \text{EILENBERG-ZILBER} \) theorem, as given by the simplicial structure of \( B(U) \). As in that case (VIII.8), let \( t \) be a \((+, q)\)-shuffle, regarded as a suitable permutation of the integers \( \{1, \ldots, +q\} \). For elements

\[
\overline{b}_1 = [u_1], \ldots, u_p, \quad \overline{b}_2 = [v_1], \ldots, v_q \in \overline{B}(V),
\]

define a bilinear map (the shuffle product) \( \ast: \overline{B}(U) \otimes \overline{B}(V) \to \overline{B}(U \otimes V) \) by labelling the elements \( u_1 \otimes 1, \ldots, u_p \otimes 1, 1 \otimes v_1, \ldots, 1 \otimes v_q \) of \( U \otimes V \) in order as \( w_1, \ldots, w_{p+q} \) and setting

\[
[u_1, \ldots, u_q] \ast [v_1, \ldots, v_q] = \sum (-1)^{e(t)} [w_{t-1}(u_1) \ldots w_{t-1}(u_q)],
\]

where the sum is taken over all \((p, q)\)-shuffles \( t \) and the sign exponent \( e(t) \) is given in terms of the total degrees as

\[
e(t) = \sum (\deg [u_i]) (\deg [v_j]), \quad t(i) > t(p+j) \quad i \leq p, j \leq q. \quad (12.5)
\]

This sign is exactly that given by the sign convention, since the sum is taken over all those pairs of indices \((i, j)\) for which \( u_i \) of degree \( \deg [u_i] \) has been shuffled past \( v_j \) of degree \( \deg [v_j] \).
Theorem 12.2. The canonical comparison g of (12.1) is given, for elements $\overline{b}_1$ and $\overline{b}_2$ of $B(U)$ and $B(V)$, respectively, by
\[
g([u \overline{b}_1] \otimes [v \overline{b}_2]) = (-1)^{(\deg u')(\deg \overline{b}_1)} [u \otimes v] (\overline{b}_1 \ast \overline{b}_2),
\]

Proof. The formula is suggested by (12.3). It is clearly a homomorphism of modules over the graded algebra of $U \otimes V$, and it carries $B(U) \otimes B(V)$ into $B(U \otimes V)$, so is canonical. The proof is completed by a verification that $\partial g = g \partial$. This is straightforward, using the definition of $g$ and of $\partial = \partial' = \partial''$ in the bar construction. We leave the details to the reader, or refer to Eilenberg-MacLane [1953b], where the proof is formulated in terms of a recursive description of the shuffle product $\ast$.

Note that the formula (12.4) together with (12.3), in the form
\[
(u_1 \overline{b}_1) \ast (u_2 \overline{b}_2) = (-1)^{(\deg u_2) (\deg \overline{b}_1)} u_1 u_2 (\overline{b}_1 \ast \overline{b}_2),
\]
completely determines the product in $B(U)$. For example,
\[
[u] \ast [v] = [u \ast v] + (-1)^{1 + \deg u} (1 + \deg v) [v \ast u];
\]
again, with an evident "shuffle",
\[
[u] \ast [v \ast w] = [u \ast v \ast w] \pm [u \ast v \ast w] \pm [v \ast w \ast u].
\]

Corollary 12.3. If $U$ is commutative, the algebra $B(U)$ is strictly commutative.

Proof. For $\overline{b} = [u_1] \ldots [u_p]$, each term in $\overline{b} \ast \overline{b}$ occurs twice for two shuffles $t, t'$, where
\[
e(t) + e(t') = \sum_{i,j} (\deg [u_i]) (\deg [u_j]) = (\deg \overline{b})^2.
\]
When $\deg \overline{b}$ is odd, the signs are opposite, so $\overline{b} \ast \overline{b} = 0$, as required for strict commutativity.

The essential observation is that each commutative DGA-algebra $U$ yields a commutative DGA-algebra $B(U)$, so allows an iteration to form a commutative DGA-algebra $B^n(U)$ for each positive $n$. This gives an $n$-th stage cohomology (or homology) of $U$ with coefficients in the K-module $G$ as
\[
H^k(U, n; G) = H^k(\text{Hom}(B^n(U), G)).
\]
This may be applied when $U = \mathbb{Z}(\Pi)$ is the group ring of a commutative multiplicative group $\Pi$. The $n$-th stage homology and cohomology groups of this group $\Pi$, with coefficients in the abelian group $G$, are thus
\[
H^k(\Pi, n; G) = H^k(G \otimes B^n(\mathbb{Z}(\Pi))), \quad (12.6)
\]
\[
H^k(17, n; G) = H^k(\text{Hom}(B^n(\mathbb{Z}(\Pi)), G)); \quad (12.7)
\]
for $n=1$, these are the homology and cohomology of $\Pi$ as treated in Chap. IV. Note that the suspension $S: \overline{B^n} \to \overline{B^{n+1}}$ of (11.5) gives homomorphisms

$$S_*: H_{n+p}(\Pi, n; G) \to H_{n+1+p}(\Pi, n+1; G),$$

$$S^*: H^{n+1+p}(17, n+1; G) \to H^{n+p}(17, n; G).$$

The direct limit of $H_{n+p}(\Pi, n; G)$ under $S_*$ gives another set of "stable" homology groups $H^p(\Pi; G)$ for the abelian group $\Pi$. They have been studied by Eilenberg-MacLane [1951, 1955].

For general $n$, the groups $H^k(\Pi, n; G)$ have a topological interpretation in terms of the so-called Eilenberg-MacLane spaces $K(\Pi, n)$. Here $K(\Pi, n)$ is a topological space whose only non-vanishing homotopy group is $\pi_n = \Pi$ in dimension $n$. It can be proved (Eilenberg-MacLane [1953b]) that there is a natural isomorphism

$$H^k(K(\Pi, n), G) \cong H^k(\Pi, n; G),$$

with the corresponding result for homology.

Explicit calculations of these groups can be made effectively by using iterated alternative resolutions $X$, so chosen that $X$ has an algebra structure (Cartan [1955]).

**Exercises**

1. Show that the image of the contracting homotopy in $B(U) \otimes B(V)$ properly contains $B(U) \otimes B(V)$.

2. Prove Thm. 12.1 from the explicit formula for the product $*$. 

3. Show that $H^p(\Pi, n; G) = 0 = H^p(\Pi, n; G)$ for $0 < p < n$.

4. Show that $H^n(\Pi, n; G) \cong \text{Hom}(\Pi, G)$ for $n \geq 1$ and that, for $n \geq 2$, $H^{n+1}(\Pi, n; G) \cong \text{Ext}^1(\Pi, G)$.

5. (The suspension theorem [Eilenberg-MacLane 1953b, Thm. 20.4].) For $p < n$, show that $S^*$ and $S_*$ in (12.8) and (12.9) are isomorphisms, while for $p = n$, $S^*$ is a monomorphism and $S_*$ an epimorphism. (Hint: Compare the complexes $\overline{B^{n+1}}(U)$ and $\overline{B^n}(U)$ in the indicated dimensions.)

6. For any $K$-split relatively free resolution $X \to_K X$, written as $X = U \otimes \overline{X}$ as in Thm. 10.2, let $j: U \to X$ be given by $j(u) = u \otimes 1$ (assume $1 \in U = X_0$). Show that the composite $\rho s j: U \to \overline{X}$, with $s$ the contracting homotopy, gives the suspension.

7. For any $X$ as in Ex. 6 find a product $X \otimes X \to X$ associative up to a homotopy.

**13. Homology of Algebraic Systems**

For groups, monoids, abelian groups, algebras, and graded algebras we have now defined appropriate homology and cohomology groups. A leading idea in each case is that the second cohomology group represents a group of extensions (with given operators) for the type of
system in question: See Thm.IV.4.1 for groups, Ex.12.4 for abelian groups, and Thm.3.1 for algebras. The third cohomology group has elements which represent the obstructions to corresponding extension problems; see Thm.IV.8.7 for groups and Hochschild [1947] for algebras. The typical complexes used to construct such homology theories have been described by a notion of "generic acyclicity" (Eilenberg-MacLane [1951]). Here we will mention various other algebraic systems for which corresponding homology theories have been developed.

The 2-dimensional cohomology theory for rings operates with two factor sets, one for addition and one for multiplication. Let \( A \) be an abelian group, regarded as a ring (without identity) in which the product of any two elements is zero. Let \( R \) be a ring. A singular extension of \( A \) by \( R \) is thus a short exact sequence \( A \to S \to R \) of ring homomorphisms \( \kappa \) and \( \sigma \), in which \( S \) is a ring with identity \( 1_S \) and \( \sigma 1_S = 1_R \). Regard \( A \) as a two-sided ideal in \( S \), with \( S/A = R \). To each \( x \in R \) choose a representative \( u(x) \in S \), with \( \sigma u(x) = x \). Then \( A \) is an \( R \)-bimodule with operators \( xa = u(x)a, ax = au(x) \), independent of the choice of \( u \). The addition and multiplication in \( S \) is determined by two factor sets \( f \) and \( g \) defined by

\[
\begin{align*}
u(x) + u(y) &= f(x, y) + u(x + y), \\
u(x)u(y) &= g(x, y) + u(xy).
\end{align*}
\]

(13.1) \hspace{1cm} (13.2)

These functions \( f \) and \( g \) satisfy various identities which reflect the associative, commutative, and distributive laws in \( S \) (Everett [1942], Redei [1952], Szendrei [1952]). One can now construct (MacLane [1956]) a cohomology theory for a ring \( R \) such that \( H^3(R, A) \) has such pairs of functions \( f, g \) as cocycles, with cohomology classes representing the extensions of \( A \) by \( R \). A part of the corresponding 3-dimensional cohomology group \( H^3(R, A) \) then corresponds exactly (MacLane [1958]) to the obstructions for the problem of extending a ring \( T \) (without identity, but with product not necessarily zero) by the ring \( R \). The results also apply to sheaves of rings (Gray [1961a, b]).

Shukla [1961] has extended this cohomology theory for rings (Z-algebras) to the case of algebras \( A \) over an arbitrary commutative ring \( K \). The resulting cohomology of algebras is more refined than the Hochschild cohomology, because the Hochschild cohomology deals systematically with those extensions which are \( K \)-split, while in the present case the use of a factor set (13.1) for addition reflects exactly the fact that the extensions concerned do not split additively. Shukla's theory is also so arranged that every element of \( H^3 \) corresponds to an obstruction. Harrison [1962] has initiated a cohomology theory for commutative algebras over a field.
A Lie algebra $L$ over $K$ is a $K$-module together with a $K$-module homomorphism $x \otimes y \rightarrow [x, y]$ of $L \otimes L$ into $L$ such that always

$$[x, x] = 0, \quad [x, [y, z]] + [y, [z, x]] + [z, [x, y]] = 0;$$

a typical example may be constructed by starting with an associative algebra $A$ and setting $[x, y] = xy - yx$. Conversely, each Lie algebra $L$ defines an augmented associative algebra $L^e$ as the quotient of the tensor algebra $T(L)$ of the module $L$ by the ideal generated in $T(L)$ by all elements $x \otimes y - y \otimes x - [x, y], \forall x, y \in L$. The algebra $L^e$ is called the enveloping (associative) algebra of $L$. The homology and cohomology of $L$ are now defined for modules $\mathcal{G}_L$ and $\mathcal{L}^e$ as

$$H_n(L, G) = \text{Tor}^G_n(G, K), \quad H^n(L, C) = \text{Ext}^n_{\mathcal{L}^e}(K, C),$$

though, as in the case of algebras, it may be more appropriate to use the relative Tor and Ext functors for the pair $(L^e, K)$. This theory is developed in Cartan-Eilenberg, Chap. XIII; cf. Jacobson [1962]. In case $K$ is a field, the Poincaré-Birkhoff-Witt Theorem may be used to give an alternative description of these cohomology and homology groups in terms of a standard complex constructed directly from the bracket product in $L$. Indeed, this is the approach originally used in the first treatment of the cohomology of Lie algebras (Chevalley-Eilenberg [1948], Koszul [1950b]). The 2-dimensional cohomology group $H^2(L, C)$ corresponds to a $K$-split extension for Lie algebras (Cartan-Eilenberg, XIV.5). In certain cases the elements of the 3-dimensional cohomology group $H^3(L, C)$ are the obstructions to extension problems (Hochschild [1954]). Analogous results apply to the analytic Lie groups (Macauley [1960]), and Lie triple systems (Yamaguti [1960], Harris [1961]). Shuffle products have been applied to Lie algebras by Ree [1958].

Just as the cohomology of rings starts with factor sets for both addition and multiplication, it is possible to construct a cohomology of Lie rings such that $H^2$ will involve factor sets for both addition and bracket products. Such a theory has been initiated by Dixmier [1957]; it is to be hoped that subsequent investigation might simplify his formulation.

Topologically, the bar construction starts with a "fiber" $U$, constructs an acyclic fiber bundle $B(U)$ with the group $U$ and the corresponding base space $B(U)$. The converse problem of constructing (the homology of) the fiber from a given base is geometrically important. To this end, J. F. Adams has introduced the cobar construction $F(W)$, where $W$ is a graded coalgebra over $K$. This is a formal dual of the bar construction; for details, see Adams [1956], [1960, p. 33].
Notes. The reduced bar construction $\overline{B}(U)$ is due to Eilenberg-MacLane [1950b]. Cartan [1954] made the essential observation that $B$ could be obtained from the acyclic bar construction $B$ and developed an efficient method of carrying out calculations by "constructions".
I. Spectral Sequences

singly graded module obtained from the bigraded module \( H_{p,q}(E) \) as
\[
H_n = \sum_{p+q=n} H_{p,q}.
\]

A spectral sequence \( E = \{ E^r, d^r \} \) is a sequence \( E^0, E^1, \ldots \) of \( \mathbb{Z} \)-bigraded modules, each with a differential
\[
d^r: E^r_{p,q} \rightarrow E^{r+1}_{p-r, q+r-1}, \quad r = 2, 3, \ldots,
\]
of bidegree \((-r, r-1)\), and with isomorphisms
\[
H(E^r, d^r) \cong E^{r+1}, \quad r = 2, 3, \ldots
\]

More briefly, each \( E^{r+1} \) is the bigraded homology module of the preceding \( (E^r, d^r) \). Thus \( E^r \) and \( d^r \) determine \( E^{r+1} \), but not necessarily \( d^{r+1} \). The bigraded module \( E^2 \) is the initial term of the spectral sequence (occasionally it is convenient to start the spectral sequence with \( r = 1 \) and initial term \( E^1 \)).

If \( E' \) is a second spectral sequence, a homomorphism \( f: E \rightarrow E' \) is a family of homomorphisms
\[
f^r: E^r \rightarrow E'^r, \quad r = 2, 3, \ldots
\]
of bigraded modules, each of bidegree \((0, 0)\), with \( d^r f^r = f^r d^r \) and such that each \( f^{r+1} \) is the map induced by \( f^r \) on homology (use the isomorphisms \( (1.3) \)).

It is instructive to describe a spectral sequence in terms of submodules of \( E^2 \) (or of \( E^1 \), if this be present). First identify each \( E^{r+1} \) with \( H(E^r, d^r) \) via the given isomorphism \( (1.3) \). This makes \( E^3 = H(E^2, d^2) \) a subquotient \( C^2/B^2 \) of \( E^2 \), where \( C^2 = \ker d^2 \) and \( B^2 = \text{im} d^2 \). In turn, \( E^4 = H(E^3, d^3) \) is a subquotient of \( C^3/B^3 \) and so is isomorphic to \( C^3/B^3 \), where \( C^3/B^3 = \ker d^3, B^3/B^3 = \text{im} d^3 \), and \( B^3 \subset C^3 \). Upon iteration, the spectral sequence is presented as a tower
\[
0 = B^1 \subset B^2 \subset B^3 \subset \cdots \subset C^3 \subset C^2 \subset C^1 = E^2
\]
of bigraded submodules of \( E^2 \), with \( E^{r+1} = C^r/B^r \), where
\[
d^r: C^{r-1}/B^{r-1} \rightarrow C^{r-1}/B^{r-1}, \quad r = 2, 3, \ldots
\]
has kernel \( C^r/B^{r-1} \) and image \( B^r/B^{r-1} \). In informal parlance,
\[
C^r \text{ is the module of elements which live till stage } r,
\]
\[
B^{r-1} \text{ is the module of elements which bound by stage } r.
\]
The module of elements which "live forever" is
\[
C^w = \text{intersection of all the submodules } C^r, r = 2, 3, \ldots,
\]
while the module of elements which "eventually bound" is
\[
B^\infty = \text{union of all the submodules } B^r, r = 2, 3, \ldots.
\]
Then $B^w < C^w$, so the spectral sequence determines a bigraded module

$$E_{p,q}^\infty = C_{p,q}^\infty / B_{p,q}^\infty, \quad E^\infty = \{E_{p,q}^\infty\}. \quad (1.5)$$

We regard the terms $E^r$ of the spectral sequence as successive approximations (via successive formation of subquotients) to $E^m$. In this representation (1.4), a homomorphism $f: E \to E'$ of spectral sequences is a homomorphism $f: E_{p,q} \to E'_{p,q}$ of bigraded modules, of bidegree $(0,0)$, such that $f(C^r) < C'^r$, $f(B^r) < B'^r$, and such that all the diagrams

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
C^{r-1}/B^{r-1} & \xrightarrow{d^r} & C'^{r-1}/B'^{r-1} \\
\downarrow f & & \downarrow f \\
C'^{r-1}/B'^{r-1} & \xrightarrow{d^r} & C'^{r-1}/B'^{r-1}
\end{array}$$

are commutative. Also $f: E \to E'$ induces $f^m: E^\infty \to E'^\infty$.

A first quadrant spectral sequence $E$ is one with $E_{\hat{p},q}^r = 0$ when $\hat{p} < 0$ or $q < 0$. (This condition for $r=2$ implies the same condition for higher $r$.) It is convenient to display the modules $E_{p,q}^r$ at the lattice points of the first quadrant of the $p, q$ plane:

![Diagram of a first quadrant spectral sequence]

The differential $d^r$ is then indicated by an arrow. The terms of total degree $n$ all lie on the 45° line $\hat{p} + q = n$; the successive differentials go from a lattice point on this line to one on the next line below. At each lattice point of $E_{p,q}^r$, the next approximation $E_{p,q}^{r+1}$ is formed by taking the kernel of the arrow from that lattice point modulo the image of the arrow which ends there, as in

$$E_{p+r,q-r+1}^r \xrightarrow{d^r} E_{p,q}^r \xrightarrow{d^r} E_{p-r,q+r-1}^r.$$

The outgoing $d^r$ ends outside the quadrant if $r > \hat{p}$, the incoming $d^r$ starts outside if $r > q + 1$, so that

$$E_{p,q}^{r+1} = E_{p,q}^r, \quad \infty > r > \text{Max} (\hat{p}, q + 1). \quad (1.7)$$

In words: For fixed degrees $\hat{p}$ and $q$, $E_{p,q}^r$ is ultimately constant in $r$. 

The terms $E_{p,q}^r$ on the $p$-axis are called the **base** terms. Each arrow $d_r$ ending on the base comes from below, hence from $0$, so each $E_{p,0}^{r+1}$ is a submodule of $E_{p,0}^r$, namely the kernel of $d_r: E_{p,0}^r \to E_{p-r,r-1}^r$. This gives a sequence of monomorphisms

$$E_{p,0}^\infty = E_{p,0}^{r+1} \to \cdots \to E_{p,0}^4 \to E_{p,0}^3 \to E_{p,0}^2.$$  \hspace{1cm} (1.8)

The terms $E_{0,q}^r$ on the $q$-axis are called the **fiber** terms. Each arrow from a fiber term ends to the left at zero, hence $E_{0,q}^r$ consists of cycles and the next fiber term is a quotient of $E_{0,q}^r$ (the quotient by the image of a $d_r$). This gives a sequence of epimorphisms

$$E_{0,q}^2 \to E_{0,q}^3 \to E_{0,q}^4 \to \cdots \to E_{0,q}^{q+2} = E_{0,q}^\infty.$$  \hspace{1cm} (1.9)

These maps (1.8) and (1.9) are known as **edge homomorphisms** (monic on the base, epic on the fiber).

A spectral sequence $E$ is said to be **bounded below** if for each degree $n$ there is an integer $s=s(n)$ such that $E_{p,q}^n=0$ when $p<s$ and $p+q=n$. This amounts to the requirement that on each $45^\circ$ line $(p+q=n)$ the terms are eventually zero as $p$ decreases; thus a first quadrant or a "third quadrant" spectral sequence is bounded below.

**Theorem 1.1.** (Mapping Theorem.) If $f: E \to E'$ is a homomorphism of spectral sequences, and if $f_0: E_0 \cong E'_0$ is an isomorphism for some $t$, then $f^r: E^r \cong E'^r$ is an isomorphism for $r \geq t$. If also $E$ and $E'$ are bounded below, $f^\infty: E^\infty \cong E'^\infty$ is an isomorphism.

**Proof.** Since $f$ is a chain isomorphism and $E^{r+1} = H(E^r, d^r)$, the first assertion follows by induction. When $E$ and $E'$ are bounded below and $(p, q)$ are fixed, $d^r: E_{p,q}^r \to E_{p-r,q+r-1}^r$ has image 0 for sufficiently large $r$. Hence $C_{p,q}^r = C_{p,q}^\infty$ and $C'_{p,q} = C'_{p,q}^\infty$ for $r$ large. Thus $a \in C_{p,q}^\infty$ lies in $C'_{p,q}$, so $f_0^r$ an epimorphism makes $f_0^\infty$ an epimorphism. If $a \in C_{p,q}^\infty$ has $f_0^r a \in B_{p+q}^\infty$, then $f_0 a \in B_{p+q}^\infty$ for some $r$. Hence $f_0^r$ a monomorphism for all $r$ implies that $f_0^\infty$ is a monomorphism.

**Exercises**

1. Show that a tower (1.4) together with a sequence of isomorphisms $0^r: C^{r-1}/C^r \to B^{r-1}/B^r$ of bidegrees $(-r, r-1)$ for $r=2, 3, \ldots$ determines a spectral sequence with $E^r = C^{r-1}/B^{r-1}$ and $d^r$ the composite $C^{r-1}/B^{r-1} \to C^{r-1}/C^r \
\to B^r/B^{r-1} \to C^{r-1}/B^r/B^{r-1}$, and that every spectral sequence is isomorphic to one so obtained.

2. If $E$ and $E'$ are spectral sequences of vector spaces over a field, construct a spectral sequence $E = E' \otimes E''$ with $E_{p,q} = \sum E'_{p', q'} \otimes E''_{p''+p'+p''}$, where the sum is taken over all $p'+p''=p$, $q'+q''=q$, and $d^r$ is given by the usual tensor product differential.

3. If $E$ is a spectral sequence of projective left $R$-modules, $C$ a left $R$-module and $G$ a right $R$-module, construct spectral sequences $\text{Hom}_R(E, C)$ and $G \otimes_R E$ and calculate the terms $E^m$.

Mac Lane, Homology 21
2. Fiber Spaces

Before studying various algebraic examples of spectral sequences it is illuminating to exhibit some of the formal arguments which can be made directly from the definition of a spectral sequence. For this purpose we cite without proof the important topological example of the spectral sequence of a fibration.

Let $I$ denote the unit interval and $P$ any finite polyhedron; recall that a homotopy is a continuous map $H: P \times I \to B$. A continuous map $f: E \to B$ of topological spaces with $f(E) = B$ is called a fiber map if any commutative diagram of the following form

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
P & \overset{h}{\longrightarrow} & E \\
\downarrow i \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\
P \times I & \overset{H}{\longrightarrow} & B
\end{array}
$$

(all maps continuous) can always be filled in at $L$ so as to be commutative. This is the "covering homotopy" property for $f$: Any homotopy $H$ of $P$ in $B$ whose initial values $H(x, 0)$ can be "lifted" to a map $h: P \to E$ with $fh(x) = H(x, 0)$ can itself be lifted to a homotopy $L$ of $P$ in $E$ with $fL = H$ and $h(x) = L(x, 0)$. If $b$ is any point in $B$, its inverse image $F = f^{-1}b$ is called the fiber of $f$ over $b$. If $B$ is pathwise connected, it can be shown that any two such fibers (over different points $b$) have isomorphic (singular) homology groups. Hence one may form the singular homology groups $H_p(B, H_q(F))$ of $B$ with coefficients in the homology groups $H_q(F)$ of "the" fiber. Strictly speaking, we should use "local coefficients" which display the action of the fundamental group of $B$ on $H_q(F)$; this we avoid by assuming $B$ simply connected. Since $B$ is pathwise connected, its 0-dimensional singular homology is

$$H_0(B) = \mathbb{Z}, \quad H_0(B, H_q(F)) \cong H_q(F).$$

The following spectral sequence has been constructed by Serre [1951] following Leray's construction [1946, 1950] for the case of cohomology.

Theorem (Leray-Serre). If $f: E \to B$ is a fiber map with base $B$ pathwise connected and simply connected and fiber $F$ pathwise connected, there is for each $n$ a nested family of subgroups of the singular homology group $H_n(E)$,

$$0 = H_{-1, n+1} \subset H_{0, n} \subset H_{1, n-1} \subset \cdots \subset H_{n-1, 1} \subset H_{n, 0} = H_n(E),$$

(2.1)

and a first quadrant spectral sequence such that

$$E^2_{p, q} = H_p(B, H_q(F)), \quad E^\infty_{p, q} = H_p(B, H_{p+1, q+1}).$$

(2.2)
If $e_B$ is the iterated edge homomorphism on the base, the composite
\[
H_p(E) \to H_{p,0}/H_{p-1,1} \cong E^\infty_{p,0} \xrightarrow{e_B} E^2_{p,0} \cong H_p(B, H_0(F)) \cong H_p(B)
\]
is the homomorphism induced on homology by the fiber map $f: E \to B$. If $e_F$ is the iterated edge homomorphism on the fiber, the composite
\[
H_q(F) \cong H_0(B, H_q(F)) \cong E^\infty_{0,q} \xrightarrow{e_F} E^2_{0,q} \to H_q(E)
\]
is the homomorphism induced on homology by the inclusion $F \subset E$.

This spectral sequence relates the (singular) homology of the base and fiber, via $E^2$, to the homology of the "total space" $E$, with $E^\infty$ giving the successive factor groups in the "filtration" (2.1) of the homology of $E$.

The universal coefficient theorem (Thm. V.II.1) expresses the first term of (2.2) as an exact sequence
\[
0 \to H_p(B) \otimes H_q(F) \to E^2_{p,q} \to \text{Tor}(H_{p-1}(B), H_q(F)) \to 0.
\]
In particular, if all $H_{p-1}(B)$ are torsion-free, $E^2_{p,q} = H_p(B) \otimes H_q(F)$.

Assuming this result, we deduce several consequences so as to illustrate how information can be extracted from a spectral sequence.

The Leray-Serre theorem holds when all homology groups (of $B$, $F$, and $E$) are interpreted to be homology groups over the field $\mathbb{Q}$ of rational numbers. Write $\dim V$ for the dimension of a $\mathbb{Q}$-vector space $V$ over $\mathbb{Q}$. For any space $X$ the $n$-th Betti number $b_n(X)$ and the Euler characteristic $\chi(X)$ are defined by
\[
b_n(X) = \dim H_n(X, \mathbb{Q}), \quad \chi(X) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (-1)^n b_n(X);
\]
more precisely, $\chi(X)$ is defined if each $b_n(X)$ is finite and there is an $m$ such that $b_n(X) = 0$ for $n > m$. If $X$ is a finite polyhedron, $\chi(X)$ is defined.

**Corollary 2.1.** If $f: E \to B$ is a fiber space with fiber $F$, with $B$ and $F$ connected as in the Leray-Serre theorem, then if $\chi(B)$ and $\chi(F)$ are defined, so is $\chi(E)$ and $\chi(E) = \chi(B) \chi(F)$.

**Proof.** For any bigraded vector space $E'$, define a characteristic as $\chi(E') = \sum_{p,q} (-1)^{p+q} \dim E'_{p,q}$. By (2.3) for vector spaces,
\[
E^2_{p,q} \cong H_p(B) \otimes H_q(F), \quad \dim E^2_{p,q} = b_p(B) b_q(F) < \infty,
\]
and $\chi(E^2) = \chi(B) \chi(F)$. Write $C'_{p,q}$ and $B'_{p,q}$ for the cycles and the boundaries of $E'_{p,q}$ under $d'$. The short exact sequences
\[
C'_{p,q} \to E'_{p,q} \to B'_{p-r,q+r-1}, \quad B'_{p,q} \to C'_{p,q} \to E'_{p,q}
\]
are exact.
define $C^r, B^r$, and $E^{r+1} = H(E^r)$. In each sequence the dimension of the middle term is the sum of the dimensions of the end terms, so

$$\dim E^{r+1}_{p,q} = \dim E^r_{p,q} - \dim B^r_{p,q} - \dim B^{r-1}_{p-r,q+r-1}.$$ 

Here the last term has total degree $p - q + r - 1 = (p + q) - 1$, so $\chi(E^{r+1}) = \chi(E^r)$; by induction $\chi(E^r) = \chi(E^2)$. Since $E^r_{p,q}$ vanishes for $p$ and $q$ large, $E^\infty = E^r$ for $r$ large, and $\chi(E^m) = \chi(E^2)$. Now by (2.1) and (2.2),

$$\dim H_n(E) = \sum_{p+q=n} \dim (H_{p,q}/H_{p-1,q+1}) = \sum_{p+q=n} \dim E^\infty_{p,q},$$

so $\chi(E) = \chi(E^\infty) = \chi(E^2) = \chi(B)\chi(F)$, as asserted.

**Theorem 2.2.** (The Wang sequence.) If $f : E \to S^k$ is a fiber space with base a $k$-sphere ($k \geq 2$) and pathwise connected fiber $F$, there is an exact sequence

$$\cdots \to H_n(E) \to H_{n-k}(F) \xrightarrow{d^k} H_{n-1}(F) \to H_{n-1}(E) \to \cdots.$$ 

**Proof.** The base $S^k$ is simply connected and has homology $H_0(S^k) \cong \mathbb{Z}$, $H_p(S^k) = 0$, for $p \neq 0, k$; hence by (2.3)

$$E^2_{k,q} = H_q(F), \quad E^2_{0,q} = H_q(F), \quad E^2_{p,q} = 0, \quad p \neq 0, k.$$ 

The non-zero terms of $E^2_{p,q}$ all lie on the vertical lines $p = 0$ and $p = k$, so the only differential $d^k$ with $r \geq 2$ which is not zero has $r = k$. Therefore $E^2 = E^3 = \cdots = E^k$, $E^{k+1} = E^{k+2} = \cdots = E^\infty$. The description of $E^{k+1} = E^\infty$ as the homology of $(E^k, d^k)$ amounts to the exactness of the sequence

$$0 \to E^\infty_{k,q} = E^2_{k,q} \xrightarrow{d^k} E^\infty_{0,q+k-1} = E^2_{0,q+k-1} \to 0.$$ 

On the other hand, the tower (2.1) has only two non-vanishing quotient modules, so collapses to $0 < H_{0,n} = H_{k-1,n-k+1} < H_{k,n-k} = H_n$. With the isomorphisms for $E^w$ in (2.2), this amounts to a short exact sequence

$$0 \to E^\infty_{0,n} = H_n(E) \to E^\infty_{k,n-k} \to 0.$$ 

with $H_n(E)$ in the middle. Now set $q = n - k$ in (2.4), put in the values of $E^2$ in terms of $H(F)$ and splice the sequences (2.4) and (2.5) together:

$$\begin{array}{c}
H_n(E) \\
0 \\
H_{k,n-k} \to H_{k-1,n-k+1} \to H_{k,n-k} \to H_n(E)
\end{array}$$ 

$$\begin{array}{c}
0 \\
E^\infty_{0,n-1} \to H_{n-1}(F) \\
E^\infty_{k,n-k} \to 0
\end{array}$$ 

The result is the desired long exact sequence. By Leray-Serre, the homomorphism $H_{n-1}(F) \to H_{n-1}(E)$ is that induced by the inclusion $F \subset E$. 

Chapter XI. Spectral Sequences
Spectral sequences may be used to calculate the homology of certain loop spaces which are used in homotopy theory. Let $b_0$ be a fixed point in the pathwise connected space $B$. The space $L(B)$ of paths in $B$ has as points the continuous maps $t: I \to B$ with $t(0) = b_0$; here $I$ is the unit interval, and $L(B)$ is given the "compact-open" topology. The map $p: L(B) \to B$ with $p(t) = t(1)$ projects each path onto its end point in $B$; it can be shown to be a fiber map. The fiber $\Omega(B) = p^{-1}(b_0)$ consists of the closed paths $t$ [with $t(0) = b_0 = t(1)$]; it is known as the loop space of $B$.

**Corollary 2.3.** The loop space $\Omega S^k$ of a $k$-sphere, $k \geq 2$, has homology

$$H_n(\Omega S^k) \cong \mathbb{Z}, \quad n \equiv 0 \pmod{k-1},$$

$$= 0, \quad n \not\equiv 0 \pmod{k-1}, \quad n \geq 0.$$

**Proof.** Since $k>1$, $S^k$ is simply connected, so each loop can be contracted to zero; this implies that $\Omega(S^k)$ is pathwise connected, so that $H_0(\Omega S^k) = \mathbb{Z}$. The space $E = L(B)$ of paths is contractible, as one may see by "pulling" each path back along itself to the origin. Hence $E$ is acyclic (Ex. II.8.1). Thus every third term $H_n(E)$ in the Wuang sequence is zero, except for $H_0(E)$, so the sequence gives isomorphisms $H_{n-k}(\Omega S^k) \cong H_{n-1}(\Omega S^k)$. With the given initial value $H_0 = \mathbb{Z}$ this gives the values stated above.

It is instructive to exhibit the diagram of this spectral sequence for $k = 3$. (See the attached diagram.) The heavy dots denote the terms $E_{p,q} \cong \mathbb{Z}$, and all others are zero. The only non-zero differential is $d^3$; these differentials applied to the elements on the line $p = 3$ "kill" the successive elements in the homology of the fiber. This diagram may be constructed directly, without using the Wuang sequence. We are given the base with generators $1 \in E_{0,0}^2$ and $x \in E_{2,0}^2$; all elements lie on the vertical lines $p = 0$ and $p = 3$. Since $E_\infty = 0$, every element must be killed (i.e., become a boundary or have non-zero boundary) by some differential. But $d^3$ is the only non-zero differential. Therefore $d^3 x = y \neq 0$ in $E_{0,3}^3$, on the fiber. The element $x \otimes y \in E_{3,3}^2$ must then also have a non-zero boundary $d^3(x \otimes y) = y'$ in $E_{0,3}^3$, on the fiber, and so on.
Theorem 2.4. (The Gysin sequence.) If \( f: E \to B \) is a fiber space with simply connected base \( B \) and with fiber \( F \) the \( k \)-sphere \( S^k \) with \( k \geq 1 \), there is an exact sequence

\[
\cdots \to H_n(E) \xrightarrow{f_*} H_n(B) \xrightarrow{d^{n+1}} H_{n-k-1}(B) \to H_{n-1}(E) \to \cdots
\]

Proof. Since \( H_q(F) = H_q(S^k) = 0 \) for \( q \neq 0, k \), the term \( E^2 \) is

\[
E^2_{p,q} = H_p(B), \quad q = 0, q = k; \quad E^2_{p,q} = 0, \quad q \neq 0, k.
\]

The spectral sequence then lies on the two horizontal lines \( q = 0 \) and \( q = k \); the only non-zero differential is \( d^k \), and we obtain two exact sequences

\[
0 \to E^\infty_{n,0} \to E^\infty_{n,0} \xrightarrow{d^{n+1}} E^\infty_{n-k-1,k} \to E^\infty_{n-k-1,k} \to 0,
\]

\[
0 \to E^\infty_{n-k-1,k+1} \to H_n(E) \to E^\infty_{n,0} \to 0
\]

which splice together to give the sequence of the Theorem.

Exercises

1. If \( f: S^m \to S^k \) is a fiber map with \( k \geq 2 \) and with fiber a sphere \( S^l \) prove that one must have \( m = 2k - 1 \) and \( l = k - 1 \). (For \( k = 2, 4, \) and \( 8 \) there are indeed such fiber maps; they are the Hopf fibrations; Hopf [1931, 1935], Steenrod [1951], Hu [1959, p.66].)

In the following three exercises, \( f: E \to B \) is a fiber space with \( B \) pathwise connected and simply connected and fiber \( F \) pathwise connected.

2. If \( H_j(F) = 0 \) for \( 0 < j < t \) and \( H_i(B) = 0 \) for \( 0 < i < s \), obtain the exact sequence

\[
H_{s+t-1}(F) \to H_{s+t-1}(E) \to H_{s+t-1}(B) \to H_{s+t-2}(F) \to \cdots
\]

\[
\to H_2(B) \to H_1(F) \to H_1(E) \to H_1(B) + H.
\]

3. If \( H_i(B) = 0 \) for all \( i > 0 \), prove that \( H_*(F) \cong H_*(E) \) for all \( n \).

4. If \( H_i(F) = 0 \) for all \( i > 0 \), prove that \( H_*(E) \cong H_*(B) \) for all \( n \).

5. Given the Leray-Serre spectral sequence \( E \) and \( Q \) the field of rational numbers, define a spectral sequence \( E' = Q \otimes E \) of vector spaces over \( Q \) and show that \( E'_{p,q} = H_p(B, Q) \otimes H_q(F, Q) \) and \( E'_{p,q} = H_p,q'H_q,F,q+1 \), where the \( H' \) appear in a tower like (2.1) with \( H^p_n(E) \) replaced by \( H_n(E, Q) \).

3. Filtered Modules

A filtration \( F \) of a module \( A \) is a family of submodules \( F_p A \), one for each \( p \in \mathbb{Z} \), with

\[
\cdots \subset F_{p-1} A < F_p A < F_{p+1} A < \cdots. \tag{3.1}
\]

Each filtration \( F \) of \( A \) determines an associated graded module \( G^F A = \{(G^F A)_p = F_p A/F_{p-1} A\} \), consisting of the successive factor modules in the tower (3.1). If \( F \) and \( F' \) are filtrations of \( A \) and \( A' \), respectively, a homomorphism \( a: A \to A' \) of filtered modules is a module homomorphism with \( a(F_p A) \subset F'_p A' \). A filtration \( F \) of a differential \( \mathbb{Z} \)-graded
module $A$ is a family of sub-DG$_Z$-modules $F_p A$, as in (3.1), with the corresponding definition of a homomorphism. This filtration induces a filtration on the $Z$-graded homology module $H(A)$, with $F_p H(A)$ defined as the image of $H(F_p A)$ under the injection $F_p A \to A$. Since $A$ itself is 2-graded by degrees $n$, the filtration $F$ of $A$ determines a filtration $F_p A_n$ of each $A_n$ and the differential of $A$ induces homomorphisms $\partial: F_p A_n \to F_p A_{n-1}$ for each $p$ and each $n$. The family $\{F_p A_n\}$ is a $Z$-bigraded module; it is convenient and customary to write the indices of the grading as $(p, q)$, where $p$ is the filtration degree and $q = n - p$ the complementary degree; the $Z$-bigraded module then has the form $\{F_p A_{p+q}\}$. We use "FDG$_Z$-module" to abbreviate "filtered differential $Z$-graded module".

A filtration $F$ of a DG$_Z$-module $A$ is said to be bounded if for each degree there are integers $s = s(n) < t = t(n)$ such that $F_s A_n = 0$ and $F_t A_n = A_n$. This amounts to the requirement that the filtration of each $A_n$ has "finite length": $0 = F_s A_n < F_{s+1} A_n < \cdots < F_{t-1} A_n = A_n$.

A spectral sequence $(E^r, d^r)$ is said to converge to a graded module $H$ (in symbols, $E^\infty \Rightarrow H$) if there is a filtration $F$ of $H$ and for each $p$ isomorphisms $E^\infty_{p,q} \cong F_p H/F_{p-1} H$ of graded modules. Here, for given $r$ and $p$, $E^r_{p,q}$ denotes the 2-graded module $E^r_p = \{E^r_{p,q}, q = 0, \pm 1, \ldots\}$ (graded by the complementary degree $q$).

The associated spectral sequence of a filtration may now be defined.

**Theorem 3.1.** Each filtration $F$ of a differential $Z$-graded module $A$ determines a spectral sequence $(E^r, d^r)$, $r = 1, 2, \ldots$, which is a covariant functor of $(F, A)$, together with natural isomorphisms

$$E^1_{p,q} \cong H(F_p A/F_{p-1} A); \quad \text{i.e.,} \quad E^1_{p,q} \cong H_{p+q}(F_p A/F_{p-1} A). \quad (3.2)$$

If $F$ is bounded, $E^\infty_p \Rightarrow H(A)$; more explicitly, there are natural isomorphisms

$$E^\infty_{p,q} \cong F_p (H(A)/F_{p-1} (H(A)); \quad \text{i.e.,} \quad E^\infty_{p,q} \cong F_p (H_{p+q} A)/F_{p-1} (H_{p+q} A). \quad (3.3)$$

For the proof we introduce the submodules

$$Z^r_p = [a | a \in F_p A, \partial a \in F_{p-r} A], \quad r = 0, 1, \ldots \quad (3.4)$$

of $F_p A$. An element of $Z^r_p$ may be regarded as an "approximate cycle of level $r$"; its boundary need not be zero, but lies $r$ stages lower down in the filtration. In particular, $Z^0_p = F_p A$. Each $Z^r_p$ is 2-graded by degrees from $A$, so we may regard $Z^r_p$ as the bigraded module with

$$Z^r_{p,q} = [a | a \in F_p A_{p+q}, \partial a \in F_{p-r} A_{p+q-1}]. \quad (3.5)$$

Given this notation, the spectral sequence of the filtration $F$ of $A$ is defined by taking

$$E^r_p = (Z^r_p \cup F_{p-1} A)/ (\partial Z^{r-1}_{p+r-1} \cup F_{p-1} A), \quad r = 1, 2, \ldots$$
while $d^r : E^r_p \to E^r_{p-r}$ is the homomorphism induced on these subquotients by the differential $\partial : A \to A$. From these definitions the proof of the theorem is fussy but straightforward. In detail:

Set $E^0_p = F_p A | F_{p-1} A$ and let $\eta_p : F_p A \to E^0_p$ be the canonical projection. Consider the additive relations

$$E^0_{p+r} \xrightarrow{\partial_p} E^0_p \xleftarrow{a_p} E^0_{p-r},$$

induced on these subquotients by $\partial : A \to A$. Thus $\partial_2$ consists of the pairs $(\eta_p a, \eta_p \partial a)$ for $a \in Z^r_p$ (indeed, this is exactly why we need $Z^r_p$). Moreover $\eta_p a$ lies in the kernel of $\partial_2$ if $\partial a \in F_{p-r-1} A$, so (where "Def" means the "domain of definition")

$$\text{Def } \partial_2 = \eta_p Z^r_p, \quad \text{Ker } \partial_2 = \eta_p Z^{r+1}_p$$

Next, $\partial_1$ consists of the pairs $(\eta_{p+r} b, \eta_p \partial b)$ for $b \in Z^r_{p+r}$, while $\eta_{p+r} b = 0$ if also $b \in F_{p+r-1} A$; that is, if $b \in Z^{r-1}_{p+r-1}$. Hence (where "Ind" means the "indeterminacy")

$$I \quad \partial_1 = \eta_p (\partial Z^r_{p+r}), \quad \text{Ind } \partial_1 = \eta_p (\partial Z^{r-1}_{p+r-1}).$$

In view of the inclusions $\partial Z^{r+1}_{p+r-1} \subset \partial Z^r_{p+r} \subset Z^r_{p+r}$ we can introduce for each $p$ and $r$ a subquotient of $E^0_p$ as

$$E^r_p = (\eta_p Z^r_p) / \eta_p (\partial Z^{r-1}_{p+r-1}), \quad r = 0, 1, 2, \ldots; \quad (3.6)$$

the formulas above show that $\partial$ induces homomorphisms

$$E^r_{p+r,} \xrightarrow{d^r_1} E^r_p \xrightarrow{d^r_2} E^r_{p-r},$$

with image and kernel

$$\text{Im } d^r_1 = \eta_p (\partial Z^r_{p+r}) / \eta_p (\partial Z^{r-1}_{p+r-1}),$$

$$\text{Ker } d^r_2 = \eta_p (Z^{r+1}_p) / \eta_p (\partial Z^{r-1}_{p+r-1}).$$

Therefore (dropping the subscripts 1 and 2) $d^r d^r = 0$ and

$$H_p (E^r, d^r) \cong \eta_p (Z^{r+1}_p) / \eta_p (\partial Z^r_{p+r}) = E^{r+1}_p.$$
relation $\partial_2$: $F_pA/F_{p-1}A - F_{p-1}A/F_{p-2}A$ amounts to an isomorphism

$$\text{Def } \partial_2/\text{Ker } \partial_2 \cong \text{Im } \partial_2/\text{Ind } \partial_2.$$  

But this isomorphism is just $C_p/C_{p-1} \cong B_{p-1}/B_{p-2}$. This gives $d'$ as the composite

$$E'_p = C_p/B_p \xrightarrow{\pi} C_p/C_{p-1} \cong B_{p-1}/B_{p-2} \xrightarrow{\iota} C_{p-1}/B_{p-2} = E_{p-1},$$  

with $\pi$ the projection, $\iota$ the injection. This yields the spectral sequence, much as in Ex. 1.1 (except that $C'$ there is $C_{p+1}$ here).

To describe $F_pH/F_{p-1}H$, write $C = \text{Ker } \partial$ and $B = \partial A$ for the cycles and boundaries, respectively, in $A$. Then $F$ induces on $C$ and $B$ filtrations $F_pC = C \cap F_pA$, $F_pB = B \cap F_pA$. By definition, $F_p(HA) = (F_pC \cup B) / B$. Hence

$$F_p(HA)/F_{p-1}(HA) \cong (F_pC \cup B) / (F_{p-1}C \cup B) \cong F_pC / (F_{p-1}C \cup F_pB),$$

by a modular Noether isomorphism. Another such,

$$F_p(HA)/F_{p-1}(HA) \cong (F_pC \cap F_{p-1}A) / (F_pB \cap F_{p-1}A)$$  \hspace{1cm} (3.7)

represents $F_pH/F_{p-1}H$ as a subquotient of $F_pA/F_{p-1}A$.

The numerator of $E'_p$ in (3.6) is $(Z'_p \cup F_{p-1}A)/F_{p-1}A \cap F_pA/F_{p-1}A$; the denominator is $(\partial Z'_{p+r-1} \cup F_{p-1}A)/F_{p-1}A$, so

$$E'_p = (Z'_p \cup F_{p-1}A) / (\partial Z'_{p+r-1} \cup F_{p-1}A),$$

$$E'_{p,q} = (Z'_{p,q} \cup F_{p-1}A_{p+q}) / (\partial Z'_{p+r-1,q-r+2} \cup F_{p-1}A_{p+q}).$$  \hspace{1cm} (3.8)

Now suppose $F$ bounded, and consider a fixed $(p, q)$ corresponding to a total degree $n = p + q$. In the numerator of $E'_{p,q}$, an element $a \in Z'_{p,q}$ for $r$ large has $\partial a \in F_{p-1}A_{p+q-1} = 0$, hence $a \in F_pC_{p+q}$. Thereafter the numerators are $F_pC_{p+q} \cup F_{p-1}A_{p+q}$. As for the denominator, for $r$ large every element in $F_pB_{p+q}$ is the boundary of an element in $F_{p+r-1}A$; that is, of an element in $Z'_{p+r-1}$. Thereafter the denominators equal $F_pB_{p+q} \cup F_{p-1}A_{p+q}$. But $E^\infty$ is defined as intersection of numerators divided by union of denominators, so

$$E^\infty_{p,q} = (F_pC_{p+q} \cup F_{p-1}A_{p+q}) / (F_pB_{p+q} \cup F_{p-1}A_{p+q}),$$  \hspace{1cm} (3.9)

which is exactly $F_pH/F_{p-1}H$ as given in (3.7). This proves (3.3).

In the literature, $E^\infty$ is usually defined from $H(A)$ by the formula (3.9), so the "convergence" isomorphism (3.3) asserts that this definition agrees with ours.

The convergence (3.3) holds under weaker conditions than boundedness (for a thorough study, see EILENBERG-MOORE [1962]). For example, call a filtration $F$ of the $\text{DG}_k$-module $A$ convergent above if $A$ is the
union of all $F_pA$ and \textit{bounded} below if for each degree $n$ there is an integer $s=s(n)$ such that $F_sA_n=0$.

Proposition 3.2. If $F$ is bounded below and convergent above, then (3.3) holds and the spectral sequence of $F$ is bounded below.

Proof. Since $F$ is bounded below, the intersection of the numerators of $E^r_p$ is $F_pC\cup F_{p-1}A$. Each element of $F_pB$ is a boundary $\partial a$ for some $a\in A=\bigcup F_iA$, hence $a\in F_iA$ for some $i$. Then $a\in Z^{r-1}_{p+r-1}$ for $r=t-p+1$, so $F_pB\cup F_{p-1}A$ again is the union of the denominators $\partial Z^{r-1}_{p+r-1}\cup F_{p-1}A$, and we have (3.3).

In the formula (3.8) the numerator term $Z^r_p$ gives "approximate" cycles of level $r$; while $\partial Z^{r-1}_{p+r-1}$ in the denominator is a submodule of the boundaries (boundaries from $r$ levels up). The proof has so chosen these approximations in this quotient that each has the next as its homology. An alternative formula (for the same spectral sequence) appears in Ex. 1.

The filtration $F$ of a DG-module $A$ is \textit{canonically bounded} if $F_{-1}A=0$ and $F_nA=A$, in each degree $n$.

Theorem 3.3. If $F$ is a canonically bounded filtration of a (positively graded) DG-module $A$, \textit{the spectral sequence} of $F$ lies in the first quadrant and the induced filtration of $H(A)$ is finite, of the form

$$0=F_{-1}H_nA\subset F_0H_nA\subset F_1H_nA\subset \cdots \subset F_nH_nA=H_nA$$

with successive quotients $F, H_n/F_{n-1}H_n \cong E_{\infty, n-p}$ under isomorphisms induced by $1_A$. For example, the \textit{Leray-Serre} theorem arises from a canonically bounded filtration of the singular chains of a fiber space.

Proof. Since $F_{-1}A=0$, $E^1_p=H(F_pA/F_{p-1}A)=0$ for $p<0$. Since $F_nA=A$, $q<0$ implies $F_pA_{p+q}=F_{p-1}A_{p+q}$ and hence $E^1_{p,q}=0$ for $q<0$. Therefore all non-zero $E^*_{p,q}$ lie in the first quadrant of the $(p,q)$-plane, and the induced filtration of $H_n(A)$ is finite as displayed.

For $n=1$ the filtration of $H_1$ amounts to a description of $H_1$ as the middle term of a short exact sequence

$$0 \to E_{1,0} \xrightarrow{\lambda} H_1 \xrightarrow{\sigma} E_{1,0}^\infty \to 0.$$ 

For each $n$, the filtration of $H_n$ yields a monomorphism $E_{0,n}^\infty \to H_n(A)$ and an epimorphism $H_n(A) \to E_{n,0}^\infty$. Combined with the edge homomorphisms we get maps

$$E^1_{0,n} \to H_n(A), \quad H_n(A) \to E^2_{n,0}, \quad (3.10)$$

each induced by $1_A$. In general, the spectral sequence of $F$ determines not $H(A)$ but its subquotients $F_pH/F_{p-1}H$, asserting that each is in its turn a subquotient of $E^1_p=H(F_pA/F_{p-1}A)$. 

Theorem 3.4. (The mapping theorem.) Let \( A, A' \) be \( \text{DG}_\mathbb{Z}\text{-modules} \) with filtrations \( F \) and \( F' \) bounded below and convergent above. If \( a: (F, A) \rightarrow (F', A') \) is a homomorphism such that for some \( t \) the induced map

\[ a': E^t(F, A) \cong E''^t(F', A') \]

is an isomorphism, then \( a' \) is an isomorphism for \( \infty \geq r \geq t \) and moreover \( \alpha_*: H(A) \rightarrow H(A') \) is an isomorphism.

Proof. Since both spectral sequences are bounded below, the previous mapping theorem (Thm. 1.1) shows \( a' \) and \( a'': E^\infty \rightarrow E'^\infty \) isomorphisms. Consider the induced map \( a: H_n(A) \rightarrow H_n(A') \) on homology for a fixed degree \( n \), and the corresponding \( \alpha^{\infty}_{\phantom{r}, n}: FpH_n \rightarrow F'pH'_n \). Since both filtrations are bounded below there is an \( s \) with \( F_sH_n = 0 = F'_sH'_n \). The convergence isomorphisms (3.3) give the horizontal sequences in the commutative diagram

\[
\begin{array}{cccccccc}
0 & \rightarrow & F_{p-1}H_n(A) & \rightarrow & F_pH_n(A) & \rightarrow & E^\infty_{p,n-p} & \rightarrow & 0 \\
& & \downarrow{\alpha_{p-1,n}} & \downarrow{\alpha^{\infty}_{p,n}} & & & & \\
0 & \rightarrow & F'_{p-1}H_n(A') & \rightarrow & F'_pH_n(A') & \rightarrow & E'^\infty_{p,n-p} & \rightarrow & 0.
\end{array}
\]

Since \( \alpha^{\infty}_{\phantom{r}, n} \) is an isomorphism, induction on \( p \) and the Five Lemma show \( \alpha^{\infty}_{\phantom{r}, n} \) an isomorphism. Now the filtration \( F \) is convergent above, so \( H_n(A) = \bigcup F_pH_n(A) \); it follows that \( a \) is an isomorphism, as required.

For \( t=1 \) the hypothesis of this theorem requires that the induced map \( H_n(F_pA/F_{p-1}A) \rightarrow H_n(F'_pA'/F'_{p-1}A') \) be an isomorphism for all \( n \) and \( p \). This special case of the theorem was proved in Thm. V.9.3 and again in Thm. X.11.2.

Let \( a, \beta: (F, A) \rightarrow (F', A') \) be homomorphisms of \( \text{FDG}_\mathbb{Z}\text{-modules} \). A chain homotopy \( s: a = \beta \) is said to have order \( \leq t \) if \( s(F_pA) \subset F'_{p+t}A' \) for all \( p \).

Proposition 3.5. If \( s: a = \beta \) is a homotopy of order \( \leq t \), then

\[ a' = \beta': E'(F, A) \rightarrow E''(F', A') \]

for \( r > t \), and \( \alpha_* = \beta_*: H(A) \rightarrow H(A') \).

Proof. The result \( \alpha_* = \beta_* \) follows from the existence of the chain homotopy (irrespective of its "order"). For the rest, it suffices to consider \( \gamma = a - \beta, \) s: \( \gamma \cong 0 \) and prove \( \gamma' = 0 \). Write \( E'_{\phantom{r}, p} \) as the subquotient (3.8). If \( a \in Z'_p \), then \( \gamma a = \partial sa + s \partial a \), where \( \partial a \in F_{p+1}A' \), \( s \partial a \in F'_{p+1}A' \) since \( t < r \), while \( \partial a \in F_{p+1}A' \), \( s \partial a = \gamma a = s \partial a \in F'_{p+1}A' \) so \( s \partial a \in Z'_{p+1}A' \). Thus \( \gamma a \in \partial Z'_{p+1}A' \) is in the denominator of \( E'_{\phantom{r}, p} \), so determines zero there.

Exercises

1. Show that \( E'_p = Z'_p/((\partial Z'_{p+1}A' \cup Z'_{p-1}A')) \), with \( \delta': E'_p \rightarrow E'_{p-1} \), induced by \( \partial: A \rightarrow A \), gives a spectral sequence isomorphic to that of Thm. 3.1. (These formulas are often used as the definition.)
2. If the filtration $F$ of the differential graded module $A$ is canonically bounded, show that its spectral sequence yields an exact sequence

$$H_2(A) \xrightarrow{e_B} E_2^{2,0} \xrightarrow{d^2} E_2^{0,2} \xrightarrow{e_B} H_1(A) \xrightarrow{e_B} E_1^{2,0} \to 0.$$ 

If $E_{p,q}^n = 0$ for $0 < q < t$ and all $p$, show that $e_B: H_p(A) \cong E_{p,0}^2$ for $0 \leq p < t$ and establish the exact sequence

$$H_{t+1}(A) \xrightarrow{e_B} E_{t+1,0}^2 \xrightarrow{d_{t+1}} E_{t,0}^2 \xrightarrow{e_B} H_t(A) \xrightarrow{e_B} E_{t,0}^2 \to 0.$$ 

3. (The exact sequence of "terms of low degree"; cf. Ex. 2.2.) In Ex. 2 suppose $E_{p,q}^2 = 0$ whenever $0 < q < t$ or $0 < p < s$. Establish an exact sequence, with $H_i$ short for $H_i(A)$,

$$H_{s+t} \xrightarrow{e_B} E_{s+t,0}^2 \xrightarrow{d^{s+t}} E_{s+t-1,0}^2 \xrightarrow{e_B} H_{s+t-1} \xrightarrow{e_B} E_{s+t-1,0}^2 \to \cdots$$

4. (The two-row exact sequence.) In Thm. 3.3 suppose there are two indices $0 \leq a < b$ such that $E_{p,q}^2 = 0$ for $q \neq a, b$ and all $p$. Derive the exact sequence

$$\cdots \to E_{n-b,b}^2 \to H_n \to E_{n-a,a}^2 \xrightarrow{d^r} E_{n-b-1,b}^2 \to H_{n-1} \to \cdots$$

with $r = b - a + 1$. (Hint: cf. the Wang sequence of Thm. 2.1.)

5. Establish a "two-column" exact sequence analogous to Ex. 4.

6. If $A'$ and $A''$ are FDG-vector spaces over a field, and if a filtration of $A' \otimes A''$ is defined by $F_p(A' \otimes A'') = \sum F'_{p'}(A') \otimes F''_{p''}(A'')$ for $p' + p'' = p$, prove for the associated spectral sequences that $E(A' \otimes A'') \cong E(A') \otimes E(A'')$.

7. In the spectral sequence of a filtration $F$ of $A$, show $E_{p,q}^r$ isomorphic to the image of the homomorphism

$$H_{p+q}(F_p A/F_{p-r} A) \to H_{p+q}(F_{p+r-1} A/F_{p-1} A), \quad r \geq 1$$

induced by the identity. (This description may be used to define the spectral sequence of a filtration; see Fadeev-Hurewicz [1958, p. 318].)

### 4. Transgression

In a first quadrant spectral sequence $E$ the last possibly non-zero differential on a term $E_{p,0}^r$ in the base is the differential $d^p: E_{p,0}^r \to E_{0,p-1}^r$ which goes from the base all the way to the fiber. With the edge homomorphisms $e_B$, + this yields a diagram

$$
\begin{array}{cccccc}
0 & & E_{p,0}^1 & & E_{0,p-1}^1 & \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow e_B & & \downarrow \tau & \\
0 \to E_{p,0}^\infty \to E_{p,0}^p \xrightarrow{d^p} E_{0,p-1}^p \to E_{0,p-1}^\infty \to 0
\end{array}
$$

(4.1)

with exact row and columns. When (as we have assumed here) the spectral sequence starts with $r = 1$, the additive relation

$$\tau = e_F^{-1} d^p e_B^{-1}: E_{p,0}^2 \to E_{0,p-1}^1, \quad p = 2, 3, \ldots$$
is called the \textit{transgression}. Any additive relation (Prop.\textsc{II}.6.1) is a homomorphism from a submodule of its domain (here called the module of transgressive elements) to a quotient module of its range; in this case, (4.1) represents $\tau$ as the homomorphism $d^p$ from the submodule $E^p_{0,0}$ of $E^2_{0,0}$ to the quotient module $E^1_{0,0,p-1}$. Replacing $E^1$ by $E^2$ in this definition of $\tau$ gives an additive relation $\tau': E^2_{0,0} \rightarrow E^3_{0,0,p-1}$, also called transgression. Each transgression uniquely determines the other via the edge homomorphism $e: E^1_{0,0,p-1} \rightarrow E^2_{0,0,p-1}$, for $\tau = e^{-1}\tau'$; since $e$ is an epimorphism, $e^{-1} = 1$, so $\tau' = e\tau$.

**Proposition 4.1.** The transgression in the spectral sequence $E$ of a canonically bounded filtration of $A$ is the additive relation

$$\tau: E^2_{p,0} \rightarrow E^1_{0,0,p-1}$$

\textit{induced by $\partial: A+A$.}

**Proof.** Here $E$ is a first quadrant spectral sequence. Its edge terms can be written explicitly from (3.8). Since $\partial A_{p+1} < A$, $A_{p+1} = A_{0,0,p} = A_{r-1} - r + 2$ for any $r \geq 2$, so, on the base, (3.8) becomes

$$E^r_{p,0} = (Z^r_{0,0} \cap F_{p-1} A_p) / (\partial A_{p+1} \cap F_{p-1} A_p), \quad r = 2, 3, \ldots \tag{4.2}$$

The denominator is independent of $r$; this verifies the fact that the edge homomorphisms $e_B$ are monic. Also $Z^r_{0,0}$ is $F_0 C_q$ when $r \geq 1$ and $C$ is the kernel of $\partial$. Hence on the fiber (3.8) is

$$E^r_{0,q} = F_0 C_q / \partial Z^{-1}_{r-1, q-r+2}, \quad r = 1, 2, \ldots \tag{4.3}$$

The numerator is independent of $r$ (edge homomorphisms $e_F$ are epic).

The transgression is the composite relation $\tau = e_F^{-1} d^p e_B^{-1}$, where $e_F^{-1}$ and $e_B^{-1}$ are induced by $1_A$ and $d^p$ is induced by $\partial$. The composite $\tau$ is then the additive relation induced by $\partial$, as one sees by calculating $\tau$ as the set of all pairs of cosets $(a + D^0_{p,0}, \partial a + D^1_{0,0,p-1})$ for $a \in Z^r_{0,0}$ and $D^r_{p,0}$ the denominator of $E^r_{p,0}$, or by applying the composition principle for additive relations (Prop.\textsc{II}.6.3).

The edge maps (3.40) and the transgression can be computed directly from $A$ and two subcomplexes defined by the filtration, without using the whole spectral sequence, but using a generalization of the familiar homology connecting homomorphisms.

If $L$ and $M$ are subcomplexes of a (not necessarily positive) complex $K$, the \textit{connecting relation}

$$\phi = \phi (K; L, M): H_n (K/M) \rightarrow H_{n-1} (L) \tag{4.4}$$

is defined to be the additive relation induced by $\partial: K \rightarrow K$. Here each homology group is to be regarded as a subquotient of $K$; for example,

$$H_n (K/M) = C_n (K, M) / (\partial K_{n+1} \cup M_n),$$
where $C_n(K, M)$ is the module of relative cycles (all $k \in K_n$ with $\partial k \in M_{n-1}$). Thus $Q$ consists of the pairs of homology classes $(k + (\partial K_{n+1} \cap M_k), \partial k + \partial L_n)$ for all $k \in C_n(K, L \cap M)$. If $M = L$, the connecting relation $Q$ is just the usual connecting homomorphism $\partial_L$ for the short exact sequence $L \to K \to K/L$ of complexes. More generally,

**Proposition 4.2.** If $L$ and $M$ are subcomplexes of the complex $K$, with $L_{n-1} \subset M_{n-1}$ and $L_n \subset M_n$, then $Q = Q(K; L, M)$ can be described via connecting homomorphisms as the composite relation

$$Q(K; L, M) = \gamma^{-1} \partial_M = \partial_L \beta^{-1}: H_n(K/M) \to H_{n-1}(L)$$

where $\beta$ and $\gamma$ are induced by the identity in the commutative diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
H_n(K) & \xrightarrow{\partial_L} & H_{n-1}(L) \\
\downarrow{\beta} & & \downarrow{\gamma} \\
H_n(K) & \xrightarrow{\partial_M} & H_{n-1}(M)
\end{array}
$$

**Proof.** The hypotheses $L_{n-1} \subset M_{n-1}$ and $L_n \subset M_n$ show that the identity induces homomorphisms $\beta$ and $\gamma$ as displayed. By the equivalence principle (Prop. II.6.2), $\beta^{-1}$ and $\gamma^{-1}$ are the additive relations induced by $1$. By the composition principle (Prop. II.6.3), each of $\partial_L \beta^{-1}$ and $\gamma^{-1} \partial_M$ turns out to be the additive relation induced by $\partial 1 = 1 \partial$; hence the result.

This result shows that $\text{Def} Q = \text{Im} \beta$ and $\text{Ind} Q = \text{Ker} \gamma$.

In §10 we need information as to the effect of a chain equivalence on the connecting relations, as follows.

**Lemma 4.3.** Let $f: K \to K'$ be a chain transformation which induces homology isomorphisms $f_*: H_n(K) \cong H_n(K')$, while $L, M$ are subcomplexes of $K$ and $L', M'$ subcomplexes of $K'$ with $f(L) \subset L'$, $f(M) \subset M'$, so that $f$ induces chain transformations $g: L \to L'$, $h: K/M \to K'/M'$. Assume that $g_*$ and $h_*$ are homology isomorphisms and that $L_k \subset M_k$, $L'_k \subset M'_k$ for $k = n-1, n$, as in Prop. 4.2. Then the diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
Q = Q(K; L, M): & H_n(K/M) & \to H_{n-1}(L) \\
\downarrow{g_*} & & \downarrow{h_*} \\
Q' = Q(K'; L', M'): & H_n(K'/M') & \to H_{n-1}(L')
\end{array}
$$

is commutative.

This result computes $Q'$ from $Q$ as $Q' = g_* Q h_*^{-1}$, or conversely.

**Proof.** Since $f_*$ and $g_*$ are homology isomorphisms, the exact homology sequences for $L, K, K/L$ and $L', K', K'/L'$ show that $f$ induces a homology isomorphism $\varphi: K/L \to K'/L'$. By Prop. 4.2 we may compute the connecting relations $Q = \partial_L \beta^{-1}$ and $Q' = \partial_L \beta'^{-1}$ from the rows of
the commutative diagram
\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
H_n(K/M) & \xrightarrow{\beta} & H_n(K/L) \\
\downarrow{h_*} & & \downarrow{\varphi_*} \\
H_n(K'/M') & \xrightarrow{\beta'} & H_n(K'/L') \\
\end{array}
\]
Since the diagram commutes, \(\beta' \varphi_* = h_* \beta\), or \(\beta^{-1} h_*^{-1} = \varphi_*^{-1} \beta'^{-1}\). But \(h_*\) and \(\varphi_*\) are isomorphisms, so \(\varphi_* \beta^{-1} = \beta'^{-1} h_*\). Now \(g_* e = g_* \partial \beta^{-1} = \partial \beta' \varphi_*^{-1} = \partial \beta' h_* = \varphi' h_*\), as desired.

**Theorem 4.4.** If \(F\) is a canonically bounded filtration of a DG-module \(A\) the "edge effects" in the spectral sequence of \(F\) can be computed from \(A\) and its subcomplexes \(L = F_0 A\) and \(M\), where \(M_n = F_{n-1} A_n \cup \partial F_n A_{n+1}\). Specifically, the edge homomorphisms
\[
H_n(F_0 A) = E^1_{\ast, n} \to H_n(A), \quad H_n(A) \to E^2_{\ast, 0} = H_n(A/M)
\]
are induced by the injection \(F_0 A \to A\) and the projection \(A \to A/M\), respectively, while the transgression \(\tau\) is the connecting relation \(\varphi(A; F_0 A, M)\).

**Proof.** By (4.3),
\[
E^1_{\ast, n} = F_0 C_n / \partial F_0 A_{n+1} = H_n(F_0 A).
\]

By (4.2) and the definition of \(H_n(A/M)\) by relative cycles,
\[
E^2_{\ast, 0} = (Z^2_{\ast, 0} \cup F_{n-1} A_n) / (\partial A_{n+1} \cup F_{n-1} A_n)
= C_n(A, M) / (\partial A_{n+1} \cup M_n) = H_n(A/M).
\]

But the maps \(e_B\) and \(e_F\) are induced by the identity, whence the first result. Similarly, each of \(\tau\) and \(\varphi\) is the additive relation \(E^2_{\ast, 0} \to E^1_{\ast, n-1}\) induced by \(\partial\), so \(\tau = \varphi\) as desired.

The situation may be visualized in terms of the complexes
\[
F_0 A \to A \\
\downarrow \\
\text{AIM}.
\]
Since \(M_n > (F_0 A)\), for \(n \geq 1\), the transgression can also be described in terms of ordinary connecting homomorphisms, as in Prop.4.2. This theorem shows how additive relations clarify a result of \(\text{SERRE}\) (loc. cit., I.3; his notation \(R = F_0 A, S = \text{AIM}\)). In the case of a fiber map \(f: E \to B, H(A) = H(E), H(F_0 A)\) is the homology of the fiber, \(H_\varphi(\text{AIM}) = E^2_{\varphi, 0} = H_\varphi(B, Z)\) that of the base. Thus Prop.4.2 gives for transgression the following "geometric" description (in which it originated): A homology class of the base is transgressive if it can be represented by a cycle \(z\) such that \(z = fc\), for \(c\) a chain of the total space with \(\partial c\) in the fiber. An image of \(\text{cls} z\) under transgression is then the homology class, in the fiber, of any such \(\partial c\).
5. Exact Couples

An alternative description of spectral sequences can be given via "exact couples" (Massey [1952]). Though not necessary to the sequel, they throw some light on the origin and nature of spectral sequences. An exact couple \( \mathbb{C} = \{D, E; i, j, k\} \) is a pair of modules \( D, E \) together with three homomorphisms \( i, j, k \),

\[
\begin{array}{c}
D \xrightarrow{i} D \\
\downarrow j \\
E \\
\uparrow k
\end{array}
\]  

(5.1)

which form an exact triangle in the sense that kernel = image at each vertex. The modules \( D \) and \( E \) in an exact couple may be graded or \( \mathbb{Z} \)-bigraded; in the latter case each of \( i, j, k \) has some bidegree.

The exactness of \( \mathbb{C} \) shows that the composite \( jk: E \rightarrow E \) has square zero, hence is a differential on \( E \). Form the homology module \( H(E, jk) \) for this differential. Construct the triangle

\[
\begin{array}{c}
iD \xrightarrow{i'} iD \\
\downarrow k' \\
H(E, jk) \\
\uparrow j'
\end{array}
\]

(5.2)

where \( i' \) is induced by \( i \) and \( j \) and \( k' \) are given by

\[ j'(id) = jd + jkE, \quad k'(e + jkE) = ke, \quad e \in E, \quad jke = 0. \]

Observe that \( id = 0 \) implies \( d \in jkE \), so \( jd \in jkE \) and \( j \) is well defined. Similarly \( jke = 0 \) implies \( ke \in iD \), so \( k' \) is well defined. Call \( \mathbb{C}' \) the derived couple of \( \mathbb{C} \); it is a functor of \( \mathbb{C} \) under the evident definition of homomorphisms for exact couples. A diagram chase proves

**Theorem 5.1.** The derived couple of an exact couple is exact.

There is a whole sequence of derived couples. Iterate \( i \) \((r-1)\)-times

\[
\begin{array}{c}
i^{r-1}: D \xrightarrow{i} D \xrightarrow{i} \cdots \xrightarrow{i} D \\
\downarrow j^{r-1} \\
E \\
\uparrow k^{r-1}
\end{array}
\]

Here \( i^{r-1}: D \rightarrow D \) and \( j^{r-1} \) are additive relations, with

\[ \text{Ind}(j^{r-1}) = j(Ker i^{r-1}), \quad \text{Im}(j^{r-1}) = k^{-1}0 < k^{-1}(i^{r-1}D). \]

Set

\[
D^r = i^{r-1}D, \quad E^r = k^{-1}(i^{r-1}D)/j(Ker i^{r-1}).
\]

(5.3)

Then \( i, j^{r-1}, \) and \( k \) induce homomorphisms \( i_r, j_r, k_r \), in the triangle

\[
\begin{array}{c}
D^r \xrightarrow{i_r} D^r \\
\downarrow j_r \\
E \\
\uparrow k_r
\end{array}
\]

\[ r = 1, 2, \ldots, \]

called the \( r \)-th derived couple of \( \mathbb{C} \).
Theorem 5.2. The $r$-th derived couple $\mathbb{C}^r$ is exact with $\mathbb{C}^1 = \mathbb{C}$, $\mathbb{C}^2 = \mathbb{C}'$, and $\mathbb{C}^{r+1}$ is the derived couple of $\mathbb{C}^r$.

Proof. For $r = 1$, $E^1 = E$. For $r = 2$, exactness of $\mathbb{C}$ gives $iD = j^{-1}0$, $\ker i = kE$, hence $E^2 = k^{-1}j^{-1}0|k kE = H(E, j k)$ and thus $\mathbb{C}^2$ the derived couple of $\mathbb{C}$. For $r > 2$, $D^{r+1} = i D^r = i D'$; we need only show that $E^{r+1}$ is the homology of $E^r$ under the differential $j, k_r: E^r \to E^r$. To exhibit this differential, write the definition (5.3) of $E^r$ as

$$E^r = C/B, \quad C = k^{-1}(i^* D), \quad B = j(Ker i^{-1}).$$

An element of $E^r$ is a coset $c + B$, where $kc = i^* a$ for some $a$, and

$$j, k_r (c + B) = j_r (kc) = j d + B, \quad kc = i^* a.$$  \hfill (5.4)

It will suffice to prove

$$\ker (j, k_r) = k^{-1}(i^* D)/B, \quad \text{Im} (j, k_r) = j(Ker i^*).$$

First $j, k_r (c + B) = 0$ gives $ja = j a$ for some $a \in D$ with $i^* a = 0$. By the exactness of $Q$, $a = a d'$ for some $d'$, so $kc = i^* d'$ and $cc \in k^{-1}(i^* D)$. Conversely, $kc = i^* d'$ gives $j, k_r (c + B) = 0$; the kernel is as stated. Similarly $\text{Im} (j, k_r)$ consists by (5.4) of elements $j d + B$ with $i^* d = i k c = 0$, and conversely $i^* d = 0$ implies $i^* a = kc$ for some $c$; this gives the stated image. Since $\mathbb{C}^{r+1}$ is the derived couple of $\mathbb{C}^r$, it is exact by Thm. 5.1.

Corollary 5.3. An exact couple of $\mathbb{Z}$-bigraded modules $D, E$ with maps of bidegrees

$$\deg i = (1, -1), \quad \deg j = (0, 0), \quad \deg k = (-1, 0)$$  \hfill (5.5)

determines a spectral sequence $(E^r, \mathbb{C})$ with $d^r = j, k_r, r = 1, 2, \ldots$.

Proof. Given (5.5), the couple $\mathbb{C}^r$ has maps of the following bidegrees

$$\deg i_r = (1, -1), \quad \deg j_r = (-r + 1, r - 1), \quad \deg k_r = (-1, 0).$$

It follows that $\deg (j, k_r) = (-r, r - 1)$, so each $E^{r+1}$ is the homology of $E^r$ with respect to a differential $d^r$ of the bidegree appropriate to a spectral sequence.

An exact couple $\mathbb{C}$ with bidegrees (5.5) may be displayed as

$$\cdots \to E_{p, q+1} \xrightarrow{k} D_{p-1, q+1} \xrightarrow{i} E_{p-1, q+1} \xrightarrow{k} D_{p-2, q+1} \xrightarrow{i} \cdots$$

$$\cdots \to E_{p+1, q} \xrightarrow{k} D_{p, q} \xrightarrow{i} E_{p, q} \xrightarrow{k} D_{p-1, q} \xrightarrow{i} \cdots$$

$$\cdots \to E_{p+2, q-1} \xrightarrow{k} D_{p+1, q-1} \xrightarrow{i} E_{p+1, q-1} \xrightarrow{k} D_{p, q-1} \xrightarrow{i} \cdots$$
Each sequence consisting of a vertical step \(i\), followed by two horizontal steps \(j\) and \(k\), followed by a vertical step \(i\), \ldots is exact; indeed the diagram may be regarded as the intercalation of these various exact sequences, which have the terms \(D\) in common. The description of the \(r\)-th derived couple at indices \((p,q)\) is visible in the diagram: Form \(E'_{p,q}\) as a subquotient of \(E_{p,q}\) with numerator obtained by pulling back (along \(k\)) the image of the composite vertical map \(i'^{-1}\), and denominator obtained by pulling forward (along \(j\)) the kernel of the corresponding \(i'^{-1}\) (see (5.3)).

Each filtration \(F\) of a 2-graded differential module \(A\) determines an exact couple as follows. The short exact sequence of complexes \(F_{p-1} \rightarrow F_p A \rightarrow F_p A/F_{p-1} A\) yields the usual exact homology sequence

\[
\cdots \rightarrow H_n(F_{p-1} A) \overset{i}{\rightarrow} H_n(F_p A) \overset{i}{\rightarrow} H_n(F_p A/F_{p-1} A) \overset{k}{\rightarrow} H_{n-1}(F_{p-1} A) \rightarrow \cdots
\]

where \(i\) is induced by the injection, \(j\) by the projection, and \(k\) is the homology connecting homomorphism. These sequences for all \(p\) combine to give an exact couple with

\[
D_{p,q} = H_{p+q}(F_p A), \quad E_{p,q} = H_{p+q}(F_p A/F_{p-1} A),
\]

and with degrees of \(i\), \(j\), \(k\) as in (5.5). Call this the exact couple of the filtration \(F\).

**Theorem 5.4.** The spectral sequence of \(F\) is isomorphic to that of the exact couple of \(F\).

**Proof.** The spectral sequence of the exact couple (5.6) of \(F\) has

\[
E_r = k^{-1}(\text{Im } i'^{-1})/j(Ker i'^{-1}), \quad i: H(F_{p-1} A) \rightarrow H(F_p A).
\]

Regard \(E_p = E'_p = H(F_p A/F_{p-1} A)\) and hence also each \(E'_p\) as a subquotient module of \(F_p A/F_{p-1} A\). Consider the numerator of \(E'_r\). Each homology class of \(E'_p\) is represented by a "relative cycle" \(c \in F_p\) with \(\partial c \in F_{p-1}\), while \(k(\text{cls } c) = \text{cls } (\partial c) \in H(F_{p-1})\) lies in \(i'^{-1} H(F_{p-r}) \subset H(F_{p-1})\) if \(\partial c = a + \partial b\) for some \(b \in F_{p-1}\) and some \(a \in F_{p-r}\). Then \(c-b\) is in the module \(Z'_p\) of (3.5) and \(c = (c-b) + b \in Z'_p \cup F_{p-1} A\). This is the numerator of (3.8).

On the other hand, the denominator of \(E'_r\) is given by \(j(Ker i'^{-1})\). The kernel of \(i'^{-1}: H(F_p A) \rightarrow H(F_{p+r-1} A)\) consists of the homology classes of those cycles \(c \in F_p A\) with \(c = \partial b\) for some \(b \in F_{p+r-1} A\), hence for \(b \in Z'_{p+r-1}\). Then \(j(\text{cls } c) = \text{cls } (\partial b)\) has \(\partial b \in \partial Z'_{p+r-1} \cup F_{p-1}\). This is the denominator of (3.8). All told, \(E'_r\) is given by the formula (3.8) used to define the spectral sequence directly from the filtration. In both cases, \(d_r\) is induced by \(\partial: A \rightarrow A\).

**Corollary 5.5.** In the spectral sequence of an FDG-module the first differential \(d^1\) may be described in terms of the maps \(j\) and \(k\) of the exact
homology sequence for $F_pA/F_{p-1}A$ as the composite $d^1 = jk$

$$E^1_{p,q} = H_{p+q}(F_pA/F_{p-1}A) \xrightarrow{jk} H_{p+q-1}(F_{p-1}A/F_{p-2}A) = E^1_{p-1,q}.$$

Note that the sequence of derived couples contains more information than the spectral sequence alone, since it involves not only the $E'$, but also the $D'$ and the maps $i_*, j_*, k_*$ which determine the successive differentials $d$.

An exact couple need not arise from a filtration. An example is the Bockstein exact couple (Browder [1961]; cf. also Ex.II.4.2) for a complex $K$ of torsion-free abelian groups. Let $l$ be a prime number, $Z_l$ the additive group of integers modulo 1, and $Z \rightarrow Z \rightarrow Z_l$ the corresponding exact sequence of abelian groups. Since each $K_i$ is torsion free, $K \rightarrow K \rightarrow K \otimes Z_l$ is a short exact sequence of complexes. The usual exact homology sequence is an exact couple

$$\begin{align*}
H(K) & \xrightarrow{} H(K) \\
H(K \otimes Z_l) & \xrightarrow{}
\end{align*}$$

of 2-graded (not bigraded) abelian groups.

Another instance arises from tensor products. The tensor product applied to a long exact sequence yields an exact couple and hence a spectral sequence. Indeed, factor the long exact sequence

$$
\rightarrow A_{p+1} \rightarrow A_p \rightarrow A_{p-1} \rightarrow A_{p-2} \rightarrow \cdots
$$
of left $R$-modules into short exact sequences

$$
\cdots, K_p \rightarrow A_p \rightarrow K_{p-1}, K_{p-1} \rightarrow A_{p-1} \rightarrow K_{p-2}, \cdots.
$$

For a right $R$-module $G$ and each $p$ we obtain the usual long exact sequence

$$
\rightarrow \text{Tor}_q(G, K_p) \xrightarrow{i} \text{Tor}_q(G, A_p) \xrightarrow{k} \text{Tor}_q(G, K_{p-1}) \xrightarrow{i} \text{Tor}_{q-1}(G, K_p) \rightarrow \cdots
$$
with connecting homomorphisms $i$. These assemble into an exact couple with

$$D_{p,q} = \text{Tor}_q(G, K_p), \quad E_{p,q} = \text{Tor}_q(G, A_p)$$

with the degrees of $i$, $j$, $k$ as in (5.5); moreover $d = jk$: $\text{Tor}_q(G, A_p) \rightarrow \text{Tor}_q(G, A_{p-1})$ is the homomorphism induced by the given mapping $A_p \rightarrow A_{p-1}$. Similarly, if $C$ is a left $R$-module we obtain an exact couple with

$$D_{p,q} = \text{Ext}_{-q}(C, K_p), \quad E_{p,q} = \text{Ext}_{-q}(C, A_p)$$

and with the degrees of $i$, $j$, and $k$ as in (5.5).
Exercises

1. For an exact couple \( C \) with "first quadrant" term \( E \), show that \( D_{p-1, q} = D_{p, q-1} \) for \( p < 0 \) and \( q < 0 \). Describe the upper and lower edges of the corresponding diagram for \( C \).

2. Show that the exactness of the derived couple \( C' \) can be deduced from the Ker-coker sequence for the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
E/[i*E] & \xrightarrow{k} & D \\
\downarrow{(i*)} & & \downarrow{i*} \\
0 & \xrightarrow{k^{-1}iD} & 0 \end{array}
\]

The following sequence of exercises describe spectral sequences in terms of additive relations and is due to D. Puppe [1962].

3. A differential relation \( d \) on a module \( E \) is an additive relation \( d: E \rightarrow E \) with \( \text{Ker} d \geq \text{Im} d \). Define \( H(E, d) \).

4. Show that a spectral sequence can be described as a module \( E \) together with a sequence of differential relations \( d_r = d_{r+1} \) such that \( d_{r+1} E = d_r^{-1} E, \quad d_r^{-1} E = d_r^{-1} 0 \). (Hint: define \( E_{r+1} = H(E, d_r) \).

5. Show that the spectral sequence of an exact couple \( C \) is \( E \) together with the differential relations \( d_r; \ r = 2, 3, \ldots \).

6. Show that the spectral sequence of a filtration \( F \) is that of the module \( E_0 = E_0 \) with \( E_0 = F/F_{p-1} \) and differentials the additive relations \( d_r: F/F_{r-1} \rightarrow F_{p-1}/F_{p-1} \) induced by \( \partial \) (\( r = 0, 1, \ldots \)).

6. Bicomplexes

Many useful filtrations arise from bicomplexes. A bicomplex (or, a "double complex") \( K \) is a family \( \{ K_{p, q} \} \) of modules with two families of module homomorphisms, defined for all integers \( p \) and \( q \) and such that

\[
\partial' \circ \partial' = 0, \quad \partial \partial' + \partial' \partial = 0, \quad \partial' \partial' = 0. \tag{6.2}
\]

Thus \( K \) is a \( Z \)-bigraded module and \( \partial' \), \( \partial'' \) are homomorphisms of bi-degrees \( (-1, 0) \) and \( (0, -1) \), respectively. A bicomplex is positive if it lies in the first quadrant \( K_{p, q} = 0 \) unless \( p \geq 0, q \geq 0 \). A homomorphism \( f: K \rightarrow L \) of bicomplexes is a homomorphism of bigraded modules, of degree 0, with \( f \partial' = \partial' f \) and \( f \partial'' = \partial'' f \). The objects \( K_{p, q} \) in a bicomplex may be R-modules, A-modules, graded modules, or objects from some abelian category. The second homology \( H'' \) of \( K \) is formed with respect to \( \partial'' \) in the usual way as

\[
H''_{p, q}(K) = \text{Ker}(\partial'': K_{p, q} \rightarrow K_{p, q-1})/\partial'' K_{p, q+1}; \tag{6.3}
\]

it is a bigraded object with a differential \( \partial'': H''_{p, q} \rightarrow H''_{p-1, q} \) induced by the original \( \partial' \). In turn, its homology

\[
H_{p, q}'(K) = \text{Ker}(a': H''_{p, q} \rightarrow H''_{p-1, q})/\partial' H''_{p+1, q} \tag{6.4}
\]
is a bigraded object. The first homology $H'(K)$ and the iterated homology $H''H'K$ are defined analogously.

Each bicomplex $K$ determines a single complex $X = \text{Tot}(K)$ as

$$X_n = \sum_{p+q=n} K_{p,q}, \quad \partial = \partial' + \partial'': X_n \to X_{n-1}. \quad (6.5)$$

The assumptions (6.2) imply that $\partial^2 = 0$; if $K$ is positive, so is $X$, and in this case each direct sum in (6.5) is finite. This totalization operator has already been used. Thus, if $X$ and $Y$ are complexes of $K$-modules with boundary operators $\partial'$ and $\partial''$, respectively, $X \otimes Y$ is naturally a bicomplex $\{X_p \otimes Y_q\}$ with two boundaries

$$\partial'(x \otimes y) = (\partial' x) \otimes y, \quad \partial''(x \otimes y) = (-1)^{\deg x} x \otimes \partial'' y$$

which satisfy (6.2); the tensor product of complexes, as defined in Chap. V, is $\text{Tot}(X \otimes Y)$. Similarly $\text{Hom}(X, Y)$ is a bicomplex.

The first filtration $F'$ of $X = \text{Tot}(K)$ is defined by the subcomplexes $F'_p$ with

$$(F'_p X)_n = \sum_{k \leq p} K_{k,n-k}. \quad (6.6)$$

The associated spectral sequence of $F$ is called the first spectral sequence $E'$ of the bicomplex.

**Theorem 6.1.** For the first spectral sequence $E'$ of a bicomplex $K$ with associated total complex $X$ there are natural isomorphisms

$$E^2_{p,q} \cong H^r_p H^s_q(K). \quad (6.7)$$

If $K_{p,q} = 0$ for $p < 0$, $E^2 \Rightarrow H(X)$. If $K$ is positive, $E$ lies in the first quadrant.

In other words, this spectral sequence shows how the iterated homology $H''H'$ approximates the total homology of $X$.

**Proof.** Let $E = E'$ be the first spectral sequence. As in (3.2), $E^1_{p,q} = H_{p+q}(F'_p X/F'_p-1 X)$. But the definition (6.6) of the filtration $F'$ shows that

$$(F'_p X/F'_p-1 X)_{p+q} \cong K_{p,q}.$$ \hspace{1cm} Therefore $E^1_{p,q} = H''_{p,q}(K).$ Moreover, $d^1: E^1 \to E^1$ is induced by $\partial = \partial' + \partial''$, which under the isomorphism $E^1 \cong H''K$ corresponds to $\partial'$. Therefore $E^1 = H(E^1, d^1) = H''H'K$, as asserted in (6.7).

Since each $X_n$ is the union of all $F'_p X_n$, the first filtration is convergent above. When $K_{p,q} = 0$ for $p < 0$, $F'_p X = 0$, and the filtration is bounded below. This gives the convergence $E^2 \Rightarrow H(X)$. For $K$ positive, (6.7) shows that $E$ lies in the first quadrant.

It is instructive to give a proof of the theorem directly from the definition

$$E^2_{p,q} = (Z^2_{p,q} \cup F'_{p-1} X_n)/(\partial Z^1_{p+1,q} \cup F'_{p-1} X_n), \quad n = p + q.$$
Chapter XI. Spectral Sequences

An element $a \in F_p X_n$ has the form

$$a = a_{p,q} + a_{p-1,q+1} + a_{p-2,q+2} + \cdots,$$

where we have grouped terms of the same bidegree. Hence $a \in Z_{p,q}$ if $\partial'' a_{p,q} = 0$ and $a \in Z_{p,q}^2$ if

$$\partial'' a_{p,q} = 0, \quad \partial' a_{p,q} + \partial'' a_{p-1,q+1} = 0.$$

Therefore $E_{p,q}^2 = L_{p,q}/M_{p,q}$, where

$$L_{p,q} = [a_{p,q} | \partial'' a_{p,q} = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad \partial' a_{p,q} = - \partial'' a_{p-1,q+1} \quad \text{for some} \quad a_{p-1,q+1}],$$

$$M_{p,q} = [\partial' b_{p+1,q} + \partial'' b_{p+1,q+1} | \partial'' b_{p+1,q+1} = 0].$$

In L the first condition on $a_{p,q}$ makes it a $a''$-cycle, so that it determines $\text{cls}'' a_{p,q} \in H''_{p,q}$; the second condition asserts that this homology class lies in the kernel of $\partial': H''_{p,q} \to H''_{p-1,q}$. The term $\partial'' b_{p,q+1}$ in M can vary $a_{p,q}$ by a $\partial''$-boundary, leaving $\text{cls}'' a_{p,q}$ unchanged; the term $\partial' b_{p+1,q}$ can vary $\text{cls}'' a_{p,q}$ by $\partial'(\text{cls}'' b_{p+1,q})$. Hence the correspondence given by $a_{p,q} \mapsto \text{cls}''(\text{cls}'' a_{p,q})$ provides the desired isomorphism $E_{p,q}^2 \cong H'_p H''_q$.

The second filtration $F''$ and spectral sequence $E''$ are defined similarly. To keep $\mathcal{F}$ as notation for the filtration degree, write the bicomplex as $K = (K_{q,p})$, so that $a': K_{q,p} \to K_{q-1,p}$: Then $F''$ is defined by $(F'' X)_n = \sum K_{n-h,h}$ for $h \leq \mathcal{F}$ and has an associated spectral sequence $E''$ with $E''_{p,q} \cong H''_{p} H''_q (\{K_{q,p}\})$. When $K_{q,p} = 0$ for $p < \mathcal{F}$, this converges to the filtration $F''$ of $H(X)$. If $K$ is positive, both spectral sequences lie in the first quadrant and converge to different filtrations $F'$ and $F''$ of the same graded module $H(X)$.

**Exercises**

1. Let $X$ and $Y$ be complexes of abelian groups, with each $X_n$ a free group. In the first spectral sequence of the bicomplex $K = X \otimes Y$, show that $E_{p,q}^2 \cong H_p (X \otimes H_q (Y))$. Use the KÖNNETH formula, with the explicit generators of $V.6$ for Tor, applied as in Prop.V.10.6, to show that $\partial^2 = \partial^3 = \cdots = 0$ and hence that $E^2 = E^{\infty}$ in this case.

2. Describe $E_{p,q}^2$ by a quotient $L/M$, as in the second proof of the text.

7. The Spectral Sequence of a Covering

If a group $\Gamma$ operates properly, as in IV.11, on the right on a pathwise connected space $X$, then $X$ is a "regular covering" of the quotient space (= orbit space) $X/\Pi$ under the canonical projection

$$f: X \to X/\Pi.$$

Each $a$ in $\Gamma$ carries singular simplices of $X$ into such, so the total singular complex $S(X)$ and its homology $H(S(X), \mathbb{C})$ are both right $\Pi$-modules.
Theorem 7.1. If $\Pi$ operates properly on the pathwise connected space $X$ while $C$ is any abelian group, there is a first quadrant spectral sequence $E$ with

$$E^2_{p,q} = H_p(\Pi, H_q(X, C)) \Rightarrow H(X/\Pi, C).$$

(7.1)

As always, the convergence means that there is a filtration $F$ of the graded group $H_n(X/\Pi, C)$ and an isomorphism of $E^\infty_{p,q}$ to the associated (bi)-graded group $G_{p,q} H_{p+q}(X/\Pi, C)$.

For the proof, first recall how the various homologies are computed. The singular homology $H_*(X, C)$ is that of the complex $C \otimes S(X)$. For any right $\Pi$-module $A$, such as $H(X, C)$, the homology $H_p(\Pi, A)$ is that of $A \otimes_{\Pi} B(\Pi)$, where $B(\Pi)$ is the bar resolution for $\Pi$—any other projective resolution of the trivial $\Pi$-module $Z$ would do as well. Finally the homology of the orbit space $X/\Pi$ is computed from its singular complex $S(X/\Pi)$. There is an isomorphism of complexes

$$\phi: S(X) \otimes \mathbb{Z} \cong S(X/\Pi)$$

(7.2)

defined as $\phi(T \otimes 1) = \int T'$ for each singular simplex $T'$ in $X$. Indeed, since $Z$ is a trivial $\Pi$-module, $T' \otimes 1 = T'' \otimes 1$ for each $u \in \Pi$, so $\phi$ is well defined on $\otimes_{\Pi}$. By Lemma IV.14.3, each singular $n$-simplex $T$ in $X/\Pi$ can be lifted to a singular $n$-simplex $T'$ in $X$ and these $T'$, one for each $T$, are free $\Pi$-module generators of $S(X)$. Thus $S_*(X) \otimes_{\Pi} Z$ is the free abelian group with generators $T' \otimes 1$, $\int T' = T$, and $\phi$ is an isomorphism. The bicomplex

$$K_{p,q} = (C \otimes S_p(X)) \otimes_{\Pi} B_q(\Pi)$$

has two filtrations $F'$ and $F''$ and the corresponding spectral sequences

$$E^2_{p,q} = H_p H'_q(K), \quad E^2_{p,q} = H'_p H_q(K),$$

each converging to the associated graded group of $H(\text{Tot } K)$ under the corresponding filtration $F'$ or $F''$.

For the first spectral sequence, $H''_{p,q}(K) = H_q(C \otimes S_p(X) \otimes_{\Pi} B(17))$ is the homology $H_q(\Pi, C \otimes S_p(X))$ of $\Pi$. If $C = \mathbb{Z}$, this is just the homology of $\Pi$ with coefficients in the free $\Pi$-module $S_p(X)$, which has been calculated to be $S_p(X) \otimes_{\Pi} Z$ for $q = 0$ and zero for $q > 0$. Since $S_p \otimes_{\Pi} B$ is a complex of torsion free abelian groups, the universal coefficient theorem gives

$$H''_{p,q}(K) = C \otimes S_p(X) \otimes_{\Pi} Z, \quad q = 0,$$

$$= 0, \quad q > 0.$$  

By (7.2), the complex on the right is $C \otimes S(X/\Pi)$. Therefore

$$E^2_{p,q} = H'_p H''_q(K) = H'_p(X/\Pi, C), \quad q = 0,$$

$$= 0, \quad q > 0.$$
Hence the spectral sequence "collapses" — it lies on the horizontal axis \( q = 0 \), has all differentials zero, so is equal to its limit with

\[
H_n(\text{Tot } K) \cong H_n(X/I, C). \tag{7.3}
\]

In the second spectral sequence we write the indices of \( K \) as \( K \equiv C \otimes S_q \otimes \Pi B_p \), so that \( \phi \) will still denote the filtration degree. The first homology \( H_q' \) uses only the boundary in \( S_q(X) \); since each \( B_p \) is a free \( \Pi \)-module, this gives

\[
H'_{p,q}(K) = H_{p,q}(\{ C \otimes S_q \otimes \Pi B_p \}) = H_q(X, C) \otimes \Pi B_p(\Pi).
\]

The second homology \( H'_p \) is then the homology of the group \( \Pi \) with coefficients in \( H_q(X, C) \), so that

\[
E_2' \equiv H'_p \cong H_q(X, C)) \cong (\Pi, H_q(X, C)). \tag{7.4}
\]

This gives the spectral sequence of the theorem. As for any canonically bounded filtration, it converges to \( H(\text{Tot } K) \) as given in (7.3) by the first spectral sequence. Hence the conclusion (7.1).

This proof is a typical case of two spectral sequences, one of which collapses so as to determine the limit of the second.

**Corollary 7.2.** If 17 operates properly on the pathwise connected acyclic space \( X \) there is a natural isomorphism \( H_p(\Pi, C) \cong H_p(X/I, C) \) for each \( p \), where \( C \) is any abelian group regarded as a trivial \( \Pi \)-module.

**Proof.** Since \( X \) is acyclic, \( H_q(X, C) = 0 \) for \( q \neq 0 \) and is \( C \) for \( q = 0 \), so the (second) spectral sequence collapses, so has \( E_2 \) isomorphic to the limit, as asserted.

This result is the homology parallel of Thm. IV.11.5 on the cohomology of \( X/I \). As in that case, this corollary could be proved directly without the use of spectral sequences. Put differently, the spectral sequences allow us to generalize Thm. IV.11.5 to apply to spaces which are not acyclic. For example:

**Corollary 7.3.** If the space \( X \) has \( H_0(X) = \mathbb{Z} \) and \( H_q(X) = 0 \) for \( 0 < q < t \) and if \( \Pi \) operates properly on \( X \), then

\[
H_n(X/I, C) \cong H_n(\Pi, C), \quad 0 \leq n < t.
\]

For \( n = t \) there is an exact sequence

\[
H_{t+1}(X/I, C) \to H_{t+1}(\Pi, C) \to H_t(X, C) \otimes \Pi Z \to H_t(X/I, C) \to H_t(\Pi, C) \to 0.
\]

**Proof.** The universal coefficient theorem gives \( H_n(X, C) \cong C \) and \( H_q(X, C) = 0 \) for \( 0 < q < t \). The spectral sequence of the theorem then has \( E_{p,q}^2 = 0 \) for \( 0 < q < t \), and hence \( E_{t,0}^\infty = E_{t,0}^2 \cong H_t(\Pi, C) \). The filtration
of $H_t(X/\Pi, C)$ amounts to the exact sequence

$$0 \to E_{0,t}^\infty \to H_t(X/\Pi, C) \to E_{t,0}^\infty \cong H_t(I, C) \to 0,$$

while the description of $E_{0,t}^\infty$ as the homology of $E_{0,t}^2$ under $d^{t+1}$ is the exact sequence

$$H_{t+1}(X/\Pi, C) \underset{\epsilon}{\to} E_{t+1,0}^2 \xrightarrow{d^{t+1}} E_{0,t}^2 \to E_{0,t}^\infty \to 0.$$ 

Replacing $E_{t+1,0}^2$ by its value $H_{t+1}(I, C)$, using (X.5.2) to calculate $E_2^{p,q} = H_{p+q}(I, H_t(X, C)) \otimes \Pi Z$, and splicing these sequences gives the result. This exact sequence is a particular case of the "exact sequence of terms of low degree" (Ex.3.3).

This result determines $H_n(X/\Pi)$ for $n < t$ and $H_t(X/\Pi)$ up to a certain group extension. A complete determination of $H_t(X/\Pi)$ in terms of $H(I)$ and $H(X)$ requires an additional invariant, a cohomology class $k \in H^{t+1}(I, H(X))$, as introduced by Eilenberg-MacLane [1949,1950].

The spectral sequence of a covering is due to Cartan-Leray [1949] and to Cartan [1948]. For further applications, see Cartan-Eilenberg, p.356; Hu [1959], p.287ff.; Hilton-Wylie [1960], p.467.

Exercise

1. Show that the use of the first spectral sequence in the proof above may be replaced by proving that $1 \otimes \epsilon: C \otimes S(X) \otimes I\Pi B(I) \to C \otimes S(X) \otimes I\Pi Z$ is a homology isomorphism, where $\epsilon: B \to Z$ is the augmentation (use the first filtration and Thm.3.4).

8. Cohomology Spectral Sequences

For cohomology it is customary and convenient to write a spectral sequence with upper indices and the usual change of signs as $E_r^{p,q} = E'_{-p,-q}$ (the sign of $r$ is not changed). The same spectral sequence $E$ then appears as a family $E_r$ of bigraded modules, $r = 2, 3, \ldots$, with differentials

$$d_r: E_r^{p,q} \to E_r^{p+r,q-r+1} \quad \text{(8.1)}$$

of bidegree $(r, 1-r)$ and with $H(E_r, d_r) \cong E_{r+1}$. Comparing this with the previous $d': E_{r+p+q-r+1}^{p,q} \to E'_{r+p,0}$, we see that the formulas for spectral sequences in the upper indices are obtained from those in the lower indices by reversing all arrows and moving each index up — or down, as the case may be — without a sign change. The limit, $E_\infty$, is defined as before.

A third quadrant spectral sequence $E$ is one with $E_{p,q}^{r} = 0$ when $p > 0$ or $q > 0$; equivalently, all non-zero terms lie in the first quadrant of the upper indices, and the diagram is simply (1.6) with arrows reversed (differential from fiber toward base, increasing the total degree.
by I). The edge homomorphisms on the base are epimorphisms

\[ E_{p+1}^{0,0} \rightarrow E_{q+1}^{0,0} \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow E_{\infty}^{0,0} = E_{\infty}^{0,0}, \]

on the fiber are monomorphisms

\[ E_{q+2}^{0,0} = E_{q+1}^{0,0} \rightarrow E_{q+1}^{0,0} \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow E_{2}^{0,0}. \]

The transgression \( \tau: E_{q+1}^{0,0} \rightarrow E_{q+1}^{0,0} \) is the additive relation (fiber to base) induced by \( d_q \), and defined by (4.1) with all arrows reversed.

Let \( A \) be a DGZ-module, written with upper indices \( A^n = A^{-n} \) and a boundary operation \( d: \). A filtration \( F \) of \( A \), written with upper indices \( F^p = F_{-p} \), appears as a tower of differential 2-graded submodules

\[ \cdots \rightarrow F^{p-1}A \rightarrow F^pA \rightarrow F^{p+1}A \rightarrow \cdots \quad (8.2) \]

often called a descending filtration, though it's really the same filtration in a different notation: Each such \( F \) yields a spectral sequence \( \{ E_r, d_r \} \) with \( E_1^{q,p} = H(F^pA/F^{p+1}A) \) and

\[ E_r^{q,p} = (Z_r^{q,p} / F^{q+p+1}A^{q+p}) / (\delta Z_r^{q-r+1,p+q-2} A^{q+p+1}), \]

where \( Z_r^{q,p} = \{ a | a \in F^pA^{q+p}, d(a) \in F^pA^{q+p+1} \} \), and \( d_r \) is induced by \( d \). If \( F \) is bounded, there are natural isomorphisms \( E_{\infty}^{q,p} = H(F^{p}A/F^{p+1}A) \), where \( F^pH \) denotes the filtration of \( HA \) induced by \( F \). These isomorphisms also hold if \( F \) is convergent above \( (U F^pA = A) \) and bounded below (for each \( n \) there is an \( s \) with \( F^nA^n = 0 \)). Note that bounded "below" appears as a bound at the right in the descending filtration (8.2).

The filtration \( F \) is canonically cobounded if \( F^0A = A \) and \( F^{n+1}A^n = 0 \) (note that this is not the same as canonically bounded). This implies that the complex \( A \) is positive in upper indices \( A^n = 0 \) for \( n<0 \). An argument like that for Thm.4.4 proves

Theorem 8.1. A canonically cobounded filtration of a DGZ-module \( A \) yields a "third quadrant" spectral sequence. The initial edge terms are given in terms of the subcomplexes \( F^1A \) and \( L \), where \( L^p = Z^p_{-1} \), as \( E_1^{p,n} = H^n(A/F^1A) \) and \( E_2^{n,0} = H^n(L) \), and the edge homomorphisms \( H^n(A) \rightarrow E_1^{p,n} \) and \( E_2^{n,0} \rightarrow H^n(A) \) are induced by the identity \( 1_A \). The transgression \( \tau: E_2^{p,n} \rightarrow E_2^{n,0} \) for \( n \geq 2 \) is the additive relation induced by \( 6 \), and is also the connecting relation \( \varrho = \varrho(A; L, F^1A) \):

\[ \varrho (A; L, F^{p}A): H^{p-1}(A/F^{p}A) \rightarrow H^{p}(L), \quad n \geq 2. \]

Explicitly, the edge terms are given for \( r \geq 2 \) by

\[ E_r^{p,0} = F^pC^p/\delta Z_r^{q-r+1,p+q-2}, \quad C = \text{Ker}[\delta: A \rightarrow A], \quad (8.3) \]

\[ E_r^{q,p} = (Z_r^{q,p} / F^{q+p+1}A^{q+p}) / (\delta A^{q-r+1} \cup F^1A^{q+p}). \]
Similarly, exact couples and bicomplexes may be written in upper indices. Many cohomology spectral sequences have an (exceedingly useful) product structure, arising from the cup product in cohomology.

**Exercises**

1. Under the hypotheses of Thm. 7.1, obtain a third quadrant spectral sequence $E^2_{pq} \cong H^p(\Omega, H^q(X, C)) \Rightarrow H^n(X/\Omega, C)$.

2. Prove Thm. 8.1.

3. If $E^r_{p,q}$ is a spectral sequence of vector spaces over some field, and $V$ is a vector space, describe $\text{Hom}(E^r_{p,q}, V)$ as a spectral sequence with upper indices.

**9. Restriction, Inflation, and Connection**

Our next example of a spectral sequence deals with the cohomology of a group $\Omega$ with a given normal subgroup $\Gamma$. Certain preliminary concepts relating the cohomology groups of $\Omega$ and $\Gamma$ are needed.

If $\Gamma$ is a subgroup of $\Omega$ and $A$ a left $\Omega$-module the injection $x: \Gamma \rightarrow \Omega$ gives a change of groups $(x, t_A)$ which induces a homomorphism

$$\text{res}_\Omega^\Gamma: H^*(\Omega, A) \rightarrow H^*(\Gamma, A)$$

(9.1)
called restriction, which is natural in $A$. Also $\Delta \subset \Gamma \subset \Omega$ gives $\text{res}_\Delta^\Gamma \circ \text{res}_\Omega^\Delta = \text{res}_\Omega^\Gamma$. Let $A^\Gamma$ denote, as usual, the subgroup of those elements $a$ in $A$ with $ta = a$ for every $t \in \Gamma$. If $\Gamma$ is a normal subgroup of $\Omega$, $A^\Gamma$ is a left $(\Omega/\Gamma)$-module. The projection $\sigma: \Omega \rightarrow \Omega/\Gamma$ and the injection $j: A^\Gamma \rightarrow A$ give a change of groups $(a, j): (\Omega, A) \rightarrow (\Omega/\Gamma, A^\Gamma)$ which induces a homomorphism

$$\text{inf}_{\Omega/\Gamma}^\Gamma: H^*(\Omega/\Gamma, A^\Gamma) \rightarrow H^*(\Omega, A)$$

(9.2)
called inflation, which is natural in $A$. Moreover, there is an additive relation

$$\delta_{\Omega/\Gamma}^\Gamma: H^n(\Gamma, A) \rightarrow H^{n+1}(\Omega/\Gamma, A^\Gamma), \quad n > 0$$

(9.3)
called connection, and to be defined below.

Recall that $H^*(\Omega, A) = H^*(\text{Hom}_\Omega(B(\Omega), A))$, where $B(17) = B(Z(17))$ is the bar resolution. Each $f \in \text{Hom}_\Omega(B_n(\Omega), A)$ can be written as a homogeneous cochain; that is, as a function $f(x_0, \ldots, x_n) \in A$ of $n+1$ arguments $x_i \in \Omega$ with $f(x x_0, \ldots, x x_n) = x f(x_0, \ldots, x_n)$, normalized by the condition that $f(x_0, \ldots, x_n) = 0$ if $x_i = x_{i+1}$ for any $i$. Moreover

$$\delta f(x_0, \ldots, x_{n+1}) = (-1)^{n+1} \sum_{i=0}^{n+1} (-1)^i f(x_0, \ldots, \hat{x}_i, \ldots, x_{n+1}).$$

Then restriction is induced by the chain transformation $\psi$ given by

$$(\psi f)(t_0, \ldots, t_n) = f(t_0, \ldots, t_n), \quad t_i \in \Gamma.$$
For \( g \in \text{Hom}_{\Pi/\Gamma}(B, (\Pi/\Gamma), A) \), inflation is induced by the cochain transformation \( a^* \) with
\[
(\sigma^* g)(x_0, \ldots, x_n) = g(\sigma x_0, \ldots, \sigma x_n), \quad x_i \in \Pi, \quad \sigma x_i \in \Pi/\Gamma. \tag{9.5}
\]
These transformations \( a^* \) and \( \psi \) may be recorded in the diagram of chain transformations
\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{L} & \xrightarrow{\alpha^*} & \text{K} \\
\text{Hom}_{\Pi}(B(\Pi/\Gamma), A) & \downarrow{i} & \text{Hom}_{\Pi}(B(\Pi), A) \\
\downarrow{\psi} & \text{Hom}_{\Gamma}(B(\Pi), A) & \text{Hom}_{\Gamma}(B(\Gamma), A) \\
\text{S'} & \text{S} & \\
\end{array}
\tag{9.6}
\]
of complexes denoted as \( L, K, S', S \). Note that the \((\Pi/\Gamma)\)-module \( B(\Pi/\Gamma) \) is also a 17-module by pull-back along \( a \), so the complex \( L \) at the left is canonically isomorphic to \( \text{Hom}_{\Pi/\Gamma}(B(\Pi/\Gamma), A) \) with cohomology \( H^n(\Pi/\Gamma, A) \) and \( a^* \) is \( B(a) \) where \( B(a) : \text{Hom}_{\Pi}(B(\Pi), A) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\Pi}(B(\Pi/\Gamma), A) \).

Each \( \Pi \)-module is also a \( \Gamma \)-module, by pull-back along the injection \( x : \Pi \rightarrow \Gamma \), so each \( \Pi \)-module homomorphism is a \( \Gamma \)-module homomorphism. This monomorphism \( i : \text{Hom}_{\Pi} \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\Gamma} \) gives the vertical chain transformation \( i : K \rightarrow S' \) in the diagram (9.6), while \( x \) induces \( B(x)^* : S' \rightarrow S \) there. Clearly \( \psi = B(x)^* i \).

The chain transformation \( B(x)^* \) is a cohomology isomorphism
\[
B(x)^* : H^n(\text{Hom}_{\Gamma}(B(\Pi), A)) \cong H^n(\text{Hom}_{\Gamma}(B(\Gamma), A)) = H^n(\Gamma, A). \tag{9.7}
\]
Indeed, since 17 is a union of cosets \( \Gamma \gamma \) of \( \Gamma \), the free \( \Pi \)-module \( \mathbb{Z}(\Pi) \) on one generator is the direct sum of the free \( \Gamma \)-modules \( \mathbb{Z}(\Gamma) \gamma \). Hence any free \( \Pi \)-module is also a free \( \Gamma \)-module, so \( e : \text{Hom}_{\Pi}(B(\Pi), \mathbb{Z}) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\Gamma}(B(\Gamma), \mathbb{Z}) \) is also a free \( \Gamma \)-resolution of the trivial \( \Gamma \)-module \( \mathbb{Z} \). The map \( B(x) : \text{Hom}_{\Gamma}(B(\Gamma), \mathbb{Z}) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\Pi}(B(\Pi), \mathbb{Z}) \) is a chain transformation lifting the identity \( \iota_{\mathbb{Z}} \), hence by the comparison theorem gives an isomorphism (9.7).

Next, if \( \Gamma \) is a normal subgroup of 17 and \( A \) a \( \Pi \)-module, each \( H^n(\gamma, A) \) is a \((\Pi/\Gamma)\)-module. First, for any \( \Pi \)-module \( B, \text{Hom}_{\Gamma}(B, A) \) is a \((\Pi/\Gamma)\)-module under the definition (Hopf algebra structure!)
\[
(x f)(b) = x f(x^{-1} b) \quad \text{for } f : B \rightarrow A, \ x \in \Pi, \ b \in B. \tag{9.8}
\]
Indeed, \( x f \) so defined is a \( \Gamma \)-module homomorphism when \( f \) is, for, with \( t \in \Gamma \), \( (x f)(t b) = x f(x^{-1} t b) = x(x^{-1} x f)(t^{-1} b) = t f(x^{-1} b) \) by the normality of \( \Gamma \). This makes \( \text{Hom}_{\Gamma} \) a \( \Pi \)-module, but since \( t f = f \) for \( t \in \Gamma \), it may be regarded as a \((\Pi/\Gamma)\)-module. This module structure is natural in \( B \), so \( \text{Hom}_{\Gamma}(B(\Pi), A) \) is a \((\Pi/\Gamma)\)-module. By the isomorphism \( B(x)^* \) of (9.7), \( H^n(\Gamma, A) \) becomes a \((\Pi/\Gamma)\)-module, as asserted.
An explicit formula for this \((\Pi|\Gamma)\)-module structure in terms of cocycles of \(B(\Gamma')\) is given in Ex. 3—5 below.

**Lemma 9.1.** For \(\Gamma\) normal in \(\Pi\), the image of the restriction lies in \(H''(\Gamma, A)''\).

**Proof.** By (9.6), restriction is the composite \(\psi = B(\kappa)*\iota\). For each \(\Pi\)-module homomorphism \(f: B(\Pi) + A\), (9.8) gives \(x f = f\) for each \(x \in \Pi\). Hence, if \(f\) is a cocycle, \(\text{cls}f\) in \(H''(\Gamma, A)\) is invariant under each operator of \(\Pi\).

In the diagram (9.6), the definitions (9.5) and (9.4) show \(a^* : L \to K\) a monomorphism and \(\psi: K \to S\) an epimorphism, with composite \(\psi a^*\) zero in dimensions greater than \(0\). Hence we are in the situation of a complex \(K\) with two given subcomplexes \(a^* L\) and \(M = \text{Ker} \psi\), with \((\sigma^* L)^n < M_n\) for \(n > 0\) and \(S = K/M\); in this situation (4.4) defines a homology connecting relation

\[ \varrho = \varrho(K; \sigma^* L, \text{Ker} \psi): H^n(S) \to H^{n+1}(L) \]

Take this to be the connection \(\varrho_{\Pi|\Gamma}\) of (9.3). Explicitly, \(\varrho\) is the additive relation consisting of all pairs of cohomology classes

\[ (\text{cls}_S \psi f, \text{cls}_L g), \quad f \in K^n, \quad g \in L^{n+1}, \quad \delta f = \sigma^* g. \]

The last condition implies that \(\delta g = 0\) and \(\delta \psi f = 0\).

**Lemma 9.2.** The module \(D\varrho\) for the connection \(\varrho\) lies in \(H''(\Gamma, A)''\).

**Proof.** Take \((\text{cls}_S \psi f, \text{cls}_L g) \in \varrho\) as above, and define a cochain \(h \in S^n\) for \(x \in \Pi\) by

\[ h(x_0, \ldots, x_n) = f(x_0, \ldots, x_n) + (-1)^n g(1, \sigma x_0, \ldots, \sigma x_n), \]

where the second term on the right in effect implicitly uses the contracting homotopy in \(B(\Pi|\Gamma)\). Since the values of \(g\) lie in \(A^\Gamma\), this function \(h\) is indeed a \(\Gamma\)-module homomorphism \(h: B_n(\Pi) \to A\). A calculation with the boundary formula in \(B(\Pi)\), using \(\delta f = a^* g\) and \(\delta g = 0\), shows \(\delta h = 0\). Moreover, \(B(x): B(\Gamma) \to B(\Pi)\) carries \(h\) in \(S\) into \(\psi f\) in \(S\), so any \(\text{cls}_S \psi f\) in \(D\varrho\) is represented by \(\text{cls}_S h\) in \(H''(S)\). In this complex \(S\) we can compute the action of any \(x \in \Pi\). Let \(k_x\) be the cochain with \(k_x(x_0, \ldots, x_{n-1}) = g(a x, 1, a x_0, \ldots, a x_{n-1})\). The coboundary formula and the definition (9.8) show that

\[ (x h - h - \delta k_x)(x_0, \ldots, x_n) = \delta g(\sigma x, 1, \sigma x_0, \ldots, \sigma x_n) = 0. \]

Hence \(x h - h\) is the coboundary of \(k_x\), so the cohomology class of \(h\) in \(S\) is invariant under \(x\), as asserted.

By Lemmas 9.1 and 9.2 we may rewrite restriction and connection as

\[ \text{res}: H''(\Pi, A) \to H''(\Gamma, A)^\Pi \quad \text{and} \quad \varrho: H''(\Gamma, A)^\Pi \to H^{n+1}(\Pi|\Gamma, A). \]
Two minor observations will be needed in the next section. For modules \( \mu_\Gamma C, \mu B, \) and \( \mu A \) there is a natural isomorphism

\[
\text{Hom}_{\mu R}(C, \text{Hom}_\Gamma(B, A)) \cong \text{Hom}_\Pi(C \otimes B, A),
\]
(9.9)

where \( \text{Hom}_\Gamma \) has operators as in (9.8) and \( C \otimes B \) has "diagonal" operators \( x(c \otimes b) = (x \otimes c) \otimes x \otimes b \). The map in (9.9) is given by adjoint associativity. To check that it respects the operators indicated, consider any group homomorphism \( f: C \otimes B \to A \). This lies in \( \text{Hom}_\Pi \) on the right if

\[
f(xc \otimes xb) = xf(c \otimes b), \quad c \in C, \ b \in B, \ x \in \Pi.
\]
(9.10)

For fixed \( c \), \( f(c \otimes -) \) lies in \( \text{Hom}_\Gamma \) on the left if

\[
f(c \otimes rb) = tf(c \otimes b), \quad t \in \Gamma,
\]
(9.11)

while the condition that \( f \) yield a map in \( \text{Hom}_{\mu R} \) is

\[
f(xc \otimes b') = xf(c \otimes x^{-1} b'), \quad b' \in B.
\]
(9.12)

Now (9.12) with \( b' = xb \) is (9.10), while (9.10) with \( x = t \in \Gamma \) has \( tc = c \), hence gives (9.11). Thus the conditions left and right on \( f \) are equivalent.

**Lemma 9.3.** For arty free 17-module \( F \) artd arty IT-module \( A \),

\[
H^n(\Pi/\Gamma, \text{Hom}_\Gamma(F, A)) = 0, \quad n > 0.
\]

**Proof.** (Cf. Ex. 6.) It suffices to take for \( F \) the free 17-module \( Z(17) \) on one generator. The cohomology in question is that of the complex

\[
\text{Hom}_{\mu R}(B(\Pi/\Gamma), \text{Hom}_\Gamma(Z(\Pi), A)) \cong \text{Hom}_\Pi(B(\Pi/\Gamma) \otimes Z(\Pi), A).
\]

An n-cocycle \( f \) of this complex has \( f((u_0, \ldots, u_n) \otimes x) \in A \) for \( u_n \in \Pi/\Gamma \).

Define an \((rt-1)\)-cochain \( h \), using \( \sigma: \Pi \to \Pi/\Gamma \), by \( h((u_0, \ldots, u_{n-1}) \otimes x) = f((u_0, \ldots, u_{n-1}, ax) \otimes x) \). Then \( h \) is a IT-homomorphism and the condition \( 6f((u_0, \ldots, u_n, ax) \otimes x) = 0 \), when expanded, gives \( f = 6h \). Hence every cocycle of positive dimension \( rt \) is a coboundary, q.e.d.

**Exercises**

1. Show how the restriction homomorphism may be calculated from any free \( \Pi \)-module resolution of \( Z \).

2. If \( \Pi = \Gamma \times A \), identify \( \Pi/\Delta \) with \( \Gamma \) and show that \( \inf_{\Pi/\Delta} \text{res}_\Pi = 0 \).

3. For a change of groups \( \varphi = (\zeta, \alpha): (\Gamma, A, \varphi) \to (\Gamma', A', \varphi') \) show that the homomorphism \( \varphi^*: H^n(\Gamma', A') \to H^n(\Gamma, A) \) of (IV.5.9) may be calculated from free resolutions \( e: X \to Z \) and \( e': X' \to Z \) of \( Z \) as a trivial \( \Gamma \) - or \( \Gamma' \)-module, respectively, as the composite

\[
\varphi^* = f^* \alpha^*: H^n(\text{Hom}_\Gamma(X', A')) \to H^n(\text{Hom}_\Gamma(X', A)) \to H^n(\text{Hom}_\Gamma(X, A)),
\]

where \( f: X \to X' \) is a \( \Gamma \)-module chain transformation lifting \( t \).
4. For $\Gamma$ normal in $17$, each 17-module $A$ is a $\Gamma$-module under the induced $\varphi': \Gamma \to \text{Aut} A$. For each $x \in \Pi$, show that the definitions $t_x = 17^{-1} t x$ for $t \in \Gamma$ and $a_x a = x a$ yield a change of groups
\[ \varrho_x = (\xi_x, \alpha_x): (\Gamma, A, \varphi') \to (\Gamma, A, \varphi) \]
with $\varrho_x \varrho_y = \varrho_{xy}$. For $X \to \mathbb{Z}$ a 17-module resolution and $f$ as in Ex. 3 show that $\alpha'_+ f^*: \text{Hom}_{\Gamma}(X, A) \to \text{Hom}_\Gamma(X, A)$ is the module operation of $x$ on $\text{Hom}_\Gamma$, as defined in the text.

5. Use Exs. 3, 4 to prove that the module operation of $x \in \Pi$ on $H^n(\Gamma, A)$ is given on a (non-homogeneous) cocycle $h \in \text{Hom}(B_n(\Gamma), A)$ by $\text{cls} h \to \text{cls} h'$, where $h'$ is defined by conjugation as
\[ h'(t_1, \ldots, t) = x f(17^{-1} t_1 x, \ldots, 17^{-1} t_n x), \quad t_i \in \Gamma, \quad x \in 17. \]

6. Using (9.9), show that $\mathbb{F}$ free implies $\text{Hom}_\Gamma(F, A)$ relatively injective, for the pair of rings $\mathbb{Z}(\Pi/\Gamma), \mathbb{Z}$. Hence give a second proof of Lemma 9.3.

10. The Lyndon Spectral Sequence

Theorem 10.1. For $\Gamma$ a normal subgroup of $\Pi$ and $A$ a 17-module there is a third quadrant spectral sequence $\{E, d_r\}$, natural in $A$, with natural isomorphisms
\[ E_r^{p,q} = H^p(\pi/\Gamma, H^q(\Gamma, A)) \to H^{p+q}(\Pi, A); \]
converging as shown to the cohomology of $17$.

Here $H^q(\Gamma, A)$ is a $(\pi/\Gamma)$-module with operators as described in §9. This spectral sequence thus relates the cohomology of the subgroup $\Gamma$ and of the factor group $\Pi/\Gamma$ to that of the whole group $17$.

Proof. Using the bar resolutions, form the bicomplex $K$ with
\[ K^{p,q} = \text{Hom}_{\pi/\Gamma}(B_p(\pi/\Gamma), \text{Hom}_\Gamma(B_q(\pi), A)) \]
\[ \cong \text{Hom}_\Gamma(B_p(\pi/\Gamma) \otimes B_q(\pi), A), \]
as by (9.9), and with two differentials given, with the standard signs for a coboundary and a differential in $B_p \otimes B_q$, for $f \in K^{p,q}$ by
\[ (\delta' f)(b' \otimes b'') = (-1)^{p+q+1} f(\partial b' \otimes b'') , \quad b' \in B_{p+1}, \quad b'' \in B_q, \]
\[ (\delta'' f)(b' \otimes b'') = (-1)^{q+1} f(b' \otimes \partial b'') , \quad b' \in B_p, \quad b'' \in B_{q+1}. \]
The condition $\delta' \delta'' + \delta'' \delta' = 0$ is readily verified. The first and second filtrations of this bicomplex yield corresponding spectral sequences $E'$ and $E''$, both converging to $H(\text{Tot} K)$.

For the second spectral sequence $E''$ the filtration index is still to be denoted as $p$, so we write $K_p^{a,p} = \text{Hom}_{\pi/\Gamma}(B_q, \text{Hom}_\Gamma(B_p, A))$ for the terms of $K$, with second degree labelled as $p$. As for any bicomplex, $E_2''^{a,p} = H''^p H'^q(K)$. But $H'^q(K)$ is the cohomology of $\pi/\Gamma$ with coefficients in $\text{Hom}_\Gamma(B_p, A)$. By Lemma 9.3, this is zero for $q > 0$; it is
Chapter XI. Spectral Sequences

\[ [\text{Hom}_R(B_\rho, A)]^{H^0} = \text{Hom}_R(B_\rho, A) \] for \( q = 0 \), this because any \( H^0(\Pi, M) \) is the group \( M^\Pi \) of \( 17 \)-invariant elements of the \( \Pi \)-module \( M \). Next, calculating \( H'' \) of \( \text{Hom}_R(B_\rho, A) \) gives the cohomology of \( \Pi \), so that

\[ E_2^{p, q} = H^p(\Pi, A), \quad q = 0, \]

\[ = 0, \quad q > 0. \]

The non-zero terms all lie in the base \( q = 0 \), so the spectral sequence collapses. For each total degree \( n \) there is only one non-zero quotient in the filtration of \( H^n(\text{Tot} K) \), hence an isomorphism

\[ H^n(\Pi, A) \cong H^n(\text{Tot} K). \quad (10.1) \]

The proof shows that this isomorphism is induced by the chain transformation

\[ \zeta : \text{Hom}_R(B(\Pi), A) \to \text{Tot} K \]

which assigns to each \( f : B_\rho(\Pi) \to A \) the element \( \zeta f \in K_0^n \) defined by

\[ (\zeta f)(u \otimes b) = f(b), \quad u \in \Pi/\Gamma, \ b \in B_\rho(\Pi). \]

For the first spectral sequence, \( E_2^{p, q} = H^p H''^q(K) \). Let \( S' \) denote the complex \( \text{Hom}_R(B(\Pi), A) \), as in (9.6); the cohomology of \( S' \) is \( H(\Gamma, A) \). Now \( K' = \text{Hom}_R(B_\rho(\Pi/\Gamma), S') \), with \( B_\rho(\Pi/\Gamma) \) a free \( (\Pi/\Gamma) \)-module, is exact as a functor of \( S' \), so

\[ H''^q(K') \cong \text{Hom}_R(B_\rho(\Pi/\Gamma), H^q(S')). \]

Taking \( H'' \) gives the cohomology of \( \Pi/\Gamma \), hence an isomorphism

\[ \theta : E_2^{p, q} \cong H^p(\Pi/\Gamma, H^q(\Gamma, A)). \quad (10.2) \]

This spectral sequence converges, as for any positive bicomplex, to \( H(\text{Tot} K) \), which by (10.1) just above is \( H^n(\Pi, A) \), q.e.d.

**Proposition 10.2.** In the Lyndon spectral sequence \( E = E' \) the edge terms are

\[ E_2^{p, q} \cong H^p(\Pi/\Gamma, A^\Gamma), \quad E_2^{q, q} \cong H^q(\Gamma, A)^{H^0} = H^q(\Gamma, A)^H \]

and \( E_1^{q, q} \cong H^q(\Gamma, A) \). The edge homomorphism

\[ H^n(\Pi, A) \to E_2^{n, q} \cong H^n(\Gamma, A) \]

on the fiber is the restriction homomorphism \( \text{res}^\Pi \). The edge homomorphism

\[ H^n(\Pi/\Gamma, A^\Gamma) \cong E_2^{n, 0} \to H^n(\Pi, A) \]

on the base is the inflation \( \text{inf}^\Pi \). The transgression \( \tau \) is the connecting relation \( \varphi \) of (9.3),

\[ \tau = \varphi^\Pi : H^{n-1}(\Gamma, A) \to H^n(\Pi/\Gamma, A^\Gamma), \quad n > 1. \quad (10.4) \]
The isomorphisms (10.3) are special cases of (10.2). Note that the edge homomorphism on the fiber has its image in $E_2^{0,n} = H^n(\Gamma, A)$, exactly as for the restriction map (Lemma 9.1) and that the transgression $\tau$ has its domain of definition contained in $H^{n-1}(\Gamma, A)$, exactly as for the connecting relation $\rho$ (Lemma 9.2).

**Proof.** For the spectral sequence $E$ of the first filtration the edge effects are calculated by Thm. 8.1 from the subcomplexes $F^1K$ and $L$ of Tot $K$, where $L^p = Z^p_1 \cap F^pK$, using the injection $\iota: L \rightarrow$ Tot $K$ and the projection $n: \text{Tot } K \rightarrow \text{Tot } K/F^1K$. This gives the first line of the following diagram, in which the second line presents the complexes used in §9 in the calculation of res, inf, and $\varphi$:

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{L} & \xrightarrow{\iota} & \text{Tot } K \\
\downarrow{\iota} \quad & & \downarrow{n} \\
\text{Hom}_\Pi(B(\Pi/\Gamma), A) & \xrightarrow{\sigma_\Pi} & \text{Hom}_\Pi(B(I\Pi), A) \\
\end{array}$$

The maps $\varphi$, $\eta$ comparing these two lines will be defined in terms of the homogeneous generators $(x_0, \ldots, x_n)$ of $B(\Pi)$. Specifically, $L^p = Z^p_1 \cap F^pK$ consists of all $g \in K^{p,0}$ with $\delta g \in K^{p+1,0}$; that is, with $\delta''g = 0$. Since $B_1(\Pi)$ is the free abelian group on generators $(x, y)$ with $\partial(x, y) = (y) - (x)$,

$$0 = \pm \delta''g(b' \otimes (x, y)) = g(b' \otimes (y)) - g(b' \otimes (x)), \quad b' \in B_p(\Pi/\Gamma).$$

Therefore $g(b' \otimes (x))$ is independent of $x \in \Pi$, and $(\iota g) b' = g(b \otimes (1))$ defines a chain isomorphism $\varphi: L \cong \text{Hom}_\Pi(B(\Pi/\Gamma), A)$. An element of degree $n$ in Tot $K$ is an $(n+1)$-tuple $h = (h^0, h^1, \ldots, h^n)$ with $h^p \in K^{p,n-p}$. It lies in $F^1K$ if $h^0 = 0$. But $B_0(\Pi/\Gamma) = Z(\Pi/\Gamma)$, so

$$h_0 \in \text{Hom}_\Pi(\text{Tot } K, \text{Hom}_\Pi(B_n(\Gamma), A) \cong \text{Hom}_\Pi(B_n(\Gamma), A).$$

Thus $(\varphi h)(b'') = h^0((1) \otimes b'')$ defines a chain isomorphism $\varphi$ on the right in (10.5). Finally, a straightforward calculation shows that the definition

$$(\eta h)(x_0, \ldots, x_n) = \sum_{p=0}^n h^p((\sigma x_0, \ldots, \sigma x_p) \otimes (x_p, \ldots, x_n))$$

with $\sigma: \Pi \rightarrow \Pi/\Gamma$, $h = (h^0, \ldots, h^n)$, gives $\eta: \text{Tot } K \rightarrow \text{Hom}_\Pi(B(\Pi), A)$, a chain transformation which makes the diagram (10.5) commutative. Now $\zeta: \text{Hom}_\Pi(B(I\Pi), A) \rightarrow \text{Tot } K$ as described under (10.1) has $\eta \zeta = 1$; since $\zeta$ induces a cohomology isomorphism (10.1), so does $\eta$.

The vertical maps in (10.5) are thus all cohomology isomorphisms. In the spectral sequence, the edge homomorphisms on base and fiber are (Thm.8.1) induced by $\iota$ and $\pi$ respectively; under these isomorphisms they correspond to the inflation, as induced by $a^*$, and the
restriction induced by \( \psi \). Similarly, Lemma 4.3 shows that the transgression, regarded as the connecting relation for the top line, agrees with the group-theoretic transgression computed (as in \( \S \) 9) from the bottom line.

The terms of low degree in this spectral sequence yield an exact sequence

\[
0 \rightarrow H^1(\Pi/\Gamma, A^\Gamma) \xrightarrow{\text{inf}} H^1(\Pi, A) \xrightarrow{\text{res}} H^1(\Gamma, A)^{\Pi} \xrightarrow{\delta^0} H^2(\Pi/\Gamma, A^\Gamma) \xrightarrow{\text{inf}} H^2(\Pi, A).
\]

(10.6)

In higher degrees the spectral sequence provides a more refined analysis of the kernels and images of the maps \( \text{inf} \) and \( \text{res} \), in terms of a whole sequence of functors \( E^p,q(\Pi, \Gamma, A) \) which may be regarded as "mixed" cohomology groups of the two groups \( \Pi \) and \( \Gamma \).

As an application, we prove

**Corollary 10.3.** If \( \Gamma \) is a normal subgroup of a finite group \( \Pi \) with index \( k = [\Pi : \Gamma] \) prime to its order \( h = [\Gamma : 1] \), then for each \( \Pi \)-module \( A \) and each \( n > 0 \), there is a split exact sequence

\[
0 \rightarrow H^n(\Pi/\Gamma, A^\Gamma) \xrightarrow{\text{inf}} H^n(\Pi, A) \xrightarrow{\text{res}} H^n(\Gamma, A)^{\Pi} \rightarrow 0
\]

(10.7)

which thus gives an isomorphism \( H^n(17, A) \cong H^n(\Pi/\Gamma, A^\Gamma) \oplus H^n(\Gamma, A)^{\Pi} \).

**Proof.** By Prop. IV.5.3 we know that each element of \( H^q(\Gamma, A) \) for \( q > 0 \) has order dividing \( h \), while each element of \( H^p(\Pi/\Gamma, M) \), for \( p > 0 \) and \( M \) any \((\Pi/\Gamma)\)-module, has order dividing \( k \). Therefore \( E^{p,q}_0 \cong E^{p,q}(\Pi/\Gamma, H^q(\Gamma, A)) \) for \( p > 0 \) and \( q > 0 \) consists of elements with order dividing both \( h \) and \( k \), hence is zero. The non-zero terms of the spectral sequence thus lie on the edges \( (p = 0 \ or \ q = 0) \), and the only non-zero differential is the transgression (fiber to base)

\[
d^n : H^{n-1}(\Gamma, A)^{\Pi} = E^{0,n-1}_n \rightarrow E^{n,0}_n = H^n(\Pi/\Gamma, A^\Gamma).
\]

This is a homomorphism of an abelian group with elements of orders dividing \( h \) into one with elements of orders dividing \( k \), where \( (h, k) = 1 \); hence \( d^n \) is zero. Thus all differentials in the spectral sequence are zero, \( E_2 = E_\infty \), and there are only two terms (those on the edges) in each total degree \( n \). The filtration of \( H^n(\Pi, A) \) thus amounts to the exact sequence stated. This sequence splits; indeed, a standard argument using the Euclidean algorithm will show that any exact sequence \( B \rightarrowtail C \twoheadrightarrow D \) of abelian groups with \( kB = 0, hD = 0 \), and \( (h, k) = 1 \) must split.
11. The Comparison Theorem

Exercises

(All the exercises refer to the Lyndon spectral sequence)

1. In the filtration of $H^n(\Pi, A)$ show that $F^n H^n$ may be characterized as the image of the inflation map, and $F^1 H^n$ as the kernel of the restriction.

2. Establish the exact sequence

$$0 \to F^1 H^2/H^2 \to E^1_{2,1} \to E^2_{2,0} \to H^3(\Pi, A).$$

3. (Hochschild-Serre [1953]) Suppose $m \geq 1$ and $H^n(\Gamma, A) = 0$ for $0 < n < m$. Show that $\inf: H^n(\Pi/\Gamma, A^T) \cong H^n(\Pi, A)$ is an isomorphism for $n < m$, that the transgression $\tau$ in dimension $m$ is a homomorphism $\tau: (H^m(\Gamma, A)^\Pi \to H^{m+1}(\Pi/\Gamma, A^T)$, and that the following sequence is exact

$$0 \to H^m(\Pi/\Gamma, A^T) \to H^n(\Pi, A) \to H^{m+1}(\Pi/\Gamma, A) \to \cdots.$$

4. (Hochschild-Serre [1953]; Hattori [1960]) Suppose $m \geq 1$ and $H^n(\Gamma, A) = 0$ for $1 < n < m$. For $0 < n < m$ establish the exact sequence

$$\cdots \to H^n(\Pi/\Gamma, A^T) \to H^n(\Pi, A) \to H^{n+1}(\Pi/\Gamma, A) \to \cdots.$$

5. For $C$ a right $\Pi$-module, establish a first quadrant spectral sequence converging to the homology of $\Pi$.

$$H_p(\Pi/\Gamma, H_q(\Gamma, C)) \cong E^2_{p,0} \Rightarrow H(\Pi, C).$$

11. The Comparison Theorem

In the manipulation of spectral sequences it is useful to be able to conclude from limited data that two spectral sequences are isomorphic. The comparison theorem now to be established does this for first quadrant spectral sequences $E$ of modules over a commutative ring, provided there is a short exact sequence

$$0 \to E^2_{p,0} \otimes E^2_{0,q} \to E^2_{p,q} \to \text{Tor}_1(E^2_{p-1,0}, E^2_{0,q}) \to 0 \quad (11.1)$$

for the term $E^4$. This hypothesis frequently holds. For example, in the Leray-Serre spectral sequence of a fiber space with simply connected base space, (2.2) gives $E^2_{p,q} \cong H_p(B, H_q(F))$, which by the universal coefficient theorem yields the exact sequence

$$0 \to H_p(B) \otimes H_q(F) \to E^2_{p,q} \to \text{Tor}_1(H_{p-1}(B), H_q(F)) \to 0.$$

Since $B$ and $F$ are both pathwise connected, $E^2_{p,0} \cong H_p(B, Z) = H_p(B)$ and $E^2_{0,q} \cong H_0(B, H_q(F)) = H_q(F)$, and the sequence reduces to (11.4).

Theorem 11.1. (Comparison Theorem.) Let $f: E \to E'$ be a homomorphism of first quadrant spectral sequences of modules over a commutative
ring, each of which satisfies (11.1), such that \( f \) commutes with the maps \( \kappa, \sigma, \kappa', \sigma' \) in (11.1). Write \( f'_{p,q}: E'_{p,q} \to E'_{p,q} \). Then any two of the following conditions imply the third (and hence that \( f \) is an isomorphism):

(i) \( f'_{p,0}: E'_{p,0} \to E'_{p,0} \) is an isomorphism for all \( p \geq 0 \),

(ii) \( f'_{0,q}: E'_{0,q} \to E'_{0,q} \) is an isomorphism for all \( q \geq 0 \),

(iii) \( f'_{p,q}: E'_{p,q} \to E'_{p,q} \) is an isomorphism for all \( p, q \).

In view of the geometric applications, we read (i) as "\( f \) is an isomorphism on the base", while (ii) is "\( f \) is an isomorphism on the fiber", and (iii) is "\( f \) is an isomorphism on the total space".

**Proof.** That the first two conditions imply (iii) is elementary. By hypothesis, the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
0 & \rightarrow & E'_{2,0} \otimes E'_{0,0} \rightarrow E'_{2,0} \rightarrow \text{Tor}_1(E'_{2,1,0}, E'_{0,0}) \rightarrow 0 \\
& \downarrow & \downarrow f'_{p,q} \downarrow \downarrow \text{Tor}_1(f'_{p-1,0}, f'_{p,q}) \\
0 & \rightarrow & E'_{2,0} \otimes E'_{0,q} \rightarrow E'_{2,0} \rightarrow \text{Tor}_1(E'_{2,1,0}, E'_{0,0}) \rightarrow 0
\end{array}
\]

(11.2)

has exact rows and is commutative. Conditions (i) and (ii) imply that the outside vertical maps are isomorphisms. By the short Five Lemma, so is the middle vertical map \( f'_{p,q} \). This isomorphism of the complexes \( (E^2, d^2), (E'^2, d'^2) \) implies that of their homologies \( E^3, E'^3 \), and so on by induction to give (iii), since each \( E'_{p,q} \) is ultimately constant.

The other cases of the proof exploit the fact that a spectral sequence can be regarded as an elaborate congeries of exact sequences in the bigraded modules

\[ E^r, \quad C^r = \ker d^r, \quad B^r = \text{im } d^r \quad \text{and} \quad G^r = E^r/B^r. \]

In the application of the Five Lemma (in its refined form, Lemma I.3.3) we shall write down only the first row of commutative diagrams like (11.2).

To prove that (i) and (iii) imply (ii), consider the property

(iii) \( f'_{0,q}: E'_{0,q} \to E'_{0,q} \) is an isomorphism for \( 0 \leq q \leq m \).

Since \( E'_{0,0} = E'^{\infty}_{0,0} \), (iii) implies (ii). Hence it will suffice to prove by induction on \( m \) that (i), (iii), and (ii) imply (ii). Given (ii), the diagram (11.2) shows that \( f'_{p,0} \) is an isomorphism for \( q \leq m \). By a subsidiary induction on \( r \geq 2 \), we prove that

\[
f'_{p,q} \text{ is } \begin{cases} \text{a monomorphism for } q \leq m \text{ and all } \phi, \\ \text{an isomorphism for } q \leq m - r + 2 \text{ and all } \phi. \end{cases}
\]

(11.3)
This holds for $r=2$; assume it for some $r$. The Five Lemma for the commutative diagram on the exact sequence

$$0 \to C_{p,q} \to E'_{p,q} \xrightarrow{d'} E'_{r-r,q+r-1}$$

which defines the kernel $C'$ of $d'$ shows for the map $c'$ induced by $f'$ that

$$c'_{p,q} : C'_{p,q} \to C'_{r,q}$$

is a monomorphism for $q \leq m$, an isomorphism for $q \leq m - r + 1$.

Now $d'$ gives an epimorphism $E'_{p+r,q+r-1} \to B'_{p,q}$, and if $q \leq m$, $f'_{p+r,q+r-1}$ is also an epimorphism, hence so is the map $b$ induced by $f$:

$$b'_{p,q} : B'_{p,q} \to B'_{r,q}$$

is an epimorphism for $q \leq m$.

Next, $E'_{r+1}$ is defined by the short exact sequence

$$0 \to B'_{p,q} \to C'_{p,q} \to E'_{r+1} \to 0.$$  

Form the corresponding two-row diagram. For $q \leq m$ the first vertical map is an epimorphism by (11.5), and the second a monomorphism by (11.4); hence by the Five Lemma the third vertical map $f'_{p,q}$ is a monomorphism. If, moreover, $q \leq m - (r+1) + 2 = m - r + 1$, the second vertical map is an isomorphism by (11.4), hence so is $f'_{p,q}$. This completes the inductive proof of (11.3).

Next we claim that

$$c'_{p,m-p+2}$$

is an epimorphism for $r \geq p \geq 2$.  

For $r > p$, $d' : E'_{r} \to E'_{r-1}$ has image zero, so $E'_r = C'_r$, $f'_r = c'_r$. For $r$ large, $f'_{p,q} = f'_{p,0}$, so $c'_{p,0}$ in (11.7) is an isomorphism by the hypothesis (iii). We may then prove (11.7) by descent on $r$. Assume (11.7) for $r + 1$ and take the diagram on (11.6) with $q = m - p + 2$. The first vertical map is epic by (11.5); since $E'_{r+1} = C'_{r+1}$, the third is epic by the case of (11.7) assumed. Hence, by the short Five Lemma, $c'_{p,0}$ is epic, proving (11.7).

Finally, we prove by descent on $r$ that $f'_{0,m+1}$ is an isomorphism for $r \geq 2$. It holds for large $r$ by (iii); assume it for $r + 1$ and consider the two-row diagram with first line

$$0 \to C'_{r,m-r+2} \to E'_{r,m-r+2} \xrightarrow{d'} E'_{0,m+1} \to 0.$$ 

The first vertical map is an epimorphism by (11.7) for $r = p$, the second is an isomorphism by (11.3), and the fourth is an isomorphism by the assumption of descent. Hence the first $d'$ is an isomorphism for $r = 2$, this completes the induction on $m$ in the proof of (ii).
Notes. Spectral sequences were discovered by Leray [1946, 1950] for the case of cohomology; their essential features were noted independently by Lyndon [1946, 1948] in the case of the spectral sequence for the cohomology of a group. The algebraic properties of spectral sequences were effectively codified by Koszul [1947]. Their utility in calculations for the homotopy groups of spheres was decisively demonstrated by Serre [1951]. The equivalent formulation by exact couples is due to Massey [1952]; for still another formulation see Cartan-Eilenberg, XV.7. The Leray-Serre theorem has been proved by acyclic models [Gugenheim-Moore 1957]; for other proofs see Hu [1959, Chap.IX], Hilton-Wylie [1960, Chap.X]. These authors established the edge effects (Prop.10.2) only for the Lyndon filtration; our proof direct from the Hochschild-Serre filtration depends upon our description of connecting relations, which was concocted for this purpose. The Lyndon spectral sequence has been used by Green [1956] to prove for a finite p-group \( \Pi \) of order \( p^n \) that \( H_2(\Pi, Z) \) has order \( p^k \) with \( k \leq n(n-1)/2 \). For \( \Pi \) finite, Venkov [1959] proved topologically that the cohomology ring \( H(\Pi, Z) \) is finitely generated as a ring; the algebraic proof of this result by Evens [1961] uses the product structure of the Lyndon spectral sequence. Among many other applications of spectral sequences, we note Borel's [1955] proof of the Smith fixed point theorem and Federer's application to function spaces [1956]. In the comparison theorem, due to Moore [Cartan seminar 1954—1955], we follow the proof of Kudo and Araki [1956]; a closely related proof by Zeeman [1957] includes the case where the given isomorphisms are assumed only up to specified dimensions. Eilenberg-Moore [1962] study convergence and duality properties of spectral sequences in an abelian category.

Chapter twelve

Derived Functors

This chapter will place our previous developments in a more general setting. First, we have already noted that modules may be replaced by objects in an abelian category; our first three sections develop this technique and show how those ideas of homological algebra which do not involve tensor products can be carried over to any abelian category. Second, the relative and the absolute Ext functors can be treated together, as cases of the general theory of "proper" exact sequences developed here in §§4-7. The next sections describe the process of forming "derived" functors: \( \text{Hom}_R \) leads to the functors \( \text{Ext}^*_R \), \( \otimes_R \) to the \( \text{Tor}^*_R \), and any additive functor \( T \) to a sequence of "satellite" functors. Finally, an application of these ideas to the category of complexes yields a generalized Künneth formula in which the usual exact sequence is replaced by a spectral sequence.
1. Squares

Many manipulations in an abelian category depend on a construction of "squares". Let \( a \) and \( \beta \) be two coterminal morphisms and consider commutative square diagrams

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
D & \xrightarrow{\alpha} & B \\
\downarrow{\beta'} & & \downarrow{\beta} \\
A & \xrightarrow{\alpha} & C \\
\end{array}
\quad
\begin{array}{ccc}
D'' & \xrightarrow{\alpha''} & B \\
\downarrow{\beta''} & & \downarrow{\beta} \\
A & \xrightarrow{\alpha} & C \\
\end{array}
\tag{1.1}
\]

formed with the given edges \( a \) and \( \beta \). Call the left hand square couniversal, for given \( a \) and \( \beta \), if to each right hand square there exists a unique morphism \( y: D'' \to D \) with \( \beta'' = \beta' \gamma \), \( \alpha'' = \alpha' \gamma \). A couniversal square (also called a "pull-back" diagram), if it exists, is unique up to an equivalence of \( D \), so that \( a \) and \( \beta \) together determine \( \alpha' \) and \( \beta' \) up to a right equivalence. GABRIEL [1962] calls \( D \) a fibred product.

Such couniversal squares are familiar in many branches of Mathematics and under more general assumptions (than those made in an abelian category). In the category of sets, if \( a \) and \( \beta \) are injections, \( D \) is just the intersection of the subsets \( A \) and \( B \) of \( C \). In the category of topological spaces, if \( \beta \) is a fiber map and \( a: A \to C \) a continuous map into the base space of \( \beta \), then \( \beta' \) is the so-called "induced" fiber map. In any abelian category, the couniversal square for \( C = 0 \) is

\[
A \oplus B \xrightarrow{\pi_1} B \\
\downarrow{\pi_1} \quad \downarrow{} \\
A \quad \longrightarrow 0.
\]

**Theorem 1.1. (Square Construction.)** To given coterminal morphisms \( a, \beta \) in an abelian category there exists a couniversal square (1.1). In terms of the direct sum \( A \oplus B \) with its projections \( \pi_1 \) and \( \pi_2 \), \( D \) may be described as the domain of \( v \in \ker (a \pi_1 - \beta \pi_2) \), with \( a' = \pi_2 v \), \( \beta' = \pi_1 v \).

**Proof.** For \( D, v, \alpha', \) and \( \beta' \) as described, consider

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
B & \xleftarrow{\alpha'} & D'' \\
\uparrow{\pi_1} & \uparrow{\gamma} & \downarrow{\beta} \\
D & \xrightarrow{v} & A \oplus B \quad C. \\
\downarrow{\pi_1} & \downarrow{\alpha'} & \\
A & \xrightarrow{\beta} \\
\end{array}
\tag{1.2}
\]

The two triangles are commutative, by definition of \( \alpha' \) and \( \beta' \). The square (better, the diamond) on \( D \) is commutative, for

\[
\alpha \beta' = \alpha \pi_1 v = (\alpha \pi_1 - \beta \pi_2) v + \beta \pi_2 v = 0 + \beta \alpha'.
\]

Moreover, for any second commutative square on \( a \) and \( \beta \), with upper corner \( D'' \) as in (1.1), the couniversality of \( A \oplus B \) provides \( \xi: D'' \to A \oplus B \).
with \( \pi_1 \xi = \beta'' \), \( \pi_2 \xi = \alpha'' \). Therefore \( 0 = \alpha \beta'' - \beta \alpha'' = (\alpha \pi_1 - \beta \pi_2) \xi \), so \( \xi \) factors through \( v \in \ker (\alpha \pi_1 - \beta \pi_2) \) as \( \xi = v \gamma \) for some \( \gamma \) (see (1.2)). Then \( \beta'' = \pi_1 v \gamma = \beta' \gamma \) and \( \alpha'' = \alpha' \gamma \). If \( \gamma_0 : D' \to D \) is another morphism with \( \beta'' = \beta' \gamma_0 \), \( \alpha'' = \alpha' \gamma_0 \), then \( \pi_1 v \gamma_0 = \pi_j v \) for \( j = 1, 2 \), so \( v \gamma_0 = v \gamma \). But \( v \) is monic, so \( \gamma_0 = \gamma \), and \( y \) is unique, as required for couniversality.

For modules \( A, B, C \), the corner \( D \) might have been described as the module of all pairs \( (a, b) \) with \( a = \beta b \); our argument has shown how to replace the use of the elements \( a, b \) by the difference \( \pi_1 - \beta \pi_2 \) and the formation of kernels.

**Theorem 1.2.** In a couniversal square, \( \beta \) monic implies \( \beta' \) monic, \( \beta \) epic implies \( \beta' \) epic, and symmetrically for \( \alpha \).

The proof uses the direct sum \( A \oplus B \), with projections \( \pi_j \) and injections \( \iota_j \). First take \( \beta \) monic. Suppose \( \beta' \omega = 0 \) for some \( \omega \). Then \( \beta \pi_2 \omega \omega = \beta \alpha' \omega = \alpha' \beta' \omega = 0 \); as \( \beta \) is monic, \( \pi_2 \omega \omega = 0 \). But also \( \pi_1 \omega \omega = \beta' \omega = 0 \), so \( \omega = 0 \) and \( \omega \) monic gives \( \omega = 0 \). Therefore \( \beta' \) is left cancellable and thus monic.

Next take \( \beta \) epic. Suppose \( \omega (\alpha \pi_1 - \beta \pi_2) = 0 \) for some \( \omega \). Then \( 0 = \omega (\alpha \pi_1 - \beta \pi_2) \iota_2 = - \omega \beta \pi_2 \iota_2 = - \omega \beta \), so \( \omega = 0 \). Hence \( \alpha \pi_1 - \beta \pi_2 \) is epic, thus is the cokernel of its kernel \( \omega \). Now suppose that \( \xi \beta' = 0 \) for some \( \xi \). Then \( 0 = \xi \beta' = \xi \pi_1 v \), so \( 5 \pi_1 \) factors through \( \alpha \pi_1 - \beta \pi_2 \xi \) cokerv as \( \xi \pi_1 = \xi' (\alpha \pi_1 - \beta \pi_2) \). Therefore \( 0 = \xi \pi_1 \iota_2 = - \xi' \beta \pi_2 \iota_2 = - \xi' \beta \), so \( \beta \) epic gives \( \xi' = 0 \), hence \( 5 \pi_1 = 0 \), \( 5 = 0 \), and \( \beta' \) is epic.

Under duality (reverse arrows, interchange "monic" and "epic", etc.) the axioms of an abelian category are preserved. The dual square construction starts with coinitial morphisms \( a, \beta \) and constructs the commutative square on the left in

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
C & \xrightarrow{\alpha} & A \\
\downarrow{\beta} & & \downarrow{\beta} \\
B & \rightarrow & D,
\end{array}
\]

so as to be universal (or a "push-out" diagram). Here, universal means that to any other such commutative square with a lower right corner \( D'' \) there exists a unique \( y : D \rightarrow D'' \) with .... For instance, in the category of groups (not an abelian category) with \( \alpha \) and \( \beta \) monic, such a universal square exists with corner \( D \) the free product of the groups \( A \) and \( B \) with amalgamated subgroup \( C \) (Neumann [1954], Specht [1956]).

**Exercises**

1. If \( \tau \sigma \) is defined with \( \tau, \sigma \) epic, then \( \tau \in \coker (\sigma (\ker \tau a)) \).
2. For \( \kappa \) monic, \( \sigma \) epic, and \( \kappa, \sigma \) coterminal, prove that \( \kappa' \) and \( \sigma' \) in the square construction are determined by the explicit formulas \( \kappa' \in \ker \varrho, \sigma' \in \cokerm (a \kappa') \), with \( \varrho = (\coker \kappa) a \). (Use Ex. 1.)
3. If \( \varrho(\ker \alpha) = 0 \) with \( \varrho \) epic, show that there is a monic \( \mu \) and an epic \( \alpha \) with \( \mu \varrho = \sigma \alpha \).

4. In a commutative diagram

\[ \begin{array}{ccc}
\xi & \rightarrow & \eta \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\beta & \rightarrow & \gamma 
\end{array} \]

let both squares be couniversal. Show that the square with top and bottom edges \( \eta \xi, \beta \gamma \) is also couniversal.

5. Construct a couniversal diagram to \( n \) given coterminal morphisms.

2. Subobjects and Quotient Objects

A subobject of \( A \) is determined by a monic \( \iota : \bullet + A \), and is the right equivalence class (all \( \iota \theta | \theta \) an equivalence) of this \( x \). The class \( A \) of all subobjects of \( A \) may be treated as a set (axiom at end of IX.1).

The ordinary inclusion relation for submodules is matched by the definition that \( \text{cls} \ x_1 \leq \text{cls} \ x_2 \) if and only if there is a morphism \( \omega \) with \( x_1 = x_2 \omega \); this \( \omega \) is necessarily monic. The set \( A \), is partly ordered by this relation \( \leq \) and has a zero \( 0_A \) with \( 0_A \leq \text{cls} \ x \) for each \( x \); namely, \( 0_A \) is the class of any zero morphism \( 0 : 0' \rightarrow A \), where \( 0' \) is any zero object of the category.

In an abelian category, each morphism \( \alpha \) with range \( A \) has a standard factorization \( \alpha = ? \sigma (\lambda \text{ monic, a epic}) \) and \( \text{im} \alpha = \text{cls} \ ? \sigma A \). We may thus describe \( A \), as the set of all images of morphisms \( \alpha \) with range \( A \); then equality and inclusion are given by

Proposition 2.1. In an abelian category, morphisms \( \alpha_1, \alpha_2 \), with the same range \( A \) have (when "\( \iff \)" stands for "if and only if")

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{im} \alpha_1 &= \text{im} \alpha_2 & \iff & \alpha_1 \sigma_1 = \alpha_2 \sigma_2 \\
\text{im} \alpha_1 &\leq \text{im} \alpha_2 & \iff & \alpha_1 \sigma_1 = \alpha_2 \sigma_2 \\
\text{im} \alpha &= 0_A & \iff & \alpha = 0.
\end{align*}
\]

Proof. The standard factorization of \( \alpha_1 \sigma_1 = \alpha_2 \sigma_2 \) gives \( \text{im} \alpha_1 = \text{im} \alpha_2 \). Conversely, if \( \alpha_1 \) and \( \alpha_2 \) both have image \( \text{cls} \ x \), they have standard factorizations \( \alpha_1 = \kappa \varrho_1, \alpha_2 = \kappa \varrho_2 \) with \( \varrho_1 \) and \( \varrho_2 \) epic. The square construction on \( \varrho_1 \) and \( \varrho_2 \) yields, by Thm.1.2, epics \( \sigma_1 \) and \( \sigma_2 \) with \( \varrho_1 \sigma_1 = \varrho_2 \sigma_2 \), hence \( \alpha_1 \sigma_1 = \alpha_2 \sigma_2 \). The rest of the proof is similar.

An element of \( A \), will be written as \( a \in A \) or as \( \text{im} \alpha \) for some \( a \) with range \( A \), according to convenience.

Each morphism \( \xi : A \rightarrow B \) gives a map \( \xi_s : A_s \rightarrow B_s \) of sets, defined by

\[ \xi_s(\text{im} \alpha) = \text{im}(\xi \alpha), \quad \text{range} \alpha = A. \]

The correspondence \( A \rightarrow A_s, \xi \rightarrow \xi_s \) provides a "representation" of each abelian category by partly ordered sets with zero. We may also treat
A, as a "pointed set". By a pointed set $U$ is meant a set with a distinguish-
guished element, say $0_U \in U$. A map $f: U \rightarrow V$ of pointed sets is a function 
on $U$ to $V$ with $f(0_U) = 0_V$; in particular, $f = 0$ means that $f(u) = 0_V$ for 
every $u \in U$. Pointed sets with all these maps $f$ as morphisms constitute a category, in which we can define many familiar notions as follows: For every $f: U \rightarrow V$:

$$
\text{Kernel } f = [\text{all } u | u \in U, f(u) = 0_V],
$$

$$
\text{Image } f = [\text{all } v | f(u) = v \text{ for some } u \in U],
$$

$f$ is surjective if and only if Image $f = V$,

$f$ is injective if and only if $f(u_1) = f(u_2)$ implies $u_1 = u_2$.

If $(f, g): U \rightarrow V \rightarrow W$, call $(f, g)$ exact if Image $f = \text{Kernel } g$. As in abelian 
categories, $(f, g)$ is exact if and only if $g \circ f = 0$ and $\text{Kernel } g \subset \text{Image } f$, 
where "\subset" denotes set-theoretic inclusion.

The fundamental properties of the subobject representation can be 
formulated in these terms:

**Theorem 2.2.** If $\xi: A \rightarrow B$ is a morphism in an abelian category, 
then $\xi_s: A_s \rightarrow B_s$ is a map of partly ordered sets with zero; that is $\xi_s(0_A) = 0_B$ 
and $a \leq a'$ in $A_s$ implies $\xi_s a \leq \xi_s a'$. Also

(i) $S = 0 \iff \xi_s = 0$;

(ii) $\xi$ is epic $\iff \xi_s$ is surjective;

(iii) $\xi$ is monic $\iff \xi_s$ is injective $\iff \text{Kernel } \xi_s = 0$.

If the composite $\eta \xi$ is defined, $(\eta \xi)_s = \eta_s \xi_s$ and

(iv) $(\xi, \eta)$ is exact $\iff (\xi_s, \eta_s)$ is exact.

**Proof.** If $\text{im } a_1 \leq \text{im } a$, in $A_s$, then by Prop. 2.1 $a_1 = a_2 \omega$ for some 
$\omega$ and some epic $a$, so $\xi a_1 = \xi a_2 \omega$ and $\text{im } (\xi a_1) \leq \text{im } (5a_1)$. Hence $\xi_s$ 
respects the partial order. Property (i) is immediate.

If $\xi$ is epic and $\text{im } b \leq B_s$, the square construction provides $\xi'$ and 
$\beta'$ with $\xi' \text{ epic and } \xi' \beta' = \beta \xi'$, whence $\xi_s \text{ im } \beta' = \text{im } \beta$ 
and $\xi_s$ is surjective. Conversely, if $\xi_s$ is surjective there is an $a$ with range $A$ 
and $\text{im } (\xi a) = \text{im } f_B$, so $\xi a_1 = a_1$ for epics $a_1$ and $a$, whence $\xi$ is epic.

If $\xi$ is monic, $\xi_s \text{ im } a = \xi_s \text{ im } a'$ implies $\xi a = \xi a'$, hence $a a = a' a'$ 
and $\text{im } a = \text{im } a'$, so $\xi_s$ is injective. If $\xi_s$ is injective, Kernel $\xi_s$ is evidently 
zero. Finally, if Kernel $\xi_s = 0$, $\xi a = 0$ implies $\text{im } (\xi a) = \xi (\text{im } a) = 0$, 
hence im $a = 0$ and $a = 0$, so $\xi$ is monic. This proves (iii).

For $\eta: B \rightarrow C$, the definition of $\text{ker } \eta \in B_s$ shows that

$$
\text{Kernel } \eta_s = [b | b \in B_s \text{ and } b \leq \text{ker } \eta];
$$

(2.1)
in other words, \( \ker \eta \) is the maximal element of the subset Kernel \( \eta_s \); note that we write "ker" for a morphism in an abelian category, "Ker" for module homomorphisms, and "Kernel" for pointed sets. Similarly, for \( \xi: A \to B \),

\[
\text{Image } \xi_s = \{ b \mid b \in B_s \text{ and } b \leq \text{im } \xi \} \tag{2.2}
\]

Indeed, if \( a \) has range \( A \), \( \xi_s \text{im } a = \text{im}(\xi a) \leq \text{im } \xi \); conversely \( \text{im } \beta \leq \text{im } \xi \) implies \( \beta a = 5a \) for some epic \( a \) and some \( a \) with range \( A \), so \( \xi_s \text{im } a = \text{im}(5a) = \text{im } \beta \). This proves (2.2).

For \( \eta 5 \) defined, \( (\eta 5)_s = \eta_s \xi_s \) follows by definition, and (2.1) and (2.2) give part (iv) of the theorem.

Quotients are dual to subobjects. In detail, let \( B^q \) denote the set of all quotients of the object \( B \); that is, the set of all left equivalence classes of epics \( a \) with domain \( B \). The set \( B^q \) is a partly ordered set with zero; the zero is the class of \( 0: B \to 0' \); the inclusion \( \text{cls } a \geq \text{cls } \tau \) is defined to mean \( \tau = \beta \sigma \) for some \( \beta \), necessarily epic. For modules, this inclusion has its expected meaning: If \( a: A \to A/S, \tau: A \to A/T \), then \( \text{cls } a \geq \text{cls } \tau \) means \( S \subset T \), and hence \( A/T \cong (A/S)/(T/S) \).

Each \( 5: A \to B \) induces \( \xi^q: B^q \to A^q \) (reverse direction!) by \( 54(\text{cls } \sigma) = \text{coim } (\sigma \xi) \). By the duality principle we do not need to prove the dual of Thm.2.2. Recall that the dual of a theorem is formulated by reversing all arrows and leaving unchanged the logical structure of the theorem. Thus "domain" becomes "range", and \( \xi_s \) becomes \( \xi^q \). The set-theoretic notions are part of the logical structure of the theorem, so "\( \xi_s \) injective" becomes "\( \xi^q \) injective".

**Theorem 2.3.** If \( \xi: A \to B \) is a morphism in an abelian category, then \( \xi^q: B^q \to A^q \) is a map of Partly ordered sets with zero. Also

(i) \( \xi = 0 \iff \xi^q = 0 \);

(ii) \( \xi \) is monic \( \iff \xi^q \) is surjective;

(iii) \( \xi \) is epic \( \iff \xi^q \) is injective \( \iff \text{Kernel } \xi^q = 0 \).

If the composite \( 5 \eta \) is defined, \( (\xi \eta)^q = \eta^q \xi^q \) and

(iv) \( (5, \eta) \) is exact \( \iff (\eta^q, \xi^q) \) is exact.

These properties have a more familiar form when stated in terms of the "inverse image" of subobjects (Ex.5, 6).

**Exercises**

1. Verify directly that each of the assertions of Thm.2.3 holds in the abelian category of all \( \mathbb{R} \)-modules.

2. If \( \eta \xi \) is defined, show that \( \text{im } \xi \leq \ker \eta \) if and only if \( \text{coker } \xi \geq \text{coim } \eta \) and that \( \ker \eta \leq \text{im } \xi \) if and only if \( \text{coim } \eta \geq \text{coker } 5 \).
3. An anti-isomorphism \( \varphi: S \rightarrow T \) of partly ordered sets \( S \) and \( T \) is a 1-1 correspondence such that \( s \leq s' \) implies \( \varphi s \leq \varphi s' \). Prove \( A \), anti-isomorphic to \( A' \) under the correspondence \( \text{cls } x \rightarrow \text{coker } x \).

4. Prove that \( \mathcal{A} \), is a lattice (1.8), with \( (\text{cls } \mathcal{A}) \cap (\text{cls } \mathcal{M}) \) given in the notation of the square construction by \( \text{cls } (\mathcal{A} \mathcal{M}) = \text{cls } (\mathcal{M} A) \), and with \( (\text{cls } \mathcal{A}) \cup (\text{cls } \mathcal{M}) \) given by duality.

5. For \( \xi: A \rightarrow B \) define \( \xi^e: B^e \rightarrow A \), by \( \xi^e \text{ im } b = \ker [\xi^e (\text{coker } b)] \) (in the notation of Ex. 3. \( \xi^e = \varphi^{-1} \xi \varphi \)). Prove that \( \xi^e \) is characterized by the properties \( \xi_\alpha (\xi^e \text{ im } b) \leq \text{ im } b \). \( \xi^e \) \text{ im } a \leq \text{ im } b \) implies \( \text{ im } a \leq \xi^e \text{ im } b \). For modules, conclude that \( \xi^e \text{ im } b \) is the inverse image of the submodule \( \text{ im } b \) under \( \xi \).

6. Restate Thm. 2.3 in terms of the maps \( \xi^e \).

7. Show that \( \text{ im } a \) is the greatest lower bound of the monic left factors of \( a \).

3. Diagram Chasing

Various lemmas about diagrams (Five Lemma, 3×3 Lemma, etc.) hold in abelian categories. The usual proofs by chasing elements can be often carried out by chasing subobjects or quotient objects instead. We give three examples.

**Lemma 3.1.** (The Weak Four Lemma.) *In any abelian category a commutative 2×4 diagram*

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
A & \rightarrow & B & \rightarrow & C & \rightarrow & D \\
\downarrow \xi & & \downarrow \eta & & \downarrow \zeta & & \downarrow \omega \\
A' & \rightarrow & B' & \rightarrow & C' & \rightarrow & D'
\end{array}
\]

*with exact rows (i.e., with rows exact at \( B, C, B', \) and \( C' \)) satisfies*

(i) \( \xi \) epic, \( \eta \) and \( \omega \) monic imply \( \zeta \) monic,

(ii) \( \omega \) monic, \( \xi \) and \( \zeta \) epic imply \( \eta \) epic.

**Proof.** Consider the corresponding diagram for the sets of subobjects, and write \( a \in A, \ b' \in B_{s}', \) etc. To prove (i), consider \( c \in C \), with \( \zeta sc = 0 \) (or, more briefly, take \( c \) which goes to \( 0 \) in \( C_{s}' \)). Let \( c \) go to \( d \) in \( D \). Then \( c \) and hence \( d \) go to \( 0 \) in \( D_{s}' \); since \( \omega_{s} \) is injective, \( d = 0 \). By exactness, there is a \( b \) which maps to \( c \); this \( b \) maps to some \( b' \in B_{s}' \). Both \( b' \) and \( c \) map to \( 0 \) in \( C_{s}' \), so, by exactness, there is an \( a' \) which maps to \( b' \). Since \( \xi_{s} \) is epic, there is an \( a \) which maps to \( a' \) and thus to \( b' \). Let \( a \) map to \( b_{1} \) in \( B \). But \( b \) and \( b_{1} \) in \( B \), have the same image in \( B_{s}' \); since \( \eta_{s} \) is injective, \( b = b_{1} \). Then \( a \) maps to \( b \) to \( c \), which is zero by exactness of \( A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C \). We have shown that \( \text{ker } \zeta_{s} \) is \( 0 \); by Thm.2.2, part (iii), \( \zeta \) is monic.

This proof of (i) is exactly like a chase of elements in a diagram of modules. The dual proof, using quotient objects, gives (ii).
3. Diagram Chasing

There is a proof of (ii) by subobjects. Given any \( b' \in B'_s \), a simple chase gives a \( b \in B \), with the same image in \( C'_s \) as \( b' \); thus \( \varphi_s \eta_s b = \varphi_s b' \). With elements, we could subtract, forming \( \eta_s b - b' \) in \( \text{Ker} \ \varphi \). Instead, write \( b = \text{im} \ \beta \), \( b' = \text{im} \ \beta' \); then \( \text{im} (\varphi \eta \beta) = \text{im} (\varphi \beta') \). By Prop. 2.1, there are epics \( a, a \), with \( \varphi \eta \beta \sigma_1 = \varphi \beta' \sigma_2 \), and hence \( \varphi_s \text{im} (\eta \beta \sigma_1 - \beta' \sigma_2) = 0 \).

Exactness at \( B' \) and \( \xi \) epic yield a new element \( b_1 = \text{im} \ \beta_1 \in B \), which maps to \( \text{im} (\eta \beta \sigma_1 - \beta' \sigma_2) \) in \( B'_s \). Prop. 2.1 again yields epics \( a, a \), with \( \eta \beta_1 \sigma_3 = \eta \beta \sigma_1 \sigma_4 - \beta' \sigma_2 \sigma_4 \), so

\[ b' = \text{im} (\beta' \sigma_2 \sigma_4) = \eta_s (\text{im} (\beta \sigma_1 \sigma_4 - \beta_1 \sigma_3)) \]

shows \( b' \in \eta_s B \), so \( \eta \) is epic. In this fashion, Prop. 2.1 can be used to "subtract" two subobjects with the same image, much as if they were elements of a module.

The weak Four Lemma also gives the Five Lemma (Lemma 1.3.3). Recall that \( x \parallel a \) means that \( (x, a) \) is a short exact sequence.

**Lemma 3.2.** (The \( 3 \times 3 \) Lemma.) A \( 3 \times 3 \) commutative diagram in an abelian category with all three columns and the last two rows short exact sequences has its first row a short exact sequence.

We prove a little more. Call a sequence \( (\alpha, \beta) : A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C \) left exact if \( 0 \rightarrow A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C \) is exact (i.e., exact at \( A \) and \( B \)). Thus \( (\alpha, \beta) \) left exact means that \( \alpha \in \ker \beta \).

**Lemma 3.3.** (The \( \text{shar}p \ 3 \times 3 \) Lemma.) A \( 3 \times 3 \) commutative diagram with all three columns and the last two rows left exact has its first row left exact. If in addition the first column and the middle row are short exact, then the first row is short exact.

**Proof.** Consider the diagram (zeros on the top and sides omitted)

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
A' & \xrightarrow{\alpha} & B' \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & \beta & \downarrow & \downarrow \\
A & \rightarrow B & \rightarrow C \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & \\
A'' & \rightarrow B'' & \rightarrow C''
\end{array}
\]

By assumption, \( A' \rightarrow B \) is monic and has \( \alpha : A' \rightarrow B' \) as right factor; hence \( \alpha \) is monic. Since \( A' \rightarrow C' \rightarrow C \) is zero and \( C' \rightarrow C \) is monic, \( \beta \alpha = 0 \). To prove exactness at \( B' \), take \( b' \) in \( B'_s \) with image 0 in \( C'_s \), and let \( b' \) map to \( b \) in \( B \). Then \( b' \) and \( b \) map to 0 in \( C_s \); by left exactness of the row at \( B \), there is an \( a \) which maps to \( b \). Then \( a \) maps to 0 in \( B'_s \) and hence to 0 in \( A'_s \). By left exactness of the first column, there is an \( a' \) which maps to \( a \). Then \( \alpha_s a' \) and \( b' \) have the same image in \( B_s \); since \( B' \rightarrow B \) is monic, \( \alpha_s a' = b' \). This shows the row exact at \( B' \). Again the proof is like a chase of elements.
Now make the added assumptions and use the diagram of the corresponding sets of quotient objects, with all mappings reversed. To prove $\beta$ epic, by Thm. 2.3 part (iii), consider $c' \in C'^q$ with image 0 in $B'^q$. By (ii) of the same theorem, there is a $c$ which maps to $c'$. Let $c$ also map to $b \in B^q$. Since $b$ then maps to 0 in $B'^q$, exactness of the middle column at $B$ gives a $b''$ with image $b$. But $b$ and hence $b''$ go to 0 in $A$. By the short exactness of the first column, $b''$ already goes to 0 in $A''$. Exactness of the row at $B''$ gives a $c''$ with image $b''$. Let $c''$ map to $c_1 \in C^q$. Then $c$ and $c_1$ have the same image in $B^q$, so $c_1 = c$ by exactness. The original $c'$, as the image of $c''$, is now zero, so $\beta$ is epic as desired.

Again, the proof uses quotients to avoid subtraction. For completeness, we adjoint

**Lemma 3.4.** (The symmetric $3 \times 3$ Lemma.) If a commutative $3 \times 3$ diagram has middle row and middle column short exact, then when three of the remaining four rows and columns are short exact, so is the fourth.

**Proof.** Use duality and row-column symmetry of Lemma 3.2.

**Note.** There are several other ways of establishing these and similar lemmas in an abelian category.

The representation theorem ([Lubkin [1960]]) asserts that for every small abelian category $\mathcal{A}$ there is a covariant additive functor $T$ on $\mathcal{A}$ to the category of abelian groups which is an exact embedding — embedding means that distinct objects or morphisms go to distinct groups or homomorphisms; exact, that a sequence is exact in $\mathcal{A}$ if and only if its image under $T$ is an exact sequence of abelian groups. Freyd’s proof [1960] of this theorem studies the category of all functors $T$ and embeds a suitable functor in its injective envelope, as constructed by Mitchell [1962] following the methods of Eckmann-Schoff. Using this important representation theorem, the usual diagram lemmas can be transferred from the category of abelian groups (where they are known) to the small abelian category $\mathcal{A}$.

An additive relation $r : A \rightarrowrightarrow B$ in an abelian category can be defined to be a sub-object of $A \oplus B$, much as in 11.6. Under the natural definition of composition, the additive relations in $\mathcal{A}$ constitute a category with an involution $r \rightarrow r^{-1}$, [Puppe [1962]] has developed an efficient method of proving the diagram lemmas by means of such relations (which he calls correspondences); moreover, this provides the natural definition of the connecting homomorphisms for exact sequences of complexes in $\mathcal{A}$. Also, Puppe has achieved a characterization of the category of additive relations in $\mathcal{A}$ by a set of axioms, such that any category satisfying these axioms is the category of additive relations of a uniquely determined abelian category.

**Exercises**

The first two exercises use the "subtraction" device noted in the proof of the Four Lemma.

1. Prove the strong Four Lemma (Lemma 1.3.2) in an abelian category.

2. Prove the middle $3 \times 3$ Lemma: If a commutative $3 \times 3$ diagram has all three columns and the first and third rows short exact, while the composite of the
two non-zero morphisms in the middle row is zero, then the middle row is short exact (cf. Ex. II.5.2).

**Note.** Unpublished ideas of R. G. Swan give a method of chasing diagrams using morphisms \( a : P + A \) with projective domain in place of the elements of \( A \). This method applies to an abelian category which has **barely enough** projectives, in the sense that for each non-zero object \( A \) there is an \( a : P + A \) with projective domain \( P \) and \( a \neq 0 \). Let \( \mathcal{A}_p \) denote the class of all such \( a \) (including zero); each \( \xi : A \to B \) induces a map \( \xi_p : A_p \to B_p \) of pointed sets defined by \( \xi_p(a) = \xi a : P \to B \). The method is formulated in terms of these maps \( \xi_p \), as in Exercises 3—9 below.

3. An epic \( \tau \) is zero if and only if its range is \( 0' \), and dually.

4. For \( \kappa, \lambda \) monic, \( y \kappa x = 0 \) and \( y \lambda = 0 \) imply \( y(\kappa \lambda x) = 0 \).

The remaining exercises use Ex. 3 and 4 and chase diagrams in an abelian category \( \mathcal{A} \) which is assumed, as in the note, to have "barely enough" projectives.

5. Prove: \( \xi : A \to B \) is epic if and only if \( \xi_p(A_p) = B_p \).

6. Prove: \( \xi : A \to B \) is monic if and only if \( \text{Kernel } \xi_p = 0 \).

7. If \( \eta \xi = 0 \), then \( \text{ker } \eta = \text{im } \xi \) if and only if \( \text{Kernel } \eta_p = \text{Image } \xi_p \).

8. Using the principles of 5—7, prove the weak Four Lemma.

9. By the same methods, prove the \( 3 \times 3 \) Lemma.

### 4. Proper Exact Sequences

In a number of cases we have dealt with a special class of exact sequences in an abelian category and with the corresponding Ext functor; for example, in the category of modules over a \( K \)-algebra \( A \), \( \text{Ext}_{(A,K)} \) uses those exact sequences of \( A \)-modules which split as sequences of \( K \)-modules.

Another example arises in the category of abelian groups. An abelian group \( A \) is said to be a **pure** subgroup of the abelian group \( B \) if \( a = m b \) for an integer \( m \) implies \( a' = ma' \) for some \( a' \in A \); that is, if \( mA = mB \cap A \). Equivalently, \( A \) is pure in \( B \) if and only if each element \( c \) of finite order in the quotient group \( C = B/A \) has a representative in \( B \) of the same order. By \( \text{Ext}_f(C,A) \) we denote the set of (congruence classes of) pure extensions of \( A \) by \( C \). Topological applications of \( \text{Ext}_f \) appear in Eilenberg-MacLane [1942], algebraic applications in Harrison [1959], Nunke [1959], Fuchs [1958], and MacLane [1960]. That \( \text{Ext}_f \) is a bifunctor to abelian groups, entering in suitable exact sequences, will be a consequence of our subsequent theory.

In any abelian category \( \mathcal{A} \) let \( \mathcal{P} \) be a class of short exact sequences; we write \( x \mathcal{P} \sigma \) to mean that \( (x, \sigma) \) is one of the short exact sequences of \( \mathcal{P}, x \in \mathcal{P}_m \) to mean that \( x \mathcal{P} \sigma \) for some \( \sigma \), and \( \sigma \in \mathcal{P}_x \) to mean that \( x \mathcal{P} \sigma \) for some \( x \). Call \( \mathcal{P} \) a **proper** class (and any one of its elements a proper short exact sequence) if it satisfies the following self-dual axioms.
(P-1) If \( x \mathfrak{P}_\sigma \), any isomorphic short exact sequence is in \( \mathcal{P} \);

(P-2) For any objects \( A \) and \( C \), \( A \rightarrow A \oplus C \rightarrow C \) is proper;

(P-3) If \( \nu \lambda \) is defined with \( \nu \in \mathfrak{P}_m \), \( \lambda \in \mathfrak{P}_m \), then \( \nu \lambda \in \mathfrak{P}_m \);

(P-3') If \( \sigma \tau \) is defined with \( \sigma \in \mathfrak{P}_e \), \( \tau \in \mathfrak{P}_e \), then \( \sigma \tau \in \mathfrak{P}_e \);

(P-4) If \( \nu \) and \( \lambda \) are monic with \( \nu \lambda \in \mathfrak{P}_m \), then \( \lambda \in \mathfrak{P}_m \);

(P-4') If \( a \) and \( \tau \) are epic with \( \sigma \tau \in \mathfrak{P}_e \), then \( \sigma \in \mathfrak{P}_e \).

These axioms hold in all of the examples adduced above. They hold if \( \mathcal{P} \) is the class of all \( \square \)-split short exact sequences of a relative abelian category \( \square : \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{M} \), or if \( \mathcal{P} \) is the class of all short exact sequences of the given abelian category.

Note some elementary consequences. The first two axioms imply that \( \mathfrak{P} \) is an allowable class in the sense of IX.4, so \( \mathcal{P} \) is determined by \( \mathfrak{P} \) or \( \mathfrak{P} \). Also, any left or right equivalent of a proper \( \nu \) is proper; when \( \nu \) as range \( A \), \( \text{cls} \nu \) consists of proper monics and is called a proper subobject of \( A \). By (P-2), \( 0' \rightarrow 0' \oplus A + A \) is a proper short exact sequence, and dually; hence \( 1_A \) and \( 0 : 0' \rightarrow A \) are proper monic, \( 1_A \) and \( 0 : A \rightarrow 0' \) proper epic. A morphism \( a : A \rightarrow B \) is called proper if \( \text{ker} a \) and \( \text{coker} a \) are proper; as in Prop. IX.4.1, this amounts to the requirement that \( \text{im} a \) and \( \text{coima} \) be proper. Any equivalence \( \mathfrak{g} \) has both \( \text{ker} \mathfrak{g} \) and \( \text{coker} \mathfrak{g} \) proper, hence is proper and in both \( \mathfrak{P}_m \) and \( \mathfrak{P}_e \).

**Proposition 4.1.** The direct sum of two proper short exact sequences is proper exact.

**Proof.** Morphisms \( \alpha_i : A_i \rightarrow B_i \) have a direct sum

\[ \alpha_1 \oplus \alpha_2 = \iota_1 \alpha_1 \pi_1 + \iota_2 \alpha_2 \pi_2 : A_1 \oplus A_2 \rightarrow B_1 \oplus B_2, \]

where \( \pi_i : A_1 \oplus A_2 \rightarrow A_i \) and \( \iota_j : B_j \rightarrow B_1 \oplus B_2 \). If \( \|\sigma \| \) and \( \|\tau \| \), an easy argument shows \( \nu \|\| \lambda \|\| \) and \( \sigma \|\| \tau \|\| \). Hence it is enough to show that \( \nu, \lambda \in \mathfrak{P}_m \) imply \( \nu \oplus \lambda \in \mathfrak{P}_m \). Since \( \nu \oplus \lambda = (\nu \oplus 1) (1 \oplus \lambda) \), it suffices by (P-3) to prove \( \nu \oplus 1 \in \mathfrak{P}_m \). Thus we wish to prove for each \( D \) that \( \nu, \sigma : A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C \) proper exact implies \( \nu \oplus \sigma : A \oplus D \rightarrow B \oplus D \rightarrow C \) proper exact. Here we have \( d' = d \) and \( \pi : B \oplus D \rightarrow B \) is a projection of the direct sum, hence proper by (P-2). Therefore \( \sigma' = \sigma \pi \) is proper by (P-3'), hence \( \nu \oplus \sigma \) proper, as required.

Two proper short exact sequences \( E = (x, a) \) and \( E' = (x', a') \) from \( A \) to \( C \) are called congruent if there is a morphism \( \mathfrak{g} \) with \( \theta x = x', a' \theta = a \).

By the short Five Lemma, any such \( \mathfrak{g} \) is necessarily an equivalence.

**Proposition 4.2.** If the proper short exact sequence \( E = (x, a) : A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C \) splits by a morphism \( a : C \rightarrow B \) with \( a a = 1_C \), then \( a \) is a proper monic and \( E \) is congruent to the direct sum. Conversely, any sequence congruent to the direct sum splits.
Proof. Since $\sigma(1 - a\sigma) = 0$, $1 - a\sigma$ factors through $x \in \ker o$ as $1 - x\alpha = x\beta$, and $\beta x = 0$. The resulting diagram $A \xrightarrow{\alpha} B \xrightarrow{\beta} C$ may be compared with the direct sum diagram by the usual equivalence $8: A \oplus C \rightarrow B$ with $\alpha = 8\tau_2$ and $\tau_2$ the injection $C + A @ C$. Now $8$ is an equivalence and hence proper. Also $\alpha = \theta\tau_2$ is the composite of proper monics, hence is a proper monic. The converse proof is easier.

For any objects $C$ and $A$, $\operatorname{Ext}_A^1(C, A)$ is now defined as the set of all congruence classes of proper short exact sequences $E: A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C$; by the axiom $(IX.1)$ on sets of extensions, we may take $\operatorname{Ext}_A^1$ to be a set. Now $\operatorname{Ext}_A^1$ has all the formal properties found for $\operatorname{Ext}_R^1$ with $R$ a ring:

**Theorem 4.3.** For each proper class $\mathcal{P}$ of short exact sequences in an abelian category $\mathcal{A}$, $\operatorname{Ext}_A^1(C, A)$ is a bifunctor on $\mathcal{A}$. The addition $E_1 + E_2 = \nabla_2(E_1 \oplus E_2) \Delta_r$ makes it a bifunctor to abelian groups.

The proof is like that for $R$-modules. The essential step is the demonstration that $\operatorname{Ext}_A^1$ is a contravariant functor of $C$; as in Lemma III.1.2, we must construct to each proper $E$ and each morphism $\gamma: C' \rightarrow C$ of $\mathcal{A}$ a unique commutative diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
E': & 0 & \rightarrow A \xrightarrow{x'} D \xrightarrow{\sigma'} C' \rightarrow 0 \\
& \| & \| & \| \\
E: & 0 & \rightarrow A \xrightarrow{x} B \xrightarrow{\sigma} C \rightarrow 0
\end{array}
$$

with first row $E'$ proper exact (here $0$ is the zero object $0'$). First build the right-hand square by the square construction of Thm.1.1. By Thm.1.2, $\sigma'$ is epic. Form a second square

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
A & \xrightarrow{o} & C' \\
\downarrow{x} & & \downarrow{\gamma} \\
B & \xrightarrow{\sigma} & C.
\end{array}
$$

The couniversal property of the first square provides $x': A \rightarrow D$ with $\beta x' = x$ and $\sigma' x' = 0$. The diagram (4.2) is now constructed and is commutative.

To prove $E'$ exact, consider any $\xi$ with $\sigma' \xi = 0$. Thus $\sigma \beta \xi = \gamma \sigma' \xi = 0$, so $\beta \xi$ factors through $x \in \ker \sigma$ as $\beta \xi = x\alpha = \beta x' x$ for some $a$. But also $\sigma' \xi = 0 = \sigma' x' x$, so the couniversality of $D$ for the cointial maps $\xi$ and $x' x$ with range $D$ gives $\xi = x' x$. Since any $\xi$ with $\sigma' \xi = 0$ factors through $x'$, and $\sigma' x' = 0$, we have $x' \in \ker \sigma'$.

The proof that $E'$ is proper uses a direct sum. By the square construction, $D$, $\beta$, and $\sigma'$ are defined by the left exact sequence

$$
0 \rightarrow D \xrightarrow{\gamma} B \oplus C \xrightarrow{\sigma_1 - \gamma \sigma_2} C, \quad \pi_1 \gamma = \beta, \quad \pi_2 \gamma = \sigma'.
$$
This \( v \) need not be proper, but
\[
\nu \cdot \nu' = (t_1 \pi_1 + t_2 \pi_2) \nu \cdot \nu' = t_1 \beta \cdot \nu' + t_2 \sigma' \cdot \nu' = t_1 \nu.
\]
By axiom (P-2), \( t_1 \in \mathcal{P}_m \); then axiom (P-4) shows \( \nu' \in \mathcal{P}_m \), and thus \( E' \) proper.

From the couniversality of the square on \( D \) it now follows that the morphism \((1, \beta, y): E' \to E\) of proper short exact sequences is couniversal for morphisms \((x_1, \beta_1, y): E_1 \to E\), exactly as stated in Lemma III.1.3.

Now define \( E \cdot y \) to be \( E' \); This gives a right operation by \( y \) on \( E \); from the couniversality of \( E' \) it follows that \( \text{Ext}^1_{\mathcal{A}} \) is a contravariant functor of \( C \). The proof that \( \text{Ext}^1_{\mathcal{A}}(C, A) \) is covariant in \( A \) is dual, so need not be given; the proof that it is a bifunctor can be repeated verbatim (Lemma III.1.6); a similar repetition, using Prop. 4.1, shows that \( \text{Ext}^n_{\mathcal{A}}(C, A) \) is an abelian group.

A long exact sequence is \textit{proper} if each of its morphisms is proper. An \( n \)-fold exact sequence \( S \) starting at \( A \) and ending at \( C \) can be written (via standard factorization of its morphisms) as \( S = E_n \circ \cdots \circ E_1 \), a composite of \( n \) short exact sequences. By Prop. IX.4.1, \( S \) is proper if and only if each of its factors \( E_i \) is a proper short exact sequence. Call two \( n \)-fold sequences \( S \) and \( S' \) from \( A \) to \( C \) congruent if the second can be obtained from the first by a finite number of replacements of an \( E_i \) by a congruent \( E'_i \) or of two successive factors by the rule \((E \cdot a) \cdot F = E \cdot (a \cdot F) \) or \( E \cdot (a \cdot F) = (E \cdot a) \cdot F \), where \( E \) and \( F \) are both proper and \( a \) is any matching morphism. Now the set \( \text{Ext}^n_{\mathcal{A}}(C, A) \) has as elements these congruence classes of such \( n \)-fold sequences \( S \), with addition and zero as before. The properties of \( \text{Ext}^n_{\mathcal{A}} \) are exactly those summarized in Thm. III.5.3.

These properties may be restated in different language. A \textit{graded additive category} \( \mathcal{G} \) is a category in which each \( \text{hom}^n_{\mathcal{G}}(C, A) \) is the set union of a family of abelian groups \( \{\text{hom}^n(C, A), n = 0, 1, \ldots\} \) in which composition induces a homomorphism \( \text{hom}(B, C) \otimes \text{hom}(A, B) \to \text{hom}(A, C) \) of degree 0 of graded abelian groups, and such that \( \mathcal{G} \) becomes an additive category when only the morphisms \( \text{hom}^0_{\mathcal{G}}(C, A) \) are considered. In particular, each morphism \( \text{of a graded additive category} \) has a degree. Now regard a proper \( n \)-fold exact sequence \( S \) starting at \( A \) and ending at \( C \) as a morphism of degree \( n \) from \( C \) to \( A \), while the original morphisms from \( C \) to \( A \) are taken to have degree 0. The properties of \( \text{Ext}^n_{\mathcal{G}} \) may now be summarized by

\textbf{Theorem} 4.4. Each \textit{proper} class \( \mathcal{P} \) of short exact sequences in an abelian category \( \mathcal{A} \) determines a graded additive category \( \mathcal{G}_{\mathcal{A}}(\mathcal{A}) \) with objects the objects of \( \mathcal{A} \) and \( \text{hom}_{\mathcal{G}}^n(A, B) = \text{Ext}^n_{\mathcal{G}}(A, B) \); in particular, with
5. Ext without Projectives

If \( \mathcal{A} \) has enough proper projectives for the given proper class \( \mathcal{P} \), each object \( C \) has a proper projective resolution \( \varepsilon : X \to C \). Then the natural isomorphism \( \text{Ext}^n_{\mathcal{P}}(C, A) \cong H^n(\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(X, A)) \) holds, just as for modules (Thm. III.6.4). As in that case, we can establish the standard long exact sequences for \( \text{Ext}^n_{\mathcal{P}} \). Instead, we give a direct proof, using neither projectives nor injectives.

Exercises

1. [BUCHSBAUM.] Show that (P-2) may be replaced by the requirement that \( \alpha \beta = 1_A \) implies \( \beta \in \mathcal{P}_m \).

2. [HELLER.] If \( \alpha \in \mathcal{P}_m \) and \( \alpha \mu \) is a proper morphism, \( \alpha \) is proper.

3. Construct an example of two pure subgroups in \( \mathbb{Z}_4 \oplus \mathbb{Z}_2 \) to show that \( \alpha, \lambda \in \mathcal{P}_m \) need not imply \( \alpha + \lambda \in \mathcal{P}_m \).

4. Construct an example of an impure extension \( F \) of abelian groups and an \( \alpha \) with \( \alpha F \) pure.

5. If \( \mathcal{P} \) and \( \mathcal{P}' \) are proper classes of short exact sequences, so is \( \mathcal{P} \cap \mathcal{P}' \).

6. [HARRISON.] If \( S \) is a fixed module, show that the class of all short exact \( A \to B \to C \) with \( \text{Hom}(S, B) \to \text{Hom}(S, C) \) an epimorphism is a proper class.

5. Ext without Projectives

If \( \mathcal{A} \) has enough proper projectives for the given proper class \( \mathcal{P} \), each object \( C \) has a proper projective resolution \( \varepsilon : X \to C \). Then the natural isomorphism \( \text{Ext}^n_{\mathcal{P}}(C, A) \cong H^n(\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(X, A)) \) holds, just as for modules (Thm. III.6.4). As in that case, we can establish the standard long exact sequences for \( \text{Ext}^n_{\mathcal{P}} \). Instead, we give a direct proof, using neither projectives nor injectives.
Chapter XII. Derived Functors

Theorem 5.1. For a proper class of short exact sequences in an abelian category $\mathcal{A}$, $E = (x, \sigma)$: $A \to B \to C$ a proper short exact sequence, and $G$ any object there is an exact sequence of abelian groups

$$\to \text{Ext}_{\mathcal{A}}^n(A, G) \xrightarrow{E_n} \text{Ext}_{\mathcal{A}}^n(C, G) \xrightarrow{\sigma^n} \text{Ext}_{\mathcal{A}}^n(B, G) \xrightarrow{x^n} \text{Ext}_{\mathcal{A}}^n(A, G) \xrightarrow{E_n} \ldots$$

with maps given by composition; in particular, $E^n(\text{cls } S) = (-1)^n\text{cls } (S \circ E)$.

The dual of this theorem asserts the exactness of the usual long sequence with $E$ placed in the second argument, as in Thm. III.9.1.

Proof. It is immediate that $\sigma^n E^{n-1} = 0$, $\chi^n \sigma^n = 0$, and $E^n \chi^n = 0$. Write "$(\sigma^n, \chi^n)$" for "$(\sigma, \chi)$" is exact. We must prove

$$E^{n-1}|\sigma^n, \quad \sigma^n|\chi^n, \quad \chi^n|E^n, \quad n = 0, 1, \ldots; \quad E^{-1} = 0.$$  

For $n = 0$ and for $E^0|\text{cl}$, the proof is that for modules, with minor variants.

To show $\sigma^1|\chi^1$, consider $E' \in \text{Ext}_{\mathcal{A}}^1(B, G)$ with $E' \chi = 0$. This states that $E' \chi$ splits, so the definition (4.2) of $E' \chi$ amounts to a commutative diagram

$$\begin{align*}
E' \chi: & \quad 0 \to G \xrightarrow{\eta} G \oplus A \xrightarrow{\pi} A \to 0 \\
E': & \quad 0 \to G \xrightarrow{\chi} \ast \to B \to 0 \\
E_0: & \quad G \xrightarrow{\chi} \ast \to C,
\end{align*}$$

with $\mu$ monic by the square construction (Thm.1.2). Moreover, $\sigma \sigma' \in \text{coker } \mu$, for $\sigma \sigma' \mu = \sigma \chi \pi_2 = 0$, while if $\xi \mu = 0$ for some $\xi$, then $\xi \chi' = \xi \mu \iota_1 = 0$, whence $\xi = \eta \sigma'$ for some $\eta$ with $0 = \eta \sigma' \mu = \eta \chi \pi_2$. Since $\pi_2$ is epic, $\eta \chi = 0$, and $\eta$ thus factors through $\sigma$ as $\eta = \xi 0$. Hence $\xi$ factors through $\sigma'$, so $\mu \in \text{ker } (oo')$ is proper by (P-3').

To fill in the dotted portion of the diagram, use the proper injection $\iota_2: A \to G \oplus A$, take $\varrho \in \text{coker } (\mu \iota_2)$ and $\chi = \varrho \chi'$. Since $0 \sigma' \mu \iota_2 = \sigma \chi \pi_2 \iota_2 = 0 \iota_A = 0$, $\sigma'$ factors through $\varrho$ as $\sigma' = \tau \varrho$ with $\tau$ proper epic by (P-4'). Now replace both $G$'s in the top row by $0$, $\pi_2$ by $\iota_A$ and $\mu$ by $\mu \iota_2$. The resulting $3 \times 3$ diagram has proper exact columns and the first two rows exact; by the $3 \times 3$ Lemma the third row is exact, and proper as $\tau$ is proper. This row is therefore an $E_0 \in \text{Ext}_{\mathcal{A}}^1(C, G)$; the diagram states that $E_0 \sigma = E'$. Hence $\sigma^1|\chi^1$.

Lemma 5.2. If $\chi^n|E^n$ for all proper $E$, then $E^n|\sigma^{n+1}$ and $\sigma^{n+1}|\chi^{n+1}$.

In the proof, we omit the subscript $\mathcal{A}$ on $\text{Ext}_{\mathcal{A}}$ and write $\chi_E$ and $\sigma_E$ for the two non-zero morphisms of a short exact sequence $E = (x, \sigma_E)$. This gives the convenient congruences (Prop. III.1.7)

$$\chi_E E = 0, \quad \sigma_E = 0.$$
First suppose that $S \in \text{Ext}^{n+1}(C, G)$ has $\sigma^{n+1} S = 0$. Write $S$ as a composite $S = T \circ F$ for $T \in \text{Ext}^n$. Hence $0 \equiv S \sigma = T(F \sigma)$; the hypothesis (with $E$ replaced by $F$) gives $U \in \text{Ext}^n$ with $T = U \chi_m$, hence $S \equiv U(\chi_F, F)$. But $(\chi_F, F) \sigma \equiv \chi_F, F \sigma \equiv 0$, so the assertion $E^0|\sigma^1$ previously proved gives a morphism $\alpha$ with $\chi_F, F \equiv \alpha E$. Thus $S \equiv U(\chi_f, F) \equiv (U \alpha) E \equiv \pm E^n(U \alpha)$, as desired.

Second, we wish to prove that $S \in \text{Ext}^{n+1}(B, G)$ with $S \equiv 0$ can be written as $S \equiv V \sigma$ for some $V \in \text{Ext}^{n+1}$. The proof is similar, using $\sigma^1|\chi^1$ instead of $E^0|\sigma^1$.

The proof of the theorem is now reduced to showing $\chi^n|E^n$ for all $n \geq 1$.

Next consider $\chi^1|E^1$, which asserts that if $F \in \text{Ext}^1(A, G)$ has $F \equiv 0$, then $F \equiv F' \chi_E$ for some $F'$. To deal with this we must enter into the several-step definition of the congruence relation $F \equiv 0$. We actually prove a little more:

**Lemma 5.3.** For $F \in \text{Ext}^1(A, G)$ and $E \in \text{Ext}^1(C, A)$, the following three properties are equivalent:

(i) $F \equiv F' \chi_E$ for some $F' \in \text{Ext}^1$;

(ii) $E \equiv \sigma_E E'$ for some $E' \in \text{Ext}^1$;

(iii) $F E \equiv 0$.

To prove that (i) implies (ii), write the commutative diagram for the morphism $F \to F'$ defining $F' \chi_E$ as

\[
\begin{array}{c}
F: 0 \to G \to \bullet \xrightarrow{\sigma_E} A \to 0 \\
F': 0 \to G \xrightarrow{\chi_E} \bullet \xrightarrow{\sigma_E} B \to 0
\end{array}
\]

with last column $E$. Here $\mu$ is monic by the square construction for $F' \chi_E$. Insert $\sigma_E \sigma'$ at the dotted arrow. This morphism is proper epic and also in coker $\mu$, by a proof like that for $\sigma \sigma'$ in the previous diagram. The middle column is now a proper short exact sequence $E'$, and the diagram states that $\sigma_E E' = E$, as required. The proof that (ii) implies (i) is dual to this one.

The hypotheses of the lemma ensure that $F E \in \text{Ext}^2(C, G)$ is defined, and (i) implies that $F E \equiv (F' \chi_E) E \equiv F'(\chi_E E) \equiv F'0 = 0$, which is (iii). Dually, (ii) implies (iii). To prove the converse, let $F \not\equiv E$ denote the property of $F$ and $E$ given by the equivalent statements (i) and (ii). Now the zero of $\text{Ext}^2(C, G)$ has the factorization $0 \equiv F_0 \equiv 0$, with

\[
F_0: G \xrightarrow{1} G \to 0, \quad E_0: 0 \to C \xrightarrow{1} C,
\]
and $F_0 \equiv E_0$, since $F_0 = \kappa_{E_0} F'$ with $F': G \to G \oplus C \to C$. Assume $F E \equiv 0$ as in (iii); this congruence is obtained by a finite number $k$ of applications of the associative law $F'(\gamma E') \equiv (F' \gamma) E'$ to $F_0 E_0 = 0$. We now show that $F \equiv E$, by induction on the number $k$ of such applications. Since $F_0 \equiv E_0$, we need only show that $F \gamma \equiv E'$ implies $\gamma \equiv E'$, and conversely by duality. Now, by (ii), $F \gamma \equiv E'$ states that $E' = \sigma_F \gamma E''$ for some $E''$. The diagram defining $F \gamma$,

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
F \gamma: & \bullet & \rightarrow & \bullet \\
\downarrow \sigma_{F \gamma} & & & \downarrow \\
F: & \bullet & \rightarrow & \bullet \\
\end{array}
$$

yields $\gamma \sigma_{F \gamma} = \sigma_F \beta$ for some $\beta$. Therefore $\gamma E' \equiv (\gamma \sigma_{F \gamma}) E'' \equiv \sigma_F (\beta E'')$; by (ii), this states that $F \equiv \gamma E'$. The converse proof uses (i) in place of (ii) for the relation $\equiv$. We have completed the proof that (iii) implies (i) and (ii).

**Lemma 5.4.** Condition (ii) of Lemma 5.3 is equivalent to:

(ii') For some morphism $\alpha$ and some $E'$, $F \alpha \equiv 0$ and $E \equiv E'$.

**Proof.** Since $F \sigma_F \equiv 0$, (ii) implies (ii'). To prove the converse, write $F$ as $G \to D \to A$. For any object $L$, the dual sequence induced by $F$ begins

$$
0 \to \text{hom}(L, G) \to \text{hom}(L, D) \xrightarrow{\sigma_F} \text{hom}(L, A) \xrightarrow{F_*} \text{Ext}^1_{\mathcal{A}}(L, G);
$$

we already know this portion to be exact. Therefore $F \alpha \equiv 0$ with $\alpha: L \to A$ gives $\alpha = \sigma_F \beta$ for some $\beta: L \to D$. Thus, given (ii'), we get $E \equiv \alpha \equiv \sigma_F (\beta E')$, which is (ii) of the Lemma.

These lemmas are the first step of an inductive proof of

**Lemma 5.5.** For $n > 0$, $S \in \text{Ext}^n(A, G)$, and $E \in \text{Ext}^1(C, A)$ the following three properties are equivalent

(i) For some $S' \in \text{Ext}^n$, $S \equiv S' \kappa_E$;

(ii) For some morphism $\alpha$ and some $E'$, $S \alpha \equiv 0$ and $E \equiv a E'$;

(iii) $S \equiv 0$.

The implication (iii) $\Rightarrow$ (i) will show $\kappa^n | E^n$ and complete the proof of the theorem.

To prove that (i) implies (ii), write $S'$ as a composite $TF'$, with $F' \in \text{Ext}^1$. This gives $S \equiv S' \kappa_E \equiv T(F' \kappa_E)$. Apply Lemma 5.3 to $F \equiv F' \kappa_E$ and $E$; it proves $E \equiv \sigma_F \gamma E'$ with $S \sigma_F \equiv T(F \sigma_F) \equiv 0$, which is (ii).

To prove that (ii) implies (i), use the induction assumption. Given $E \equiv \alpha E'$ and $S \alpha \equiv 0$, write $S$ as a composite $T F$ with $T \in \text{Ext}^{n-1}$. Now $T(F \alpha) \equiv 0$, so by induction [(iii) implies (i)] there is a $T' \in \text{Ext}^{n-1}$
with $T \equiv T' \chi_{F'a}$. Thus $S = TF \equiv T'(\chi_{F'a}F)$ and $(\chi_{F'a}F) \chi \equiv \chi_{F'a}(Fa) \equiv 0$, so $(\chi_{F'a}F)E \equiv 0$. By Lemma 5.3 [(iii) implies (i)], this gives $\chi_{F'a}F \equiv F' \chi_E$ for some $F'$, so $S \equiv (T'F') \chi_E$, which is (i).

Both (i) and (ii) imply (iii); to get the converse implications, let $S \# E$ again stand for the relation between $S$ and $E$ given by the equivalent statements (i) and (ii). Then $SE \equiv 0$ implies $S \# E$, by induction on the number of steps in the congruence $SE \equiv 0$, just as in the proof of Lemma 5.3.

Note that the condition (ii) of this lemma may be interpreted to say that the congruence $SE \equiv 0$ may be established by one associativity $SE = S(aE') \equiv (Sa)E'$ involving $E$, with the remaining associativities all applied within $S a$.

Note. The theorem thus proved was established by Buchsbaum [1959]; the above arrangement of the proof is wholly due to Stephen Schanuel (unpublished).

### 6. The Category of Short Exact Sequences

Let $\mathcal{P}$ be a proper class of short exact sequences in an abelian category $\mathcal{A}$. Construct the category $\text{Ses}_\mathcal{P}(\mathcal{A})$ (brief for short exact sequence of $\mathcal{A}$) with

**Objects:** All proper short exact sequences $E = (x, a)$ of $\mathcal{A}$,

**Morphisms** $\Gamma: E \to E'$: All triples $\Gamma = (a, \beta, y)$ of morphisms of $\mathcal{A}$ which yield a commutative diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
E: & 0 \to A \overset{\chi}{\to} B \overset{\sigma}{\to} C \to 0 \\
& \downarrow{\alpha} \downarrow{\beta} \downarrow{y} \\
E': & 0 \to A' \overset{\gamma}{\to} B' \overset{\alpha'}{\to} C' \to 0.
\end{array}
$$

Under the evident composition and addition of morphisms, $\text{Ses}_\mathcal{P}(\mathcal{A})$ is an additive category. However, $\text{Ses}_\mathcal{P}(\mathcal{A})$ is never an abelian category. To see this, note that a morphism $(a, \beta, y)$ with $a = \beta = 0$ necessarily has $y = 0$, for $\gamma a = \sigma' \beta = \sigma' 0 = 0$ with $\sigma$ epic implies $y = 0$. The composition rule $(a, \beta, y)(a', \beta', y') = (aa', \beta \beta', \gamma \gamma')$ shows that $a$ and $\beta$ monic in $\mathcal{A}$ imply $(a, \beta, y)$ monic in $\text{Ses}_\mathcal{P}(\mathcal{A})$. Dually, $\beta$ and $y$ epic in $\mathcal{A}$ imply $(a, \beta, y)$ epic in $\text{Ses}_\mathcal{P}(\mathcal{A})$. For the zero object $0'$ and any object $G \equiv 0'$ in $\mathcal{A}$ construct the morphism $\Gamma = (0, 1, 0)$,

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
0 \to 0' \to G \to G \to 0 \\
\downarrow{0} \downarrow{1} \downarrow{0} \\
0 \to G \to G \to 0' \to 0,
\end{array}
$$

of short exact sequences. Since $0$ and $1$ are monic, $\Gamma$ is monic; since $1$ and $0$ are epic, $\Gamma'$ is epic. But $\Gamma'$ is not an equivalence, as it must be in an abelian category.
Chapter XII. Derived Functors

The cause of this phenomenon is not difficult to see. If we take the "termwise" kernel of this morphism \( \Gamma \), we get the short sequence \( 0' \to 0' \to 0' \) which is not exact; the same applies to the "termwise" cokernel \( G \to 0' \to 0' \). Indeed, the Ker-Coker sequence of Lemma II.5.2 indicates that these two sequences must be put together with \( 1_G: G \to G \) to get an exact sequence. (Using additive relations, one may obtain the ker-coker sequence in any abelian category.)

Now embed \( \text{Ses}_A(\mathcal{A}) \) in the category \( \mathcal{P}(\mathcal{A}) \) with

**Objects:** All diagrams \( D: A \to B \to C \) in \( \mathcal{A} \) (no exactness required),

**Morphisms \( \Gamma: D \to D' \):** All triples \( \Gamma = (\alpha, \beta, \gamma) \) of morphisms of \( \mathcal{A} \) which yield a commutative \( 2 \times 3 \) diagram, as above.

Since \( \mathcal{P}(\mathcal{A}) \) is a category of diagrams in an abelian category, it is abelian; moreover, \( (\alpha, \beta, \gamma) \) is epic in \( \mathcal{P}(\mathcal{A}) \) if and only if \( \alpha, \beta, \) and \( \gamma \) are all epic in \( \mathcal{A} \), and likewise for monics. A short exact sequence \( D' \to D \to D'' \) in \( \mathcal{P}(\mathcal{A}) \) then corresponds to a commutative \( 3 \times 3 \) diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
D' & & D'' \\
A' & \to & B' \to C' \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
D & \to & C \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
D'' & \to & B'' \to C''
\end{array}
\]

in \( \mathcal{A} \), with columns exact in \( \mathcal{A} \). Call \( D' \to D \to D'' \) allowable in \( \mathcal{P}(\mathcal{A}) \) if all rows and columns in this diagram are proper short exact sequences of \( \mathcal{A} \). This defines an allowable class of short exact sequences in \( \mathcal{P}(\mathcal{A}) \), in the sense of IX.4, and hence defines allowable morphisms of \( \mathcal{P}(\mathcal{A}) \).

**Proposition 6.1.** A morphism \( \Gamma = (\alpha, \beta, \gamma): D \to D'' \) of \( \mathcal{P}(\mathcal{A}) \) is an allowable epic [an allowable monic] of \( \mathcal{P}(\mathcal{A}) \) if and only if \( D \) and \( D'' \) are proper short exact sequences of \( \mathcal{A} \) and \( \alpha, \beta, \) and \( \gamma \) are proper epics of \( \mathcal{A} \) [respectively, proper monics of \( \mathcal{A} \)].

**Proof.** The condition is clearly necessary. Conversely, given \( \alpha, \beta, \) and \( \gamma \) proper epic, form the \( 3 \times 3 \) diagram with second and third rows \( D \) and \( D'' \), first row the kernels of \( \alpha, \beta, \) and \( \gamma \) with morphisms induced by those of \( D \). By the \( 3 \times 3 \) lemma, the first row is short exact; by the axiom (P-4), the first row is proper. Hence all rows and columns are proper exact, so \( \Gamma \) is allowable.

Now "proper" projectives are defined as were "allowable" projectives (IX.4). Given a proper class \( \mathcal{P} \), an object \( P \) of \( \mathcal{A} \) is called a proper projective for \( \mathcal{P} \) if it has the usual lifting properties for the proper epics;
that is, if each proper epic \(\sigma: B \to C\) induces an epimorphism \(\text{Hom}(P, B) \to \text{Hom}(P, C)\). We say that there are enough proper projectives if to each object \(A\) there is a proper epic \(\tau: P \to A\) with \(P\) proper projective.

**Theorem 6.2.** If \(P\) and \(Q\) are proper projective objects of the abelian category \(\mathcal{A}\), then \(F: P \to P \oplus Q \to Q\) is an allowable projective object in \(\mathcal{S}(\mathcal{A})\).

**Proof.** Given any commutative diagram in \(\mathcal{A}\),

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
F: & 0 & \to P \xrightarrow{\xi} P \oplus Q \xrightarrow{\eta} Q \to 0 \\
\downarrow & \downarrow & \downarrow \\
E': & 0 & \to A' \xrightarrow{x} B' \xrightarrow{\sigma} C' \to 0 \\
\uparrow & \uparrow & \uparrow \\
F: & 0 & \to A \xrightarrow{x} B \xrightarrow{\sigma} C \to 0
\end{array}
\]

with exact rows and \(F: E \to E'\) allowable epic, we are required to find a morphism \(Z': F \to E\) of the first row to the third so that \(FG' = Z: F \to E\). By Prop. 6.1, \(\alpha, \beta, \) and \(\gamma\) are proper epic in \(\mathcal{A}\); thus \(\gamma \sigma \) is proper epic. Since \(P\) and \(Q\) are proper projectives in \(\mathcal{A}\), \(\xi\) can be lifted to \(\xi': P + A\) with \(\alpha \xi' = \xi\) and \(\xi\) to \(\alpha: Q \to B\) with \(\gamma \sigma \omega = \xi\). Take \(\iota_2: Q \to P \oplus Q\). Now \(\sigma'(\beta \omega - \eta \iota_2) = \gamma \sigma \omega - \xi \iota_2 \iota_2 = \xi - \xi = 0\), so \(\beta \omega - \eta \iota_2\) factors through \(\beta \iota_2 \ker \sigma'\) as \(\beta \omega - \eta \iota_2 = \xi' \omega'\), for some \(\omega': Q \to A'\). Since \(\alpha\) is proper epic and \(Q\) proper projective in \(\mathcal{A}\), \(\omega'\) lifts to \(\psi: Q \to A\) with \(a \psi = \omega'\), and

\[
\beta \omega - \eta \iota_2 = \xi' \alpha \psi = \beta \xi \psi.
\]

Define \(\eta': PCB \to B\) and \(\zeta': Q \to C\), using \(\pi_1: P \oplus Q \to P\), by

\[
\eta' = \kappa \xi' \pi_1 + (\omega - \kappa \psi) \pi_2, \quad \zeta' = \sigma \omega.
\]

Then \(Z' = (\xi', \eta', \zeta')\): \(F \to E\) is the required morphism.

We now show that there are enough allowable projectives, not for all the objects of \(\mathcal{S}(\mathcal{A})\), but for the objects in \(\text{Ses}_{\mathcal{A}}(\mathcal{A}) < \mathcal{S}(\mathcal{A})\).

**Theorem 6.3.** If the abelian category \(\mathcal{A}\) has enough proper projectives, then to each proper short exact sequence \(E: A \to B \to C\) of \(\mathcal{A}\) there is an allowable projective \(F\) and an allowable epic \(Z = (\xi, \eta, \zeta): F \to E\) of \(\mathcal{S}(\mathcal{A})\).

We will construct an \(F\) of the form given by Thm. 6.2. Since \(\mathcal{A}\) has enough proper projectives, we can find proper projectives \(P\) and \(Q\) and proper epics \(\xi: P \to A\), \(\omega: Q \to B\). The composite \(\zeta = \sigma \omega: Q \to C\) is proper epic, while \(\eta = \kappa \xi \pi_1 + \omega \pi_2: P \oplus Q \to B\) provides a morphism \(Z = (\xi, \eta, \zeta): F \to E\). But \(\xi\) and \(\zeta\) epic, by the short Five Lemma, imply \(\eta\) epic. Hence \(Z\) is allowable by Prop. 6.1, provided only that \(\eta\) is proper.
But \( \eta \) is determined by \( \eta_1 = \kappa \xi, \eta_2 = \omega \), so may be written as the composite
\[
P \oplus Q \xrightarrow{\xi \oplus \omega} A \oplus B \xrightarrow{\kappa \oplus 1} B \oplus B \xrightarrow{v_B} B.
\]
Both factors \( \xi \oplus \omega \) and \( V_B(\kappa \oplus 1) \) are proper epics, the latter because it is equivalent to the (proper) projection \( \pi_2 \) of a direct sum, as in the diagram
\[
\begin{align*}
A \oplus B & \xrightarrow{V_B(\kappa \oplus 1)} B \\
\phi & \uparrow \psi \\
A \oplus B & \xrightarrow{\pi_2} B
\end{align*}
\]
with \( \phi \) and \( \psi \) automorphisms of \( A \oplus B \) defined by
\[
\begin{align*}
\pi_1 \phi \iota_1 &= 1, & \pi_1 \phi \iota_2 &= 0, & \pi_2 \phi \iota_1 &= -\kappa, & \pi_2 \phi \iota_2 &= 1; \\
\pi_1 \psi \iota_1 &= 1, & \pi_1 \psi \iota_2 &= 0, & \pi_2 \psi \iota_1 &= \kappa, & \pi_2 \psi \iota_2 &= 1;
\end{align*}
\]
(with elements, \( \phi(a, b) = (a, b - \kappa a) \) and \( \psi(a, b) = (a, b + \kappa a) \)). The proof is complete.

This theorem constructs allowable projective resolutions:

**Theorem 6.4.** Let \( \mathcal{P} \) be a proper class of short exact sequences in the abelian category \( \mathcal{A} \). To each proper short exact sequence \( E \) of \( \mathcal{A} \) there is an allowable projective resolution \( \varepsilon: K \to E \) in \( \mathcal{A}(\mathcal{A}) \), represented by a commutative diagram
\[
\cdots \to X_n \to X_{n-1} \to \cdots \to X_0 \to A \to 0 \\
\downarrow \quad \downarrow \quad \downarrow \\
\cdots \to W_n \to W_{n-1} \to \cdots \to W_0 \to B \to 0 \tag{6.1}
\]
in \( \mathcal{A} \), with each row a proper projective resolution in \( \mathcal{A} \), each column of \( K \) a proper short exact sequence (of proper projective objects) in \( \mathcal{A} \), and each \( W_n = X_n \oplus Y_n \).

**Proof.** Thm.6.3 constructs \( \varepsilon: K \to E \) by recursion, with each \( K_n \) an allowable projective of \( \mathcal{A}(\mathcal{A}) \) of the form \( F \) of Thm.6.2. Thus \( K_n \) is a proper short exact sequence \( X_n \to W_n \to Y_n \) with \( X_n, W_n, \) and \( Y_n \) proper projective (and \( W_n = X_n \oplus Y_n \)). Each \( \partial: K \to K_{n-1} \) and \( \varepsilon: K_0 \to E \) is an allowable morphism of \( \mathcal{A}(\mathcal{A}) \), so the rows of the diagram above are exact and proper in \( \mathcal{A} \). Observe that \( K \) may be regarded either as a complex of short exact sequences, or as a short exact sequence \( X \to W \to Y \) of complexes of \( \mathcal{A} \). Observe also that \( X \to W \to Y \), though split as a sequence of graded objects, need not be split as a sequence of complexes (= graded objects with boundary \( \partial \)).
Exercises

1. If $\mathcal{A}$ is the category of all left $R$-modules, show that every monic in $\text{Ses}(\mathcal{A})$ has a cokernel in $\text{Ses}(\mathcal{A})$, and dually. (Use the Ker-coker sequence.)

2. A morphism $\Gamma = (\alpha, \beta, y): D \to D'$ is allowable in $\mathcal{S}(\mathcal{A})$ if and only if $D$ and $D'$ are proper short exact sequences of $\mathcal{A}$ and the induced map $\ker \beta \to \ker y$ is proper epic in $\mathcal{A}$ (or, dually, the induced map $\text{coker} \alpha \to \text{coker} \beta$ is proper monic in $\mathcal{A}$).

7. Connected Pairs of Additive Functors

The systematic treatment of functors $T: \mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{R}$ in the next sections (§§7—9) will assume

(i) $\mathcal{A}$ is an abelian category,

(ii) $\mathcal{P}$ is a proper class of short exact sequences in $\mathcal{A}$,

(iii) $\mathcal{R}$ is a selective abelian category (IX.2).

This formulation includes both relative homological algebra (e.g., with $\mathcal{P}$ the class of suitably split exact sequences) and 'absolute' homological algebra, with $\mathcal{P}$ all short exact sequences in $\mathcal{A}$. In $\mathcal{R}$ we use the class of all short exact sequences. For the applications intended, $\mathcal{R}$ might as well be the category of all modules over some ring or algebra.

An additive functor $T: \mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{R}$ is a functor (covariant or contravariant) with $T(\alpha + \beta) = T(\alpha) + T(\beta)$ whenever $\alpha + \beta$ is defined. This condition implies $T(0) = 0$, $T(-\alpha) = -T(\alpha)$, and $T(A \oplus B) = T(A) \oplus T(B)$. Henceforth we assume: all functors are additive.

Study the effect of a covariant $T$ upon all the proper short exact sequences $(x, o): A \to B \to C$ of $\mathcal{A}$. Call $T$

9-exact if every $0 \to T(A) \to T(B) \to T(C) \to 0$ is exact in $\mathcal{R}$,

right $\mathcal{P}$-exact if every $T(A) \to T(B) \to T(C) \to 0$ is exact,

left 9-exact if every $0 \to T(A) \to T(B) \to T(C)$ is exact,

half 9-exact if every $T(A) \to T(B) \to T(C)$ is exact.

If $T$ is 9-exact, it carries proper monics to monics, proper epics to epics, and proper long exact sequences to long exact sequences. Moreover, for any proper morphism $\alpha$, a $\mathcal{P}$-exact functor has

$$
\begin{align*}
T(\ker \alpha) &= \ker(T \alpha), \\
T(\text{im} \alpha) &= \text{im}(T \alpha), \\
T(\text{coker} \alpha) &= \text{coker}(T \alpha), \\
T(\text{coima} \alpha) &= \text{coim}(T \alpha).
\end{align*}
$$

Right exact functors can be described in several equivalent ways. By a proper right exact sequence in the category $\mathcal{A}$ we mean a sequence $(\alpha, \sigma): D \to B \to C \to 0$ exact at $B$ and $C$ with $\alpha$ and $\sigma$ proper.
Lemma 7.1. A covariant additive functor \( T \) is right \( \mathcal{R} \)-exact if and only if either

(i) \( T \) carries proper right exact sequences in \( \mathcal{A} \) to right exact sequences in \( \mathcal{W} \), or

(ii) \( T(\text{coker } a) = \text{coker } (Ta) \) for every proper \( a \) in \( \mathcal{A} \).

Proof. Since \( \text{coker } a = 0 \) states that \((a, 0)\) is a right exact sequence, (i) and (ii) are equivalent, and imply \( T \) right \( \mathcal{P} \)-exact. Conversely, let \( T \) be right \( \mathcal{P} \)-exact. Each proper right exact sequence \( \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{C} \rightarrow 0 \) in \( \mathcal{A} \) yields two proper short exact sequences

\[
\begin{array}{c}
K \\
\downarrow \\
D \\
\downarrow \\
0 \rightarrow A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C \rightarrow 0;
\end{array}
\]

\( T \) carries each to a right exact sequence in \( \mathcal{R} \), so \( T(D) \rightarrow T(B) \rightarrow T(C) \) is right-exact.

Similarly, \( T \) is left \( \mathcal{R} \)-exact if and only if \( T(\text{ker } a) = \text{ker } (Ta) \) for a proper.

If \( T: \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{R} \) is a contravariant functor, then, for all proper short exact sequences \( A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C \) of \( \mathcal{A} \), \( T \) is

9-exact if every \( 0 \rightarrow T(C) \rightarrow T(B) \rightarrow T(A) \rightarrow 0 \) is exact in \( \mathcal{R} \),
right \( \mathcal{P} \)-exact if every \( T(C) \rightarrow T(B) \rightarrow T(A) \rightarrow 0 \) is exact,
left 9-exact if every \( 0 \rightarrow T(C) \rightarrow T(B) \rightarrow T(A) \) is exact,
half 9-exact if every \( T(C) \rightarrow T(B) \rightarrow T(A) \) is exact.

The analogue of Lemma 7.1 holds; in particular, \( T \) is right 9-exact if and only if it carries each proper left exact sequence in \( \mathcal{A} \) into a right exact sequence in \( \mathcal{R} \).

A 9-connected pair \((S, E, T)\) of covariant functors is a pair of functors \( S, T: \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{R} \) together with a function which assigns to each proper exact \( E: A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C \) in \( \mathcal{A} \) a morphism \( E*: S(C) \rightarrow T(A) \) of \( \mathcal{R} \) such that each morphism \((a, \beta, \gamma): E + E \) of proper short exact sequences yields a commutative diagram

\[
\begin{array}{c}
S(C) \xrightarrow{E*} T(A) \\
\downarrow^{S(y)} \quad \quad \downarrow^{T(x)} \\
S(C') \xrightarrow{E*} T(A'),
\end{array}
\]

in the indicated category \( \mathcal{R} \). Call \( E* \) the connecting morphism of the pair. The condition (7.2) states that \( E* \) is a natural transformation of
functors of $E$. This condition may be replaced by three separate requirements:

If $E$ is congruent to $E'$, $E, = E'_*, \quad (7.2a)$
If $\gamma: C' \to C$, then $(E \gamma)_* = E_* \gamma_*, \quad \gamma_* = S(\gamma), \quad (7.2b)$
If $a: A \to A'$, then $(a E)_* = \alpha_* E_*, \quad \alpha_* = T(\alpha). \quad (7.2c)$

Indeed, (7.2) with $a = 1$ and $\gamma = 1$ gives (a). If $(1, \beta, y): E \to E'$, then $E'y$ is by definition $E$, so (7.2) gives (b). Dually, (7.2) with $\gamma = 1$ gives (c).

Conversely, given (a), (b), and (c) with $(a, \beta, \gamma): E \to E'$, the congruence $\alpha E \equiv E'y$ of Prop. III.1.8 gives (7.2).

If $E_0$ splits, then $(E_0)_* = 0$. For, if $E_0$ splits, the morphism $(1_A, \pi_1, 0)$ maps $E_0$ to the sequence $A \to A \to 0$. Since $S$ is additive, $S(0) = 0$, so (7.2) gives $0 = S(0) = T(1)(E_0)_* = (E_0)_*$.

For each proper $E$: $A \to B \to C$, the long sequence

$$S(A) \xrightarrow{S(*)} S(B) \xrightarrow{S(\sigma)} S(C) \xrightarrow{E_*} T(A) \xrightarrow{T(*)} T(B) \xrightarrow{T(\sigma)} T(C) \quad (7.3)$$

is a complex in $\mathcal{R}$ (the composite of any two successive maps is zero) and a functor of $E$. Indeed, write $E = (x, a)$; both $\pi E$ and $E\sigma$ split, so $T(\pi)E_* = 0$ and $E_* S(\sigma) = 0$, while $S(\sigma) S(\pi) = S(\sigma \pi) = S(0) = 0$.

For example, if $\mathcal{A}$ is the category of $R$-modules, with $\mathcal{P}$ all short exact sequences, the functors $S(A) = \text{Tor}_n(\cdot, A)$ and $T(A) = \text{Tor}_n(\cdot, A)$ for fixed $G$ and $n$ constitute a connected pair with the usual connecting homomorphism.

A morphism $(f, g): (S', E', T') \to (S, E, T)$ of connected pairs is a pair of natural transformations $f: S' \to S$, $g: T' \to T$ of functors on $\mathcal{A}$ such that the diagram

$$S'(C) \xrightarrow{E'_*} T'(A) \xrightarrow{f(A)} S(C) \xrightarrow{E_*} T(A), \quad \mathcal{R}, \quad (7.4)$$

is commutative for each proper $E$. In other words, a morphism $(f, g)$ assigns to each $A$ morphisms $f(A): S'(A) \to S(A)$ and $g(A): T'(A) \to T(A)$ of $\mathcal{R}$ which taken together form a chain transformation of the complexes (7.3). These conditions on $f$ and $g$ may be summarized as

$$f \alpha_# = \alpha_* f, \quad g \alpha'_# = E_* f, \quad g \alpha_# = \alpha_* g, \quad (7.4a)$$

where $\alpha_#$ is short for $S'(\alpha)$ or $T'(\alpha)$, $\alpha_*$ short for $S(\alpha)$ or $T(\alpha)$.

A connected pair $(S, E, T)$ is left $\mathcal{P}$-couniversal if to each connected pair $(S', E', T')$ and each natural $g$: $T' \to T$ there is a unique $f$: $S' \to S$ such that $(f, g)$ is a morphism of connected pairs. Briefly, $(S, E, T)$ left-couniversal means: Given $g$, (7.4) can be filled in with a unique
natural \( f \). Similarly, \((S, E, T)\) right 8-couniversal means that to a given \( f \) there is a unique \( g \). Also, \((S', E\# , T')\) is right 8-universal if, given \((S, E, T)\) and \( f \), there is a unique \( g \) which satisfies (7.4).

Given \( T \), the usual argument shows that there is at most one left couniversal pair \((S, E, T)\) up to a natural equivalence of \( S \). This pair — and, by abuse of language, this functor \( S \) — is called the left satellite of \( T \). Note the curious fact that if \((S, E, T)\) is the left satellite, so is \((S, -E, T)\) — just change the signs of every \( E \), and \( f \) in (7.4).

**Theorem 7.2.** If \( \mathcal{A} \) has enough proper projectives, the following conditions on a 9-connected pair \((S, E, T)\) of covariant functors are equivalent:

(i) \((S, E, T)\) is left 9-couniversal,

(ii) For each proper short exact sequence \( K \rightarrowtail P \twoheadrightarrow C \) the sequence

\[
0 \rightarrow S(C) \rightarrow T(K) \rightarrow T(P), \quad \mathcal{R},
\]

is left exact whenever \( P \) is proper projective.

Since there are enough projectives, there is for each object \( C \) of \( \mathcal{A} \) a proper epic \( a : P \twoheadrightarrow C \) with \( P \) a proper projective; this gives a proper exact sequence

\[
E_C : 0 \rightarrow K \rightarrowtail P \twoheadrightarrow C \rightarrow 0, \quad \kappa = \kappa_C. \tag{7.6}
\]

It is the first step in the construction of a proper projective resolution of \( C \); we call it a short projective resolution.

To prove that (ii) implies (i) we must construct \( f \) to a given \( g \) in (7.4). For \( E = E_C \) the commutative diagram:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
S'(P) & \rightarrow & S'(C) \\
\downarrow f(C) & & \downarrow f(C) \\
T'(K) & \rightarrow & T'(P)
\end{array}
\quad \Rightarrow
\begin{array}{ccc}
& & \\
& \downarrow g(K) & \\
T(K) & \rightarrow & T(P)
\end{array}
\]

with top row a complex, has its bottom row exact, by hypothesis. Hence \( E \) is monic, so that \( f(C) \), if it exists, is unique. On the other hand, \( T(\kappa) g(K) E\# = g(P) T'(\kappa) E\# = 0 \), so \( g(K) E\# \) factors through \( E \), \( \in \ker(T(\kappa)) \) as \( g(K) E\# = E \), \( \xi \) for some unique \( \xi : S'(C) \twoheadrightarrow S(C) \). Take \( f(C) = \xi \). This fills in the dotted arrow to make the diagram commute.

Now take any proper short exact sequence \( E' = (x', a') : A' \rightarrow B' \rightarrow C' \) and any morphism \( y : C \rightarrow C' \) of \( \mathcal{A} \). The diagram

\[
E : 0 \rightarrow K \rightarrowtail P \twoheadrightarrow C \rightarrow 0 \\
\downarrow y
\]

\[
E' : 0 \rightarrow A' \rightarrowtail B' \twoheadrightarrow C' \rightarrow 0, \quad \mathcal{A}. \tag{7.8}
\]
7. Connected Pairs of Additive Functors

in $\mathcal{A}$ has $P$ proper projective, so may be filled in (comparison theorem!) to give a morphism $(a, \beta, y): E \to E'$. We claim that

$$E'_* S(y) f(C) = g(A') E'_* S'(y): S'(C) \to T(A'), \quad \mathcal{R}.$$  \hfill (7.9)

Indeed, $\alpha E = E' y$ and, in the notation $(7.4a), E'_* \gamma f = \alpha_* E_* f = a, g E'_* = g \alpha E \# = g E'_* \gamma \#$. We specialize this result (7.9) in two ways.

First, let $y: C \to C'$ be any morphism of $\mathcal{A}$. Choose for $E'$ the short projective resolution $E_C'$ used to define $f(C')$ by $g(K') E'_* f = E'_* f(C')$, as in (7.7). Then $A' = K'$ and $E'_* f$ is monic, so (7.9) gives $S(y) f(C) = f(C') S'(y)$. This asserts that $f': S' \to S$ is natural. With $C = C'$ and $y = 1$, it shows that $f(C)$ is independent of the choice of $E_C'$.

Second, let $E'$ be any proper short exact sequence ending in $C' = C$. Take $y = 1$. Then (7.9) becomes $E'_* f(C) = g(A') E'_*$, which states that $f$ and $g$ commute with the connecting homomorphisms and hence, as in (7.4), constitute a morphism $(S', E'_*, T') \to (S, E, T)$ of pairs.

Before proving the converse, note that (7.7) suggests that $S(C)$ might be defined as the kernel of $T(K) \to T(P)$. Regard each proper short exact sequence $E: A \to B \to C$ as a complex in $\mathcal{A}$, say in dimensions 1, 0, and $-1$. Then $T(E): T(A) \to T(B) \to T(C)$ is a complex in $\mathcal{R}$; its one dimensional homology $H_1(T(E))$ is the (selected) object of $\mathcal{R}$ which makes

$$0 \to H_1(T(E)) \to H_1(T(A)) \to H_1(T(B)), \quad \mathcal{R},$$  \hfill (7.10)

exact. Each morphism $\Gamma = (a, \beta, \gamma): E \to E'$ of proper short exact sequences in $\mathcal{A}$ gives a chain transformation $T(\Gamma): T(E) \to T(E')$ and hence induces a morphism

$$H_1(\Gamma): H_1(T(E)) \to H_1(T(E'))$$  \hfill \(\mathcal{R}\),

which is characterized by $\mu' H_1(\Gamma) = T(\alpha) \mu$. Moreover $H_1(\Gamma)$ depends only on $\gamma, E$, and $E'$, and not on $a$ and $\beta$. For, let $\Gamma_0 = (a_0, \beta_0, y): E \to E'$ be any other morphism with the same $y$. In the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
0 & \to & A \xrightarrow{\beta} B \xrightarrow{\alpha} C \\
\alpha - \alpha_0 & \downarrow s & \downarrow \beta - \beta_0 \\
0 & \to & A' \xrightarrow{\beta'} B' \xrightarrow{\alpha'} C', \quad \mathcal{A},
\end{array}$$

$s'(\beta - \beta_0) = 0$, so $\beta - \beta_0 = x'$ for some $s$: $B \to A'$. Also $x'(\alpha - \alpha_0) = (\beta - \beta_0) x = x' s x$, so all told $s = \alpha - \alpha_0, x' s = \beta - \beta_0$. Thus $s$ is a homotopy $\Gamma \simeq \Gamma_0$. Since $T$ is additive, $T(s)$ is a homotopy $T(\Gamma) \simeq T(\Gamma_0): T(E) \to T(E')$, so $H_1(\Gamma) = H_1(\Gamma_0)$. Now there exists:

To each object $C$ of $\mathcal{A}$ a short projective resolution $E_C$.

To each $y: C \to C'$ in $\mathcal{A}$ a morphism $\Gamma_y = (-, -): E_C \to E_{C'}$.

To each proper exact $E$ in $\mathcal{A}$ a morphism $\Lambda_E = (-, -): E_C \to E$. 
We now have

**Lemma 7.3.** Given \( T: \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{R} \) covariant and the data above,

\[
S(C) = H_1(T(E_C)), \quad S(\gamma) = H_1(T_\gamma): S(C) \rightarrow S(C')
\]

define a covariant additive functor \( S: \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{R} \), while, for \( \mu \) as in (7.10),

\[
E_* = \mu H_1(A_E): S(C) \rightarrow T(A)
\]
defines a natural transformation which makes \( (S, E, T) \) a 9-connected pair satisfying (ii) of Thm. 7.2.

**Proof.** By the observation on \( H_1(\Gamma) \), \( S(C) \) is independent of the choice of \( E_C \). Also \( S(I) = I \); by composition, \( S(\gamma_1 \gamma_2) = S(\gamma_1) S(\gamma_2) \).

If \( \Gamma = (a, \beta, y): E \rightarrow E' \) is a morphism of proper short exact sequences, \( \Gamma A_R \) and \( A_E. \Gamma_y: E_C \rightarrow E' \) agree at \( y \), so \( E \) is natural. Property (ii) holds by construction.

This proves that (i) implies (ii) in the theorem, for any left couniversal \( (S_0, E_\#, T) \) must agree with the one so constructed, which does satisfy (ii). This construction also gives an existence theorem:

**Theorem 7.4.** If \( \mathcal{A} \) has enough proper projectives, each covariant additive functor \( T: \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{R} \) has a left satellite \( (S, E, T) \).

**Corollary 7.5.** Let \( (S, E, T) \) be a 9-connected pair. If to each \( \mathcal{P} \)-connected pair \( (S', E_\#, T) \) with the same \( T \) there is a unique natural transformation \( \hat{\phi}: S' \rightarrow S \) such that \( (\hat{\phi}, I): (S', E_\#, T) \rightarrow (S, E, T) \) is a morphism of pairs, then \( (S, E, T) \) is left-\( \mathcal{P} \)-couniversal.

**Proof.** Use the hypotheses to compare \( (S, E, T) \) to the left satellite of \( T \), which is known to exist and to be couniversal.

The dual of Thm. 7.2 is

**Theorem 7.6.** If \( \mathcal{A} \) has enough proper injectives, then a \( \mathcal{P} \)-connected pair \( (T, E, S) \) of covariant functors is right 9-universal if and only if each proper short exact sequence

\[
0 \rightarrow C \rightarrow J \rightarrow K \rightarrow 0, \quad \mathcal{A},
\]

with \( J \) proper injective induces a right exact sequence

\[
T(J) \rightarrow T(K) \rightarrow S(C) \rightarrow 0, \quad \mathcal{R}.
\]

Moreover, given \( T \), the \( S \) with this property is uniquely determined; it is called the right satellite of \( T \). Each \( T \) thus has a left satellite (co-universal) and a right satellite (universal).
Proof. Dualization reverses all arrows, both in \( \mathcal{A} \) and in \( \mathcal{W} \), replaces "projective" by "injective", gives \( E_* \) from \( T \) to \( S \), and leaves \( T \) and \( S \) covariant.

A \( \mathcal{P} \)-connected pair \((T, E^*, S)\) of contravariant functors consists of two such functors \( T, S : \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{B} \) and a function which assigns to each proper short exact \( E : A \rightarrowtail B \twoheadrightarrow C \) in \( \mathcal{A} \) a complex

\[
T(C) \rightarrow T(B) \rightarrow T(A) \xrightarrow{E^*} S(C) \rightarrow S(B) \rightarrow S(A),
\]
which is a functor of \( E \). The pair is right universal if and only if to each natural \( f : T \rightarrowtail T' \) and each connected pair \((T', E^{#}, S')\), there is a unique \( g : S \rightarrow S' \) such that \((f, g)\) is a morphism of pairs.

Theorem 7.7. In the presence of enough proper projectives, the contravariant pair \((T, E^*, S)\) is right \( \mathcal{P} \)-universal if and only if each proper \( K \twoheadrightarrow P \rightarrowtail C \) with \( P \) proper projective induces an exact sequence

\[
T(P) \rightarrow T(K) \rightarrow S(C) \rightarrow 0,
\]

Example: For \( D \) a fixed module, \( T(C) = \text{Ext}^n(C, D), S(C) = \text{Ext}^{n+1}(C, D) \).

Proof. This reduces to the previous result if we replace \( \mathcal{A} \) by the opposite category \( \mathcal{A}^{\text{op}} \). Recall (1.7) that \( \mathcal{A}^{\text{op}} \) has an object \( A^* \) for each object \( A \) of \( \mathcal{A} \) and a morphism \( a^* : B^* \rightarrow A^* \) for each \( a : A \rightarrow B \) in \( \mathcal{A} \), with \( (\alpha \beta)^* = \beta^* \alpha^* \). Thus monics in \( \mathcal{A} \) become epic in \( \mathcal{A}^{\text{op}}, \) the opposite of an abelian category is abelian, and the opposites of a proper class \( \mathcal{P} \) of short exact sequences of \( \mathcal{A} \) constitute a proper class in \( \mathcal{A}^{\text{op}} \). Each covariant \( T : \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{R} \) gives a contravariant \( T^* : \mathcal{A}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathcal{R} \) with \( T^*(A^*) = T(A) \). Moreover, "enough injectives" becomes "enough projective~". All arrows in \&-diagrams are reversed, those in \( \mathcal{W} \)-diagrams stay put, and Thm. 7.6 becomes Thm. 7.7.

A similar replacement in Thm. 7.2 shows that a contravariant pair \((S, E^*, T)\) is left couniversal if and only if \( 0 \rightarrow S(C) \rightarrow T(K) \rightarrow T(J) \) is exact for each \( C \rightarrowtail J \rightarrow K \). Then \( S \) is a left satellite of \( T \).

Exercises

1. Call a diagram \( A_1 \rightarrow A_2 \xleftarrow{B} A_3 \) "cartesian" if it satisfies the usual direct sum identities \( \pi_1 \pi_1 = 1 = \pi_2 \pi_2 \) and \( \pi_1 \pi_1 + \pi_2 \pi_2 = 1 \). Prove that an additive functor takes every cartesian diagram into a cartesian diagram, and, conversely, that any functor with this property is additive.

2. Let \( T : \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{R} \), not assumed to be additive, be half \( \mathcal{P} \)-exact. Prove it additive (cf. Ex. 4 and Prop. 1.4.2).

3. If \( T \) is covariant and left \( \mathcal{P} \)-exact, show its left satellite zero.

4. If \((S, E^*, T)\) is left couniversal and \( T \) half \( \mathcal{P} \)-exact and covariant, prove (7.3) exact, provided has \( \mathcal{A} \) enough proper projectives.

5. Derive Thm. 7.6 from Thm. 7.2 by replacing both \( \mathcal{A} \) and \( \mathcal{R} \) by their opposites.

Mac Lane, Homology 25
8. Connected Sequences of Functors

A $\mathcal{P}$-connected sequence $\{T_n, E_n\}$ of covariant functors is a sequence $(\ldots, T_i, E_n, T_{n-1}, E_{n-1}, \ldots)$ of functors $T_n: \mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{B}$ in which each pair $(T_n, E_n, T_{n-1})$ is $\mathcal{P}$-connected; in other words, such a sequence assigns to each proper short exact $E$ of $\mathcal{A}$ a complex

$$\cdots \to T_{n+1}(C) \xrightarrow{E_{n+1}} T_n(A) \to T_n(B) \to T_n(C) \xrightarrow{E_n} T_{n-1}(A) \to \cdots$$  \hspace{1cm} (8.1)$$

which is a covariant functor of $E$. The sequence is positive if $T_n = 0$ for $n < 0$ or negative if $T_n = 0$ for $n > 0$; in the latter case we usually use upper indices.

Positive connected sequences may be described more directly in terms of graded additive categories. Recall (Thm. 4.4) that $\mathcal{A}$ can be enlarged to a graded additive category $\mathcal{B}(\mathcal{A})$ with the same objects and with the elements of $\text{Ext}^*_{\mathcal{B}}(C, A)$ regarded as the morphisms of degree $n$ from $C$ to $A$. From the range category $\mathcal{B}$ we can construct the category $\mathcal{B}^+$ of graded objects of $\mathcal{B}$, with morphisms of negative degrees. In detail, an object $R$ of $\mathcal{B}^+$ is a family $\{R_n\}$ of objects of $\mathcal{B}$, with $R_n = 0'$ for $n < 0$; while an element of $\text{hom}^k(R, R')$ is a morphism $\mu: R \to R'$ of degree $-k$; that is, a family of morphisms $\{\mu_n: R_n \to R'_n\}$ of $\mathcal{B}$, with the evident composition. Then $\mathcal{B}^+$ is a graded additive category. If $\mathcal{B}$ is the category of modules over some ring, $\mathcal{B}^+$ is the category of graded modules over the same ring, with morphisms of negative degrees.

For graded categories, functors are defined as usual, with supplementary attention to the degrees of morphisms. Thus if $\mathcal{G}$ and $\mathcal{G}'$ are graded additive categories, a covariant functor $S: \mathcal{G} \to \mathcal{H}$ assigns to each object $G$ of $\mathcal{G}$ an object $S(G)$ of $\mathcal{H}$ and to each morphism $y: G_1 \to G_2$ of degree $d$ in $\mathcal{G}$ a morphism $S(y): S(G_1) \to S(G_2)$ of the same degree in $\mathcal{H}$, with the usual conditions $S(1_G) = 1_{S(G)}$ and $S(\gamma_1 \gamma_2) = S(\gamma_1) S(\gamma_2)$ whenever $\gamma_1 \gamma_2$ is defined. The functor $S$ is additive if $S(\gamma_1 + \gamma_2) = S(\gamma_1) + S(\gamma_2)$ whenever $\gamma_1 + \gamma_2$ is defined. A natural transformation $\xi: \mathcal{G} \to \mathcal{H}$ of degree $d$ is a function which assigns to each $G \in \mathcal{G}$ a morphism $\xi(G): \mathcal{G}'(G) \to \mathcal{H}(G)$ of degree $d$ in $\mathcal{H}$ such that

$$\xi(\gamma) \xi(G_1) = (-1)^{\text{deg} y} \xi(G_2) \xi'(\gamma)$$

for each $y: G_1 \to G_2$ in $\mathcal{G}$.

In particular, consider such functors on $\mathcal{E}_\mathcal{B}(\mathcal{A})$ to $\mathcal{B}^+$.

**Proposition 8.1.** There is a 1-1 correspondence between covariant additive functors $\xi: \mathcal{E}_\mathcal{B}(\mathcal{A}) \to \mathcal{B}^+$ and positive $\mathcal{P}$-connected sequences $\{T_n, E_n\}$ of covariant additive functors $T_n: \mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{B}$. 
8. Connected Sequences of Functors

Proof. Let \( S : \mathcal{D}(A)+W+ \) be given. The object function of \( S \) assigns to each object \( A \) an object \( \{T_n(A)\} \) of \( W+ \). The mapping function of \( S \) assigns to each morphism \( a: A \to A' \) of \( A \) is a morphism of degree 0 in \( \mathcal{D}(A) \), so \( S \) assigns a family of morphisms \( \{T_n(a): T_n(A) \to T_n(A')\} \) of \( W \); these make each \( T_n \) an additive functor \( T_n: A \to R \). Moreover, each proper \( E: A \to B+C \) in \( \mathcal{D} \) is a morphism of degree 1 in \( W \); that is, a family of morphisms \( \{E_n=T_n(E): T_n(C) \to T_n(A)\} \) in \( W \). The composition rules \( S(Ey)=S(E)S(y) \) and \( S(aE)=S(a)S(E) \) show that these morphisms \( E \), satisfy the conditions (7.2a), (7.2b), (7.2c) which make \( (T_n, E_n, T_{n-1}) \) a connected pair. Thus \( S \) determines a positive 8-connected sequence of functors \( \{T_n: A \to R\} \).

Conversely, each such connected sequence of functors determines the object function \( S(A)=\{T_n(A)\} \) and the mapping functions \( S(a), S(E) \) for morphisms of degree 0 and 1 in \( \mathcal{D} \). Now a morphism of higher degree in \( \mathcal{D} \) is just a congruence class of long exact sequences \( S \). Each such is the Yoneda composite of short exact sequences \( E \), so the \( S(E) \) determine each \( S(S) \); the rules (7.2b) and (7.2c) show that two congruent long exact sequences have the same \( S(S) \); indeed, this \( S(S) \) is the "iterated connecting homomorphism" determined by the long exact sequence \( S \). Finally, to show this functor \( S \) additive we must prove that \( S(E+E')=S(E)+S(E') \). This follows from the definition \( E+E'=V_A(E \oplus E') \Delta_C \) of addition and the rule \( (E \oplus E')_n \simeq E_n \oplus E'_n \) for connecting morphisms, which is a consequence of the condition (7.2) for a connected pair.

This gives the asserted 1-1 correspondence. The same applies to maps:

**Proposition 8.2.** If \( S', S : \mathcal{D}(A)+W+ \) are two covariant functors, a natural transformation \( f: S' \to S \) of degree \( d \) is a family of natural transformations \( \{f_n: T'_n \to T_n\}: \mathcal{D} \to R \) which commute with all connecting morphisms:

\[
T_{n+d}(E) f_n(C) = f_{n-1}(A') T_n(E), \quad E: A \to B \to C. \tag{8.2}
\]

In other words, for \( d=0 \), \( f \) is a chain transformation of the complex (8.1) for \( \mathcal{D} \) to that for \( \mathcal{D} \).

A covariant functor \( S : \mathcal{D}(A) \to R^+ \) is called couniversal if to each covariant \( S': \mathcal{D}(A) \to R^+ \) and each natural transformation \( f_0: T'_0 \to T_0 \) in \( \mathcal{D} \) of the components of degree 0, there exists a unique natural transformation \( f: \mathcal{D} \to \mathcal{D} \) of degree 0 extending \( f_0 \). In other words, a couniversal positive connected sequence of covariant functors is such a sequence starting at \( T_0 \), extended to the left, and couniversal for all
such connected sequences. Thus $T_0$ uniquely determines $S$, up to a natural isomorphism.

**Theorem 8.3.** Let $\mathcal{A}$ have enough proper projectives. A covariant functor $S: \mathcal{E}_g(\mathcal{A}) \to \mathcal{R}^+$ is couniversal $\mathcal{F}$ and only if, for each proper short exact sequence $K \to P \to C$ of $\mathcal{A}$ with $P$ proper projective, the sequence

$$0 \to T_n(C) \to T_{n-1}(K) \to T_{n-1}(P), \quad \mathcal{R},$$

(8.3)

is exact for every $n \geq 0$.

**Proof.** Given this condition, some other $S': \mathcal{E}_g(\mathcal{A}) \to \mathcal{R}^+$, and some $f_0: T_0 \to T_0$ we construct by recursion on $n$ the requisite natural transformations $f_n: T_n \to T_n$. If $f_0, \ldots, f_{n-1}$ are already constructed to commute with the connecting homomorphisms, the condition (8.3) shows by Thm. 7.2 that $(T_n, E_n, T_{n-1})$ is left couniversal, so will construct a unique $f_n: T_n \to T_n$ with $E_n f_n = f_{n-1} E'_n$. Hence $S$ is couniversal.

Conversely, suppose that $\mathcal{X}$ is couniversal. From $T_0$ we construct the left satellite $S_1$, and construct in turn each $S_n: \mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{R}$ as the left satellite of $S_{n-1}$. The resulting connected sequence satisfies (8.3), hence is couniversal, so must agree with the unique couniversal $S$ for the given $T_0$. Therefore any couniversal $S$ satisfies (8.3). This argument also proves an existence theorem:

**Theorem 8.4.** Let $\mathcal{A}$ have enough proper projectives. Each covariant functor $T_0: \mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{R}$ is the component of degree 0 for a couniversal functor $S: \mathcal{E}_g(\mathcal{A}) \to \mathcal{R}^+$ in which the $n$-th component $T_n$ is the $n$-th iterated left satellite of $T_0$.

Since $0 \to P \to P$ is exact for each proper projective, condition (8.3) implies that $T_n(P) = 0$ for each $n \geq 0$. Thm.8.3 includes the weaker result:

**Corollary 8.5.** If $S$ satisfies $T_n(P) = 0$ for each projective $P$ and for each $n \geq 0$, and $f$ the long sequence (8.1) is exact for each proper exact $E$ of $\mathcal{A}$, then $\mathcal{X}$ is couniversal.

In particular, if $\mathcal{A}$ is the category of all left modules over some ring $R$ and $G$ is a fixed right $R$-module, Thm.V.8.5 asserts that the functors $T_n(A) = \text{Tor}_n^R(G, A)$ satisfy this condition.

**Corollary 8.6.** If $U: \mathcal{R} \to \mathcal{R}'$ is exact and covariant, while $\{T_n, E_n\}$ is a couniversal positive connected sequence, so is $\{UT_n, UE_n\}$.

**Proof.** Since $E_n: T_n(C) \to T_{n-1}(A)$ is a morphism of $\mathcal{R}$ while $U$ is a functor, $UE_n: UT_n(C) \to UT_{n-1}(A)$ is a morphism of $\mathcal{R}'$. Since $U$ preserves exactness, condition (8.3) for couniversality is preserved.

**Note.** If $U$ is not exact, the description of the left satellite of the functor $UT_0$ in terms of $U$ and $T_0$ involves an important spectral sequence [Cartan-Eilenberg, XVI, § 3; Grothendieck 1957, p. 147].
To handle negative connected sequences

\[ \cdots \rightarrow T^0(C) \rightarrow T^1(A) \rightarrow T^1(B) \rightarrow T^2(C) \rightarrow T^2(A) \rightarrow \cdots \]

of covariant functors \( T^n : \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{R} \), use the graded additive category \( \mathcal{R}^- \); its objects \( \{R^n\} \) are families of objects of \( \mathcal{R} \), with \( R^n = 0 \) for \( n < 0 \); its morphisms \( \mu \) of degree \( k \geq 0 \) are the families \( \{\mu_n : R^n \rightarrow R^{n+k}\} \) of morphisms of \( \mathcal{R} \). A covariant functor \( S : \mathfrak{G}(\mathcal{A}) \rightarrow \mathcal{R}^- \) is then a negative connected sequence of functors \( T^n : \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{R} \), much as in Prop. 8.1.

Contravariant functors require attention as to sign. Thus if \( \mathcal{G} \) and \( \mathcal{H} \) are graded additive categories, a contravariant \( S : \mathcal{G} \rightarrow \mathcal{H} \) assigns to each object \( G \) an object \( S(G) \) in \( \mathcal{H} \), and to each morphism \( y : G_1 \rightarrow G_2 \) of \( \mathcal{G} \) a morphism \( \bar{S}(y) : \bar{S}(G_2) \rightarrow \bar{S}(G_1) \) of the same degree in \( \mathcal{H} \), with \( \bar{S}(1_G) = 1_{\bar{S}(G)} \) and

\[ \bar{S}(y_1 y_2) = (-1)^{(\text{deg}\, y_1)(\text{deg}\, y_2)} \bar{S}(y_2) \bar{S}(y_1), \quad (8.4) \]

in accord with the sign conventions. A natural transformation \( \bar{f} : \bar{S}' \rightarrow \bar{S} \) of degree \( d \) is a function which assigns to each object \( G \) of \( \mathcal{G} \) a morphism \( \bar{f}(G) : \bar{S}'(G) \rightarrow \bar{S}(G) \) of degree \( d \) in \( \mathcal{H} \) in such wise that

\[ \bar{S}(y) \bar{f}(G_2) = (-1)^{(\text{deg}\, y)(\text{deg}\, f)} \bar{f}(G_1) \bar{S}(y) \]

— just as usual, except for sign.

Exercises

1. Show that the condition \( T_n(P) = 0 \) cannot be dropped from Cor. 8.5: Use \( T_n(A) = T_n(A) \oplus T_{n-1}(A) \).

2. Describe a contravariant additive functor \( S : \mathfrak{G}(\mathcal{A}) \rightarrow \mathcal{R}^+ \) as a suitably connected sequence of functors on \( \mathcal{A} \) to \( \mathcal{R} \).

9. Derived Functors

A standard method is: Take a resolution, apply a covariant functor \( T : \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{R} \), take the homology of the resulting complex. This gives a connected sequence of functors, called the derived functors of \( T \).

In detail, let \( \mathcal{A} \) have enough proper projectives. Each object \( A \) thus has a proper projective resolution \( e : X \rightarrow A \). If \( e' : X' \rightarrow A' \) is a second such, the comparison theorem lifts each \( \alpha : A \rightarrow A' \) to a chain transformation \( f : X \rightarrow X' \), and any two such are homotopic. Since \( T \) is additive, it carries homotopies to homotopies, and so the induced chain transformation \( T(f) : T(X) \rightarrow T(X') \) in \( \mathcal{R} \) is determined up to a homotopy. Therefore \( L_n(A) = H_n(T(X)) \) defines a function of \( A \), independent of the choice of \( X \), and \( L_n(\alpha) = H_n(T(f)) : L_n(A) \rightarrow L_n(A') \) makes each \( L_n \) a covariant functor \( \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{R} \). It is the \( n \)-th left derived functor of \( T \).
Now let \( E : A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C \) be any proper short exact sequence in \( \mathcal{A} \). Take an allowable projective resolution \( \varepsilon : K \rightarrow E \) in the category of short exact sequences of \( \mathcal{A} \), as in Thm.6.4; this amounts to a short exact sequence \( X \rightarrow W \rightarrow Y \) of complexes in \( \mathcal{A} \) with \( X \rightarrow A, W \rightarrow B, \) and \( Y \rightarrow C \) proper projective resolutions; moreover, \( W_n = X_n \oplus Y_n \) for each \( n \). As \( T \) is additive, this last shows that \( T(X) \rightarrow T(W) \rightarrow T(Y) \) is a short exact sequence of complexes in \( \mathcal{B} \), so gives connecting homomorphisms \( H_n(T(Y)) \rightarrow H_n(T(X)) \) for \( n \geq 0 \). Since \( X \) is a resolution of \( A \) and \( Y \) one of \( C \), this is a homomorphism \( E_n = L_n(E) : L_n(C) \rightarrow L_n(A) \). The general comparison theorem for allowable resolutions (Thm. IX.4.3) shows this independent of the choice of the resolution \( K \) and shows that \( L_n(E) \) is a natural transformation of functors of \( E \).

**Theorem 9.1.** For each additive covariant functor \( T : \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{B} \), the left derived functors \( L_n : \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{B} \) and the connecting homomorphisms \( L_n(E) \) constitute a positive connected sequence of functors with \( L_0 \) right \( \mathcal{P} \)-exact. This sequence is couniversal for the initial component \( L_0 \). If \( T \) is right \( \mathcal{P} \)-exact, \( L_0 = T \). 

**Proof.** If \( P \) is proper projective, the resolution \( P+P \) shows \( L_n(P) = 0 \) for \( n > 0 \). For each proper exact \( E \), the exactness of the long sequence (8.4) for \( L_n = T_n \) follows from the usual long exact sequence for the homology of \( T(X) \rightarrow T(W) \rightarrow T(Y) \). In particular, \( L_0 \) is right exact. The connected sequence \( \{ L_n(E) \} \) satisfies the conditions of Cor. 8.5, hence is couniversal.

Suppose that the original \( T \) is right \( \mathcal{P} \)-exact. In any resolution, the portion \( X_1 \rightarrow X_0 \rightarrow A \rightarrow 0 \) is right exact; hence so is \( T(X_1) \rightarrow T(X_0) \rightarrow T(A) \rightarrow 0 \). This gives \( L_0(A) = H_0(T(X)) \cong T(A) \), a natural isomorphism.

This theorem is of interest when \( T \) is right exact. It can then be read either as a characterization of the sequence of left derived functors of \( T \) as the couniversal sequence for \( L_0 = T \), or as the statement that the left satellites of \( T \) and their connecting homomorphisms can be calculated from resolutions.

To have a definite derived functor \( L \), one must choose a resolution \( X \) for each \( A \). This sweeping use of the axiom of choice is legal in small categories \( \mathcal{A} \) and possible in all those relevant examples of categories in which there is a canonical way of choosing a projective resolution. If the range category \( \mathcal{B} \) is not a category of modules, but any abelian category, the proof above requires that we know the exact homology sequence, with its connecting homomorphisms, for an abelian category. We have indicated only too briefly in \( \S \) 3 how this could be accomplished, using additive relations.
Let us summarize the properties of the derived functors in this case.

I. A covariant functor \( \mathcal{F}: \mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{R}^+ \) is a positive connected sequence \( \{T_n, E_n\} \) consisting of covariant functors \( T: \mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{R} \) and homomorphisms \( E_n: T_n(C) \to T_{n-1}(A) \) natural in \( E \). It assigns to each proper \( E: A \to B \to C \) a complex

\[
\cdots \to T_n(A) \to T_n(B) \to T_n(C) \xrightarrow{E_n} T_{n-1}(A) \to \cdots
\]

in \( \mathcal{R} \). Suppose that \( \mathcal{A} \) has enough proper projectives. Each right \( \mathcal{P} \)-exact covariant \( T: \mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{R} \) has a left derived functor \( \mathcal{X}: \mathcal{E}_p(\mathcal{A}) \to \mathcal{R}^+ \) which is determined by \( T \), up to natural isomorphism, by any one of the following three conditions:

(Ia) \( T_0 = T \) and \( S \) is couniversal,

(Ib) \( T_0 = T \), (9.1) is exact, and \( T_n(P) = 0 \) for \( n > 0 \) and \( P \) proper projective,

(Ic) \( T_n(A) = H_n(T(X)) \) for some proper projective resolution \( E: X \to A \), while \( E_n \) is similarly calculated from short exact sequences of such resolutions.

These considerations may be dualized: Replace one or both of the categories \( \mathcal{A} \) and \( \mathcal{R} \) by its opposite. For example, replacing \( \mathcal{A} \) by \( \mathcal{A}^{op} \) gives

II. Let \( T: \mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{R} \) be a right \( \mathcal{P} \)-exact contravariant functor and suppose that \( \mathcal{A} \) has enough proper injectives. For each object \( A \) take a proper injective coresolution \( c: A \to Y \). This \( Y \) is a negative complex \( Y \to Y^1 \to \cdots \); application of the contravariant \( T \) yields a positive complex \( T(Y): T(Y^0) \to T(Y^1) \to \cdots \); that is \( [T(Y)]_n = T(Y^n) \). Its homology \( H_n(T(Y)) = T_n(A) \) is the \( n \)-th left derived functor \( T_n \) of \( T \). For each proper \( E \), coresolutions of \( E \) give a corresponding connecting homomorphism \( E_n: T_n(A) \to T_{n-1}(C) \), natural in \( E \). They constitute a positive connected sequence \( \{T_n, E_n\} \) of contravariant functors which assigns to each proper \( E: A \to B \to C \) a complex

\[
\cdots \to T_n(C) \to T_n(B) \to T_n(A) \xrightarrow{E_n} T_{n-1}(C) \to \cdots
\]

in \( \mathcal{R} \). This sequence \( \{T_n, E_n\} \) may also be described as a contravariant functor \( \mathcal{S}: \mathcal{E}_p(\mathcal{A}) \to \mathcal{R}^+ \). Given the right exact functor \( T: \mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{R} \), its left derived functors may be characterized by their construction from injective coresolutions or by either of the properties:

(IIa) \( T_0 = T \) and \( S \) is couniversal; that is, given \( S': \mathcal{E}_p(\mathcal{A}) \to \mathcal{R}^+ \), each natural \( f_0: T_0' \to T_0 \) extends to a unique natural \( f: S' \to S \),

(IIb) \( T_0 = T \), (9.2) is always exact, and \( T_n(J) = 0 \) for \( n > 0 \) and each proper injective \( J \).
The categorical dual of $I$ (replace $A$ by $A^{\text{op}}$, $R$ by $R^{\text{op}}$) is

III. Let $T: A \to R$ be left $\mathcal{P}$-exact and covariant (sample, $T(A) = \text{Hom}_R(G, A)$). Its right derived functors are $T^n(A) = \text{H}^n(T(Y))$, where $E: A+Y$ is a proper injective coresolution (assume enough injectives). With the corresponding connecting homomorphisms they constitute a negative connected sequence of covariant $T^n: A \to R$ which assigns to each $E$ a complex,

$$\cdots \to T^{n-1}(C) \xrightarrow{E^n} T^n(A) \to T^n(B) \to T^n(C) \to \cdots$$ (9.3)

in $R$; that is, a covariant $T: E_{\mathcal{P}}(A) \to R^-$. The $T^n$ are characterized in terms of $T$ by either of the properties

(IIIa) $T^0 = T$ and $S$ is universal; that is, given $S': E_{\mathcal{P}}(A) \to R^-$, each natural $f^0: T0 \to T'0$ extends to a unique natural $f: S \to S'$,

(IIIb) $T^0 = T$, (9.3) is exact, and $T^n(J) = 0$ for $n > 0$ and each injective $J$.

Finally, replace $R$ in case I by $R^{\text{op}}$.

IV. Let $T: A \to R$ be left $\mathcal{P}$-exact and contravariant (sample: $T(A) = \text{Hom}_R(A, G)$). Suppose that $\mathcal{A}$ has enough proper projectives. A projective resolution $E: X \to A$ gives a negative complex $T(X)$ in $R$, hence derived functors $T^n(A) = \text{H}^n(T(X))$ and connecting homomorphisms which constitute a negative connected sequence $\{T^n, E^n\}$ and for each $E$ a complex

$$\cdots \to T^{n-1}(A) \xrightarrow{E^n} T^n(C) \to T^n(B) \to T^n(A) \to \cdots$$ (9.4)

that is, a contravariant $S: E_{\mathcal{P}}(A) \to R^-$ characterized by either

(IVa) $T0 = T$ and $S$ is universal, or

(IVb) $T0 = T$, (9.4) is exact, and $T^n(P) = 0$ for $n > 0$ and each projective $P$.

To summarize (examples with $G$ a fixed module):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>$T_0$</th>
<th>Variance</th>
<th>Derived</th>
<th>$T$</th>
<th>Resolution</th>
<th>Type, $T^n(A)$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Right</td>
<td>Co</td>
<td>Left</td>
<td>couniversal</td>
<td>projective Tor^n(G, A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>Right</td>
<td>Contra</td>
<td>Left</td>
<td>couniversal</td>
<td>injective ?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>Left</td>
<td>Co</td>
<td>Right</td>
<td>universal</td>
<td>injective Ext^n(G, A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Left</td>
<td>Contra</td>
<td>Right</td>
<td>universal</td>
<td>projective Ext^n(A, G)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Thus a change in variance or a change from left to right switches the type of resolution used.

For example, if $A$ is a $K$-algebra, $\mathcal{A}$ the category of left $A$-modules, $\mathcal{P}$ the class of $K$-split short exact sequences of $A$-modules, and $R$ the
category of $K$-modules, then $\text{Hom}_A(C, A)$ is left exact. As a functor of $C$ it is contravariant (case IV); its right $\mathcal{D}$-derived functors are $\text{Ext}^n_{(A,K)}(C, A)$. As a functor of $A$, $\text{Hom}_A$ is covariant (case III); its right $\mathcal{D}$-derived functor is again given by the sequence of functors $\text{Ext}^n_{(A,K)}(C, A)$, this time with the connecting homomorphisms in the second argument $A$.

**Notes.** Characterization of functors. For categories of modules, right or left exact additive functors are often given just by the usual functors $\otimes$ and $\text{Hom}$. Specifically (Watts [1960], Eilenberg [1960]), if $C$ is a fixed $S-R$-bimodule, the tensor product with $C$ gives a covariant functor $T_C(A) = C \otimes_A A$ of $R$ which is right exact and carries (infinite) direct sums to direct sums. Any functor $T$ on the category of $R$-modules to the category of $S$-modules with these properties has this form for some $C$; namely, for $C = T(R)$. Again, any left exact contravariant functor $T$ on $R$-modules to $S$-modules which converts (infinite) direct sums into direct products is naturally equivalent to the contravariant functor $T(A) = \text{Hom}_S(A, C)$ for some left $(R \otimes S)$-module $C$ (to wit, $C = T(R)$). Finally (Watts [1960]) any covariant left exact functor from $R$-modules to abelian groups which commutes with inverse limits has the form $T(A) = \text{Hom}_S(C, A)$ for a suitable $C$. Mitchell [1962] has generalized these theorems to suitable abelian categories.

Bifunctors. Let $T_0(C, A)$ be a bifunctor, additive and right exact in each variable separately. Replacing both arguments by projective resolutions, taking the total complex of the resulting bicomplex and its homology gives the left derived functors $T_n(C, A)$ as for example for $\text{Tor}$, $(C, A)$ as a bifunctor (Thm. V.9.3). This and related cases, with difference in variance, are treated in detail in Cartan-Eilenberg. This theory is not needed for $\mathcal{D}A$, because this bifunctor becomes exact when either of the variables is replaced by a projective, so the derived functors can be constructed by the one-variable case. A relevant example is the tri-functor $C \otimes B \otimes A$ for three modules over a commutative ring, which must be treated as a functor of at least two variables. Its derived functors, called $\text{Trip}$, occur in the Künneth formulas for the homology of the tensor product of three complexes (MacLane [1960]). At present, there appears to be no way of characterizing derived functors of two or more variables by "universal" properties or by "axioms". For example, a suitable definition of a tensor product of two abelian categories would allow the reduction of bifunctors to functors of one variable.

Other constructions of derived functors. If $T_0$ is right exact and covariant on the category of all modules, each $S \in \text{Ext}^n(C, A)$ gives an iterated connecting homomorphism $S_\ast: T_0(C) \to T_0(A)$, so each $t \in T_n(C)$ yields a natural transformation $\text{Ext}^n(C, A) \to T_0(A)$ of functors of $A$. Indeed, $T_n(C)$ may be defined [Yoneda 1960, Hilton-Rees 1961] as

$$T_n(C) = \text{Nat} \text{hom}_A(\text{Ext}^n(C, A), T(A))$$

This provides another definition of the torsion products. We have already remarked that an additive category $\mathcal{A}$ is a "ringoid" (usual ring axioms, but compositions not everywhere defined). In the same sense, each covariant additive functor $T$ on $\mathcal{A}$ to the category of abelian groups is a left "$\mathcal{A}$-moduloid" (axioms for a left module over a ring; compositions not always defined), while a contravariant $S$ is a right $\mathcal{A}$-moduloid. Yoneda [1960] has defined a corresponding tensor product $S \otimes_{\mathcal{A}} T$ and used it to construct satellites. Again, let $T$ be a contravariant additive functor. The short exact sequences $E: A \to B \to C$ ending in a fixed $C$ may be partly ordered by $E' \preceq E$ if there is a morphism $(a, \beta, 1_C): E' \to E$; these $E$ then from
a "directed" class; the direct limit of the kernels of \( T(A) \rightarrow T(B) \) taken over the directed class gives the right satellite of \( T \) [Buchsbaum 1960], defined in this way without assuming that there are enough projectives. This construction has been studied further by Amitsur [1961]; Röhrle [1962] gives an existence theorem for satellites of half exact functors, with applications to the theory of sheaves. For any additive functor which is not half-exact one must distinguish the derived functors, the satellites, and the cosatellites; their interrelations are studied in Butler-Horrocks [1961].

Derived functors of non-additive functors have been studied by Dold-Puppe [1961] using iterated bar constructions. Indeed, the homology groups \( H_{n+1}(\Pi, n; G) \) of \( \Pi \) provide many examples of non-additive functors (Eilenberg-MacLane [1954a]). The classical example is the functor \( I \) of J. H. C. Whitehead [1950]. For each abelian group \( A \), \( I(A) \) is the abelian group with generators \( \{y(a) \mid a \in A\} \), relations \( y(-a) = y(a) \) and

\[
y(a + b + c) - y(a + b) - y(a + c) + y(b) + y(c) = 0.
\]

These are the relations valid for a "square" \( y(a) = a^2 \).

10. Products by Universality

The universal properties of derived functors may often be used to construct homomorphisms, such as the cup product for the cohomology of a group \( \Pi \). In the notational scheme of \( \S \) 7, take \( \mathcal{B} \) to be the category of abelian groups, \( \mathcal{A} \) the category of all left 17-modules, and \( \mathcal{P} \) the class of 2-split short exact sequences of 17-modules. We first show that there are enough proper injectives in \( \mathcal{A} \).

To each abelian group \( M \) construct then-module \( J_M = \text{Hom}_Z(Z(\Pi), M) \) with left operators defined for each \( f \in J_M \) by \( (xf) \cdot r = f(r \cdot x) \), with \( x \in \Pi \), \( r \in Z(\Pi) \). These are the left operators induced by the right 17-module structure of the group ring \( Z(17) \). Define a homomorphism \( e = e_M : J_M \rightarrow M \) of abelian groups by setting \( e(f) = f(1) \) for each \( f : Z(17) \rightarrow M \). This has the usual couniversal property, dual to that of Prop. V1.8.2:

**Lemma 10.1.** If \( A \) is a left 17-module and \( h : A \rightarrow M \) a homomorphism of abelian groups, there exists a unique 17-module homomorphism \( y : A \rightarrow J_M \) with \( e \cdot y = h \).

**Proof.** Consider \( A \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow M \leftarrow J_M \). The condition \( e \cdot y = h \) requires for each \( a \in A \) and \( x \in \Pi \) that

\[
h(x \cdot a) = e[y(x \cdot a)] = [y(x) \cdot a] \cdot 1 = [x \cdot y(a)] \cdot 1 = (y(a) \cdot x).
\]

Conversely, if one defines \( y \) by \( (y(a) \cdot x) = h(x \cdot a) \), \( y \) is a 17-map and satisfies \( e \cdot y = h \).

A standard argument now shows that each \( J_M \) is relatively injective. Moreover, if \( A \) is any 17-module, the Lemma gives a unique 17-module homomorphism \( y : A \rightarrow J_A \) with \( e \cdot y = 1_A \). Hence \( y \) is proper monic and \( y : A \rightarrow J_A \) embeds each \( A \) into a proper injective. Therefore there are enough proper injectives.
For each 17-module $C$ let $C^\Pi$ denote the subgroup of 17-invariant elements of $C$. The covariant functors
\[ H^p(C) = H^p(\Pi, C) = \text{Ext}^p_{Z(\Pi, Z}(Z, C) \]
have connecting homomorphisms for each proper $E$,
\[ E_*: H^p(C) \to H^{p+1}(A), \quad E: A \to B \to C, \]
defined (say) by Yoneda composition, and giving the usual long exact sequence. Moreover, $H^p(J) = 0$ for $p > 0$ and $J$ proper injective (any extension of a proper injective splits). Hence the $H^p(C)$ are the right derived functors of $H^0(C) = C^\Pi$.

**Lemma 10.2.** For each fixed integer $q$ and each fixed 17-module $C'$, the functors $H^p(C) \otimes H^q(C')$ constitute the components of a universal sequence of functors with $\Phi$-connecting homomorphisms $E, \otimes 1$.

**Proof.** Let $E_0: A \to J \to K$ be any 2-split short exact sequence with $J$ proper injective. For $p > 0$, $H^{p-1}(J) \to H^{p-1}(K) \to H^p(A) \to 0 (= H^p(J))$ is exact. As the tensor product over $Z$ is right exact, so is the sequence
\[ H^{p-1}(J) \otimes H^q(C') \to H^{p-1}(K) \otimes H^q(C') \to H^p(A) \otimes H^q(C') \to 0. \]
This is the condition parallel to (8.3) in the dual of Thm. 8.3; hence $H^p(C) \otimes H^q(C')$ is the universal sequence for its given initial component $H^0(C) \otimes H^q(C')$.

**Lemma 10.3.** If $C \otimes C'$ has the diagonal $\Pi$-module structure $[x(c \otimes c')] = xc \otimes x'c'$ for $x \in \Pi$, then for fixed $q$ and $C'$ the functors $H^{p+q}(C \otimes C')$ of $C$ constitute a $\Phi$-connected sequence of functors with connecting homomorphisms $(E \otimes C')$.

**Proof.** Since $E$ is $Z$-split and exact, the tensor product
\[ E \otimes C': A \otimes C' \to B \otimes C' \to C \otimes C' \]
is exact and 2-split, hence gives the required (natural) connecting maps.

Similarly, for $p$ and $C$ fixed, the functors $H^p(C) \otimes H^q(C')$ constitute a universal $\Phi$-connected sequence, when the connecting homomorphisms $1 \otimes E'_*$ are defined with the usual sign:
\[ (1 \otimes E'_*)(\sigma \otimes \sigma') = (-1)^p \sigma \otimes E'_* \sigma', \quad \sigma \in H^p(C), \quad \sigma' \in H^q(C'). \quad (10.1) \]
Moreover, the $H^{p+q}(C \otimes C')$ constitute a $\Phi$-connected sequence of functors of $C'$ with connecting homomorphisms $(C \otimes E')_*$.

For $p = 0$, $H^0(C) = C''$ is the subgroup of 17-invariant elements of $C$. Now $c \in C^\Pi$ and $c' \in C'^\Pi$ give $c \otimes c' \in (C \otimes C')^\Pi$, so the identity induces a homomorphism $C^\Pi \otimes C'^\Pi \to (C \otimes C')^\Pi$. 
Theorem 10.4. There exists a unique family of group homomorphisms

\[ f_{p, q}: H^p(C) \otimes H^q(C') \to H^{p+q}(C \otimes C') \]  

(10.2)
defined for all \( p \geq 0, q \geq 0 \) and all \( 17 \)-modules \( C \) and \( C' \), such that

(i) \( f_{0, 0} \) is the map induced by the identity, as above,

(ii) \( f_{p, q} \) is natural in \( C \) and \( C' \), \( p \geq 0, q \geq 0 \),

(iii) \( f_{p+1, q}(E_* \otimes 1) = (E \otimes C')_* f_{p, q} \), \( p \geq 0, q \geq 0 \),

(iv) \( f_{p, q+1}(1 \otimes E'_*) = (C \otimes E'_*)_* f_{p, q} \), \( p \geq 0, q \geq 0 \);

the latter two for all \( \mathbb{Z} \)-split short exact sequences \( E \) and \( E' \).

The last two conditions assert that the maps \( f \) commute with the connecting homomorphisms.

Proof. We are given \( f_{0, 0} \). For \( q = 0 \) and \( C \) fixed, the left hand side of (10.2) is \( 8 \)-universal, while the right hand side is \( \mathcal{P} \)-connected. Hence the maps \( f_{p, 0} \), natural in \( C \), exist and are unique subject to (iii) for \( q = 0 \). These maps are also natural in \( C' \). For consider \( y: C' \to D' \). Then \( \gamma f_{p, 0} \) and \( f_{p, 0} \gamma \) are two natural transformations of the \( 8 \)-universal functor \( H^p(C) \otimes H^0(C') \) to the \( 8 \)-connected functor \( H^p(C \otimes D') \) which agree for \( p = 0 \) and hence for all \( p \).

Now hold \( p \) and \( C \) fixed. In (10.2), \( f_{p, q} \) is given for \( q = 0 \), and by (iv) must be a natural transformation of a universal to a connected sequence. Hence it exists and is unique; as before it is also natural in \( C \).

Our construction gives (iii) only for \( q = 0 \); it remains to prove it for \( q > 0 \). For \( p \) fixed, let \( \varphi \) be the left-hand side and \( \psi \) be the right-hand side of (iii). Both are maps

\[ \varphi, \psi: H^p(C) \otimes H^q(C') \to H^{p+q+1}(A \otimes C') \]
of a universal to a connected sequence of functors of \( C \). They both anticommute with the connecting homomorphisms given by \( E' \). Indeed, by (iv),

\[ (A \otimes E')_* \varphi = (A \otimes E')_* f_{p+1, q}(E_* \otimes 1) = f_{p+1, q+1}(1 \otimes E'_*)(E_* \otimes 1), \]

\[ \varphi f_{p, q+1}(1 \otimes E'_*) = f_{p+1, q+1}(E_* \otimes 1)(1 \otimes E'_*), \]

and \( (1 \otimes E'_*)(E, \otimes 1) = -(E, \otimes 1)(1 \otimes E'_*) \) by the definition (10.1). Also

\[ (A \otimes E')_* \psi = (A \otimes E')_* f_{p+1, q}, \]

\[ \psi f_{p, q+1}(1 \otimes E'_*) = (E \otimes A')_* f_{p, q+1}(1 \otimes E'_*) = (E \otimes A')_* (C \otimes E'_*) f_{p, q}, \]

and \( (A \otimes E') \circ (E \otimes C') \) is congruent to \( -(E \otimes A') \circ (C \otimes E') \) by the \( 3 \times 3 \) splice lemma (VIII.3.1). Since \( \varphi = \psi \), the uniqueness of the maps
on a universal sequence gives \( \phi^a = \psi^a \) in all dimensions. This completes
the proof.

Now the cup product (as defined — say — by Yoneda composites
of long exact sequences) for the cohomology of groups satisfies exactly
the conditions for the maps \( f^p : a \) of our theorem. Thus we have still
another construction of these cup products (VIII.9). This construction
may be used to "calculate" these products for \( \mathbb{I} \) cyclic.

A similar argument in \( H_n(\mathcal{I}, \mathbb{C}) = \text{Tor}_n^\mathbb{Z}(\mathcal{I}) \mathbb{Z}, \mathbb{C}) \) will construct a
product which agrees with the internal product for the relative torsion
functor. If \( \mathbb{I} \) is finite, these two products can be combined in a single
product [CARTAN-EILENBERG, Chap.XII].

11. Proper Projective Complexes

Let \( \mathcal{A} \) be the abelian category of positive complexes \( K \) (of left mo-
dules over some ring), with morphisms all chain transformations
\( f : K \to L \). Call a short sequence of complexes \( K \xrightarrow{f} L \xrightarrow{g} M \) proper exact
if, for all \( n \),

(i) \( 0 \to K_n \to L_n \to M_n \to 0 \) is exact, and

(ii) \( 0 \to C_n(K) \to C_n(L) \to C_n(M) \to 0 \) is exact,

where \( C_n(K) \) denotes the module of \( n \)-cycles of \( K \). Since (i) implies
that (ii) is left exact, (ii) may be replaced by

(ii') \( C_n(L) \to C_n(M) \) is an epimorphism for all \( n \).

In other words, a chain epimorphism \( g : L \to M \) is proper if to each
\( m \in M \) with \( \partial m = 0 \) there exists an \( l \in L \) with \( g l = m \) and \( \partial l = 0 \). Equi-
vally, a chain monomorphism \( f : K \to L \) is proper if to each \( l \in L \)
with \( \partial l / K \) there is a \( k \in K \) with \( \partial l = \partial f k \). With these characterizations,
the reader may verify that this class of proper short exact sequences
satisfies the axioms of \( \S 4 \) for propriety. Since a long exact sequence
is a Yoneda composite of short exact sequences, we have

Lemma 11.1. A sequence of complexes \( \cdots \to K \to L \to M \to N \to \cdots \)
is proper exact if and only if, for every dimension \( n \geq 0 \), both \( \cdots \to K_n \to \)
\( L_n \to M_n \to N_n \to \cdots \) and \( \cdots \to C_n(K) \to C_n(L) \to C_n(M) \to C_n(N) \to \cdots \)
are exact.

Proposition 11.2. If \( K \to L \to M \) is a proper short exact sequence
of complexes, then each of the following sequences is exact for all \( n \):

(iii) \( 0 \to B, (K) \to B, (L) \to B, (M) \to 0 \),

(iv) \( 0 \to H_n(K) \to H_n(L) \to H_n(M) \to 0 \),

(v) \( 0 \to K_n/B_n(K) \to L_n/B_n(L) \to M_n/B_n(M) \to 0 \),

(vi) \( 0 \to K_n/C_n(K) \to L_n/C_n(L) \to M_n/C_n(M) \to 0 \).
Proof. The modules $B_{n-1}(K) = \partial K_n$ of boundaries are defined by the exactness of the short sequence $C_n(K) \rightarrow K \rightarrow B_{n-1}(K)$. These sequences for $K$, $L$, and $M$ form a $3 \times 3$ diagram with rows (ii), (i), and (iii), so the $3 \times 3$ lemma gives (iii). The homology $H_n(K)$ is defined by the exactness of $B_n(K) ightarrow C_n(K) ightarrow H_n(K)$; the $3 \times 3$ lemma gives (iv). The proofs of (v) and (vi) are similar, via $B_n ightarrow K_n ightarrow K_n/B_n(K)$ and the dual description of the homology modules by the exact sequences $H_n(K) \rightarrow K_n/B_n(K) \rightarrow K_n/C_n(K)$.

Next construct proper projective complexes. To each module $A$ and each integer $n$ introduce the special complex $U = U(A, n)$ with $U_n = A$ and $U_m = 0$ for $m \neq n$. If $K$ is any complex, each module homomorphism $a : A \rightarrow C_n(K)$ defines a chain transformation $h = h(a) : U(A, n) \rightarrow K$ with $h_n$ the composite $A \rightarrow C_n(K) \rightarrow K$; all chain transformations $h : U \rightarrow K$ have this form.

To each module $A$ and each integer $n$ introduce the special complex $V = V(A, n)$ with $V_n = V_{n+1} = A$, all other chain groups zero, and $\partial : V_{n+1} \rightarrow V_n$ the identity $1_A$. Then $H_m(V) = 0$ for all $m$. If $K$ is a complex, each module homomorphism $\gamma : A \rightarrow K_{n+1}$ defines a chain transformation $h = h(\gamma) : V(A, n) \rightarrow K$ with $h_{n+1} = \gamma$, $h_n = \partial \gamma$; all $h : V \rightarrow K$ have this form.

Lemma 11.3. For a projective module $P$, the special complexes $U(P, n)$ and $V(P, n)$ are proper projective complexes.

Proof. Let $g : L \rightarrow M$ be a proper epimorphism of complexes and $h = h(\gamma) : V(P, n) \rightarrow M$ any chain transformation. Now $g_{n+1} : L_{n+1} \rightarrow M_{n+1}$ is epic, so $\gamma : P \rightarrow M_{n+1}$ lifts to $\beta : P \rightarrow L_{n+1}$ with $g_{n+1} \beta = \gamma$. Therefore $h(\gamma)$ lifts to $h(\beta) : V \rightarrow L$. The corresponding argument for $U$ uses the fact that $C_n(L) \rightarrow C_n(M)$ is epic. We then have

Lemma 11.4. If $P_n$ and $Q$ are projective modules, then

$$S = \bigoplus_{n=0}^{\infty} U(P_n, n) \oplus \bigoplus_{n=0}^{\infty} V(Q_n, n)$$

is a proper projective complex with $H_n(S) \cong P_n$, $B_n(S) \cong Q_n$. Any complex $K$ with all $H_n(K)$ and $B_n(K)$ projective has this form.

Proof. The direct sum of proper projectives is proper projective. Set $Q_{-1} = 0$. The complex $S$ has the form

$$\cdots \rightarrow Q_{n+1} \oplus P_{n+1} \oplus Q_n \rightarrow Q_n \oplus P_n \oplus Q_{n-1} \rightarrow$$

with $\partial$ induced by the identity $Q_n \rightarrow Q_n$, so $H(S)$ and $B(S)$ are as stated. The last assertion follows by induction from the fact that every extension by a projective module splits.
We can now prove that there are enough proper projective complexes.

**Lemma 11.5.** For each complex $K$ there exists a proper projective complex $S$ of the form (11.1) and a proper epimorphism $h: S \to K$ of complexes.

**Proof.** For each $n$, there is a projective module $P_n$ and an epimorphism $e_n: P_n \to H_n(K)$; lift $e_n$ to a homomorphism $\alpha_n: P_n \to C_n(K)$. This $\alpha_n$ determines $h(\alpha_n): U(P_n, n) \to K$. For each $n$, there is a projective module $Q_n$ and an epimorphism $a_n: Q_n \to B_n(K)$; since $K_{n+1} \to B_n$ is epic, lift $a_n$ to a homomorphism $\gamma_n: Q_n \to K_{n+1}$. This $\gamma_n$ determines $h(\gamma_n): V(Q_n, n) \to K$. For $S$ as in (11.1), these chain transformations $h(\alpha_n)$ and $h(\gamma_n)$ combine to give $h: S \to K$. If $s_n = q_n + p_n + q_{n-1} \in S_n$, then $h s_n = \partial(\gamma_n q_n + \alpha_n p_n + \gamma_{n-1} q_{n-1})$, so $h$ is epic. To show it proper epic, we must show that $h s_n = 0$ implies $\partial s_n = \partial s_n'$ for an $s_n'$ with $h s_n' = 0$. But $\partial h s_n$ is $\partial \gamma_{n-1} q_{n-1}$. Since $\gamma_{n-1} q_{n-1}$ is a cycle of $C_n(K)$ while $\alpha_n$ and $q_n$ are epic, there are $p_n' \in P_n$ and $q_n' \in Q_n$ with $\gamma_{n-1} q_{n-1} = \alpha_n p_n' + \partial \gamma_n q_n'$. Then $s_n' = -q_n' - p_n' + q_{n-1} \in S_n$ has $\partial s_n = \partial s_n' = q_{n-1}$ and $h s_n = 0$, as required.

These results combine to give

**Proposition 11.6.** For each (positive) complex $L$ there exists a proper projective resolution in which each $Y_q$ is a proper projective complex of the form (11.1).

Here $Y = \{Y_q\}$ is a complex of complexes; each $Y_q$ is a graded module $\{Y_{q,r}\}$ with a boundary homomorphism $\partial^\prime : Y_{q,r} \to Y_{q,r-1}$ with $\partial^\prime \partial^\prime = 0$. The resolution itself provides chain transformations $\partial$ with $\partial^\prime \partial = \partial \partial^\prime$. Change the sign of $\partial$ (just as in the process of condensation, X.9) by setting $\partial^\prime = (-1)^q \partial: Y_{q,r} \to Y_{q-1,r}$. Then $(Y, \partial^\prime, \partial^\prime)$ is a positive bi-complex.

For positive complexes $K$ and $L$ of right and left $R$-modules, respectively, we now introduce certain "hyperhomology" modules. Take a resolution $Y$ of $L$, as above, and form $K \otimes Y$, where $\otimes$ is $\otimes_R$. This is a trigraded module $\{K_{p,q,r}\}$, with three boundary operators given by $\partial_1 := \partial_1: K_{p,q,r} \to K_{p-1,q,r}$,

\[ \partial_{1I}(k \otimes y) = (-1)^{\dim_k k} k \otimes \partial^\prime y, \quad \partial_{1II}(k \otimes y) = (-1)^{\dim_k k} k \otimes \partial^\prime y; \]

it is a tricomplex (each $\partial$ of square zero, each pair of $\partial$'s anticommutative). The corresponding total complex $T = \Tot(K \otimes Y)$ has $T_n = \sum K_{p,q,r}$, for $p + q + r = n$, $\partial = \partial_1 + \partial_{1I} + \partial_{1II}$. An application of the comparison theorem for proper projective resolutions shows $H_n(T)$ independent of...
the choice of the resolution \( Y \). We define the hyperhomology modules of \( K \) and \( L \) to be

\[
\mathcal{H}_n(K, L) = H_n(Tot(K \otimes Y)). \tag{11.4}
\]

Remark. The often used fact that the tensor product of two complexes is a bicomplex applies to functors other than the tensor product. Let \( T(A, B) \) be a covariant bifunctor of modules \( A \) and \( B \) with values in some additive category \( \mathcal{C} \). If \( K \) and \( L \) are positive complexes of modules, \( T \) applies to give a bigraded object \( T(K_p, L_q) \) in \( \mathcal{C} \) and the boundary homomorphisms of \( K \) and \( L \) induce morphisms

\[
\partial' = T(\delta_K, 1): T(K_p, L_q) \to T(K_{p-1}, L_q),
\]

\[
\partial'' = (-1)^p T(1, \partial_L): T(K_p, L_q) \to T(K_p, L_{q-1})
\]

which satisfy \( \partial' \partial'' = 0 \), \( \partial'' \partial' = 0 \), and \( \partial' \partial'' = -\partial'' \partial' \), the latter because \( T \) is a bifunctor. Therefore \( T(K, L) = \{T(K_p, L_q), \partial', \partial''\} \) is a bicomplex in \( \mathcal{C} \) with an associated total complex \( Tot[T(K, L)] \). If homotopies are to be treated, one assumes \( T \) biadditive; that is, additive in each variable separately. When \( T \) is the tensor product, \( T(K, L) \) is the familiar bicomplex \( K \otimes L \).

Exercises

1. Let \( K \to L \to M \) be a sequence of complexes with \( gf = 0 \). Show that it is a proper short exact sequence if and only if both (iii) and (iv) of Prop. 11.2 hold, and also if and only if both (ii) and (iii) hold. Find other sufficient pairs of conditions.

2. Show that every proper projective positive complex has the form given in Lemma 11.4.

3. Show that \( \mathcal{H}_n(K, L) \) is independent of the choice of the resolution of \( L \), and prove that it can also be computed from a proper projective resolution of \( K \), or from resolutions of both \( K \) and \( L \).

4. Study proper exact sequences for complexes not necessarily positive.

5. Let \( \mathcal{P} \) be a proper class of short exact sequences in an abelian category \( \mathcal{A} \). Study the corresponding proper class in the abelian category of positive complexes in \( \mathcal{A} \).

6. Each additive functor \( T: \mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{B} \) induces a functor \( T \) on \( \mathcal{A} \)-complexes \( K \) to \( \mathcal{B} \)-complexes. For \( S \) left exact and \( T \) right exact, construct natural maps

\[
H_n SK \to SH_n K, \quad TH_n K \to H_n TK.
\]

Extend to bifunctors, and obtain the homology product as a special case for \( T = \otimes \).

12. The Spectral Künneth Formula

Spectral sequences provide a generalization of the Künneth formula.

Theorem 12.1. If \( K \) and \( L \) are positive complexes of right and left \( R \)-modules, respectively, and \( f \)

\[
H(Tot[Tor,, (K, L)] \neq 0 \quad \text{for all } m > 0, \tag{12.1}
\]

The Spectral Künneth Formula

Spectral sequences provide a generalization of the Künneth formula.

Theorem 12.1. If \( K \) and \( L \) are positive complexes of right and left \( R \)-modules, respectively, and \( f \)

\[
H(Tot[Tor,, (K, L)] \neq 0 \quad \text{for all } m > 0, \tag{12.1}
\]
there is a first quadrant spectral sequence \( \{ E^r_{p,q}, d_r \} \) with
\[
E^2_{p,q} = \sum_{s+t=q} \text{Tor}_p(H_s(K), H_t(L)), \quad E^r_{p,q} \Rightarrow H(K \otimes L).
\]

The hypothesis (12.4) for this theorem requires that each of the complexes \( \text{Tor}_i(K, L) \), defined as in the remark of \( \S 11 \), has zero homology for \( m>0 \). The stronger hypothesis that each \( K_n \) is flat would imply that each \( \text{Tor}_i(K, L) = 0 \) for \( m>0 \), hence (12.1).

For positive complexes, the previous Künnett Theorem (Thm. V.10.2) is included in this one. In detail, the hypotheses of that theorem required that \( C_n(K) \) and \( B_n(K) \) be flat; i.e., that \( \text{Tor}_p(C_n, G) = 0 = \text{Tor}_p(B_n, G) \) for all \( G \) and \( p>0 \). Since \( C_n(K) \Rightarrow K, \Rightarrow B_{n-1}(K) \) is exact, the following portion of the standard exact sequence for the torsion product
\[
\text{Tor}(C, , G) \rightarrow \text{Tor}_1(K, , G) \rightarrow \text{Tor}_1(B_{n-1}, G)
\]
is exact, so each \( \text{Tor}_1(K_n, G) = 0, K_n \) is flat, and (12.1) holds. Moreover, \( B_n(K) \Rightarrow C_n(K) \Rightarrow H_n(K) \) is exact, so \( \text{Tor}_p(C_n, G) \rightarrow \text{Tor}_p(H_n, G) \rightarrow \text{Tor}_{p-1}(B_n, G) \) is exact, and therefore \( \text{Tor}_p(H_n, G) = 0 \) for \( p>1 \). The spectral sequence (12.2) thus has \( E^2_{p,q} = 0 \) for \( p \neq 0, 1 \), hence consists of two columns only, and so has zero differential. The filtration of \( H_n(K \otimes L) \) amounts to an exact sequence with \( E^2_{0,n} \) and \( E^2_{1,n-1} \), as follows:
\[
0 \rightarrow \sum_{s+t=n} H_s(K) \otimes H_t(L) \rightarrow H_n(K \otimes L) \rightarrow \sum_{s+t=n-1} \text{Tor}_1(H_s(K), H_t(L)) \rightarrow 0.
\]
This is the usual Künnett exact sequence. In other words, the present theorem shows that higher torsion products of \( H(K), H(L) \) affect \( H(K \otimes L) \) via a suitable spectral sequence.

This theorem will be derived from a more general result.

**Theorem 12.2.** If \( K \) and \( L \) are positive complexes of right and left \( R \)-modules, respectively, with hyperhomology \( \mathfrak{H}(K, L) \) defined as in \( \S 11 \), there are two first quadrant spectral sequences
\[
E^{r'}_{p,q} \Rightarrow \mathfrak{H}(K, L) \Rightarrow E^r_{p,q},
\]
\[
E^2_{p,q} \Rightarrow \text{Tor}(K, L) \Rightarrow \sum_{s+t=q} \text{Tor}_p(H_s(K), H_t(L)).
\]

Under the previous hypothesis (12.4), the first sequence collapses to the base, gives \( \mathfrak{H}(K, L) \Rightarrow E^2_{n,0} \Rightarrow H(K \otimes L) \), hence yields the result of the first theorem.

**Proof.** Choose a proper projective resolution \( Y \) of \( L \) and form the triple complex \( K \otimes Y \) of (11.3) with three boundary operators \( \partial_I, \partial_{II}, \partial_{III} \).
By totalizing the first and third indices, construct a double complex with
\[ X_{p,q} = \sum_{s+t=p} K_s \otimes Y_{q,t}, \quad \partial' = \partial_I + \partial_{III}, \quad \partial'' = \partial_{II}. \]

Then \( \text{Tot} X = \text{Tot}(K \otimes Y) \) has homology \( \mathfrak{H}(K, L) \). The two spectral sequences of this double complex will yield the result.

In the first spectral sequence, \( E^2_{p,q} = H'_p H''_q(X) \). In each dimension \( t \), \( \cdots \rightarrow Y_{q,t} \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow Y_{0,t} \rightarrow L_t \rightarrow 0 \) is a projective resolution of \( L_t \), so the torsion product \( \text{Tor}_q(K, L) \) may be calculated from this resolution as \( H''_q(K \otimes Y) \); the remaining boundary \( \partial'' = \partial_I + \partial_{III} \) is then the boundary operator of the complex \( \text{Tor}_q(K, L) \). Hence \( E^2 \) is as stated.

For the second spectral sequence, write \( X \) with renamed indices as \( X_{q,p} \), so that \( p \) is the filtration index for the (second) filtration, and \( E^2_{p,q} = H'_p H''_q(X) \). For fixed \( p \), \( X_{q,p} = \sum_{s+t=p} K_s \otimes Y_{p,t} \) with \( s+t=q \) is just the complex \( \text{Tot}(K \otimes Y_p) \) with boundary \( \partial'' = \partial_I + \partial_{III} \). In each complex \( Y_p \), the modules of cycles and of homologies are projective, by construction, so the Künneth tensor formula (Thm. V.10.1), with hypotheses on the second factor, applies to give
\[ H'_q(X_p) = H_q(K \otimes Y_p) \cong \sum_{s+t=q} H_s(K) \otimes H_t(Y_p). \]

Now each \( Y_p \) has the form \( S \) of (11.1), so each \( H_n(Y_p) \) is projective, while the definition of proper exact sequences of complexes shows that for each \( t \)
\[ \cdots \rightarrow H_t(Y_p) \rightarrow H_t(Y_{p-1}) \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow H_t(Y_0) \rightarrow H_t(L) \rightarrow 0 \]
is a projective resolution of \( H_t(L) \). Taking the tensor product with \( H_s(K) \) and the homology with respect to \( a'' \) is the standard method of computation for \( \text{Tor}(H_s(K), H_t(L)) \). Therefore we get the formula of (12.4) for \( E''_{p,q} \).

This theorem can be regarded as the formation from \( K \) and \( L \) of a large collection of "hyperhomology invariants": The modules \( \mathfrak{H}(K, L) \), the two filtrations of \( \mathfrak{H} \), and the two spectral sequences converging, as above, to the graded modules associated with these filtrations. For example, if the ground ring \( R \) is the ring of integers, the result becomes:

**Corollary 12.3.** If \( K \) and \( L \) are positive complexes of abelian groups with hyperhomology groups \( \mathfrak{H}(K, L) \), there is a diagram
\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\sum_{p+q=n} H_p(K) \otimes H_q(L) & \sum_{p+q=n-1} H_p(K) \otimes H_q(L) \\
\downarrow & \downarrow \\
\cdots \rightarrow H_{n-1}((\text{Tor}_1(K, L)) \rightarrow \mathfrak{H}_n \rightarrow H_n(K \otimes L) \rightarrow H_{n-2}((\text{Tor}_1(K, L)) \rightarrow \mathfrak{H}_{n-1} \rightarrow \cdots \\
\downarrow & \downarrow \\
\sum_{p+q=n-1} \text{Tor}_1(H_p(K), H_q(L)) & \sum_{p+q=n-2} \text{Tor}_1(H_p(K), H_q(L))
\end{array}
\]
with (long) exact row and short exact columns.
The Spectral Kiinneth Formula

Here \( \text{Tor}, (K, L) \) is short for \( \text{Tot} \{\text{Tor}, (K, L)\} \).

**Proof.** Over \( \mathbb{Z} \), \( \text{Tor}_p \) vanishes for \( p > 1 \), so the first spectral sequence has only two non-vanishing rows \( (q = 0, q = 1) \) and only one non-zero differential \( d^2: E^2_{n,0} \to E^2_{n-2,1} \); hence the exact sequence

\[
0 \to E^\infty_{n,0} \to H_n(K \otimes L) \xrightarrow{d} H_{n-2}(\text{Tor}_1(K, L)) \to E^\infty_{n-2,1} \to 0.
\]

Spliced with the exact sequences expressing the filtration of \( R_n \), this yields the long horizontal exact sequence above. The second spectral sequence has only two non-vanishing columns \( (\phi = 0, \phi = 1) \), hence has all differentials \( d^2 = d^3 = \ldots = 0 \); this yields the vertical exact sequences.

The reader may show that the composite map

\[
H_\phi(K) \otimes H_q(L) \to R_n \to H_n(K \otimes L)
\]

in this diagram is the homology product; the composite map

\[
H_{n-1}(\text{Tor}_1(K, L)) \to R_n \to \sum \text{Tor}_1(H_\phi(K), H_q(L))
\]

is a corresponding "product" for the left exact functor \( \text{Tor}, \), as defined in Ex. 11.6.

**Note.** The hyperhomology modules are due to Cartan-Eilenberg; the treatment in terms of proper exact sequences is due to Eilenberg (unpublished).
Bibliography

(With most listings the citation X.8 (to Chap. X, § 8) indicates where the article at issue is quoted in this book.)

— — Unique Factorization in Regular Local Rings. Proc. NAS USA 45, 733—734 (1959). VII.7
BASS, H.: Finitistic Dimension and a Homological Generalization of Semi-Primary Rings. Trans. AMS 95, 466—488 (1960). V.4; VII.1


Buchsbaum, D. A.: Exact Categories and Duality. Trans. AMS 80, 1—34 (1955). IX.2


— Séminaire (École Norm. Sup.). Algèbres d’Eilenberg-MacLane et Homotopie. Paris 1955. X.12; XI.11
—, and J. Leray: Relations entre anneaux d’homologie et groupe de Poincaré. Colloque Topologie Algébrique, Paris 1949, p. 83—85. XI.7


— Relations between Homology and Homotopy Groups. Proc. NAS USA 29, 155—158 (1943). IV.11


— Homology of Spaces with Operators. II. Trans. AMS 65, 49—99 (1949). XI.7

— Relations between Homology and Homotopy Groups of Spaces. II. Ann. of Math. 51, 514—533 (1950). XI.7


GODEMENT, R.: Théorie des Faisceaux. Hermann, Paris 1958. 1.8; IX.4
—, and S. WYLIE: Homology Theory. Cambridge 1960. 11.9; VIII.9; XI.7
— Relative Homological Algebra. Trans. AMS 82, 246—269 (1956). IX.8; XII.4


— On Duality Theorems. Bull. AMS, abstract 47-7-329 47. 562—563 (1941). 1.8


— Sur un type d'algèbres diffkrentiellesen rapport avec la transgression. Colloque de Topologie, Brussels 1950, p. 73—81. VII.2


— L'anneau spectral et l'anneau filrb d'homologie d'un espace localement compact et d'une application continue. J. Math. Pures Appl. 29, 1—139 (1950). XI.2; XI.11


— Group Extensions by Primary Abelian Groups. Trans. AMS 95, 1—16 (1960). XII.4; XII.9


— Modules with Descending Chain Condition. Trans. AMS 97, 495—508 (1960). VII.7


Mitchell, B.: Homological Tic Tac Toe. Forthcoming in Am. J. Math. IX.4; XII.3; XII.9


   — An Introduction to Homological Algebra. Cambridge, 1960. VII.1


   — Algèbre Locale — Multiplicités. (Notes written by P. GABRIEL) Paris 1957/58. VII.7


STEEENROD, N. E.: The Topology of Fibre Bundles. Princeton 1951. XI.2
   — Cyclic Reduced Powers of Cohomology Classes. Proc. NAS USA 39, 217—223 (1953). IV.7; VIII.8


**List of Standard Symbols**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>→</td>
<td>Homomorphism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>←</td>
<td>Monomorphism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>→</td>
<td>Epimorphism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>→</td>
<td>Homomorphism after &quot;neglect&quot; of some structure (IX.5.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>→</td>
<td>Homomorphism to be constructed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>→</td>
<td>Implies; convergence of a spectral sequence (XI.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>∃</td>
<td>There exists</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&amp;</td>
<td>And</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>∂</td>
<td>Boundary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>δ</td>
<td>Coboundary (II.3.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*</td>
<td>Induced homomorphism (subscript or superscript); (I.2.4); (I.6.1); (III.6.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≃</td>
<td>Homologous (II.1.2); (II.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≃</td>
<td>Homotopic (II.2.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≃</td>
<td>Congruent (of extensions); (III.5.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◦</td>
<td>Composition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>∈</td>
<td>Member of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>⊂</td>
<td>Null set</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>⊆</td>
<td>Inclusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>⊃</td>
<td>Union</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>⊓</td>
<td>Cup product (VIII.9.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>⊔</td>
<td>Wedge product (VIII.4.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>⊕</td>
<td>Cartesian product</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>⊗</td>
<td>Tensor product</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>⊕</td>
<td>Direct sum (1.4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>⊕</td>
<td>Direct product (1.4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>⊕</td>
<td>Short exact sequence (IX.1.12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>⊕</td>
<td>Functor neglecting some structure (IX.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>⊕</td>
<td>Codiagonal map (111.2) ; (IX.1.6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Zero element or mapping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0'</td>
<td>Zero object of a category (IX.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1, 1_A</td>
<td>Identity element of a group, ring, or algebra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1, 1_A</td>
<td>Identity mapping A → A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A, C, R</td>
<td>Category</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A^op</td>
<td>Opposite category</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A_R</td>
<td>Category of right R-modules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Exact sequence; exterior algebra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_K</td>
<td>Exterior algebra over K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Free module; Field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>Homology or cohomology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>&quot;Identity element&quot; map K → A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td>Complex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>Complex; projective module; Left ideal (I.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>Projective module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P_K</td>
<td>Polynomial algebra over K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q</td>
<td>Field of rational numbers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>Ring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R^op</td>
<td>Opposite ring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>Long exact sequence; Ring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S(X)</td>
<td>Singular complex of X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td>Functor; Singular simplex; Ring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U</td>
<td>DGA-algebra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>Vector space; Hopf algebra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X, Y</td>
<td>Complex; Topological space</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Z</td>
<td>Ring of integers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a, r</td>
<td>Elements a ∈ A, r ∈ R, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d_i</td>
<td>Face operator (simplicial set); (VIII.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p, p_A, p_H</td>
<td>Homology products (VIII.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s_i</td>
<td>Degeneracy operator (simplicial set); (VIII.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s</td>
<td>Homotopy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviations</td>
<td>(Caps for modules, lower case for categories)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bidim</td>
<td>Dimension as a bimodule (VII.5)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cls</td>
<td>(Homology) class of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coim, coim</td>
<td>Coimage</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coker, coker</td>
<td>Cokernel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Def</td>
<td>Domain of definition (of an additive relation); (11.6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deg</td>
<td>Degree of an element or morphism</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ext, ext</td>
<td>Group of extensions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### List of Standard Symbols

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>h. dim</td>
<td>Homological dimension (VII.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hom, hom</td>
<td>Group of homomorphisms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Im, im</td>
<td>Image</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ind</td>
<td>Indeterminacy (of an additive relation); (11.6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\Gamma$</td>
<td>Morphism of diagrams (1.7); (XII.6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$A, A^n$</td>
<td>Simplex, n-dimensional (affine) simplex (11.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$A, \Delta_A$</td>
<td>Diagonal map (III.2.1); (IX.1.6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$K$</td>
<td>Commutative ground ring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\Pi$</td>
<td>Multiplicative group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\Sigma$</td>
<td>Algebra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\Omega$</td>
<td>Algebra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\alpha$</td>
<td>Associative map for tensor product (VI.2.3); (VI.8.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\eta$</td>
<td>Adjoint associativity (V.3.5); (VI.8.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\theta$</td>
<td>Isomorphism; Equivalence in a category (IX.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\iota$</td>
<td>Injection of direct sum (I.4.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\kappa$</td>
<td>Monomorphism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\pi_i$</td>
<td>Projection of a direct sum (I.4.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\pi_A$</td>
<td>Product map of an algebra (VI.1.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\phi$</td>
<td>Epimorphism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$a, \tau$</td>
<td>Epimorphism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\tau$</td>
<td>Middle four exchange (VI.2.4); (VI.8.4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\psi$</td>
<td>Codiagonal map of coalgebra or Hopf algebra (VI.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ker, ker</td>
<td>Kernel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l.gl. dim.</td>
<td>Left global dimension of a ring (VII.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tor</td>
<td>Torsion product</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index

Abelian category 254
  Relative — 263
  Selective — 256
Abelian group 10
  Divisible — 93
Acyclic space 57
Additive
  — category 249
  — functor 23, 71, 263, 379
  — relation 51, 366 (Note)
Adjoint associativity 95, 144, 194
Adjoint, left 266, 269 (Note)
Affine independence 54
  — simplex 54
  — transformation 54
Alexander-Whitney map 241
Algebra 173
  Augmented — 180
  Bigraded — 180
  Exterior — 179, 183
  Graded — 177
Hopf — 198
  Opposite — 182
  Polynomial — 179, 182
  Separable — 214
  Symmetric — 184 (Ex.)
  Tensor — 179
  Total matrix — 214
  Ungraded — 180
Allowable class (in a category) 260
Analysis (of a morphism) 254
Annihilator 146
Anti-isomorphism 364 (Ex.)
Associative law 173
  — for diagonal map 197
  — for tensor product 142, 145, 194
Associativity 25, 249
  Adjoint — 95, 144, 194
  Middle — 138, 186
  Outside — 187
Augmentation 180
  — of DG-algebra 192
  — of DG-module 304
  — of graded algebra 180
  — of group ring 104
  — of singular complex 57
Automorphism 104
  Inner — 124
  Outer — 124
  — class 124
Axioms
  — for cohomology of algebras 287
  — for cohomology of groups 117
  — for Ext 99, 101, 269
  — for homology of algebras 289
  — for Tor 162, 275
Baer Sum 69, 85, 113 (Ex.)
Bar construction 306
Bar resolution 115, 280
Bimodule — 282
  Categorical — 268, 271
  Left — 282
  Reduced — 283
  Un-normalized — 115, 282
Barycentric coordinates 54
Base (of spectral sequence) 321
Betti number 42, 323
Biadditive
  — function 138
  — functor 400
Bidegree 176
Bifunctor 31, 393 (Notes)
  Additive — 71
Bigraded
  — algebra 180
  — module 176
Bilinear function 141
Bimodule 143
  — bar resolution 282
  — tensor product 187
Binomial coefficient 183
Bockstein cohomology operator 49, 339
Boundary 35, 39, 56
  Invariant — 45, 61
  Relative — 61
Bounded below (spectral sequence) 321
Bounded filtration 327
  Canonically — 330, 346
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Canonical map</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>comparison 267</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cartesian product</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>of modules 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8</td>
<td>of sets 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>238</td>
<td>of simplicial sets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Category 25</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>254</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>28</td>
<td>(Ex.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>249</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>370</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>250</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>256</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cauchy's Theorem 131</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Center of a group 124</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chain 35</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>39</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>289</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>108</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>90</td>
<td>276, 293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 26</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>124</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>120</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>124</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cleft extension 284</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coalgebra 197</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coboundary 42, 43, 116</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cochain 42</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cocycle 43</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Codiagonal map 68, 251</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Codimension 218 (Note)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cohomology 42</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>136</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>115</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>222, 296</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coinage 12, 41, 255</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cointial maps 17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cobounded filtration 346</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cokernel 12, 41, 252</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commutation rule for signs 164</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commutative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>178</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>179</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>179</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>312</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commutator subgroup 290</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comodule 198</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparison Theorem 87, 355</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allowable 261</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canonical 267</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Condensed canonical 305</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complex 1, 39</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chain 39</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cochain 42</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complete semi-simplicial 236</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Note)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elementary special 42 (Ex.)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Free 87</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Injective 95</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative 41</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Positive 41</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Projective 87, 261</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quotient 41</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Singular 56</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Special 42 (Ex.)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>301</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>87</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>95</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Composite</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yoneda 82</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>65</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25</td>
<td>249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>52</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>82</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Composition principle 53</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Condensation 302</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congruence</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>64</td>
<td>109, 285, 368</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>83</td>
<td>370</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>146</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>124</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conjugation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>124</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>97</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connected</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>192</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>380</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>386</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>45</td>
<td>51, 96, 162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>58</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connective</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>304</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>304</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contractible space 58</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contravariant 22, 29</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Convergence (of spectral sequence) 327, 329</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Converse (of a relation) 52
Convex hull 54
Coresolution 95
Correspondence (additive relation) 366 (Note)
Coset (of a subgroup) 11
Coterminal homomorphisms 16, 359
Count of coalgebra 197
Coset (of a subgroup) 11
Couple, exact 336
Covariant functor 28, 386
Cylinder 59
DG-Algebra 190
DGA-Algebra 192
Degeneracy operator 235
Degree 175
Complementary — 327
Filtration — 327
Total — 176, 318
Derived
— couple 336
— functor 389, 393 (Note)
Diagonal
Simplicial — 244
— homomorphism 68
— map 197
— morphism 251
Diagram 33
Category of — 257
Commutative — 13
direct product — 27
direct sum — 27
Schematic — 263
Diagram chasing 14, 364
Differential 35, 318
— graded algebra 190
— graded augmented algebra 192
— graded module 189
— group 35
— module 10
— on Hom(K, L) 43, 190
— on Hom_U 191
Dimension 39
Finitistic — 203
Homological — 201
Krull — 220
Left global — 202
Mac Lane, Homologie
Dimension
Left injective — 203
Right — 203
Weak — 203
Direct product 27, 32
Semi — — 105
— — of algebras 212, 295
— — of morphisms 33
Direct sum 15, 27
External — — 15, 18
Internal — — 19
Semi — — 286
Divisible abelian group 93
Domain
— of definition of relation 52
— of function 9
— of homomorphism 10
— of morphism 25
Dual 27
— basis 147
— module 146
— statement 27
Edge homomorphisms 321, 335
Eilenberg-Zilber Theorem 239, 241
Endomorphism 10, 143
Ring of — 21, 143
Enough projectives 261, 367 (Ex.), 377
Envelope, injective 103
Enveloping algebra 317
Epic 252
Epimorphism 10, 251
Equivalence 25, 252
Chain — 40
Left — 252
Right — 252
— principle 53
Equivariant cohomology 136
Essential extension 102
Euler characteristic 323
Exact
— couple 336
— functor 263, 379
— homology sequence 45
— sequence 11, 256
— triangle 193 (Ex.), 336
Half — functor 379
Left — functor 379
Left — sequence 23, 365
Proper — sequence 367, 370
Right — sequence 23, 379
27
Excision axiom 62

Extension
   Algebra — 284
   Central group — 112
   Cleft — 284
   Crossed product — 125
   Essential — 102
   Ground ring — 213, 294
   Group — 108
   Module — 63
   Morphism of — 63, 109
   Operator — 108
   Singular — 284

Exterior algebra 174, 179, 183

Face operator 235
Factor set 111, 285
Factor system 69
Factorization, standard 254
— through 12, 66, 252
Fiber
— map 322
— terms (of spectral sequence) 321

Fibred product 359

Filtration 165, 309, 326
   Bounded — 327, 330
   Canonically bounded — 330
   Convergent — 329
   Descending — 346
   First — 341
   Second — 342
   — of bar construction 309
   — of bicomplex 341
   — of tensor product 165

Finite type (module) 20, 219
First quadrant spectral sequence 320
Five Lemma 14, 365.
Flat module 163
Four Lemma 14, 364
Free
— graded module 195
— group 122
— module 19
— ring (over a group) 104
   Relatively — module 196

Function 8
   Mapping — 29, 31
   Object — 28, 31

Functor 28
   Additive — 23, 71, 263, 379
   Contravariant — 22, 29
   Covariant — 22, 28, 379, 386
   Exact — 263, 379

Functor
   Faithful — 263
   Forgetful — 262
   Half exact — 379
   Left derived — 389
   Left exact — 379
   Normalized — 259
   Right exact — 379

Graded algebras 177
   Internally — 180, 215
   Tensor product of — 181

Graded modules 175
   Associated — 326
   Internally — 177
   Positively — 175
   Trivially — 175
Graded object 177 (Note)
Graded set 177 (Note)
Graph of homomorphism 52
Group
   Change of — 108
   Cohomology — 115
   Differential — 35
   Free — 122, 123
   Relative homology — 61
   Singular cohomology — 57
   — algebra 199, 295 (Ex.)
   — ring 104
Group extension 108
   Pure — 367

Gysin sequence — 326

Hilbert Syzygy theorem 217
Hochschild (co)homology modules 283, 288

Holomorph of a group 105 (Ex.)
Homogeneous
— elements 177
— generator 119
— ideals 178
   non — generator 118, 119
Homological dimension 201
Homologous cycles 35, 40
Homology 35
— classes 35, 39
— group 35, 57
— isomorphism 310
— modules 39
— product 166, 221, 296
Homomorphism 10
   Boundary — 35, 56, 235
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Homomorphism</th>
<th>Index</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Composition of —</td>
<td>11, 195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connecting —</td>
<td>45, 51, 96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crossed —</td>
<td>105, 284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diagonal —</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edge —</td>
<td>321</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Induced —</td>
<td>13, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Principal crossed —</td>
<td>106, 284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— of algebras</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— of bimodules</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— of coalgebras</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— of DG-algebras</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— of differential groups</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— of graded algebras</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— of graded modules</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— of Hopf algebras</td>
<td>198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— of A-modules</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— of modules</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— of spectral sequences</td>
<td>319</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Homotopy** 39, 57

Chain — 40

Contracting — 41, 265, 267

Homotopy classification theorem 78

Hyperhomology groups 400, 402

**Ideal** 10

Graded (two-sided) — 178

Graded left — 178

Graded right — 178

Homogeneous — 180

Nilpotent — 286

**Prime** — 218

Proper — 218

**Identity**

— element 9

— function 9, 10

— morphism 25, 249

**Image** 10, 255

Inverse — 13, 363

— of morphism 255

**Indeterminacy** 52

**Induced**

— additive relation 53

— homomorphism 13, 36, 255

— relation 53

**Inessential extension** 102

Inflation homomorphism 347

**Injection (identity)** 9

**Injective**

— module 92

— object (in a category) 261

— resolution 95

**Interchange**

**Hom-** — 195

Middle four — 194

**Internal**

— direct sum 19

— grading 177, 180, 215

— homology product 221

**Intersection** 13, 18, 364 (Ex.)

**Invariant element** 122, 284

**Inverse** 11, 25

Left — 11

— image 13

**Isomorphism** 10

Modular Noether — 318

Natural — 29

**Noether** — 13

Iterated connecting homomorphism 97

**Ker-coker sequence** 50

**Kernel** 10, 252, 362, 363

Abstract — 124

**Koszul Resolution** 205, 218 (Ex.)

**Kronecker product** 182

**Künneth**

— Formula 166

— Formula for abelian groups 168

— spectral sequence 400

**Left**

— derived functor 389

— equivalence 252

— exact functor 379

— exact sequence 23, 265

— module 9

— satellite 382

— universal pair 381

**Leray-Serre Theorem** 322

**Lie algebra** 317

**Lifted map** 20, 87

**Lifting functor** 301

**Line segment** 54

**Loop space** 325

**Lyndon spectral sequence** 351 ff., 358

**Map**

Alexander-Whitney — 241

Diagonal — 197, 244

Monotonic — 233
Index

Map

Simplicial — 235
Mapping
— cone 46, 47
— cylinder 46
— function 29, 31
— theorem 321
Middle
— associative 138
— four interchange 194
— linear 138
Module 9
Bigraded — 176
Cyclic — 20
Differential graded — 189
Flat — 163
Free — 19, 195
Relatively — — 196
Free graded — 215
Graded $K$ — 175
Graded $U$ — 191
Injective — 92
Internally graded — 177
Left $A$ — 184
Left $R$ — 9
Monogenic — 20
Projective — 20
Quotient — 11
Reduced — 304
Relative projective — 265, 273
Right — 9, 138
Simple — 9, 138
Simple — 203
$R$ — 203
$\text{Simplical} — 233$
Submodule — 10
Trigraded — 176
Trivial — 105
Trivially graded — 175

Unitary — 9

Monic 251
Monogenic module 20

Monoid 290
Monomorphism 10, 251
Monotonous maps 233
Morphism 25, 249
Allowable — 260
Connecting — 380
Null — 259
Proper — 368
— of connected pairs 381
— of exact sequence 63, 83
— of group extension 109
Multiplicator 137 (Note)

Natural
— isomorphism 29
— transformation 29, 30, 32, 386
Negative complex 41
n-fold exact sequence 82, 83
Nilpotent ideal 286
Noether, Emmy 63 (Note)
Noether isomorphism 13, 318
Noetherian module 219
Norm 110
Normalization 114
— Theorem 236, 282
Normalized
— function 281, 283
— functor 259
— simplicial complex 236
Null
— morphism 259
— object 258

Object 25
Allowable projective — 261
Null — 258
Quotient — 252, 363
Relatively projective — 265
$\text{Simplical} — 233$
— Function 28, 31
Obstruction
— of abstract kernel 126
— of homomorphisms 72, 74
Opposite
— algebra 182
— category 28
— ring 157
Orbit 131
Order (of homotopy) 331

p-Group 132
Pair of spaces 61
Pairing 148 (Ex.), 247
Partly ordered set 33, 362
Pathwise connected space 57 (Ex.)
Poincaré 63 (Note)
Pointed set 362
Positive
— bicomplex 340
— complex 41
— grading 175
Preadditve category 250
Product 173
Crossed — 125
Cup — 245, 394 ff.
External — 220, 221
Product
- Fibred - 359
- Homology - 166, 221, 296
- Hopf wedge - 231
- Internal - 221, 232
- Kronecker - 182
- Relative torsion - 274, 275
- Semi-direct - 105
- Simplicial cup - 245
- Tensor - 138
- Torsion - 150, 154
- Wedge - 228

Projection
- of cartesian product - 18
- on quotient - 11

Projective
- Allowable - object - 261
- Relative - 265, 273
- equivalence - 101 (Ex.)
- module - 20

Proper
- class - 367
- long exact sequence - 370
- morphism - 368
- open set - 134
- operators - 134
- projective object - 376
- right exact sequence - 379
- sequence of complexes - 397
- short exact sequence - 367, 379
- subobject - 368

Pull-back - 90, 143
- Lemma - 140

Pure subgroup - 367

Quotient
- algebra - 178
- group - 11
- module - 11
- object - 252, 363
- space - 134

Range
- of a function - 9
- of a homomorphism - 10
- of a morphism - 25

Reduced
- bar resolution - 283
- module - 304

Relative
- abelian category - 263
- boundary - 61

Relative
- cycle - 61
- ext functor - 269
- homology group - 61
- projective object - 265
- torsion product - 274, 299

Relatively free
- complex - 267
- module - 196

Residue field (of a local ring) - 219

Resolution - 87
- Allowable - 261
- Allowable projective - 261, 378
- Bar - 115, 268, 271, 280
- Free - 87
- Injective - 95
- Koszul - 205, 218 (Ex.)
- Minimal - 217
- Projective - 87
- Short projective - 382

Resolvent pair (of categories) - 265

Restriction homomorphism - 347

Right
- equivalent - 252
- exact functor - 379
- exact sequence - 23, 379
- module - 9, 138
- satellite - 384

Ring
- Change of - 90, 276
- Integral group - 104
- Local - 219
- Opposite - 157
- Regular - 220
- Semi-simple - 203
- of quotients - 219

Ringoid - 250

Satellite
- Left - 382
- Right - 384

Selective abelian category - 256

Semi-direct product - 105

Sequence
- Allowable exact - 261
- Left exact - 23, 365
- Negative and positive - 386
- Proper exact - 370, 375
- Right exact - 23, 379
- S-split - 275
- Short exact - 12, 16
- Split exact - 16, 260
- Weakly split - 260
Index

Sets
- Category of — 26
- Pointed — 362
- **Simplicial** — 233

Sheets of a covering 134
Short Five Lemma 13, 256
Short projective resolution 382
Shuffle 243, 313
Signature (of a shuffle) 243
Signs (commutation rule) 164
Simplex 54
Simplicial
  - cup product 245
  - map 235
  - module 233
  - object 233
  - set 233
Singular
  - complex (of a space) 56
  - extension (of an algebra) 284
  - homology 57
Space
  - Acyclic — 57
  - Contractible — 58
  - Covering — 134
  - **Pathwise** connected — 57 (Ex.)
  - with operators 134
Spanned 181 (Ex.)
Spectral sequence 318ff.
  - Cohomology — 345
  - Convergent — 327, 329
  - First — of a bicomplex 341
  - First quadrant — 320
  - Second — of a bicomplex 342
  - Third quadrant — 345
  - of a covering 343
  - of a filtration 327
  - of an exact couple 337
Split
  - Relatively — 263
  - S — 273
  - Weakly — 260
  - extension 67, 108
  - sequence of complexes 47
  - short exact sequence 16, 260
Squares 359
  - Standard affine simplex 54
Strong Four Lemma 14, 366 (Ex.)
Subalgebra 178
Subcomplex 41
Submodule 10
  - Graded — 175
Subobject 252, 361
Subobjekt
  - Proper — 368
Subquotient 13
**Subring** 273
  - Summands (direct) 18
Surjective function 251, 362
Suspension homomorphism 309, 315 (Ex.)
Switchback 45, 52, 98
Symmetric algebra 184 (Ex.)
Syzygy, Hilbert Theorem 217
Tensor product 138ff.
  - of algebras 295
  - of bimodules 143, 187
  - of complexes 163
  - of DG-algebras 190
  - of graded algebras 181
  - of graded modules 176
  - of modules 138, 186
3x3 Lemma 49, 365, 366
3x3 splice 227
Torsion coefficients 42
Torsion product 150, 154, 224
  - Relative — 274, 299
Transformation
  - Chain — 40
  - Natural — 29, 386
  - of bifunctors 32
Transgression 333
Tricomplex 399
Trilinear function 142
Union of submodules 13, 18
Unitary module 9
Universal
  - Coefficient Theorem 77, 170ff.
  - covering space 135
  - diagram 16, 27
  - pair of functors 382, 384
  - square 360
Vertices of simplex 54, 57 (Ex.)
Wang Sequence Theorem 324
Weak Four Lemma 14, 364
Weakly split sequence 260
Word (in free group) 122
Yoneda composite 82
**Z-graded**
  - algebra 180
  - module 175
Zero
  - object 249, 250
  - in partly ordered set 33